EL(FL) Aust 1.QXP 7/26/2013 2:00 PM Page 1

# Introduction

1

**How to use this manual . . . . . 1-2**
**Fuel requirements . . . . . 1-3**
- **Petrol engine . . . . . 1-3**
- **Diesel engine. . . . . 1-4**

**Vehicle handling instructions . . . . . 1-6**
**Vehicle run-in process . . . . . 1-6**
**Indicator symbols on the instrument cluster. . . . . 1-7**

EL(FL) Aust 1.QXP 7/26/2013 2:00 PM Page 2



## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimise the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. A good place to start is the index; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has eight sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

You'll find various WARNINGS, CAUTIONS, and NOTICES in this manual. These were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGS, CAUTIONS and NOTICES.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.**

EL(FL) Aust 1.QXP 7/26/2013 2:00 PM Page 3



## FUEL REQUIREMENTS

### Petrol engine

*Unleaded*

Your new vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having an Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher.

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimise exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.***

***Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. (We recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer for details.)***

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

*Petrol containing ethanol*

Ethanol [E-10], a mixture of petrol and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and petrol or ethanol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded petrol.

Do not use petrol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use petrol or ethanol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system.

Discontinue using ethanol of any kind if driveability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or driveability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Petrol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Petrol or ethanol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded ethanol.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Never use ethanol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any ethanol product which impairs driveability.***

EL(FL) Aust 1.QXP 7/26/2013 2:00 PM Page 4



***Use of MTBE***

HYUNDAI recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapour lock or hard starting.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)***

***Do not use methanol***

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system.

***Fuel Additives***

HYUNDAI recommends that you use good quality petrols meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents.

For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km. Additives are available from your authorised HYUNDAI dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

***Operation in foreign countries***

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

## Diesel engine

***Diesel fuel***

Diesel engine must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel that complies with EN 590 or comparable standard. (EN stands for "European Norm"). Do not use marine diesel fuel, heating oils, or non-approved fuel additives, as this will increase wear and cause damage to the engine and fuel system. The use of non-approved fuels and / or fuel additives will result in a limitation of your warranty rights.

Diesel fuel of above cetane 51 is used in your vehicle. If two types of diesel fuel are available, use summer or winter fuel properly according to the following temperature conditions.

- Above -5°C(23°F) ... Summer type diesel fuel.
- Below -5°C(23°F) ... Winter type diesel fuel.

Watch the fuel level in the tank very carefully : If the engine stops through fuel failure, the circuits must be completely purged to permit restarting.

EL(FL) Aust 1.QXP 7/26/2013 2:00 PM Page 5



**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not let any petrol or water enter the tank. This would make it necessary to drain it out and to bleed the lines to avoid jamming the injection pump and damaging the engine.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel**

***It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.***

***If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.***

***Biodiesel***

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7% made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), fatty acid methyl ester (FAME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufactures warranty.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel, B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

***Biodiesel (for New Zealand)***

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7%, made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufacturers warranty.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel, B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

EL(FL) Aust 1.QXP 7/26/2013 2:00 PM Page 6



## VEHICLE HANDLING INSTRUCTIONS

As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than other types of vehicles. In other words they are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional 2-wheel drive vehicles. Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres. Again, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover. **Be sure to read the "Reducing the risk of a rollover" driving guidelines, in section 5 of this manual.**

## VEHICLE RUN-IN PROCESS

No special run-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Whilst driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly run-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than 3 minutes at one time.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.

EL(FL) Aust 1.QXP 7/26/2013 2:00 PM Page 7



## INDICATOR SYMBOLS ON THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER


Door ajar warning light


Door and tailgate open position light


Tailgate open warning light


Sunroof open warning light


Seat belt warning light


Low beam indicator*


High beam indicator


Front fog light indicator*


Rear fog light indicator*


Light on indicator*


Turn signal indicator


ESC indicator*


ESC OFF indicator*


ABS warning light


Air bag warning light


Parking brake & Brake fluid warning light


Engine oil pressure warning light


Engine oil level warning light (Diesel engine*)


4WD system warning light*


4WD LOCK indicator*


Charging system warning light


Malfunction indicator*


Immobiliser indicator*


Cruise indicator*



Cruise SET indicator*


Low fuel level warning light


Electric power steering (EPS) system warning light*


Shift pattern indicator*


Manual transaxle shift indicator*/ Auto transaxle shift indicator*


Glow indicator (Diesel only)


Fuel filter warning light (Diesel only)


DBC indicator*



Key out warning*

EL(FL) Aust 1.QXP 7/26/2013 2:00 PM Page 8




Engine coolant temperature warning light



ECO indicator*

*: if equipped

❋: For more detailed explanations, refer to section 4, “Instrument cluster”.

EL(FL) Aust 2.QXP 7/26/2013 2:01 PM Page 1

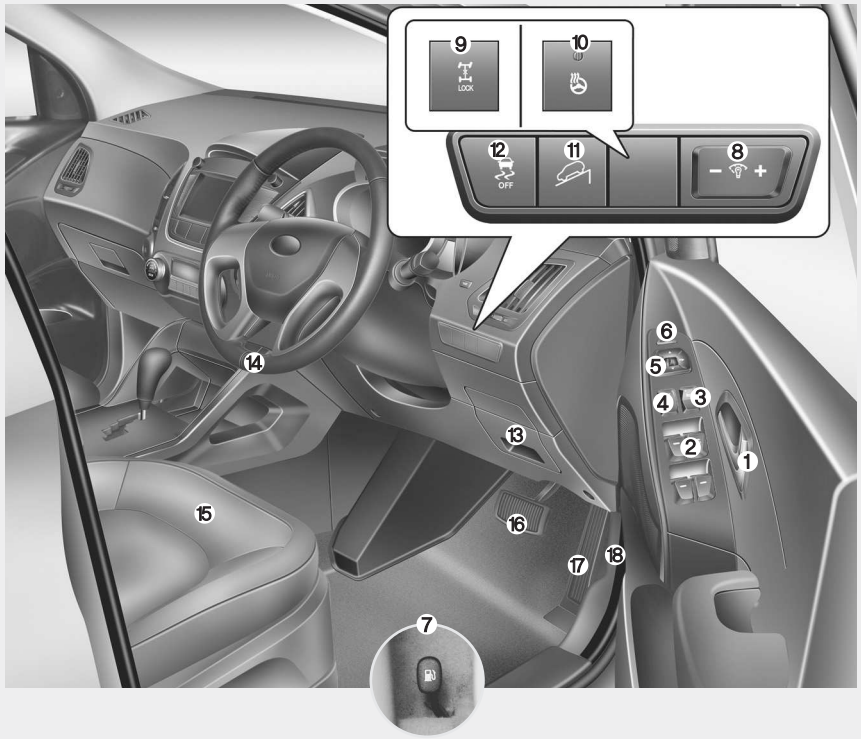
# Your vehicle at a glance

**Interior overview . . . . . 2-2**
**Instrument panel overview . . . . . 2-3**
**Engine compartment . . . . . 2-4**

EL(FL) Aust 2.QXP 7/26/2013 2:01 PM Page 2



## INTERIOR OVERVIEW




1. Door lock/unlock button .....4-16
2. Power window switches*.....4-21
3. Central door lock switch* .....4-16
4. Power window lock switch* .....4-24
5. Outside rearview mirror control switch*.....4-44
6. Outside rearview mirror folding button*.....4-45
7. Fuel filler lid release lever.....4-27
8. Instrument panel illumination control switch* .....4-47
9. 4WD Lock button*.....5-24
10. Heated steering wheel button* .....4-35
11. DBC button* .....5-41
12. ESC OFF button* .....5-36
13. Fuse box .....7-51
14. Steering wheel .....4-34
15. Seat.....3-2
16. Brake pedal.....5-31
17. Accelerator pedal
18. Bonnet release lever.....4-25

* : if equipped

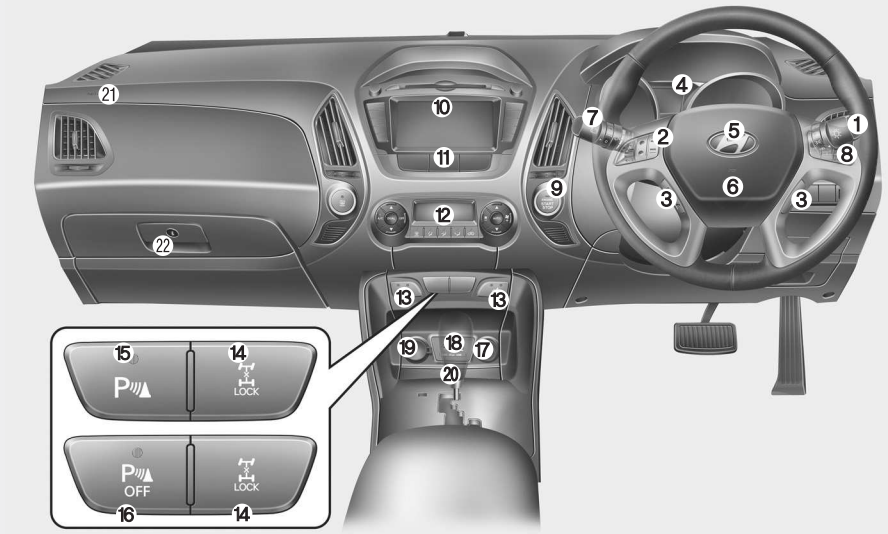
❇ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OEL013001R-3

EL(FL) Aust 2.QXP 7/26/2013 2:02 PM Page 3



## INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW




❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

1. Light control/Turn signals .....4-89
2. Steering wheel audio controls* ....4-135
3. Bluetooth phone controls* .....4-168
4. Instrument cluster .....4-46
5. Horn .....4-36
6. Driver's front air bag.....3-45
7. Wiper/Washer.....4-95
8. Auto cruise controls* .....5-46
9. Engine start/stop button* .....5-9
10.Digital clock and Audio/AVN* .....4-129
11. Hazard warning flasher switch.....4-87
12. Climate control system* ..4-104, 4-113
13. Seat warmer* .....3-10
14. 4WD Lock button* .....5-25
15. Parking assist system ON/OFF button* .....4-82
16. Rear parking assist system OFF button* .....4-79
17. Cigarette lighter* .....4-126
18. AUX, USB*.....4-129
19. Power outlet* .....4-128
20. Shift lever .....5-15, 5-18
21. Passenger's front air bag* .....3-45
22. Glove box.....4-123

* : if equipped

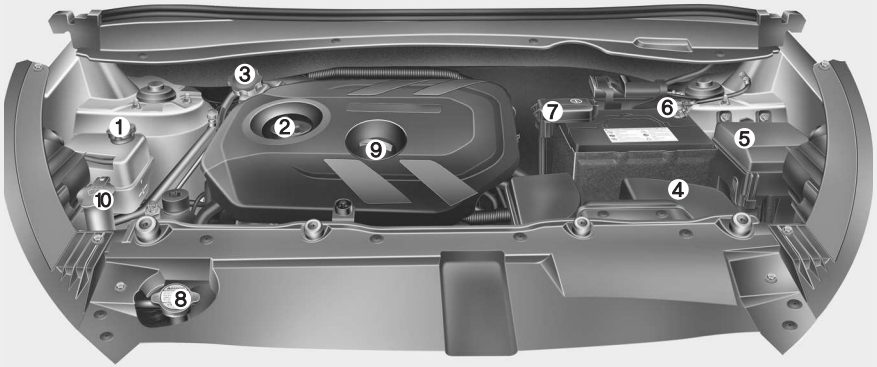
OEL013002R-2

EL(FL) Aust 2.QXP 7/26/2013 2:02 PM Page 4



## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **Petrol Engine (2.0L) - GDI**




1. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-23
2. Engine oil filler cap .....7-22
3. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir.....7-26
4. Air cleaner .....7-30
5. Fuse box.....7-51
6. Negative battery terminal .....7-37
7. Positive battery terminal .....7-37
8. Radiator cap .....7-25
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-22
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir.....7-27

* : if equipped

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL073300R

EL(FL) Aust 2.QXP 7/26/2013 2:02 PM Page 5



**■ Diesel Engine (2.0L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir .....7-23
2. Fuse box .....7-51
3. Fuel filter .....7-28
4. Engine oil dipstick .....7-22
5. Engine oil filler cap .....7-22
6. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir .....7-26
7. Air cleaner .....7-30
8. Negative battery terminal .....7-37
9. Positive battery terminal .....7-37
10. Radiator cap .....7-25
11. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir .....7-27

* : if equipped

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL079002R

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:03 PM Page 1

# Safety features of your vehicle


**Seat** . . . . . 3-2
- Front seat . . . . . 3-5
- Rear seat . . . . . 3-12

**Seat belts** . . . . . 3-17
- Seat belt restraint system . . . . . 3-17
- Pre-tensioner seat belt. . . . . 3-24
- Seat belt precautions . . . . . 3-27
- Care of seat belts . . . . . 3-29

**Child restraint system** . . . . . 3-31
- Using a child restraint system . . . . . 3-32

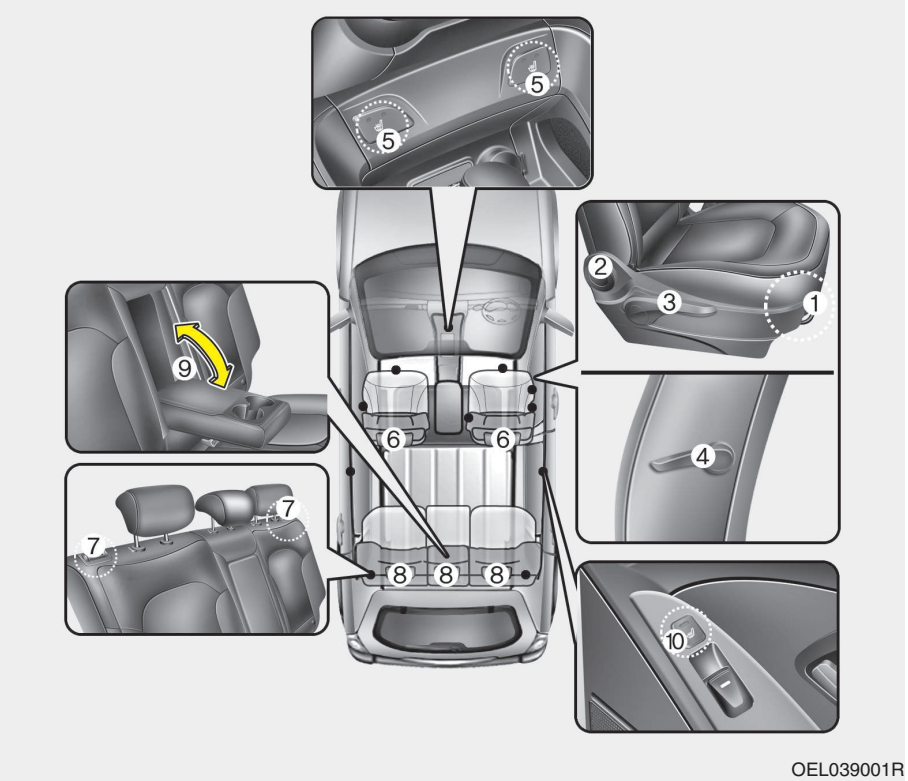
**Air bag - supplemental restraint system** . . . . . 3-39
- How does the air bag system operate . . . . . 3-40
- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat . . . . . 3-41
- Air bag warning and indicator . . . . . 3-42
- SRS components and functions . . . . . 3-43
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag . . . . . 3-45
- Side air bag . . . . . 3-48
- Curtain air bag . . . . . 3-49
- Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag) . . . . . 3-52
- SRS Care . . . . . 3-57
- Additional safety precautions. . . . . 3-58
- Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle . . . . . 3-58
- Air bag warning label . . . . . 3-59


3

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:03 PM Page 2



## SEAT




OEL039001R

### Front seat

(1) Forward and backward
(2) Seatback angle
(3) Seat cushion height (Driver's seat)
(4) Lumbar support (Driver's seat)*
(5) Seat warmer*
(6) Headrest

### Rear seat

(7) Seatback folding
(8) Headrest
(9) Armrest
(10) Seat warmer*

* if equipped

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:03 PM Page 3



**⚠ WARNING - Loose objects**

**Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.**

**⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat**

**When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly and be sure there are no other occupants around the seat. If the seatback is returned without being held and controlled, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in accidental injury to a person struck by the seatback.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driver responsibility for front seat passenger**

**Riding in a vehicle with a front seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a front seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the front passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use a sitting cushion that reduces friction between the seat and passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt can't operate normally.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat**

- **Never attempt to adjust seat whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.**
- **In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel whilst maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. It is recommended that your chest is at least 250 mm (10 inches) away from the steering wheel.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:03 PM Page 4



**⚠ WARNING - Rear seatbacks**

- **The rear seatback must be securely latched. If not, passengers and objects could be thrown forward resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Luggage and other cargo should be laid flat in the cargo area. If objects are large, heavy, or must be piled, they must be secured. Under no circumstances should cargo be piled higher than the seatbacks. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop, collision or rollover.**
- **No passenger should ride in the cargo area or sit or lie on folded seatbacks whilst the vehicle is moving. All passengers must be properly seated in seats and restrained properly whilst riding.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When resetting the seatback to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by pushing it forward and backwards.**

**⚠ WARNING**

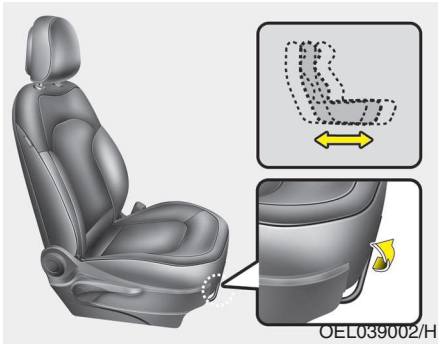
**After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to move the seat forward or backward without using the lock release lever. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.**
- **Do not put a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may gush out of the lighter and cause fire.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:03 PM Page 5




OEL039002/H

## Front seat

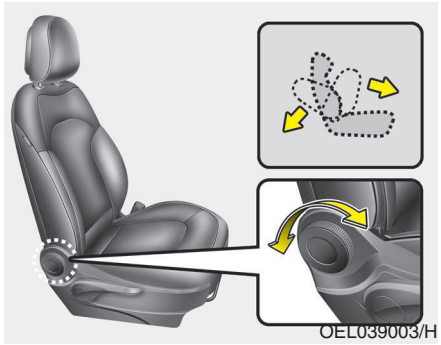
### *Manual adjustment*

**Forward and backward**

To move the seat forward or backward:

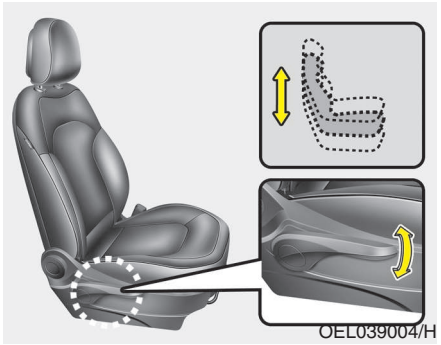
1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.


OEL039003/H

### *Adjusting the seatback recliner*

To recline the seatback, rotate the knob forward or rearward to the desired angle.


OEL039004/H

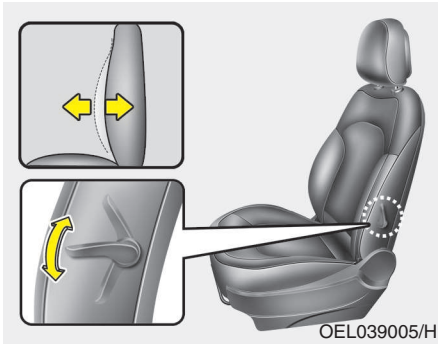
**Seat cushion height**
**(for driver's seat, if equipped)**

To change the height of the seat cushion, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat cushion, push down the lever several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull up the lever several times.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:03 PM Page 6




OEL039005/H

***Lumbar support (if equipped)***

The lumbar support can be adjusted by moving the lever on the side of seatback. Pivoting the lever increases or decreases lumbar support.

***Automatic adjustment (if equipped)***

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so as to easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF.**

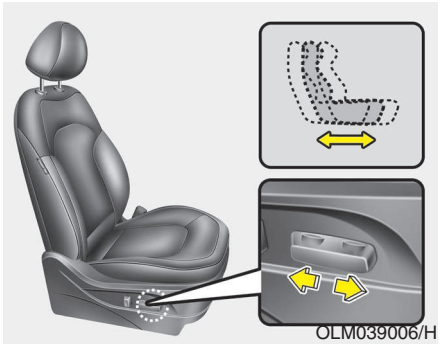
**Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The power seat is driven by an electric motor. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.***
- ***When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.***
- ***Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.***

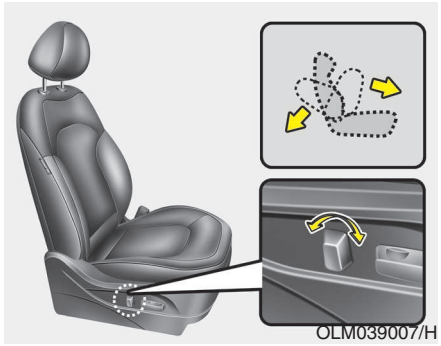
EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:03 PM Page 7





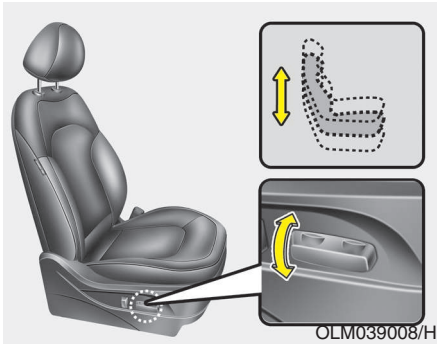

**Forward and backward**

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.




**Seatback angle**

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seatback to the desired angle. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

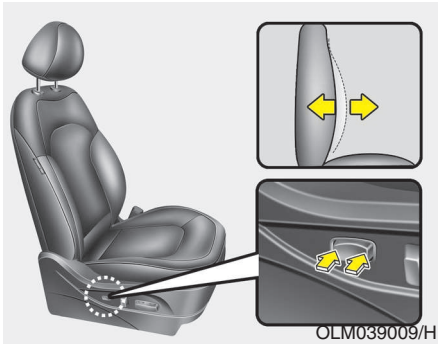



**Seat height (for driver's seat)**

Pull the control switch up to raise or down to lower the seat cushion. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

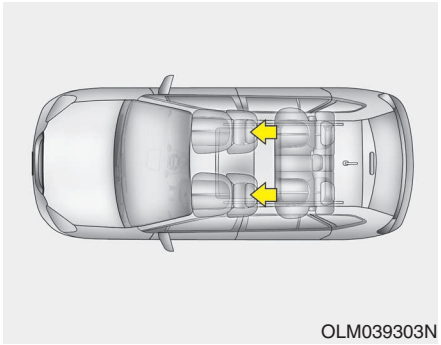
EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 8






**Lumbar support (for driver's seat)**

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the button.




***Headrest***

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.

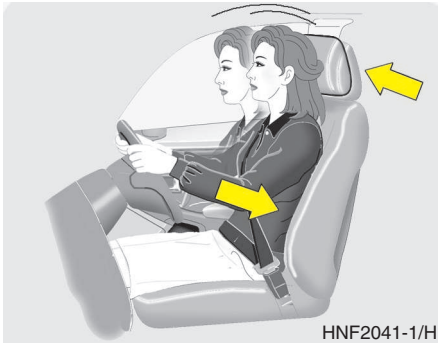
The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.**
- **Do not adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 9



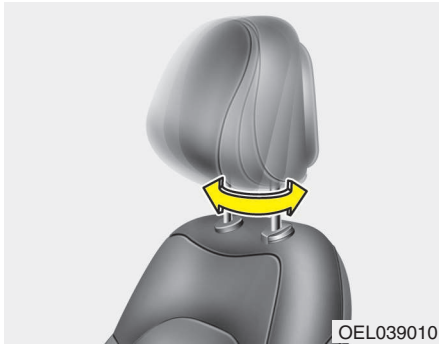

HNF2041-1/H

**Active headrest (if equipped)**

The active headrest is designed to move forward and upward during a rear impact. This helps prevent the driver's and front passenger's heads from moving backward and thus helps minimise neck injuries.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A gap between the seat and the headrest release button may appear when seating on the seat or when you push or pull the seat. Be careful not to get your finger, etc. caught in the gap.**

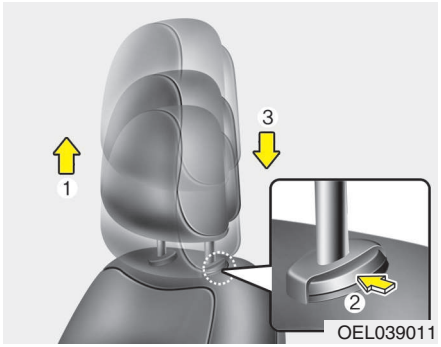

OEL039010

**Adjusting the angle (if equipped)**

The headrest angle may be adjusted by pulling or pushing the lower part of the headrest. Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.

**⚠ WARNING**

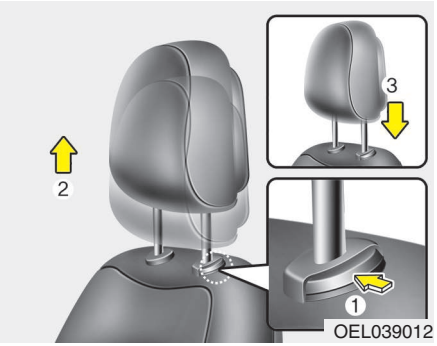
**Excessive pulling or pushing may damage the headrest.**



OEL039011

**Adjusting the height up and down**

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).



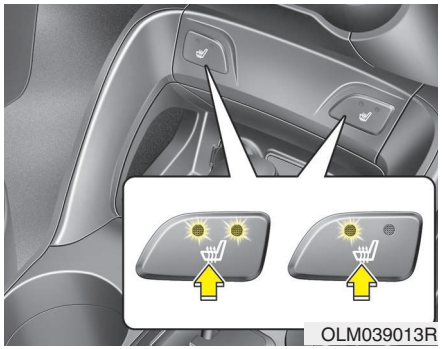

**Removal**

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) whilst pulling upward (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.**




***Seat warmer (if equipped)***

The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

- The temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows :

  OFF → HIGH (●●) → LOW (●)

- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

**✻ NOTICE**

**With the seat warmer switch in ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.***
- ***To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers whilst the seat warmer is in operation.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.***

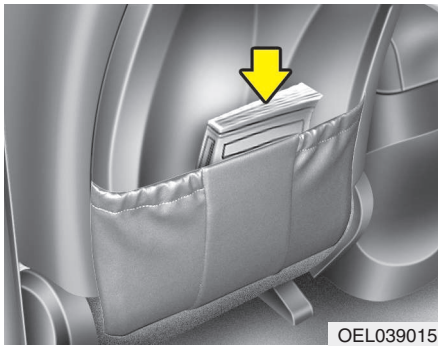
EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 11



**⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns**

**Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:**

1. **Infants, children, elderly or handicapped persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**




***Seatback pocket***

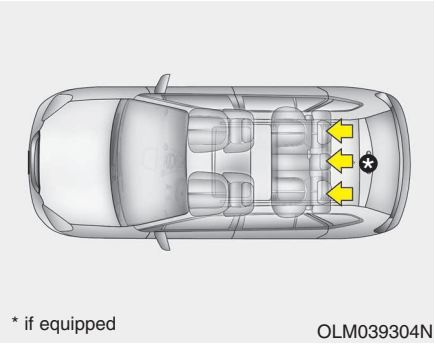
The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's and driver's seatbacks.

**⚠ WARNING - Seatback pockets**

**Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 12





* if equipped

OLM039304N

## Rear seat

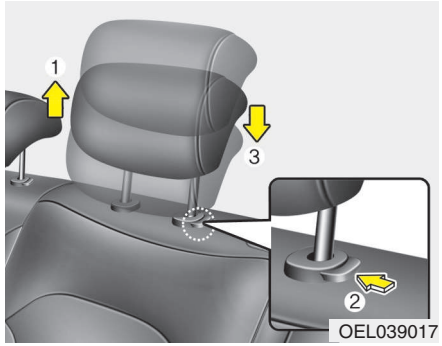
### *Headrest*

The rear seat(s) is equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**



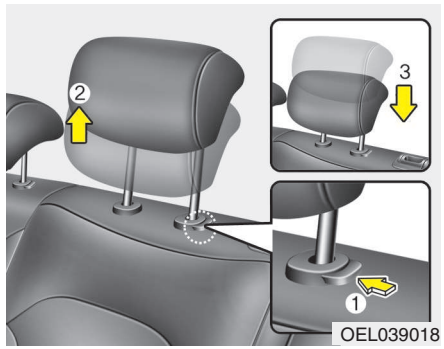

OEL039017

**Adjusting the height up and down**

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 13





OEL039018

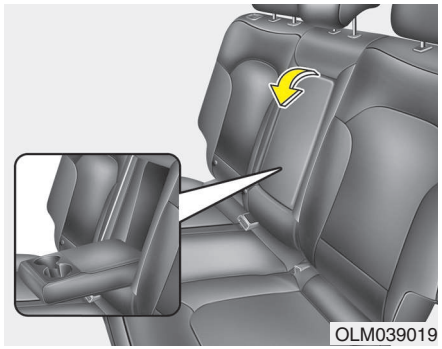
**Removal**

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) whilst pulling the headrest up (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

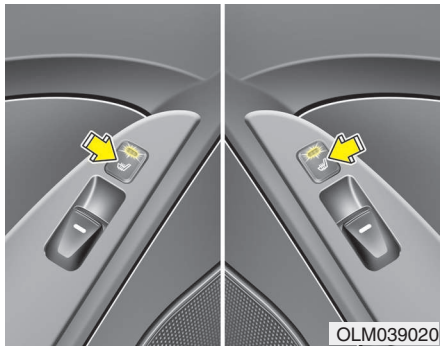
**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.**


OLM039019

***Armrest***

To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.


OLM039020

***Seat warmer (if equipped)***

The seat warmer is provided to warm the rear seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm rear seats.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

**✻ NOTICE**

**With the seat warmer switch in ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 14



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.***
- ***To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers whilst the seat warmer is in operation.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.***

**⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns**

**Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:**

1. **Infants, children, elderly or handicapped persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**

***Folding the rear seat***

The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

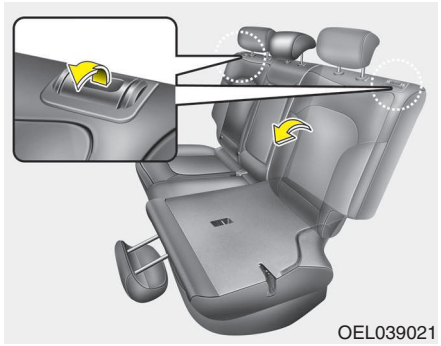
**The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks is to allow you to carry longer objects that could not be accommodated in the cargo area.**

**Never allow passengers sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop. Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 15

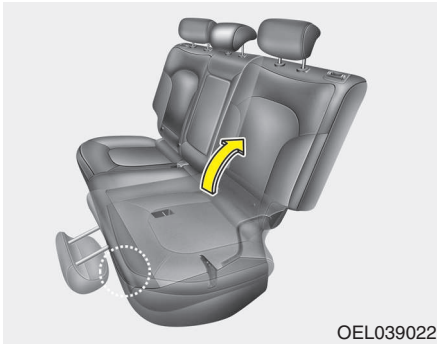


1. Insert the rear seat belt buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion, and insert the rear seat belt webbing in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.



OEL039021

4. Pull on the seatback folding lever, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.



OEL039022

5. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.
7. When the seatback is completely installed, check the red label of seatback folding lever again.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 16



**⚠ WARNING**

**When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down:**

**Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden stop, the seat could fold down and allow cargo to enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat**

**When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. If the seatback is returned without holding it, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in injury caused by being struck by the seatback.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Damaging rear seat belt buckles**

***When you fold the rear seatback or put luggage on the rear seat cushion, insert the buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback or luggage.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Rear seat belts**

***When returning the rear seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position. Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.***

**⚠ WARNING - Cargo**

**Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Special care of objects should be taken when placing them in the rear seats, since those may hit the front seat occupants in a frontal collision.**

**⚠ WARNING - Cargo loading**

**Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transaxle is in P (Park) or the manual transaxle is in R (Reverse) or 1st, and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 17



## SEAT BELTS

### Seat belt restraint system

**⚠ WARNING**

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the car is moving.
- Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.
- Children age 12 and younger must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash. The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.
- Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.

**⚠ WARNING**

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

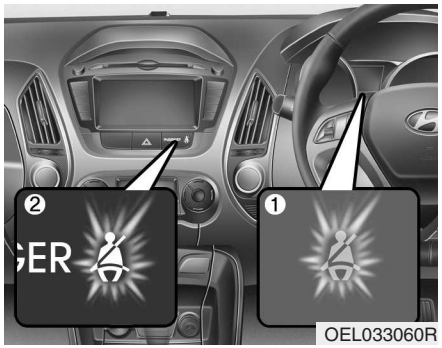
Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 18



**⚠ WARNING**

- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**
- **When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of other seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.**
- **Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly whilst driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle. The seat belt may not be fastened securely.**




***Seat belt warning***

(1) Driver's seat belt warning light
(2) Front passenger's seat belt warning light

As a reminder to the driver and front passenger, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON or if it is disconnected after the ignition switch is turned ON, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9km/h, the illuminated warning light will start to blink until you drive under 6km/h.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20km/h the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

**✻ NOTICE**

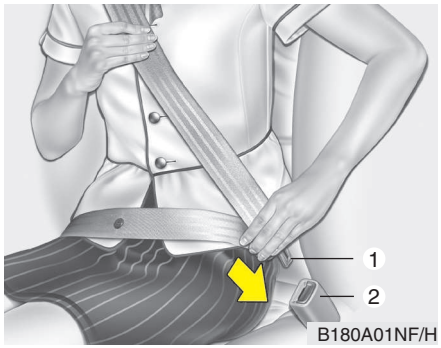
- **You can find the front passenger's seat belt warning light on the centre fascia panel.**
- **Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 19



**⚠ WARNING**

**Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.**




***Lap/shoulder belt***

**To fasten your seat belt:**

To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

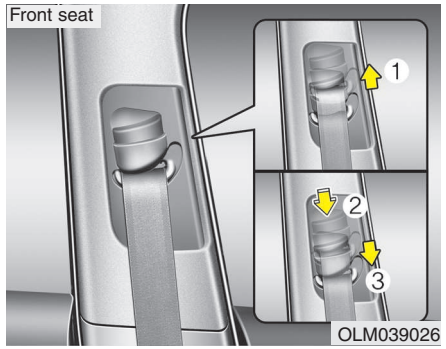
The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

**✻ NOTICE**

**If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:04 PM Page 20






**Height adjustment**

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

If the height of the adjusting seat belt is too near your neck, you will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door and not your neck.

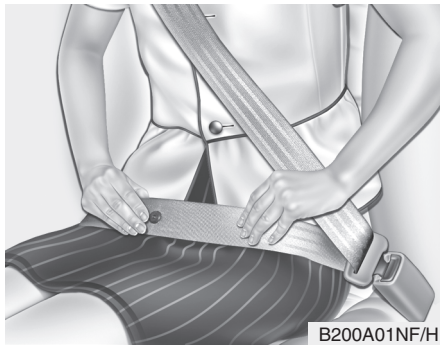
To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Verify the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face. Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.**
- **Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision leading to personal injury or death. Replace your seat belts after being in an accident as soon as possible.**



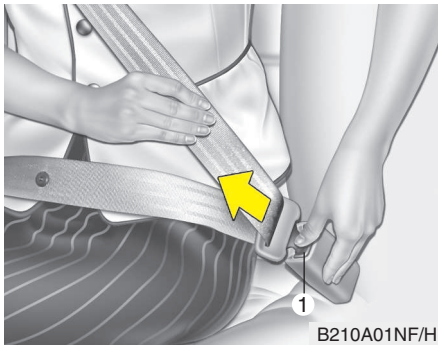

**⚠ WARNING**

**You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.**

**Never wear the seat belt under the arm nearest the door.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 21

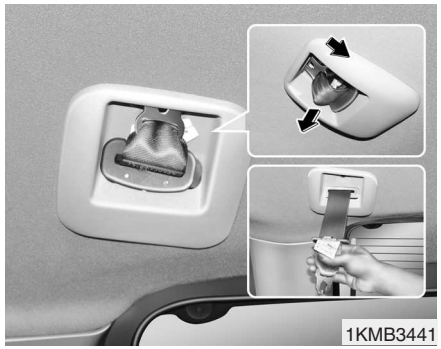





**To release the seat belt:**

The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (1) in the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.



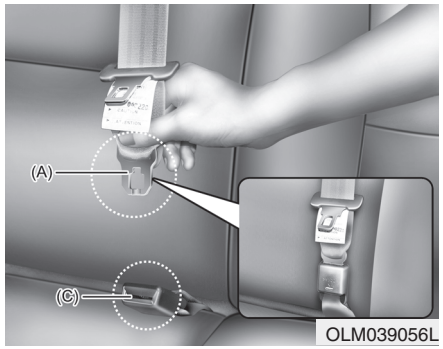

***3 Point rear centre belt***

**To fasten the rear centre belt**

1. Extract the tongue plate from the hole on the belt assembly cover and slowly pull the tongue plates out from the retractor.

**⚠ CAUTION - Cargo**

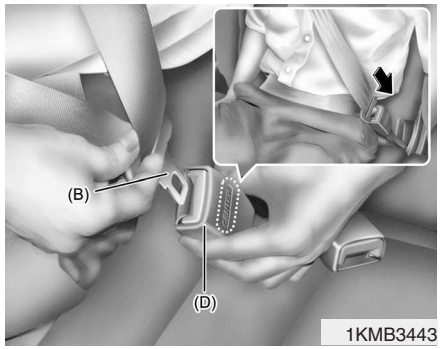
***Be sure that the cargo is securely loaded in the rear cargo area. Doing not so may damage the rear centre safety belt in sudden stop or certain collisions.***




2. Insert the tongue plate (A) into the open end of the buckle (C) until an audible “click" is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 22






3. Pull the tongue plate (B) and insert the tongue plate (B) into the open end of the buckle (D) until an audible “click” is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

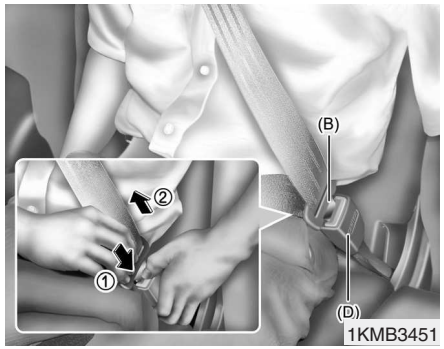
**⚠ CAUTION**

***When using the rear centre seat belt, the buckle with the “CENTRE” mark must be used.***

There will be an audible “click” when the tab locks in the buckle. The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips, if you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the rear seat centre belt, you must lock all tongue plates and buckles. If any tongue plate or buckle is not locked, it will increase the chance of injury in the event of collision.**

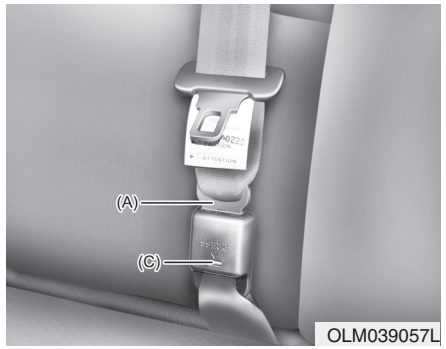



***To unfasten the rear centre belt***

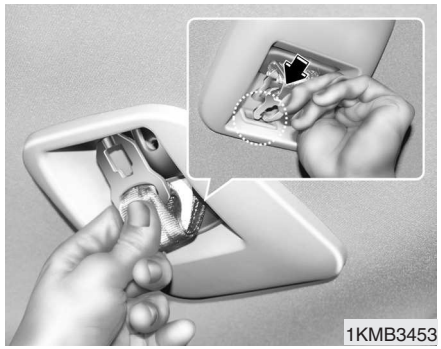
1. Press the release button on the buckle (D) and remove the tongue plate (B) from the buckle (D).

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 23

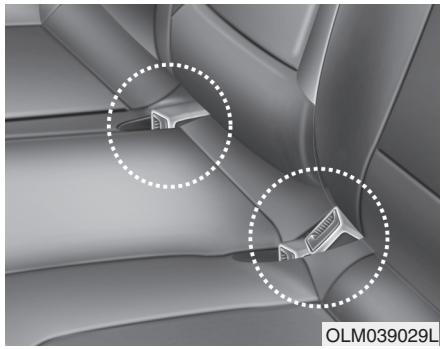





2. To retract the rear centre seatbelt, insert the buckle into the web release hole (C). Pull up on the seat belt web (A) and allow the webbing to retract automatically.




3. Insert the tongue plate (A) into the hole on the belt assembly cover.

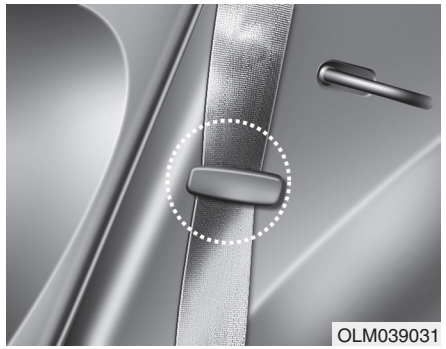



***Stowing the rear seat belt***

The rear seat belt buckles can be stowed in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion when not in use.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 24




OLM039031

- Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.

  After inserting the seat belt, tighten the belt webbing by pulling it up.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When using the seat belt, use it after taking it out of the guides.***

***If you pull the seat belt when it is stored in the guides, it may damage the guides and/or belt webbing.***


OED030300/H

### Pre-tensioner seat belt (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts. The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal collision is severe enough.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

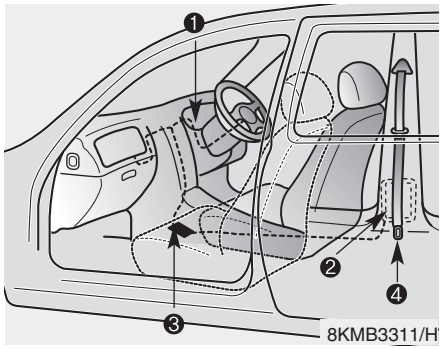
If the system senses excessive seat belt tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner activates, the load limiter inside the pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt. (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**For your safety, be sure that the belt webbing is not loose or twisted and always sit properly on your seat.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 25






The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:

1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module
4. Anchor pre-tensioner assembly (driver side, if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:**

1. **The seat belt must be worn correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle's occupant safety features – including seat belts and air bags – that are provided in this manual.**
2. **Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.**

## ✻ NOTICE

- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position, and then it should turn off.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 26



**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, this warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.**
- **The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.**
- **Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Do not strike the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies.**
- **Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.**
- **Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 27



### Seat belt precautions

**⚠ WARNING**

**All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards.**

**Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant seat contained in this manual.**

*Infant or small child*

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standards of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 28



***Larger children***

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips and as low as possible. Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 12) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 12 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 12 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children**

- **Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.**

***Pregnant women***

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women to lessen the chance of injury in an accident. When a seat belt is used, the lap belt portion should be placed as low and snugly as possible on the hips, not across the abdomen. For specific recommendations, consult a physician.

**⚠ WARNING - Pregnant women**

**Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 29



*Injured person*

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

*One person per belt*

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

*Do not lie down*

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front seats should be in an upright position when the car is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front seat is in a reclined position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries or the occupant's neck could strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.**

## Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback was folded down, be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat. A seat belt with damaged webbing or buckle will not be as strong and could possibly fail during a collision or sudden stop, resulting in serious injury. If the webbing or buckles are damaged, get them replaced immediately.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 30



***Maintenance of seat belts***

When cleaning the seat belts, as recommended, avoid getting solutions into the buckle where they may attack the lubricant or cause corrosion. Do not attempt to bleach or re-dye belts, as this may affect the webbing strength.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Do not attempt any form of modifications or repairs to seat belt components. If the retractor or other components do not operate correctly, we recommend that you call an authorised HYUNDAI dealer, who will take the necessary corrective action. Your authorised dealer will inspect all seat belt components at regular intervals and advise if replacement is required. Between these inspections you should make regular checks to ensure that foreign objects are not preventing complete buckle engagement.**

***Periodic inspection***

It is recommended that all seat belts be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

***Keep belts clean and dry***

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

***When to replace seat belts***

Entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend additional questions concerning seat belt operation be directed to an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 31



## CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Children riding in the car should sit in the rear seat and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Larger children not in a child restraint should use one of the seat belts provided.

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant safety seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. You must use a commercially available child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt, or by a tether anchor and/or ISOFIX anchors (if equipped).

Children could be injured or killed in a crash if their restraints are not properly secured. For small children and babies, a child seat or infant seat must be used. Before buying a particular child restraint system, make sure it fits your car seat and seat belts, and fits your child. Follow all the instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **A child restraint system must be placed in the rear seat. Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger side air bag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Thus only use a child restraint in the rear seat of your vehicle.**
- **A seat belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle on a sunny day, even if the outside temperature does not feel hot. Be sure to check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.**
- **When the child restraint system is not in use, store it in the luggage area or fasten it with a seat belt so that it will not be thrown forward in case of a sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Children may be seriously injured or killed by an inflating air bag. All children, even those too large for child restraints, must ride in the rear seat.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the chance or serious or fatal injuries:**

- **Children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating air bag resulting in serious or fatal injuries.**
- **Always follow the instructions for installation and use of the child restraint maker.**
- **Always make sure the child seat is secured properly in the car and your child is securely restrained in the child seat.**
- **Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the car's interior.**
- **Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child causing serious internal injuries.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 32



**(Continued)**

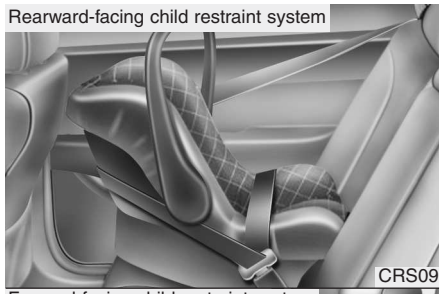
- **Never leave children unattended in a vehicle – not even for a short time. The car can heat up very quickly, resulting in serious injuries to children inside. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or lock themselves or others inside the vehicle.**
- **Never allow two children, or any two persons, to use the same seat belt.**
- **Children often squirm and reposition themselves improperly. Never let a child ride with the shoulder belt under their arm or behind their back. Always properly position and secure children in rear seat.**
- **Never allow a child to stand-up or kneel on the seat or floorboard of a moving vehicle. During a collision or sudden stop, the child can be violently thrown against the vehicles interior, resulting in serious injury.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate security in an accident.**
- **Seat belts can become very hot, especially when the car is parked in direct sunlight. Always check seat belt buckles before fastening them over a child.**
- **After an accident, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **If there is not enough space to place the child restraint system because of the driver's seat, install the child restraint system in the rear left seat.**

Rearward-facing child restraint system



CRS09

Forward-facing child restraint system



OLMB033042R

## Using a child restraint system

For small children and babies, the use of a child seat or infant seat is required. This child seat or infant seat should be of appropriate size for the child and should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. For safety reasons, we recommend that the child restraint system be used in the rear seats.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 33

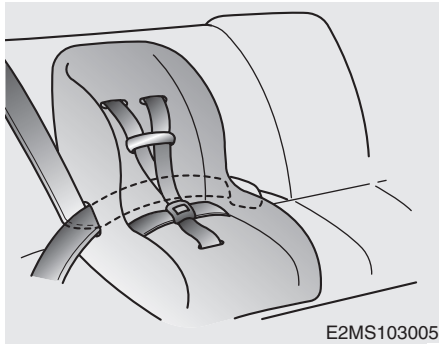


**⚠ WARNING**

**Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, because of the danger that an inflating passenger-side air bag could impact the rear-facing child restraint and kill the child.**

**⚠ WARNING - Child seat installation**

- **A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the vehicle and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Before installing the child restraint system, read the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **If the seat belt does not operate as described in this section, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Failure to observe this manual's instructions regarding child restraint system and the instructions provided with the child restraint system could increase the chance and/or severity of injury in an accident.**



E2MS103005

***Installing a child restraint system by lap/shoulder belt***

To install a child restraint system on the outboard or centre rear seats, do the following:

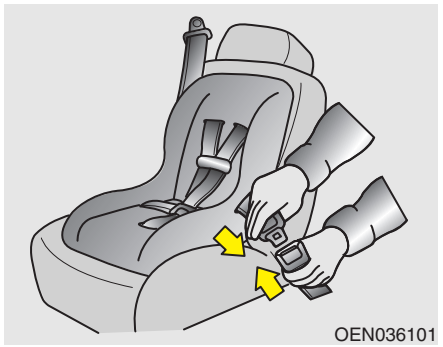
1. Place the child restraint system in the seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the restraint, following the restraint manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the rear centre seat belt, you should also refer to "3 point rear centre seat belt" in this chapter.**

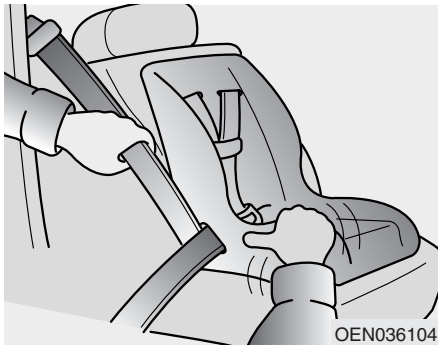
EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 34




OEN036101

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct “click” sound.

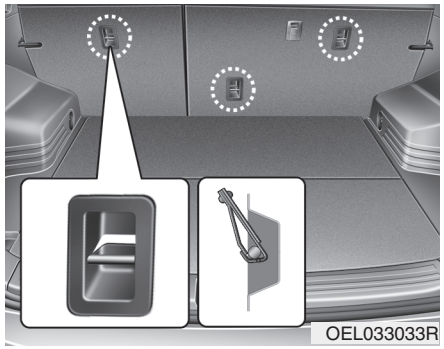
*Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.*


OEN036104

3. Buckle the seat belt and allow the seat belt to take up any slack. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.

If you need to tighten the belt, pull more webbing toward the retractor. When you unbuckle the seat belt and allow it to retract, the retractor will automatically revert back to its normal seated passenger emergency locking usage condition.

If the child seat moves, readjust the length of the seat belt. In Australia/NZ the child restraint manufacturer's instructions must be followed when fitting the unit to the vehicle.

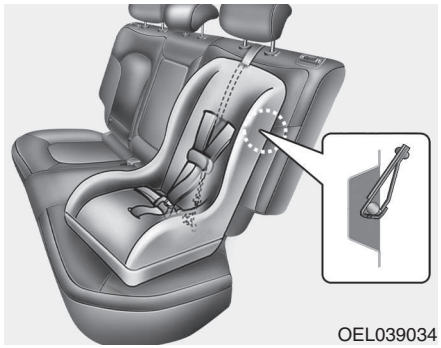

OEL033033R

***Securing a child restraint seat with “Tether Anchor” system (if equipped)***

Child restraint hook holders are located on the back of the rear seats.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 35




OEL039034

1. Route the child restraint seat strap over the seatback.
   For vehicles with adjustable headrest, route the tether strap under the headrest and between the headrest posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the appropriate child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the car and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**

**⚠ WARNING - Tether strap**

**Never mount more than one child restraint to a single tether or to a single lower anchorage point. The increased load caused by multiple seats may cause the tethers or anchorage points to break, causing serious injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING - Child restraint check**

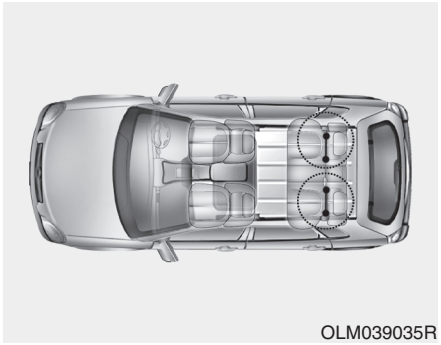
**Check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, twist, tip or separate causing death or serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Child restraint anchorage**

- **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**
- **The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 36



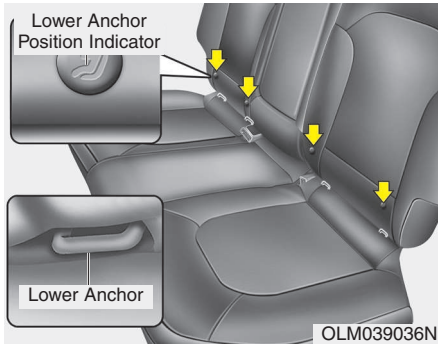


OLM039035R

***Securing a child restraint system with "ISOFIX" system and "Tether Anchorage" system (if equipped)***

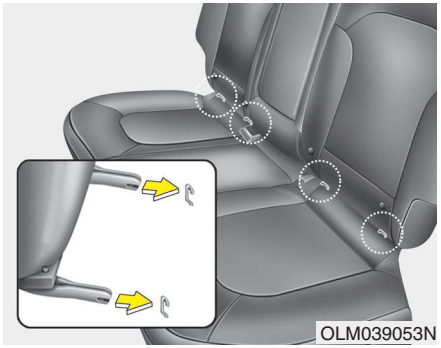
ISOFIX is a standardised method of fitting child seats that eliminates the need to use the standard adult seat belt to secure the seat in the vehicle. This enables a much more secure and positive location with the added benefit of easier and quicker installation.

An ISOFIX-seat may only be installed if it has vehicle-specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R 44 or relevant regulation.




OLM039036N

There are ISOFIX symbols located on the lower portion of each side of the rear seatbacks. These symbols indicate the position of the lower anchors for child restraints so equipped.



OLM039053N

Both rear outboard seats are equipped with a pair of ISOFIX anchorages as well as a corresponding top tether anchorage on the back side of the back rest. The ISOFIX anchorages are located between seat cushion and back rest, marked with the ISOFIX icon.

For installation, CRS ISOFIX connecters have to engage with the vehicles ISOFIX anchorages (listen for a CLICK, check potential visual indicators on the CRS and cross-check by pulling).

CRS with universal approval to ECE-R 44 or relevant regulation need to be fixed additionally with a top tether strap connected to the corresponding top tether anchorage point in the back rest.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 37



The installing and the use of a child-seat has to be done according to the installing-manual, which is added to the ISOFIX-seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Install the child restraint seat fully rearward against the seatback with the seatback reclined two positions from the most upright latched position.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When using the vehicle's "ISOFIX" system to install a child restraint system in the rear seat, all unused vehicle rear seat belt metal latch plates or tabs must be latched securely in their seat belt buckles and the seat belt webbing must be retracted behind the child restraint to prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts. Unlatched metal latch plates or tabs may allow the child to reach the unretracted seat belts which may result in strangulation and a serious injury or death to the child in the child restraint.**
- **Do not place anything around the lower anchors. Also make sure that the seat belt is not caught in the lower anchors.**

**To secure the child restraint seat**

1. To engage the child restraint seat to the ISOFIX anchor, insert the child restraint seat latch into the ISOFIX anchor. Listen for the audible “click” sound.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not allow the rear seat belt webbing to get scratched or pinched by the ISOFIX-seat latch and ISOFIX anchor during installation.***

2. Connect the tether strap hook to the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat. (Refer to the previous page.)

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 38



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not install a child restraint seat at the centre of the rear seat using the vehicle's ISOFIX anchors. The ISOFIX anchors are only provided for the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Do not misuse the ISOFIX anchors by attempting to attach a child restraint seat in the middle of the rear seat to the ISOFIX anchors.**

  **In a crash, the child restraint seat ISOFIX attachments may not be strong enough to secure the child restraint seat properly in the centre of the rear seat and may break, causing serious injury or death.**

**(Continued)**

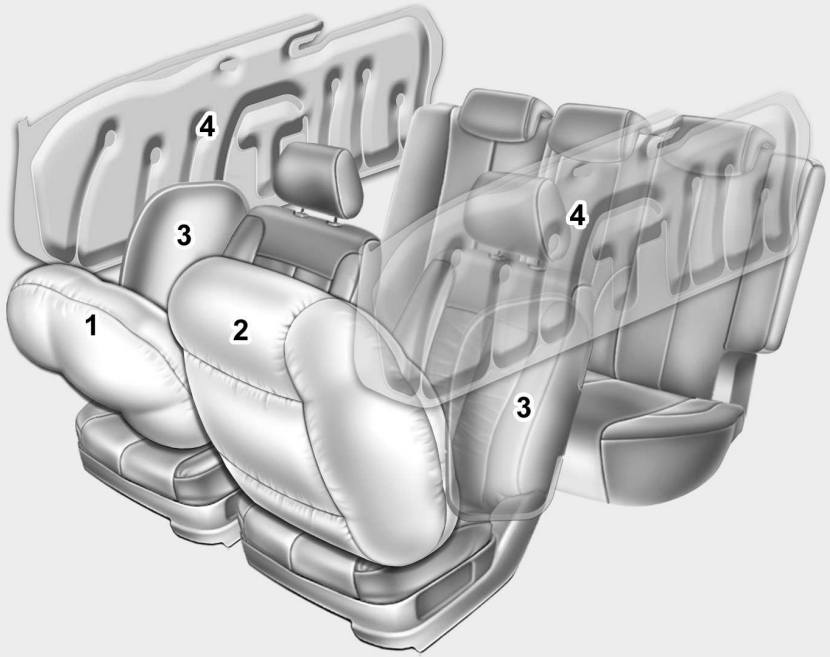
**(Continued)**

- **Do not mount more than one child restraint to a child restraint lower anchorage point. The improper increased load may cause the anchorage points or tether anchor to break, causing serious injury or death.**
- **Attach the ISOFIX or ISOFIX-compatible child restraint seat only to the appropriate locations shown in the illustration.**
- **Always follow the installation and use instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 39



## AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




❇ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL033301R

(1) Driver's front air bag
(2) Passenger's front air bag*
(3) Side air bag*
(4) Curtain air bag*
* : if equipped

**⚠ WARNING**
**Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimise the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 40



### How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of serious frontal or side collision (if equipped with side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.

  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining, factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to get the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least 250 mm (10 inches) away). The front passenger should always move their seat as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.**
- **Air bag inflates instantly in an event of a collision, passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in a proper position.**
- **Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 41



***Noise and smoke***

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are nontoxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc.). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult the doctor if the symptom persists.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel and/or instrument panel and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage areas internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.**




OYDESA2042

***Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat***

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the air bag deploys, it would impact the rear-facing child restraint, causing serious or fatal injury.

In addition, do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 42



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position.**

  **Inflation of side and/or curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.**



W7-147

## Air bag warning and indicator

### *Air bag warning light*

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 43



### SRS components and functions

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module*
2. Front impact sensors*
3. Passenger's front air bag module*
4. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies*
5. Side impact sensors*
6. Curtain air bag modules*
7. Side air bag modules*
8. SRS control module (SRSCM)
9. Air bag warning light
10. Anchor pre-tensioner assembly* (driver side)

*: if equipped

The SRSCM continually monitors all elements whilst the ignition switch is ON to determine if a frontal, near-frontal impact or side impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, after which the air bag warning light should go out.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

- **The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.**
- **The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.**

Driver's front air bag (1)



B240B01L/H

The front air bag modules are located both in the centre of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 44



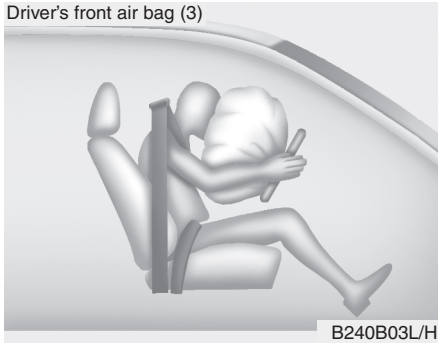
Driver's front air bag (2)



B240B02L/H

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3)

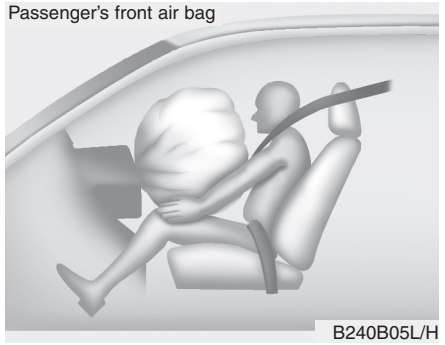


B240B03L/H

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front air bag



B240B05L/H

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, cassette holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**
- **When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface.**
  **It may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 45



**⚠ WARNING**

- **If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with lukewarm water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

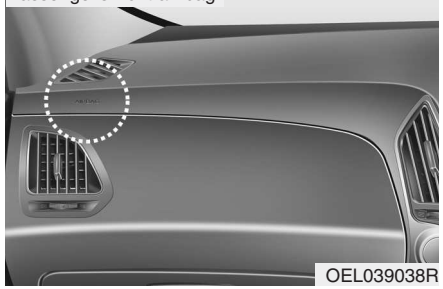
- **The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on whilst driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.**

Driver's front air bag



OEL039037R

Passenger's front air bag



OEL039038R

## Driver's and passenger's front air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 46



The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover on the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the centre of the steering wheel and the passenger's side in the front panel above the glove box.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always use seat belts and child restraints – every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with air bags, improperly and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.**

**To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:**

- **Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat.**
- **ABC – Always Buckle Children in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.**
- **Front and side air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned drivers and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.**
- **Never lean against the door or centre console – always sit in an upright position.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 47



**(Continued)**

- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Air bags can only be used once – we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer immediately after deployment.**
- **The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.**

**(Continued)**

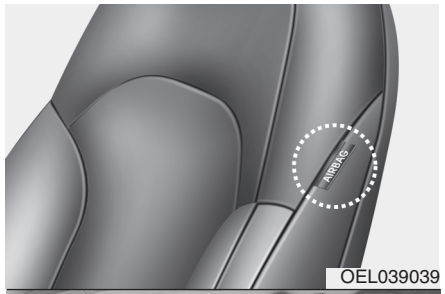
**(Continued)**

- **Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.**
- **A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**
- **Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seat back in an upright position, centreed on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the ignition key is removed.**
- **The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.**




### Side air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

- The side air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.
- The side air bags do not only deploy on the side of the impact but also on the opposite side.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The side air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times whilst the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact conditions severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.**
- **For best protection from the side air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.**
- **Do not use any accessory seat covers.**

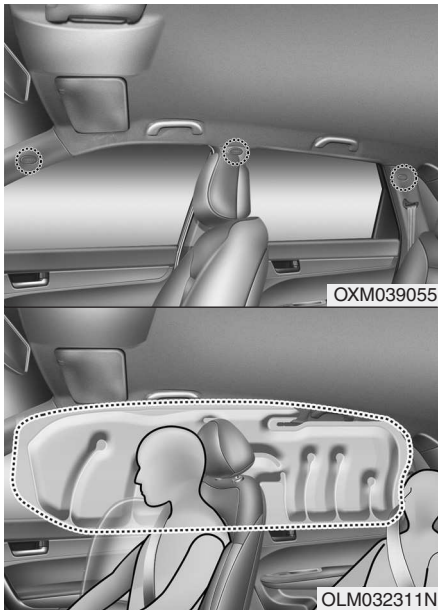
**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 49



**(Continued)**

- **Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bag.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.**
- **Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the supplemental side air bag inflates.**
- **To prevent unexpected deployment of the side air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition key is on.**
- **If seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer. Inform that your vehicle is equipped with side air bags.**




### Curtain air bag (if equipped)

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.
They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

- The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.
- The curtain air bags do not only deploy on the side of the impact but also on the opposite side.
- The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 50



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Before installing child restraints, always refer to "Child Restraint System" to ensure correct installation and occupant protection is maximised.**
- **Make sure that the occupant does not have any body parts (head, arms & legs) protruding outside the restraining system. If an inflating airbag was to strike an infant child on the head, it may cause serious injury.**
- **Ensure the opening for the Curtain Airbag System remains unobstructed at all times, so that the airbags can inflate properly if needed.**
- **The built in coat hooks should only be used for light weight clothing, ensure that pockets are free of any heavy or sharp objects. When using coat hooks, do not hang clothes on coat hangers.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The space between the occupant and the curtain airbag must never be occupied by children, passengers or pets. Occupants should never lean out or have any parts of their body protruding from the window whilst the engine is running.**
- **Do not move the sun visor out to cover the side window if there is an item attached to it such as garage door remote control, pens, air fresheners or the like. These objects may cause injury if the Curtain Airbag is deployed.**
- **Where sun blinds are fitted to the rear doors, these must not obstruct or impair the airbag in any way.**
- **Do not install any accessories or children's toys in the Curtain Airbag deployment zones, as this may impair the operation of the system or throw parts of them into the vehicle cabin causing injury to occupants if the system is deployed.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **To maintain the integrity of the Curtain Airbag system, any work, removal or installation of the airbag and associated components (such as roof lining and side trims) should always be performed by a qualified vehicle repairer.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:05 PM Page 51



**⚠ WARNING**

- **In order for side and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, both front seat occupants and both outboard rear occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened. Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system.**

  **Make sure to put the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.**
- **Never try to open or repair any components of the side curtain air bag system. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

**Failure to follow the above mentioned instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.**

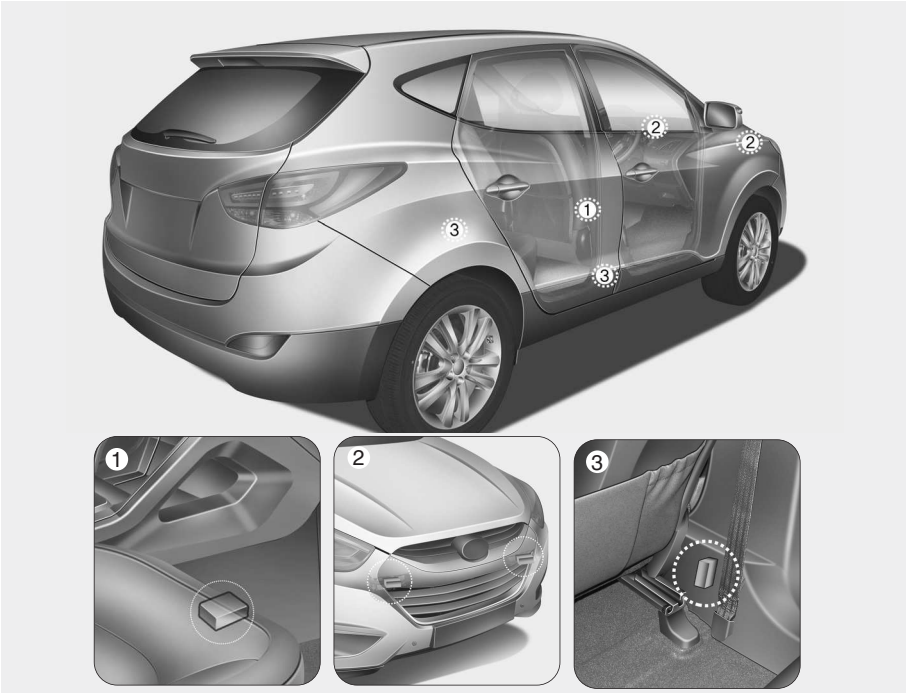
EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:06 PM Page 52



### Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)

**There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.**

**These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.**




OLM039040R/OLM039041/H/OEL033061/H/OEL039044

***Air bag collision sensors***

(1) SRS control module
(2) Front impact sensor
(3) Side impact sensor (if equipped)

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:06 PM Page 53



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed.**

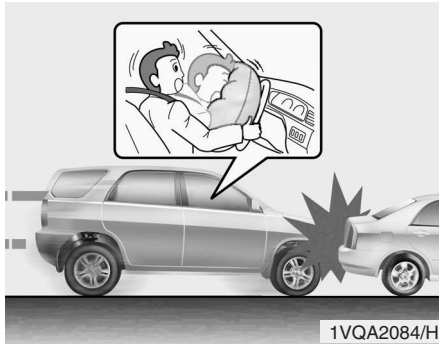
  **This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.**
- **If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.**

  **Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, body or B pillar and C pillars where side collision sensors are installed. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Installing bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicles collision and air bag deployment performance.**




***Air bag inflation conditions***

**Front air bags**

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.





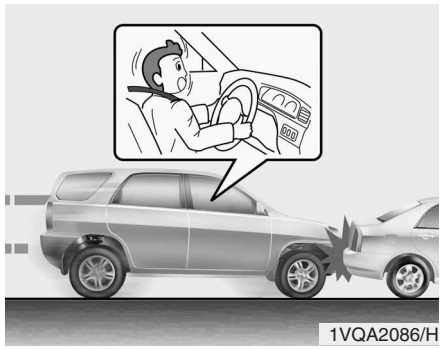


**Side and curtain air bags (if equipped)**

Side and/or curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side air bags (side and/or curtain air bags) are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads or sidewalks, air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

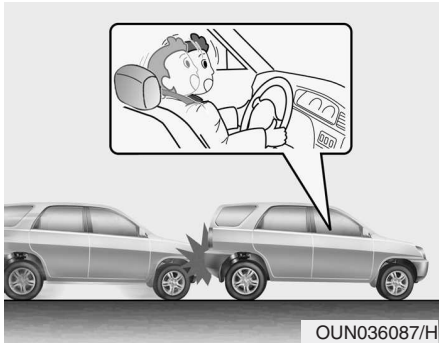



***Air bag non-inflation conditions***

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:06 PM Page 55



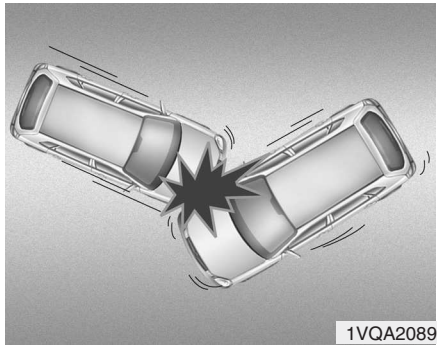

OUN036087/H

- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.



OVQ036018N

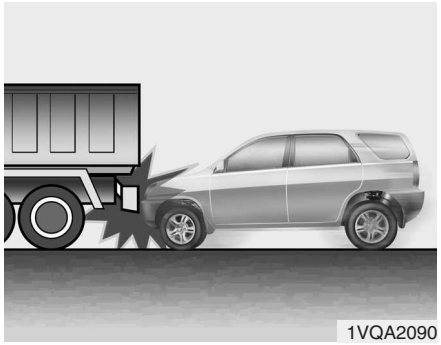
- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.
- However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.


1VQA2089

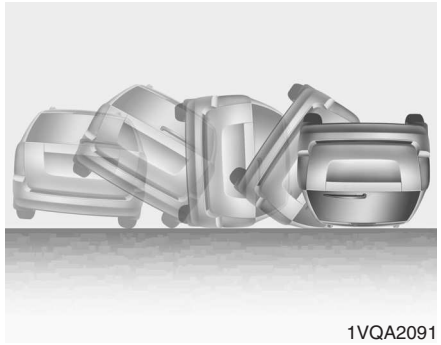
- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:06 PM Page 56



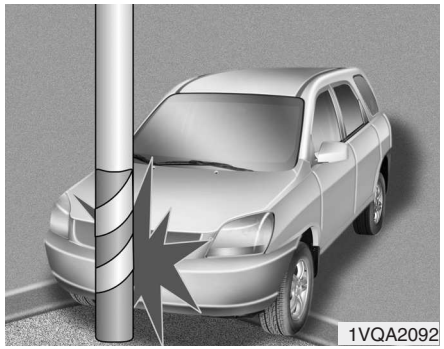

1VQA2090

- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly replaced by such “under-ride” collisions.


1VQA2091

- Air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because air bag deployment could not provide protection to the occupants.

  However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side air bags and curtain air bags.


1VQA2092

- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:06 PM Page 57



### SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.**
- **If the air bags inflate, we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. We recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer for these precautions and necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.**
- **If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:06 PM Page 58



### Additional safety precautions

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.
- **Passengers should not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- **Each seat belt is designed to restrain one occupant.** If more than one person uses the same seat belt, they could be seriously injured or killed in a collision.
- **Do not use any accessories on seat belts.** Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Passengers should not place hard or sharp objects between themselves and the air bags.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap or in your mouth can result in injuries if an air bag inflates.
- **Keep occupants away from the air bag covers.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor. If occupants are too close to the air bag covers, they could be injured if the air bags inflate.
- **Do not attach or place objects on or near the air bag covers.** Any object attached to or placed on the front or side air bag covers could interfere with the proper operation of the air bags.
- **Do not modify the front seats.** Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.
- **Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.
- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** The infant or child could be seriously injured or killed in the event of a crash. All infants and children should be properly restrained in appropriate child safety seats or seat belts in the rear seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.**

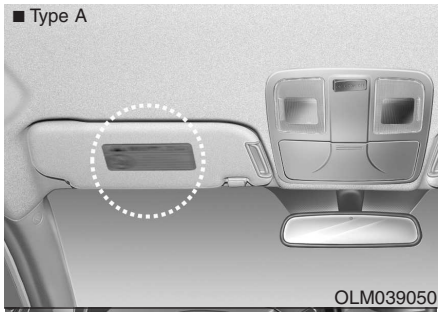
### Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

EL(FL) Aust 3.QXP 7/26/2013 2:06 PM Page 59

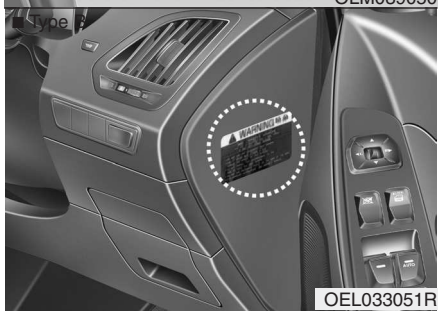


■ Type A



OLM039050

■ Type B



OEL033051R

**Air bag warning label (if equipped)**

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert driver and passengers of potential risk of air bag system.

Note that these government warnings focus on the risk to children, we also wants you to be aware of the risks which adults are exposed to. Those have been described in previous pages.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 1

# Features of your vehicle


**Keys** . . . . . 4-4
- Record your key number . . . . . 4-4
- Key operations . . . . . 4-4
- Immobiliser system . . . . . 4-5

**Remote keyless entry** . . . . . 4-7
- Remote keyless entry system operations . . . . . 4-7
- Transmitter precautions . . . . . 4-8
- Battery replacement . . . . . 4-9

**Smart key** . . . . . 4-10
- Smart key functions . . . . . 4-10
- Smart key precautions . . . . . 4-11
- Door lock/unlock in an emergency situation . . . . . 4-12

**Theft-alarm system** . . . . . 4-13
- Armed stage . . . . . 4-13
- Theft-alarm stage . . . . . 4-14
- Disarmed stage . . . . . 4-14

**Door locks** . . . . . 4-15
- Operating door locks from outside the vehicle . . . . 4-15
- Operating door locks from inside the vehicle . . . . . 4-16
- Speed sensing door lock system . . . . . 4-17
- Child-protector rear door lock . . . . . 4-18

**Tailgate** . . . . . 4-19
- Opening the tailgate . . . . . 4-19
- Closing the tailgate . . . . . 4-19

**Windows** . . . . . 4-21
- Power windows . . . . . 4-22

**Bonnet** . . . . . 4-25
- Opening the bonnet . . . . . 4-25
- Closing the bonnet . . . . . 4-26

**Fuel filler lid** . . . . . 4-27
- Opening the fuel filler lid . . . . . 4-27
- Closing the fuel filler lid . . . . . 4-27

**Panorama sunroof** . . . . . 4-30
- Sunroof open warning . . . . . 4-30
- Sliding the sunroof . . . . . 4-31
- Tilting the sunroof . . . . . 4-32
- Resetting the sunroof . . . . . 4-33

**Steering wheel** . . . . . 4-34
- Electric power steering . . . . . 4-34
- Heated steering wheel . . . . . 4-35
- Horn . . . . . 4-36
- Flex steering wheel . . . . . 4-37

**Mirrors** . . . . . 4-39
- Inside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-39
- Outside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-43

**Instrument cluster** . . . . . 4-46
- Instrument panel illumination . . . . . 4-47
- LCD Display Control . . . . . 4-47
- Gauges . . . . . 4-48

• Transaxle Shift Indicator . . . . . 4-52
LCD display . . . . . 4-53
• LCD Modes . . . . . 4-53
• Information Mode . . . . . 4-54
• User Settings Mode . . . . . 4-55
• Warning Messages . . . . . 4-57
Trip computer . . . . . 4-63
• Overview . . . . . 4-63
• Trip Modes . . . . . 4-63
• Trip A/B . . . . . 4-64
• Fuel Economy . . . . . 4-65
• Warnings and indicators . . . . . 4-67
• Indicator Lights . . . . . 4-75
Rear parking assist system . . . . . 4-79
• Operation of the rear parking assist system . . . . . 4-79
Parking assist system . . . . . 4-82
• Operation of the parking assist system . . . . . 4-82
Rearview camera . . . . . 4-87
Hazard warning flasher . . . . . 4-87
Lighting . . . . . 4-88
• Battery saver function . . . . . 4-88
• Headlight escort function . . . . . 4-88
• Headlight welcome function . . . . . 4-88
• Lighting control . . . . . 4-89
• High - beam operation . . . . . 4-90
• Turn signals and lane change signals . . . . . 4-91
• Front fog light . . . . . 4-92
• Rear fog light . . . . . 4-92
• Daytime running light . . . . . 4-93
• Headlight levelling device . . . . . 4-93
Wipers and washers . . . . . 4-95
• Windscreen wipers . . . . . 4-95
• Windscreen washers . . . . . 4-97
• Rear window wiper and washer switch . . . . . 4-98
Interior light . . . . . 4-99
• Map lamp . . . . . 4-99
• Room lamp . . . . . 4-100
• Vanity mirror lamp . . . . . 4-100
• Luggage room lamp . . . . . 4-100
• Glove box lamp . . . . . 4-101
Defroster . . . . . 4-102
• Rear window defroster . . . . . 4-102
Manual climate control system . . . . . 4-104
• Heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-105
• System operation . . . . . 4-109
• Climate control air filter . . . . . 4-111
• Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant . . . . . 4-112

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 3

**Automatic climate control system . . . . . 4-113**
- **Automatic heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-114**
- **Manual heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-115**

**Windscreen defrosting and defogging . . . . . 4-120**
- **Manual climate control system . . . . . 4-120**
- **Automatic climate control system . . . . . 4-121**

**Storage compartment. . . . . 4-123**
- **Centre console storage . . . . . 4-123**
- **Glove box . . . . . 4-123**
- **Cool box . . . . . 4-124**
- **Sunglass holder . . . . . 4-124**

**Interior features . . . . . 4-126**
- **Cigarette lighter . . . . . 4-126**
- **Ashtray . . . . . 4-126**
- **Cup holder . . . . . 4-127**
- **Sunvisor . . . . . 4-127**
- **Power outlet . . . . . 4-128**
- **Digital clock . . . . . 4-129**
- **Aux, USB and iPod® . . . . . 4-129**
- **Floor mat anchor(s) . . . . . 4-130**
- **Luggage net (holder) . . . . . 4-130**
- **Cargo security screen . . . . . 4-131**

**Exterior features. . . . . 4-133**
- **Roof rack . . . . . 4-133**

**Audio system. . . . . 4-134**
- **Antenna . . . . . 4-134**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 4



# KEYS

## Record your key number



The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set.

Should you lose your keys, we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the code number and keep it in a safe and handy place, but not in the vehicle.

## Key operations

- Used to start the engine.
- Used to lock and unlock the doors.
- Used to lock and unlock the glove box. (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised HYUNDAI dealer. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.**

**⚠ WARNING - Ignition key (Smart key)**

**Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key (Smart key) is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition or engine start/stop button is in the ACC or ON position.**

**Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition or press the engine start/stop button.**

**The ignition key (Smart key) would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death.**

**Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 5



### Immobiliser system

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobiliser system to reduce the risk of unauthorised vehicle use.

Your immobiliser system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobiliser system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

***To deactivate the immobiliser system:***

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

***To activate the immobiliser system:***

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

**⚠ WARNING**

**In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobiliser keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separately not to have any malfunction after you receive your new vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch.***

***The engine may not start for the metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal from normally transmitting.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**If you need additional keys or lose your keys, we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 6



**⚠ CAUTION**

***The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobiliser system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobiliser system malfunction could occur.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not change, alter or adjust the immobiliser system because it could cause the immobiliser system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

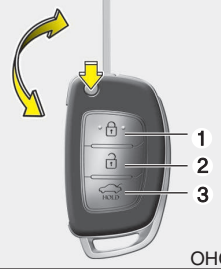
***Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobiliser system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 7



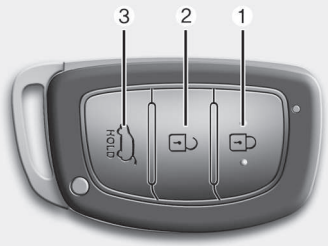
## REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A (if equipped)




OHG040001L/Q

■ Type B (if equipped)




OLMB043003

### Remote keyless entry system operations

■ ***Type A***

To unfold the key, press the release button then the key will unfold automatically.

To fold the key, fold the key manually whilst pressing the release button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.***

■ ***Type B***

To remove the mechanical key, press and hold the release button and remove the mechanical key.

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

***Lock (1)***

All doors (and tailgate) are locked if the lock button is pressed. If all doors are closed, the hazard warning lights blink once to indicate that all doors are locked. However, if any door remains open, the hazard warning lights will not blink. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.

***Unlock (2)***

All doors are unlocked if the unlock button is pressed.
The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.
After depressing this button, the doors will be locked automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

***Tailgate unlock (3) (if equipped)***

The tailgate is unlocked if the button is pressed for more than 1 second.
The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the tailgate is unlocked.
However, after pressing this button, the tailgate will lock automatically unless you open the tailgate within 30 seconds.
Also, once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

**✻ NOTICE**

**The word "HOLD" is written on the button to inform you that you must press and hold the button.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 8



### Transmitter precautions

#### ✻ NOTICE

**The transmitter will not work if any of following occur:**

- **The ignition key is in ignition switch.**
- **You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).**
- **The battery in the transmitter is weak.**
- **Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.**
- **The weather is extremely cold.**
- **The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**

**When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/ receiving emails. Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer vehicle warranty.***

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 9

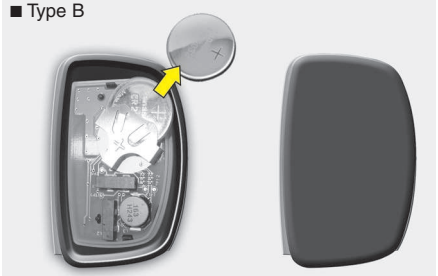


■ Type A



OLM042302

■ Type B



OLM043439

### Battery replacement

Transmitter uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years. When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter centre cover.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For transmitter replacement, we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The keyless entry system transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use your transmitter or replace the battery, we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***
- ***Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.***
- ***To avoid damaging the transmitter, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.***

***Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 10



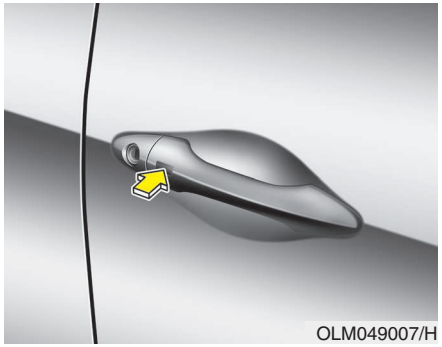
## SMART KEY (IF EQUIPPED)




OLMB043005

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door (and tailgate) and even start the engine without inserting the key.

The functions of the buttons on a smart key are similar to the remote keyless entry. (Refer to the “Remote keyless entry” in this section.)



OLM049007/H

### Smart key functions

Carrying the smart key, you may lock and unlock the vehicle doors (and tailgate). Also, you may start the engine. Refer to the following, for more details.

***Locking***

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and tailgate) closed and any door unlocked, locks all the doors (and tailgate). The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are locked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside door handle. If you want to make sure that a door has locked or not, you should check the door lock button inside the vehicle or pull the outside door handle.

Even though you press the button, the doors will not lock and the chime sounds 3 seconds if any of the following occurs:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The engine start/stop button is in the ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the tailgate is opened.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 11



***Unlocking***

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and tailgate) closed and locked, unlocks all the doors (and tailgate). The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are unlocked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside door handle.

When the smart key is recognized in the area of 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the front outside door handle, other people can also open a door without possession of the smart key.

***Tailgate unlocking***

If you are within 0.7 ~ 1 m (28 ~ 40 in.) from the outside tailgate handle, with your smart key in possession, the tailgate will unlock and open when you press the tailgate handle switch.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the tailgate is unlocked.

Also, once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

***Start-up***

You can start the engine without inserting the key. For detailed information refer to “Starting the engine with a smart key” in section 5.

### Smart key precautions

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If, for some reason, you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. Tow the vehicle, if necessary. We recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you lose a smart key, you should immediately take the vehicle and key and we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **The smart key will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two-way radio system or a mobile phone.**
  - **Another vehicle’s smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**

  **When the smart key does not work properly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 12



**(Continued)**

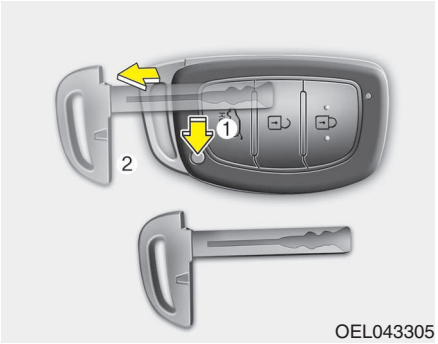
- **If the smart key is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the smart key could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/ receiving emails. Avoid placing the smart key and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Keep the smart key away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**People with medical devices such as implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should not carry the smart key near the heart. The smart key system may affect the operation of such implanted medical devices. Failure to do so may result in interference with the medical device, which could result in serious injury.**



OEL043305

### Door lock/unlock in an emergency situation

If the smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the doors by using the mechanical key.

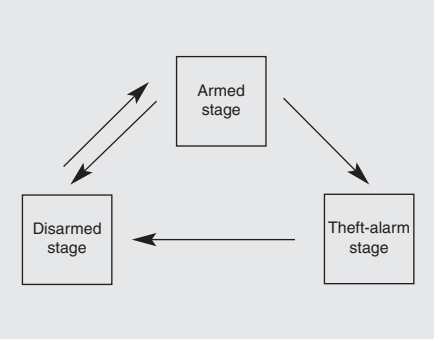
1. Depress and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2).
2. Insert the key into hole of the outside door handle. Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock.

   To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 13



## THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorised entry into the vehicle. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Theft-alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

### Armed stage

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or turn off the engine.
2. Make sure that all doors (and tailgate) and the engine bonnet are closed and latched.
3. • Lock the doors by depressing the door lock button on the transmitter (or smart key).

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If any door, tailgate remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.

   • Lock the doors by pressing the button of the front outside door handles with the smart key in your possession.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If any door (and tailgate) remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.

   If engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. Close the engine bonnet. The hazard warning lights blink once and theft-alarm arms.

- **Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the system is armed whilst a passenger(s) remains in the vehicle, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leave the vehicle. If any door, tailgate or engine bonnet is opened within 30 seconds after entering the armed stage, the system is disarmed to prevent unnecessary alarm.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 14



### Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed.

- A front or rear door is opened without using transmitter (or smart key).
- The tailgate is opened without using transmitter (or smart key).
- The engine bonnet is opened.

The siren will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for 27 seconds, unless the system is disarmed. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the transmitter. (or smart key)

### Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when:

***Transmitter***

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The engine is started.
- The ignition switch is in the “ON” position for 30 seconds or more.

***Smart key***

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The button of the front outside door is pressed whilst carrying the smart key.
- The engine is started.

After the doors are unlocked, the hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.
After pressing the unlock button, if any door (or tailgate) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

### ✻ NOTICE - Immobiliser system

- **If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.**
- **If you lose your keys, we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

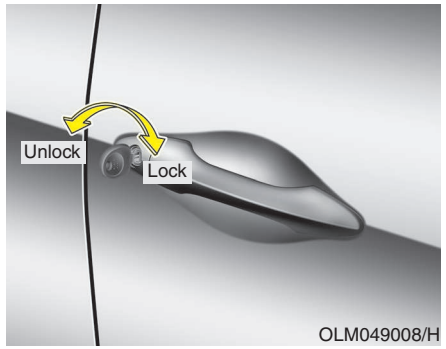
***Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

***Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 15



## DOOR LOCKS




### Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

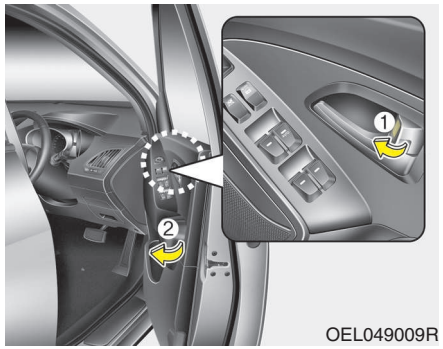
- Turn the key toward rear of vehicle to unlock and toward front of vehicle to lock.
- If you lock/unlock the door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock/unlock automatically. (if equipped)
- Doors can also be locked and unlocked with the transmitter key (or smart key).
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

### ✻ NOTICE

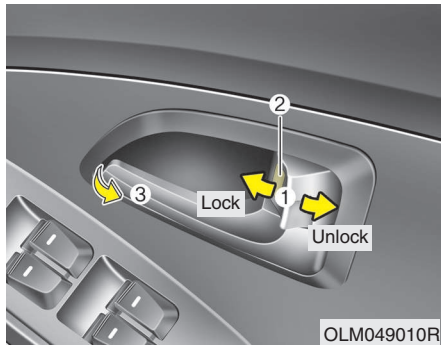
- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **If you don't close the door securely, the door may open again.**
- **Be careful that someone's body and hands are not trapped when closing the door.**



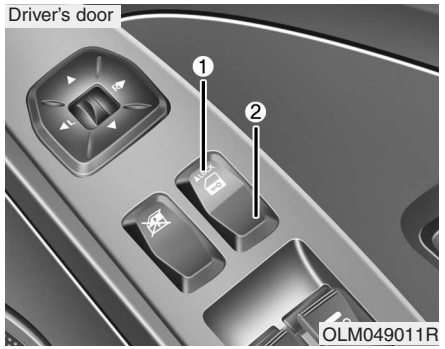

- To lock a door without the key, push the inside door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position and close the door (2).
- If you lock the door with the central door lock switch, all vehicle doors will lock automatically.
- Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.




## Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

***With the door lock button***

- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Unlock” position. The red mark (2) on the button will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark (2) on the door lock button will not be visible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (3) outward.
- If the inner door handle of all doors are pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button will unlock and the door will open. (if equipped)
- Front doors cannot be locked if the ignition key is in the ignition switch and any front door is opened.
- Doors cannot be locked if the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is opened.




***With central door lock switch***

Operate by depressing the central door lock switch.

- When pushing down on the front portion (1) of the switch, all vehicle doors will lock.
- When pushing down on the rear portion (2) of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.
- However, if any door (and tailgate) is open, the doors will not lock even though the front portion (1) of central door lock switch is pressed.
- However, if the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is open, the doors will not lock even though the front portion (1) of central door lock switch is pressed.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 17



**⚠ WARNING - Doors**

- **The doors should always be fully closed and locked whilst the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows.**
- **Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unlocked vehicles**

**Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle whilst you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unattended children**

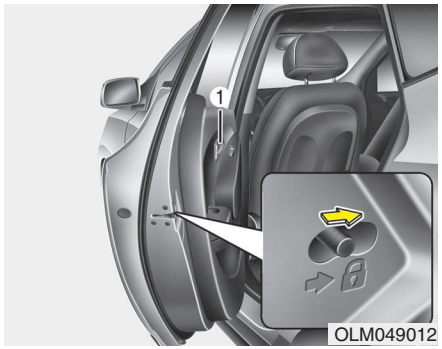
**An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.**

### Speed sensing door lock system (if equipped)

All doors will be automatically locked after the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h. And all doors will be automatically unlocked when you turn the engine off or when you remove the ignition key. (if equipped)

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:31 PM Page 18






### Child-protector rear door lock

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

1. Open the rear door.
2. Push the child safety lock located on the rear edge of the door to the “Lock” position. When the child safety lock is in the “Lock ( )” position, rear door will not open even though the inner door handle is pulled inside the vehicle.
3. Close the rear door.

To open the rear door, pull the outside door handle.

Even though the doors may be unlocked, the rear door will not open by pulling the inner door handle (1) until rear door child safety lock is unlocked.

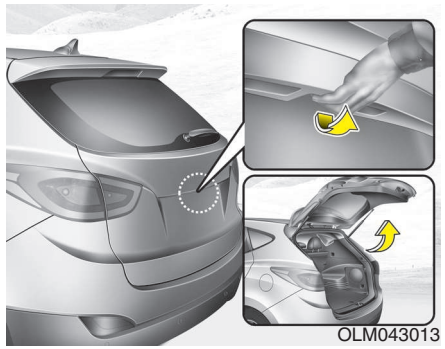
**⚠ WARNING - Rear door locks**

**If children accidentally open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out and be severely injured or killed. To prevent children from opening the rear doors from the inside, the rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 19



## TAILGATE


OLM043013

### Opening the tailgate

- The tailgate is locked or unlocked when all doors are locked or unlocked with the key, transmitter (or smart key) or central door lock switch.
- If unlocked, the tailgate can be opened by pressing the handle and pulling it up.
- When all doors are lock if the tailgate unlock button on the smart key is pressed for more than 1 second, the tailgate is unlocked. Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate is locked automatically.

### ✻ NOTICE

**In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the tailgate lift cylinders and attaching hardware if the tailgate is not closed prior to driving.***


OLM043014

### Closing the tailgate

To close the tailgate, lower and push down the tailgate firmly. Make sure that the tailgate is securely latched.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the tailgate.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Make sure nothing is near the tailgate latch and striker whilst closing the tailgate. It may damage the tailgate's latch.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 20



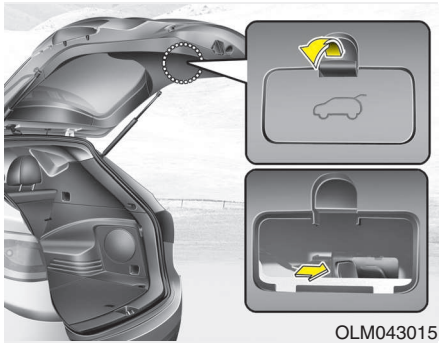
**⚠ WARNING - Exhaust fumes**

**If you drive with the tailgate open, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.**

**If you must drive with the tailgate open, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING - Rear cargo area**

**Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.**


OLM043015

### Emergency tailgate safety release

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the luggage compartment, the tailgate can be opened by pushing the release lever and pushing open the tailgate.

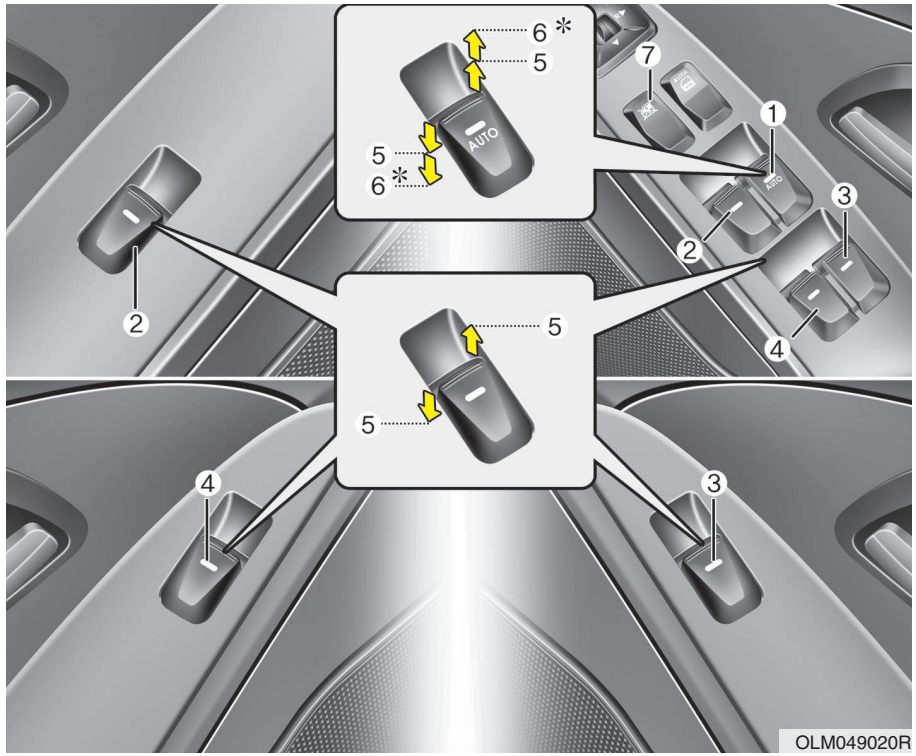
**⚠ WARNING**

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 21



## WINDOWS




(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (right) power window switch
(4) Rear door (left) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window up*/down*
(7) Power window lock switch

*: if equipped

### ✻ NOTICE

**In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 22

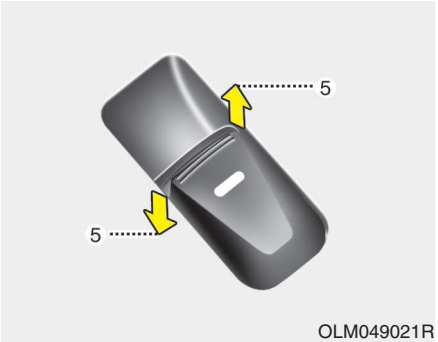


## Power windows

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate. Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver has a power window lock switch which can block the operation of rear (or front) passenger windows.
The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 seconds period. The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle

### ✻ NOTICE

**Whilst driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open position), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.**



OLM049021R

***Window opening and closing***

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).



OLM049022R

***Auto down window (if equipped) (Driver's window)***

Pressing the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers the driver's window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up the switch momentarily to the opposite direction of the window movement.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 23





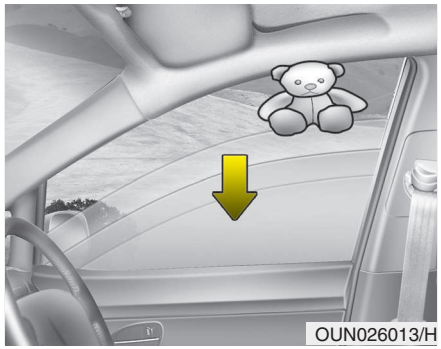
OLM049023R

***Auto up/down window (if equipped) (Driver's window)***

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Close the driver's window and continue pulling up the driver's power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.


OUN026013/H

**Automatic reversal (if equipped)**

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 30 cm (11.8 in.) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in.). And if the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

## ✻ NOTICE

**The automatic reverse feature for the driver's window is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.**

## ⚠ WARNING

**Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 24






***Power window lock button***

The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers' doors by pressing the power window lock switch to the lock position (pressed).

When the power window lock switch is pressed :

- The driver's master control can operate the front passenger's power window but cannot operate the rear passengers' power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passengers' control cannot operate the rear passengers' power window.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.***
- ***Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposing directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.***

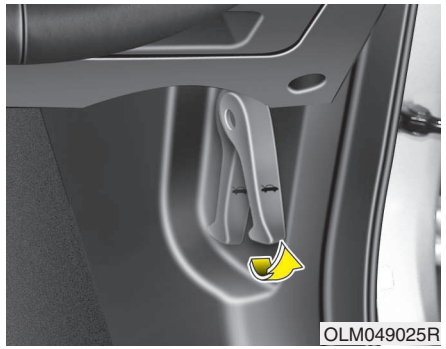
**⚠ WARNING - Windows**

- **NEVER leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.**
- **NEVER leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.**
- **Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.**
- **Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock switch in the LOCK position (depressed). Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.**
- **Do not extend face or arms outside the window whilst driving.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 25



## BONNET

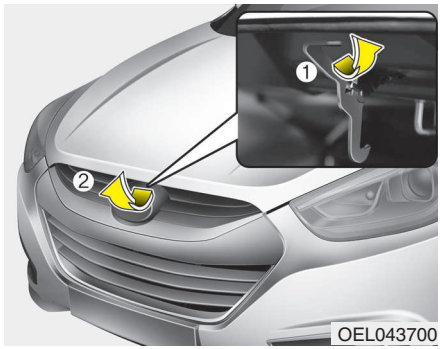

OLM049025R

### Opening the bonnet

1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet should pop open slightly.

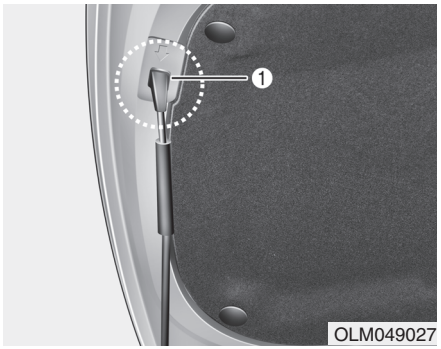
**⚠ WARNING**

**Open the bonnet after turning off the engine on a flat surface, shifting the shift lever to the P(Park) position for automatic transaxle and to the 1st(First) gear or R(Reverse) for manual transaxle, and setting the parking brake.**



OEL043700

2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, pull the secondary latch (1) inside of the bonnet centre and lift the bonnet (2).



OLM049027

3. Pull out the support rod.
4. Hold the bonnet opened with the support rod.

**⚠ WARNING - Hot parts**

**Grasp the support rod in the area wrapped in rubber. The plastic will help prevent you from being burned by hot metal when the engine is hot.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 26



### Closing the bonnet

1. Before closing the bonnet, check the following:
   - All filler caps in engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Return the support rod to its clip to prevent it from rattling.
3. Lower the bonnet until it is about 30 cm (1 ft.) above the closed position and let it drop. Make sure that it locks into place.

**⚠ WARNING - Bonnet**

- **Before closing the bonnet, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the bonnet opening. Closing the bonnet with an obstruction present in the bonnet opening may result in property damage or severe personal injury.**
- **Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.**

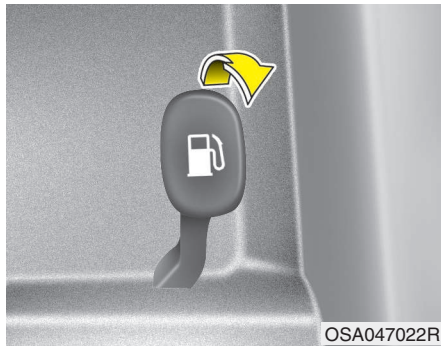
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the bonnet could fly open whilst the vehicle is being driven, causing a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **The support rod must be inserted completely into the hole whenever you inspect the engine compartment. This will prevent the bonnet from falling and possibly injuring you.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet raised. The view will be blocked and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 27



## FUEL FILLER LID

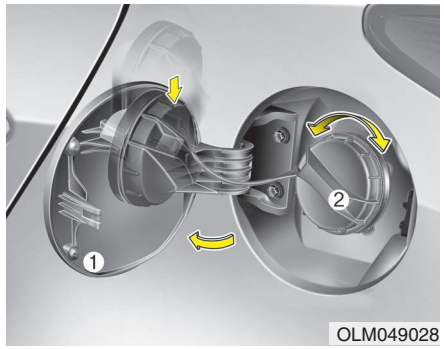

OSA047022R

### Opening the fuel filler lid

The fuel-filler lid must be opened from inside the vehicle by pulling up the fuel-filler lid opener.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the fuel-filler lid does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.**



OLM049028

1. Stop the engine.
2. To open the fuel filler lid, pull the fuel filler lid opener up.
3. Pull the fuel filler lid (1) out to fully open.
4. To remove the cap (2), turn the fuel tank cap counterclockwise.
5. Refuel as needed.

### Closing the fuel filler lid

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks”. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. Close the fuel filler lid and push it lightly and make sure that it is securely closed.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 28



**⚠ WARNING - Refuelling**

- **If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.**
- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

**⚠ WARNING - Refuelling dangers**

**Automotive fuels are flammable materials. When refuelling, please note the following guidelines carefully. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death by fire or explosion.**

- **Read and follow all warning posted at the gas station facility.**
- **Before refuelling note the location of the Emergency Petrol Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station facility.**
- **Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refuelling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapours resulting in rapid burning. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other petrol source.**
- **When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refuelling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 29



**(Continued)**

**Use only portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store petrol.**

- **Do not use mobile phones whilst refuelling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from mobile phones can potentially ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.**
- **When refuelling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.**
- **DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle whilst at a gas station especially during refuelling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If a fire breaks out during refuelling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in section 1.***
- ***If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised HYUNDAI dealer. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.***
- ***Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.***
- ***After refuelling, make sure the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:32 PM Page 30



## PANORAMA SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)



OLM049030

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

The sunroof can only be opened, closed, or tilted when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### Sunroof open warning (if equipped)

■ Type A



■ Type B



WEL-400/OLM043420

If the driver removes the ignition key(Smart key : turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for approximately 7 seconds and

- Type A : Sunroof Open Warning Light illuminate or blink for approximately 7 seconds.
- Type B : Sunroof open image will appear on the LCD display.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **After a vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.***
- ***Make sure the sunroof is closed fully when leaving your vehicle attended. If the sunroof is open, rain or snow may leak through the sunroof and wet the interior as well as cause theft.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 31



### ✻ NOTICE

**The sunroof cannot tilt when it is in the slide position but can be slid whilst in a tilt position.**

### ⚠ WARNING

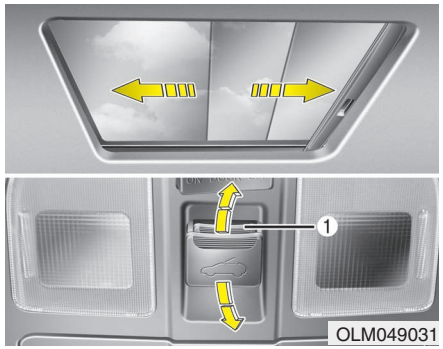
- **Never adjust the sunroof or roller blind whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **If you would like to carry items on the roof rack using a cross bar, do not operate the sunroof.**
- **When carrying cargo on the roof rack, do not load heavy items above the sunroof or glass roof.**
- **Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.**

### Sliding the sunroof

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind.

To open the sunroof, pull the sunroof control lever backward.

To close the sunroof, push or pull the sunroof control lever with the safety switch (1) forward or downward.




**To open the sunroof automatically:**

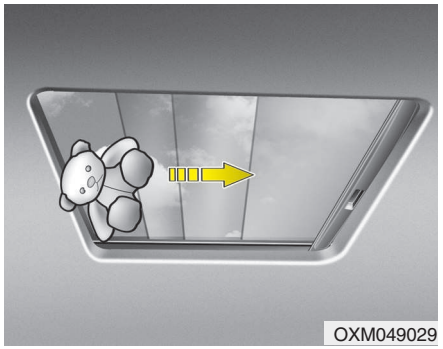
Pull the sunroof control lever backward to the second detent position and then release it. The sunroof will slide all the way open.

To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

**To close the sunroof automatically:**

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the second detent position and then release it. The sunroof will automatically close all the way.

To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.



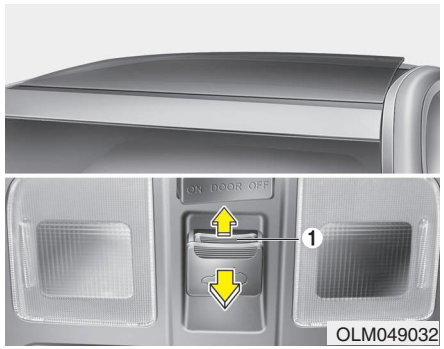

***Automatic reversal***

If an object or part of the body is detected whilst the sunroof is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never try pinching any part of your body intentionally to activate the Automatic reversal function.**
- **The Automatic reversal function may not work if something gets caught just before the sunroof fully closes.**




## Tilting the sunroof

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind.

To open the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever upward.

To close the sunroof, pull the sunroof lever with the safety switch (1) downward until the sunroof moves to the desired position.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 33



**⚠ WARNING - Sunroof**

- **Be careful that no head, hands and body parts are obstructed by a closing sunroof.**
- **Do not extend the face, neck, arms or body outside the sunroof whilst driving.**
- **Make sure your hands and head are safely out of the way before closing a sunroof.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.***
- ***If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.***
- ***Do not leave the roller blind closed whilst the sunroof is opened.***




### Roller blind

The roller blinds are installed inside of the sunroof and glass roof.

Open or close it manually when you need to.

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind.

**✻ NOTICE**

**It is normal for wrinkles to form on the blind because of its material characteristic.**

### Resetting the sunroof

Whenever the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, you must reset your sunroof system as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Open the roller blind.
3. Close the sunroof.
4. Release the sunroof control lever.
5. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close (about 10 seconds) until the sunroof is moved a little. Then, release the lever.
6. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close until the sunroof operates as follows;

   TILT OPEN → SLIDE OPEN → SLIDE CLOSE

   Then, release the lever.

When this is complete, the sunroof system has been reset.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 34



## STEERING WHEEL

### Electric power steering

Power steering uses the motor to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

The motor driven power steering is controlled by the power steering control unit which senses the steering wheel torque and vehicle speed to command the motor.

The steering wheel becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for better control of the steering wheel.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steering during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:**

- **The EPS warning light does not illuminate.**
- **The steering effort is high immediately after turning the ignition switch on. This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics is completed, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the ignition switch is turned to the ON or LOCK position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **The steering effort increases if the steering wheel is rotated continuously when the vehicle is not in motion. However, after a few minutes, it will return to its normal conditions.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the Electric Power Steering System does not operate normally, the warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel may become difficult to control or operate abnormally. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, abnormal noise could occur. If temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 35



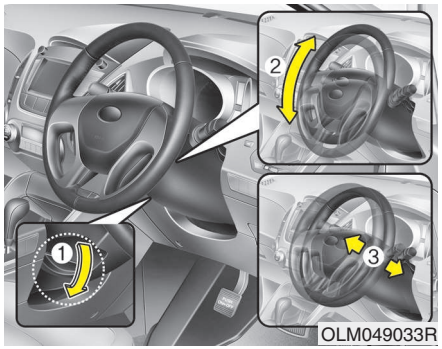
### Tilt steering

A tilt steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle (if equipped).

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, whilst permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

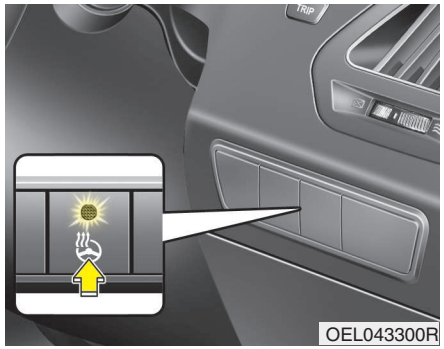
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never adjust the angle and height of steering wheel whilst driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.**
- **After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.**



OLM049033R

To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock release lever (1), adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3, if equipped), then pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.



OEL043300R

### Heated steering wheel (if equipped)

When the ignition switch is in the ON position, pressing the heated steering wheel button warms the steering wheel. The indicator on the button will illuminate.

To turn the steering wheel off, press the button once again. The indicator on the button will turn off.

It will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.

If you turn on the ignition again after turn off your engine in half an hour (after operating heater button), the heating system will be maintained in its 'on' condition.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 36



### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not install any grip to operate the steering wheel. This causes damage to the heated steering wheel system.***
- ***When cleaning the heated steering wheel, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the steering wheel.***
- ***If the surface of steering wheel is damaged by sharp object, damage to the heated steering wheel components could occur.***



OLM049034

## Horn

To sound the horn, press the horn symbol on your steering wheel.

Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

### ✻ NOTICE

**To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.**

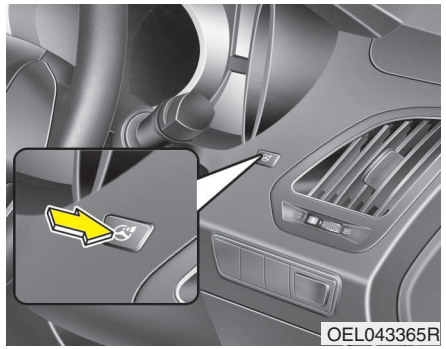
### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist.***

***Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 37




OEL043365R

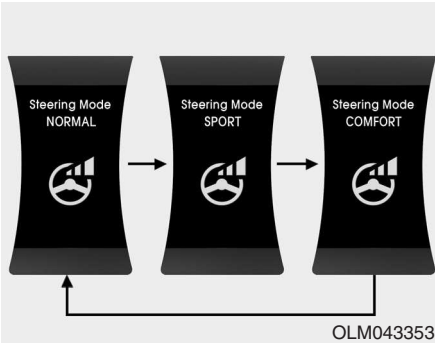
## Flex steering wheel (if equipped)

The flex steering wheel controls steering effort as driver's preference or road condition.

You can select the desired steering mode by pressing the steering mode button.

When the steering mode button is pressed, the selected steering mode will appear on the LCD display.

If the steering mode button is pressed within 4 seconds, the steering mode will change as above pictures.



OLM043353

If the steering wheel mode button is not pressed for about 4 seconds, the LCD display will change to the previous screen.



OLM043354

***Normal mode***

The normal mode offers medium steering effort.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 38






OLM043355

***Comfort mode***

The steering wheel becomes lighter. The comfort mode is usually used when driving in downtown or parking the vehicle.

Also, the comfort mode helps weak people to drive easily.




OLM043356

***Sport mode***

The steering wheel becomes heavier. The sport mode is usually used when driving in highway.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***For your safety, if you press the steering mode button whilst operating the steering wheel, the LCD display will change, but the steering effort will not change immediately. After operating the steering wheel, the steering effort will change automatically to the selected mode.***
- ***Be careful when changing the steering mode whilst driving.***
- ***When the electronic power steering is not working properly, the flex steering wheel will not work.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 39



# MIRRORS

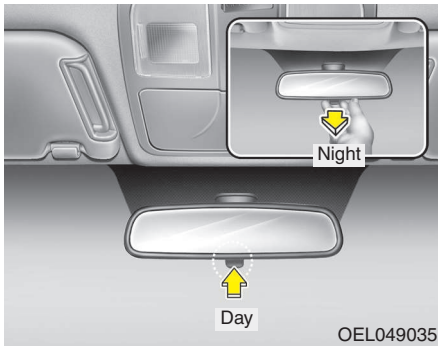
## Inside rearview mirror

Adjust the rearview mirror to centre on the view through the rear window. Make this adjustment before you start driving.

**⚠ WARNING - Rear visibility**
**Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision out the rear window.**

**⚠ WARNING**
**Do not adjust the rearview mirror whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.**

**⚠ WARNING**
**Do not modify the inside mirror and do not install a wide mirror. It could result in injury, during an accident or deployment of the air bag.**




***Day/night rearview mirror***

Make this adjustment before you start driving and whilst the day/night lever is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever toward you to reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind you during night driving.

*Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.*

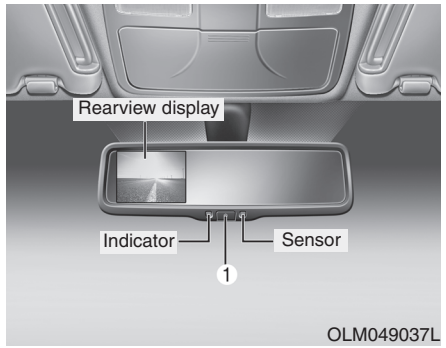
***Electric chromic mirror (ECM) (if equipped)***

The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the car behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

Whenever the shift lever is shifted into reverse (R), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the drivers view behind the vehicle.

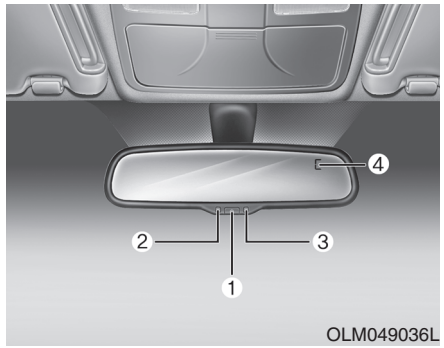
**⚠ CAUTION**
***When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.***



OLM049037L

**To operate the electric rearview mirror**

- Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function on. The mirror indicator light will illuminate.
  Press the ON/OFF button to turn the automatic dimming function off. The mirror indicator light will turn off.
- The mirror defaults to the ON position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.



OLM049036L

***Electric chromic mirror (ECM) with compass***

1. Feature Control Button
2. Status Indicator LED
3. Rear Light Sensor
4. Display Window

Automatic dimming rear view mirror controls automatically the glare of headlights of the vehicle behind you when it turned on by pressing and holding the button for more than 3 but less than 6 seconds. It is turned off by pressing and holding the button for same time once more.

**1. To operate Compass feature**

Press and release the button, then the vehicle's directional heading will be displayed. Pressing and releasing the button again will turn off the display.

Heading display
- E : East
- W : West
- S : South
- N : North

ex) NE : North East

**2. Calibration procedure**

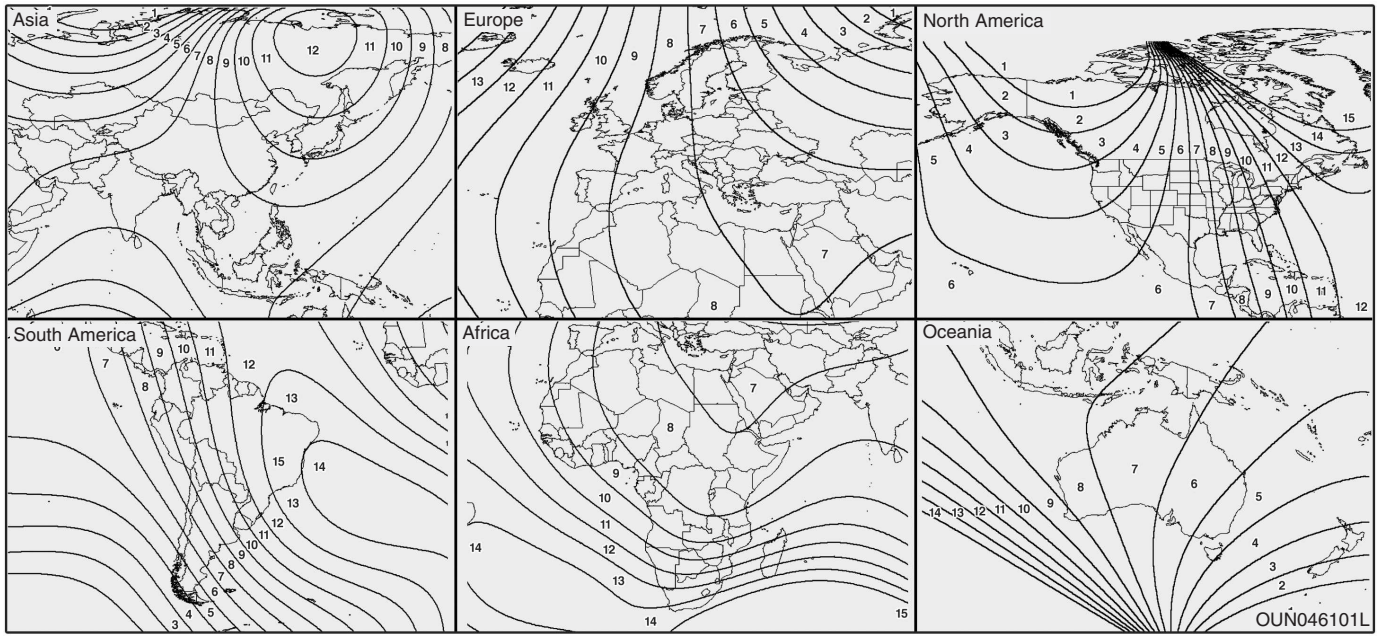
Press and hold the button for more than 9 but less than 12 seconds. When the compass memory is cleared a "C" will appear in the display.

- Driving the vehicle in a circle at less than 8km/h 2 times or until the compass heading appears.
- Driving in a circle in right-handed direction and opposite direction are possible, and if the calibration is completed, the compass heading will appear.
- Keep driving in a circle until a compass heading appears.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 41



**Compass Zone**



EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 42



**3. Setting the compass zone**

1. Find your current location and variance zone number on the zone map.
2. Press and hold the button for more than 6 but less than 9 seconds. The current zone number will appear in the display.
3. Press the button until the new zone number appears in the display. After you stop pressing the button in, the display will show a compass direction within a few seconds.

**4. Changing Mirror Angle setting (if equipped):**

Due to mirror positions being angled towards the driver, the compass mirror can also compensate for drivers seated on the Left Hand side of the vehicle (steering wheel on the LH side of the vehicle) or Right Hand side of the vehicle (steering wheel on the RH side of the vehicle).

To adjust the Left Hand, “L” or Right Hand, “R”, setting:

1. Press and hold the button for more than 12 seconds.
2. Release then press the button to toggle between “L” and “R”.

### ✻ NOTICE

**This procedure also causes the compass to be de-calibrated.**

3. To re-calibrate the compass, drive the vehicle in 2 complete circles at less than 8km/h (5mph).

### ⚠ CAUTION

***1. Do not install the ski rack, antenna, etc. which are attached to the vehicle by means of a magnet. They affect the operation of the compass.***

***2. If the compass deviates from the correct indication soon after repeated adjustment, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

***3. The compass may not indicate the correct compass point in tunnels or whilst driving up or down a steep hill.***

***(The compass returns to the correct compass point when the vehicle moves to an area where the geomagnetism is stabilized.)***

***4. When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 43



### Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing in a narrow street.

**⚠ WARNING - Rearview mirrors**

- **The outside rearview mirrors are convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.**
- **Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 44






*Remote control*

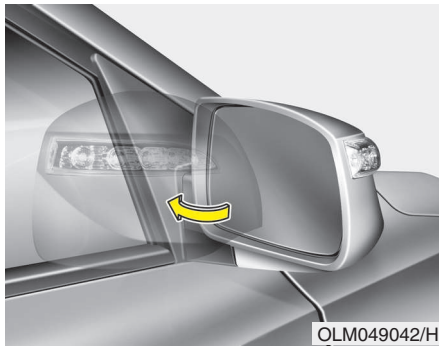
**Electric type (if equipped)**

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror, move the lever (1) to R (Right) or L (Left) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

After adjustment, put the lever into neutral position to prevent the inadvertent adjustment.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is depressed. Do not depress the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.***
- ***Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.***




*Folding the outside rearview mirror*

**Manual type**

To fold outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 45






**Electric type (if equipped)**

To fold the outside rearview mirror, depress the button.

To unfold it, depress the button again.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the ignition switch is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***In case it is an electric type outside rearview mirror, don't fold it by hand. It could cause motor failure.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:33 PM Page 46

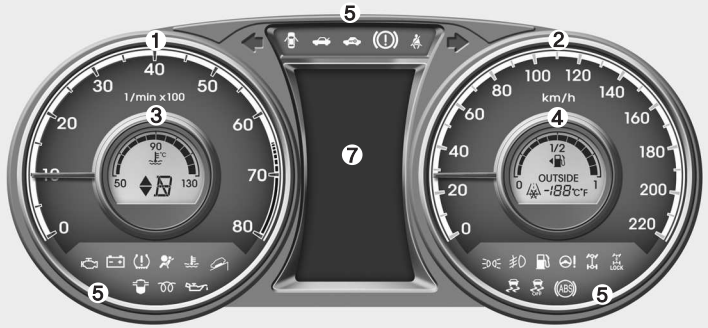


## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ **Type A**




■ **Type B**



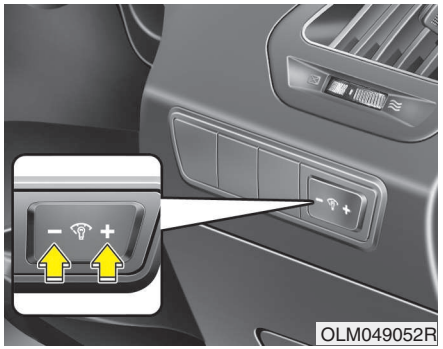

1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights (if equipped)
6. Odometer/Trip computer (if equipped)
7. LCD display

* The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
  For more details refer to the "Gauges" in the next pages.

OEL043308/OEL043307

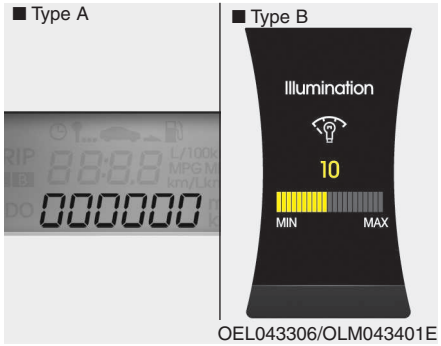
EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:34 PM Page 47






### Instrument panel illumination (if equipped)

When the vehicle's parking lights or headlights are on, press the illumination control button to adjust the instrument panel illumination intensity.




- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, an alarm will sound.




### LCD Display Control (if equipped)

The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons on the crash pad.

(1) : MODE button for changing modes

(2) ▼ : SELECT/RESET button

✻ For the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:34 PM Page 48



■ Type A (km/h)




■ Type B (km/h)




OEL049307/OEL049309

## Gauges

### *Speedometer*

The speedometer indicates the forward speed of the vehicle.

The speedometer is calibrated in kilometers per hour.

■ Type A

Petrol




Diesel




OEL049305

■ Type B

Petrol




Diesel




OEL049306

### *Tachometer*

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:34 PM Page 49



The tachometer pointer may move slightly when the ignition switch is in ACC or ON position with the engine OFF. This movement is normal and will not affect the accuracy of the tachometer once the engine is running.

**⚠ CAUTION**

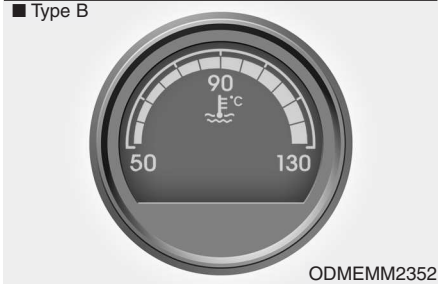
***Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.***

■ Type A




OEL049311

■ Type B




ODMEMM2352

***Engine temperature gauge***

This gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch is ON.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “If the engine overheats” in section 6.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the “ ” position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.**

■ Type A




OEL049312

■ Type B




ODMEMM2351

***Fuel gauge***

The fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. The fuel tank capacity is given in section 8. The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.

On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.

**⚠ WARNING - Fuel gauge**

**Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.**

**You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the O (Empty) level.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

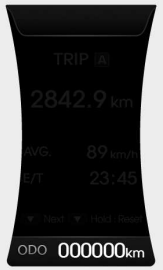
***Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.***

■ Type A




OEL043306

■ Type B




OLM043060

***Odometer***

The odometer Indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

- Odometer range : 0 ~ 999999 kilometers or miles.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:34 PM Page 51





OEL049127L

***Outside Temperature Gauge***

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

- Temperature range : -40°C ~ 60°C (-40°F ~ 140°F)

The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being inattentive.

The temperature unit (from °C to °F or from °F to °C) can be changed by using the “User Settings” mode of the LCD display.

❈ For more details, refer to “LCD Display” in this chapter.



OEL042127L

***Icy Road Warning Light (if equipped)***

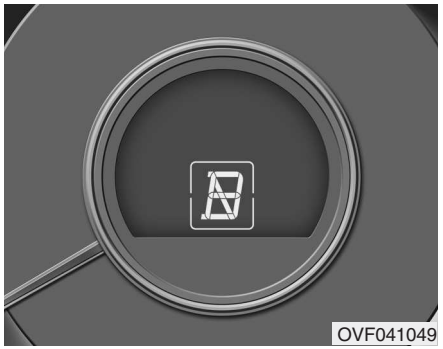
This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the following conditions occur, the warning light (including Outside Temperature Gauge) blinks 10 times and then illuminates, and also warning chime sounds 3 times.

- The temperature on the Outside Temperature Gauge is below approximately 4°C (39.2°F)
- The ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON

**❈ NOTICE**

**If the icy road warning light appears whilst driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.**




## Transaxle Shift Indicator

***Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped)***

This indicator displays which automatic transaxle shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Sports Mode : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6




***Manual Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped)***

This indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up : ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
- Shifting down : ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5

For example

▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:34 PM Page 53



## LCD DISPLAY

### LCD Modes (if equipped)

| Modes | Symbol<br>Type B | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Trip Computer |  | This mode displays driving information like the tripmeter, fuel economy, and so on. For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter. |
| Information |  | This mode informs of service interval (mileage or days) and warning messages related to TPMS or washer fluid. |
| User Settings |  | On this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps, and so on. |

❈ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:34 PM Page 54






OLM043404E




OLM043405E

## Information Mode

### *Service Interval*

**Service in**

It calculates and displays when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days).

If the remaining mileage or time reaches 1,500 km (900 mi.) or 30 days, "Service in" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.

**Service required**

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the already inputted service interval, “Service required” message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position. (The mileage and time changes to "---")

To reset the service interval to the mileage and days you inputted before:

- Press the [ ▼ ] button for more than 1 second.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If any of the following conditions occurs, the mileage and days may be incorrect.**

- **The battery cable is disconnected.**
- **The fuse switch is turned off.**
- **The battery is discharged.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:34 PM Page 55






OLM043406E

## User Settings Mode

### *Description*

On this mode, you can change setting of the doors, lamps, and so on.

### *Door*

**Auto Door Lock (if equipped)**

- Off:
  The auto door lock operation will be deactivated.
- Speed:
  All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph).
- Shift Lever:
  All doors will be automatically locked if the automatic transaxle shift lever is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position.

**Auto Door Unlock (if equipped)**

- Off:
  The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.
- Key Out or Power Off:
  All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from ignition switch or Engine Star/Stop Button is set to the OFF position.
- Driver Door Unlock:
  All doors will be automatically unlocked if the driver's door is unlocked.
- Shift Lever:
  All doors will be automatically unlocked if the automatic transaxle shift lever is shifted to the P (Park) position.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:34 PM Page 56



**Horn Feedback (if equipped)**

If this item is checked, the horn feedback operation will be activated.

After locking the door by pressing the lock button on the transmitter, if you press the lock button again within 4 seconds, the warning sound will operate once to indicate that all doors are locked.

### *Lamp*

**Head Lamp Delay (if equipped)**

If this item is checked, the headlamp delay and headlamp welcome function will be activated.

### *Settings*

**Language (if equipped)**

Choose the language you prefer within the LCD display.

**SPAS Voice (if equipped)**

Adjust the volume of SPAS voice information.

**Temperature Unit**

Convert the temperature unit from °C to °F or from °F to °C.

**AVG Fuel Eco Reset**

- Auto Reset:
  The average fuel economy will reset automatically when refuelling.
- Manual Reset:
  The average fuel economy will not reset automatically whenever refuelling.

For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:34 PM Page 57






OLM043407E

***Service Interval***

On this mode, you can activate the service interval function with mileage (km or mi.) and period (months).

## ✻ NOTICE

**If it is not available to set service interval on your vehicle, we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**




OLM043413E

## Warning Messages (if equipped)

***Shift to "P" position (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in P (Park) position.
- At this time, the Engine Start/Stop Button turns to the ACC position (If you press the Engine Start/Stop Button once more, it will turn to the ON position).




OLM043410E

***Low Key Battery (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the battery of the smart key is discharged when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.




OLM043500N

***Press start button whilst turn steering (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed.
- It means that you should press the Engine Start/Stop Button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.




OLM043502N

***Steering wheel unlocked (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.




OLM043503N

***Check steering wheel lock system (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:34 PM Page 59






OLM043415E

***Press brake pedal to start engine (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.
- It means that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.




OLM043416E

***Press clutch pedal to start engine (for smart key system and manual transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the clutch pedal.
- It means that you should depress the clutch pedal to start the engine.




OLM043408E

***Key not in vehicle (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.
- It means that you always have the smart key with you.




OLM043409E

***Key not detected (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.




OLM043411E

***Press start button again (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you can not operate the Engine Start/Stop Button when there is a problem with the Engine Start/Stop Button system.
- It means that you could start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button once more.
- If the warning illuminates each time you press the Engine Start/Stop Button, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.




OLM043412E

***Press start button with smart key (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button whilst the warning message “Key not detected” is illuminating.
- At this time, the immobiliser indicator light blinks.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 61






OLM043417E

***Check fuse "BRAKE SWITCH" (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.
- It means that you should replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.




OLM043414E

***Shift to "P" or "N" to start engine (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

**✻ NOTICE**

**You can start the engine with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position. But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.**



OLM043418

***Door Open***

- It means that any door is open.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 62





OLM043419

***Tailgate Open***

- It means that the tailgate is open.



OLM043420

***Sunroof Open (if equipped)***

- It means that the sunroof is open.




OLM043501N

***Low Washer Fluid (if equipped)***

- This warning message illuminates on the service reminder mode if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.
- It means that you should refill the washer fluid.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 63



## TRIP COMPUTER

■ Type A




OEL043703

■ Type B



OEL043702

### Overview

***Description***

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

### ✻ NOTICE

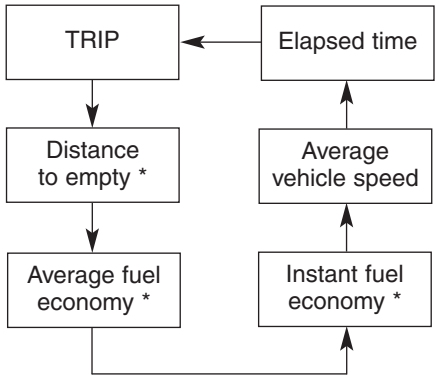
**Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Vehicle Speed) resets if the battery is disconnected.**

### Trip Modes

Trip mode is changed as below whenever pushing the button shortly.

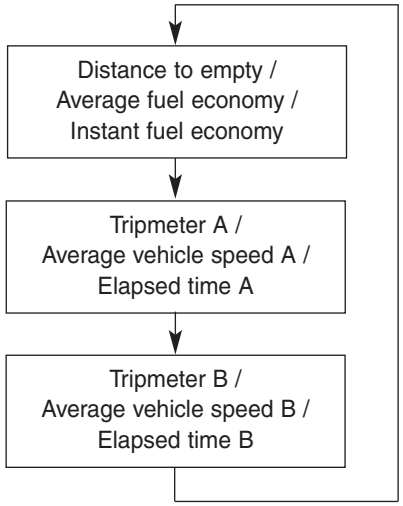
- Type A : TRIP button
- Type B : [ ▼ ]

- **Type A (if equipped)**




* : if equipped

- **Type B (if equipped)**




❊ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.




OLM049320/OEL049325/
OEL049326/OLM043403E

## Trip A/B

***Tripmeter (1)***

- Type A
  TRIP : Tripmeter

- Type B
  TRIP A :
  Tripmeter A→ 🗐 : Order changed
  TRIP B :
  Tripmeter B→ ▼ : Order changed

- The tripmeter is the total driving distance since the last tripmeter reset.
  - Distance range: 0.0 ~ 9999.9 km or mi.
- To reset the tripmeter, press Trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the tripmeter is displayed.

***Average Vehicle Speed (2)***

- The average vehicle speed is calculated by the total driving distance and driving time since the last average vehicle speed reset.
  - Speed range: 0 ~ 999 km/h or MPH
- To reset the average vehicle speed, press the trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 65



### ✻ NOTICE

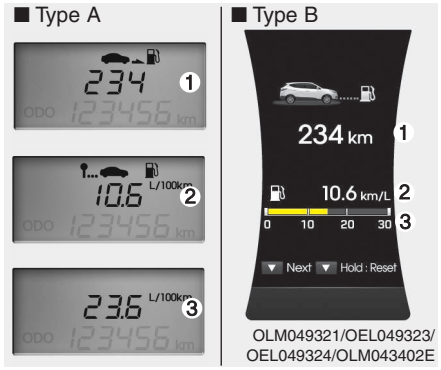
- **The average vehicle speed is not displayed if the driving distance is less than 300 meters (0.186 miles) or the driving time is less than 10 seconds since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is turned to ON.**
- **Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average vehicle speed keeps going whilst the engine is running.**

***Elapsed Time (3)***

- The elapsed time is the total driving time since the last elapsed time reset.
  - Time range (hh:mm): 00:00 ~ 99:59
- To reset the elapsed time, press the trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the elapsed time is displayed.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the elapsed time keeps going whilst the engine is running.**




OLM049321/OEL049323/
OEL049324/OLM043402E

## Fuel Economy

***Distance To Empty (1)***

- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
  - Distance range: 50 ~ 9999 km or 30 ~ 9999 mi.
- If the estimated distance is below 50 km (30 mi.), the trip computer will display "---" as distance to empty.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.**
- **The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.**
- **The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 litres (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.**
- **The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 66



***Average Fuel Economy (2)***

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
  - Fuel economy range: 0.0 ~ 99.9 L/100km or MPG
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

**Manual reset**

To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

**Automatic reset**

The average fuel economy will be cleared to zero (---) when the vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h after refuelling more than 6 litres (1.6 gallons).

### ✻ NOTICE

**The average fuel economy is not displayed for more accurate calculation if the vehicle does not drive more than 10 seconds or 50 meters (0.03 miles) since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is turned to ON.**

***Instant Fuel Economy (3)***

- This mode displays the instant fuel economy during the last few seconds when the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h (6.2 MPH).
  - Fuel economy range:

  Type A : 0 ~ 99.9 L/100 km or MPG

  Type B : 0 ~ 30 L/100 km or 0 ~ 50 MPG

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 67



## Warnings and indicators

All warning lights are checked by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). If any light does not illuminate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

After starting the engine, check to make sure that all warning lights are off. If any are still on, this indicates a situation that needs attention. When releasing the parking brake, the brake system warning light should go off. The fuel warning light will stay on if the fuel level is low.

### *ECO Indicator Light (if equipped)*




**This indicator light illuminates:**

When you activate the active ECO system by pressing the active ECO button.

For more details, refer to “Active ECO System” in chapter 5.

### *Air bag warning light (if equipped)*



This warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON position.

This light also comes on when the SRS is not working properly. If the AIR BAG warning light does not come on, or continuously remains on after operating for about 6 seconds when you turned the ignition switch to the ON position or started the engine, or if it comes on whilst driving, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 68



***Anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light (if equipped)***




This light illuminates if the ignition switch is turned to ON and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the ABS warning light remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, this indicates that there may be a problem with the ABS.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer. The normal braking system will still be operational, but without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system.

**Electronic brake force distribution (EBD) system warning light**




If two warning lights illuminate at the same time whilst driving, your vehicle may have a malfunction with ABS and EBD system.

In this case, your ABS and regular brake system may not work normally. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the both ABS and Brake warning lights are on and stay on, your vehicle's brake system will not work normally. So you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking. In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.**

**We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the ABS warning light or EBD warning light is on and stays on, the speedometer or odometer/tripmeter may not work. Also, the EPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease. In this case, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 69



***Seat belt warning Light***



As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

For details, refer to the seat belt on chapter 3.

***Turn signal indicator lights***



The blinking green arrows on the instrument panel show the direction indicated by the turn signals. If the arrow comes on but does not blink, blinks more rapidly than normal, or does not illuminate at all, a malfunction in the turn signal system is indicated. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

This indicator also blinks when the hazard warning switch is turned on.

***Low Beam Indicator Light (if equipped)***



This indicator light illuminates when the headlights are on.

***High beam indicator***



This indicator illuminates when the headlights are on and in the high beam position or when the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

***Light on indicator (if equipped)***



The indicator illuminates when the tail lights or headlights are ON.

***Front fog light indicator (if equipped)***



The indicator illuminates when the front fog lights are ON.

***Rear fog light indicator (if equipped)***



This indicator illuminates when the rear fog lights are ON.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 70



***Engine oil pressure warning***



This warning light indicates the engine oil pressure is low.

If the warning light illuminates whilst driving:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and stop.
2. With the engine off, check the engine oil level. If the level is low, add oil as required.

If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that you call an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the engine is not stopped immediately after the engine oil pressure warning light is illuminated, severe damage could result.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the oil pressure warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, serious engine damage may result. The oil pressure warning light comes on whenever there is insufficient oil pressure. In normal operation, it should come on when the ignition switch is turned on, then go out when the engine is started. If the oil pressure warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, there is a serious malfunction.***

***If this happens, stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so, turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level and start the engine again. If the light stays on with the engine running, turn the engine off immediately. In any instance where the oil light stays on when the engine is running, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

***Engine oil level warning light (Diesel engine, if equipped)***



The engine oil level warning light illuminates when the engine oil level should be checked.

If the warning light comes on, check the engine oil level as soon as possible and add engine oil as required.

Slowly pour the recommended oil little by little into a funnel. (Oil refill capacity : approximately 0.6 ~ 1.0 *l*)

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)

Do not overfill the engine oil to ensure the oil level is not above F mark on the dipstick.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 71



### ✻ NOTICE

- **If you travel approximately 50~100 km after the engine warms up, after adding the engine oil, the warning light will go off.**
- **Cycle the ignition from OFF to ON 3 times within 10 seconds, the warning light will go off immediately. However, when you turn off the warning light without adding the engine oil, the light will come on again after travelling approximately 50~100 km after the engine warms up.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the light comes on continuously after adding the engine oil and travelling approximately 50~100 km after the engine warms up, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

***Even if this light doesn't come on after the engine has started, the engine oil should be checked and supplied periodically.***

### *Parking brake & brake fluid warning*



**Parking brake warning**

This light is illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position. The warning light should go off when the parking brake is released.

**Low brake fluid level warning**

If the warning light remains on, it may indicate that the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.

If the warning light remains on:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required. Then check all brake components for fluid leaks.
3. Do not drive the vehicle if leaks are found, the warning light remains on or the brakes do not operate properly. We recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail. With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the car. Also, the car will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working. If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so.

To check bulb operation, check whether the parking brake and brake fluid warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Driving the vehicle with a warning light on is dangerous. If the brake warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 72



***Charging system warning*** 

This warning light indicates a malfunction of either the generator or electrical charging system.

If the warning light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion:

1. Drive to the nearest safe location.
2. With the engine off, check the generator drive belt for looseness or breakage.
3. If the belt is adjusted properly, a problem exists somewhere in the electrical charging system. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

***Door ajar warning light*** 

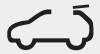
This warning light illuminates when a door is not closed securely with the ignition switch in any position.

***Tailgate open warning light*** 

This warning light illuminates when the tailgate is not closed securely with the ignition switch in any position.

***Door open position indicator (including tailgate)*** 

This indicator illuminates when a door or tailgate is not closed securely.
The indicator displays which door or tailgate is opened.

***Sunroof open warning light (if equipped)*** 

If the driver removes the ignition key (Smart key : turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for approximately 7 seconds and Sunroof Open Warning Light illuminate or blink for approximately 7 seconds.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 73



### *Immobiliser indicator (if equipped)*



**Without smart key system**

This indicator illuminates when the immobiliser key is inserted and turned to the ON position to start the engine.

At this time, you can start the engine. The indicator goes out after the engine is running.

If this indicator blinks when the ignition switch is in the ON position before starting the engine, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**With smart key system**

If any of the following occurs in a vehicle equipped with the smart key, the immobiliser indicator illuminates, blinks or goes off.

- When the battery of the smart key is weak.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button with the smart key. (For more details, refer to “Starting the Engine” in section 5).
- If the indicator illuminates only for 2 seconds and goes out when the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned to ON position with the smart key in the vehicle, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.
- When the battery is weak, if the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed, the indicator will blink and you are not able to start the engine. However, you are able to start the engine by inserting the smart key in the smart key holder. Also, if the smart key system related parts have a problem, the indicator will blink.

### *Low fuel level warning*



This warning light indicates the fuel tank is nearly empty. When it comes on, you should add fuel as soon as possible. Driving with the fuel level warning light on or with the fuel level below “E” can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 74



***Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) (check engine light)***



This indicator light is part of the Engine Control System which monitors various emission control system components. If this light illuminates whilst driving, it indicates that a potential problem has been detected somewhere in the emission control system.

This light will also illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, and will go out in a few seconds after the engine is started. If it illuminates whilst driving, or does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

Generally, your vehicle will continue to be drivable, but we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Prolonged driving with the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminated may cause damage to the emission control systems which could effect drivability and/or fuel economy.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Petrol engine**

***If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine (if equipped with DPF)**

***When the malfunction indicator light is blinks, it may stop blinking after driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).***

***If the malfunction indicator light continues to blink in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

***If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine**

***If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light blinks, some error related to the injection quantity adjustment occurs which could result in loss of engine power, combustion noise and poor emission. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 75



## Indicator Lights



### *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**This indicator light blinks:**

Whilst the ESC is operating.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 5.




### *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 5.



### *Cruise indicator (if equipped)*

**CRUISE indicator**

The indicator illuminates when the cruise control system is enabled.
The cruise indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the cruise control ON-OFF button on the steering wheel is pushed.
The indicator goes off when the cruise control ON-OFF button is pushed again.
For more information about the use of cruise control, refer to “Cruise control system” in section 5.

**Cruise SET indicator**




The indicator illuminates when the cruise control switch (-SET or RES+) is ON.
The cruise SET indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the cruise control switch (-SET or RES+) is pushed.
The cruise SET indicator does not illuminate when the cruise control switch (CANCEL) is pushed or the system is disengaged.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 76



***DBC (Downhill brake control) indicator (if equipped)***



The DBC indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds.

The DBC indicator will illuminate when the DBC button is pressed and the system is on.

When driving down a steep hill at a speed under 35 km/h (22 mph), the DBC will operate and the DBC indicator will blink to indicate the DBC is operating.

If the red indicator illuminates, the DBC system may have malfunctioned. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

***KEY OUT indicator (if equipped)***




When the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the indicator will blink, and if all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for about 5 seconds. The indicator will go off whilst the vehicle is moving. Keep the smart key in the vehicle.

***Key reminder warning chime (if equipped)***

If the driver's door is opened whilst the ignition key is left in the ignition switch (ACC or LOCK position), the key reminder warning chime will sound. This is to prevent you from locking your keys in the vehicle. The chime sounds until the key is removed from the ignition switch or the driver's door is closed.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 77



### *Glow indicator (Diesel engine)*



The indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is placed at the ON position. The engine can be started after the preheat indicator light goes off. The illuminating time varies with the water temperature, air temperature and battery condition.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**If the engine was not started within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position during 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.**

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the preheat indicator continues to illuminate or flash on and off after the engine has warmed up or whilst driving, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

### *Fuel filter warning light (Diesel engine)*



This warning light illuminates for 3 seconds after the ignition switch is set to the ON position and then it will go out. If it lights up whilst the engine is running, it indicates that water has accumulated inside the fuel filter. If this happens, remove the water from the fuel filter. For more Information, refer to “Fuel filter” in section 7.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***When the fuel filter warning light is illuminated, engine power (vehicle speed & idle speed) may decrease. If you keep driving with the warning light on, you can damage your vehicle's engine parts and injection system of the Common Rail. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

### *4WD system warning light (if equipped)*



When the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, the 4WD indicator will illuminate and then go off in a few seconds.
If the 4WD system warning light illuminates, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the 4WD system. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 78



### *4WD LOCK indicator (if equipped)*




The 4WD LOCK indicator light is illuminated when the 4WD LOCK button is pushed. The purpose of this 4WD LOCK mode is to increase the drive power when driving on wet pavement, snow-covered roads and/or off-road. The 4WD LOCK indicator light is turned off by pushing the button again.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use 4WD LOCK mode on dry paved roads or highway, it can cause noise, vibration or damage of 4WD related parts.***

### *Engine coolant temperature warning light (if equipped)*



The warning light illuminates if the temperature of the engine coolant is above 120±3°C (248±5.4°F).

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “Overheating” in section 6.

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the engine coolant temperature warning light illuminates, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.**

### *Electronic power steering (EPS) system warning light*



This indicator light comes on after the ignition key is turned to the ON position and then it will go out.

This light also comes on when the EPS has some troubles. If it comes on whilst driving, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 79



## REAR PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

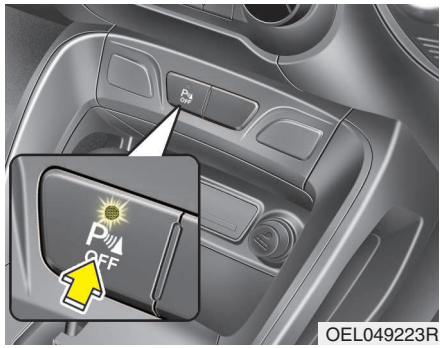


OLM043080

The rear parking assist system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 120 cm (47 in.) behind the vehicle. This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention by the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the back sensors are limited. Whenever reversing, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without a rear parking assist system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The rear parking assist system is a supplementary function only. The operation of the rear parking assist system can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area behind the vehicle before and whilst reversing.**



OEL049223R

### Operation of the rear parking assist system

***Operating condition***

- This system will activate when the indicator on the rear parking assist OFF button is not illuminated. If you desire to deactivate the rear parking assist system, press the rear parking assist OFF button again. (The indicator on the button will illuminate.) (if equipped)
- This system will activate when backing up with the ignition switch in the ON position. If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 10 km/h (6 mph), the system may not be activated correctly.
- The sensing distance whilst the rear parking assist system is in operation is approximately 120 cm (47 in.).

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 80



- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognised first.

***Types of warning sound***

- When an object is 120 cm to 61 cm (47 in. to 24 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23 in. to 12 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 30 cm (11 in.) of the rear bumper:

  Buzzer sounds continuously.

## Non-operational conditions of rear parking assist system

***The rear parking assist system may not operate properly when:***

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when the moisture has been cleared.)
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradients.
4. Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes may be interfering with the sensor.
5. There is heavy rain or water spray.
6. There are wireless transmitters or mobile phones present near the sensor.
7. The sensor is covered with snow.
8. Trailer towing.
9. The place light the fluorescent lamp.

***The detecting range may decrease when:***

1. The sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

***The following objects may not be recognised by the sensor:***

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
3. There are undetectable objects smaller than 1 m (40 in.) in height and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 81



### Rear parking assist system precautions

- The rear parking assist system may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- The rear parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognise objects less than 30 cm (11 in.) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

### ✻ NOTICE

**This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors; It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors. Always visually check behind the vehicle when reversing. Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.**

### Self-diagnosis

If you don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the gear to the R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction in the rear parking assist system. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer as soon as possible.

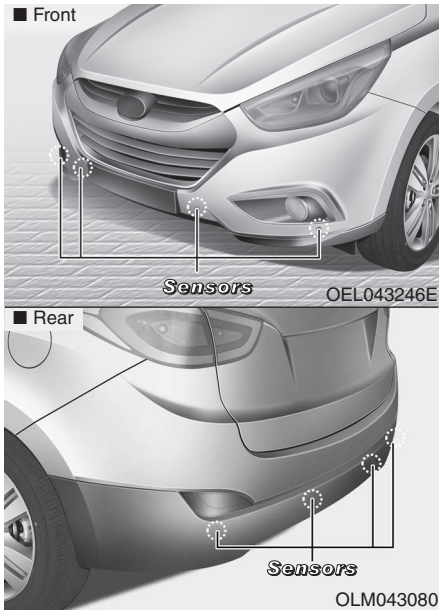
### ⚠ WARNING

**Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants due to a rear parking assist system malfunction. Always drive safely and cautiously.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 82



## PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

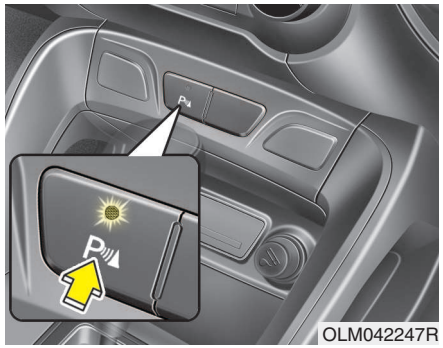



This is the parking assist system to warn the driver of object which are detected by front, rear and side sensors with range of distance of sensors operation as warning sound or indicator (LCD) when the vehicle is moved back or forward.

This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.
The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited.
Whenever getting forward or reversing, pay as much attention to what is front or behind you as you would in a vehicle without a parking assist system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The parking assist system should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view. The operational function of the parking assist system can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.**




### Operation of the parking assist system

*Operating condition*

- This parking assist system activates and the indicator on the button illuminates when the parking assist button (P) is pressed with the ignition switch ON. And it operates in forward, reverse and neutral position of the shift lever.

  The parking assist button turns on automatically and activates the parking assist system when you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position. If you drive the vehicle above 10km/h, the warning will not activate.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 83



- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, warning indicator is displayed all.
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be warned by warning sound.
- Whilst reversing, if the front and rear sensor recognizes an object at the same distance, the rear will be warned first.

***Types of warning sound***

**When driving forward**

- When an object is 100 cm to 61 cm (39 in. to 24 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23 in. to 12 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 30 cm (11 in.) of the bumper:
  Buzzer sounds continuously.

**When driving rearward or the shift lever is in N position**

- When an object is 120 cm to 61 cm (47.2 in. to 24 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23 in. to 12 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 30 cm (11 in.) of the bumper:
  Buzzer sounds continuously.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors;***
  ***It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.***
  ***Always visually check behind the vehicle when reversing.***
- ***Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 84



### Non-operational conditions of parking assist system

***Parking assist system may not operate normally when:***

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when moisture melts.)
2. Sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (Sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
4. The parking assist button is off.

***There is a possibility of parking assist system malfunction when:***

1. Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradients.
2. Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes may be interfering with the sensor.
3. There is heavy rain or water spray.
4. There are wireless transmitters or mobile phones present near the sensor.
5. The sensor is covered with snow.

***Detecting range may decrease when:***

1. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.
2. There are undetectable objects smaller than 1 m and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.

***The following objects may not be recognised by the sensor:***

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 85



### ✻ NOTICE

1. The warning may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
2. The parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
3. The sensor may not recognise objects less than 30 cm from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use with caution.
4. When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
5. Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor with any hard objects that could damage the surface of the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

### ✻ NOTICE

This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors, it can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, or objects located between sensors may not be detected.
Always visually check in front and behind the vehicle when driving.
Be sure to inform any drivers in the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 86



***Self-diagnosis***

When the parking assist system has a malfunction, if you operate the system, the warning sound sounds 3 times. In this time, the indicator on switch will blink and the warning on the cluster will blink. However, the warning regarding object will not sound.

In this time, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to a parking assist system. Always drive safely and cautiously.**

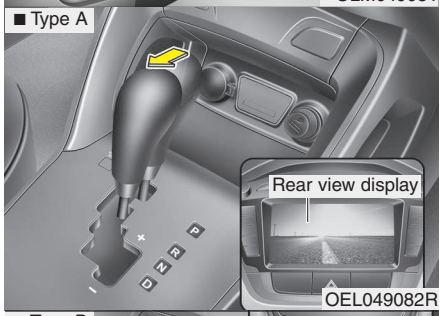
EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 87



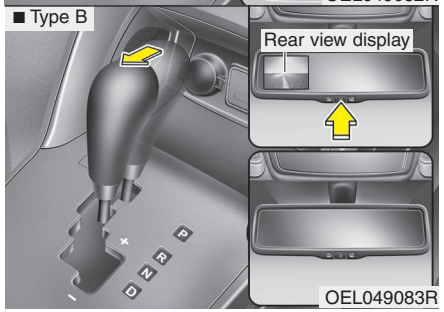
## REARVIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)




■ Type A




■ Type B




The rearview camera will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.
This system is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the rearview display mirror whilst backing-up.

Type B
The rearview camera may be turned off by pressing the ON/OFF button when the rearview camera is activated.
To turn the camera on again, press the ON/OFF button again when the ignition switch is on and the shift lever in R (Reverse). Also, the camera will turn on automatically whenever the ignition switch is turned off and on again.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **This system is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirror and the area behind the vehicle before and whilst backing up because there is a dead zone that can't see through the camera.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera may not operate normally.**

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHER




The hazard warning flasher should be used whenever you find it necessary to stop the car in a hazardous location. When you must make such an emergency stop, always pull off the road as far as possible.

The hazard warning lights are turned on by pushing in the hazard switch. This causes all turn signal lights to blink. The hazard warning lights will operate even though the key is not in the ignition switch.

To turn the hazard warning lights off, push the switch a second time.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:35 PM Page 88



## LIGHTING

### Battery saver function

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lights when the driver removes the ignition key and opens the driver- side door.
- With this feature, the parking lights will be turned off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

  If necessary, to keep the lights on when the ignition key is removed, perform the following :

  1) Open the driver-side door.
  2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

### Headlight escort function (if equipped)

The headlights (and/or taillights) remain on for approximately 5 minutes after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter (or smart key) twice or turning off the light switch from the headlight or Auto light position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate and the headlight escort function does not turn off automatically. Therefore, it causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamp before getting out of the vehicle.***

### Headlight welcome function (if equipped)

When the headlight switch is in the ON or AUTO position and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, if you press the door unlock button on the transmitter (or smart key), the headlights will come on for about 15 seconds.

If the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the function can only operate at night.

At this time, if you press the door unlock button again or door lock button on the transmitter (or smart key), the headlights will turn off immediately.




OXM049110R

## Lighting control

The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

(1) OFF position
(2) Parking light position
(3) Headlight position
(4) Auto light position (if equipped)




OAM049041R-1

***Parking light position ( )***

When the light switch is in the parking light position, the tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.




OAM049042R-1

***Headlight position ( )***

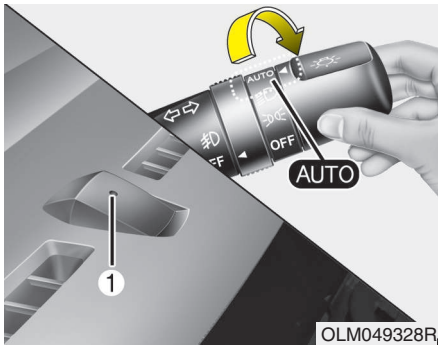
When the light switch is in the headlight position the head, tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:36 PM Page 90






***Auto light position (if equipped)***

When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never place anything over the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel, this will ensure better auto-light system control.***
- ***Don't clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.***
- ***If your vehicle has window tint or other types of coating on the front windscreen, the Auto light system may not work properly.***




### High - beam operation

To turn on the high beam headlights, push the lever away from you. Pull it back for low beams.

The high-beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time whilst the engine is not running.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:36 PM Page 91

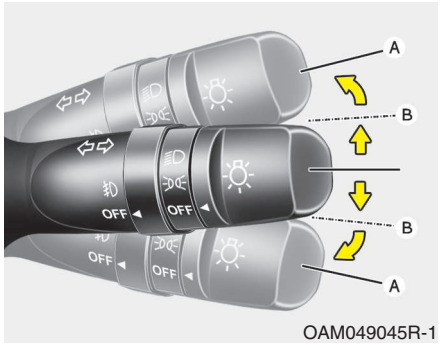





OAM049043R-1

***Flashing headlights***

To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low-beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.




OAM049045R-1

## Turn signals and lane change signals

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). Green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating.

They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

***One-touch lane change function (if equipped)***

To activate an one-touch lane change function, move the turn signal lever slightly and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3 times.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.**



OAM049046R-1

### Front fog light (if equipped)

Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc. The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned on after the parklight is turned on.

To turn off the fog lights, turn the fog light switch (1) to the OFF position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.***

■ Type A



OLM049346R-1

■ Type B



OLM049346R

### Rear fog light (if equipped)

To turn the rear fog lights on, turn the headlight switch to the headlight on position and turn the rear fog light switch (1) to the on position.

The rear fog lights turn on when the rear fog light switch is turned on after the front fog light switch (if equipped) is turned on and the headlight switch is in the park-light position.

To turn the rear fog lights off, turn the rear fog light switch to the on position again or turn the headlight switch off or front fog light switch off.

**✻ NOTICE**

**To turn on the rear fog light switch, the ignition switch must be in the ON position.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:36 PM Page 93

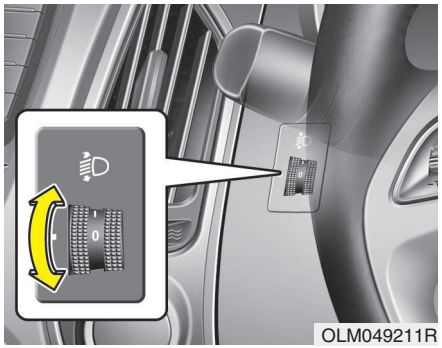


### Daytime running light (if equipped)

Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will make the headlights turn OFF when:

1. The headlight switch is ON.
2. The front fog light switch is ON.
3. The engine stops.




### Headlight levelling device (if equipped)

***Manual type***

To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of the passengers and the loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam levelling switch.

The higher the number of the switch position, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper levelling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are the examples of proper switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

| Loading condition | Switch position |
|---|---|
| Driver only | 0 |
| Driver + Front passenger | 0 |
| Full passengers (including driver) | 1 |
| Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading | 2 |
| Driver + Maximum permissible loading | 3 |

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:36 PM Page 94



***Automatic type***

It automatically adjusts the headlight beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage area.

And it offers proper headlight beam under various conditions.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If it does not work properly even though your car is inclined backward according to passenger's posture, or the headlight beam is irradiated to the high or low position, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

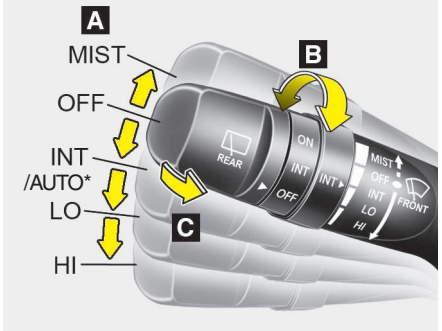
**Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:36 PM Page 95

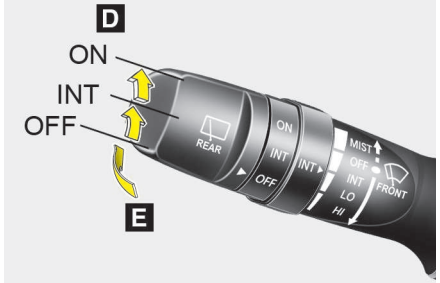


## WIPERS AND WASHERS

### Windscreen wiper/washer




### Rear window wiper/washer




OXM049231R/OAM049903R

**A : Wiper speed control (front)**

- MIST – Single wipe
- OFF – Off
- INT – Intermittent wipe
  AUTO* – Auto control wipe
- LO – Low wiper speed
- HI – High wiper speed

**B : Intermittent control wipe time adjustment**

**C : Wash with brief wipes (front)**

**D : Rear wiper/washer control**

- ON – Continuous wipe
- INT – Intermittent wipe (if equipped)
- OFF – Off

**E : Wash with brief wipes* (rear)**

* : if equipped

### Windscreen wipers

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

MIST : For a single wiping cycle, move the lever to this position and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

OFF : Wiper is not in operation

INT : Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

LO : Normal wiper speed

HI : Fast wiper speed

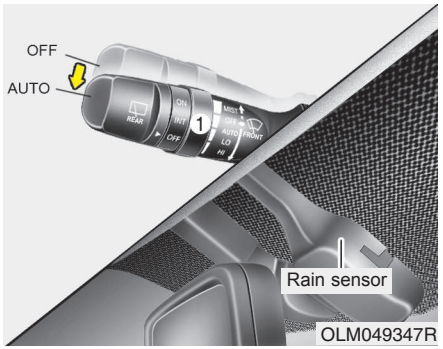
### ✻ NOTICE

**If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers to ensure proper operation.**

**If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:36 PM Page 96






***Auto control (if equipped)***

The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (1).

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the ignition switch is ON, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to OFF position when the wiper is not in use.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***When the ignition switch is ON and the windscreen wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode, use caution in the following situations to avoid any injury to the hands or other parts of the body:***

- ***Do not touch the upper end of the windscreen glass facing the rain sensor.***
- ***Do not wipe the upper end of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.***
- ***Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.***

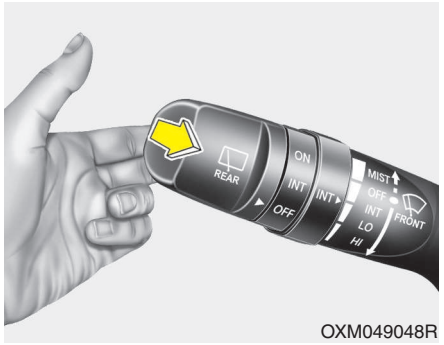
### ⚠ CAUTION

***When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF position to stop the auto wiper operation.***

***The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode whilst washing the vehicle.***

***Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the driver side windscreen glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.***

***When starting the vehicle in winter, set the wiper switch in the OFF position. Otherwise, wipers may operate and ice may damage the windscreen wiper blades. Always remove all snow and ice and defrost the windscreen properly prior to operating the windscreen wipers.***




OXM049048R

### Windscreen washers

In the OFF position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windscreen is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windscreen washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the driver side.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windscreen with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windscreen and obscure your vision.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windscreen, do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***
- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter.***

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:36 PM Page 98



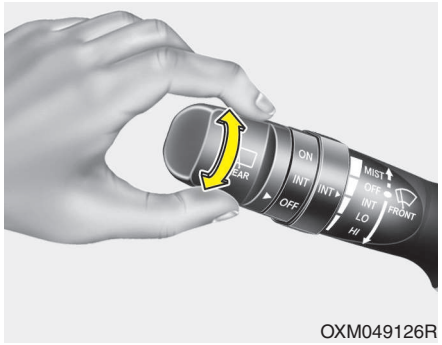
***Headlight washer (if equipped)***

If your vehicle is equipped with the headlight washer it will operate at the same time when you operate the windscreen washer. It will operate when the headlight low beam is turned on and the ignition switch or engine start/stop button is in the ON position.

The washer fluid will be sprayed on to the headlights.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Check the headlight washers periodically to confirm that the washer fluid is being sprayed properly onto the headlight lenses.**
- **The headlight washer can be operated 15 minutes after being operated last time.**




OXM049126R

### Rear window wiper and washer switch

The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever. Turn the switch to the desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.

ON - Normal wiper operation

INT - Intermittent wiper operation (if equipped)

OFF - Wiper is not in operation




OXM049125R

Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1~3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever. (if equipped)

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:36 PM Page 99



## INTERIOR LIGHT

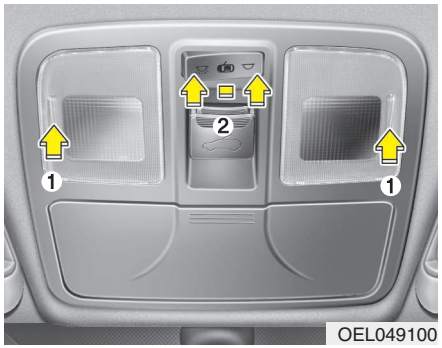
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.***

***It may cause battery discharge.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.**




### Map lamp (if equipped)

Push the lens (1) to turn the map lamp on or off.

- : The light (with room lamp) stays on at all times.
- : The light (with room lamp) comes on when any door (except tailgate) is opened regardless of the ignition switch position. When doors (except tailgate) are unlocked by the transmitter (or smart key), the light (with room lamp) comes on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door (except tailgate) is not opened.

  Also, the light (with room lamp) goes out gradually after approximately 30 seconds if the door (except tailgate) is closed. However, if the ignition switch is ON or all doors (except tailgate) are locked, the light will turn off immediately.

  If a door (except tailgate) is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC or LOCK position, the light (with room lamp) stays on for about 20 minutes. However, if a door (except tailgate) is opened with the ignition switch in the ON position, the light (with room lamp) stays on continuously.
- : The lights turn off even if a door is opened.

  ✻ When the lamp is turned ON by pressing the lens (1), the lamp does not turn off even if the switch (2) is in the OFF position.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:37 PM Page 100




OEL049101

### Room lamp

Press the button to turn the light on or off.

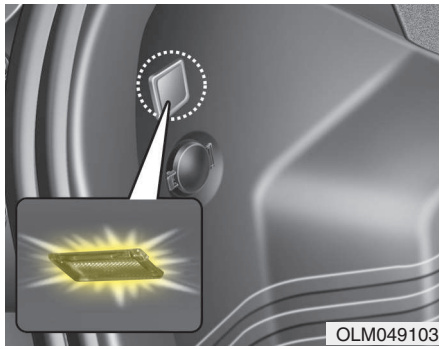

OLM049105/H

### Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

- : The lamp will turn on if this button is pressed.
- ◯ : The lamp will turn off if this button is pressed.

**⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)**

- ***Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.***
- ***Turn off the lamp before return the sunvisor to its original position.***

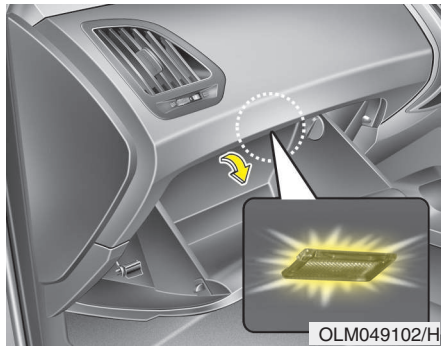

OLM049103

### Luggage room lamp (if equipped)

The luggage room lamp comes on when the tailgate is opened.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:37 PM Page 101






**Glove box lamp (if equipped)**

The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

The parking lights or headlights must be ON for the glove box lamp to function.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:37 PM Page 102



## DEFROSTER

### ⚠ CAUTION

***To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.***

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you want to defrost and defog on the front windscreen, refer to "Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging" in this section.**

■ Type A




OLM049110

■ Type B




OLM049109

### Rear window defroster

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, whilst engine is running.

To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the centre facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.

If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

***Outside mirror defroster (if equipped)***

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.




***Wiper deicer (if equipped)***

**Without smart key**

The engine must be running to enable this feature. To activate the front wiper deicer, press the front wiper deicer button. The indicator on the button illuminates when the deicer is ON.

The front wiper deicer automatically turns off after 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the deicer, press the front wiper deicer button again.

**With smart key**

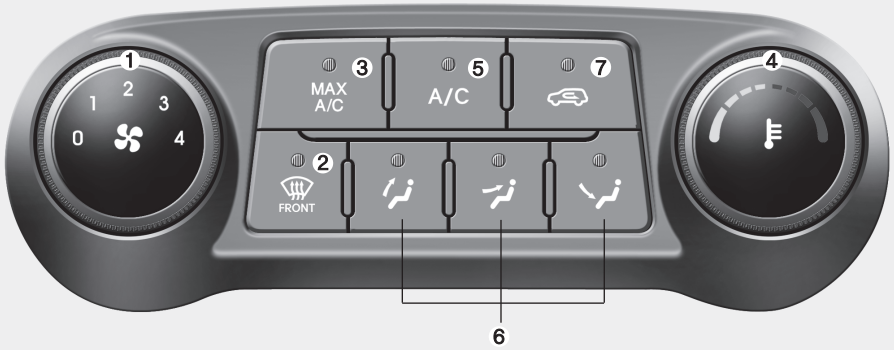
If your vehicle is equipped with the wiper deicer, it will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:37 PM Page 104

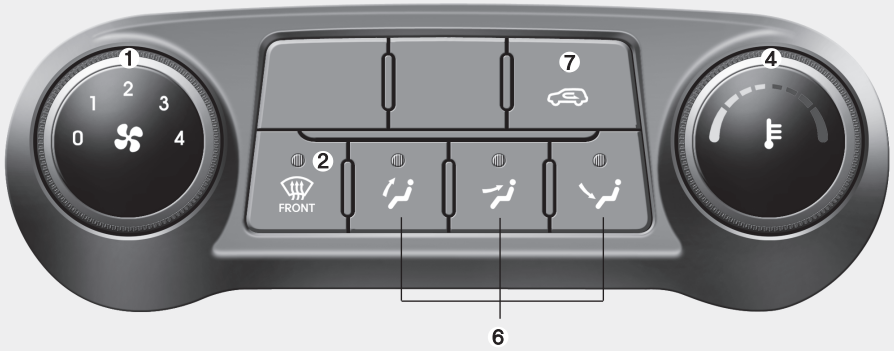


## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ **Type A**




■ **Type B**




1. Fan speed control knob
2. MAX defroster button (Front windscreen defroster)
3. MAX A/C selection button (if equipped)
4. Temperature control knob
5. Air conditioning button (if equipped)
6. Mode selection button
7. Air intake control button

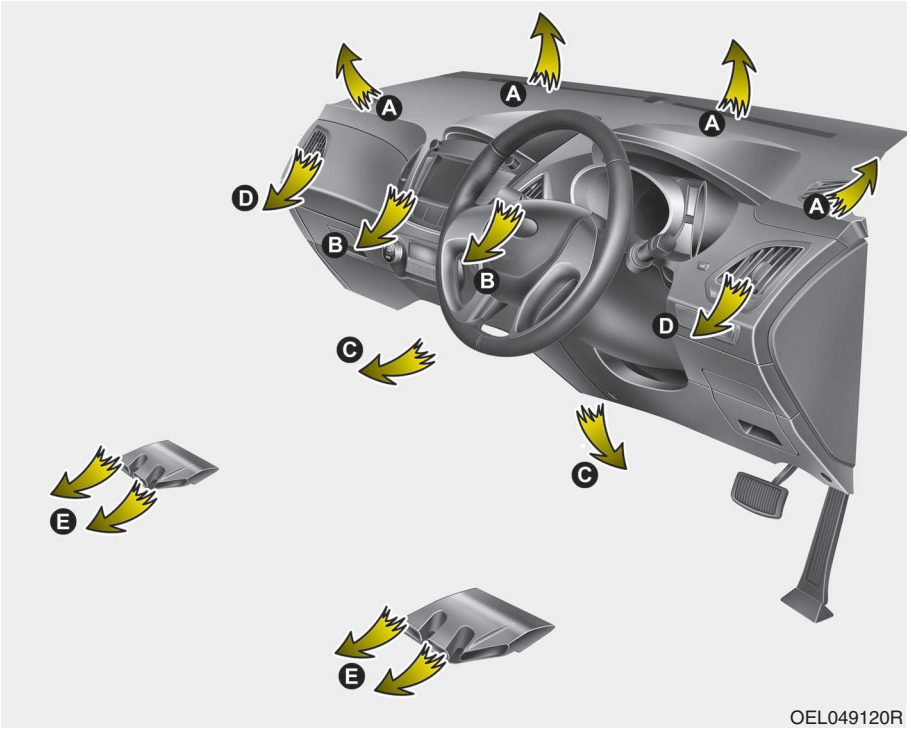
OEL049111/OEL049111U

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:37 PM Page 105

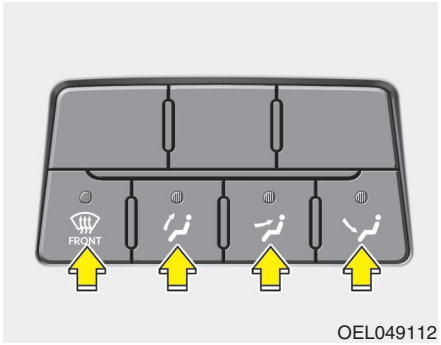


### Heating and air conditioning

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.



OEL049120R




OEL049112

***Mode selection***

The mode selection buttons controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

If you push the button once, the corresponding switch will turn on, and if you push the button again, the switch will turn off.

**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defroster.

**Face-Level (B, D)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Floor-Level (C, E, A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen.

Also you may select 2~3 modes at the same time for desired air flow.

- face ( ) + floor ( ) mode
- face ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- face ( ) + floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode




OEL049113

**MAX A/C-Level (B, D) (if equipped)**

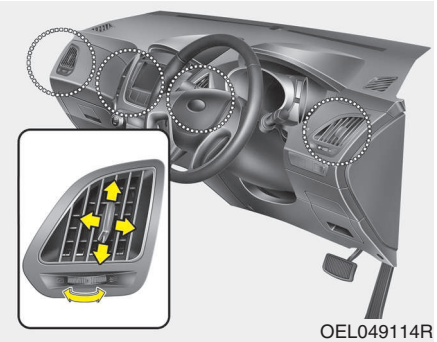
The MAX A/C mode is used to cool the inside of the vehicle faster.

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.

In this mode, the air conditioning and the recirculated air position will be selected automatically.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:37 PM Page 107

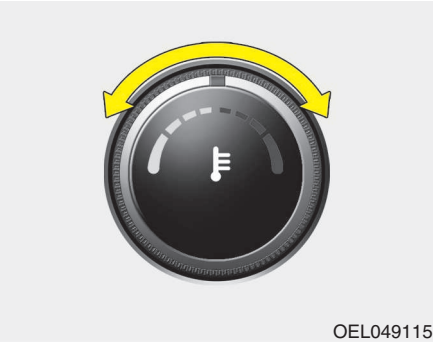



OEL049114R

**Instrument panel vents**

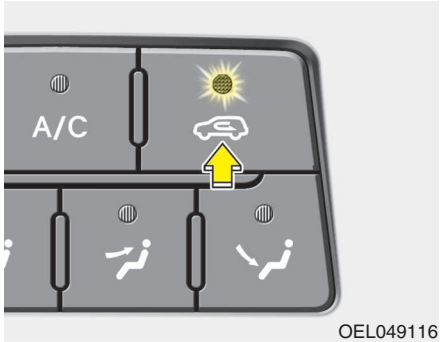
The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.


OEL049115

***Temperature control***

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the air temperature in the passenger compartment, turn the knob to the right position for warm and hot air or left position for cooler air.



OEL049116

***Air intake control***

The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

**Recirculated air position**



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

**Outside (fresh) air position**



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.**
**In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.**




OEL049117

***Fan speed control***

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.
The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the fan speed, turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.
Setting the fan speed control knob to the “0” position turns off the fan.




OYF043118A

***To turn off the blowers***

To turn off the blowers, turn the fan speed control knob to the "0" position.




OEL049118

***Air conditioning (if equipped)***

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

## System operation

***Ventilation***

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

***Heating***

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:37 PM Page 110



**Operation Tips**

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windscreen. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windscreen, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

***Air conditioning (if equipped)***

HYUNDAI Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly R-134a refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

- When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the extreme left position (press the MAX A/C position selection button (if equipped)) then set the fan speed control to the highest speed.

**✻ NOTICE**

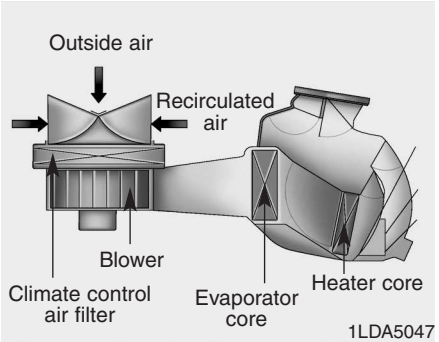
- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:37 PM Page 111



**Air conditioning system operation tips**

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.




## Climate control air filter (if equipped)

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windscreen even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:37 PM Page 112



### ✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  **If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.**
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

### Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**It is important when servicing the air conditioning system that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used. Otherwise, damage to the compressor and abnormal system operation may occur.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Improper service may cause serious injury to the person performing the service. For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:38 PM Page 113



## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




1. AUTO (automatic control) button
2. Driver's temperature control button
3. A/C display
4. Passenger's temperature control button
5. Dual temperature control selection button
6. OFF button
7. Front windscreen defroster button
8. Air conditioning button
9. Fan speed control button
10. Air intake control button
11. Mode selection button

OEL049121R




OEL049122R

**Automatic heating and air conditioning**

1. Press the AUTO button.

The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by setting the temperature.

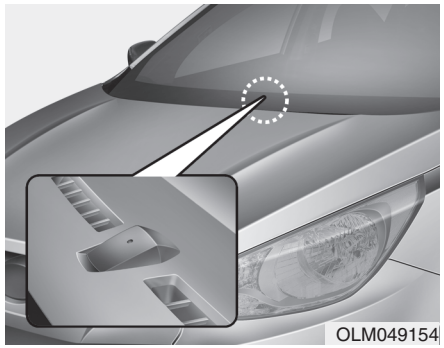



OEL043125R

2. Set the temperature button to the desired temperature.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **To turn the automatic operation off, select any button of the following:**
  **- Mode selection button**
  **- Front windscreen defroster button**
  **- Fan speed control button**
  **The selected function will be controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.**
- **For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C/71°F.**



OLM049154

## ✻ NOTICE

**Never place anything over the sensor located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:38 PM Page 115

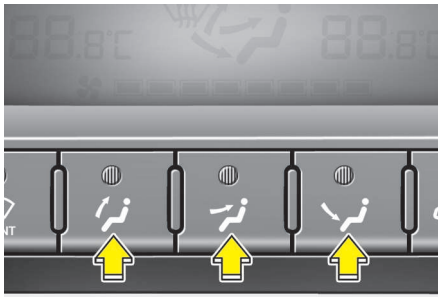


## Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pressing buttons or turning knob(s) other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons or knob(s) selected.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.



OEL049123

***Mode selection***

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Refer to the illustration in the “Manual climate control system”.

If you push the button once, the corresponding switch will turn on, and if you push the button again, the switch will turn off.

**Face-Level (B, D)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Floor-Level (C, E, A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen.

Also you may select 2~3 modes at the same time for desired air flow.

- face ( ) + floor ( ) mode
- face ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- face ( ) + floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode



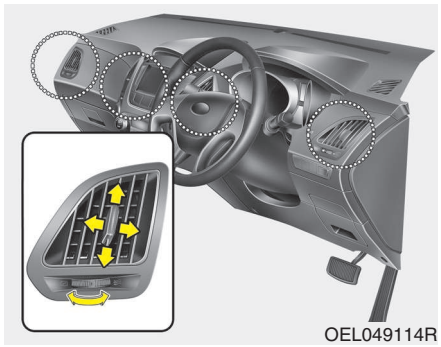
OEL049124

**Maximum (MAX) defrost mode**

When you select the MAX defrost mode, the following system settings will be made automatically;

- the air conditioning system will be turned on.
- the outside(fresh) air position will be selected.
- the fan speed will be set to the high speed.

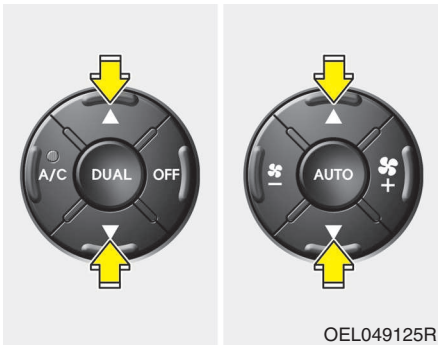
To turn the MAX defrost mode off, press the mode button or MAX defrost button again or AUTO button.


OEL049114R

**Instrument panel vents**

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.



OEL049125R

***Temperature control***

The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by holding the ▲ button. The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by holding the ▼ button. When pressing the button, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C/1°F. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:38 PM Page 117






OEL049126R

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually**

1. Press the DUAL button to operate the driver and passenger side temperature individually. Also, if the passenger side temperature control button is operated, it will automatically change to the DUAL mode as well.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control to adjust the driver side temperature. Operate the passenger side temperature control to adjust the passenger side temperature.

When the driver side temperature is set to the highest (HI) or lowest (Lo) temperature setting, the DUAL mode is deactivated for maximum heating or cooling.

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally**

1. Press the DUAL button again to deactivate DUAL mode. The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control button. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

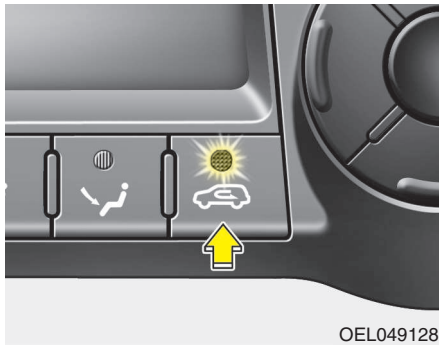
**Temperature conversion (if equipped)**

You can switch the temperature mode between Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

Whilst pressing the OFF button, press the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.



OEL049128

***Air intake control***

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:38 PM Page 118



**Recirculated air position**



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

**Outside (fresh) air position**



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.**
**In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:38 PM Page 119



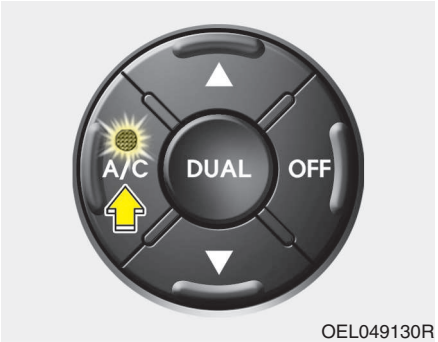



OEL049129R

***Fan speed control***

The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by operating the fan speed control button.

To change the fan speed, press (+) the switch for higher speed, or push (-) the switch for lower speed. To turn the fan speed control off, press the front blower OFF button.




OEL049130R

***Air conditioning***

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.




OEL049131R

***OFF mode***

Press the front blower OFF button to turn off the front air climate control system. However, you can still operate the air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:38 PM Page 120

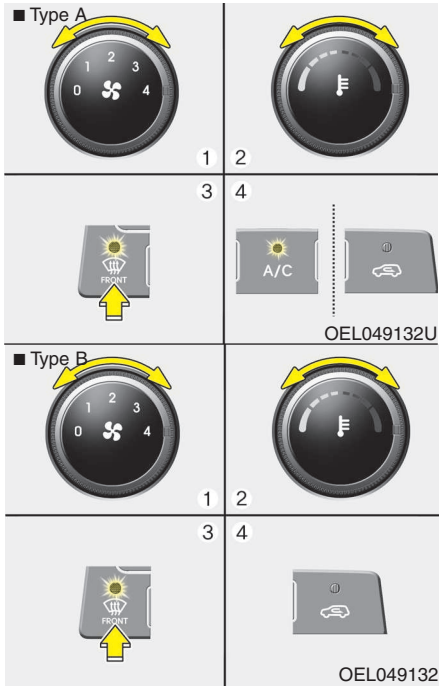


## WINDSCREEN DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

**⚠ WARNING - Windscreen heating**

**Do not use the position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lower speed.**

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.




### Manual climate control system

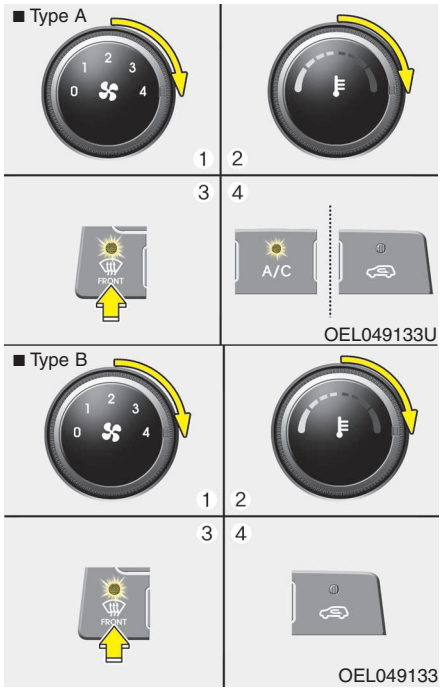
***To defog inside windscreen***

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically. If the position is selected, air conditioning (if equipped) will also be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning (if equipped) and/or outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.

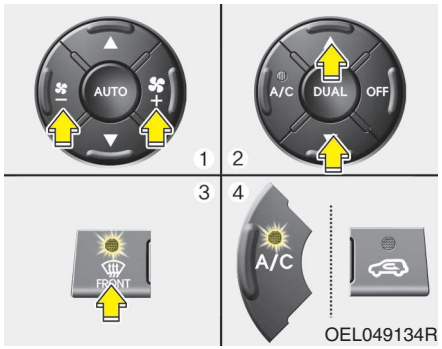
EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:38 PM Page 121






***To defrost outside windscreen***

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning (if equipped) will be selected automatically.




## Automatic climate control system

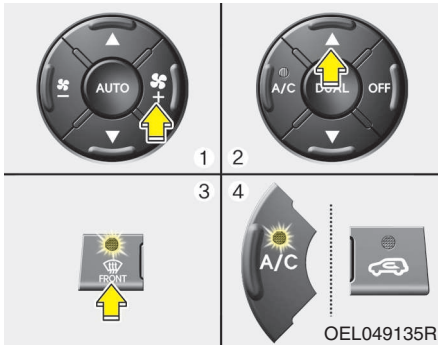
***To defog inside windscreen***

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning is not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:39 PM Page 122






***To defrost outside windscreen***

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:39 PM Page 123



## STORAGE COMPARTMENT

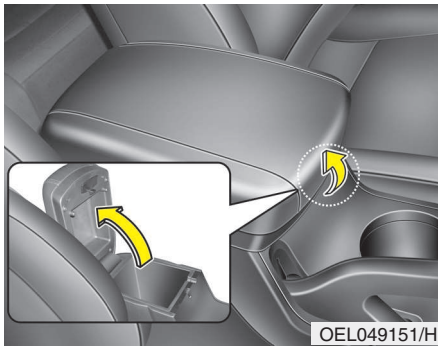
These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.***
- ***Always keep the storage compartment covers closed whilst driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover can not close securely.***

**⚠ WARNING - Flammable materials**

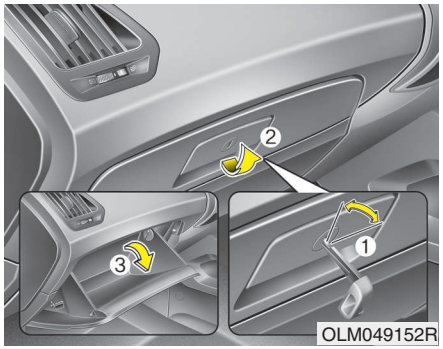
**Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.**




### Centre console storage (if equipped)

These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or front passenger.

To open the centre console storage pull up the lever.




### Glove box

The glove box can be locked and unlocked with a key. (if equipped)

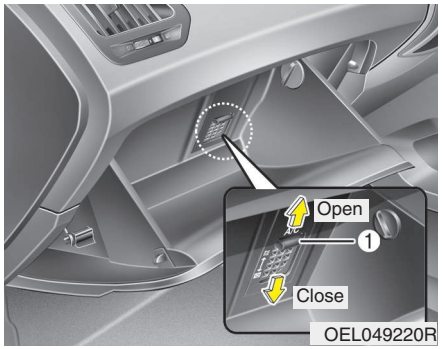
To open the glove box, pull the handle and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed whilst driving.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not keep food in the glove box for a long time.***



OEL049220R

### Cool box (if equipped)

You can keep beverage cans or other items cool using the open/close lever (1) of the vent installed in the glove box.

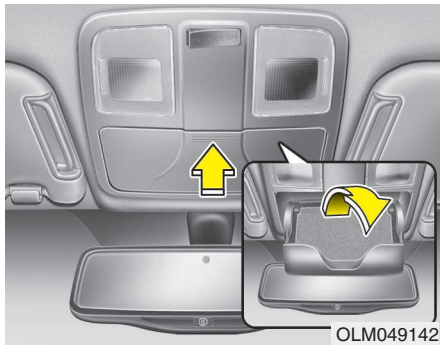
1. Turn on the air conditioning.
2. Slide the open/close lever (1) of the vent installed in the glove box to the open position.
3. When the cool box is not used, slide the lever (1) to its closed position.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If some items in the cool box block the vent, the cooling effectiveness of the cool box is reduced.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not put the perishable food in the cool box because it may not be able to maintain the necessary consistent temperature to keep the food fresh.**


OLM049142

### Sunglass holder

To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out. Push to close.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:39 PM Page 125



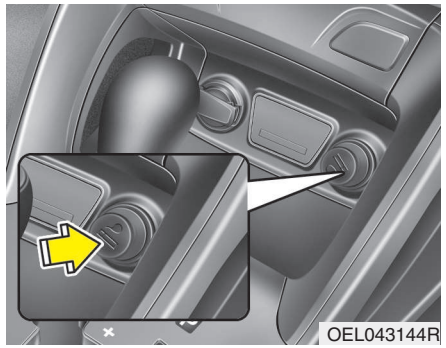
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglasses holder whilst the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglass holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder to prevent breakage or deformation of glasses. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in holder.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:39 PM Page 126



## INTERIOR FEATURES


OEL043144R

### Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

For the cigarette lighter to work, the ignition switch must be in the ACC position or the ON position.

To use the cigarette lighter, push it all the way into its socket. When the element has heated, the lighter will pop out to the "ready" position.

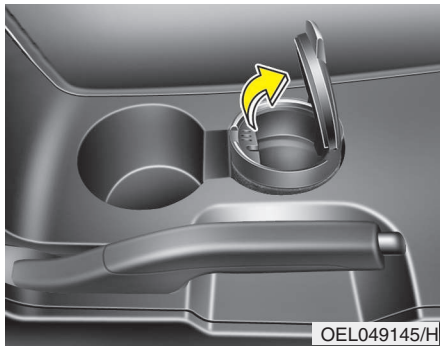
Do not hold the cigarette lighter pressed in. This can damage the heating element and create a fire hazard.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not hold the lighter in after it is already heated because it will overheat.**
- **If the lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The use of plug-in accessories (shavers, hand-held vacuums, and coffee pots, for example) may damage the socket or cause electrical failure.***


OEL049145/H

### Ashtray (if equipped)

To use the ashtray, open the cover.

To clean or empty the ashtray, pull it out.

**⚠ WARNING - Ashtray use**

- **Do not use the vehicle's ashtrays as waste receptacles.**
- **Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:39 PM Page 127



## Cup holder

**⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids**

- **Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

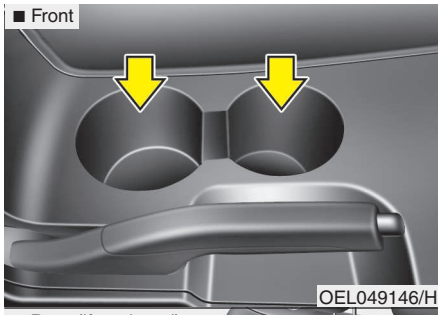
**⚠ WARNING**

**Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a vehicle that is heated up. It may explode.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

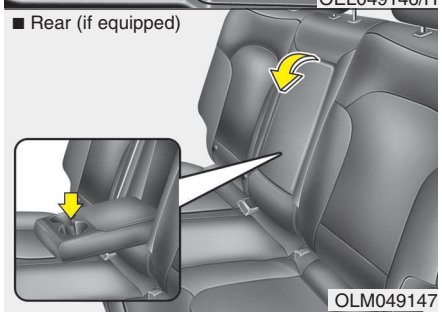
***Do not place uncovered cups in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the liquid spills, electric systems may malfunction.***

■ Front



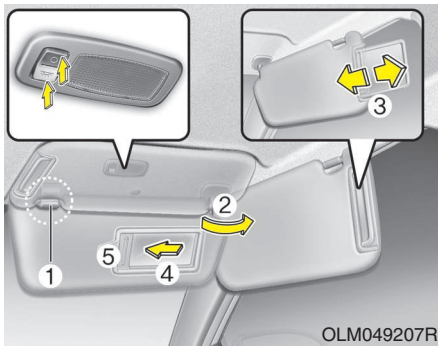
OEL049146/H

■ Rear (if equipped)



OLM049147

Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.




OLM049207R

## Sunvisor

Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).

Adjust the sunvisor extension forward or backward (3). (if equipped)

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (4).

Push the switch to turn the light on or off. (if equipped)

- : The light turns on.
- O : The light turns off.

The ticket holder (5) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket. (if equipped)

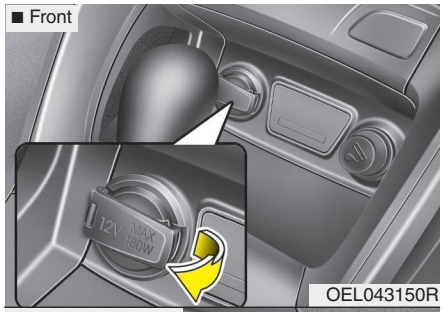
### ⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

- ***Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.***
- ***Always use the sunvisor extension, after swing the sunvisor to the side.***

### ⚠ WARNING

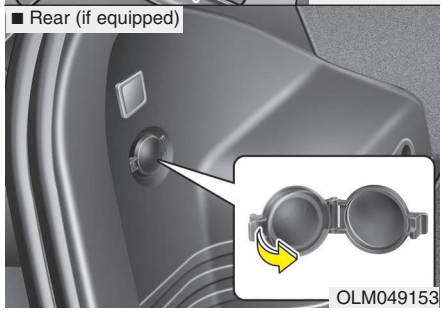
**For your safety, do not obstruct your vision when using the sunvisor.**

■ Front




OEL043150R

■ Rear (if equipped)



OLM049153

## Power outlet

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Use power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.***
- ***Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.***
- ***Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.***
- ***Close the cover when not in use.***
- ***Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.***

### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not put a finger or a foreign element (pin, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get an electric shock.**

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:39 PM Page 129






## Digital clock (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the clock whilst driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.**

Whenever the battery terminals or related fuses are disconnected, you must reset the time.

When the ignition switch is in the ACC or ON position, the clock buttons operate as follows:

***Setup the clock***

**With audio off**

1. Press the [SETUP CLOCK] button until the clock of the display blinks.
2. Set the clock by turning the knob(1) and press it.

**With audio on**

1. Press the [SETUP CLOCK] button.
2. Select the [CLOCK] mode by turning the knob(1) and press it.
3. Set the clock by turning the knob(1) and press it.



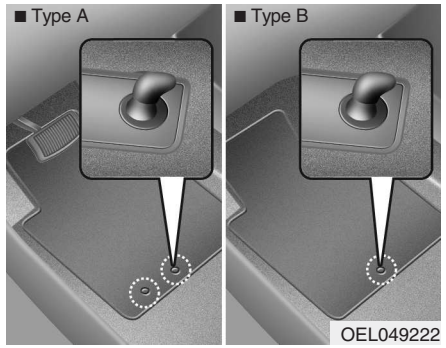

## Aux, USB and iPod® (if equipped)

If your vehicle has an aux and/or USB(universal serial bus) port, you can use an aux port to connect audio devices and an USB port to plug in an USB.

**✻ NOTICE**

**When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.**

✻ iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.




### Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)

When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.**

- **Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.**
- **Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**
- **Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.**

**IMPORTANT – Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, HYUNDAI recommends that only the HYUNDAI floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.**




### Luggage net (holder) (if equipped)

To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the four holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:39 PM Page 131

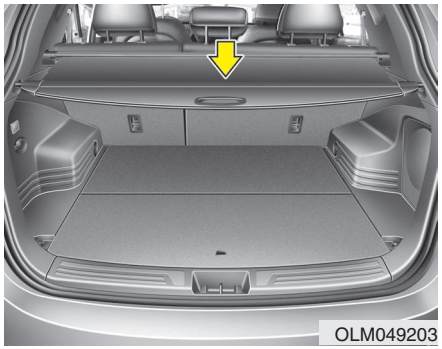


**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.***

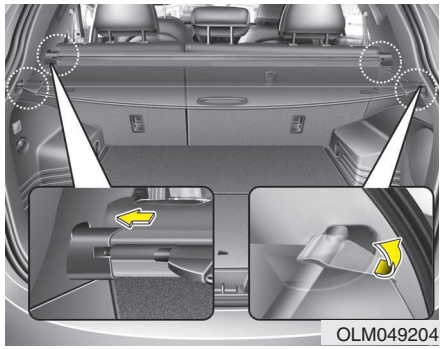
**⚠ WARNING**

**To avoid eye injury, DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.**


OLM049203

### Cargo security screen (if equipped)

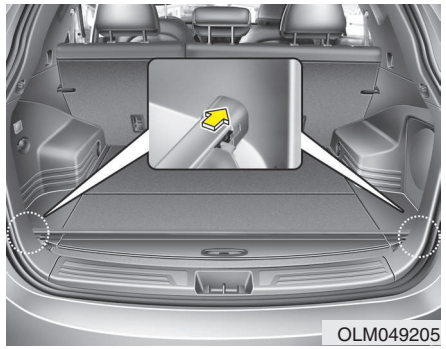
Use the cargo security screen to hide items stored in the cargo area.


OLM049204

To use the cargo security screen, pull the handle backward and insert the edges into the slots.

EL(FL) Aust 4a.QXP 7/26/2013 2:40 PM Page 132






When not in use, place the cargo security screen on the lower portion of the cargo area. (if equipped)

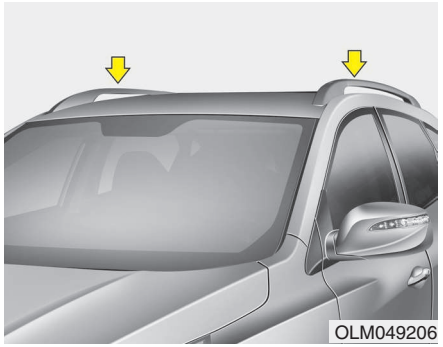
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as far forward as possible.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Since the cargo security screen may be damaged or malformed, do not put the luggage on it when it is used.***

## EXTERIOR FEATURES




### Roof rack (if equipped)

If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.***
- ***When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.***

### ⚠ WARNING

- **The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack. Distribute the load as evenly as possible onto the roof rack and secure the load firmly.**

| | |
|---|---|
| ROOF RACK | 100 kg (220 lbs.) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED |

**Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The vehicle centre of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt manoeuvres or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.**
- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.**
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo whilst driving, check frequently before or whilst driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 1

# Driving your vehicle


**Before driving** . . . . . 5-4
- Before entering vehicle . . . . . 5-4
- Necessary inspections . . . . . 5-4
- Before starting . . . . . 5-4

**Key positions** . . . . . 5-5
- Illuminated ignition switch . . . . . 5-5
- Ignition switch position . . . . . 5-6
- Starting the engine . . . . . 5-7

**Engine start/stop button** . . . . . 5-9
- Illuminated engine start/stop button . . . . . 5-9
- Engine start/stop button position . . . . . 5-9
- Starting the engine . . . . . 5-12

**Manual transaxle** . . . . . 5-15
- Manual transaxle operation . . . . . 5-15
- Good driving practices . . . . . 5-17

**Automatic transaxle** . . . . . 5-18
- Automatic transaxle operation . . . . . 5-18
- Good driving practices . . . . . 5-23

**Four wheel drive (4WD)** . . . . . 5-24
- Tight corner brake effect . . . . . 5-24
- Four Wheel Drive (4WD) transfer mode selection . 5-25
- For safe four-wheel drive operation . . . . . 5-26
- Reducing the risk of a rollover . . . . . 5-28

**Brake system** . . . . . 5-31
- Power brakes . . . . . 5-31
- Parking brake . . . . . 5-32
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) . . . . . 5-34
- Electronic stability control (ESC) . . . . . 5-36
- Vehicle stability management (VSM) . . . . . 5-39
- Hill-start assist control (HAC) . . . . . 5-41
- Downhill brake control (DBC) . . . . . 5-41
- Emergency stop signal (ESS) . . . . . 5-43
- Trailer stability assist (TSA) . . . . . 5-43
- Good braking practices . . . . . 5-44

**Cruise control system** . . . . . 5-46
- To set cruise control speed . . . . . 5-47
- To increase cruise control set speed . . . . . 5-47
- To decrease the cruising speed . . . . . 5-48
- To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on . . . . . 5-48
- To cancel cruise control, do one of the following . . . 5-48
- To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) . . . . . 5-49
- To turn cruise control off, do one of the following . 5-49

**Active ECO system** . . . . . 5-50
- Active ECO operation . . . . . 5-50
- When Active ECO is activated . . . . . 5-50
- Limitation of Active ECO operation . . . . . 5-50

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 2

**Economical operation** . . . . . 5-51
**Special driving conditions** . . . . . 5-53
• Hazardous driving conditions . . . . . 5-53
• Rocking the vehicle . . . . . 5-53
• Smooth cornering . . . . . 5-54
• Driving at night . . . . . 5-54
• Driving in the rain . . . . . 5-55
• Driving in flooded areas . . . . . 5-55
• Driving off-road . . . . . 5-55
• Highway driving . . . . . 5-56
**Winter driving** . . . . . 5-57
• Snowy or icy conditions . . . . . 5-57
• Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant . . . . . 5-59
• Check battery and cables . . . . . 5-59
• Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary . . . . . 5-59
• Check spark plugs and ignition system. . . . . 5-59
• To keep locks from freezing . . . . . 5-60
• Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system . . . . . 5-60
• Don't let your parking brake freeze . . . . . 5-60
• Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath . . . . 5-60
• Carry emergency equipment . . . . . 5-60
**Trailer towing** . . . . . 5-61
• Towbars . . . . . 5-62
• Safety chains . . . . . 5-63
• Trailer brakes . . . . . 5-63
• Driving with a trailer . . . . . 5-63
**Vehicle weight** . . . . . 5-71
• Base kerb weight . . . . . 5-71
• Vehicle kerb weight . . . . . 5-71
• Cargo weight . . . . . 5-71
• GAW (Gross axle weight) . . . . . 5-71
• GAWR (Gross axle weight rating) . . . . . 5-71
• GVW (Gross vehicle weight) . . . . . 5-71
• GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating) . . . . . 5-71
• Overloading . . . . . 5-71

5

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 3



**⚠ WARNING - ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!**

Engine exhaust fumes can be extremely dangerous. If, at any time, you smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately.

- **Do not inhale exhaust fumes.**
  Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.
- **Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.**
  The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.
- **Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.**
  Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Never run the engine in your garage any longer than it takes to start the engine and back the vehicle out.
- **Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the vehicle.**
  If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the vehicle, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan operating at one of the higher speeds so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

If you must drive with the tailgate open because you are carrying objects that make this necessary:

1. Close all windows.
2. Open side vents.
3. Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at one of the higher speeds.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, be sure the ventilation air intakes located just in front of the windscreen are kept clear of snow, ice, leaves or other obstructions.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 4



# BEFORE DRIVING

## Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tyres.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

## Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, with the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in Section 7, “Maintenance”.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving whilst distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver’s primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver’s eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.**

## Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. Refer to “Seat belts” in section 3 for more information on their proper use.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a vehicle into “Drive” or “Reverse”.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 5



**⚠ WARNING - Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs**

**Drinking and driving is dangerous. Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgement. Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving drunk.**

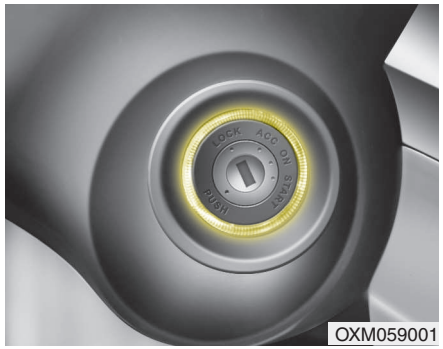
**You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive.**

**If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a cab.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.**
- **When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Keep all things in the vehicle safely stored.**
- **If you do not focus on driving, it may cause an accident. Be careful when operating what may disturb driving such as audio or heater. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely.**

## KEY POSITIONS



OXM059001

### Illuminated ignition switch (if equipped)

Whenever a front door is opened, the ignition switch will be illuminated for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on or go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 6



### Ignition switch position

***LOCK***

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position. When turning the ignition switch to the LOCK position, push the key inward at the ACC position and turn the key toward the LOCK position.

***ACC (Accessory)***

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.**

***ON***

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

*Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.*

***START***

Turn the ignition key to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning lamp can be checked in this position.

#### ⚠ WARNING - Ignition key

- **Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC whilst the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in 1st gear for the manual transaxle or P (Park) for the automatic transaxle, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**
- **Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 7



## Starting the engine

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal, and the clutch (if equipped).**

### ✻ NOTICE - Kick down mechanism (if equipped)

**If your vehicle is equipped with a kick down mechanism in the accelerator pedal, it prevents you from driving at full throttle unintentionally by making the driver require increased effort to depress the accelerator pedal. However, if you depress the pedal more than approximately 80%, the vehicle can be at full throttle and the accelerator pedal will be easier to depress. This is not a malfunction but a normal condition.**

***Starting the petrol engine (if equipped)***

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.
4. In extremely cold weather (below -18°C / 0°F) or after the vehicle has not been operated for several days, let the engine warm up without depressing the accelerator.

*Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started* ***without depressing the accelerator.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the engine stalls whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.***

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 8



***Starting the diesel engine (if equipped)***

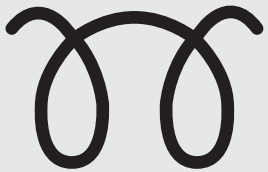
To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P(park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N(neutral) position.*

Glow indicator light



W-60

3. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position to pre-heat the engine. Then the glow indicator light will illuminate.
4. If the glow indicator light goes out, turn the ignition switch to the START position and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the engine were not started within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position during 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.**

**Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler**

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.

   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.

   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbo charger unit.***

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 9



## ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (IF EQUIPPED)



OLM059005R

### Illuminated engine start/stop button

Whenever the front door is opened, the engine start/stop button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. It will also go off immediately when the theft-alarm system is armed.

### Engine start/stop button position

***OFF***



Not illuminated

**• With manual transaxle**

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), stop the vehicle then press the engine start/stop button.

**• With automatic transaxle**

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the engine start/stop button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the engine start/stop button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

Also, the steering wheel locks when the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position to protect you against theft. It locks when the door is opened.

If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound. Try locking the steering wheel again. If the problem is not solved, we recommend, that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

In addition, if the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position after the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel will not lock and the warning chime will sound. In such a situation, close the door. Then the steering wheel will lock and the warning chime will stop.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the engine start/stop button will not work. Press the engine start/stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 10



**⚠ CAUTION**

***You are able to turn off the engine (START/RUN) or vehicle power (ON), only when the vehicle is not in motion. In an emergency situation whilst the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the engine start/stop button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.***

***ACC(Accessory)***



Orange indicator

**• With manual transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the clutch pedal.

**• With automatic transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button whilst it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.
The steering wheel unlocks and electrical accessories are operational.
If the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

***ON***



Blue indicator

**• With manual transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the ACC position without depressing the clutch pedal.

**• With automatic transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button whilst it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.
The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the engine start/stop button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 11



***START/RUN***



Not illuminated

**• With manual transaxle**

To start the engine, depress the clutch pedal and brake pedal, then press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

**• With automatic transaxle**

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

## ✻ NOTICE

**If you press the engine start/stop button without depressing the clutch pedal for manual transaxle vehicles or without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transaxle vehicles, the engine will not start and the engine start/stop button changes as follow:**
**OFF ➔ACC ➔ ON ➔ OFF or ACC**

## ✻ NOTICE

**If you leave the engine start/stop button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.**

## ⚠ WARNING

- **Never press the engine start/stop button whilst the vehicle is in motion. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never reach for the engine start/stop button or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in the area could cause loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 12



## Starting the engine

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**People with medical devices such as implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should not carry the smart key near the heart. The smart key system may affect the operation of such implanted medical devices. Failure to do so may result in interference with the medical device, which could result in serious injury.**

### *Starting the petrol engine (if equipped)*

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied.
3. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst starting the engine.

   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*
4. Press the engine start/stop button.
5. In extremely cold weather (below -18°C / 0°F) or after the vehicle has not been operated for several days, let the engine warm up without depressing the accelerator.

Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without depressing the accelerator.

### *Starting the diesel engine (if equipped)*

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst pressing the engine start/stop button to the START position.

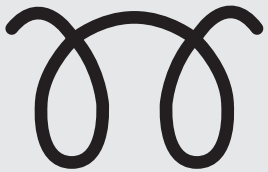
   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 13



Glow indicator light



W-60

3. Press the engine start/stop button whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Continue depressing the brake pedal until the illuminated glow indicator goes off. (approximately 5 seconds)
5. The engine starts running when the glow indicator goes off.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the engine start/stop button is pressed once more whilst the engine is pre-heating, the engine may start.**

**Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler**

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.
   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.
   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.***

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the " " indicator and the "KEY OUT" indicator will blink. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off whilst the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

### ⚠ WARNING

**The engine will start, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.**

**Never allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle touch the engine start/stop button or related parts.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 14



### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the engine stalls whilst the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the engine start/stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.***




### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button with the smart key.**
- **When the brake switch fuse is blown, you cannot start the engine normally. Replace the fuse with a new one. If not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button for 10 seconds whilst it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.**

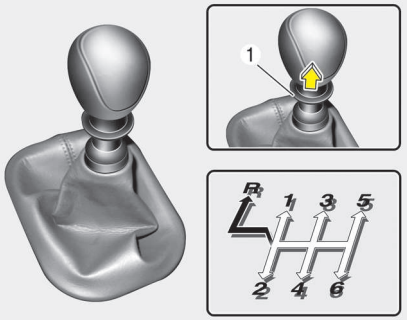
### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not press the engine start/stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the brake switch fuse is blown.***

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 15



## MANUAL TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)




⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pulling the ring (1).

➡ The ring (1) must be pulled up whilst moving the shift lever.

OEL059009

### Manual transaxle operation

The manual transaxle has 6 forward gears.

This shift pattern is imprinted on the shift knob. The transaxle is fully synchronized in all forward gears so shifting to either a higher or a lower gear is easily accomplished.

Press the clutch pedal down fully whilst shifting, then release it slowly.

If your vehicle is equipped with an ignition lock system, the engine will not start when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal. (if equipped)

The gearshift lever must be returned to the neutral position before shifting into R (Reverse). The ring located immediately below the shift knob must be pulled upward whilst moving the shift lever to the R position.

*Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into R (Reverse).*

*Never operate the engine with the tachometer (rpm) in the red zone.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When downshifting from fifth gear to fourth gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently press the gear shift lever sideways in such a manner that second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such over-revving of the engine may possibly cause engine damage.***
- ***Do not downshift more than 2 gears or downshift the gear when the engine is running at high speed (5,000 RPM or higher). Such a downshifting may damage the engine.***

- During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transaxle lubricant has warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transaxle.
- If you've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1st or R (Reverse), put the shift lever in N (Neutral) position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1st or R (Reverse) gear position.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 16



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an uphill grade, whilst waiting for a traffic light, etc.***
- ***Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transaxle shift forks.***
- ***When operating the clutch pedal, press the clutch pedal down fully. If you don't press the clutch pedal fully, the clutch may be damaged or noise may occur.***
- ***To prevent possible damage to the clutch system, do not start with the 2nd (second) gear engaged except when you start on a alippery road.***

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Then make sure the transaxle is shifted into 1st gear when the vehicle is parked on a level or uphill grade, and shifted into R (Reverse) on a downhill grade. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**
- **If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, it may move and cause a serious accident when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal whilst the parking brake is released and the shift lever not in the N(Neutral) position.**

***Using the clutch***

The clutch should be pressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be fully released whilst driving. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal whilst driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the vehicle on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the foot brake or parking brake to hold the vehicle on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 17



***Downshifting***

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or whilst driving up steep hills, downshift before the engine starts to labour. Downshifting reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you again need to increase your speed. When the vehicle is travelling down steep hills, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

## Good driving practices

- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This is extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear.
- Don't "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. This will help avoid over-revving the engine, which can cause damage.
- Slow down when you encounter cross winds. This gives you much better control of your vehicle.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into reverse. The transaxle can be damaged if you do not. To shift into reverse, depress the clutch, move the shift lever to neutral, wait three seconds, then shift to the reverse position.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

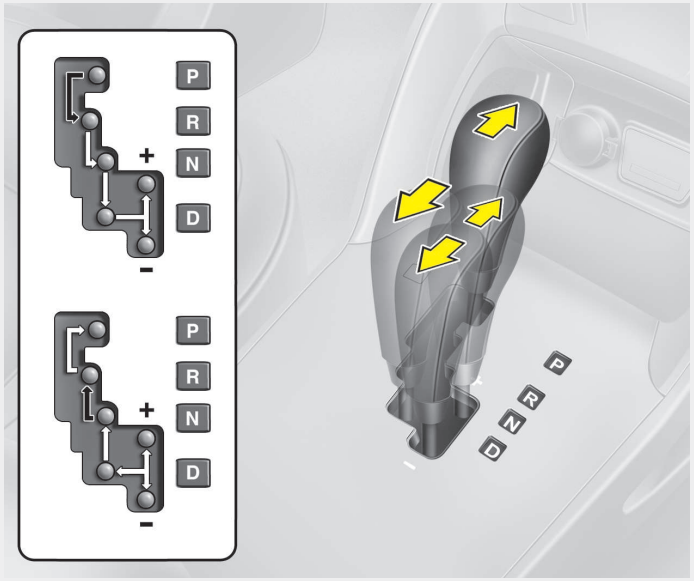
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 18



## AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)




➡ Depress the brake pedal when shifting, if your vehicle is equipped shift lock system.
⇨ The shift lever can be moved freely.

OEL059010R

### Automatic transaxle operation

The highly efficient automatic transaxle has 6 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transaxle Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 19



*For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.*

**⚠ WARNING - Automatic transaxle**

- **Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid damage to your transaxle, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.***
- ***When stopped on an upgrade, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.***
- ***Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.***

***Transaxle ranges***

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

**P (Park)**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 20



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.**
- **Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The transaxle may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion.***

**R (Reverse)**

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transaxle if you shift into R (Reverse) whilst the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in "Rocking the vehicle", in this manual.***

**N (Neutral)**

The wheels and transaxle are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

**D (Drive)**

This is the normal forward driving position. The transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

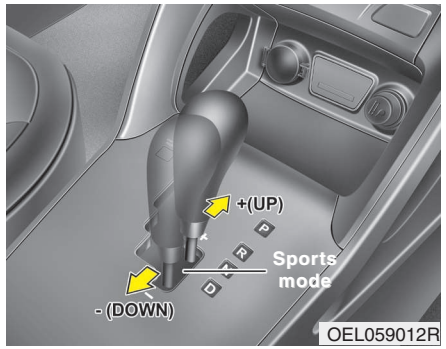
For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator fully, at which time the transaxle will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 21






**Sports mode**

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, sports mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In sports mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly. In contrast to a manual transaxle, the sports mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **In sports mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.**
- **In sports mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **In sports mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **In sports mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.**
- **To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.**
- **When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the -(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.**

***Shift lock system (if equipped)***

For your safety, the automatic transaxle has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift the transaxle from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

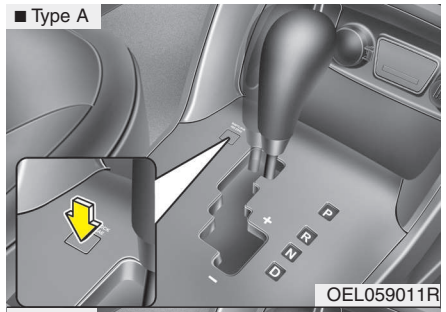
### ⚠ WARNING

**Always fully depress the brake pedal before and whilst shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:08 PM Page 22

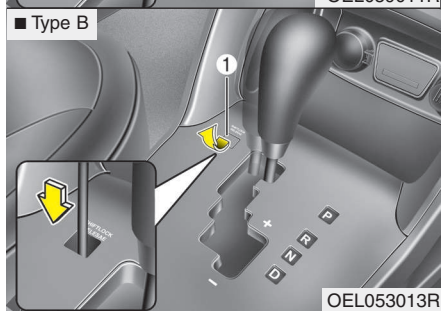


■ Type A




OEL059011R

■ Type B




OEL053013R

**Shift-lock override**

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

Type A

1. Press the shift-lock release button.
2. Move the shift lever.
3. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

Type B

1. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock override access hole.
2. Insert a screwdriver into the access hole and press down on the screwdriver.
3. Move the shift lever.
4. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)**

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position. Even the ignition switch is in LOCK position, the key cannot be removed.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 23



### Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into "P" when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**

#### *Moving up a steep grade from a standing start*

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually whilst releasing the service brakes.

**When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 24



## FOUR WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) (IF EQUIPPED)

Engine power can be delivered to all front and rear wheels for maximum traction. 4WD is useful when extra traction is required on road, such as, when driving on slippery, muddy, wet, or snow-covered roads. These vehicles are not designed for challenging off-road use. Occasional off-road use such as established unpaved roads and trails are OK. It is always important when travelling off-highway that the driver carefully reduces the speed to a level that does not exceed the safe operating speed for those conditions. In general, off-road conditions provide less traction and braking effectiveness than normal road conditions. The driver must be especially alert to avoid driving on slopes which tilt the vehicle to either side.

These factors must be carefully considered when driving off-road. Keeping the vehicle in contact with the driving surface and under control in these conditions is always the driver's responsibility for the safety of him/herself and his or her passengers.

**⚠ WARNING - Off road driving**

**This vehicle is designed primarily for on road use although it can operate effectively off road. However, it was not designed to drive in challenging off-road conditions. Driving in conditions that exceed the vehicle's intended design or the driver's experience level may result in severe injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the 4WD system warning light ( ) illuminates, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the 4WD system.**

**If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

### Tight corner brake effect

**⚠ CAUTION - 4WD**

***When turning sharply on a paved road at low speed whilst in four-wheel drive, steering control will be difficult.***

Tight corner brake effect is a unique characteristic of four-wheel drive vehicles caused by the difference in tyre rotation at the four wheels and the zero-degree alignment of the front wheels and suspension.

Sharp turns at low speeds should be carried out with caution.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 25



**Four Wheel Drive (4WD) transfer mode selection**

| Transfer mode | Selection button | Indicator light | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| **4WD AUTO** (4WD LOCK is deactivated) |  |  (Indicator light is not illuminated) | • When driving in 4WD AUTO mode, the vehicle operates similar to conventional 2WD vehicles under normal operating conditions. However, if the system determines that there is a need for the 4WD mode, the engine's driving power is distributed to all four wheels automatically without driver intervention.<br>• When driving on normal roads and pavement, the vehicle moves similar to conventional 2WD vehicles. |
| **4WD LOCK** |  |  (Indicator light is illuminated) | • This mode is used for climbing or descending sharp grades, off-road driving, driving on sandy and muddy roads, etc., to maximize traction.<br>• This mode automatically begins to deactivate at speeds above 30 km/h (19 mph) and is shifted to 4WD AUTO mode at speed above 40 km/h (25 mph). If the vehicle decelerates to speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph), however, the transfer mode is shifted into 4WD LOCK mode again. |

## ✻ NOTICE

- **When driving on normal roads, deactivate the 4WD LOCK mode by pushing the 4WD LOCK button (the indicator light goes off). Driving on normal roads with 4WD LOCK mode(especially, when cornering) may cause mechanical noise or vibration. The noise and vibration will disappear when the 4WD LOCK mode is deactivated. Some parts of the power train may be damaged by prolonged driving with the noise and vibration.**
- **When the 4WD LOCK mode is deactivated, a shock may be felt as the drive power is delivered entirely to the front wheels. This shock is not a mechanical failure.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 26

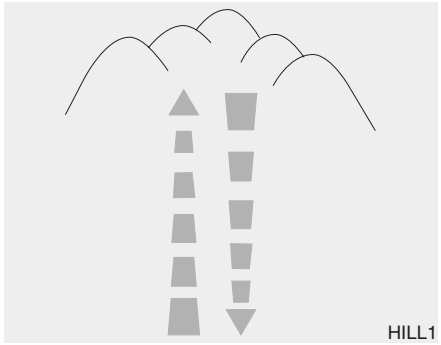


### For safe four-wheel drive operation

**⚠ WARNING - Four-wheel driving**

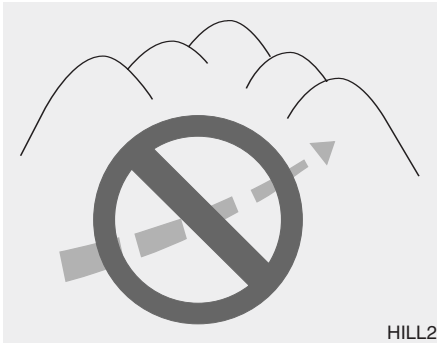
**The conditions of on-road or off-road that demand four-wheel drive mean all functions of your vehicle are exposed to extreme stress than under normal road conditions. Slow down and be ready for changes in the composition and traction of the surface under your tyres. If you have any doubt about the safety of the conditions you are facing, stop and consider the best way to proceed. Do not exceed the ability of yourself or your vehicle to operate safely.**

- Do not try to drive in deep standing water or mud since such conditions can stall your engine and clog your exhaust pipes. Do not drive down steep hills since it requires extreme skill to maintain control of the vehicle.



HILL1

- When you are driving up or down hills drive as straight as possible. Use extreme caution in going up or down steep hills, since you may flip your vehicle over depending on the grade, terrain and water/mud conditions.



HILL2

**⚠ WARNING - Hills**

**Driving across the contour of steep hills can be extremely dangerous. This danger can come from slight changes in the wheel angle which can destabilize the vehicle or, even if the vehicle is maintaining stability under power, it can lose that stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over without warning and without time for you to correct a mistake that could cause serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 27



- You must consciously take the effort to learn how to corner in a 4WD vehicle. Do not rely on your experience in conventional 2WD vehicles in choosing safe cornering speed in 4WD mode. For starters, you must drive more slowly in 4WD.
- Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

**⚠ WARNING - 4WD**

**Reduce speed when you turn corners. The centre of gravity of 4WD vehicles is higher than that of conventional 2WD vehicles, making them more likely to roll over when you turn corners too fast.**



OLM059022L

**⚠ WARNING - Steering wheel**

**Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering manoeuvre or from steering wheel rebound due to impact with objects on the ground. You could lose control of the steering wheel.**

- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.
- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.

**⚠ WARNING - Wind danger**

**If you are driving in heavy wind, the vehicle's higher centre of gravity decreases your steering control capacity and requires you to drive more slowly.**

- If you need to drive in the water, stop your vehicle, set your transfer to the 4WD LOCK mode and drive at less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

**⚠ WARNING - Driving through water**

**Drive slowly. If you are driving too fast in water, the water can get into the engine compartment and wet the ignition system, causing your vehicle to suddenly stop. If this happens and your vehicle is in a tilted position, your vehicle may roll over.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 28



### ✻ NOTICE

- **Do not drive in water if the level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Press the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking forces return.**
- **Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud or water (see "Maintenance under severe usage conditions" in section 7). Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off road use, especially cleaning the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Since the driving torque is always applied to the 4 wheels the performance of the 4WD vehicle is greatly affected by the condition of the tyres. Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tyres of the same size and type.**
- **A full time four wheel drive vehicle cannot be towed by an ordinary tow truck. Make sure that the vehicle is placed on a flat bed truck for moving.**

### ⚠ WARNING - 4WD driving

- **Avoid high cornering speed.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at high speed.**
- **In a collision, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die compared to a person wearing a seat belt.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to re-enter the roadway. In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**

### ⚠ CAUTION - Mud or snow

***If one of the front or rear wheels begins to spin in mud, snow, etc. the vehicle can sometimes be driven out by depressing the accelerator pedal further; however avoid running the engine continuously at high rpm because doing so could damage the 4WD system.***

### Reducing the risk of a rollover

This multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). SUV's have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. Specific design characteristics give them a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road, which allows you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional passenger vehicles, any more than low-slung sports vehicles are designed to perform satisfactorily in off-road conditions. Due to this risk, driver and passengers are strongly recommended to buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres, do not load your roof rack with heavy cargo, and never modify your vehicle in any way.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 29



**⚠ WARNING - Rollover**

**As with other Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV), failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.**

- **Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.**
- **Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, narrower track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles.**
- **A SUV is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional vehicles.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres.**
- **In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure everyone in the vehicle is properly buckled up.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Your vehicle is equipped with tyres designed to provide safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tyre and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the tyre and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.If you nevertheless decide to equip your vehicle with any tyre/wheel combination not recommended by HYUNDAI for off road driving, we recommend that you do not use these tyres for highway driving.**

**⚠ WARNING - Jacked vehicle**

**Whilst the full-time 4WD vehicle is being raised on a jack, never start the engine or cause the tyres to rotate.**

**There is the danger that rotating tyres touching the ground could cause the vehicle to go off the jack and to jump forward.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 30

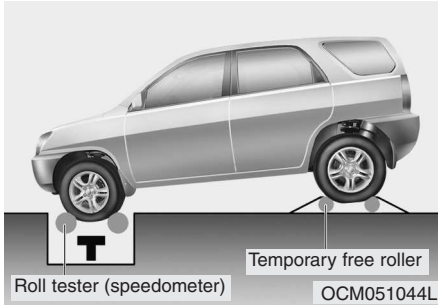


- Full-time 4WD vehicles must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Never engage the parking brake whilst performing these tests.**

- A full-time 4WD vehicle should not be tested on a 2WD roll tester. If a 2WD roll tester must be used, perform the following:




1. Check the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the front wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the rear wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

**⚠ WARNING - Dynamometer testing**

**Keep away from the front of the vehicle whilst the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. This is very dangerous as the vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When lifting up the vehicle, do not operate front and rear wheel separately. All four wheels should be operated.***
- ***If you need to operate the front wheel and rear wheel when lifting up the vehicle, you should release the parking brake.***

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 31



## BRAKE SYSTEM

### Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

**⚠ WARNING - Brakes**

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to sefely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly whilst maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.**
- **Always, confirm the position of the brake and accelerator pedal before driving. If you don't check the position of the accelerator and brake pedal before driving, you may depress the accelerator instead of the brake pedal. It may cause a serious accident.**

***In the event of brake failure***

If service brakes fail to operate whilst the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking brake**

**Applying the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 32



***Disc brakes wear indicator***

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

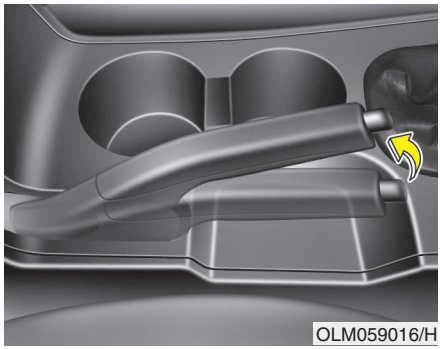
Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.***
- ***Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.***

**⚠ WARNING - Brake wear**

**This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.**



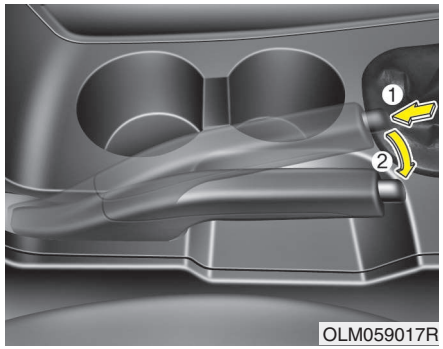
OLM059016/H

## Parking brake

***Applying the parking brake***

To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then pull up the parking brake lever as far as possible.

In addition it is recommended that when parking the vehicle on a gradient, the shift lever should be in a low gear on manual transaxle vehicles or in the Park position on automatic transaxle vehicles.




OLM059017R

***Releasing the parking brake***

To release the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and pull up the parking brake lever slightly. Secondly depress the release button (1) and lower the parking brake lever (2) whilst holding the button.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 33



If the parking brake does not release or does not release all the way, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the gearshift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake AND make sure the gearshift lever is securely positioned in 1st (First) gear or R (Reverse) for manual transaxle equipped vehicles and in P (Park) for automatic transaxle equipped vehicles.**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.***
- ***Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.***



WK-23_TF

Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 34



### Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

**⚠ WARNING**

**ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.**

**The braking distance for vehicle equipped with an anti-lock braking system (Electronic Stability Program System) may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.**

**During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds:**

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **With tyre chains installed.**
- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**The safety features of an ABS (or ESC) equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.**

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation warrants and allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 35



### ✻ NOTICE

**A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.**

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.




W-78

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the ABS warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, however, your regular brakes will work normally.***
- ***The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and operate your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the engine.***
- ***Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 36

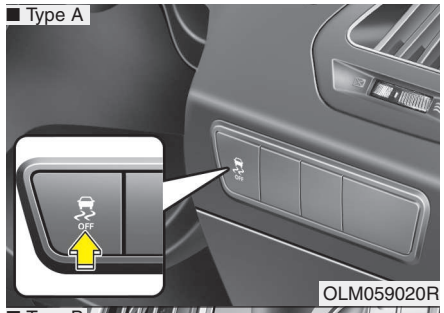


### ✻ NOTICE

**When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning.**

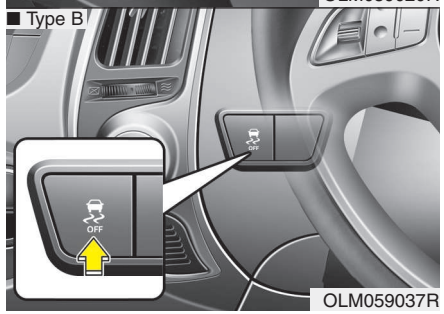
- **Do not pump your brakes!**
- **Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**

■ Type A




OLM059020R

■ Type B




OLM059037R

## Electronic stability control (ESC) (if equipped)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going.

ESC applies the brakes at individual wheels and intervenes in the engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding manoeuvres that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 37



The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices.

Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

## ✻ NOTICE

**A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Program System is functioning properly.**

### *ESC operation*

**ESC ON condition**



- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

**When operating**



When the ESC is in operation, ESP indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or slippery road, pressing the accelerator pedal may not cause the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) to increase.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 38



### *ESC operation off*

**ESC OFF state**




This car has 2 kinds of ESC off states.

If the engine stops when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

**• ESC off state 1**

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) shortly (ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) illuminates). At this state, the engine control function does not operate. It means the traction control function does not operate. Brake control function only operates.

**• ESC off state 2**

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) for more than 3 seconds. ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) illuminates and ESC OFF warning chime will sound. At this state, the engine control function and brake control function do not operate. It means the car stability control function does not operate any more.

■ ESC indicator light



■ ESC OFF indicator light




### *Indicator light*

When ignition switch is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres.***

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 39



**⚠ WARNING**

**The Electronic Stability Control system is only a driving aid; use precautions for safe driving by slowing down on curved, snowy, or icy roads. Drive slowly and don't attempt to accelerate whenever the ESC indicator light is blinking, or when the road surface is slippery.**

*ESC OFF usage*

**When driving**

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never press the ESC OFF button whilst ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).**

**If ESC is turned off whilst ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.**
- **Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.**

## Vehicle stability management (VSM) (if equipped)

This system provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering responses when a vehicle is driving on a slippery road or a vehicle detected changes in coefficient of friction between right wheels and left wheels when braking.

*VSM operation*

When the vehicle stability management is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.

**The VSM does not operate when:**

- Driving rearward
- ESC OFF indicator light ( OFF ) remains on the instrument cluster
- ESC indicator light remains on the instrument cluster

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 40



***VSM operation off***

If you press the ESC OFF button to turn off the ESC, the VSM will also cancel and the ESC OFF indicator light ( ) illuminates.

To turn on the VSM, press the button again. The ESC OFF indicator light goes out.

***Malfunction indicator***

The VSM can be deactivated even if you don't cancel the VSM operation by pressing the ESC OFF button. It indicates that a malfunction has been detected somewhere in the Electric Power Steering system or VSM system. If the ESC indicator light ( ) or EPS warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) on curves.**
- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) when a vehicle is braking on a split-mu road. The split-mu road is made of surfaces which have different friction forces.**

## ⚠ WARNING

- **The Vehicle Stability Management system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. Always hold the steering wheel firmly whilst driving.**
- **Your vehicle is designed to activate according to the driver's intention, even with installed VSM. Always follow all the normal precautions for driving at safe speeds for the conditions – including driving inclement weather and on a slippery road.**
- **Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 41



### Hill-start assist control (HAC) (if equipped)

A vehicle has the tendency to slip back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from slipping back by operating the brakes automatically for about 2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 2 seconds.

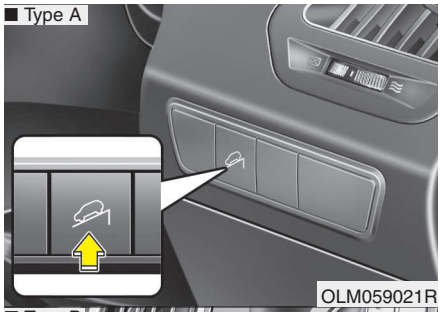
**⚠ WARNING**

**The HAC is activated only for about 2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.**

**✻ NOTICE**

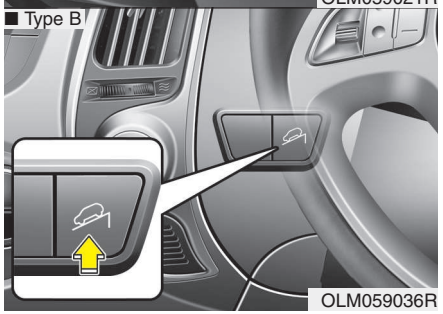
- **The HAC does not operate when the transaxle shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.**
- **The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.**

■ Type A



OLM059021R

■ Type B



OLM059036R

### Downhill brake control (DBC) (if equipped)

The Downhill Brake Control (DBC) supports the driver come down a steep hill without the driver depressing the brake pedal.

It slows down the vehicle under 8 km/h (5mph) with the automatic transaxle or 8 km/h (5 mph) with the manual transaxle and lets the driver concentrate on steering the vehicle.

DBC defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition is turned on.

The DBC can be turned on or off by pushing the button.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 42



| Mode | Indicator light | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Standby** |  illuminated | Press the DBC button when the vehicle speed is under 40km/h (25mph). The DBC system will turn ON and enter the standby mode.<br>The system does not turn ON if the vehicle speed is over 40km/h (25mph). |
| **Activated** |  blinks | In the standby mode, if the vehicle speed is under 35km/h (22mph) whilst driving down a steep hill, the DBC will activate automatically. |
| **Temporarily deactivated** |  illuminated | In the activated mode, the DBC will temporarily deactivate under the following conditions:<br>• The hill is not steep enough.<br>• The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed.<br>If the above conditions are gone, the DBC will automatically activate again. |
| **OFF** |  not illuminated | The DBC will turn OFF under the following conditions:<br>• The DBC button is pressed again.<br>• The vehicle speed is over 60km/h (38mph). |

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the DBC red indicator light illuminates, the system has overheated or something is wrong. The DBC will not activate. If the DBC red indicator light illuminates even though the DBC system has been cooled enough, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **The DBC does not turn ON in the P (Park) position.**
- **The DBC may not activate if the ESC (or BAS, if equipped) is activated.**
- **Noise or vibration may occur from the brakes when the DBC is activated.**
- **The rear stop light comes on when the DBC is activated.**
- **In a very steep hill even though the brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed the DBC may not deactivate.**
- **Always turn OFF the DBC on normal roads. The DBC might activate from the standby mode when abrupt corning or driving through speed bumps.**
- **DBC may activate and cause the engine to stop in vehicles with manual transaxle if you drive in 3rd gear (or above) with DBC on. Do not turn on DBC when driving in 3rd gear (or above).**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 43



### ESS : Emergency Stop Signal

The Emergency Stop Signal system alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop light when the vehicle suddenly stops or when the ABS activates in a stop. (The system activates when the vehicle speed is over 55km/h and the vehicle deceleration is over 7m/s² or the ABS activates when the vehicle emergency braking.)

When the vehicle speed is under 40 km/h and the ABS deactivates or the sudden stop situation is over, the stop light will not blink. Instead, the hazard warning flasher will turn on automatically.

The hazard warning flasher will turn off when the vehicle speed is over 10km/h after the vehicle has stopped. Also, it will turn off when the vehicle drives at low speed for some time. You can turn it off manually by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The Emergency Stop Signal system will not work if the hazard warning flasher is already on.***

### Trailer stability assist (TSA) (if equipped)

Trailer stability assist is operated as vehicle stability control system. Trailer stability assist system has an effort to stabilize the vehicle and trailer when the trailer sways or oscillates. There are various reasons making vehicle sway and oscillate. Almost case it happens at high speed however, if the trailer is affected by crosswinds, buffeting, and improper overloading, it may be a risk of swaying.

Factors of swaying such as:
- High speed
- Strong crosswinds
- Improper overloading
- Sudden controlling of steering wheel
- Uneven road

Trailer stability assist system continuously analyzes the vehicle and trailer instability. When the Trailer stability assist system detects some sway, the brakes are applied automatically to stabilize the vehicle on the front wheel. However, if it is not enough to stabilize, the brakes are applied on all wheels automatically and engine power is properly reduced. When the vehicle is stable from swaying, trailer stability assist system does not operate.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 44



### Good braking practices

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Whenever you leave or park your vehicle, always set the parking brake as far as possible and fully engage the vehicle's transaxle into the P (Park) position. If the parking brake is not fully engaged, the vehicle may move inadvertently and injure yourself and others.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorised HYUNDAI dealer for assistance.
- Don't coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.
- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal whilst driving can be dangerous because it can result in the brakes overheating and losing their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transaxle, don't let your vehicle creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 45



- Be caution when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no kerb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the gear selector lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transaxle to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 46



## CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




1. Cruise indicator
2. Cruise set indicator

The cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.

This system is designed to function above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

### ⚠ WARNING

- **If the cruise control is left on, (CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated), the cruise control can be switched on accidentally. Keep the cruise control system off (CRUISE indicator light OFF) when the cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Use the cruise control system only when travelling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use the cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.**
- **Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the cruise control system.**
- **Be careful when driving downhill using the cruise control system, which may increase the vehicle speed.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***During cruise-speed driving of a manual transaxle vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, since the engine will be overrevved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or release the cruise control ON-OFF switch.***

### ✻ NOTICE

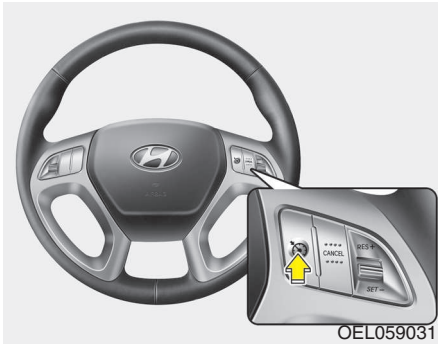
**During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**To activate cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel cruise control is in normal condition.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 47





OEL059031

**To set cruise control speed:**

1. Push the Cruise ON-OFF symbol button on the steering wheel to turn the system on. The Cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 40 km/h (25 mph).



OEL059033

3. Move the lever (1) down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate. Release the accelerator pedal. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

*On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly whilst going downhill.*



OEL059032

**To increase cruise control set speed:**

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever (1) up (to RES+) and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever (1) up (to RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 2.0 km/h (1.2 mph) or 1.6 km/h (1.0 mph) each time you move the lever up (to RES+) in this manner.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 48





OEL059033

**To decrease the cruising speed:**

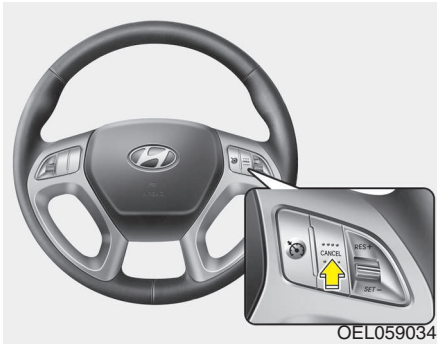
Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever (1) down (to SET-) and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the lever at the speed you want to maintain.
- Move the lever (1) down (to SET-) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 2.0 km/h (1.2 mph) or 1.6 km/h (1.0 mph) each time you move the lever down (to SET-) in this manner.

**To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:**

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.



OEL059034

**To cancel cruise control, do one of the following:**

- Press the brake pedal.
- Press the clutch pedal with a manual transaxle.
- Shift into N (Neutral) with an automatic transaxle.
- Press the CANCEL switch located on the steering wheel.
- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 15 km/h (9 mph).
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:09 PM Page 49



*Each of these actions will cancel cruise control operation (the SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume cruise control operation, move up the lever (to RES+) located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed.*

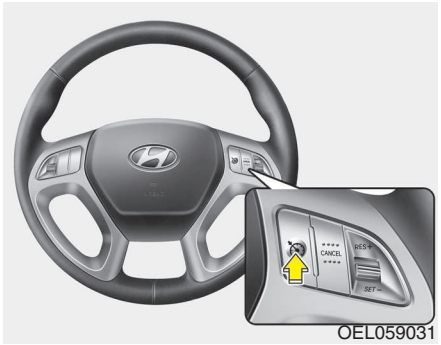


OEL059032

**To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph):**

If any method other than the cruise ON/OFF symbol switch was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when you move the lever (1) up (to RES+).

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).



OEL059031

**To turn cruise control off, do one of the following:**

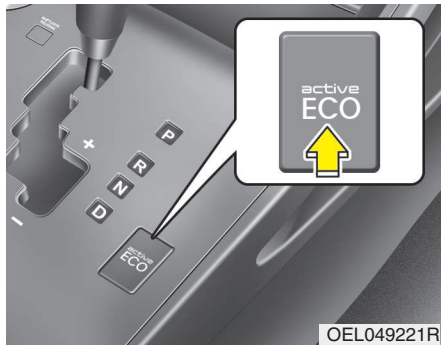
- Push the Cruise ON-OFF symbol button (the Cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off).
- Turn the ignition off.

*Both of these actions cancel cruise control operation. If you want to resume cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in "To set cruise control speed" on the previous page.*

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 50



## ACTIVE ECO SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




### Active ECO operation

Active ECO helps improve fuel efficiency by controlling the engine, transaxle and air conditioner. But fuel-efficiency can be changed by the driver's driving habits and road conditions.

- When the Active ECO button is pressed the ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.
- When the Active ECO is activated, it does not turn off even though the engine is restarted again. To turn off the system, press the active ECO button again.
- If Active ECO is turned off, it will return to the ECO mode.

### When Active ECO is activated:

- Vehicle noise may become loud.
- Vehicle speed may drop.
- The air conditioner performance may decline.

### Limitation of Active ECO operation :

If the following conditions occur whilst Active ECO is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low:
  The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill:
  The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because the engine torque is restricted.
- When using sports mode:
  The system will be limited according to the shift location.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 51



## ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers (miles) you can get from a litre (gallon) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jack-rabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Don't "ride" the brake or clutch pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tyres. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tyre wear. Check the tyre pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting kerbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tyre wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your vehicle in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule in Section 7. If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see Section 7 for details).
- Keep your vehicle clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the vehicle. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 52



- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Don't "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer to perform scheduled inspections and maintenance.

**⚠ WARNING - Engine off during motion**

**Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition whilst driving could engage the steering wheel lock resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 53



## SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

### Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

**⚠ WARNING - ABS**

**Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.**

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, tyre chains, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

**⚠ WARNING - Downshifting**

**Downshifting with an automatic transaxle, whilst driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.**

### Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between 1st (First) and R (Reverse) in vehicles equipped with a manual transaxle or R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an automatic transaxle. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transaxle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transaxle damage or failure, and tyre damage.***

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 54



**⚠ WARNING - Spinning tyres**

**Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tyre to overheat which could result in tyre damage that may injure bystanders.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**The ESC system (if equipped) should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**


OUN056051/H

### Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tyre wear will be held to a minimum.


OCM053010

### Driving at night

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed on vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 55



- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.


1VQA3003/H

## Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windscreen wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- If your tyres are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tyres are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly whilst driving until normal braking operation returns.

## Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.

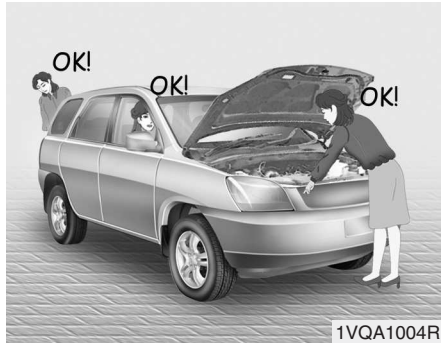
After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

## Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 56






## Highway driving

***Tyres:***

Adjust the tyre inflation pressures to specification. Low tyre inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tyres.

Avoid using worn or damaged tyres which may result in reduced traction or tyre failure.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Never exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure shown on the tyres.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Underinflated or overinflated tyres can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. Always check the tyres for proper inflation before driving. For proper tyre pressures, refer to section 8, "Tyres and wheels".**
- **Driving on tyres with no or insufficient tread is dangerous. Worn-out tyres can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, injury, and even death. Worn-out tyres should be replaced as soon as possible and should never be used for driving. Always check the tyre tread before driving your vehicle. For further information and tread limits, refer to section 7, "Tyres and wheels".**

***Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil:***

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both engine coolant and engine oil.

***Drive belt:***

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 57



## WINTER DRIVING




The more severe weather conditions of winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimise the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

### Snowy or icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tyres or to install tyre chains on your tyres. If snow tyres are needed, it is necessary to select tyres equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tyres. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.
During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front and your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tyre chains on the tyre will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Tyre chains are not legal in all countries. Check the country laws before fitting tyre chains.**

#### *Snow tyres*

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tyres of the same size and load range as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

**⚠ WARNING - Snow tyre size**

**Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.**

*Do not install studded tyres without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.*




### *Tyre chains*

Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tyres is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 15 mm (0.59 in). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturers warranty.

When using tyre chains, attach them to the drive wheels as follows.

2WD : Front wheels

4WD : All four wheels

If a full set of chains is not available for an 4WD vehicle, chains may be installed on the front wheels only.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tyres. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty. Also, the snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tyre. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class "S" certified.***
- ***Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.5 to 1 km (0.3 to 0.6 miles) to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.***

**Chain installation**

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until it stops. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

**⚠ WARNING**
**- Mounting chains**

**When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always place the vehicle in P (park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 59



**⚠ WARNING - Tyre chains**

- **The use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.**
- **Do not exceed 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Chains that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.***
- ***Stop driving and retighten the chains any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.***

### Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in section 7. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

### Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in section 7. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

### Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See section 8 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

### Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs as described in section 7 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 60



### To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

### Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorised HYUNDAI dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

### Don't let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

### Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components is not obstructed.

### Carry emergency equipment

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 61



## TRAILER TOWING

If you are considering towing with your vehicle, you should first check with your country's Department of Motor Vehicles to determine their legal requirements.

Since laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. We recommend that you ask an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - Towing a trailer**

**If you don't use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well - or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.**

**⚠ WARNING - Weight limits**

**Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (gross combination weight), GVW (gross vehicle weight), GAW (gross axle weight ) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section.***

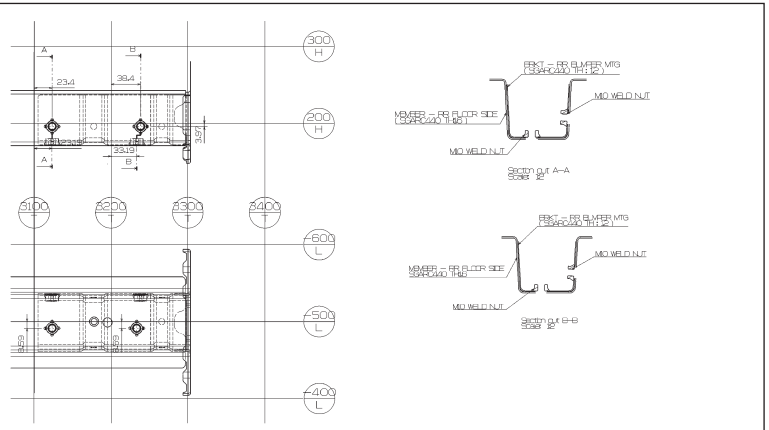
Your vehicle can tow a trailer. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the trailer” that appears later in this section.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

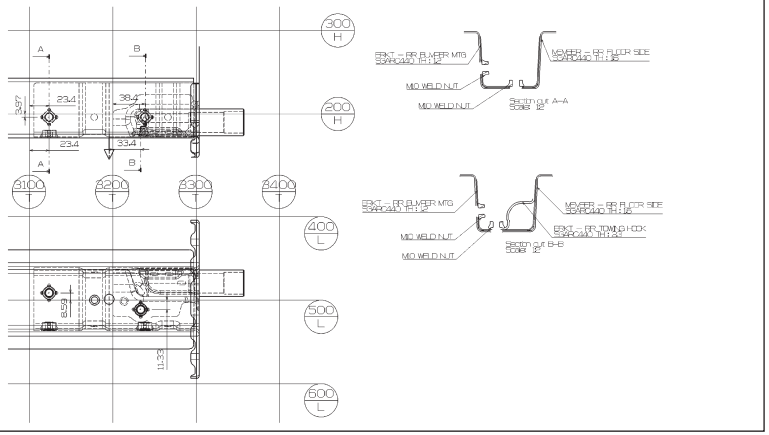
This section contains many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transaxle, wheel assemblies, and tyres are forced to work harder against the load of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads. This additional burden generates extra heat. The trailer also adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

• Left side



• Right side



## Towbars

It's important to have the correct towbar equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right towbar. Here are some rules to follow:

- Will you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer towbar? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the towbar.

  If you don't seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for towbars. Do not attach rental towbars or other bumper-type towbars to them. Use only a frame-mounted towbar that does not attach to the bumper.
- HYUNDAI trailer towbar accessory is available at an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**We recommend only genuine HYUNDAI towbars (the towbars are made and tested in Australia/NZ for local conditions).**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 63



### Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the towbar.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the towbar manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

### Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weight exceeds the maximum allowed weight without trailer brakes, then the trailer will also require its own brakes as well. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

- Don't tap into or modify your vehicle's brake system.

**⚠ WARNING - Trailer brakes**

**Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.**

### Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly so responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer towbar and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tyres and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and any trailer brakes are still working.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 64



### *Following distance*

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

### *Passing*

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

### *Backing up*

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

### *Making turns*

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, kerbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden manoeuvres. Signal well in advance.

### *Turn signals when towing a trailer*

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use only an approved trailer wiring harness.

An authorised HYUNDAI dealer can assist you in installing the wiring harness.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Failure to use an approved trailer wiring harness could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 65



### *Driving on grades*

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an automatic transaxle, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimise heat build up and extend the life of your transaxle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat.***

  ***If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves across the dial towards "H" (HOT), pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.***
- ***You must decide driving speed depending on trailer weight and uphill grade to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.***

### *Parking on hills*

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill. People can be seriously or fatally injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged if unexpectedly roll down hill.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking on a hill**

**Parking your vehicle on a hill with a trailer attached could cause serious injury or death, should the trailer break loose.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 66



However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the kerb (left if headed down hill, right if headed up hill).
2. If the vehicle has a manual transaxle, place the car in neutral. If the vehicle has an automatic transaxle, place the car in P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes, reapply the parking brake and shift the vehicle to R (Reverse) for manual transaxle or P (Park) for automatic transaxle.
7. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking brake**

**It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the parking brake is not firmly set.**

**If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be seriously or fatally injured.**

**When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill**

1. With the manual transaxle in Neutral or automatic transaxle in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down whilst you:
   - Start your engine;
   - Shift into gear; and
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 67



### Maintenance when trailer towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, automatic transaxle fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. Each item is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Don't forget to also maintain your trailer and towbar. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all towbar nuts and bolts should be tight.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur in hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the A/C and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.***
- ***When towing check transaxle fluid more frequently.***

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 68



### If you do decide to pull a trailer (For Australia)

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Do not do any towing with your car during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly run in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transaxle damage.
- When towing a trailer, be sure to consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h (60 mph)).
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted speed limit, whichever is lower.

**Towing Trailer**

The recommended towing capacity of this vehicle will be provided with the Genuine HYUNDAI Approved Tow Bar, which will meet the requirements of Australian Standard: AS 4177.

For further information with regards to trailer towing:

- on Genuine HYUNDAI parts and accessories (including the Genuine HYUNDAI Approved Tow Bar and its availability for purchase) please consult your nearest **authorised HYUNDAI dealer** or visit **www.hyundai.com.au**.
- on Rules and Regulations please consult your States or Territories road authorities.

It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that any tow bar used is compatible with and suitable for your vehicle, and is within the towing capacity of your vehicle. Your HYUNDAI vehicle should not be used to tow heavy loads as it is not designed for such use.

Subject to applicable law, HYUNDAI Motor Company Australia Pty Ltd shall not be liable for any losses, damages, costs, expenses (including but not limited to consequential and indirect losses, personal injury and deaths) caused by towing which is not in compliance with the instructions set out in this owner's manual and under relevant law, rules and regulation.

**⚠ WARNING**

**HYUNDAI DO NOT recommend the use of load levelling devices of any type. The use of a load levelling devices may place undue stress on the chassis causing chassis or mounting point failure.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 69



### If you do decide to pull a trailer (For New Zealand)

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Do not do any towing with your car during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly run in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transaxle damage.
- When towing a trailer, be sure to consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h (60 mph)).
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted speed limit, whichever is lower.

**Towing Capacity Note**

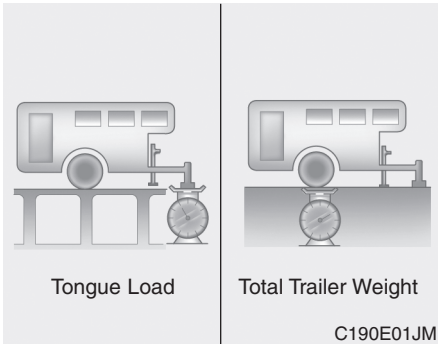
The recommended towing capacity of this vehicle will be provided with the Genuine HYUNDAI Approved Tow Bar.

- To enquire about the towing capacity of this vehicle, please visit www.hyundai.co.nz, or call us on 0800 HYUNDAI.
- To enquire about Genuine HYUNDAI parts and accessories (including the Genuine HYUNDAI Approved Tow Bar and its availability for purchase) please consult your nearest authorised HYUNDAI dealer/service agent, call us on 0800 HYUNDAI or visit www.hyundai.co.nz.

It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that any tow bar used is compatible with and suitable for their vehicle, and is within the towing capacity of their vehicle. Your HYUNDAI vehicle should not be used to tow heavy loads beyond the recommended towing capacities displayed on www.hyundai.co.nz as it is not designed for such use. Subject to applicable law, HYUNDAI Motors New Zealand Ltd shall not be liable for any losses, damages, costs, expenses (including but not limited to consequential and indirect losses, personal injury and deaths) caused by towing which is not in compliance with instructions set out in the owner's manual.

**⚠ WARNING**

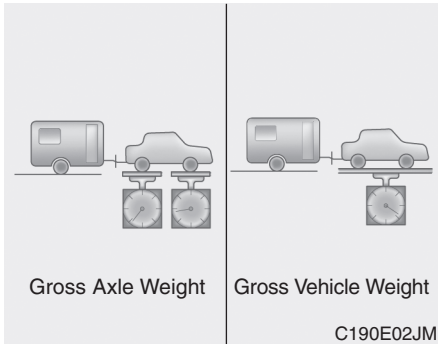
**HYUNDAI DO NOT recommend the use of load levelling devices of any type. The use of a load levelling devices may place undue stress on the chassis causing chassis or mounting point failure.**




***Weight of the trailer***

How heavy can a trailer safely be? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.




***Weight of the trailer tongue***

The tongue load of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the kerb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will also be carrying that weight.

The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum permissible trailer tongue load. After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

**⚠ WARNING - Trailer**

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**
- **An improperly loaded trailer can cause loss of vehicle control.**

EL(FL) Aust 5.QXP 7/26/2013 2:10 PM Page 71



## VEHICLE WEIGHT

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's specifications and the certification label:

### Base kerb weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

### Vehicle kerb weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

### Cargo weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

### GAW (Gross axle weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

### GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the certification label.
The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

### GVW (Gross vehicle weight)

This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

### GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label.

### Overloading

**⚠ WARNING - Vehicle weight**

**The gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the certification label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.**

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:11 PM Page 1

# What to do in an emergency

**Road warning . . . . . 6-2**
- **Hazard warning flasher . . . . . 6-2**

**In case of an emergency whilst driving . . . . . 6-3**
- **If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing. . . . . 6-3**
- **If you have a flat tyre whilst driving. . . . . 6-3**
- **If engine stalls whilst driving . . . . . 6-3**

**If the engine will not start . . . . . 6-4**
- **If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly . . . . 6-4**
- **If engine turns over normally but does not start . . . . 6-4**

**Emergency starting . . . . . 6-5**
- **Jump starting. . . . . 6-5**
- **Push-starting . . . . . 6-6**

**If the engine overheats. . . . . 6-7**

**If you have a flat tyre. . . . . 6-8**
- **Jack and tools . . . . . 6-8**
- **Removing and storing the spare tyre . . . . . 6-9**
- **Changing tyres . . . . . 6-9**

**Towing . . . . . 6-14**
- **Towing service . . . . . 6-14**
- **Removable towing hook . . . . . 6-15**
- **Emergency towing. . . . . 6-16**

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:11 PM Page 2



## ROAD WARNING




### Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the centre console switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher whilst the vehicle is being towed.

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:11 PM Page 3



## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILST DRIVING

### If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.
- If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, the vehicle can move forward by shifting to the 2(second) or 3(third) gear and then turning the starter without depressing the clutch pedal.

### If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
2. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transaxle in P (automatic transaxle) or reverse (manual transaxle).
3. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tyre, follow the instruction provided later in this section.

### If engine stalls whilst driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, we recommend that you contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:11 PM Page 4



## IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

### If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. If your vehicle has an automatic transaxle, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting".

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the engine will not start, do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage. In addition, push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter to be overloaded and create a fire hazard.**

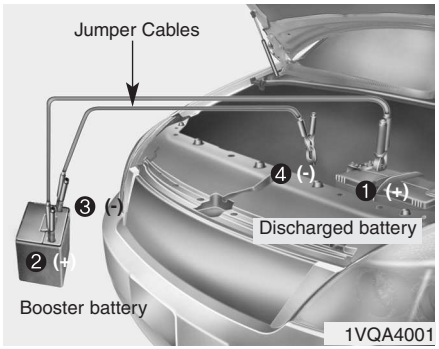
### If engine turns over normally but does not start

1. Check fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position, check all connectors at ignition, coil and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you call an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:11 PM Page 5



## EMERGENCY STARTING




Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

### Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow the jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).***

**⚠ WARNING - Battery**

**Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Battery**

- **Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks.**
  **If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.**

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:11 PM Page 6



***Jump starting procedure***

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles to touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2). Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.
   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

**⚠ CAUTION - Battery cables**

***Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.***

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

*If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.*

## Push-starting

Your manual transaxle-equipped vehicle should not be push-started because it might damage the emission control system. Vehicles equipped with automatic transaxle cannot be push-started. Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.**

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:11 PM Page 7



## IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or neutral (manual transaxle) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the bonnet, stop the engine. Do not open the bonnet until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

**⚠ WARNING**

**Whilst the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.**

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and we recommend that you call an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This can allow coolant to be blown out of the opening and cause serious burns.**

6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, we recommend that you call an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

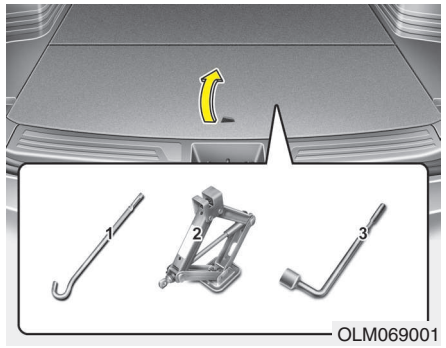
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:11 PM Page 8



## IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE




### Jack and tools

The jack, jack handle, wheel brace are stored in the luggage compartment.

Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.

(1) Jack handle

(2) Jack

(3) Wheel brace

*Jacking instructions*

The jack is provided for emergency tyre changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” whilst the vehicle is in motion, store it properly and fasten the jack screw fully.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING - Changing tyres**

- **Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.**
- **Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tyre. The jack should be used on firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.**
- **Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.**

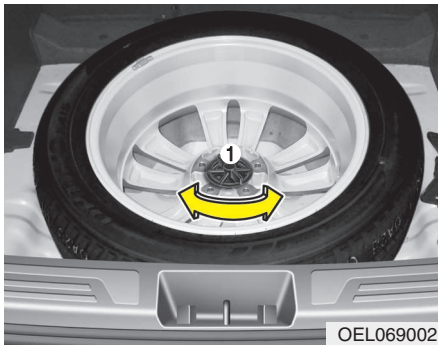
**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:11 PM Page 9



**(Continued)**

- **The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.**
- **Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**
- **Do not start or run the engine whilst the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle whilst it is on the jack.**
- **Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.**

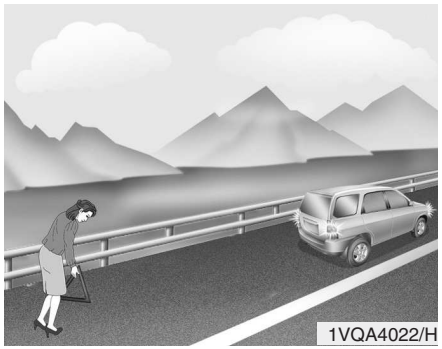



### Removing and storing the spare tyre

1. Turn the tyre hold-down wing bolt (1) counterclockwise.

Store the tyre in the reverse order of removal.

To prevent the spare tyre and tools from “rattling” whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

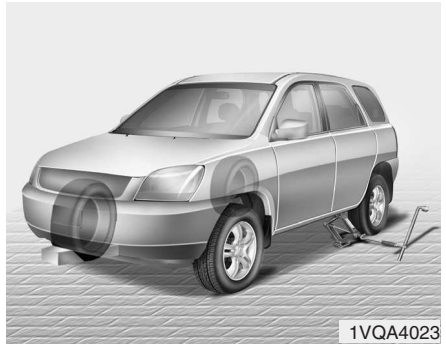



### Changing tyres

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Shift the shift lever into R (Reverse) with manual transaxle or P (Park) with automatic transaxle.
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:12 PM Page 10

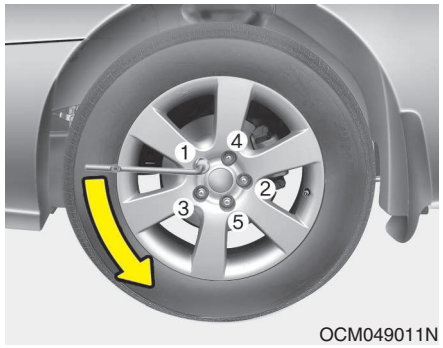



1VQA4023

4. Remove the wheel brace, jack, jack handle, and spare tyre from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.

**⚠ WARNING - Changing a tyre**

- **To prevent vehicle movement whilst changing a tyre, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.**
- **We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**

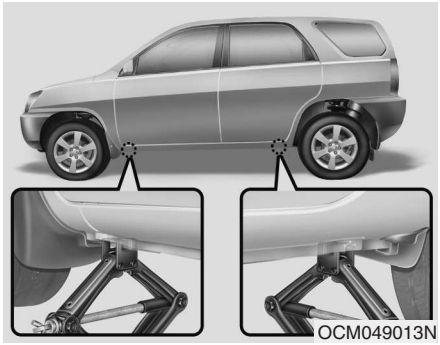


OCM049011N

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tyre has been raised off the ground.

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:12 PM Page 11




OCM049013N

7. Place the jack at the front or rear jacking position closest to the tyre you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to index with the jack.

**⚠ WARNING - Jack location**
**To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.**


OCM054012

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tyre just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1.2 in). Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tyre, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them. If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:12 PM Page 12



**⚠ WARNING**

**Wheels and wheel covers may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.**

**If there is, remove it. If there is not good contact on the mounting surface between the wheel and hub, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.**

10. To reinstall the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. The nuts should be installed with their tapered small diameter ends directed inward. Jiggle the tyre to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.



OEL069007

Then position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle.

Go around the wheel tightening every other nut until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**Wheel nut tightening torque:**

Steel wheel & aluminium alloy wheel:

9~11 kg.m (65~79 lb.ft)

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:12 PM Page 13



If you have a tyre gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tyre pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tyre. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed wheels, always secure the flat tyre in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.***

***Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

**⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs**

**If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.**

To prevent the jack, jack handle, wheel brace and spare tyre from rattling whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

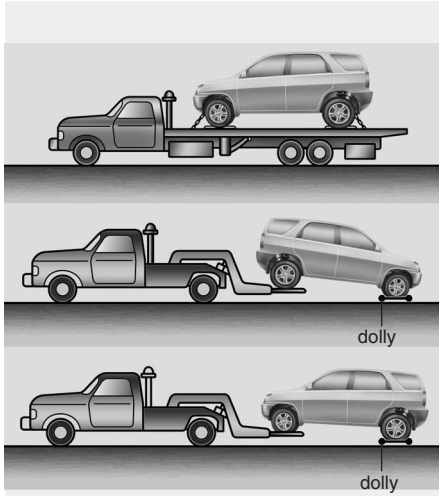
**⚠ WARNING - Inadequate spare tyre pressure**

**Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to "Tyres and wheels" in section 8.**

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:12 PM Page 14



## TOWING




OXM069028

### Towing service

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

On 4WD vehicles, your vehicle must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.

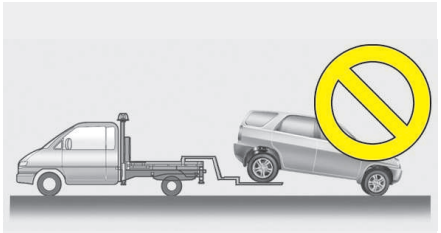
**⚠ CAUTION**

***The 4WD vehicle should never be towed with the wheels on the ground. This can cause serious damage to the transaxle or the 4WD system.***

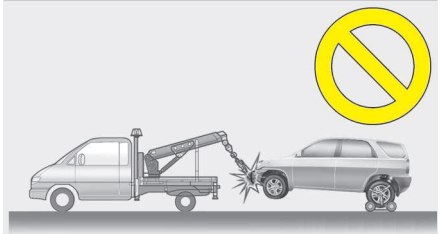
On 2WD vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.



OUN046030



OCM054034

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.***
- ***Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.***

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:12 PM Page 15



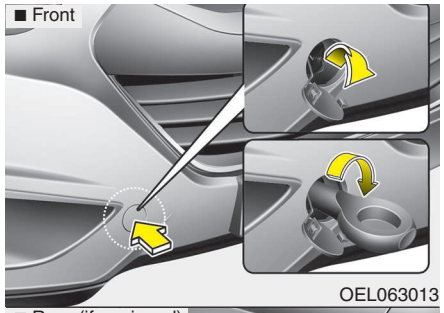
When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

**⚠ CAUTION**

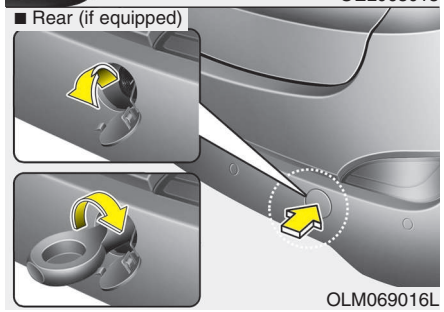
***Failure to place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transaxle.***

■ Front



OEL063013

■ Rear (if equipped)



OLM069016L

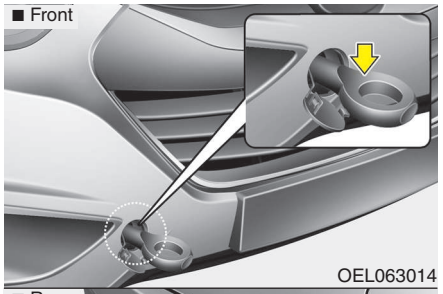
**Removable towing hook (if equipped)**

1. Open the tailgate, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
2. Remove the hole cover pressing the lower part of the cover on the front or rear bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:12 PM Page 16

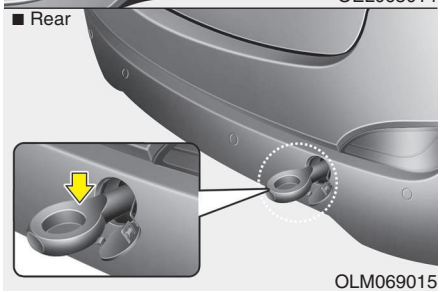


■ Front



OEL063014

■ Rear



OLM069015

## Emergency towing

**If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer or a commercial tow truck service.**

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speed. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the towing hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.***
- ***Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.***
- ***Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.***

- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply steady and even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

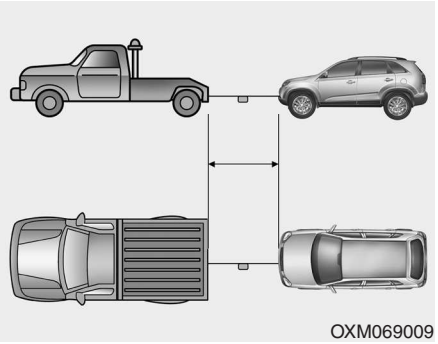
EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:12 PM Page 17



**⚠ WARNING**

**Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.**

- **Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving manoeuvres which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.**
- **If the disabled vehicle is unable to be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. Contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.**
- **Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.**
- **Keep away from the vehicle during towing.**



OXM069009

- Use a towing strap less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 inches) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loosened during towing.

***Emergency towing precautions***

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

EL(FL) Aust 6.QXP 7/26/2013 2:12 PM Page 18



### ⚠ CAUTION - Automatic transaxle

- ***If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transaxle is in neutral. Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the ignition switch in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.***
- ***To avoid serious damage to the automatic transaxle, limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h (10 mph) and drive less than 1.5 km (1 mile) when towing.***
- ***Before towing, check the automatic transaxle fluid leak under your vehicle. If the automatic transaxle fluid is leaking, a flatbed equipment or towing dolly must be used.***

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 1

# Maintenance


**Engine compartment** . . . . . 7-3
**Maintenance services** . . . . . 7-5
- Owner's responsibility . . . . . 7-5
- Owner maintenance precautions . . . . . 7-5
- Engine compartment precautions (Diesel engine) . . . 7-6

**Owner maintenance** . . . . . 7-7
- Owner maintenance schedule. . . . . 7-7

**Scheduled maintenance service.** . . . . . 7-9
- Normal maintenance schedule . . . . . 7-10
- Maintenance under severe usage conditions . . . . . 7-17

**Explanation of scheduled maintenance items** . . . 7-19
**Engine oil.** . . . . . 7-22
- Checking the engine oil level . . . . . 7-22
- Changing the engine oil and filter . . . . . 7-23

**Engine coolant** . . . . . 7-23
- Checking the coolant level . . . . . 7-23
- Changing the coolant . . . . . 7-25

**Brake/clutch fluid.** . . . . . 7-26
- Checking the brake/clutch fluid level . . . . . 7-26

**Washer fluid** . . . . . 7-27
- Checking the washer fluid level . . . . . 7-27

**Parking brake** . . . . . 7-27
- Check the parking brake . . . . . 7-27

**Fuel Filter (For Diesel).** . . . . . 7-28
- Draining water from fuel filter . . . . . 7-28
- Extracting air from the fuel filter . . . . . 7-28
- Fuel filter cartridge replacement. . . . . 7-29

**Air cleaner.** . . . . . 7-30
- Filter replacement . . . . . 7-30

**Climate control air filter** . . . . . 7-32
- Filter inspection. . . . . 7-32
- Filter replacement . . . . . 7-32

**Wiper blades** . . . . . 7-34
- Blade inspection. . . . . 7-34
- Blade replacement . . . . . 7-34

**Battery** . . . . . 7-37
- For best battery service . . . . . 7-37
- Battery capacity label . . . . . 7-38
- Battery recharging . . . . . 7-39
- Reset items . . . . . 7-39

**Tyres and wheels** . . . . . 7-40
- Tyre care . . . . . 7-40
- Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures . . . . . 7-40
- Checking tyre inflation pressure . . . . . 7-42
- Tyre rotation . . . . . 7-43
- Wheel alignment and tyre balance . . . . . 7-44
- Tyre replacement. . . . . 7-44
- Wheel replacement . . . . . 7-45

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 2

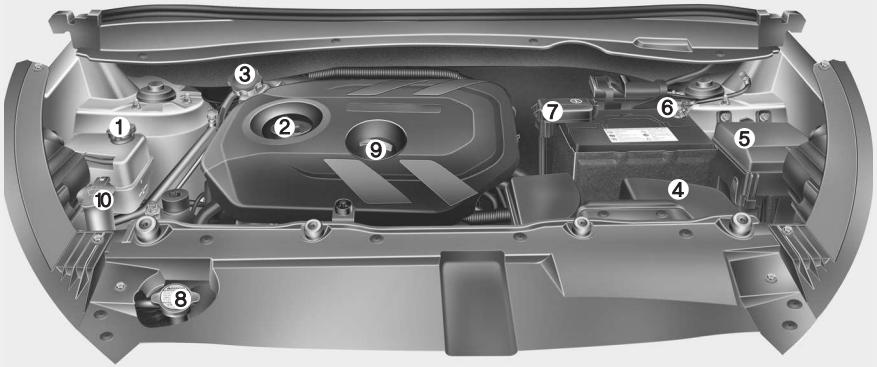
• Tyre traction. . . . . 7-46
• Tyre maintenance . . . . . 7-46
• Tyre sidewall labeling . . . . . 7-46
• Low aspect ratio tyre . . . . . 7-50
**Fuses** . . . . . 7-51
• Fuse/relay panel description. . . . . 7-56
**Light bulbs** . . . . . 7-63
• Headlight, position light, turn signal light, front fog light bulb replacement. . . . . 7-64
• Headlight and front fog light aiming. . . . . 7-67
• Side repeater light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-72
• Rear combination light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-72
• Rear fog light . . . . . 7-74
• High mounted stop light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-74
• License plate light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-75
• Interior light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-76
**Appearance care** . . . . . 7-77
• Exterior care . . . . . 7-77
• Interior care . . . . . 7-82
**Emission control system** . . . . . 7-83
• Crankcase emission control system . . . . . 7-83
• Evaporative emission control system . . . . . 7-83
• Exhaust emission control system . . . . . 7-84

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 3



## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **Petrol Engine (2.0L) - GDI**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Radiator cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

* : if equipped

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL073300R

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 4



**■ Diesel Engine (2.0L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Fuse box
3. Fuel filter
4. Engine oil dipstick
5. Engine oil filler cap
6. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir
7. Air cleaner
8. Negative battery terminal
9. Positive battery terminal
10. Radiator cap
11. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

* : if equipped

* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL079002R

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 5



## MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

### Owner's responsibility

**✻ NOTICE**

**Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.**

We recommend in general that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer. You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties. Detailed warranty information is provided in your Service Passport. Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered when your vehicle is covered by warranty.

### Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 6



**⚠ WARNING - Maintenance work**

- **Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured whilst performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Working under the bonnet with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury. Therefore, if you must run the engine whilst working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.**

### Engine compartment precautions (Diesel engine)

- The piezo injector operates at high voltage (maximum 200v). Therefore, the following accidents may occur.
  - Direct contact with the injector or injector wiring may cause electric shock or damage your muscle or nerve system.
  - The electromagnetic wave from the operating injector may cause the artificial heart pacemaker to malfunction.
- Follow the safety tips provided below, when you are checking the engine room whilst the engine is running.
  - Do not touch the injector, injector wirings, and the engine computer whilst the engine is running.
  - Do not remove the injector connector whilst the engine is running.
  - People using pacemakers must not go near the engine whilst the engine is starting or running.

**⚠ WARNING - Diesel Engine**

**Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High-pressure pump, rail, injectors and high-pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst engine is running, since the high currents in the electronic engine control system produce considerable magnetic fields.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 7



## OWNER MAINTENANCE

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle. If you have any question, we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

### Owner maintenance schedule

***When you stop for fuel:***

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check coolant level in coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tyres.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause burns or other serious injury.**

***Whilst operating your vehicle:***

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transaxle occurs, check the transaxle fluid level.
- Check manual transaxle operation, including clutch operation.
- Check automatic transaxle P (Park) function.
- Check parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 8



***At least monthly:***

- Check coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare.

***At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall) :***

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlight alignment.
- Check muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tyres and loose wheel lug nuts.

***At least once a year :***

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and checks, and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Check the power steering fluid level.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transaxle linkage and controls.
- Clean battery and terminals.
- Check the brake (and clutch) fluid level.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 9



## SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated short distance driving.
- Driving in dusty conditions or sandy areas.
- Extensive use of brakes.
- Driving in areas where salt or other corrosive materials are being used.
- Driving on rough or muddy roads.
- Driving in mountainous areas.
- Extended periods of idling or low speed operation.
- Driving for a prolonged period in cold temperatures and/or extremely humid climates.
- More than 50% driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32°C (90°F).

*If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.*

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 10



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

*1 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km or before starting a long trip.

*2 : The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

*3 : Inspect and if necessary correct or replace. Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator, pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

*4 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule. We recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer for details.

*5 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. HYUNDAI recommends "every 7,500km inspection, every 15,000km replacement".
If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule. We recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer for details.

*6 : Manual transaxle fluid, transfer case oil and rear differential oil should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water.

*7 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

*8 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

*9 : If good quality petrols meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorised HYUNDAI dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 11



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

| 15,000 km or 12 months |
|---|
| ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter |
| ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped) |
| ❑ Inspect battery condition |
| ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid |
| ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections |
| ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads |
| ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints |
| ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots |
| ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear) |
| ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped) |
| ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1 *2 |
| ❑ Add fuel additives *9 |

❋ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

| 30,000 km or 24 months |
|---|
| ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter |
| ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped) |
| ❑ Inspect battery condition |
| ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections |
| ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads |
| ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *3 |
| ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots |
| ❑ Inspect exhaust system |
| ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints |
| ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Petrol) *4 |
| ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *5 |
| ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel) |
| ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Petrol) |
| ❑ Inspect parking brake |
| ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD) |
| ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots |

(Continued)

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 12



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1 *2
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**45,000 km or 36 months**

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1 *2
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 13



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

**60,000 km or 48 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, inspect 60,000 km or 48 months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *3
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Petrol)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *6
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD) (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect rear differential oil (4WD) *6

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect transfer case oil (4WD) *6
- ❑ Inspect vapour hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1 *2
- ❑ Replace fuel filter (Petrol) *4
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *5
- ❑ Replace fuel tank air filter (Petrol)
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 14



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

**75,000 km or 60 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1 *2
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**90,000 km or 72 months**

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, inspect 60,000 km or 48 months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *3
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *3
  (At first, inspect 90,000 km or 48 months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Petrol) *4
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *5
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Petrol)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD) (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots

(Continued)

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 15



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1 *2
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**105,000 km or 84 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1 *2
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 16



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

**120,000 km or 96 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, inspect 60,000 km or 48 months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Petrol) *3
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *3
  (At first, inspect 90,000 km or 48 months
  after that, inspect every 30,000 km or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Petrol)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *6
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD) (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect rear differential oil (4WD) *6

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tyre (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect transfer case oil (4WD) *6
- ❑ Inspect vapour hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace coolant *7
  (At first 210,000 km or 120 months,
  after every 30,000 km or 24 months) *8
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1 *2
- ❑ Replace fuel filter (Petrol) *4
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *5
- ❑ Replace fuel tank air filter (Petrol)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (Petrol)
  (Every 150,000 km or 120 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**No check, No service required**

- ❑ Automatic transaxle fluid

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 17



## MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.
Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

| Maintenance item | Maintenance operation | Maintenance intervals | Driving condition |
|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil and engine oil filter | R | Every 7,500 km or 6 months | A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L |
| Air cleaner filter | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E |
| Spark plug | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | B, H |
| Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) | R | Every 120,000 km | C, D, E, G, H, I, K |
| Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped) | R | Every 100,000 km | A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |
| Propeller shaft (if equipped) | I | Every 15,000 km or 12 months | C, E |
| Front suspension ball joints | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 18



| Maintenance item | Maintenance operation | Maintenance intervals | Driving condition |
|---|---|---|---|
| Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, G, H |
| Parking brake | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, G, H |
| Drive shaft and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K |
| Climate control air filter (if equipped) | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E, G |
| Rear differential oil (4WD) | R | Every 120,000 km | C, D, E, G, H, I, K |
| Transfer case oil (4WD) | R | Every 120,000 km | C, D, E, G, H, I, K |

**SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS**

A : Repeated short distance driving
B : Extensive idling
C : Driving in dusty, rough roads
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in sandy areas
F : More than 50 % driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32 °C (90 °F)
G : Driving in mountainous areas.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing
J : Driving in very cold weather
K : Driving over 170 km/h
L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 19



## EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

### Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the car is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

### Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

### Fuel filter (cartridge)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. We recommend that the fuel filter be replaced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

### Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend that the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections be replaced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - Diesel only**

**Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touch the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 20



### Vapour hose and fuel filler cap

The vapour hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapour hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

### Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses (if equipped)

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

### Air cleaner filter

We recommend that you use air cleaner filter for replacement from an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

### Spark plugs (for petrol engine)

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

### Cooling system

Check the cooling system parts, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

### Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the manual transaxle fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

### Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Automatic transaxle fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.

But in severe conditions, we recommend that the fluid be changed by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer in accordance to the scheduled maintenance at the beginning of this chapter.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**Automatic transaxle fluid colour is basically red.**

**As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transaxle fluid will begin to look darker. It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed colour.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 21



**⚠ CAUTION**

***The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transaxle malfunction and failure.***

***Use only specified automatic transaxle fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)***

### Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

### Brake fluid

Check brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between "MIN" and "MAX" marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

### Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake lever and cables.

### Brake pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, refer to the Hyundai web site.

(**http://brakemanual.hmc.co.kr**)

### Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

### Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

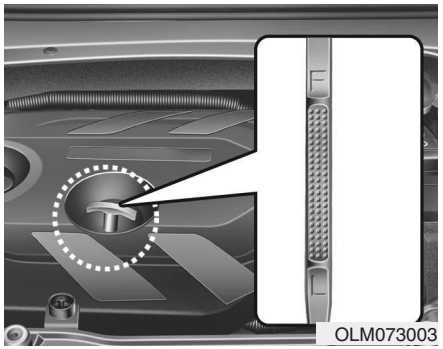
### Air conditioning refrigerant/ compressor (if equipped)

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 22



## ENGINE OIL




### Checking the engine oil level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

**⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose**

**Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.**

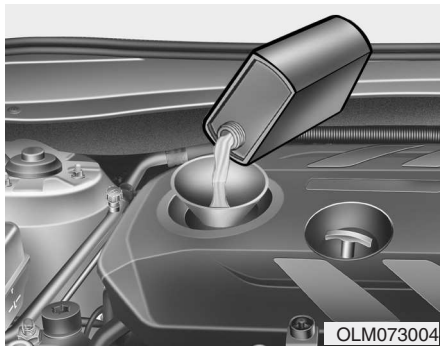
5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not overfill the engine oil. It may damage the engine.***
- ***Do not spill engine oil, when adding or changing engine oil. If you drop the engine oil on the engine room, wipe it off immediately.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine**

***Overfilling the engine oil may cause severe dieseling due to churning effect. It may lead to engine damage accompanied with abrupt engine speed increment, combustion noise and white smoke emission.***




If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. **Do not overfill.**

**Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.**

*Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)*

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:22 PM Page 23



### Changing the engine oil and filter

We recommend that the engine oil and filter be replaced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.




**⚠ WARNING**

**Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.**

## ENGINE COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant concentration level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before travelling to a colder climate.

### Checking the coolant level

**⚠ WARNING**



**Removing radiator cap**

- **Never attempt to remove the radiator cap whilst the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.**
- **Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.**

- **Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug whilst the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 24

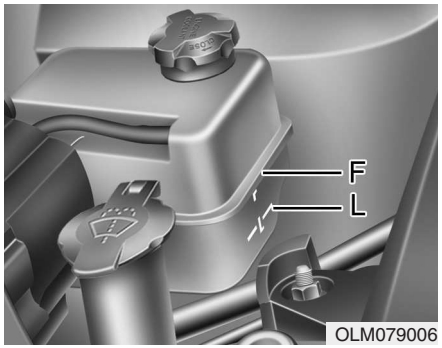


**⚠ WARNING**



**The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blades. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.**

**If your vehicle is equipped with GDI, the electric motor (cooling fan) may operate until you disconnect the nagative battery cable.**



OLM079006

Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F (MAX) and L (MIN) marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough specified coolant to provide protection against freezing and corrosion. Bring the level to F (MAX), but do not overfill. If frequent coolant refill is required, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

***Recommended engine coolant***

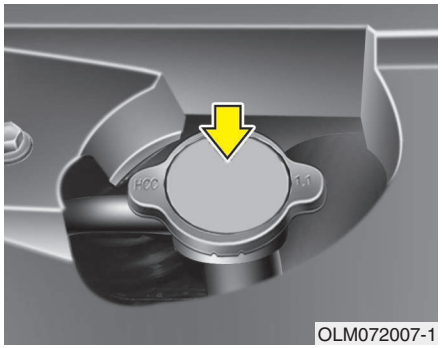
- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol-based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

| Ambient Temperature | Mixture Percentage (volume) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Antifreeze | Water |
| -15°C (5°F) | 35 | 65 |
| -25°C (-13°F) | 40 | 60 |
| -35°C (-31°F) | 50 | 50 |
| -45°C (-49°F) | 60 | 40 |

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 25




OLM072007-1

**⚠ WARNING**

**Radiator cap**



**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.**

### Changing the coolant

We recommend that the coolant be replaced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Put a thick cloth or fabric around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as generator.***

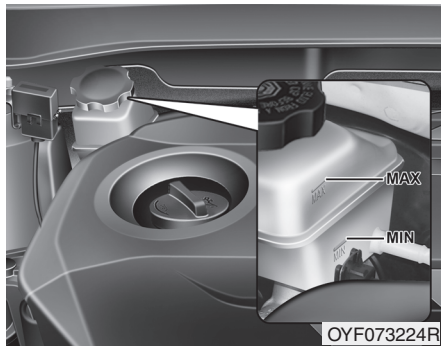
**⚠ WARNING - Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 26



## BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)




### Checking the brake/clutch fluid level

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX (Maximum) and MIN (Minimum) marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake/clutch fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake/clutch fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX (Maximum) level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings and/or clutch disc (if equipped).

If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the brake system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

*Use only the specified brake/clutch fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants or capacities" in section 8.)*

*Never mix different types of fluid.*

**⚠ WARNING - Loss of brake fluid**

**In the event the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

**⚠ WARNING - Brake/clutch fluid**

**When changing and adding brake/clutch fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake/clutch fluid come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

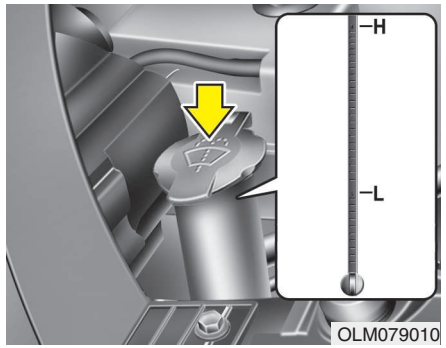
***Do not allow brake/clutch fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.***

***Brake/clutch fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be properly disposed. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake/clutch system can damage brake/clutch system parts.***

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 27



## WASHER FLUID



OLM079010

### Checking the washer fluid level

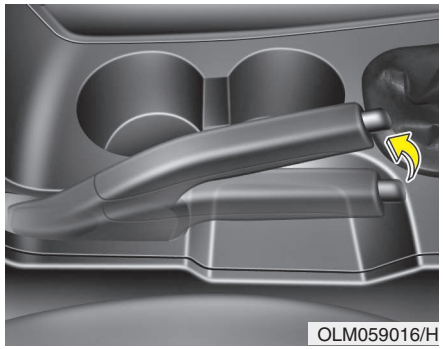
1. Open the cover.
2. Pull the gauge out and check the level. The level should be between H (High) and L (Low).
3. If it is near of at L (Low), add enough washer fluid to bring the level to H (High). Do not overfill.

Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

**⚠ WARNING - Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Windscreen Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.**
- **Windscreen washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windscreen washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.**

## PARKING BRAKE


OLM059016/H

### Check the parking brake

Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of “clicks” heard whilst fully applying it from the released position. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**Stroke : 6 “clicks” at a force of 20 kg (44 lbs, 196 N).**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 28



## FUEL FILTER (FOR DIESEL)

### Draining water from fuel filter

The fuel filter for diesel engine plays an important role of separating water from fuel and accumulating the water in its bottom.

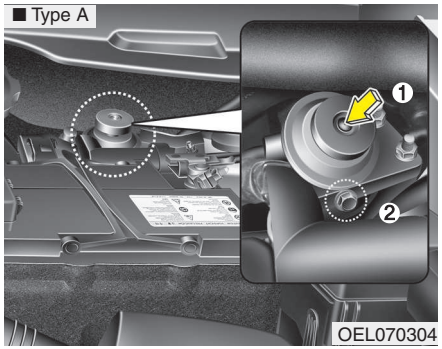
If water accumulates in the fuel filter, the warning light comes on when the ignition switch is in the ON position.



If this warning light illuminates, we recommend that the system by checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the water accumulated in the fuel filter is not drained at proper times, damages to the major parts such as the fuel system can be caused by water permeation in the fuel filter.***




### Extracting air from the fuel filter

If you drive until you have no fuel left or if you replace the fuel filter, be sure to extract air from the fuel system as it makes it difficult to start the engine.

1. Pump up and down(1) approximately 50 times until the pump is hard.
2. Extract air from the fuel filter by removing the bolt(2) with a cross-tip screw driver and reinstall the bolt(2).
3. Pump up and down(1) approximately 15 times.
4. Extract air from the fuel filter by removing the bolt(2) with a cross-tip screw driver and reinstall the bolt(2).
5. Pump up and down(1) approximately 5 times.

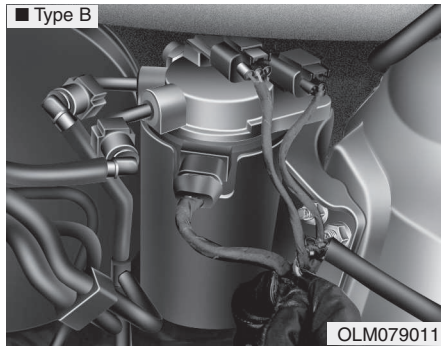
**✻ NOTICE**

- **Use cloths when you extract air so that the fuel is not sprayed around.**
- **Clean the fuel around the fuel filter or the injection pump before starting the engine to prevent fire.**
- **Finally, check each part if the fuel is leaking.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 29



■ Type B




**Fuel filter cartridge replacement**

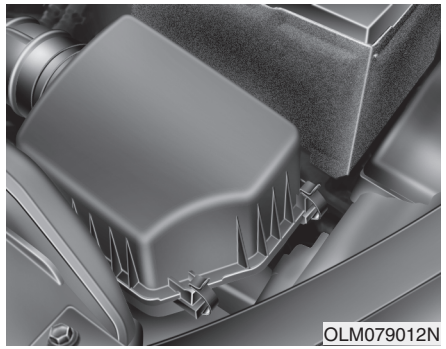
### ✻ NOTICE

**When replacing the fuel filter cartridge, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 30



## AIR CLEANER

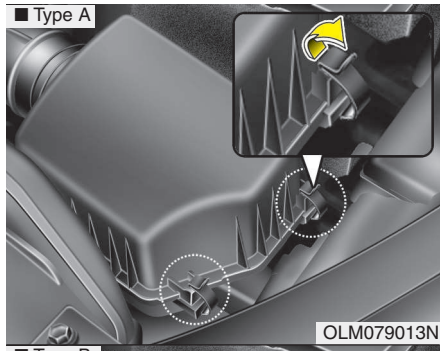


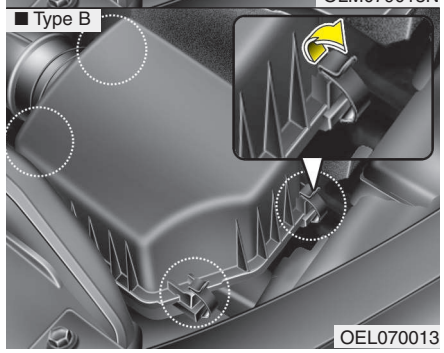

### Filter replacement

It must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

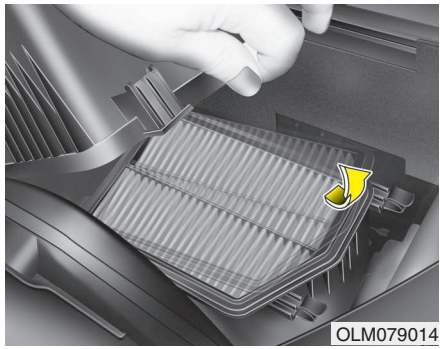
You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner element.

Clean the filter by using compressed air.




1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.




2. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner.
3. Replace the air cleaner filter.
4. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 31



Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

*If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to "Maintenance under severe usage conditions" in this section.)*

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.***
- ***When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.***
- ***We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised HYUNDAI dealer. Improper parts could damage the air flow sensor, turbocharger or engine.***

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 32

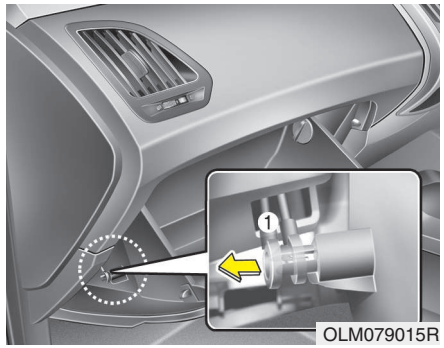


## CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER (IF EQUIPPED)

### Filter inspection

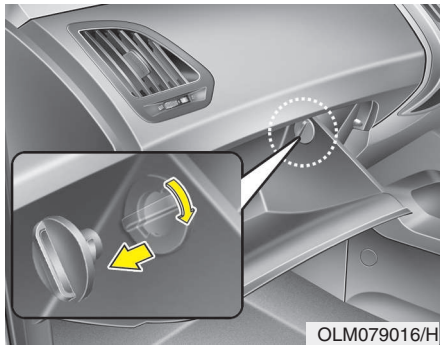
If the vehicle is operated in the severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you, the owner, replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

Replace the filter according to the maintenance Schedule.




### Filter replacement

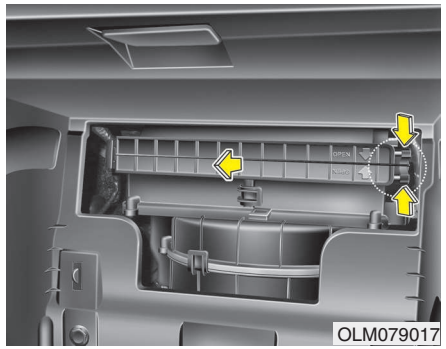
1. Open the glove box and remove the support strap (1).



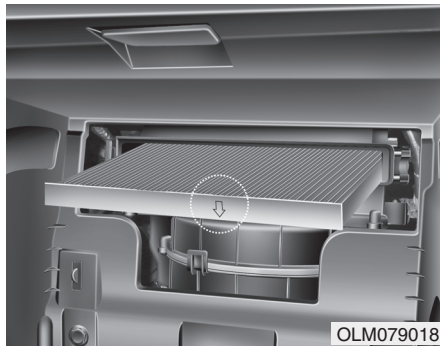

2. With the glove box open, remove the stoppers on both sides.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 33






3. Remove the climate control air filter case whilst pressing the lock on the right of the cover.




4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

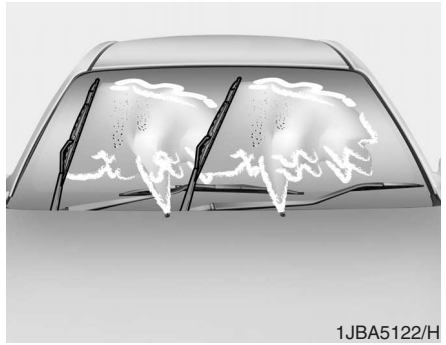
### ✻ NOTICE

**When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 34



## WIPER BLADES


1JBA5122/H

### Blade inspection

**✻ NOTICE**

**Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windscreen difficult to clean.**

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***

### Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

**⚠ CAUTION**

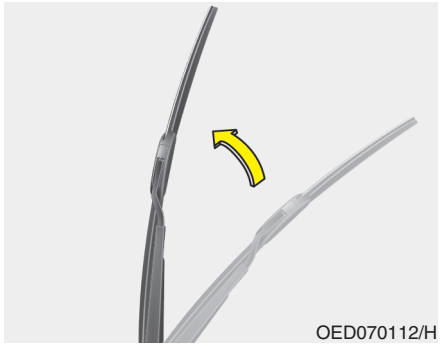
***To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.***

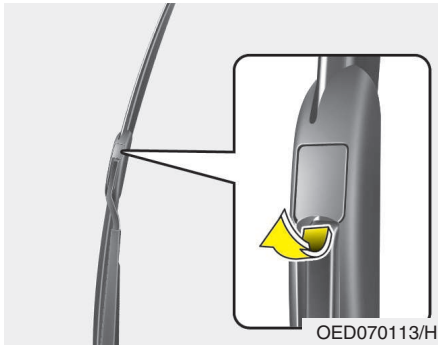
EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:23 PM Page 35



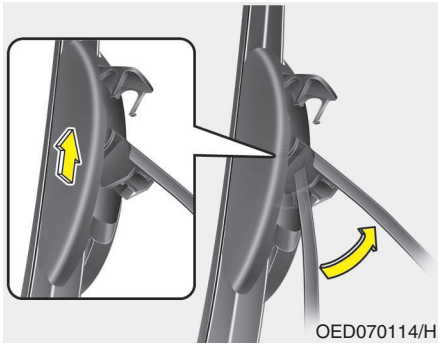

OED070112/H

***Front windscreen wiper blade***

1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.


OED070113/H

2. Open the cover of the blade.
3. Compress the clip behind the wiper arm and lift it off the arm.


OED070114/H

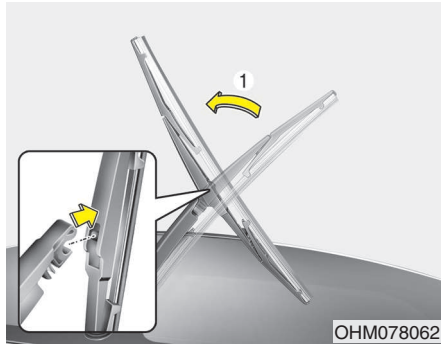
4. Install the blade assembly until it clicks into place.
5. Close the cover of blade.
6. Place back the wiper arm to the proper position.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windscreen.**

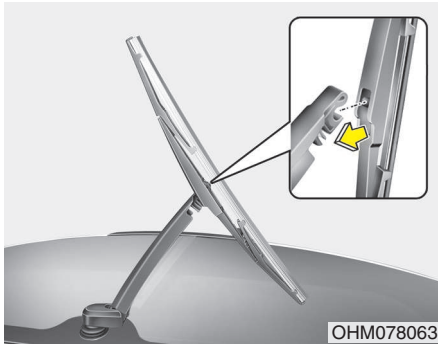
EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 36






***Rear window wiper blade***

1. Raise the wiper arm and pull out the wiper blade assembly.




2. Install the new blade assembly by inserting the centre part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
3. Make sure the blade assembly is installed firmly by trying to pull it slightly.

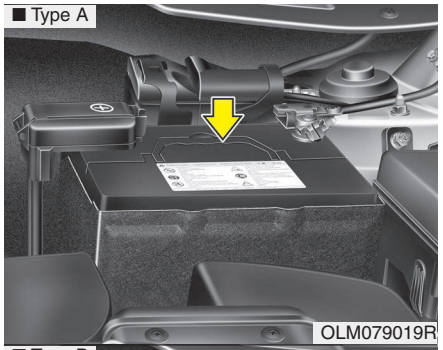
To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, we recommend that the wiper blade be replaced by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 37



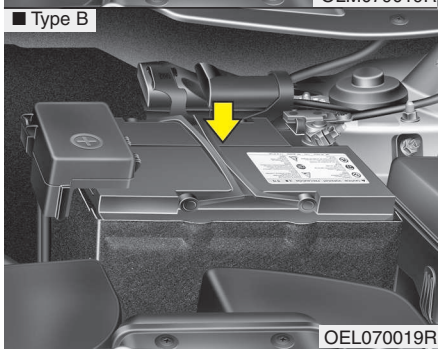
## BATTERY

■ Type A



OLM079019R

■ Type B



OEL070019R

### For best battery service

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

**⚠ WARNING - Battery dangers**

**Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.**

**Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.**

**Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.**

**Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.**

**If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.**



**Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.**



**An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.**



**The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. We recommend that you return the battery to an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.**

**Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***If you connect unauthorised electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.***

■ Example




OJD072039

❊ The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

## Battery capacity label

1. CMF60L-BCI : The HYUNDAI model name of battery
2. 12V : The nominal voltage
3. 60Ah(20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. 92RC : The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
5. 550CCA : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 440A : The cold-test current in amperes by EN

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 39



### Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on whilst the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load whilst the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

**⚠ WARNING - Recharging battery**

**When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:**

- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.**
- **Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).**
- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.**
- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.**

### Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (See section 4)
- Sunroof (See section 4)
- Trip computer (See section 4)
- Climate control system (See section 4)
- Clock (See section 4)
- Audio (See section 4)

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 40



## TYRES AND WHEELS

### Tyre care

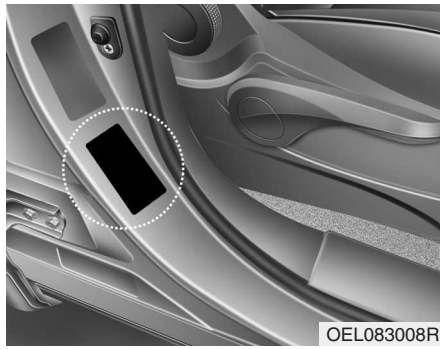
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

### Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

All tyre pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tyres are cold. “Cold Tyres” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.

For recommended inflation pressure refer to “Tyre and wheels” in section 8.




All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING - Tyre underinflation**

**Severe underinflation (70 kPa (10 psi) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tyre failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 41



**⚠ CAUTION**

- *Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.*
- *Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

- *Warm tyres normally exceed recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure or the tyres will be underinflated.*
- *Be sure to reinstall the tyre inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.*

**⚠ WARNING - Tyre inflation**

**Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Tyre pressure**

*Always observe the following:*

- *Check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km (1 mile) since startup.)*
- *Check the pressure of your spare tyre each time you check the pressure of other tyres.*
- *Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.*
- *Worn, old tyres can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tyres have been damaged, replace them.*

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 42



### Checking tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres once a month or more.

Also, check the tyre pressure of the spare tyre.

#### *How to check*

Use a good quality gage to check tyre pressure. You can not tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tyre's inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gage. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Inspect your tyres frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tyre pressure gauge.**
- **Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar.**
- **Worn tyres can cause accidents. Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.**
- **Remember to check the pressure of your spare tyre. HYUNDAI recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 43



### Tyre rotation

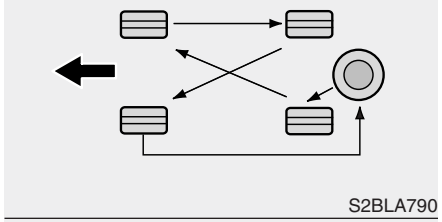
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tyres be rotated every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tyre. Replace the tyre if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

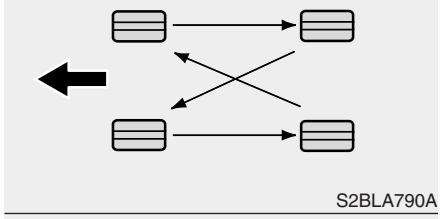
Refer to “Tyre and wheels” in section 8.

With a full-size spare tyre (if equipped)



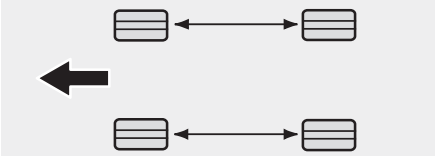
S2BLA790

Without a spare tyre



S2BLA790A

Directional tyres (if equipped)



CBGQ0707A

*Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.*

**✻ NOTICE**

**Rotate radial tyres that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not use the compact spare tyre for tyre rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 44



### Wheel alignment and tyre balance

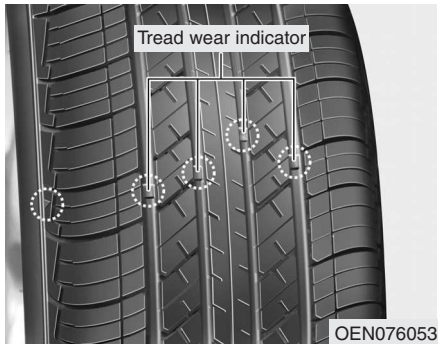
The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tyre life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.***




### Tyre replacement

If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

**⚠ WARNING - Replacing tyres**

- **Driving on worn-out tyres is very hazardous and will reduce braking effectiveness, steering accuracy, and traction.**
- **Your vehicle is equipped with tyres designed to provide for safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tyre and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to handling failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the tyre and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 45



**(Continued)**

- **The use of any other tyre size or type may seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, stopping distance, body to tyre clearance, snow tyre clearance, and speedometer reliability.**
- **It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that is not possible, or necessary, then replace the two front or two rear tyres as a pair. Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.**
- **The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. Tyre size can affect wheel speed. When replacing tyres, all 4 tyres must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tyres of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) (if equipped) to work irregularly.**

***Compact spare tyre replacement (if equipped)***

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

**Wheel replacement**

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tyre clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 46



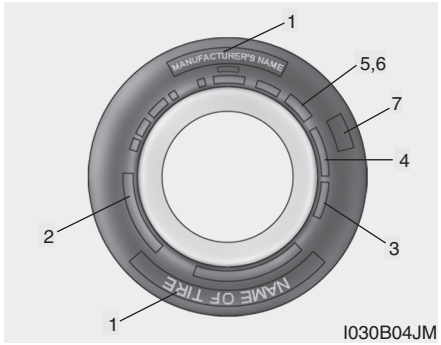
### Tyre traction

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres, tyres that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tyres should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

### Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer or other repair shops that use qualified technicians check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.




### Tyre sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.

***1. Manufacturer or brand name***

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

***2. Tyre size designation***

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tyre size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

**P225/55R18 98H**

P - Applicable vehicle type (tyres marked with the prefix "P" are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tyres have this marking).

225 - Tyre width in millimeters.

55 - Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tyre construction code (Radial).

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 47



98 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.

H - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

**Wheel size designation**

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

**6.5JX18**

6.5 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

**Tyre speed ratings**

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger cars. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

| Speed Rating Symbol | Maximum Speed |
|---|---|
| S | 180 km/h (112 mph) |
| T | 190 km/h (118 mph) |
| H | 210 km/h (130 mph) |
| V | 240 km/h (149 mph) |
| Z | Above 240 km/h (149 mph) |

***3. Checking tyre life (TIN : Tyre Identification Number)***

Any tyres that are over 6 years, based on the manufacturing date, tyre strength and performance, decline with age naturally (even unused spare tyres). Therefore, the tyres (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

**DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO**

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1613 represents that the tyre was produced in the 16th week of 2013.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 48



**⚠ WARNING - Tyre age**

**Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, it is recommended that tyres generally be replaced after six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this Warning can result in sudden tyre failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.**

***4. Tyre ply composition and material***

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric are in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

***5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure***

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

***6. Maximum load rating***

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

***7. Uniform tyre quality grading***

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

**Tread wear**

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm because of variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicles may vary with respect to grade.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 49



**Traction - AA, A, B & C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tyres ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.**

**Temperature -A, B & C**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by the law.

**⚠ WARNING - Tyre temperature**

**The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 50



**Low aspect ratio tyre (if equipped)**

Low aspect ratio tyres, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tyres are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tyres.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tyre is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tyre of the low aspect ratio tyre is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.***

***- When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tyres and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tyres and wheels.***

***- When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive slowly so that the tyres and wheels are not damaged.***

***- If the tyre is impacted, we recommend that you inspect the tyre condition or contact an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***

***- To prevent damage to the tyre, inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 3,000km.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

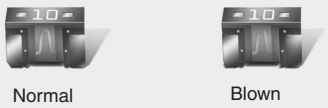
- ***It is not easy to recognize the tyre damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tyre damage, even though you cannot see the tyre damage with your own eyes, have the tyre checked or replaced because the tyre damage may cause air leakage from the tyre.***
- ***If the tyre is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or kerb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.***
- ***You can find out the tyre information on the tyre sidewall.***

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 51



## FUSES

■ Blade type



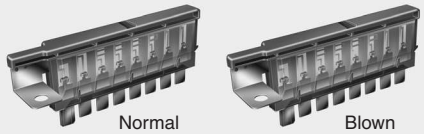
Normal Blown

■ Cartridge type



Normal Blown

■ Multi fuse



Normal Blown

■ BFT (Battery fuse terminal)



Normal Blown

OLM079051N

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 3 (or 4) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Before replacing a blown fuse, disconnect the negative battery cable.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

*Four kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and fusible link for higher amperage ratings.*

**⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement**

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.***

**✻ NOTICE**

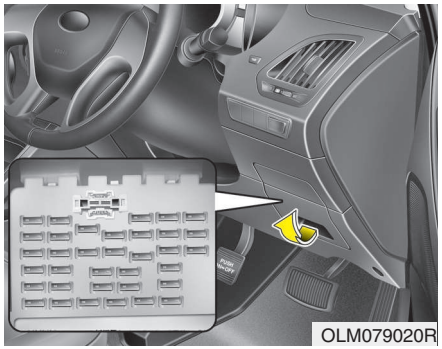
**The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 52



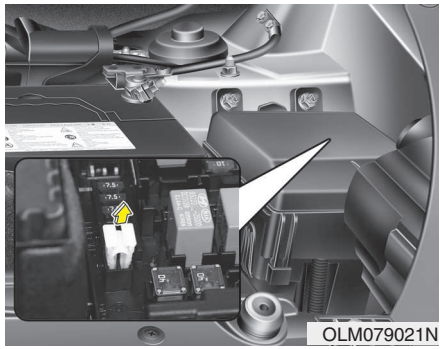
**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When replacing a blown fuse or relay with a new one, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. The incomplete fastening fuse or relay may cause the vehicle wiring and electric systems damage and a possible fire.***
- ***Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, we recommend that you consult with an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.***
- ***Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a driver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.***


OLM079020R

***Inner panel fuse replacement***

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.


OLM079021N

3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

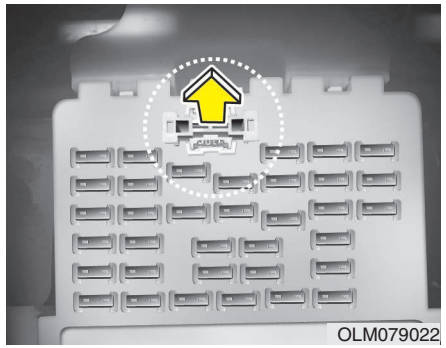
If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

*If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigar lighter fuse.*

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse block in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 53





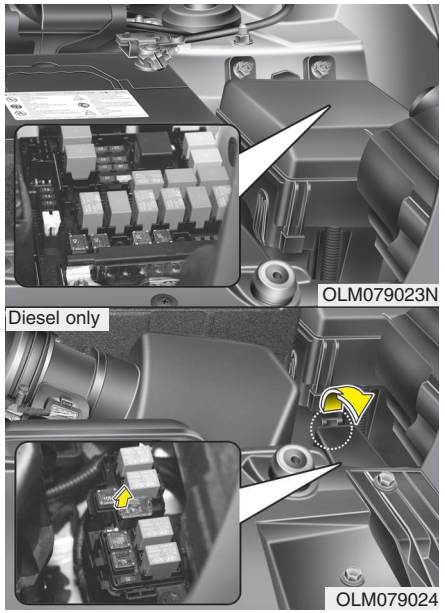

***Memory fuse (SHUNT connector)***

Your vehicle is equipped with a memory fuse (SHUNT connector) to prevent battery discharge if your vehicle is parked without being operated for prolonged periods. Use the following procedures before parking the vehicle for prolonged periods.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Turn off the headlights and tail lights.
3. Open the driver's side panel cover and pull out the memory fuse (SHUNT connector).

## ✻ NOTICE

- **If the memory fuse is pulled up from the fuse panel, the warning chime, audio, clock and interior lamps, etc., will not operate. Some items must be reset after replacement. Refer to "Battery" in this section.**
- **Even though the memory fuse is pulled up, the battery can still be discharged by operation of the headlights or other electrical devices.**




***Engine compartment panel fuse replacement***

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover by pressing the tap and pulling up.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 54

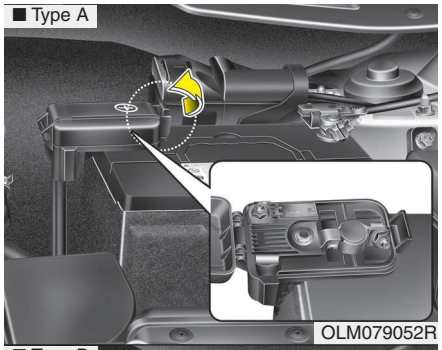


3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

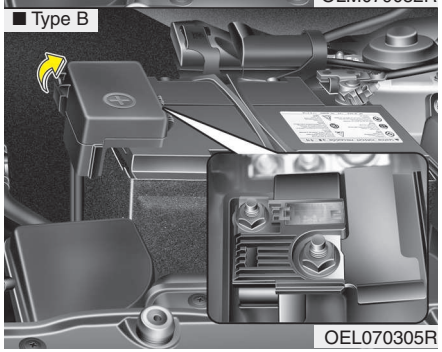
***After checking the fuse box in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse box cover. If not, electrical failures may occur from water leaking in.***

■ Type A



OLM079052R

■ Type B



OEL070305R

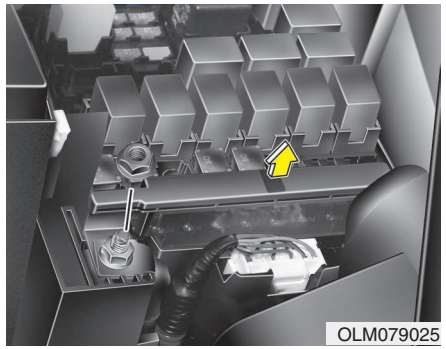
***Main fuse***

If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:24 PM Page 55






***Multi fuse***

If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the fuse panel on the right side in the engine compartment.
4. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
5. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
6. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the main fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 56



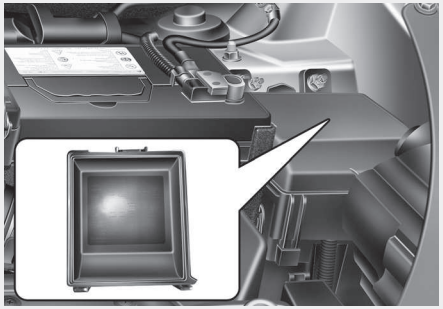
### Fuse/Relay panel description

Inside the fuse/relay box covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

**Driver's side panel**

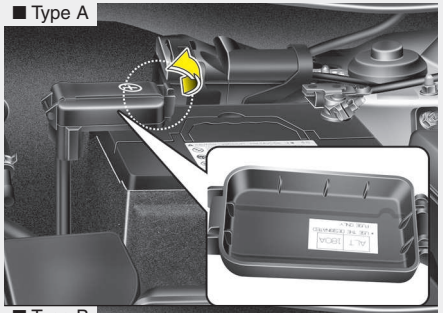


**Engine compartment**

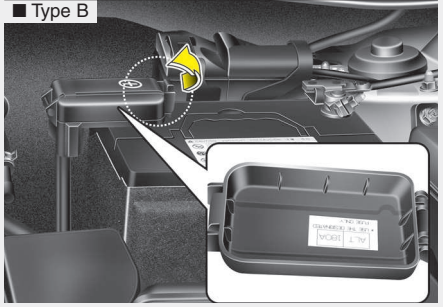


**Main fuse**

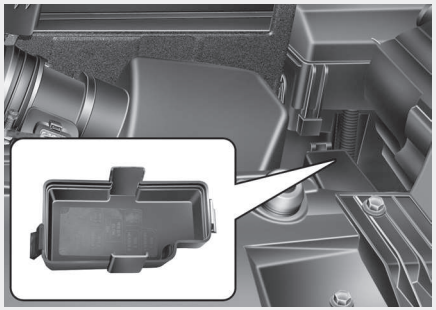
■ Type A



■ Type B



**Diesel only**



OLM079026R/OLM079053R/OLM079027/
OEL070306R/OLM079028

### ✻ NOTICE

**Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 57



**Inner fuse panel (Instrument panel)**

| No. | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 10A | **AUDIO 1** | AUDIO 1<br>POWER CONNECTOR | Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, DC/DC Converter |
| 2 | 10A | | ROOM LP<br>POWER CONNECTOR | IPS Control Module (B+), BCM, A/C Control Module, Data Link Connector, Instrument Cluster(IND), RF Receiver, Ignition Key ILL. & Door Warning Switch, Auto Light & Photo Sensor, MAP Lamp, Room Lamp, Luggage Lamp, Driver/Passenger, Vanity Lamp |
| 3 | 10A | **MODULE 3** | MODULE 3 | IPS Control Module (ON Input), Electro Chromic Mirror, BCM, PDM, Head Lamp Levelling Device Switch, Head Lamp Levelling Device Actuator LH/RH, ICM Relay Box (Rear Seat Warmer Relay Relay LH/RH) |
| 4 | 10A | 1 | START | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 4 / 11 - Start / ATM P/N) Burglar Alarm Relay, ECM |
| 5 | 10A | IND | AIR BAG IND. | Instrument Cluster (IND.) |
| 6 | 10A | **CLUSTER** | CLUSTER | Instrument Cluster (IND.), Seat Belt Reminder Switch, Console Switch, BCM, Smart Key Control Module, Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, ISG Switch, Alternator |
| 7 | 10A | **MODULE 4** | MODULE 4 | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 1 - Blower), Rain Sensor, Diesel Box (RLY. 2, 3 - PTC Heater Relay #2, #3) A/C Control Module, Cluster Ionizer, Sunroof Motor |
| 8 | 25A | **POWER OUTLET 2** | POWER OUTLET 2 | Cigarette Lighter & Front Power Outlet, Rear Power Outlet |
| 9 | 10A | **AUDIO 2** | AUDIO 2 | Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, AMP, PDM, BCM, Power Outside Mirror Switch, Smart Key Control Module, DC/DC Converter, Sunroof Motor |

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 58



| No. | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10 | 10A |  | AIR BAG | SRS Control Module, Passenger Air Bag Lamp |
| 11 | 10A | MODULE 1 | MODULE 1 | IPS Control Module (ON/START Input), 4WD ECM, ICM Relay Box (DBC Relay), DBC Switch, Multifunction Switch (Light), Steering Angle Sensor, Stop Lamp Switch, EPS Control Module, Tyre Pressure Monitoring Module, ESP Off Switch, E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 8 - ESS), DC/DC Converter, Smart Parking Assist Control Module |
| 12 | 15A |  | HANDLE HTD | Clock Spring (Steering Wheel Heater) |
| 13 | 10A |  | FOG LP RR | ICM Relay Box (Rear Fog Lamp Relay) |
| 14 | 25A |  | WIPER FRT | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 12 - Front Wiper LO, RLY. 13 - Rain Wiper)<br>Front Wiper Motor, Multifunction Switch (Wiper) |
| 15 | 15A | FRT  | S/HEATER FRT | Console Switch |
| 16 | 20A | POWER OUTLET 1 | POWER OUTLET 1 | Cigarette Lighter & Front Power Outlet |
| 17 | 10A | B/UP LP | BACK-UP LP | Back-Up Lamp Relay<br>Rear Parking Assist Sensor LH/RH, Rear Parking Assist Sensor Centre LH/RH |
| 18 | 15A |  | DR LOCK | Door Lock/Unlock Relay, Tail Gate Relay, ICM Relay Box (Dead Lock Relay) |
| 19 | 7.5A | MODULE 2 | MODULE 2 | BCM, Smart Key Control Module, PDM |
| 20 | 15A |  | WIPER RR | ICM Relay Box (Rear Wiper Relay), Rear Wiper Motor, Multifunction Switch (Wiper) |
| 21 | 15A |  | SUNROOF | Sunroof Motor |

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 59



| No. | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 22 | 20A | IGN 1 | IGN 1 | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (FUSE - F23, F24, F25) |
| 23 | 7.5A | | A/CON | A/C Control Module (Auto) |
| 24 | 15A | RR | S/HEATER RR | ICM Relay Box (Rear Seat Warmer Relay LH/RH) |
| 25 | 25A | RH | P/WDW RH | Power Window Main Switch, Passenger Power Window Switch(LHD),<br>Rear Power Window Switch RH |
| 26 | 10A | FOLDING MIRR | FOLDING MIRR | Power Outside Mirror Switch |
| 27 | 10A | SMART KEY | SMART KEY | PDM, Smart Key Control ModuleFOB Holder, Start/Stop Button Switch |
| 28 | 15A | 2 | PDM | PDM |
| 29 | 25A | LH | P/WDW LH | Power Window Main Switch, Passenger Power Window Switch(RHD),<br>Rear Power Window Switch LH |
| 30 | 25A | AMP | AMP | AMP, DC/DC Converter |
| 31 | 7.5A | | HTD MIRR | Rear Defogger Switch, ECM(G4FD)<br>Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror |
| 32 | 20A | SAFETY | SAFETY P/WDW | Driver Safety Power Window Module |
| 33 | 7.5A | MODULE 5 | MODULE 5 | ATM Shift Lever, Rear Parking Assist Buzzer, Tyre Pressure Monitoring Module |
| 34 | 15A | | HAZARD | ICM Relay Box (Flasher Sound Relay), BCM |
| 35 | 10A | 1 | MDPS | MDPS Unit |
| 36 | 20A | DRV | P/SEAT DRV | FRT DRV Seat |

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 60



**Engine compartment main fuse panel**

| No. | | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MULTI FUSE | 1 | 80A | 1 | MDPS | EPS Control Module |
| | 2 | 60A | 1 | B+1 | Smart Junction Box (Fuse - F13 / F20 / F26 / F31 / F37, IPS 4 / IPS 5 / IPS 6 / IPS 7) |
| | 3 | 40A | 2 ABS | ABS 2 | ESP Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |
| | 4 | 40A | | EMS | EMS Box (Fuse - F1 / F2 / F3 / F6) |
| | 5 | 40A | 1 ABS | ABS 1 | ESP Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |
| | 6 | 40A | | BLOWER | RLY. 1 (Blower Relay) |
| | 7 | 60A | 3 | B+3 | Smart Junction Box (Fuse - F30 / F35 / F36, Power Connector - F1 / F2) |
| | 8 | 60A | 2 | B+2 | Smart Junction Box (Power Window Relay, Fuse - F23 / F28 / F33, IPS 0 / IPS 1 / IPS 2 / IPS 3) |
| FUSE | 9 | 40A(50A) GSL(DSL) | | COOLING FAN | RLY. 3 (Cooling Fan Low Relay), RLY. 9 (Cooling Fan High Relay) |
| | 10 | 40A | **RR HTD** | HEATED GLASS RR | RLY. 6 (Rear Defogger Relay) |
| | 11 | 30A | **IGN 1** | IGN 1 | W/O Smart Key - Ignition Switch,<br>With Smart Key - PDM Relay Box (IGN1 Relay) |
| | 12 | 40A | **IGN 2** | IGN 2 | RLY. 4 (Start Relay), W/O Smart Key - Ignition Switch,<br>With Smart Key - PDM Relay Box (IGN2 Relay) |
| | 13 | 15A | | HORN | RLY. 2 (Horn Relay), RLY. 5 (Burglar Alarm Horn Relay) |

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 61



| No. | | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| FUSE | 14 | 15A | | DEICER | RLY. 10 (Front Wiper Deicer Relay) |
| | 15 | 10A | STOP LAMP | STOP LAMP | Stop Lamp Switch, ICM Relay Box (DBC Relay) |
| | 16 | 10A | AMS | B+ SENSOR | Battery Sensor (G4KD/D4HA) |
| | 17 | 20A | | 4WD | 4WD ECM |
| | 18 | 7.5A | 4 | ECU 2 | RLY. 11 (ATM P/N Relay), RLY. 4 (Start Relay), ECM/PCM, Multifunction Switch (G4KD), Mass Air Flow Sensor (D4FD/D4HA) |
| | 19 | 7.5A | ABS | ABS | ESP Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector, Fuel Filter Warning Sensor (D4FD/D4HA), Glow Relay Unit (D4HA), Diesel Box (RLY. 4 - Fuel Filter Heater Relay)(D4FD/D4HA) |
| | 20 | 7.5A | 3 | TCU 2 | Transaxle Range Switch(G4KD/D4HA), TCM (D4HA), Vehicle Speed Sensor |
| | 21 | 30A | 2 | B+4 | H/LP HI Fuse |
| | 22 | 30A | | H/LP WASHER | RLY (H/LP WASHER) |
| | 23 | 10A | | H/LP HI | RLY (H/LP HI) |

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 62



**Engine compartment sub fuse panel (Disel Engine)**

| No. | Fuse rating | Fuse Symbol | Circuit Protected | Relay Symbol | Relay Type |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 50A | 1 PTC HEATER | PTC Heater Relay #1 | 1 PTC HEATER | MICRO PLUG |
| 2 | 50A | 2 PTC HEATER | PTC Heater Relay #2 | 2 PTC HEATER | MICRO PLUG |
| 3 | 50A | 3 PTC HEATER | PTC Heater Relay #3 | 3 PTC HEATER | MICRO PLUG |
| 4 | 30A |  | Fuel Filter Heater Relay |  | MICRO PLUG |
| 5 | 80A |  | Glow Relay Unit | - | - |

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 63



## LIGHT BULBS

**⚠ WARNING - Working on the lights**

**Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK" position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.**

*Use only the bulbs of the specified wattage.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electric wiring system.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If you don't have necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, we recommend that you consult an authorised HYUNDAI dealer. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlight assembly to get to the bulb(s). Removing/installing the headlight assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**After heavy, driving rain or washing, headlight and taillight lenses could appear frosty. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside. This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and doesn't indicate a problem with your vehicle. If water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

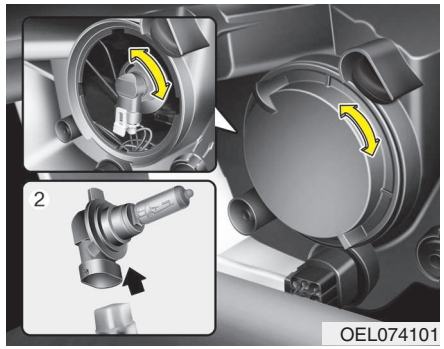
EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 64






**Headlight, position light, turn signal light, front fog light bulb replacement**

(1) Front turn signal light
(2) Headlight (High/Low)
(3) Position light (LED) (if equipped)
(4) Daytime running light (if equipped)
(5) Front fog light (if equipped)




***Headlight (High/Low)***

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlight bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
4. Unsnap the headlight bulb retaining wire by depressing the end and pushing it upward.
5. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly.
6. Install a new headlight bulb and snap the headlight bulb retaining wire into position by aligning the wire with the groove on the bulb.
7. Connect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
8. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

**✻ NOTICE**

**We recommend that the headlight aiming be adjusted after an accident or after the headlight assembly is reinstalled at an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 65



*Headlight (Low, HID type)*

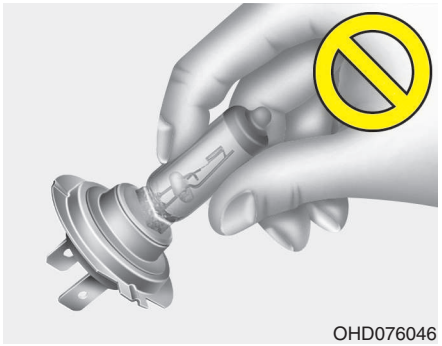
If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - HID Headlight low beam (if equipped)**

**Do not attempt to replace or inspect the low beam (XENON bulb) due to electric shock danger. If the low beam (XENON bulb) is not working, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**HID lamps have superior performance vs. halogen bulbs. HID lamps are estimated by the manufacturer to last twice as long or longer than halogen bulbs depending on their frequency of use. They will probably require replacement at some point in the life of the vehicle. Cycling the headlamps on and off more than typical use will shorten HID lamps life. HID lamps do not fail in the same manner as halogen incandescent lamps. If a headlamp goes out after a period of operation but will immediately relight when the headlamp switch is cycled it is likely the HID lamp needs to be replaced. HID lighting components are more complex than conventional halogen bulbs thus have higher replacement cost.**



OHD076046

**⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs**

- **Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.**
- **Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit. A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 66



**(Continued)**

- **If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.**
- **Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.**

### *Turn signal light/Position light*

**Turn signal light**

1. Turn off the engine and open the bonnet.
2. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket
4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
5. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

**Position light**

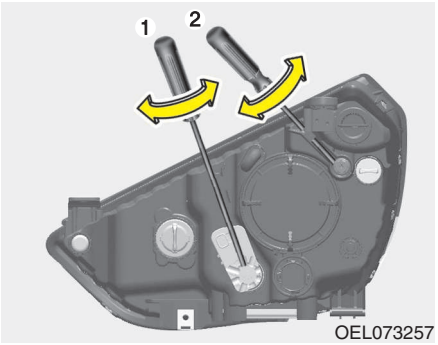
If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 67



***Front fog light bulbs (if equipped)***

1. Remove the front bumper under cover.
2. Reach your hand into the back of the front bumper.
3. Disconnect the power connector from the socket.
4. Remove the bulb-socket from the housing by turning the socket counter clockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the housing.
5. Install the new bulb-socket into the housing by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the housing. Push the socket into the housing and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Connect the power connector to the socket.
7. Reinstall the front bumper under cover.



OEL073257

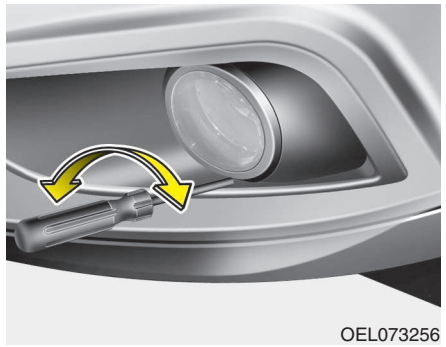
## Headlight and front fog light aiming

***Headlight aiming***

1. Inflate the tyres to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tyre, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centres) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through centre of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the head lamp and battery in normal condition, aim the head lamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low/high beam left or right, turn the driver (2) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low/high beam up or down, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 68





OEL073256

***Front fog light aiming***

The front fog lamp can be aimed as the same manner of the head lamps aiming.

With the front fog lamps and battery normal condition, aim the front fog lamps. To aim the front fog lamp up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

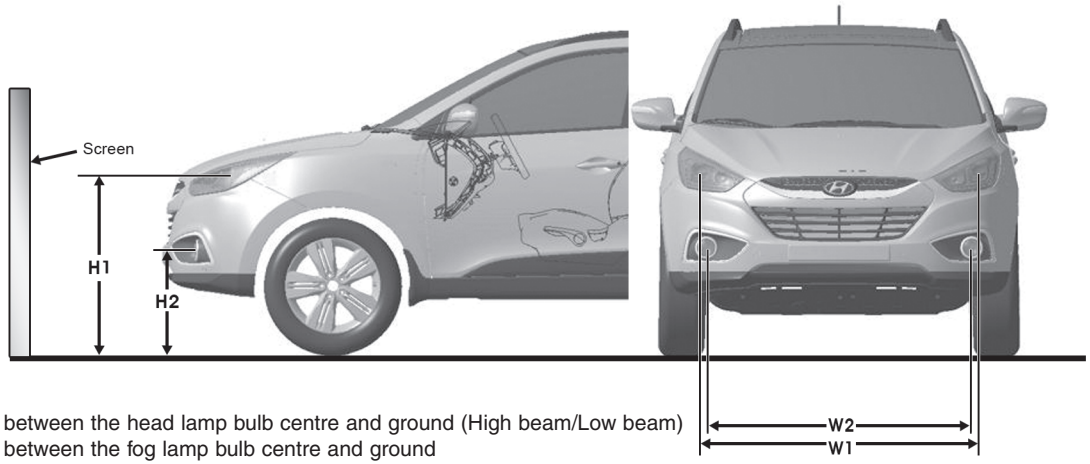
EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 69



***Aiming point***

<Ground Height>

<Distance between lamps>




H1 : Height between the head lamp bulb centre and ground (High beam/Low beam)
H2 : Height between the fog lamp bulb centre and ground
W1 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centres (High beam/Low beam)
W2 : Distance between the two fog lamp bulbs centres

OLMB073084

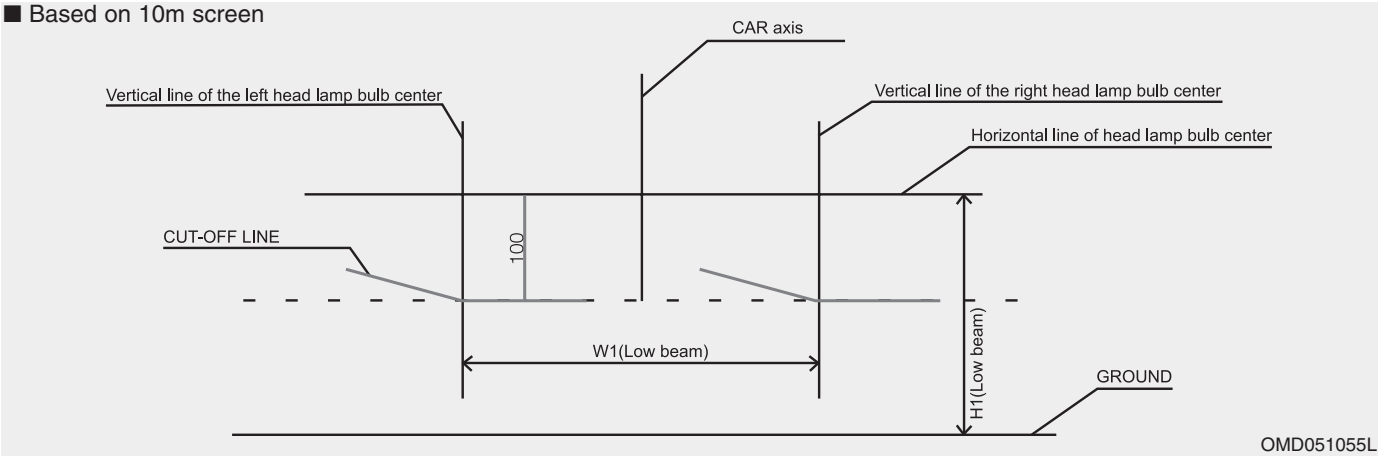
Unit: mm (in)

| Vehicle condition | H1 | H2 | W1 | W2 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Fog | | Fog |
| **Without driver** | 897 (35) | 510 (20) | 1413 (55.6) | 1350 (53.1) |
| **With driver** | 892 (35) | 505 (19.9) | | |

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 70



■ Based on 10m screen



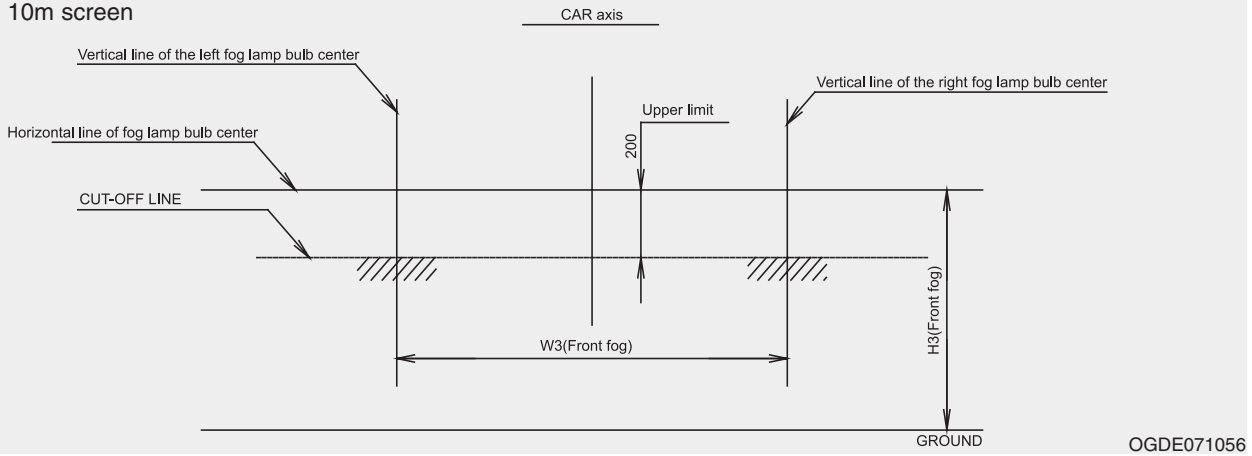

***Head lamp low beam***

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp levelling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp levelling device switch with 0 positions.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 71



■ Based on 10m screen




***Front fog light***

1. Turn the front fog lamp on with the driver (75 kg) aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the allowable range (shaded region).

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:25 PM Page 72

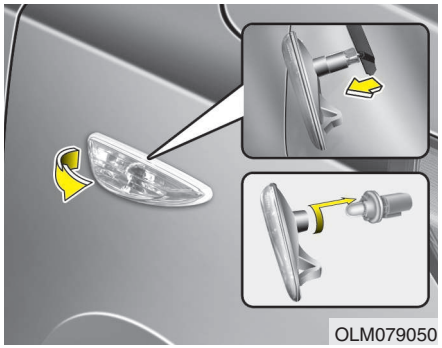





## Side repeater light bulb replacement (if equipped)

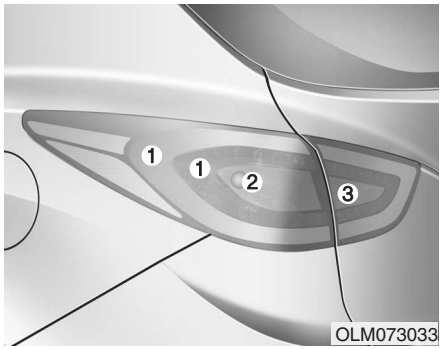
***Type A***

If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.




***Type B***

1. Remove the light assembly from the vehicle by prying the lens and pulling the assembly out.
2. Reinstall a new light assembly to the body of the vehicle.

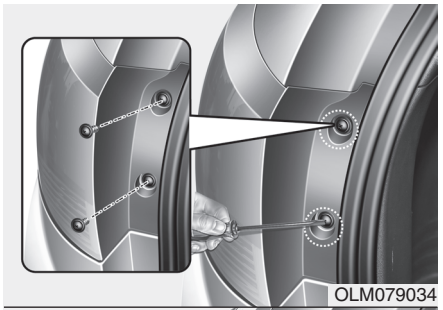



## Rear combination light bulb replacement

(1) Stop and tail light
(2) Rear turn signal light
(3) Back-up light

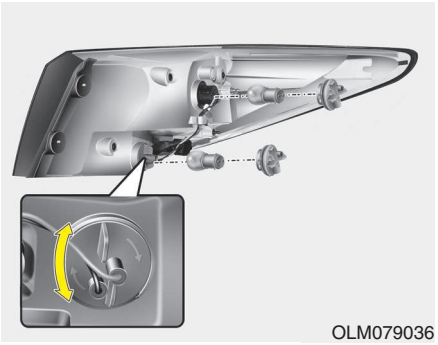
EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 73



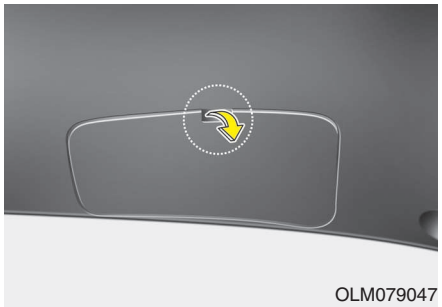



***Outside light***

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
3. Remove the rear combination light assembly from the body of the vehicle.




4. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
5. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
6. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
7. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
8. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.




***Inside light***

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover using a flat-blade screwdriver.
3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 74



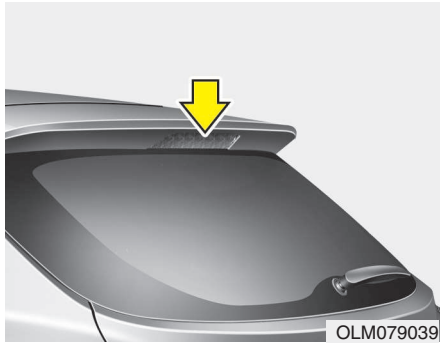
4. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

**Stop and tail light (LED type)**

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

### Rear fog light (if equipped)

1. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
2. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
3. Insert a new bulb in the socket.
4. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.

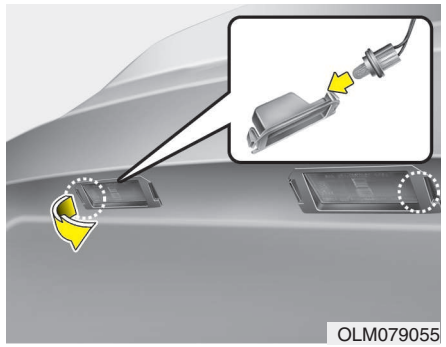



### High mounted stop light bulb replacement (if equipped)

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 75





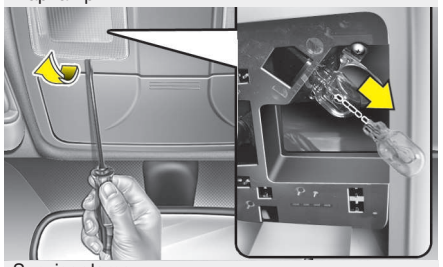

### License plate light bulb replacement

1. Remove the lens by pressing the tabs.
2. Remove the socket from the lens.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
4. Install a new bulb in the socket and install the socket to the lens.
5. Reinstall the lens securely.

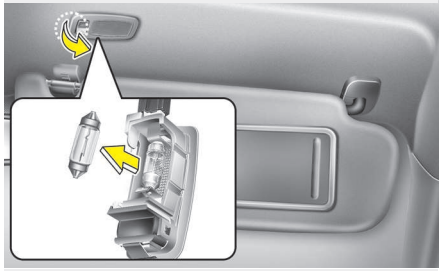
EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 76



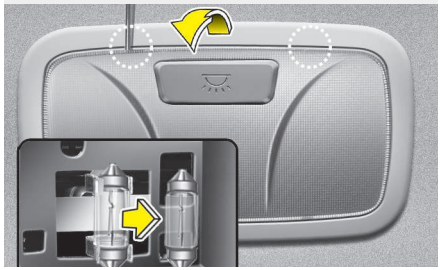
Map lamp



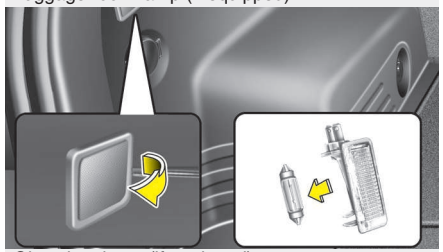
Sunvisor lamp



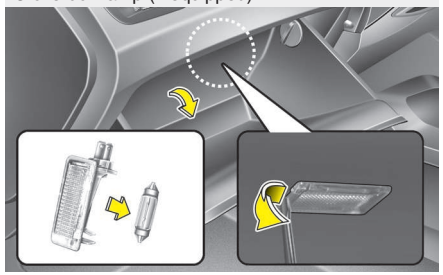
Room lamp



Luggage room lamp (if equipped)



Glove box lamp (if equipped)



OLM079040/OXM079041/H/OEL079042/OLM079044/OLM079045/H

### Interior light bulb replacement

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens from the interior light housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Prior to working on the Interior Lights, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.**

3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens tabs with the interior light housing notches and snap the lens into place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Use care not to dirty or damage lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.***

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 77



# APPEARANCE CARE

## Exterior care

### *Exterior general caution*

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

### *Finish maintenance*

**Washing**

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits.

A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

**⚠ CAUTION**

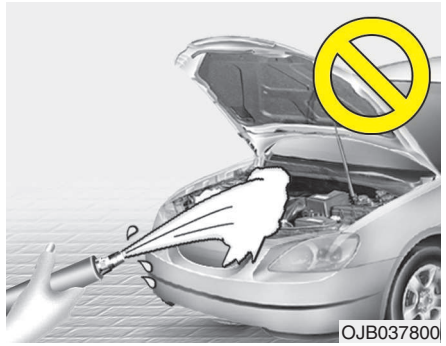
- ***Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.***
- ***Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle. Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.***
- ***To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.***

**⚠ WARNING - Wet brakes**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 78






### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

**Waxing**

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.***
- ***Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.***

***Finish damage repair***

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 79



***Bright-metal maintenance***

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

***Underbody maintenance***

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

**⚠ WARNING**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.**

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 80



### *Aluminum or chrome wheel maintenance*

The aluminum or chrome wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum or chrome wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergent. It may damage and corrode the aluminum or chrome wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

### *Corrosion protection*

**Protecting your vehicle from corrosion**

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produces cars of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

**Common causes of corrosion**

The most common causes of corrosion on your car are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the car.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

**High-corrosion areas**

If you live in an area where your car is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

**Moisture breeds corrosion**

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the car surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your car clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the car.

**To help prevent corrosion**

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 81



**Keep your car clean**

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your car clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the car is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your car at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the car, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

**Keep your garage dry**

Don't park your car in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your car in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

**Keep paint and trim in good condition**

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

**Don't neglect the interior**

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting to cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the car.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 82



## Interior care

### *Interior general precautions*

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions that follow for the proper way to clean vinyl.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.***

### *Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim*

**Vinyl**

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

**Fabric**

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its colour can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.***

### *Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing*

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

### *Cleaning the interior window glass*

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.***

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 83



## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Service Passport in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all Australian Design Rules (ADR) requirements.

There are three emission control systems which are as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your car inspected and maintained by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer or other repair shops that use qualified technicians in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

**Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Contol (ESC) system)**

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Contol (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

### 1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

### 2. Evaporative emission control System

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapours from escaping into the atmosphere.

#### *Canister*

Fuel vapours generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapours absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

#### *Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)*

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms-up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 84



### 3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions whilst maintaining good vehicle performance.

***Vehicle modifications***

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

  In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.
- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorised electronic devices.

***Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)***

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

**⚠ WARNING - Exhaust**

**Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colourless and odourless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions following to avoid CO poisoning.**

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 85



***Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)***

**⚠ WARNING - Fire**

- **A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park, idle, or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as dry grass, paper, leaves, etc.**
- **The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot whilst the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic, you may get burned.**

  **Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.**

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for petrol engine.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.
- Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

***Diesel Particulate Filter (if equipped)***

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system removes the soot emitted from the vehicle.

Unlike a disposable air filter, the DPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot according to the driving condition. In other words, the active burning by engine control system and high exhaust gas temperature caused by normal/high driving condition burns and removes the accumulated soot.

However, if the vehicle continues to be driven at low speed for long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. In this particular case, the amount of soot is out of detection limit, the soot oxidation process by engine control system may not happen and the malfunction indicator light may blink.

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking by driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

EL(FL) Aust 7.QXP 7/26/2013 2:26 PM Page 86



If the malfunction indicator light continues to blink in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised HYUNDAI dealer.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.

### ⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)

***It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.***

***If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.***

EL(FL) Aust 8.QXP 26.7.2013 17:46 Page 1

# Specifications & Consumer information

Dimensions . . . . . 8-2
Engine . . . . . 8-2
Air conditioning system . . . . . 8-2
Bulb wattage . . . . . 8-3
Tyres and wheels . . . . . 8-4
Load and speed capacity tyres . . . . . 8-4
Gross vehicle weight . . . . . 8-5
Luggage volume . . . . . 8-5
Recommended lubricants and capacities . . . . . 8-6
• Recommended sae viscosity number . . . . . 8-8
Vehicle identification number (VIN) . . . . . 8-9
Vehicle certification label . . . . . 8-9
Tyre specification and pressure label . . . . . 8-10
Engine number . . . . . 8-10
Air conditioner compressor label . . . . . 8-10

EL(FL) Aust 8.QXP 26.7.2013 17:46 Page 2



## DIMENSIONS

| Item | mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length | 4410 (173.6) |
| Overall width | 1820 (71.6) |
| Overall height | 1655 (65.2)/1665 (65.6)*1 |
| Front tread | 1585 (62.4) |
| Rear tread | 1586 (62.4) |
| Wheelbase | 2640 (103.9) |

*1 with roof rack

## ENGINE

| Item | Petrol 2.0 | Diesel R2.0 |
|---|---|---|
| Displacement cc (cu. in) | 1,999 (121.99) | 1,995 (121.74) |
| Bore x Stroke mm (in.) | 81X97 (3.19X3.81) | 84X90 (3.30X3.54) |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 |
| No. of cylinders | 4. In-line | 4. In-line |

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

| Item | Weight of volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|
| Refrigerant | 550±25g | R134a |
| Compressor lubricant | 120±10cc | PAG oil |

EL(FL) Aust 8.QXP 26.7.2013 17:46 Page 3



## BULB WATTAGE

| Light Bulb | Wattage |
|---|---|
| Headlights (Low/High) | 55 or 35 (HID) |
| Front turn signal lights | 21 |
| Position lights | LED |
| Side repeater lights (Outside mirror)* | LED |
| Side repeater lights* | 5 |
| Front fog lights* | 27 |
| Rear fog light* | 21 |
| Stop and tail lights (Outside) | 21/5/LED |
| Stop and tail lights (Inside) | LED |
| Rear turn signal lights (Outside) | 21 |
| Tail light* (Inside) | 5 |
| Back-up lights (Inside) | 16 |
| High mounted stop light | LED |
| License plate lights | 5 |
| Map lamps | 10 |
| Room lamps | 10 |
| Luggage lamp* | 5 |
| Glove box lamp* | 5 |
| Vanity mirror lamps* | 5 |

* If equipped

EL(FL) Aust 8.QXP 26.7.2013 17:46 Page 4



## TYRES AND WHEELS

| Item | Tyre size | Wheel size | Inflation pressure bar (psi, kPa) | | | | Wheel lug nut torque kg•m (lb•ft, N•m) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Normal load ( + ) | | Maximum load ( + ) | | |
| | | | Front | Rear | Front | Rear | |
| Full size tyre | 225/60R17 | 6.5Jx17 | 2.3 (33, 230) | 2.3 (33, 230) | 2.3 (33, 230) | 2.3 (33, 230) | 9~11 (65~79, 88~107) |
| | 225/55R18 | 6.5J×18 | | | | | |

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.***
***Using tyres of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.***

## LOAD AND SPEED CAPACITY TYRES

| Item | Tyre size | Wheel size | Load Capacity | | Speed Capacity | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | LI *1 | kg | SS *2 | km/h |
| Full size tyre | 225/60R17 | 6.5Jx17 | 99 | 775 | H | 210 |
| | 225/55R18 | 6.5J×18 | 98 | 750 | H | 210 |

*1 LI : LOAD INDEX
*2 SS : SPEED SYMBOL

EL(FL) Aust 8.QXP 26.7.2013 17:46 Page 5



## GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

kg (lbs.)

| Item | Petrol Nu 2.0L | | Diesel R 2.0L | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 2WD | 4WD | 2WD | 4WD |
| M/T | 1,937 (4,270) | - | 2,070 (4,563) | - |
| A/T | 1,958 (4,316) | 2,025 (4,464) | - | 2,170 (4,784) |

M/T : Manual transaxle

A/T : Automatic transaxle

## LUGGAGE VOLUME

| Item | | 5 Seater |
|---|---|---|
| VDA | MIN. | 465 *l* (16.4 cu.ft) |
| | MAX. | 1436 *l* (50.7 cu.ft) |

Min : Behind rear seat to upper edge of the seat back.
Max : Behind front seat to roof.

EL(FL) Aust 8.QXP 26.7.2013 17:47 Page 6



## RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

| Lubricant | | | | Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill)<br>Recommends<br>Shell HELIX Motor oils | Petrol Engine | 2.0L | | 4.0 *l* | ACEA A5 or above |
| | Diesel Engine | 2.0L | with DPF *3 | 8.0 *l* | ACEA C3 |
| | | | without DPF *3 | 8.0 *l* | ACEA B4 |
| Manual transaxle fluid | Petrol Engine | 2.0L | | 2.1 ~ 2.2 *l* | API GL-4, SAE 75W/85 |
| | Diesel Engine | 2.0L | | 1.8 ~ 1.9 *l* | |
| Automatic transaxle fluid | Petrol Engine | 2.0L | | 7.1 *l* | MICHANG ATF SP-IV, SK ATF SP-IV<br>NOCA ATF SP-IV, HYUNDAI genuine ATF SP-IV |
| | Diesel Engine | 2.0L | | 7.8 *l* | |
| Coolant | Petrol Engine | | | 6.7 *l* | Mixture of antifreeze and distilled water<br>(Ethylene glycol base coolant for aluminum radiator) |
| | Diesel Engine | | | 8.5 *l* | |
| Brake/clutch fluid | | | | 0.7~0.8 *l* | FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4 |
| Rear differential oil (4WD) | | | | 0.65 *l* | HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5, SAE 75W/90<br>(SHELL SPIRAX X or equivalent) |
| Transfer case oil (4WD) | | | | 0.6 *l* | HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5, SAE 75W/90<br>(SHELL SPIRAX X or equivalent) |
| Fuel | Petrol Engine | 2.0L | | 58 *l* | Refer to “Fuel requirements” in section 1 |
| | Diesel Engine | 2.0L | | | |

EL(FL) Aust 8.QXP 26.7.2013 17:47 Page 7



*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on 8-8 page.

*2 Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 Diesel Particulate Filter

EL(FL) Aust 8.QXP 26.7.2013 17:47 Page 8



### Recommended SAE viscosity number

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.***

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather.

Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

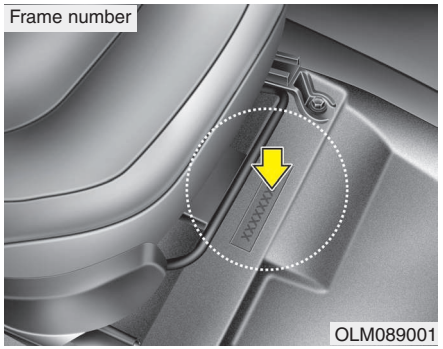
**Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers**

| Temperature | °C | -30 | -20 | -10 | 0 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | (°F) | -10 | 0 | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | |
| Petrol Engine (2.0L) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | 20W-50 | | | |
| | | | | | | | 15W-40 | | | |
| | | | | | | 10W-30 | | | | |
| | | | | | 5W-30, 5W-40 | | | | | |
| Diesel Engine (2.0L) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | 15W-40 | | | |
| | | | | | | 10W-30/40 | | | | |
| | | | | | 5W-30/40 | | | | | |
| | | | | 0W-30/40 | | | | | | |

EL(FL) Aust 8.QXP 26.7.2013 17:47 Page 9

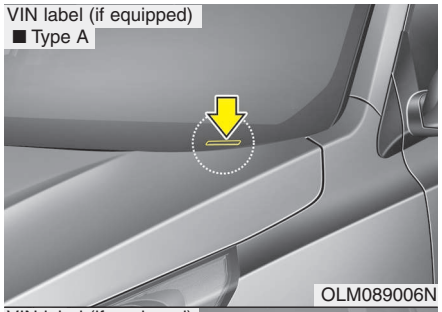


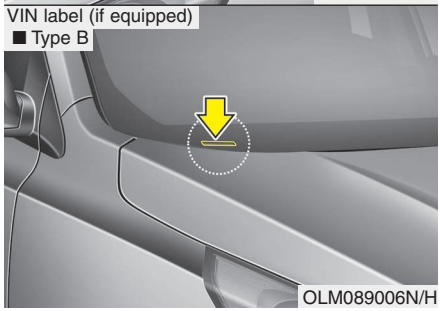
## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)




The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

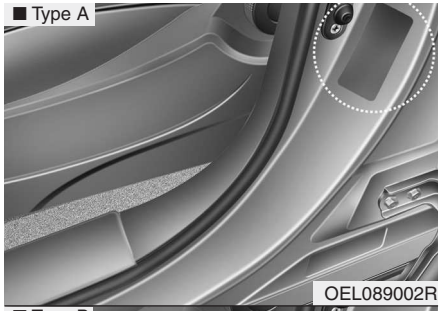
The number is punched on the floor under the driver's seat. To check the number, open the cover.

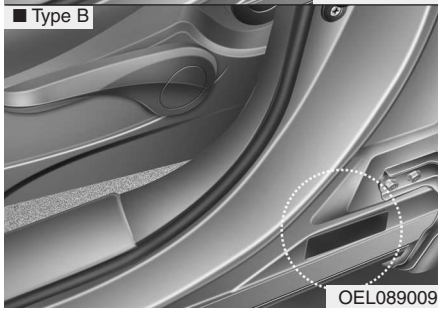



The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



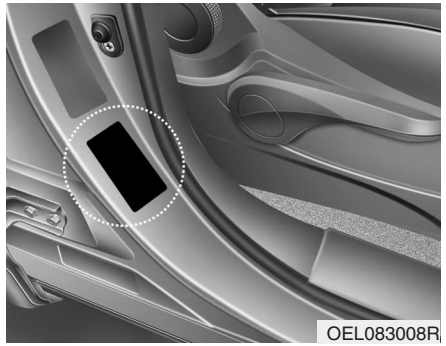




The vehicle certification label attached on the front passenger's (or driver's) side centre pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

EL(FL) Aust 8.QXP 26.7.2013 17:47 Page 10



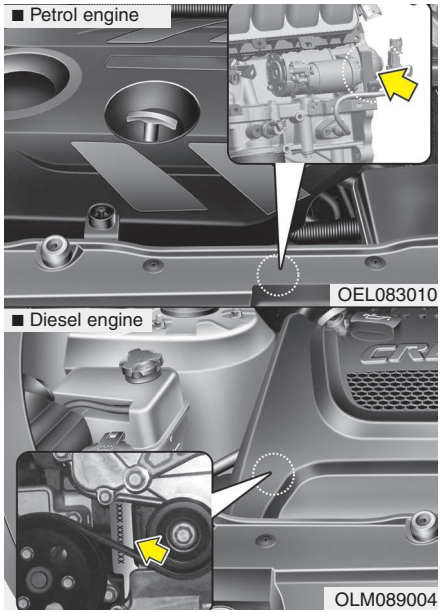
## TYRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL




The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

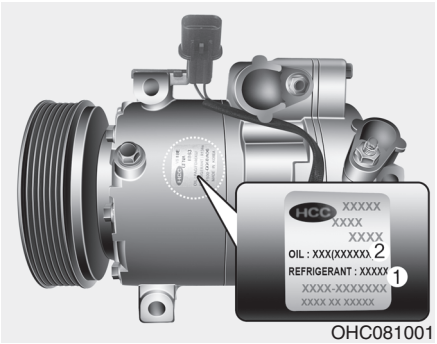
The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

## ENGINE NUMBER




The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

## AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL




A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

EL(FL) Aust FOREWORD.QXP 7/26/2013 1:59 PM Page 1

HYUNDAI



# OWNER'S MANUAL

**Operation**
**Maintenance**
**Specifications**

**All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, in line with the Hyundai policy of continual product improvement, the right to amend or change specifications without prior notice or obligation to incorporate such amendments or changes into vehicles already produced, is reserved.**

**This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment. As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.**

EL(FL) Aust FOREWORD.QXP 7/26/2013 1:59 PM Page 2

## CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR HYUNDAI

Your Hyundai should not be modified in any way without the approval of Hyundai. Any modifications may adversely affect the safety, durability and performance of your Hyundai. In addition, those components which are subjected to modification or are added to the vehicle specification, and any resultant consequential damage will not be covered by the vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

## TWO-WAY RADIO OR MOBILE PHONE INSTALLATION

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic fuel injection and other electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult your Hyundai dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions.

EL(FL) Aust FOREWORD.QXP 7/26/2013 1:59 PM Page 3

## SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as WARNING, CAUTION and NOTICE.
These titles indicate the following:

**⚠ WARNING**
**This indicates that a condition may result in harm, serious injury or death to you or other persons if the warning is not heeded. Follow the advice provided with the warning.**

**⚠ CAUTION**
***This indicates that a condition may result in damage to your vehicle or its equipment if the caution is not heeded. Follow the advice provided with the caution.***

**✻ NOTICE**
**This indicates that interesting or helpful information is being provided.**

EL(FL) Aust FOREWORD.QXP 7/26/2013 1:59 PM Page 4

# FOREWORD

Thank you for choosing Hyundai. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discerning people who drive Hyundais. The advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each Hyundai we build is something of which we're very proud.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new Hyundai. It is suggested that you read it carefully because the information it contains can contribute greatly to the satisfaction you receive from your new car.

The manufacturer also recommends that service and maintenance on your vehicle be performed by an authorised Hyundai dealer.

## HYUNDAI MOTOR COMPANY

**Note** : If for any reason in the future you should sell your Hyundai, please leave this manual in the vehicle for the new owner's use.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Severe engine and transaxle damage may result from the use of poor quality fuels and lubricants that do not meet Hyundai specifications. You must always use high quality fuels and lubricants that meet the specifications listed on Page 8-6 in the Vehicle Specifications section of the Owner's Manual.***

Copyright 2013 Hyundai Motor Company. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Hyundai Motor Company.

EL(FL) Aust FOREWORD.QXP 7/26/2013 1:59 PM Page 5

## AUSTRALIAN DESIGN RULES

The compliance plate shows that your vehicle has been tested and found to comply with all relevant Australian Design Rules (ADR's) applicable at its date of manufacture.

Any part, that is subject to these ADR's, must not be removed or altered and is to be maintained in good order at all times for the vehicle to be roadworthy and re-registerable by all registerable authorities.

Consult an Authorised Hyundai Dealer before conducting any repairs that may affect these areas or if requiring further classification on design rules or safety features. Failure to observe the above warning may render the vehicle compliance invalid and result in personal injury which may have otherwise been avoided.

EL(FL) Aust FOREWORD.QXP 7/26/2013 1:59 PM Page 6

EL(FL) Aust FOREWORD.QXP 7/26/2013 1:59 PM Page 7

## TABLE OF CONTENTS


| | |
|---|---|
| Introduction | 1 |
| Your vehicle at a glance | 2 |
| Safety features of your vehicle | 3 |
| Features of your vehicle | 4 |
| Driving your vehicle | 5 |
| What to do in an emergency | 6 |
| Maintenance | 7 |
| Specifications & Consumer information | 8 |
| Index | I |

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 1

# Index

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 2



## A


Active ECO .....5-50
Air bag warning label .....3-59
Air bag warning light .....3-42
Air bags .....3-39
- Air bag warning label .....3-59
- Air bag warning light .....3-42
- Curtain air bag .....3-49
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag .....3-45
- Operation .....3-40
- Side impact air bag .....3-48
- SRS components and functions .....3-43

Air cleaner .....7-30
Air conditioner compressor label .....8-10
Air conditioning system
- Automatic climate control system .....4-113
- Manual climate control system .....4-104

Alarm system .....4-13
Antenna .....4-134
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) .....5-34
Appearance care .....7-77
- Exterior care .....7-77
- Interior care .....7-82

Armrest (rear seat) .....3-13
Ashtray .....4-126
Audio remote control .....4-135
Audio system .....4-134
- Antenna .....4-134
- Audio remote control .....4-135

Auto light position .....4-90
Automatic climate control system .....4-113
- Air conditioning .....4-119
- Automatic heating and air conditioning .....4-114
- Manual heating and air conditioning .....4-115

Automatic transaxle .....5-18
- Sports mode .....5-21
- Shift lock system .....5-21

Aux, USB and iPod® .....4-129

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 3



## B

Battery ..... 7-37
Battery saver function ..... 4-88
Before driving ..... 5-4
Bonnet ..... 4-25
Brake system ..... 5-31
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ..... 5-34
- Downhill brake control (DBC) ..... 5-41
- Electronic stability control (ESC) ..... 5-36
- Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) ..... 5-43
- Hill-start assist control (HAC) ..... 5-41
- Parking brake ..... 5-32
- Power brakes ..... 5-31
- TSA (Trailer stability assist) ..... 5-43
- Vehicle stability management ..... 5-39

Brake/clutch fluid ..... 7-26
Bulb replacement ..... 7-63
Bulb wattage ..... 8-3
Button start/stop, see engine start/stop button ..... 5-9

## C

Camera (Rear view) ..... 4-87
Capacities (Lubricants) ..... 8-6
Care
- Exterior care ..... 7-77
- Interior care ..... 7-82
- Tyre care ..... 7-40

Cargo security screen ..... 4-131
Centre console storage ..... 4-123
Central door lock switch ..... 4-16
Certification label ..... 8-9
Chains
- Tyre chains ..... 5-58

Checking tyre inflation pressure ..... 7-42
Child restraint system ..... 3-31
- ISOFIX system ..... 3-36
- Seat belt ..... 3-33
- Tether anchor system ..... 3-34

Child-protector rear door lock ..... 4-18
Cigarette lighter ..... 4-126
Climate control air filter ..... 7-32
Combined instrument, see instrument cluster ..... 4-46
Compact spare tyre replacement ..... 7-45
Compass with Electric chromic mirror ..... 4-40
Cool box ..... 4-124
Coolant ..... 7-23
Cooling fluid, see engine coolant ..... 7-23

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 4



Crankcase emission control system .....7-83
Cruise control system .....5-46
Cup holder.....4-127
Curtain air bag .....3-49

## D

Dashboard illumination, see instrument panel illumination .....4-47
Dashboard, see instrument cluster .....4-46
Day/night rearview mirror .....4-39
Daytime running light.....4-93
Declaration of conformity.....8-11
Defogging (Windscreen).....4-120
Defroster (Rear window) .....4-102
Defrosting (Windscreen).....4-120
Digital clock .....4-129
Dimensions .....8-2
Display illumination, see instrument panel illumination .....4-47
Displays, see instrument cluster .....4-46
Door locks.....4-15
  Central door lock switch .....4-16
  Child-protector rear door lock.....4-18
Downhill brake control (DBC) .....5-41
Drinks holders, see cup holders .....4-127
Driver's and passenger's front air bag .....3-45
Driving at night.....5-54
Driving in flooded areas .....5-55
Driving in the rain.....5-55

## E

Economical operation .....5-51
Electric chromic mirror (ECM) .....4-39
Electric chromic mirror (ECM) with compass .....4-40
Electric power steering .....4-34
Electronic stability control (ESC).....5-36
Emergency starting .....6-5
  Jump starting .....6-5
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) .....5-43
Emission control system .....7-83
  Crankcase emission control system .....7-83
  Evaporative emission control system .....7-83
  Exhaust emission control system .....7-84
Engine .....8-2
Engine compartment .....2-4
Engine coolant .....7-23
Engine Coolant Temperature gauge .....4-49
Engine number .....8-10
Engine oil .....7-22
Engine overheats.....6-7
Engine start/stop button .....5-9
Evaporative emission control system .....7-83
Exhaust emission control system .....7-84
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items.....7-19

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 5



Exterior care .....7-177

## F

Flat tyre (with spare tyre) .....6-8
Jack and tools .....6-8
Removing and storing the spare tyre .....6-9
Changing tyres.....6-9
Flex steering wheel .....4-37
Floor mat anchor(s).....4-130
Fluid
Brake/clutch fluid .....7-26
Washer fluid .....7-27
Fog light (front) .....4-92
Fog light (rear) .....4-92
Folding the rear seat .....3-14
Four wheel drive (4WD).....5-24
Front seat adjustment - manual.....3-5
Front seat adjustment - power.....3-6
Fuel economy .....4-65
Fuel filler lid .....4-27
Fuel filter.....7-28
Fuel gauge.....4-50
Fuel requirements .....1-3
Fuses .....7-51
Fuse/relay panel description .....7-56
Instrument panel fuse .....7-52
Memory fuse .....7-53
Multi fuse .....7-55

## G

Gauges.....4-48
Glove box .....4-123
Glove box lamp.....4-101
Gross vehicle weight.....8-5

## H

Hazard warning flasher.....4-87
Hazardous driving conditions .....5-53
Headlight (Headlamp) escort function .....4-88
Headlight bulb replacement .....7-64
Headlight levelling device .....4-93
Headlight position.....4-89
Headrest(front) .....3-8
Headrest(rear) .....3-12
Heated steering wheel.....4-35
Heater
Automatic climate control system.....4-113
Manual climate control system .....4-104
Height adjustment .....3-20
High-beam operation .....4-90
Highway driving .....5-56
Hill-start assist control (HAC) .....5-41
Horn .....4-36
How to use this manual.....1-2

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 6



## I

Icy Road Warning Light ....4-51
If the engine will not start....6-4
In case of an emergency whilst driving ....6-3
Information Mode ....4-54
Inside rearview mirror ....4-39
Instrument cluster ....4-46
Gauges ....4-48
Instrument panel illumination ....4-47
LCD Display Control ....4-47
Transaxle Shift Indicator ....4-52
Instrument panel fuse ....7-52
Instrument panel overview ....2-3
Interior care ....7-82
Interior features ....4-126
Ashtray ....4-126
Aux, USB and iPod® ....4-129
Cargo security screen ....4-131
Cigarette lighter ....4-126
Cup holder ....4-127
Digital clock ....4-129
Floor mat anchor(s) ....4-130
Luggage net (holder) ....4-130
Power outlet ....4-128
Sun visor ....4-127
Interior light ....4-99
Glove box lamp ....4-101
Luggage room lamp ....4-100
Map lamp ....4-99
Room lamp ....4-100
Vanity mirror lamp ....4-100
Interior overview ....2-2
ISOFIX system ....3-36

## J

Jack and tools ....6-8
Jump starting ....6-5

## K

Key positions ....5-5
Keys ....4-4

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 7



## L

Label
- Air bag warning label ....3-59
- Air conditioner compressor label ....8-10
- Tyre sidewall labeling ....7-46
- Tyre specification and pressure label ....8-10
- Vehicle certification label ....8-9

Lap/shoulder belt ....3-19
LCD display ....4-53
- Information Mode ....4-54
- LCD modes ....4-53
- User Settings Mode ....4-55
- Warning Messages ....4-57

LCD Display Control ....4-47
LCD modes ....4-53
Light bulbs ....7-63
Lighting ....4-88
- Auto light position ....4-90
- Battery saver function ....4-88
- Daytime running light ....4-93
- Front fog light ....4-92
- Headlight (Headlamp) escort function ....4-88
- Headlight levelling device ....4-93
- Headlight position ....4-89
- High-beam operation ....4-90
- Parking light position ....4-89
- Rear fog light ....4-92
- Turn signals ....4-91

Lubricants and capacities ....8-6
Luggage net (holder) ....4-130
Luggage room lamp ....4-100
Luggage volume ....8-5

## M

Maintenance
- Explanation of scheduled maintenance items ....7-19
- Maintenance services ....7-5
- Owner maintenance ....7-7
- Scheduled maintenance service ....7-9
- Tyre maintenance ....7-46

Maintenance schedule ....7-10
Maintenance services ....7-5
Manual climate control system ....4-104
- Air conditioning ....4-110
- Climate control air filter ....4-111
- Heating and air conditioning ....4-105

Manual transaxle ....5-15
Map lamp ....4-99
Mirrors ....4-39
- Day/night rearview mirror ....4-39
- Electric chromic mirror (ECM) with compass ....4-40
- Electric chromic mirror (ECM) ....4-39
- Inside rearview mirror ....4-39
- Outside rearview mirror ....4-43

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 8



Moonroof, see panorama sunroof....4-30
Multi fuse....7-55

## O

Odometer....4-50
Oil (Engine)....7-22
Outside mirror defroster....4-103
Outside rearview mirror....4-43
Outside Temperature Gauge....4-51
Overheats....6-7
Owner maintenance....7-7

## P

Panorama sunroof....4-30
Parking assist system....4-82
Parking brake....5-32
Parking light position....4-89
Power brakes....5-31
Power outlet....4-128
Power window lock button....4-24
Pre-tensioner seat belt....3-24

## R

Rear seat....3-12
Rear view camera....4-87
Rear window wiper and washer....4-98
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures....7-40
Recommended lubricants and capacities....8-6
Recommended SAE viscosity number....8-8
Reducing the risk of a rollover....5-28
Remote keyless entry....4-7
Replacement light bulb....7-63
Road warning....6-2
Rocking the vehicle....5-53
Roof rack....4-133
Room lamp....4-100
Rotation (Tyre)....7-43

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 9



## S


Scheduled maintenance service .....7-9
Seat belt warning .....3-18
Seat belts .....3-17
- Height adjustment .....3-20
- Lap/shoulder belt .....3-19
- Precautions .....3-27
- Pre-tensioner seat belt .....3-24
- Seat belt warning .....3-18
- Stowing the rear seat belt .....3-23

Seat warmer (rear seat) .....3-13
Seat warmer(front) .....3-10
Seatback pocket .....3-11
Seats .....3-2
- Armrest (rear seat) .....3-13
- Folding the rear seat .....3-14
- Front seat adjustment - manual .....3-5
- Front seat adjustment - power .....3-6
- Headrest(front) .....3-8
- Headrest(rear) .....3-12
- Rear seat .....3-12
- Seat warmer (rear seat) .....3-13
- Seat warmer(front) .....3-10
- Seatback pocket .....3-11

Shift lock system .....5-21
Side impact air bag .....3-48
Smart key .....4-10
Smooth cornering .....5-54
Snow tyres .....5-57
- Changing tyres .....6-9
- Compact spare tyre replacement .....7-45
- Removing and storing the spare tyre .....6-9

Spare tyre .....6-9
Special driving conditions .....5-53
- Driving at night .....5-54
- Driving in flooded areas .....5-55
- Driving in the rain .....5-55
- Hazardous driving conditions .....5-53
- Highway driving .....5-56
- Rocking the vehicle .....5-53
- Smooth cornering .....5-54

Speedometer .....4-48
Sports mode .....5-21
SRS components and functions .....3-43
Starting difficulties, see engine will not start .....6-4
Steering wheel .....4-34
- Electric power steering .....4-34
- Flex steering wheel .....4-37
- Heated steering wheel .....4-35
- Horn .....4-36

Storage compartment .....4-123
- Centre console storage .....4-123
- Cool box .....4-124
- Glove box .....4-123
- Sunglass holder .....4-124

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 10



Stowing the rear seat belt .....3-23
Sun visor .....4-127
Sunglass holder .....4-124
Sunroof, see panorama sunroof .....4-30

## T

Tachometer .....4-48
Tailgate .....4-19
Tether anchor system .....3-34
Theft-alarm system .....4-13
Tilt steering .....4-35
Towing.....6-14
Trailer towing .....5-61
Transaxle
  Automatic transaxle.....5-18
  Manual transaxle .....5-15
Transaxle Shift Indicator.....4-52
Trip A/B .....4-64
Trip computer .....4-63
  Fuel Economy .....4-65
  Trip A/B.....4-64
TSA (Trailer stability assist).....5-43
Turn signals.....4-91
Tyre chains .....5-58
Tyre rotation .....7-43
Tyre specification and pressure label .....8-10
Tyres and wheels .....7-40, 8-4
Checking tyre inflation pressure .....7-42
Compact spare tyre replacement.....7-45
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures .....7-43
Tyre care .....7-43
Tyre maintenance .....7-46
Tyre replacement.....7-44
Tyre rotation .....7-43
Tyre sidewall labeling .....7-46
Tyre traction .....7-46
Wheel alignment and tyre balance .....7-44
Wheel replacement .....7-45

## U

User Settings Mode.....4-55

## V

Vanity mirror lamp .....4-100
Vehicle run-in process.....1-6
Vehicle certification label .....8-9
Vehicle handling instructions .....1-6
Vehicle identification number (VIN) .....8-9
Vehicle stability management .....5-39
Vehicle weight.....5-71

EL(FL) Aust Index.qxp 7/26/2013 2:14 PM Page 11



## W

Warning Messages .....4-57
Warnings and indicators .....4-67
Washer fluid .....7-27
Wheel alignment and tyre balance .....7-44
Wheel replacement .....7-45
Windows .....4-21
Power window lock button .....4-24
Windscreen defrosting and defogging .....4-120
Windscreen washers (Front) .....4-97
Windscreen wipers (Front) .....4-95
Winter driving .....5-57
Snow tyres .....5-57
Tyre chains .....5-58
Wiper blades .....7-34
Wipers and washers .....4-95
Rear window wiper and washer .....4-98
Windscreen washers (Front) .....4-97
Windscreen wipers (Front) .....4-95

EL(FL) Eng 1.QXP 8/8/2013 6:52 PM Page 1

# Introduction

1

**How to use this manual . . . . . 1-2**
**Fuel requirements . . . . . 1-2**
- **Gasoline engine . . . . . 1-2**
- **Diesel engine. . . . . 1-4**

**Vehicle handling instructions . . . . . 1-6**
**Vehicle break-In process . . . . . 1-6**
**Indicator symbols on the instrument cluster. . . . . 1-7**

EL(FL) Eng 1.QXP 8/8/2013 6:52 PM Page 2



## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimize the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. A good place to start is the index; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has eight sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

You'll find various WARNINGS, CAUTIONS, and NOTICES in this manual. These were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGS, CAUTIONS and NOTICES.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.**

## FUEL REQUIREMENTS

### Gasoline engine

***Unleaded***

**For Europe**

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you to use unleaded gasoline which complies with EN 228 and has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher. You may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of RON 91-94 / AKI 87-90 but it may result in slight performance reduction of the vehicle.

**Except Europe**

Your new vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having an Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher.

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimize exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

EL(FL) Eng 1.QXP 8/8/2013 6:52 PM Page 3



**⚠ CAUTION**

***NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.***

***Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. (We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.)***

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refueling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

***Leaded (if equipped)***

For some countries, your vehicle is designed to use leaded gasoline. When you are going to use leaded gasoline, we recommend that you ask an authorized HYUNDAI dealer whether leaded gasoline in your vehicle is available or not.

Octane Rating of leaded gasoline is same with unleaded one.

***Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol***

Gasohol, a mixture of gasoline and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and gasoline or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded gasoline.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use gasoline or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or driveability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Gasoline or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.***

EL(FL) Eng 1.QXP 8/8/2013 6:52 PM Page 4



***Use of MTBE***

HYUNDAI recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapor lock or hard starting.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)***

***Do not use methanol***

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system.

***Fuel Additives***

HYUNDAI recommends that you use good quality gasolines meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents.

For customers who do not use good quality gasolines including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000km (For Europe)/ 5,000km (Except Europe). Additives are available from your authorized HYUNDAI dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

***Operation in foreign countries***

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

## Diesel engine

***Diesel fuel***

Diesel engine must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel that complies with EN 590 or comparable standard. (EN stands for "European Norm"). Do not use marine diesel fuel, heating oils, or non-approved fuel additives, as this will increase wear and cause damage to the engine and fuel system. The use of non-approved fuels and / or fuel additives will result in a limitation of your warranty rights.

Diesel fuel of above cetane 51 is used in your vehicle. If two types of diesel fuel are available, use summer or winter fuel properly according to the following temperature conditions.

- Above -5°C(23°F) ... Summer type diesel fuel.
- Below -5°C(23°F) ... Winter type diesel fuel.

Watch the fuel level in the tank very carefully : If the engine stops through fuel failure, the circuits must be completely purged to permit restarting.

EL(FL) Eng 1.QXP 8/8/2013 6:52 PM Page 5



### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not let any gasoline or water enter the tank. This would make it necessary to drain it out and to bleed the lines to avoid jamming the injection pump and damaging the engine.***
- ***In winter, in order to cut down incidents due to freezing, paraffin oil may be added to the fuel if the temperature drops to below -10°C (14°F). Never use more than 20% paraffin oil.***

### ⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel

***It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.***

***If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.***

***Biodiesel***

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7% made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), fatty acid methyl ester (FAME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufactures warranty.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel, B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

EL(FL) Eng 1.QXP 8/8/2013 6:52 PM Page 6



## VEHICLE HANDLING INSTRUCTIONS

As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher center of gravity than other types of vehicles. In other words they are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional 2-wheel drive vehicles. Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. Again, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover. **Be sure to read the "Reducing the risk of a rollover" driving guidelines, in section 5 of this manual.**

## VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

No special break-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- While driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than 3 minutes at one time.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.

EL(FL) Eng 1.QXP 8/8/2013 6:52 PM Page 7



## INDICATOR SYMBOLS ON THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER


Door ajar warning light


Door and tailgate open position light


Tailgate open warning light


Sunroof open warning light


Seat belt warning light


Low beam indicator*


High beam indicator


Front fog light indicator*


Rear fog light indicator*


Light on indicator*


Turn signal indicator


ESC indicator*


ESC OFF indicator*


ABS warning light


Air bag warning light


Parking brake & Brake fluid warning light


Engine oil pressure warning light


Engine oil level warning light*


4WD system warning light*


4WD LOCK indicator*


Charging system warning light


Malfunction indicator*


Immobilizer indicator*


Cruise indicator*


Cruise SET indicator*


Low fuel level warning light


Electric power steering (EPS) system warning light*


Shift pattern indicator*


Manual transaxle shift indicator*/ Auto transaxle shift indicator*


Glow indicator (Diesel only)


Fuel filter warning light (Diesel only)


DBC indicator*


Key out warning*

EL(FL) Eng 1.QXP 8/8/2013 6:52 PM Page 8




Low tire pressure telltale*


Engine coolant temperature warning light


Low tire pressure position telltale*



ECO indicator*


Auto stop for ISG system indicator*

*: if equipped

✻: For more detailed explanations, refer to section 4, “Instrument cluster”.

EL(FL) Eng 2.QXP 8/9/2013 1:18 PM Page 1

# Your vehicle at a glance

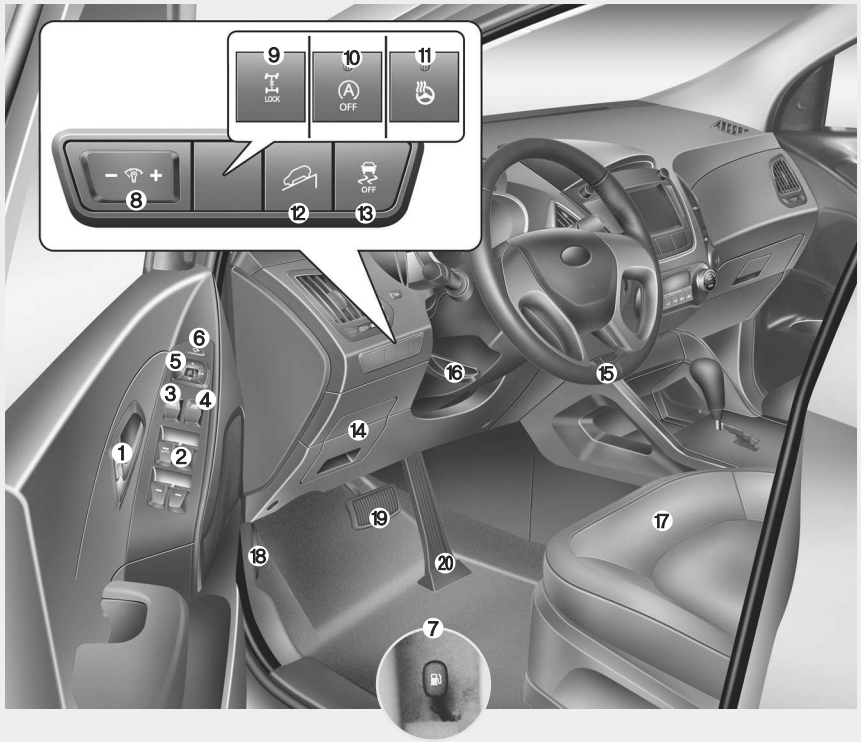
**Interior overview . . . . . 2-2**
**Instrument panel overview . . . . . 2-4**
**Engine compartment . . . . . 2-6**

EL(FL) Eng 2.QXP 8/9/2013 1:18 PM Page 2



## INTERIOR OVERVIEW

Left-Hand drive type




❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

1. Door lock/unlock button .....4-16
2. Power window switches*.....4-21
3. Central door lock switch* .....4-16
4. Power window lock switch* .....4-24
5. Outside rearview mirror control switch*.....4-44
6. Outside rearview mirror folding button*.....4-45
7. Fuel filler lid release lever.....4-27
8. Instrument panel illumination control switch* .....4-47
9. 4WD Lock button*.....5-29
10. Idle Stop and Go system OFF button* .....5-17
11. Heated steering wheel button* .....4-35
12. DBC button* .....5-45
13. ESC OFF button* .....5-41
14. Fuse box .....7-81
15. Steering wheel .....4-34
16. Steering wheel tilt control* .....4-35
17. Seat.....3-2
18. Hood release lever .....4-25
19. Brake pedal.....5-35
20. Accelerator pedal

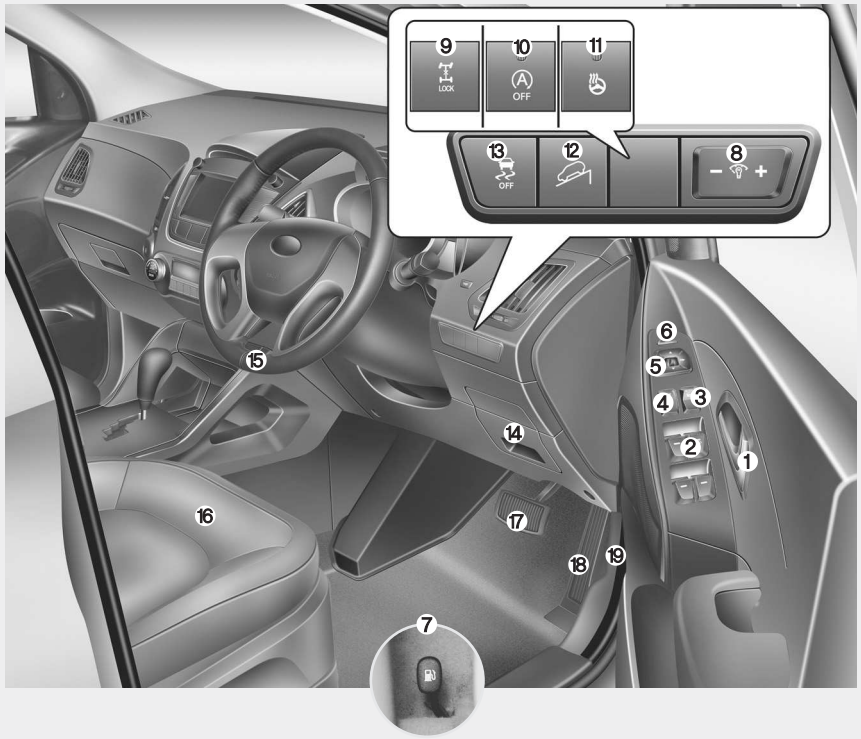
* : if equipped

OEL013001

EL(FL) Eng 2.QXP 8/9/2013 1:18 PM Page 3



Right-Hand drive type




❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

1. Door lock/unlock button .....4-16
2. Power window switches*.....4-21
3. Central door lock switch* .....4-16
4. Power window lock switch* .....4-24
5. Outside rearview mirror control switch*.....4-44
6. Outside rearview mirror folding button*.....4-45
7. Fuel filler lid release lever.....4-27
8. Instrument panel illumination control switch* .....4-47
9. 4WD Lock button*.....5-29
10. Idle Stop and Go system OFF button* .....5-17
11. Heated steering wheel button* .....4-35
12. DBC button* .....5-45
13. ESC OFF button* .....5-41
14. Fuse box .....7-81
15. Steering wheel .....4-34
16. Seat.....3-2
17. Brake pedal.....5-35
18. Accelerator pedal
19. Hood release lever .....4-25

* : if equipped

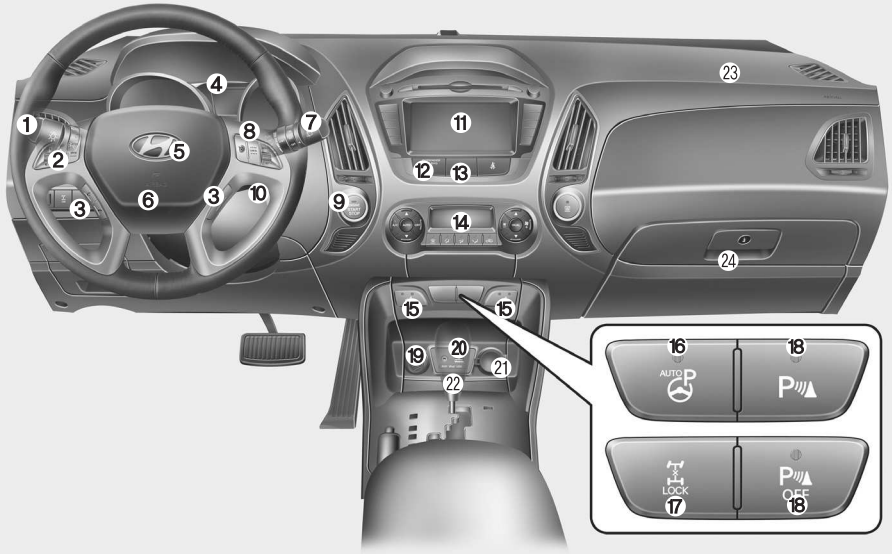
OEL013001R-1

EL(FL) Eng 2.QXP 8/9/2013 1:19 PM Page 4



## INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW

Left-Hand drive type




❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

1. Light control/Turn signals .....4-100
2. Steering wheel audio controls* ....4-147
3. Bluetooth phone controls* ....4-180, 233
4. Instrument cluster .....4-46
5. Horn .....4-36
6. Driver's front air bag.....3-47
7. Wiper/Washer.....4-106
8. Auto cruise controls* .....5-50
9. Engine start/stop button* .....5-9
10. Ignition switch .....5-5
11. Digital clock and Audio/AVN* .....4-141
12. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator*.....3-46
13. Hazard warning flasher switch.....4-98
14. Climate control system* ..4-115, 4-124
15. Seat warmer* .....3-13
16. Smart parking assist system ON/OFF button* .....4-92
17. 4WD Lock button* .....5-29
18. Parking assist system ON/OFF button* .....4-81
19. Cigarette lighter* .....4-138
20. AUX, USB*.....4-141
21. Power outlet* .....4-140
22. Shift lever .....5-19, 5-22
23. Passenger's front air bag* .....3-49
24. Glove box.....4-135

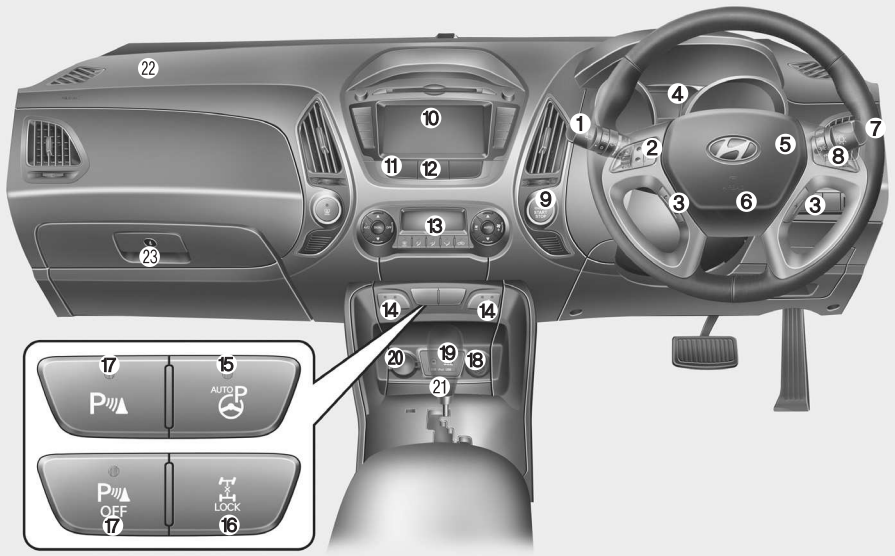
* if equipped

OEL013002

EL(FL) Eng 2.QXP 8/9/2013 1:19 PM Page 5



Right-Hand drive type




❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

1. Light control/Turn signals .....4-100
2. Steering wheel audio controls* ....4-147
3. Bluetooth phone controls* ....4-180, 233
4. Instrument cluster .....4-46
5. Horn .....4-36
6. Driver's front air bag.....3-47
7. Wiper/Washer.....4-106
8. Auto cruise controls* .....5-50
9. Engine start/stop button* .....5-9
10.Digital clock and Audio/AVN* .....4-141
11. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator*.....3-46
12. Hazard warning flasher switch.....4-98
13. Climate control system* .....4-115, 124
14. Seat warmer* .....3-13
15. Smart parking assist system ON/OFF button* .....4-92
16. 4WD Lock button* .....5-29
17. Parking assist system ON/OFF button* .....4-81
18. Cigarette lighter* .....4-138
19. AUX, USB*.....4-141
20. Power outlet* .....4-140
21. Shift lever .....5-19, 5-22
22. Passenger's front air bag* .....3-49
23. Glove box.....4-135

* : if equipped

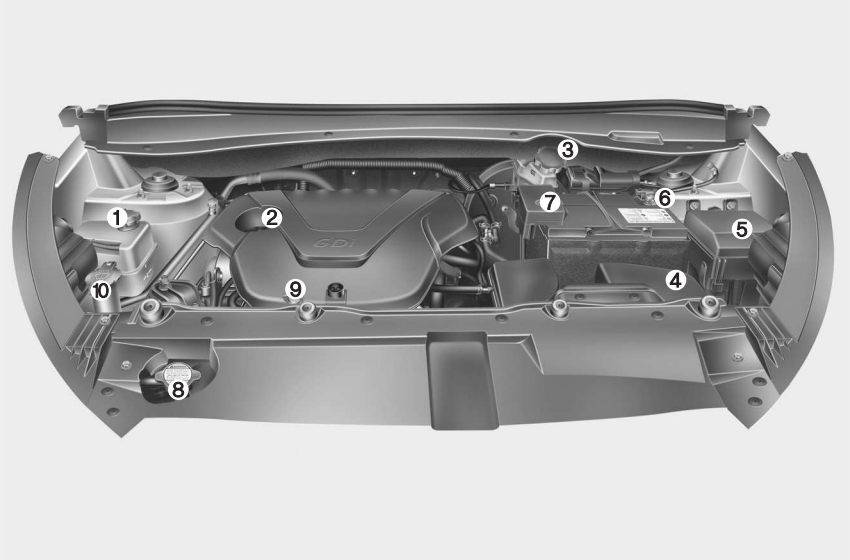
OEL013002R-1

EL(FL) Eng 2.QXP 8/9/2013 1:19 PM Page 6



## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **Gasoline Engine (1.6L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-52
2. Engine oil filler cap .....7-51
3. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir.....7-55
4. Air cleaner .....7-59
5. Fuse box.....7-81
6. Negative battery terminal .....7-66
7. Positive battery terminal .....7-66
8. Radiator cap .....7-54
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-51
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir..7-56

* : if equipped

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL070301

EL(FL) Eng 2.QXP 8/9/2013 1:19 PM Page 7



■ **Gasoline Engine (2.0L) - MPI/GDI**




1. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-52
2. Engine oil filler cap .....7-51
3. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir.....7-55
4. Air cleaner .....7-59
5. Fuse box.....7-81
6. Negative battery terminal .....7-66
7. Positive battery terminal .....7-66
8. Radiator cap .....7-54
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-51
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir..7-56

* : if equipped

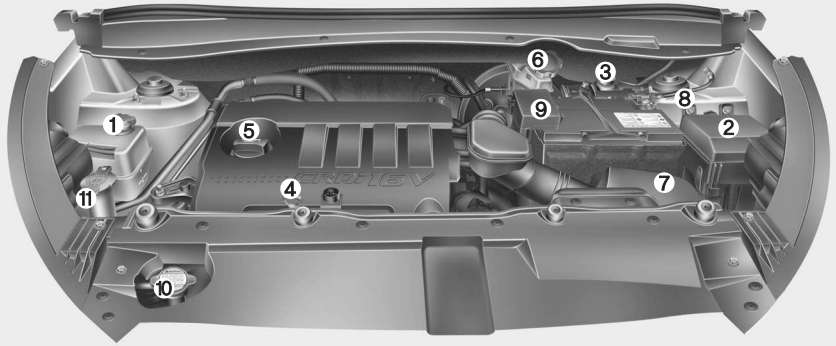
❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OLM073300

EL(FL) Eng 2.QXP 8/9/2013 1:19 PM Page 8



**■ Diesel Engine (1.7L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir .....7-52
2. Fuse box .....7-81
3. Fuel filter .....7-57
4. Engine oil dipstick .....7-51
5. Engine oil filler cap .....7-51
6. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir .....7-55
7. Air cleaner .....7-59
8. Negative battery terminal .....7-66
9. Positive battery terminal .....7-66
10. Radiator cap .....7-54
11. Windshield washer fluid reservoir ..7-56

* : if equipped

✻ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL070302

EL(FL) Eng 2.QXP 8/9/2013 1:19 PM Page 9



■ **Diesel Engine (2.0L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir .....7-52
2. Fuse box .....7-81
3. Fuel filter .....7-57
4. Engine oil dipstick .....7-51
5. Engine oil filler cap .....7-51
6. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir .....7-55
7. Air cleaner .....7-59
8. Negative battery terminal .....7-66
9. Positive battery terminal .....7-66
10. Radiator cap .....7-54
11. Windshield washer fluid reservoir ..7-56

* : if equipped

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OLM079002

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:54 AM Page 1

# Safety features of your vehicle


**Seat** . . . . . 3-2
- Front seat . . . . . 3-5
- Rear seat . . . . . 3-12

**Seat belts** . . . . . 3-17
- Seat belt restraint system . . . . . 3-17
- Pre-tensioner seat belt. . . . . 3-24
- Seat belt precautions . . . . . 3-27
- Care of seat belts . . . . . 3-29

**Child restraint system** . . . . . 3-31
- Using a child restraint system . . . . . 3-32

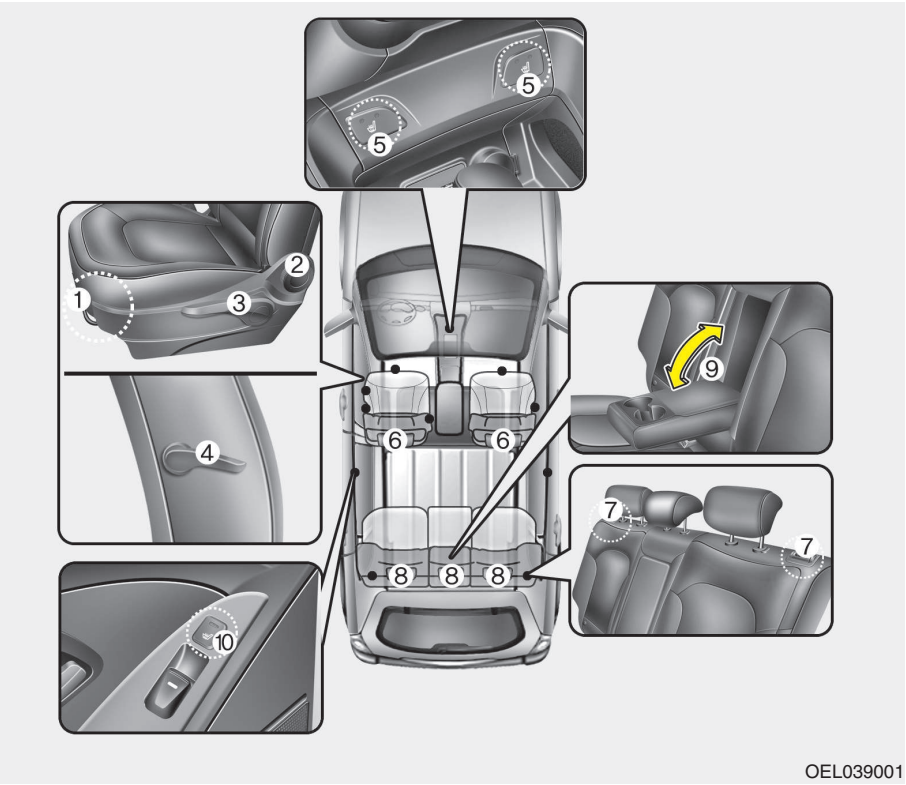
**Air bag - supplemental restraint system** . . . . . 3-42
- How does the air bag system operate . . . . . 3-43
- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat . . . . . 3-44
- Air bag warning and indicator . . . . . 3-45
- SRS components and functions . . . . . 3-47
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag . . . . . 3-49
- Side air bag . . . . . 3-54
- Curtain air bag . . . . . 3-56
- Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag) . . . . . 3-58
- SRS Care . . . . . 3-63
- Additional safety precautions. . . . . 3-64
- Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle . . . . . 3-64
- Air bag warning label . . . . . 3-65


3

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:54 AM Page 2



## SEAT




OEL039001

### Front seat

(1) Forward and backward
(2) Seatback angle
(3) Seat cushion height (Driver's seat)
(4) Lumbar support (Driver's seat)*
(5) Seat warmer*
(6) Headrest

### Rear seat

(7) Seatback folding
(8) Headrest
(9) Armrest
(10) Seat warmer*

* if equipped

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:54 AM Page 3



**⚠ WARNING - Loose objects**

**Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.**

**⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat**

**When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly and be sure there are no other occupants around the seat. If the seatback is returned without being held and controlled, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in accidental injury to a person struck by the seatback.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driver responsibility for front seat passenger**

**Riding in a vehicle with a front seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a front seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the front passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use a sitting cushion that reduces friction between the seat and passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt can't operate normally.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat**

- **Never attempt to adjust seat while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.**
- **In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. It is recommended that your chest is at least 250 mm (10 inches) away from the steering wheel.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:54 AM Page 4



**⚠ WARNING - Rear seatbacks**

- **The rear seatback must be securely latched. If not, passengers and objects could be thrown forward resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Luggage and other cargo should be laid flat in the cargo area. If objects are large, heavy, or must be piled, they must be secured. Under no circumstances should cargo be piled higher than the seatbacks. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop, collision or rollover.**
- **No passenger should ride in the cargo area or sit or lie on folded seatbacks while the vehicle is moving. All passengers must be properly seated in seats and restrained properly while riding.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When resetting the seatback to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by pushing it forward and backwards.**

**⚠ WARNING**

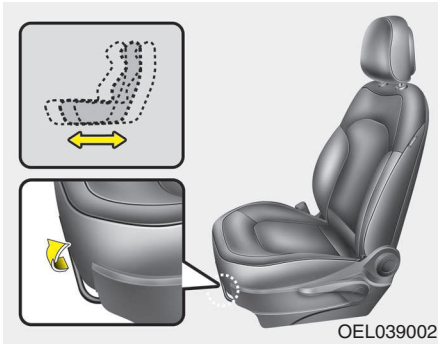
**After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to move the seat forward or backward without using the lock release lever. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms while the seat is moving.**
- **Do not put a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may gush out of the lighter and cause fire.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:54 AM Page 5




OEL039002

## Front seat

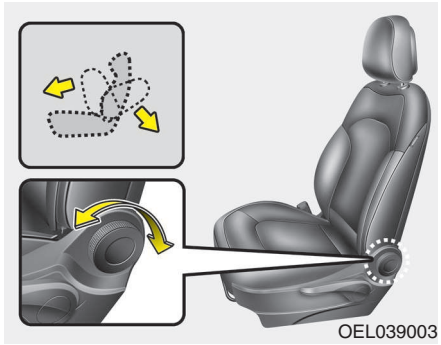
### *Manual adjustment*

**Forward and backward**

To move the seat forward or backward:

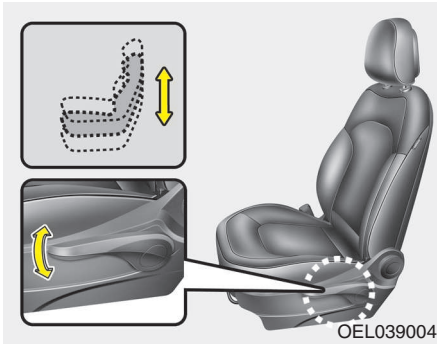
1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.


OEL039003

### *Adjusting the seatback recliner*

To recline the seatback, rotate the knob forward or rearward to the desired angle.


OEL039004

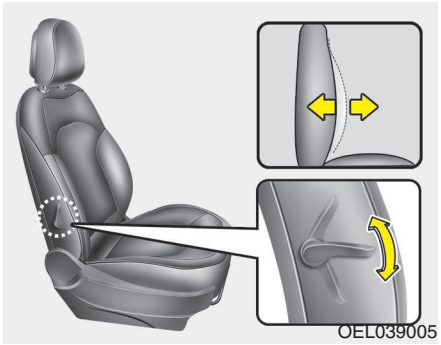
**Seat cushion height**
**(for driver's seat, if equipped)**

To change the height of the seat cushion, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat cushion, push down the lever several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull up the lever several times.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:54 AM Page 6






***Lumbar support (if equipped)***

The lumbar support can be adjusted by moving the lever on the side of seatback. Pivoting the lever increases or decreases lumbar support.

***Automatic adjustment (if equipped)***

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so as to easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF.**

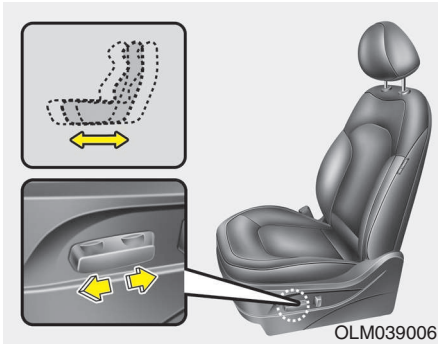
**Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The power seat is driven by an electric motor. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.***
- ***When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary while the engine is not running.***
- ***Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.***

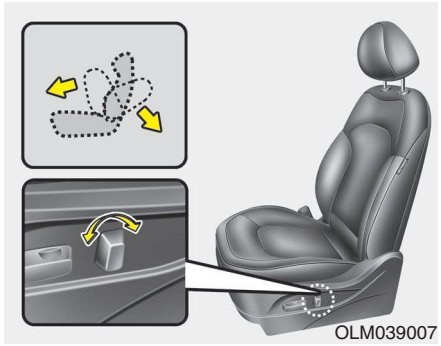
EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 7





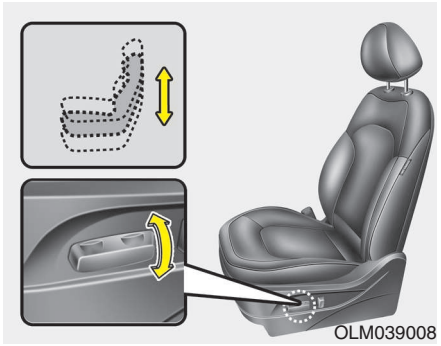

**Forward and backward**

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.




**Seatback angle**

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seatback to the desired angle. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

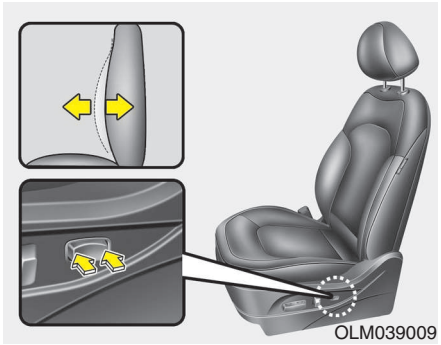



**Seat height (for driver's seat)**

Pull the control switch up to raise or down to lower the seat cushion. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

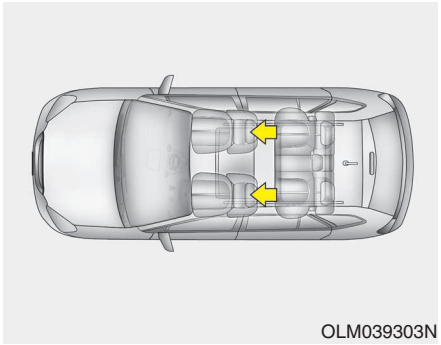
EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 8






**Lumbar support (for driver's seat)**

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the button.




***Headrest***

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.

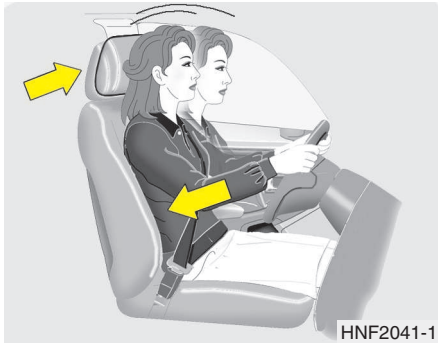
The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.**
- **Do not adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 9



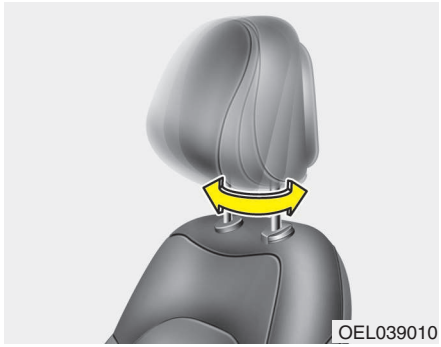

HNF2041-1

**Active headrest (if equipped)**

The active headrest is designed to move forward and upward during a rear impact. This helps prevent the driver's and front passenger's heads from moving backward and thus helps minimize neck injuries.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A gap between the seat and the headrest release button may appear when seating on the seat or when you push or pull the seat. Be careful not to get your finger, etc. caught in the gap.**

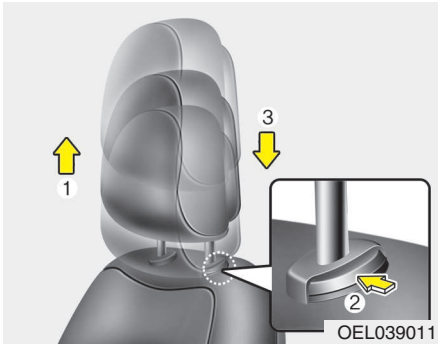

OEL039010

**Adjusting the angle (if equipped)**

The headrest angle may be adjusted by pulling or pushing the lower part of the headrest. Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Excessive pulling or pushing may damage the headrest.**



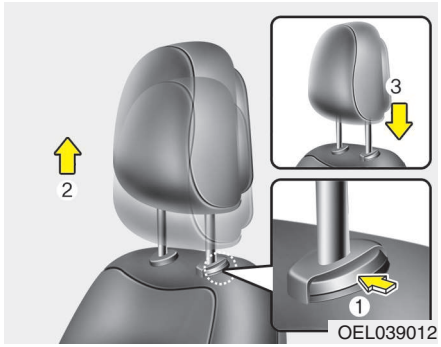
OEL039011

**Adjusting the height up and down**

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 10





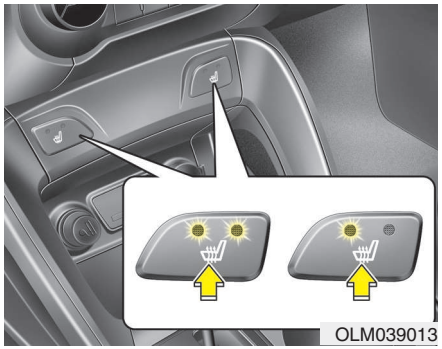

**Removal**

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) while pulling upward (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes while pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.**




***Seat warmer (if equipped)***

The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

- The temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows :

  OFF → HIGH (●●) → LOW (●)

- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

**✻ NOTICE**

**With the seat warmer switch in ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.***
- ***To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers while the seat warmer is in operation.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.***

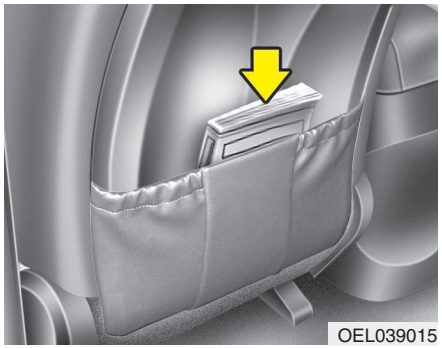
EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 11



**⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns**

**Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:**

1. **Infants, children, elderly or handicapped persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**




***Seatback pocket***

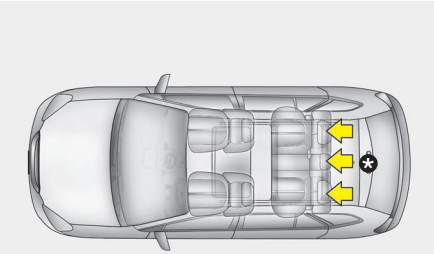
The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's and driver's seatbacks.

**⚠ WARNING - Seatback pockets**

**Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 12





* if equipped

OLM039304N

## Rear seat

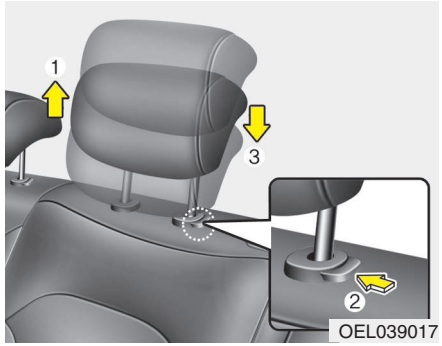
### *Headrest*

The rear seat(s) is equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**



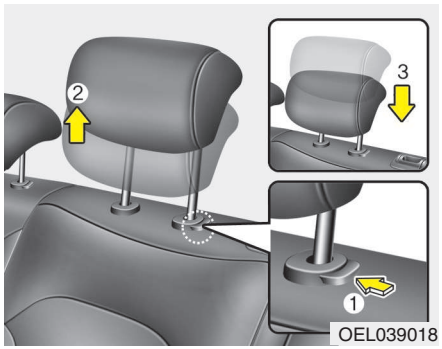

OEL039017

**Adjusting the height up and down**

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 13





OEL039018

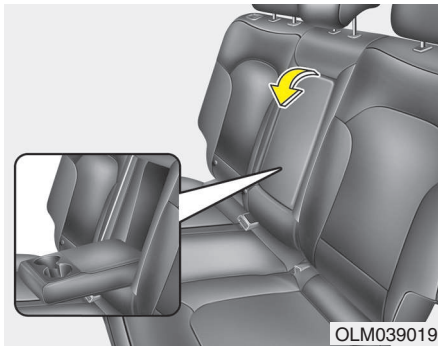
**Removal**

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) while pulling the headrest up (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes while pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

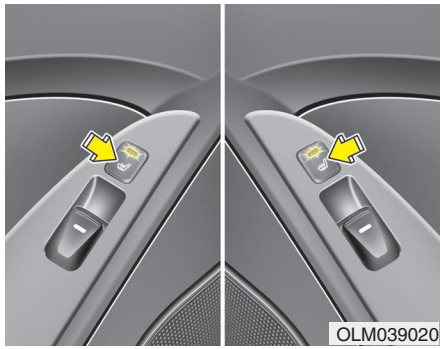
**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.**


OLM039019

***Armrest***

To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.


OLM039020

***Seat warmer (if equipped)***

The seat warmer is provided to warm the rear seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm rear seats.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

**✻ NOTICE**

**With the seat warmer switch in ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 14



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.***
- ***To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers while the seat warmer is in operation.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.***

**⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns**

**Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:**

1. **Infants, children, elderly or handicapped persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**

***Folding the rear seat***

The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

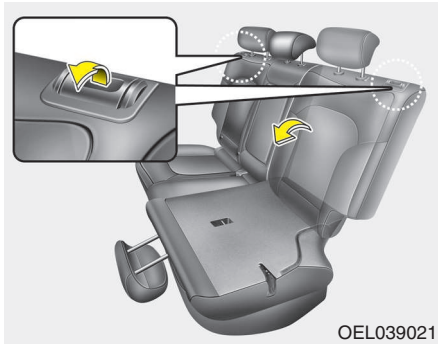
**The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks is to allow you to carry longer objects that could not be accommodated in the cargo area.**

**Never allow passengers sit on top of the folded down seatback while the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop. Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 15

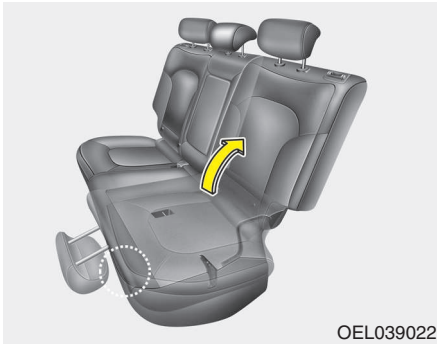


1. Insert the rear seat belt buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion, and insert the rear seat belt webbing in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.



OEL039021

4. Pull on the seatback folding lever, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.



OEL039022

5. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.
7. When the seatback is completely installed, check the red label of seatback folding lever again.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 16



**⚠ WARNING**

**When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down:**

**Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden stop, the seat could fold down and allow cargo to enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat**

**When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. If the seatback is returned without holding it, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in injury caused by being struck by the seatback.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Damaging rear seat belt buckles**

***When you fold the rear seatback or put luggage on the rear seat cushion, insert the buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback or luggage.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Rear seat belts**

***When returning the rear seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position. Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.***

**⚠ WARNING - Cargo**

**Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Special care of objects should be taken when placing them in the rear seats, since those may hit the front seat occupants in a frontal collision.**

**⚠ WARNING - Cargo loading**

**Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transaxle is in P (Park) or the manual transaxle is in R (Reverse) or 1st, and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:55 AM Page 17



## SEAT BELTS

### Seat belt restraint system

**⚠ WARNING**

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the car is moving.
- Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.
- Children age 12 and younger must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash. The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.
- Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.

**⚠ WARNING**

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 18



**⚠ WARNING**

- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**
- **When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of other seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.**
- **Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly while driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle. The seat belt may not be fastened securely.**


1GQA2083

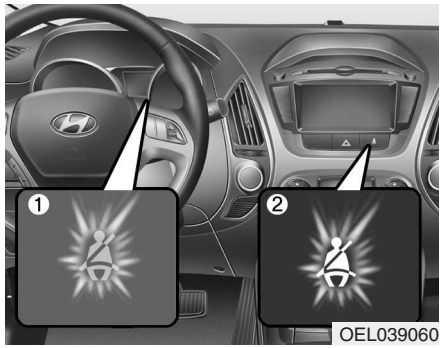
### *Seat belt warning*

■ **Type A**

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will blink for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's seat belt is unfastened after the ignition switch is ON, the seat belt warning light blinks again for approximately 6 seconds.

If the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON or if it is unfastened after the ignition switch is ON, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 6 seconds. At this time, if the seat belt is fastened, the chime will stop at once. (if equipped)



OEL039060

■ **Type B**

(1) Driver's seat belt warning light
(2) Front passenger's seat belt warning light

As a reminder to the driver and front passenger, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON or if it is disconnected after the ignition switch is turned ON, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 19



If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9km/h, the illuminated warning light will start to blink until you drive under 6km/h.

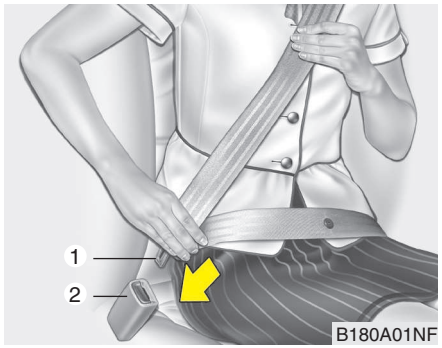
If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20km/h the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **You can find the front passenger's seat belt warning light on the center fascia panel.**
- **Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**




*Lap/shoulder belt*

**To fasten your seat belt:**

To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

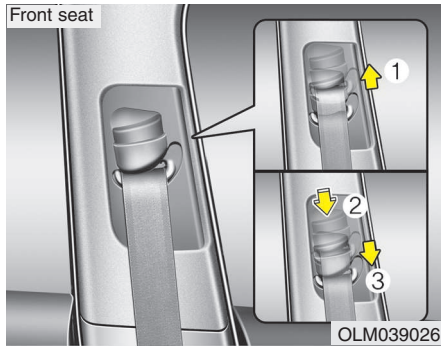
The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

**✻ NOTICE**

**If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 20






**Height adjustment**

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

If the height of the adjusting seat belt is too near your neck, you will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door and not your neck.

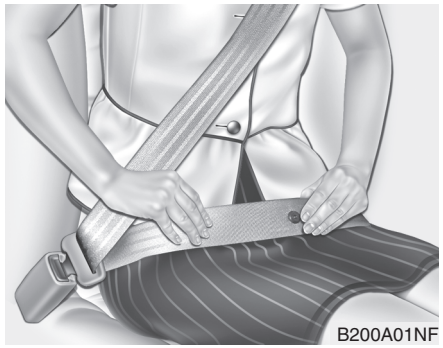
To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) while pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Verify the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face. Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.**
- **Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision leading to personal injury or death. Replace your seat belts after being in an accident as soon as possible.**



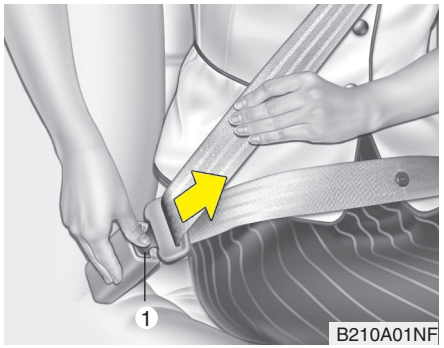

**⚠ WARNING**

**You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.**

**Never wear the seat belt under the arm nearest the door.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 21

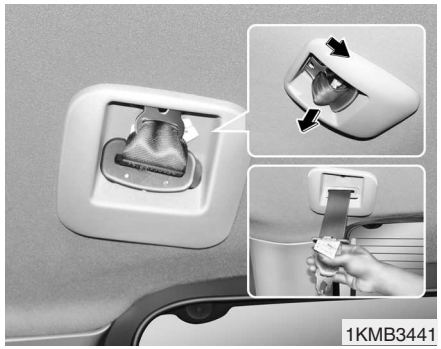





**To release the seat belt:**

The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (1) in the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.



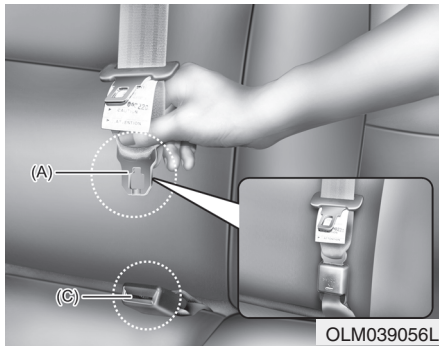

***3 Point rear center belt (if equipped)***

**To fasten the rear center belt**

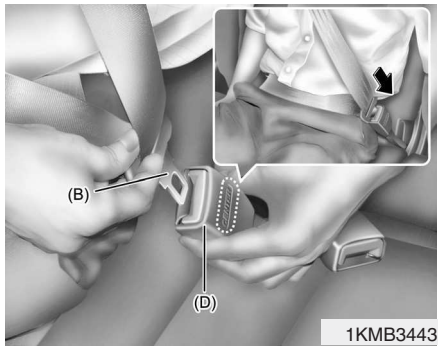
1. Extract the tongue plate from the hole on the belt assembly cover and slowly pull the tongue plates out from the retractor.

**⚠ CAUTION - Cargo**

***Be sure that the cargo is securely loaded in the rear cargo area. Doing not so may damage the rear center safety belt in sudden stop or certain collisions.***




2. Insert the tongue plate (A) into the open end of the buckle (C) until an audible “click" is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Make sure the belt is not twisted.




3. Pull the tongue plate (B) and insert the tongue plate (B) into the open end of the buckle (D) until an audible “click” is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

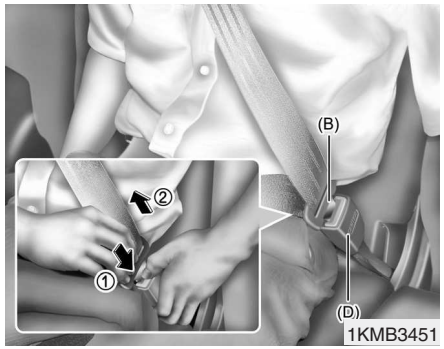
**⚠ CAUTION**

***When using the rear center seat belt, the buckle with the “CENTER” mark must be used.***

There will be an audible “click” when the tab locks in the buckle. The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips, if you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the rear seat center belt, you must lock all tongue plates and buckles. If any tongue plate or buckle is not locked, it will increase the chance of injury in the event of collision.**

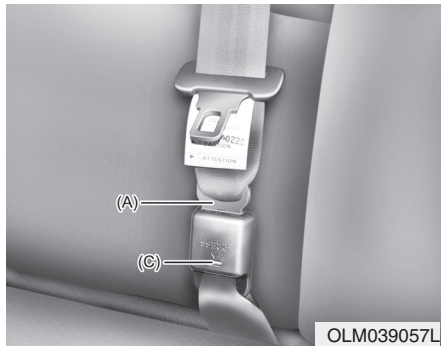



***To unfasten the rear center belt***

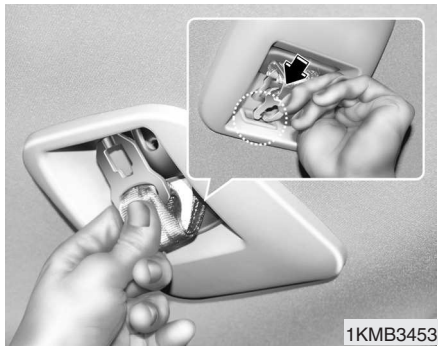
1. Press the release button on the buckle (D) and remove the tongue plate (B) from the buckle (D).

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 23

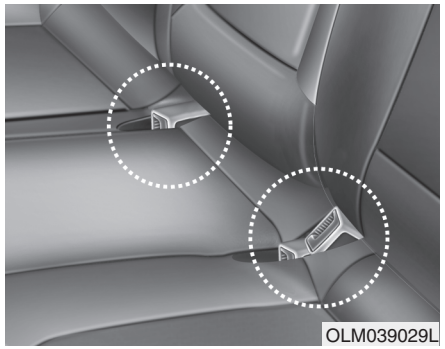





2. To retract the rear center seatbelt, insert the buckle into the web release hole (C). Pull up on the seat belt web (A) and allow the webbing to retract automatically.




3. Insert the tongue plate (A) into the hole on the belt assembly cover.

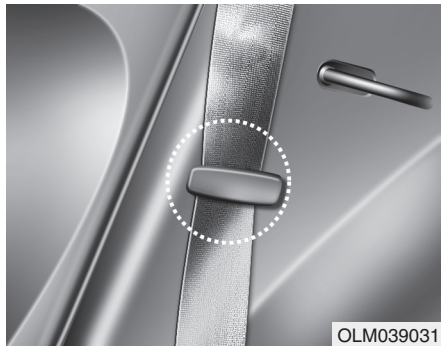



***Stowing the rear seat belt***

The rear seat belt buckles can be stowed in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion when not in use.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 24




OLM039031

- Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.

  After inserting the seat belt, tighten the belt webbing by pulling it up.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When using the seat belt, use it after taking it out of the guides.***

***If you pull the seat belt when it is stored in the guides, it may damage the guides and/or belt webbing.***


OED030300

### Pre-tensioner seat belt (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts. The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal collision is severe enough.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

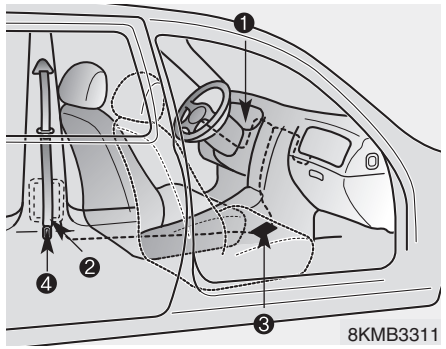
If the system senses excessive seat belt tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner activates, the load limiter inside the pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt. (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**For your safety, be sure that the belt webbing is not loose or twisted and always sit properly on your seat.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 25






The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:

1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module
4. Anchor pre-tensioner assembly (driver side, if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:**

1. **The seat belt must be worn correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle's occupant safety features – including seat belts and air bags – that are provided in this manual.**
2. **Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.**

## ✻ NOTICE

- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position, and then it should turn off.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 26



**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, this warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.**
- **The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.**
- **Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Do not strike the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies.**
- **Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.**
- **Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 27



### Seat belt precautions

**⚠ WARNING**

**All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards.**

**Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant seat contained in this manual.**

*Infant or small child*

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standards of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 28



***Larger children***

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips and as low as possible. Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 12) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 12 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 12 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children**

- **Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.**

***Pregnant women***

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women to lessen the chance of injury in an accident. When a seat belt is used, the lap belt portion should be placed as low and snugly as possible on the hips, not across the abdomen. For specific recommendations, consult a physician.

**⚠ WARNING - Pregnant women**

**Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 29



*Injured person*

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

*One person per belt*

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

*Do not lie down*

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front seats should be in an upright position when the car is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front seat is in a reclined position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries or the occupant's neck could strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.**

## Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback was folded down, be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat. A seat belt with damaged webbing or buckle will not be as strong and could possibly fail during a collision or sudden stop, resulting in serious injury. If the webbing or buckles are damaged, get them replaced immediately.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 30



***Periodic inspection***

It is recommended that all seat belts be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

***Keep belts clean and dry***

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

***When to replace seat belts***

Entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend additional questions concerning seat belt operation be directed to an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 31



## CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Children riding in the car should sit in the rear seat and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Larger children not in a child restraint should use one of the seat belts provided.

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant safety seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. You must use a commercially available child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt, or by a tether anchor and/or ISOFIX anchors (if equipped).

Children could be injured or killed in a crash if their restraints are not properly secured. For small children and babies, a child seat or infant seat must be used. Before buying a particular child restraint system, make sure it fits your car seat and seat belts, and fits your child. Follow all the instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **A child restraint system must be placed in the rear seat. Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger side air bag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Thus only use a child restraint in the rear seat of your vehicle.**
- **A seat belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle on a sunny day, even if the outside temperature does not feel hot. Be sure to check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.**
- **When the child restraint system is not in use, store it in the luggage area or fasten it with a seat belt so that it will not be thrown forward in case of a sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Children may be seriously injured or killed by an inflating air bag. All children, even those too large for child restraints, must ride in the rear seat.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the chance or serious or fatal injuries:**

- **Children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating air bag resulting in serious or fatal injuries.**
- **Always follow the instructions for installation and use of the child restraint maker.**
- **Always make sure the child seat is secured properly in the car and your child is securely restrained in the child seat.**
- **Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the car's interior.**
- **Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child causing serious internal injuries.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 32



**(Continued)**

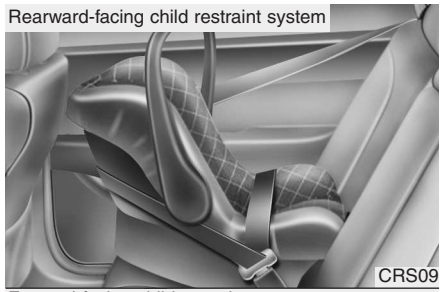
- **Never leave children unattended in a vehicle – not even for a short time. The car can heat up very quickly, resulting in serious injuries to children inside. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or lock themselves or others inside the vehicle.**
- **Never allow two children, or any two persons, to use the same seat belt.**
- **Children often squirm and reposition themselves improperly. Never let a child ride with the shoulder belt under their arm or behind their back. Always properly position and secure children in rear seat.**
- **Never allow a child to stand-up or kneel on the seat or floorboard of a moving vehicle. During a collision or sudden stop, the child can be violently thrown against the vehicles interior, resulting in serious injury.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate security in an accident.**
- **Seat belts can become very hot, especially when the car is parked in direct sunlight. Always check seat belt buckles before fastening them over a child.**
- **After an accident, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **If there is not enough space to place the child restraint system because of the driver's seat, install the child restraint system in the rear right seat.**

Rearward-facing child restraint system



CRS09

Forward-facing child restraint system



OUN026150

## Using a child restraint system

For small children and babies, the use of a child seat or infant seat is required. This child seat or infant seat should be of appropriate size for the child and should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. For safety reasons, we recommend that the child restraint system be used in the rear seats.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 33

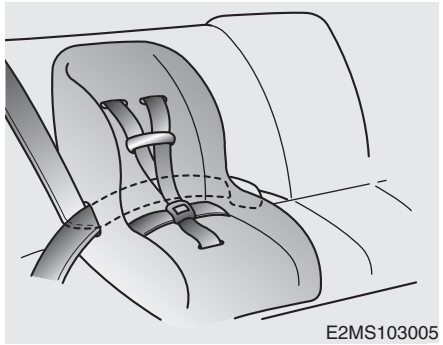


**⚠ WARNING**

**Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, because of the danger that an inflating passenger-side air bag could impact the rear-facing child restraint and kill the child.**

**⚠ WARNING - Child seat installation**

- **A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the vehicle and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Before installing the child restraint system, read the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **If the seat belt does not operate as described in this section, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Failure to observe this manual's instructions regarding child restraint system and the instructions provided with the child restraint system could increase the chance and/or severity of injury in an accident.**



E2MS103005

***Installing a child restraint system by lap/shoulder belt***

To install a child restraint system on the outboard or center rear seats, do the following:

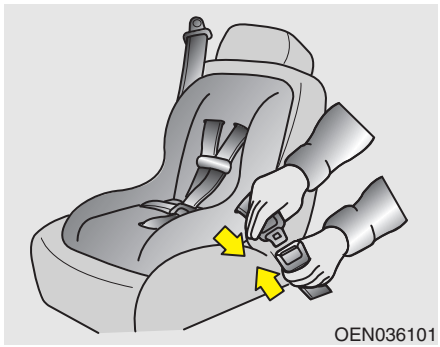
1. Place the child restraint system in the seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the restraint, following the restraint manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the rear center seat belt, you should also refer to "3 point rear center seat belt" in this chapter.**

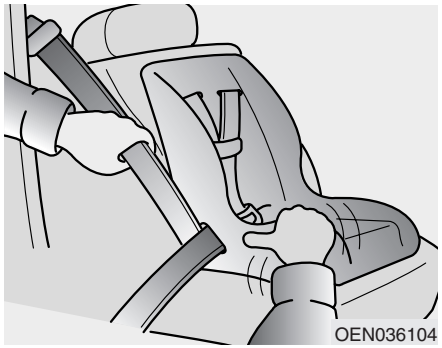
EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 34




OEN036101

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct “click” sound.

*Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.*


OEN036104

3. Buckle the seat belt and allow the seat belt to take up any slack. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.

If you need to tighten the belt, pull more webbing toward the retractor. When you unbuckle the seat belt and allow it to retract, the retractor will automatically revert back to its normal seated passenger emergency locking usage condition.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 11:18 AM Page 35



***Child Seat Restraint Suitability For Seat Position using the Seat Belt - For Europe***

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children. When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table.

| Age Group | Seating Position | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Front passenger | Rear outboard | Rear center |
| 0 : Up to 10 kg<br>(0 - 9 months) | U* | U | U |
| 0+ : Up to 13 kg<br>(0 - 2 years) | U* | U | U |
| I : 9 kg to 18 kg<br>(9 months - 4 years) | U* | U | U |
| II & III : 15 kg to 36 kg<br>(4 - 12 years) | U* | U | U |

U : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

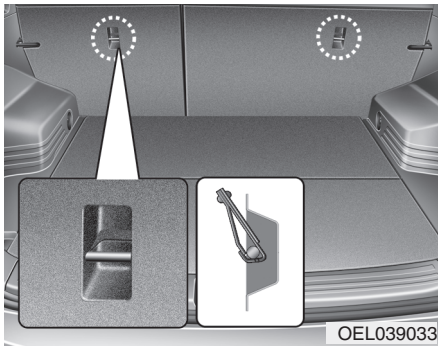
U* : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group (Seat position : foremost, Seat back : upright)

**⚠ WARNING**

**We recommend that a child restraint seat be installed in the rear seat, even if the front passenger's air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position. To ensure the safety of your child, the front passenger's air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a child restraint seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.**

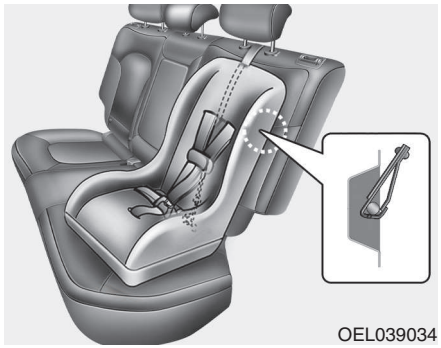
EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 36






***Securing a child restraint seat with "Tether Anchor" system (if equipped)***

Child restraint hook holders are located on the back of the rear seats.




1. Route the child restraint seat strap over the seatback.
   For vehicles with adjustable headrest, route the tether strap under the headrest and between the headrest posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the appropriate child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the car and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**

**⚠ WARNING - Tether strap**

**Never mount more than one child restraint to a single tether or to a single lower anchorage point. The increased load caused by multiple seats may cause the tethers or anchorage points to break, causing serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 11:18 AM Page 37

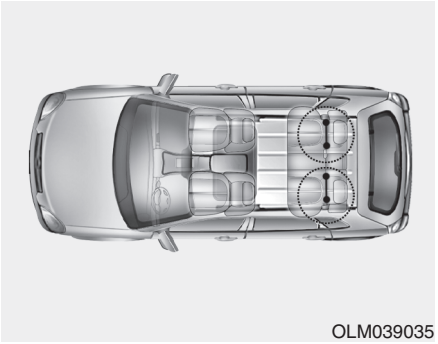


**⚠ WARNING - Child restraint check**

**Check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, twist, tip or separate causing death or serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Child restraint anchorage**

- **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**
- **The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.**

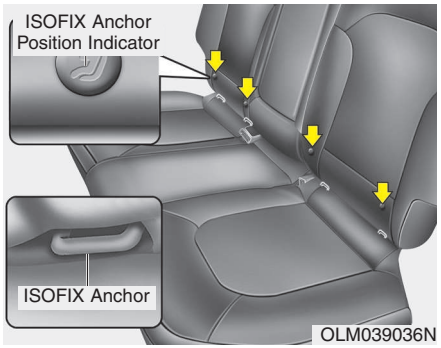


OLM039035

***Securing a child restraint system with "ISOFIX" system and "Tether Anchorage" system (if equipped)***

ISOFIX is a standardised method of fitting child seats that eliminates the need to use the standard adult seat belt to secure the seat in the vehicle. This enables a much more secure and positive location with the added benefit of easier and quicker installation.

An ISOFIX-seat may only be installed if it has vehicle-specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R 44.

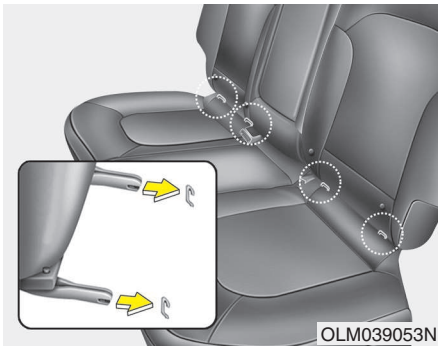



OLM039036N

There are ISOFIX symbols located on the lower portion of each side of the rear seatbacks. These symbols indicate the position of the lower anchors for child restraints so equipped.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 38






Both rear outboard seats are equipped with a pair of ISOFIX anchorages as well as a corresponding top tether anchorage on the back side of the back rest. The ISOFIX anchorages are located between seat cushion and back rest, marked with the ISOFIX icon.

For installation, CRS ISOFIX connecters have to engage with the vehicles ISOFIX anchorages (listen for a CLICK, check potential visual indicators on the CRS and cross-check by pulling).

CRS with universal approval to ECE-R 44 need to be fixed additionally with a top tether strap connected to the corresponding top tether anchorage point in the back rest.

The installing and the use of a child-seat has to be done according to the installing-manual, which is added to the ISOFIX-seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Install the child restraint seat fully rearward against the seatback with the seatback reclined two positions from the most upright latched position.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When using the vehicle's "ISOFIX" system to install a child restraint system in the rear seat, all unused vehicle rear seat belt metal latch plates or tabs must be latched securely in their seat belt buckles and the seat belt webbing must be retracted behind the child restraint to prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts. Unlatched metal latch plates or tabs may allow the child to reach the unretracted seat belts which may result in strangulation and a serious injury or death to the child in the child restraint.**
- **Do not place anything around the lower anchors. Also make sure that the seat belt is not caught in the lower anchors.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 39



**To secure the child restraint seat**

1. To engage the child restraint seat to the ISOFIX anchor, insert the child restraint seat latch into the ISOFIX anchor. Listen for the audible “click” sound.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not allow the rear seat belt webbing to get scratched or pinched by the ISOFIX-seat latch and ISOFIX anchor during installation.***

2. Connect the tether strap hook to the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat. (Refer to the previous page.)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not install a child restraint seat at the center of the rear seat using the vehicle's ISOFIX anchors. The ISOFIX anchors are only provided for the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Do not misuse the ISOFIX anchors by attempting to attach a child restraint seat in the middle of the rear seat to the ISOFIX anchors.**

  **In a crash, the child restraint seat ISOFIX attachments may not be strong enough to secure the child restraint seat properly in the center of the rear seat and may break, causing serious injury or death.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not mount more than one child restraint to a child restraint lower anchorage point. The improper increased load may cause the anchorage points or tether anchor to break, causing serious injury or death.**
- **Attach the ISOFIX or ISOFIX-compatible child restraint seat only to the appropriate locations shown in the illustration.**
- **Always follow the installation and use instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 40



***Child seat restraint suitability for vehicle ISOFIX positions - For Europe***

| Mass Group | Size Class | Fixture | vehicle ISOFIX positions | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Front Passenger | Rear Outboard (Driver side) | Rear Outboard (Passenger side) | Rear Center |
| Carrycot | F | ISO/L1 | - | X | X | - |
| | G | ISO/L2 | - | X | X | - |
| 0 : UP to 10kg | E | ISO/R1 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| 0+ : UP to 13kg | E | ISO/R1 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | D | ISO/R2 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | C | ISO/R3 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| I : 9 to 18kg | D | ISO/R2 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | C | ISO/R3 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | B | ISO/F2 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | A | ISO/F3 | - | IUF | IUF | - |

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems (CRS) given in the attached list. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semi-universal" categories.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system in this mass group and/or this size class.

* Both ISO/R2 and ISO/R3 are able to be set up only at the foremost position of the passenger seat.

* ISOFIX child restraint system size classes and fixtures

A - ISO/F3: Full-Height Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 720mm)

B - ISO/F2: Reduced-Height Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 650mm)

B1 - ISO/F2X: Reduced-Height Second Version Back Surface Shape Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 650mm)

C - ISO/R3: Full-Size Rearward-Facing toddler CRS

D - ISO/R2: Reduced-Size Rearward-Facing toddler CRS

E - ISO/R1: Infant-Size Rearward-Facing CRS

F - ISO/L1: Left Lateral Facing position CRS (carry-cot)

G - ISO/L2: Right Lateral Facing position CRS (carry-cot)

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:56 AM Page 41



***Recommended child restraint systems – For Europe***

| Mass Group | Name | Manufacturer | Type of Fixation | ECE-R44 Approval No. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Group 0-1 (0-18kg) | FAIR G0/1 S | FAIR S.r.l | rearward facing with vehicle specific ISOFIX platform type “D” | E4 04443718 |
| | Baby Safe Plus | Britax Römer | with vehicle 3-point safety seatbelt | E1 04301146 |
| Group 1 (9-18kg) | FAIR G0/1 S | FAIR S.r.l | forward facing with vehicle specific ISOFIX platform type “A” | E4 04443718 |
| | Duo Plus | Britax Römer | vehicle ISOFIX lower anchorage + Top Tether | E1 04301133 |
| | | Britax Römer | with vehicle 3-point safety seatbelt | E1 04301133 |

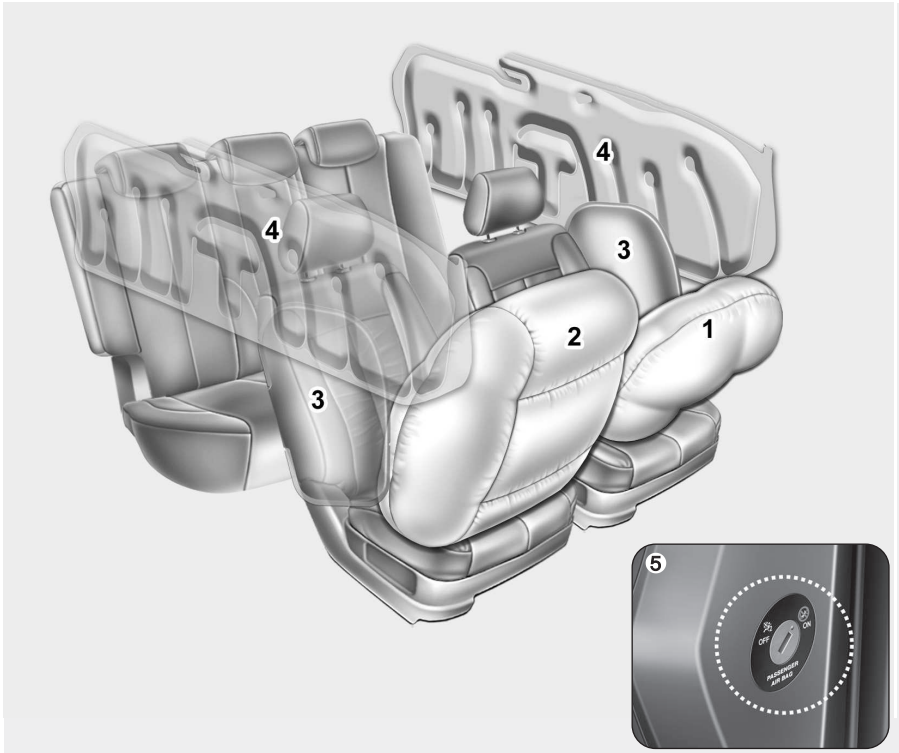
***CRS Manufacturer information***

FAIR S.r.l http://www.fairbimbofix.com
Britax Römer http://www.britax.com

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 42



## AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




❊ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OLM032301N/OYN039026

(1) Driver's front air bag
(2) Passenger's front air bag*
(3) Side air bag*
(4) Curtain air bag*
(5) Front passenger's air bag ON/OFF switch*

* : if equipped

**⚠ WARNING**

**Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimize the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 43



### How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of serious frontal or side collision (if equipped with side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.

  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining, factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to get the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least 250 mm (10 inches) away). The front passenger should always move their seat as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.**
- **Air bag inflates instantly in an event of a collision, passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in a proper position.**
- **Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/12/2013 2:00 PM Page 44



***Noise and smoke***

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are nontoxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc.). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult the doctor if the symptom persists.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel and/or instrument panel and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage areas internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.**




OYDESA2042

***Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat***

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the air bag deploys, it would impact the rear-facing child restraint, causing serious or fatal injury.

In addition, do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

If your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, you can activate or deactivate the front passenger's air bag when necessary.

For more details, please refer to 3-52 page.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 45



**⚠ WARNING**

- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position.**

  **Inflation of side and/or curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.**



W7-147

## Air bag warning and indicator

### *Air bag warning light*

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 46






OEL039061

***Passenger's front air bag ON indicator (if equipped)***

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position and goes off after approximately 60 seconds.




OEL039052

***Passenger's front air bag OFF indicator (if equipped)***

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position and goes off when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch malfunctions, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds) and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in a frontal impact even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.***

***If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 47



### SRS components and functions

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module*
2. Front impact sensors*
3. Passenger's front air bag module*
4. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies*
5. Side impact sensors*
6. Curtain air bag modules*
7. Side air bag modules*
8. SRS control module (SRSCM)
9. Air bag warning light
10. Anchor pre-tensioner assembly* (driver side)
11. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch*
12. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator*

*: if equipped

The SRSCM continually monitors all elements while the ignition switch is ON to determine if a frontal, near-frontal impact or side impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, after which the air bag warning light should go out.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

- **The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.**
- **The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.**

Driver's front air bag (1)



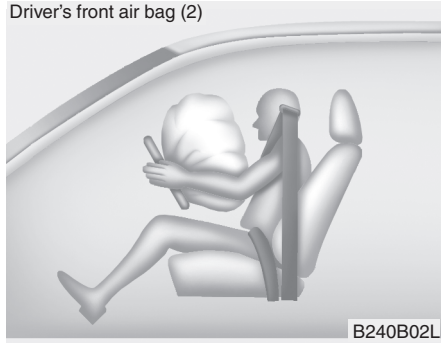
B240B01L

The front air bag modules are located both in the center of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 48



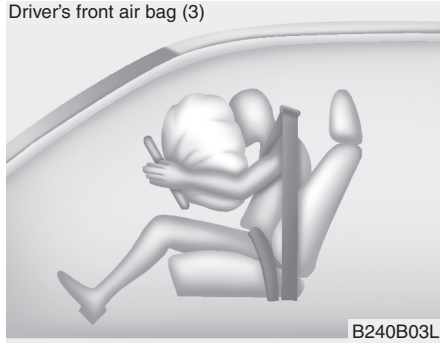
Driver's front air bag (2)



B240B02L

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3)

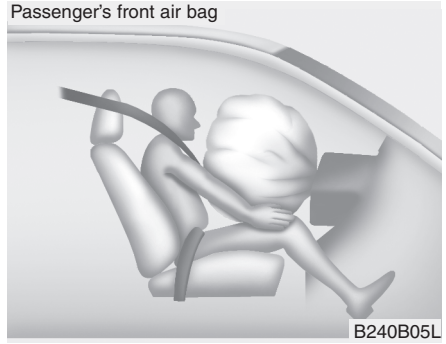


B240B03L

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front air bag



B240B05L

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, cassette holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**
- **When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface.**
  **It may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 49



**⚠ WARNING**

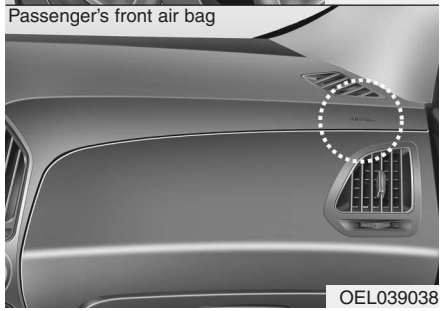
- **If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with lukewarm water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on while driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.**




### Driver's and passenger's front air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 50



The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover on the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the center of the steering wheel and the passenger's side in the front panel above the glove box.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always use seat belts and child restraints – every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with air bags, improperly and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.**

**To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:**

- **Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat.**
- **ABC – Always Buckle Children in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.**
- **Front and side air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned drivers and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.**
- **Never lean against the door or center console – always sit in an upright position.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 51



**(Continued)**

- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated while the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Air bags can only be used once – we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer immediately after deployment.**
- **The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.**
- **A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**
- **Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seat back in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the ignition key is removed.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 52



**(Continued)**

- **The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.**



OEL039054

***Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)***

The passenger's front air bag can be deactivated by the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch if a child restraint is installed on the front passenger's seat or if the front passenger's seat is unoccupied by a person.

To ensure the safety of your child, the passenger's front air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.



OLM039052L

**To deactivate or reactivate the passenger's front air bag:**

To deactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the master key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator ( ) will illuminate and stay on until the passenger's front air bag is reactivated.

To reactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the master key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will go out and the passenger's front air bag ON indicator ( ) will illuminate for approximately 60 seconds.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 53



**⚠ WARNING**

**On some models, the front air bag ON/OFF switch could turn by using a similar small rigid device. Always check the status of the front air bag ON/OFF switch and passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator.**

## ✻ NOTICE

- When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position, the passenger's front air bag is activated and child or infant seat should not be installed on the front passenger seat.
- When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position, the passenger's front air bag is deactivated.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- *If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is not working properly, the air bag warning light ( )on the instrument panel will illuminate.*

  *And, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator ( ) will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds), the SRS Control Module reactivate the passenger's front air bag and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.*

  *If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.*

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- *If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.*

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 54



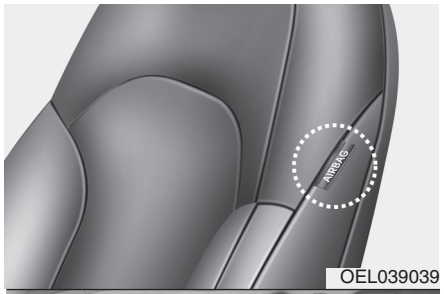
**⚠ WARNING**

- **The driver is responsible for the proper position of the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch.**
- **Deactivate the passenger's front air bag only when the ignition switch is switched off, or the malfunction may occur in the SRS Control Module.**
  **And there may be a danger that the driver's and/or front passenger's and/or side and curtain air bag may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly during a collision.**
- **Never install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the passenger's front air bag has been deactivated. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**

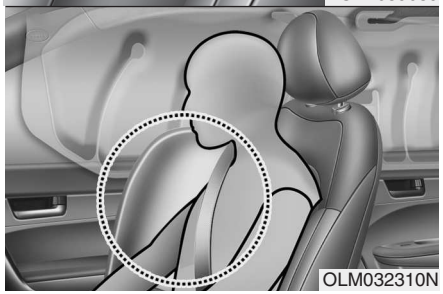
**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Even though your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, do not install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat, reactivate the front passenger's air bag.**




OEL039039



OLM032310N

### Side air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 55



- The side air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.
- The side air bags do not only deploy on the side of the impact but also on the opposite side.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The side air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times while the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact conditions severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.**
- **For best protection from the side air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.**
- **Do not use any accessory seat covers.**

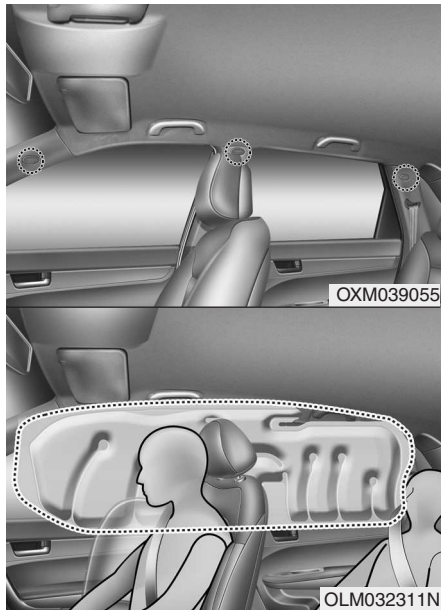
**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bag.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.**
- **Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the supplemental side air bag inflates.**
- **To prevent unexpected deployment of the side air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition key is on.**
- **If seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. Inform that your vehicle is equipped with side air bags.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 56






**Curtain air bag (if equipped)**

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.
They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

- The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.
- The curtain air bags do not only deploy on the side of the impact but also on the opposite side.
- The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **In order for side and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, both front seat occupants and both outboard rear occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened. Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system.**
  **Make sure to put the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 57



**(Continued)**

- **Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.**
- **Never try to open or repair any components of the side curtain air bag system. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**Failure to follow the above mentioned instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.**

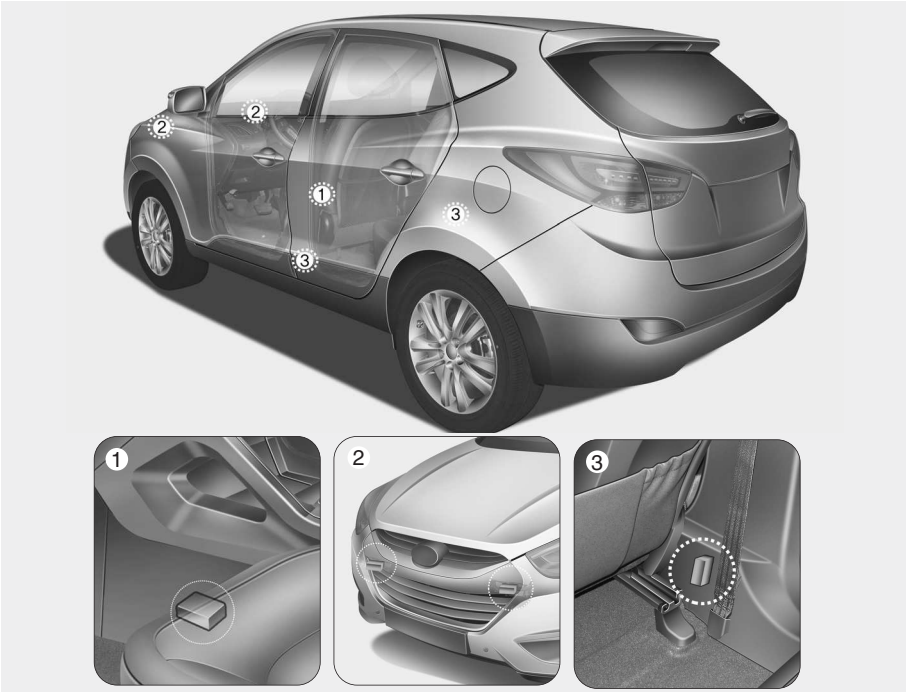
EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 58



### Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)

**There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.**

**These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.**




OLM039040/OLM039041/OEL033061/OEL039044

***Air bag collision sensors***

(1) SRS control module
(2) Front impact sensor
(3) Side impact sensor (if equipped)

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 59



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed.**

  **This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.**
- **If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.**

  **Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, body or B pillar and C pillars where side collision sensors are installed. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Installing bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicles collision and air bag deployment performance.**




***Air bag inflation conditions***

**Front air bags**

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.





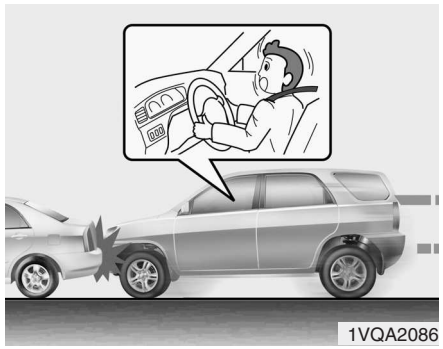


**Side and curtain air bags (if equipped)**

Side and/or curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side air bags (side and/or curtain air bags) are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads or sidewalks, air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

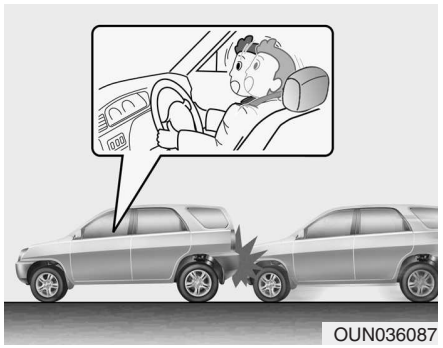



***Air bag non-inflation conditions***

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 61



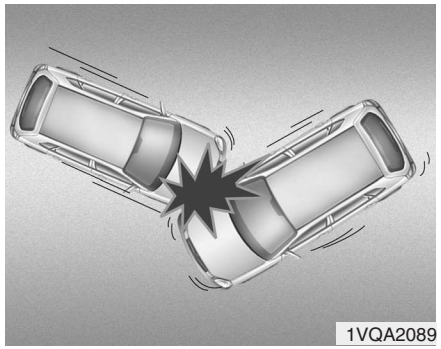

OUN036087

- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.



OVQ036018N

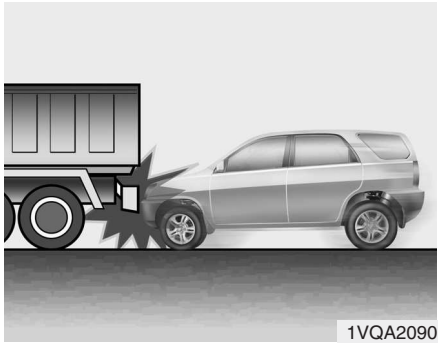
- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.
- However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.


1VQA2089

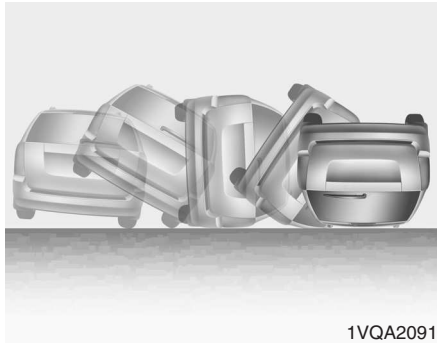
- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 62



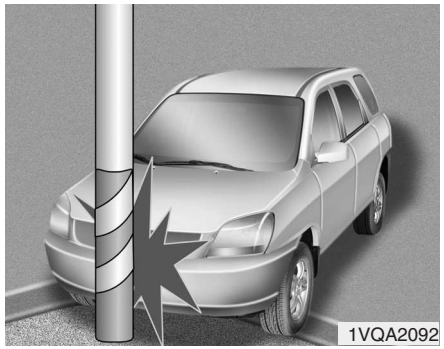

1VQA2090

- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly replaced by such “under-ride” collisions.


1VQA2091

- Air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because air bag deployment could not provide protection to the occupants.

  However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side air bags and curtain air bags.


1VQA2092

- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 63



### SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.**
- **If the air bags inflate, we recommend that the system be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for these precautions and necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.**
- **If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 64



### Additional safety precautions

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.
- **Passengers should not move out of or change seats while the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- **Each seat belt is designed to restrain one occupant.** If more than one person uses the same seat belt, they could be seriously injured or killed in a collision.
- **Do not use any accessories on seat belts.** Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Passengers should not place hard or sharp objects between themselves and the air bags.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap or in your mouth can result in injuries if an air bag inflates.
- **Keep occupants away from the air bag covers.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor. If occupants are too close to the air bag covers, they could be injured if the air bags inflate.
- **Do not attach or place objects on or near the air bag covers.** Any object attached to or placed on the front or side air bag covers could interfere with the proper operation of the air bags.
- **Do not modify the front seats.** Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.
- **Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.
- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** The infant or child could be seriously injured or killed in the event of a crash. All infants and children should be properly restrained in appropriate child safety seats or seat belts in the rear seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.**

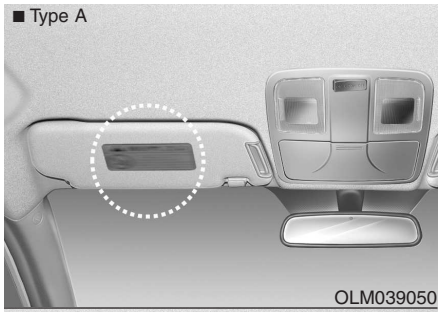
### Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

EL(FL) Eng 3.QXP 7/11/2013 10:57 AM Page 65

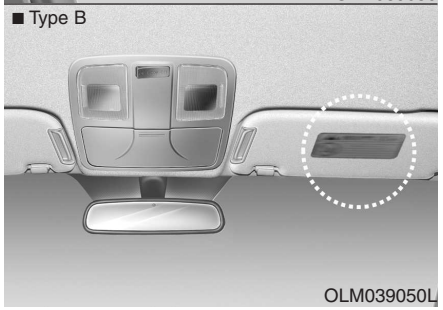


■ Type A



OLM039050

■ Type B



OLM039050L

**Air bag warning label (if equipped)**

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert driver and passengers of potential risk of air bag system.

Note that these government warnings focus on the risk to children, we also wants you to be aware of the risks which adults are exposed to. Those have been described in previous pages.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:29 AM Page 1

# Features of your vehicle


**Keys** . . . . . 4-4
- Record your key number . . . . . 4-4
- Key operations . . . . . 4-4
- Immobilizer system . . . . . 4-5

**Remote keyless entry** . . . . . 4-7
- Remote keyless entry system operations . . . . . 4-7
- Transmitter precautions . . . . . 4-8
- Battery replacement . . . . . 4-9

**Smart key** . . . . . 4-10
- Smart key functions . . . . . 4-10
- Smart key precautions . . . . . 4-12
- Door lock/unlock in an emergency situation . . . . . 4-12

**Theft-alarm system** . . . . . 4-13
- Theft-alarm stage . . . . . 4-14
- Disarmed stage . . . . . 4-14

**Door locks** . . . . . 4-15
- Operating door locks from outside the vehicle . . . . 4-15
- Operating door locks from inside the vehicle . . . . . 4-16
- Deadlocks . . . . . 4-17
- Speed sensing door lock system . . . . . 4-18
- Child-protector rear door lock . . . . . 4-18

**Tailgate** . . . . . 4-19
- Opening the tailgate . . . . . 4-19
- Closing the tailgate . . . . . 4-19

**Windows** . . . . . 4-21
- Power windows . . . . . 4-22

**Hood** . . . . . 4-25
- Opening the hood . . . . . 4-25
- Closing the hood . . . . . 4-26

**Fuel filler lid** . . . . . 4-27
- Opening the fuel filler lid . . . . . 4-27
- Closing the fuel filler lid . . . . . 4-27

**Panorama sunroof** . . . . . 4-30
- Sunroof open warning . . . . . 4-30
- Tilting the sunroof . . . . . 4-32
- Resetting the sunroof . . . . . 4-33

**Steering wheel** . . . . . 4-34
- Electric power steering . . . . . 4-34
- Heated steering wheel . . . . . 4-35
- Horn . . . . . 4-36
- Flex steering wheel . . . . . 4-37

**Mirrors** . . . . . 4-39
- Inside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-39
- Outside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-43

**Instrument cluster** . . . . . 4-46
- Instrument panel illumination . . . . . 4-47
- LCD Display Control . . . . . 4-47
- Gauges . . . . . 4-48
- Transaxle Shift Indicator . . . . . 4-52

LCD display ..... 4-54
• LCD Modes ..... 4-54
• Information Mode ..... 4-55
• User Settings Mode ..... 4-56
• Warning Messages ..... 4-58
Trip computer ..... 4-64
• Overview ..... 4-64
• Trip Modes ..... 4-64
• Trip A/B ..... 4-65
• Fuel Economy ..... 4-66
• Warnings and indicators ..... 4-68
• Indicator Lights ..... 4-77
Parking assist system ..... 4-81
• Rear parking assist system type ..... 4-81
• Front/Rear parking assist system type ..... 4-85
Smart parking assist system ..... 4-87
• Operating condition ..... 4-88
• Non-operational conditions ..... 4-88
• Operation way ..... 4-91
• System cancellation while parking ..... 4-95
• Additional introductions ..... 4-96
• System malfunction warning ..... 4-97
Rearview camera ..... 4-98
Hazard warning flasher ..... 4-98
Lighting ..... 4-99
• Battery saver function ..... 4-99
• Headlight escort function ..... 4-99
• Headlight welcome function ..... 4-99
• Lighting control ..... 4-100
• High - beam operation ..... 4-101
• Turn signals and lane change signals ..... 4-102
• Front fog light ..... 4-103
• Rear fog light ..... 4-103
• Daytime running light ..... 4-104
• Headlight leveling device ..... 4-104
Wipers and washers ..... 4-106
• Windshield wipers ..... 4-107
• Windshield washers ..... 4-108
• Rear window wiper and washer switch ..... 4-109
Interior light ..... 4-110
• Map lamp ..... 4-110
• Room lamp ..... 4-111
• Vanity mirror lamp ..... 4-111
• Luggage room lamp ..... 4-111
• Glove box lamp ..... 4-112
Defroster ..... 4-113
• Rear window defroster ..... 4-113

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:29 AM Page 3

**Manual climate control system . . . . . 4-115**
- Heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-116
- System operation . . . . . 4-120
- Climate control air filter . . . . . 4-122
- Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant . . . . . 4-123

**Automatic climate control system . . . . . 4-124**
- Automatic heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-125
- Manual heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-126

**Windshield defrosting and defogging . . . . . 4-132**
- Manual climate control system . . . . . 4-132
- Automatic climate control system . . . . . 4-133

**Storage compartment . . . . . 4-135**
- Center console storage . . . . . 4-135
- Glove box . . . . . 4-135
- Cool box . . . . . 4-136
- Sunglass holder . . . . . 4-136

**Interior features . . . . . 4-138**
- Cigarette lighter . . . . . 4-138
- Ashtray . . . . . 4-138
- Cup holder . . . . . 4-139
- Sunvisor . . . . . 4-139
- Power outlet . . . . . 4-140
- Digital clock . . . . . 4-141
- Aux, USB and iPod® . . . . . 4-141
- Floor mat anchor(s) . . . . . 4-142
- Luggage net (holder) . . . . . 4-142
- Cargo security screen . . . . . 4-143

**Exterior features . . . . . 4-145**
- Roof rack . . . . . 4-145

**Audio system . . . . . 4-146**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:29 AM Page 4



# KEYS

## Record your key number



The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set.

Should you lose your keys, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the code number and keep it in a safe and handy place, but not in the vehicle.

## Key operations

- Used to start the engine.
- Used to lock and unlock the doors.
- Used to lock and unlock the glove box. (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.**

**⚠ WARNING - Ignition key (Smart key)**

**Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key (Smart key) is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition or start button is ACC or ON position.**

**Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition or press the start button.**

**The ignition key (Smart key) would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death.**

**Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:29 AM Page 5



### Immobilizer system

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobilizer system to reduce the risk of unauthorized vehicle use.

Your immobilizer system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobilizer system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

***To deactivate the immobilizer system:***

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

***To activate the immobilizer system:***

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobilizer system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

**⚠ WARNING**

**In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobilizer password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobilizer keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separately not to have any malfunction after you receive your new vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch.***

***The engine may not start for the metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal from normally transmitting.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**If you need additional keys or lose your keys, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:29 AM Page 6



**⚠ CAUTION**

***The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobilizer system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobilizer system malfunction could occur.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not change, alter or adjust the immobilizer system because it could cause the immobilizer system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

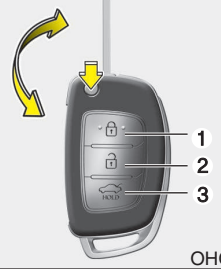
***Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobilizer system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 7



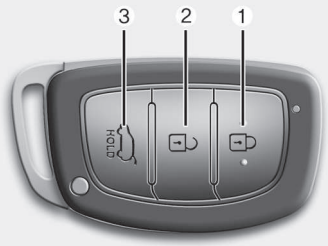
## REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A (if equipped)




OHG040001L/Q

■ Type B (if equipped)




OLMB043003

### Remote keyless entry system operations

■ ***Type A***

To unfold the key, press the release button then the key will unfold automatically.

To fold the key, fold the key manually while pressing the release button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.***

■ ***Type B***

To remove the mechanical key, press and hold the release button and remove the mechanical key.

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

***Lock (1)***

All doors (and tailgate) are locked if the lock button is pressed. If all doors are closed, the hazard warning lights blink once to indicate that all doors are locked. However, if any door remains open, the hazard warning lights will not blink. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.

***Unlock (2)***

All doors are unlocked if the unlock button is pressed.
The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.
After depressing this button, the doors will be locked automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

***Tailgate unlock (3) (if equipped)***

The tailgate is unlocked if the button is pressed for more than 1 second.
The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the tailgate is unlocked.
However, after pressing this button, the tailgate will lock automatically unless you open the tailgate within 30 seconds.
Also, once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

**✻ NOTICE**

**The word "HOLD" is written on the button to inform you that you must press and hold the button.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 8



### Transmitter precautions

#### ✻ NOTICE

**The transmitter will not work if any of following occur:**

- **The ignition key is in ignition switch.**
- **You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).**
- **The battery in the transmitter is weak.**
- **Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.**
- **The weather is extremely cold.**
- **The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**

**When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/ receiving emails. Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer vehicle warranty.***

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 9

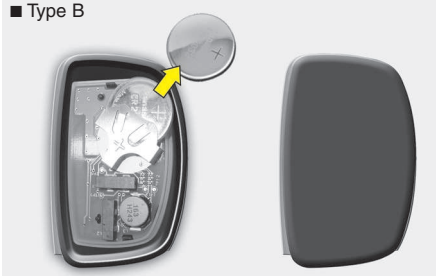


■ Type A



OLM042302

■ Type B



OLM043439

### Battery replacement

Transmitter uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years. When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter center cover.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For transmitter replacement, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The keyless entry system transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use your transmitter or replace the battery, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***
- ***Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.***
- ***To avoid damaging the transmitter, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.***

***Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 10



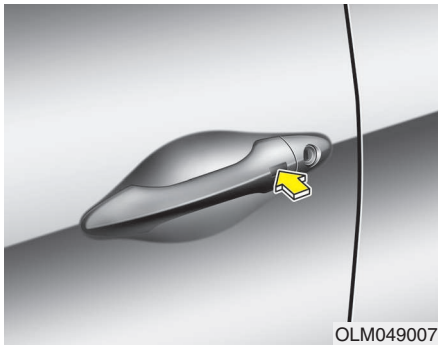
## SMART KEY (IF EQUIPPED)




OLMB043005

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door (and tailgate) and even start the engine without inserting the key.

The functions of the buttons on a smart key are similar to the remote keyless entry. (Refer to the “Remote keyless entry” in this section.)



OLM049007

### Smart key functions

Carrying the smart key, you may lock and unlock the vehicle doors (and tailgate). Also, you may start the engine. Refer to the following, for more details.

***Locking***

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and tailgate) closed and any door unlocked, locks all the doors (and tailgate). The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are locked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside door handle. If you want to make sure that a door has locked or not, you should check the door lock button inside the vehicle or pull the outside door handle.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 11



Even though you press the button, the doors will not lock and the chime sounds 3 seconds if any of the following occurs:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The engine start/stop button is in the ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the tailgate is opened.

***Unlocking***

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and tailgate) closed and locked, unlocks all the doors (and tailgate). The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are unlocked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside door handle.

When the smart key is recognized in the area of 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the front outside door handle, other people can also open a door without possession of the smart key.

***Tailgate unlocking***

If you are within 0.7 ~ 1 m (28 ~ 40 in.) from the outside tailgate handle, with your smart key in possession, the tailgate will unlock and open when you press the tailgate handle switch.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the tailgate is unlocked.

Also, once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

***Start-up***

You can start the engine without inserting the key. For detailed information refer to “Starting the engine with a smart key” in section 5.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 12



### Smart key precautions

#### ✻ NOTICE

- **If, for some reason, you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. Tow the vehicle, if necessary. We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you lose a smart key, you should immediately take the vehicle and key and we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **The smart key will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two-way radio system or a cellular phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**

  **When the smart key does not work properly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the smart key is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the smart key could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the smart key and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***Keep the smart key away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.***



OEL043305

### Door lock/unlock in an emergency situation

If the smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the doors by using the mechanical key.

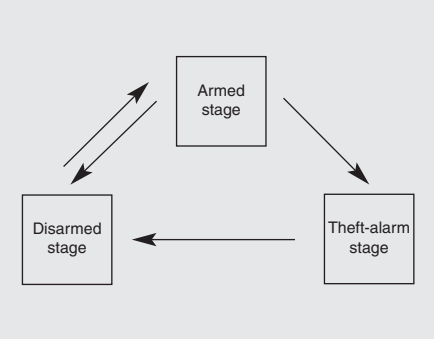
1. Depress and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2).
2. Insert the key into hole of the outside door handle. Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock.

   To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 13



## THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorized entry into the vehicle. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Theft-alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

### Armed stage

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or turn off the engine.
2. Make sure that all doors (and tailgate) and the engine hood are closed and latched.
3. • Lock the doors by depressing the door lock button on the transmitter (or smart key).

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If any door, tailgate remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.

   • Lock the doors by pressing the button of the front outside door handles with the smart key in your possession.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If any door (and tailgate) remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.

   If engine hood remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. Close the engine hood. The hazard warning lights blink once and theft-alarm arms.

- **Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the system is armed while a passenger(s) remains in the vehicle, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leave the vehicle. If any door, tailgate or engine hood is opened within 30 seconds after entering the armed stage, the system is disarmed to prevent unnecessary alarm.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 14



### Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs while the system is armed.

- A front or rear door is opened without using transmitter (or smart key).
- The tailgate is opened without using transmitter (or smart key).
- The engine hood is opened.

The siren will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for 27 seconds, unless the system is disarmed. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the transmitter. (or smart key)

### Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when:

***Transmitter***

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The engine is started.
- The ignition switch is in the “ON” position for 30 seconds or more.

***Smart key***

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The button of the front outside door is pressed while carrying the smart key.
- The engine is started.

After the doors are unlocked, the hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.
After pressing the unlock button, if any door (or tailgate) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

### ✻ NOTICE - Immobilizer system

- **If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.**
- **If you lose your keys, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

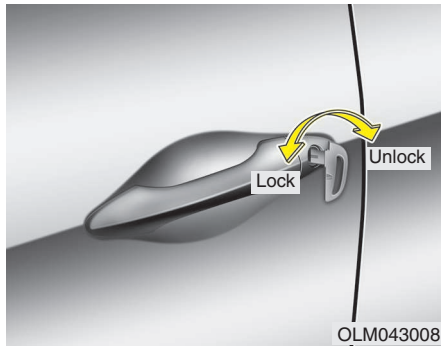
***Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

***Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 15



## DOOR LOCKS




### Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

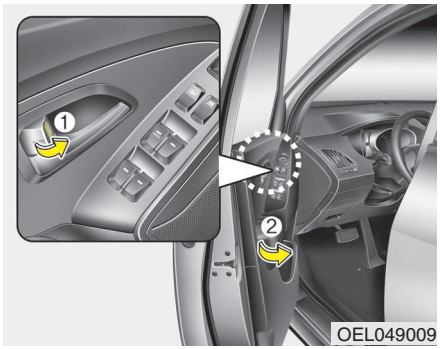
- Turn the key toward rear of vehicle to unlock and toward front of vehicle to lock.
- If you lock/unlock the door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock/unlock automatically. (if equipped)
- Doors can also be locked and unlocked with the transmitter key (or smart key).
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

### ✻ NOTICE

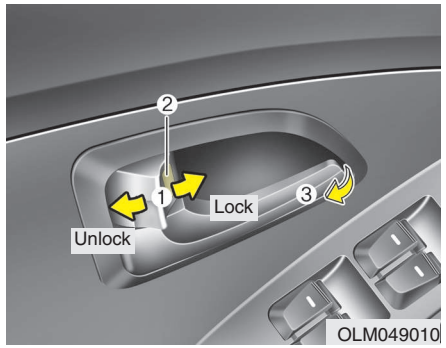
- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **If you don't close the door securely, the door may open again.**
- **Be careful that someone's body and hands are not trapped when closing the door.**



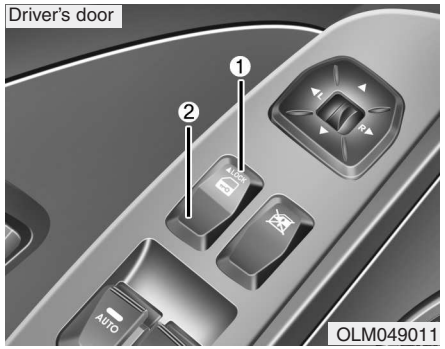

- To lock a door without the key, push the inside door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position and close the door (2).
- If you lock the door with the central door lock switch, all vehicle doors will lock automatically.
- Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.




## Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

***With the door lock button***

- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Unlock” position. The red mark (2) on the button will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark (2) on the door lock button will not be visible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (3) outward.
- If the inner door handle of all doors are pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button will unlock and the door will open. (if equipped)
- Front doors cannot be locked if the ignition key is in the ignition switch and any front door is opened.
- Doors cannot be locked if the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is opened.




***With central door lock switch***

Operate by depressing the central door lock switch.

- When pushing down on the front portion (1) of the switch, all vehicle doors will lock.
- When pushing down on the rear portion (2) of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.
- However, if any door (and tailgate) is open, the doors will not lock even though the front portion (1) of central door lock switch is pressed.
- However, if the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is open, the doors will not lock even though the front portion (1) of central door lock switch is pressed.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 17



**⚠ WARNING - Doors**

- **The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows.**
- **Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unlocked vehicles**

**Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle while you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unattended children**

**An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.**

### Deadlocks (if equipped)

Some vehicles are equipped with a deadlocking system. Deadlocks prevent opening of a door from either inside or outside the vehicle once the deadlocks have been activated providing an additional measure of vehicle security.

To lock the vehicle using the deadlock function, the doors must be locked using the (Smart) key or the Remote Keyless Entry transmitter. To unlock the vehicle, the (Smart) key or the transmitter must again be used.

**⚠ WARNING**

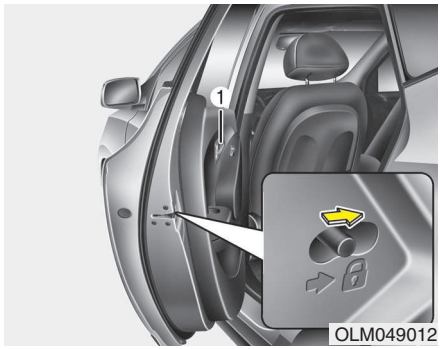
**Do not lock the doors with the (smart) key or the transmitter with anybody left in the vehicle. The passenger in the vehicle cannot unlock the doors with the door lock button. For example, if the door is locked with the transmitter, the passenger in the vehicle cannot unlock the door without the transmitter.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 18



### Speed sensing door lock system (if equipped)

All doors will be automatically locked after the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h. And all doors will be automatically unlocked when you turn the engine off or when you remove the ignition key. (if equipped)




### Child-protector rear door lock

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

1. Open the rear door.
2. Push the child safety lock located on the rear edge of the door to the “Lock” position. When the child safety lock is in the “Lock ( )” position, rear door will not open even though the inner door handle is pulled inside the vehicle.
3. Close the rear door.

To open the rear door, pull the outside door handle.

Even though the doors may be unlocked, the rear door will not open by pulling the inner door handle (1) until rear door child safety lock is unlocked.

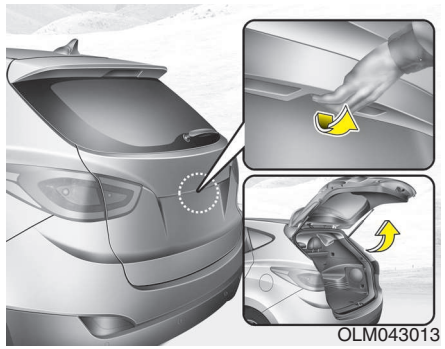
**⚠ WARNING - Rear door locks**

**If children accidentally open the rear doors while the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out and be severely injured or killed. To prevent children from opening the rear doors from the inside, the rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 19



## TAILGATE


OLM043013

### Opening the tailgate

- The tailgate is locked or unlocked when all doors are locked or unlocked with the key, transmitter (or smart key) or central door lock switch.
- If unlocked, the tailgate can be opened by pressing the handle and pulling it up.
- When all doors are lock if the tailgate unlock button on the smart key is pressed for more than 1 second, the tailgate is unlocked. Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate is locked automatically.

### ✻ NOTICE

**In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the tailgate lift cylinders and attaching hardware if the tailgate is not closed prior to driving.***


OLM043014

### Closing the tailgate

To close the tailgate, lower and push down the tailgate firmly. Make sure that the tailgate is securely latched.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the tailgate.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Make sure nothing is near the tailgate latch and striker while closing the tailgate. It may damage the tailgate's latch.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 20



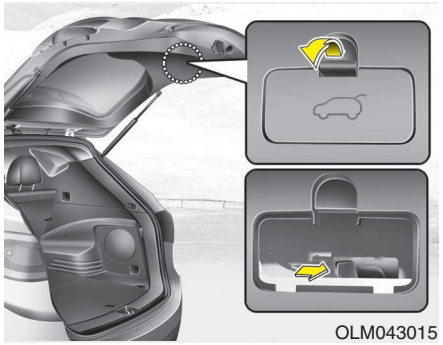
**⚠ WARNING - Exhaust fumes**

**If you drive with the tailgate open, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.**

**If you must drive with the tailgate open, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING - Rear cargo area**

**Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.**



OLM043015

### Emergency tailgate safety release

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the luggage compartment, the tailgate can be opened by pushing the release lever and pushing open the tailgate.

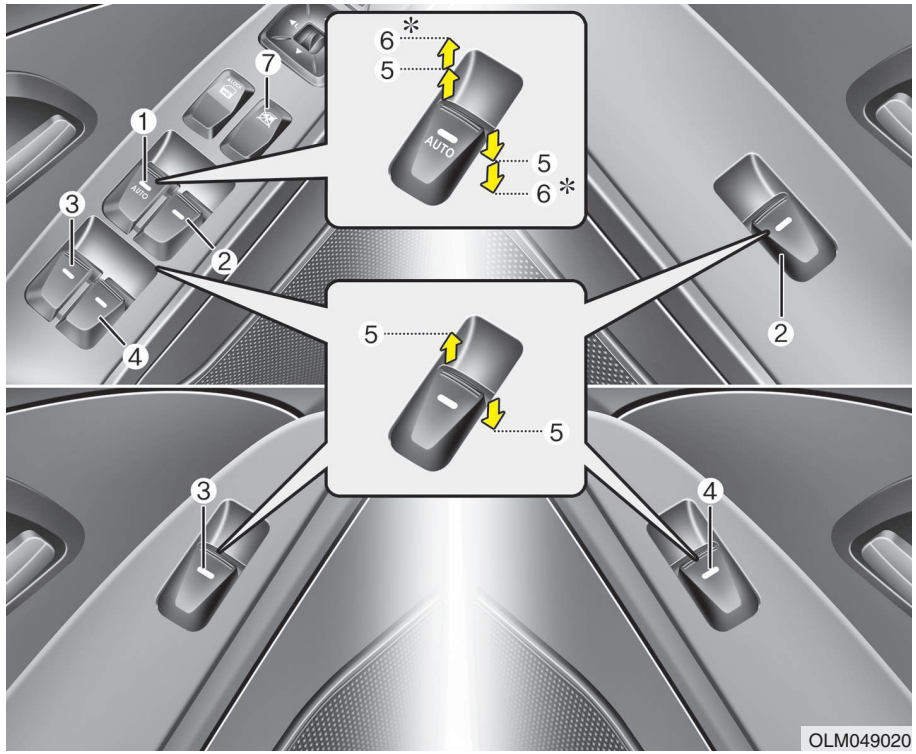
**⚠ WARNING**

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially while the vehicle is in motion.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 21



## WINDOWS




(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (left) power window switch
(4) Rear door (right) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window up*/down*
(7) Power window lock switch

*: if equipped

### ✻ NOTICE

**In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:30 AM Page 22

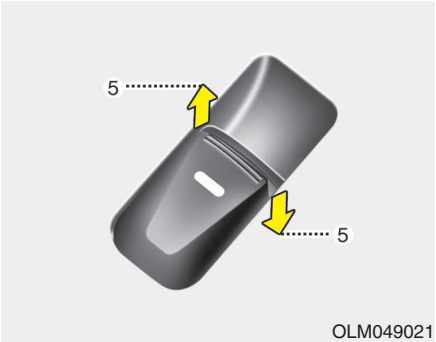


## Power windows

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate. Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver has a power window lock switch which can block the operation of rear (or front) passenger windows.
The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 seconds period. The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle

### ✻ NOTICE

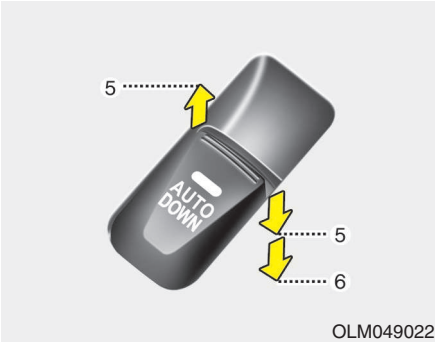
**While driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open position), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.**




OLM049021

***Window opening and closing***

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).



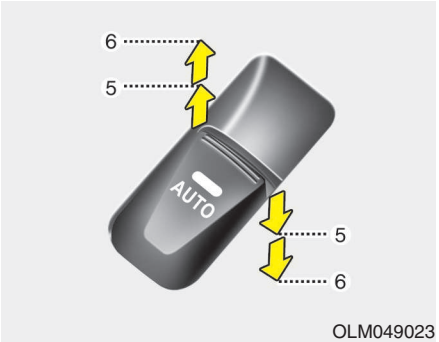

OLM049022

***Auto down window (if equipped) (Driver's window)***

Pressing the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers the driver's window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up the switch momentarily to the opposite direction of the window movement.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 23



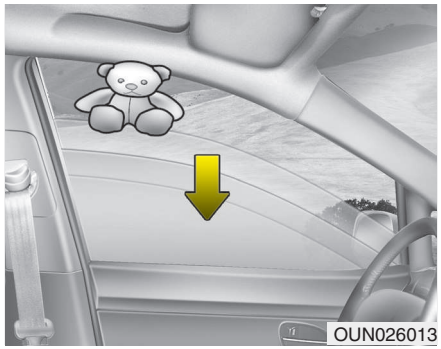



***Auto up/down window (if equipped) (Driver's window)***

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Close the driver's window and continue pulling up the driver's power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.




**Automatic reversal (if equipped)**

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 30 cm (11.8 in.) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance while the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in.). And if the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The automatic reverse feature for the driver's window is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.**




*Power window lock button*

The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers' doors by pressing the power window lock switch to the lock position (pressed).

When the power window lock switch is pressed :

- The driver's master control can operate the front passenger's power window but cannot operate the rear passengers' power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passengers' control cannot operate the rear passengers' power window.

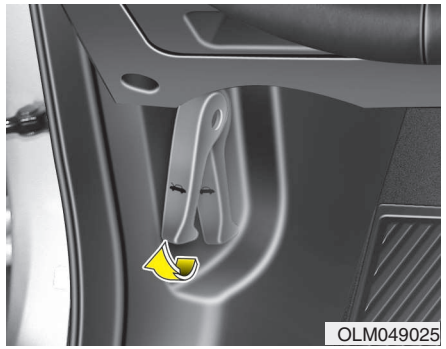
**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.***
- ***Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposing directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.***

**⚠ WARNING - Windows**

- **Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.**
- **NEVER leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.**
- **Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.**
- **Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock switch in the LOCK position (depressed). Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.**
- **Do not extend face or arms outside the window while driving.**

## HOOD

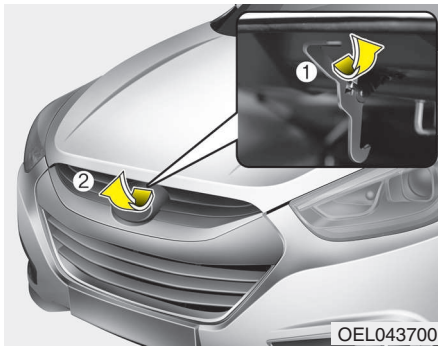



### Opening the hood

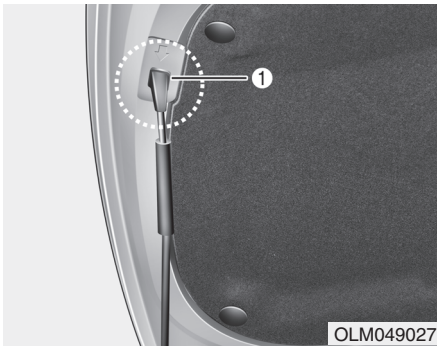
1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop open slightly.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Open the hood after turning off the engine on a flat surface, shifting the shift lever to the P(Park) position for automatic transaxle and to the 1st(First) gear or R(Reverse) for manual transaxle, and setting the parking brake.**




2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the hood slightly, pull the secondary latch (1) inside of the hood center and lift the hood (2).




3. Pull out the support rod.
4. Hold the hood opened with the support rod.

**⚠ WARNING - Hot parts**

**Grasp the support rod in the area wrapped in rubber. The plastic will help prevent you from being burned by hot metal when the engine is hot.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 26



### Closing the hood

1. Before closing the hood, check the following:
   - All filler caps in engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Return the support rod to its clip to prevent it from rattling.
3. Lower the hood until it is about 30 cm (1 ft.) above the closed position and let it drop. Make sure that it locks into place.

**⚠ WARNING - Hood**

- **Before closing the hood, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the hood opening. Closing the hood with an obstruction present in the hood opening may result in property damage or severe personal injury.**
- **Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.**

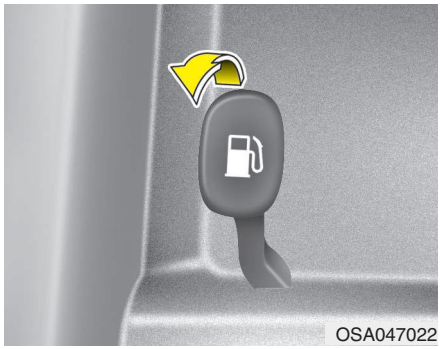
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always double check to be sure that the hood is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the hood could fly open while the vehicle is being driven, causing a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **The support rod must be inserted completely into the hole whenever you inspect the engine compartment. This will prevent the hood from falling and possibly injuring you.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the hood raised. The view will be blocked and the hood could fall or be damaged.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 27



## FUEL FILLER LID

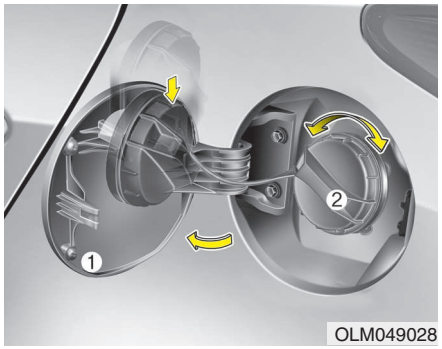

OSA047022

### Opening the fuel filler lid

The fuel-filler lid must be opened from inside the vehicle by pulling up the fuel-filler lid opener.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the fuel-filler lid does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.**



OLM049028

1. Stop the engine.
2. To open the fuel filler lid, pull the fuel filler lid opener up.
3. Pull the fuel filler lid (1) out to fully open.
4. To remove the cap (2), turn the fuel tank cap counterclockwise.
5. Refuel as needed.

### Closing the fuel filler lid

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks”. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. Close the fuel filler lid and push it lightly and make sure that it is securely closed.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 28



**⚠ WARNING - Refueling**

- **If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.**
- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refueling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

**⚠ WARNING - Refueling dangers**

**Automotive fuels are flammable materials. When refueling, please note the following guidelines carefully. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death by fire or explosion.**

- **Read and follow all warning posted at the gas station facility.**
- **Before refueling note the location of the Emergency Gasoline Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station facility.**
- **Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refueling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapors resulting in rapid burning. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other gasoline source.**
- **When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refueling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 29



**(Continued)**

**Use only portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store gasoline.**

- **Do not use cellular phones while refueling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from cellular phones can potentially ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.**
- **When refueling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.**
- **DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle while at a gas station especially during refueling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If a fire breaks out during refueling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in section 1.***
- ***If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.***
- ***Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.***
- ***After refueling, make sure the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 30



## PANORAMA SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)



OLM049030

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

The sunroof can only be opened, closed, or tilted when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### Sunroof open warning (if equipped)

■ Type A



■ Type B



WEL-400/OLM043420

If the driver removes the ignition key(Smart key : turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for approximately 7 seconds and

- Type A : Sunroof Open Warning Light illuminate or blink for approximately 7 seconds.
- Type B : Sunroof open image will appear on the LCD display.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **After a vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.***
- ***Make sure the sunroof is closed fully when leaving your vehicle attended. If the sunroof is open, rain or snow may leak through the sunroof and wet the interior as well as cause theft.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/23/2013 4:37 PM Page 31

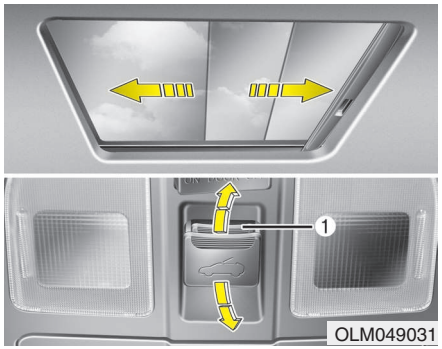


### ✻ NOTICE

**The sunroof cannot tilt when it is in the slide position but can be slid while in a tilt position.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the sunroof or roller blind while driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **If you would like to carry items on the roof rack using a cross bar, do not operate the sunroof.**
- **When carrying cargo on the roof rack, do not load heavy items above the sunroof or glass roof.**
- **Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.**




## Sliding the sunroof

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind.

To open the sunroof, pull the sunroof control lever backward.

To close the sunroof, push or pull the sunroof control lever with the safety switch (1) forward or downward.

**To open the sunroof automatically:**

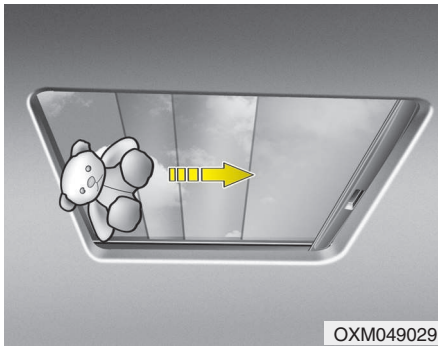
Pull the sunroof control lever backward to the second detent position and then release it. The sunroof will slide all the way open.

To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

**To close the sunroof automatically:**

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the second detent position and then release it. The sunroof will automatically close all the way.

To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.



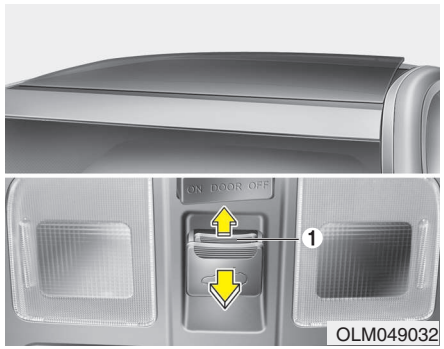

***Automatic reversal***

If an object or part of the body is detected while the sunroof is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never try pinching any part of your body intentionally to activate the Automatic reversal function.**
- **The Automatic reversal function may not work if something gets caught just before the sunroof fully closes.**




## Tilting the sunroof

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind.

To open the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever upward.

To close the sunroof, pull the sunroof lever with the safety switch (1) downward until the sunroof moves to the desired position.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 33



**⚠ WARNING - Sunroof**

- **Be careful that no head, hands and body parts are obstructed by a closing sunroof.**
- **Do not extend the face, neck, arms or body outside the sunroof while driving.**
- **Make sure your hands and head are safely out of the way before closing a sunroof.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.***
- ***If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.***
- ***Do not leave the roller blind closed while the sunroof is opened.***




### Roller blind

The roller blinds are installed inside of the sunroof and glass roof.

Open or close it manually when you need to.

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind.

**✻ NOTICE**

**It is normal for wrinkles to form on the blind because of its material characteristic.**

### Resetting the sunroof

Whenever the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, you must reset your sunroof system as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Open the roller blind.
3. Close the sunroof.
4. Release the sunroof control lever.
5. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close (about 10 seconds) until the sunroof is moved a little. Then, release the lever.
6. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close until the sunroof operates as follows;

   TILT OPEN → SLIDE OPEN → SLIDE CLOSE

   Then, release the lever.

When this is complete, the sunroof system has been reset.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 34



## STEERING WHEEL

### Electric power steering (if equipped)

Power steering uses the motor to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

The motor driven power steering is controlled by the power steering control unit which senses the steering wheel torque and vehicle speed to command the motor.

The steering wheel becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for better control of the steering wheel.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steering during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:**

- **The EPS warning light does not illuminate.**
- **The steering effort is high immediately after turning the ignition switch on. This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics is completed, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the ignition switch is turned to the ON or LOCK position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **The steering effort increases if the steering wheel is rotated continuously when the vehicle is not in motion. However, after a few minutes, it will return to its normal conditions.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the Electric Power Steering System does not operate normally, the warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel may become difficult to control or operate abnormally. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, abnormal noise could occur. If temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 35



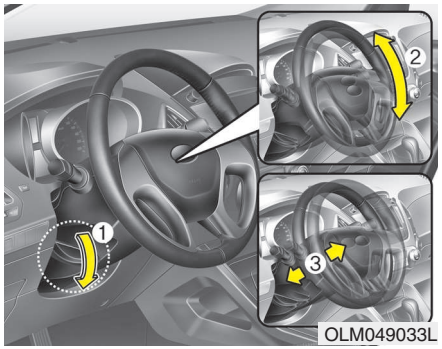
### Tilt steering

A tilt steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle (if equipped).

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, while permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

**⚠ WARNING**

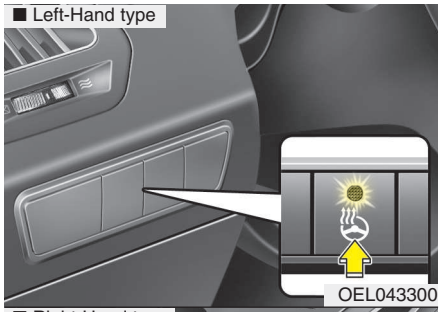
- **Never adjust the angle and height of steering wheel while driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.**
- **After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.**



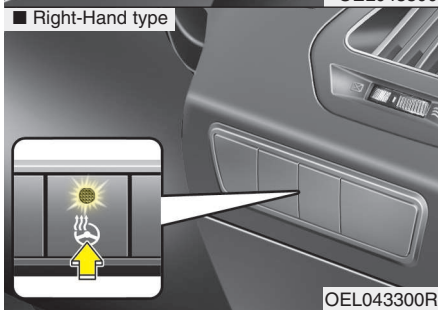
OLM049033L

To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock release lever (1), adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3, if equipped), then pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.

■ Left-Hand type


OEL043300

■ Right-Hand type


OEL043300R

### Heated steering wheel (if equipped)

When the ignition switch is in the ON position, pressing the heated steering wheel button warms the steering wheel. The indicator on the button will illuminate.

To turn the steering wheel off, press the button once again. The indicator on the button will turn off.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 36



It will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.

If you turn on the ignition again after turn off your engine in half an hour (after operating heater button), the heating system will be maintained in its 'on' condition.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not install any grip to operate the steering wheel. This causes damage to the heated steering wheel system.***
- ***When cleaning the heated steering wheel, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the surface of the steering wheel.***
- ***If the surface of steering wheel is damaged by sharp object, damage to the heated steering wheel components could occur.***



OLM049034

## Horn

To sound the horn, press the horn symbol on your steering wheel.

Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

### ✻ NOTICE

**To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.**

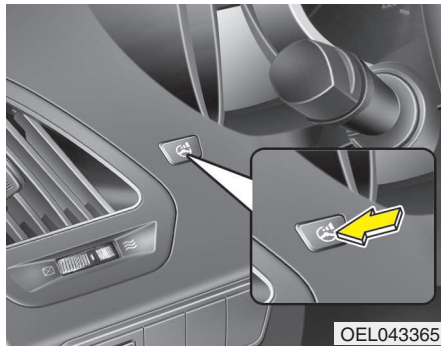
### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist.***

***Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:31 AM Page 37




OEL043365

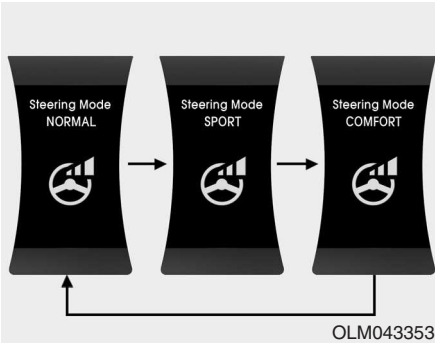
## Flex steering wheel (if equipped)

The flex steering wheel controls steering effort as driver's preference or road condition.

You can select the desired steering mode by pressing the steering mode button.

When the steering mode button is pressed, the selected steering mode will appear on the LCD display.

If the steering mode button is pressed within 4 seconds, the steering mode will change as above pictures.



OLM043353

If the steering wheel mode button is not pressed for about 4 seconds, the LCD display will change to the previous screen.



OLM043354

***Normal mode***

The normal mode offers medium steering effort.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 38






OLM043355

***Comfort mode***

The steering wheel becomes lighter. The comfort mode is usually used when driving in downtown or parking the vehicle.

Also, the comfort mode helps weak people to drive easily.




OLM043356

***Sport mode***

The steering wheel becomes heavier. The sport mode is usually used when driving in highway.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***For your safety, if you press the steering mode button while operating the steering wheel, the LCD display will change, but the steering effort will not change immediately. After operating the steering wheel, the steering effort will change automatically to the selected mode.***
- ***Be careful when changing the steering mode while driving.***
- ***When the electronic power steering is not working properly, the flex steering wheel will not work.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 39



## MIRRORS

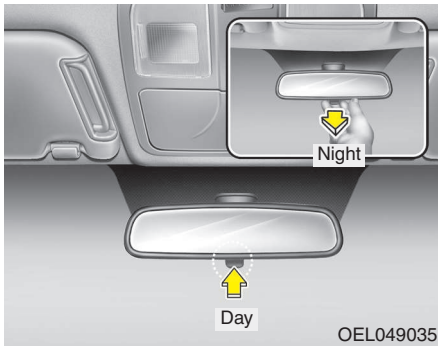
### Inside rearview mirror

Adjust the rearview mirror to center on the view through the rear window. Make this adjustment before you start driving.

**⚠ WARNING - Rear visibility**
**Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision out the rear window.**

**⚠ WARNING**
**Do not adjust the rearview mirror while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.**

**⚠ WARNING**
**Do not modify the inside mirror and do not install a wide mirror. It could result in injury, during an accident or deployment of the air bag.**




***Day/night rearview mirror***

Make this adjustment before you start driving and while the day/night lever is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever toward you to reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind you during night driving.

*Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.*

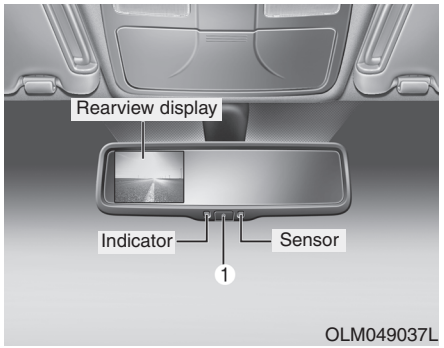
***Electric chromic mirror (ECM) (if equipped)***

The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the car behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

Whenever the shift lever is shifted into reverse (R), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the drivers view behind the vehicle.

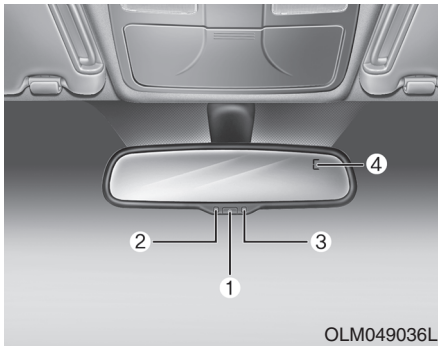
**⚠ CAUTION**
***When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.***



OLM049037L

**To operate the electric rearview mirror**

- Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function on. The mirror indicator light will illuminate.
  Press the ON/OFF button to turn the automatic dimming function off. The mirror indicator light will turn off.
- The mirror defaults to the ON position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.



OLM049036L

***Electric chromic mirror (ECM) with compass***

1. Feature Control Button
2. Status Indicator LED
3. Rear Light Sensor
4. Display Window

Automatic dimming rear view mirror controls automatically the glare of headlights of the vehicle behind you when it turned on by pressing and holding the button for more than 3 but less than 6 seconds. It is turned off by pressing and holding the button for same time once more.

**1. To operate Compass feature**

Press and release the button, then the vehicle's directional heading will be displayed. Pressing and releasing the button again will turn off the display.

Heading display
- E : East
- W : West
- S : South
- N : North

ex) NE : North East

**2. Calibration procedure**

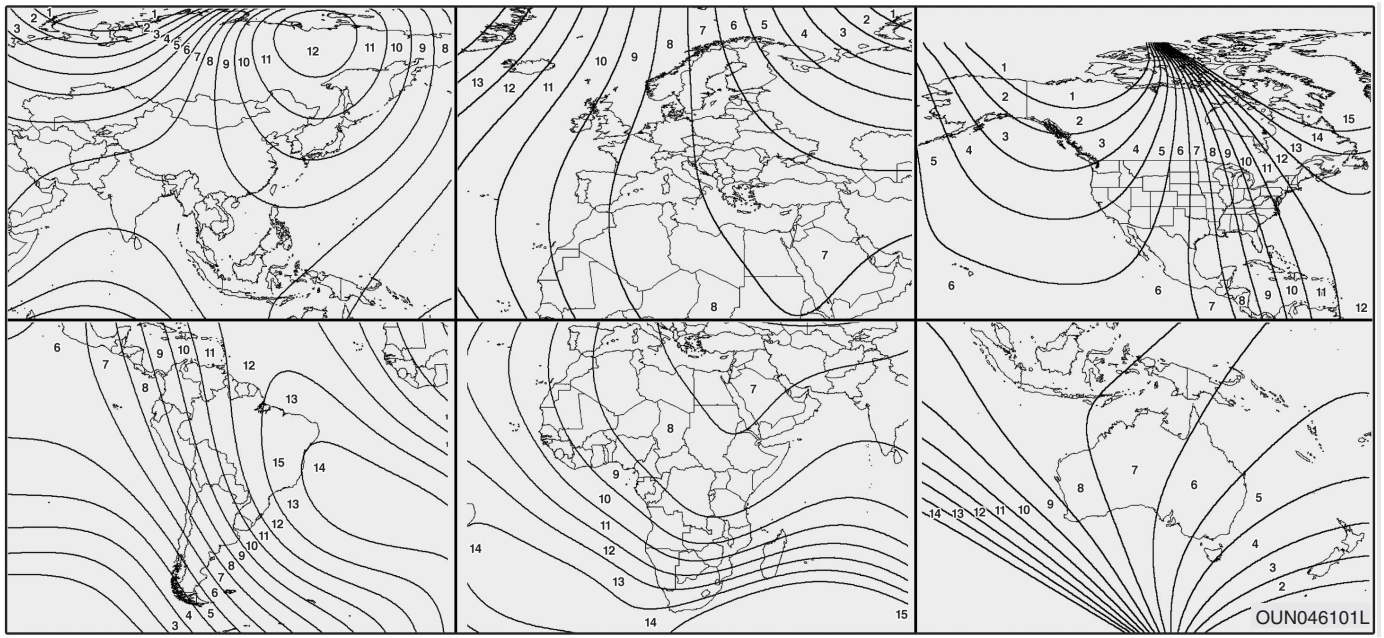
Press and hold the button for more than 9 but less than 12 seconds. When the compass memory is cleared a "C" will appear in the display.

- Driving the vehicle in a circle at less than 8km/h 2 times or until the compass heading appears.
- Driving in a circle in right-handed direction and opposite direction are possible, and if the calibration is completed, the compass heading will appear.
- Keep driving in a circle until a compass heading appears.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 41



**Compass Zone**



EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 42



**3. Setting the compass zone**

1. Find your current location and variance zone number on the zone map.
2. Press and hold the button for more than 6 but less than 9 seconds. The current zone number will appear in the display.
3. Press the button until the new zone number appears in the display. After you stop pressing the button in, the display will show a compass direction within a few seconds.

**4. Changing Mirror Angle setting (if equipped):**

Due to mirror positions being angled towards the driver, the compass mirror can also compensate for drivers seated on the Left Hand side of the vehicle (steering wheel on the LH side of the vehicle) or Right Hand side of the vehicle (steering wheel on the RH side of the vehicle).

To adjust the Left Hand, “L” or Right Hand, “R”, setting:

1. Press and hold the button for more than 12 seconds.
2. Release then press the button to toggle between “L” and “R”.

### ✻ NOTICE

**This procedure also causes the compass to be de-calibrated.**

3. To re-calibrate the compass, drive the vehicle in 2 complete circles at less than 8km/h (5mph).

### ⚠ CAUTION

***1. Do not install the ski rack, antenna, etc. which are attached to the vehicle by means of a magnet. They affect the operation of the compass.***

***2. If the compass deviates from the correct indication soon after repeated adjustment, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

***3. The compass may not indicate the correct compass point in tunnels or while driving up or down a steep hill.***

***(The compass returns to the correct compass point when the vehicle moves to an area where the geomagnetism is stabilized.)***

***4. When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.***

### Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing in a narrow street.

**⚠ WARNING - Rearview mirrors**

- **The right outside rearview mirror is convex. In some countries, the left outside rearview mirror is also convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.**
- **Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.**




*Remote control*

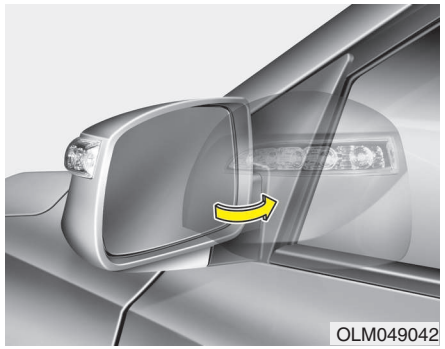
**Electric type (if equipped)**

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror, move the lever (1) to R (Right) or L (Left) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

After adjustment, put the lever into neutral position to prevent the inadvertent adjustment.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate while the switch is depressed. Do not depress the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.***
- ***Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.***




*Folding the outside rearview mirror*

**Manual type**

To fold outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 45






**Electric type (if equipped)**

To fold the outside rearview mirror, depress the button.

To unfold it, depress the button again.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the ignition switch is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary while the engine is not running.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***In case it is an electric type outside rearview mirror, don't fold it by hand. It could cause motor failure.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 46

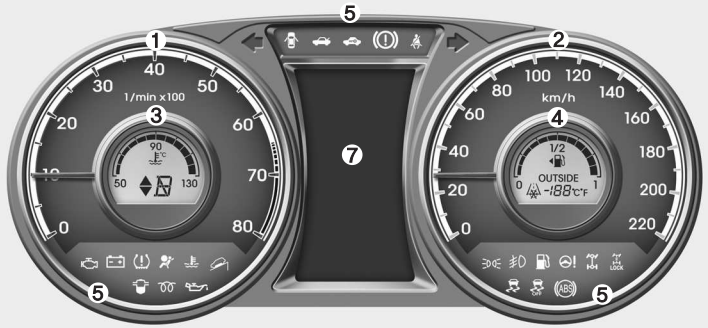


## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ **Type A**




■ **Type B**



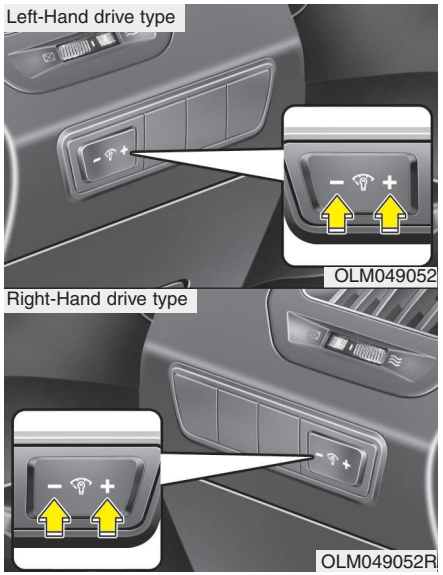

1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights (if equipped)
6. Odometer/Trip computer (if equipped)
7. LCD display

* The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
  For more details refer to the "Gauges" in the next pages.

OEL043308/OEL043307

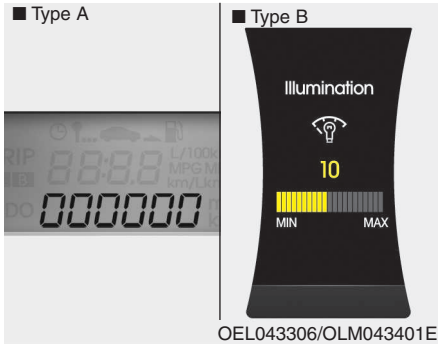
EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 47






## Instrument panel illumination (if equipped)

When the vehicle's parking lights or headlights are on, press the illumination control button to adjust the instrument panel illumination intensity.




- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, an alarm will sound.




## LCD Display Control (if equipped)

The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons on the crash pad.

(1) : MODE button for changing modes

(2) ▼ : SELECT/RESET button

✻ For the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 48



■ Type A (km/h)




■ Type B (km/h)




■ Type A (MPH)




■ Type B (MPH)




OEL049307/OEL049038/OEL049309/OEL049310

## Gauges

### *Speedometer*

The speedometer indicates the forward speed of the vehicle.

The speedometer is calibrated in miles per hour and/or kilometers per hour.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 49



■ Type A

Gasoline




Diesel




OEL049305

■ Type B

Gasoline




Diesel




OEL049306

***Tachometer***

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

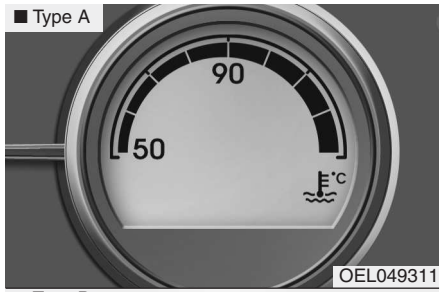
Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

The tachometer pointer may move slightly when the ignition switch is in ACC or ON position with the engine OFF. This movement is normal and will not affect the accuracy of the tachometer once the engine is running.

**⚠ CAUTION**

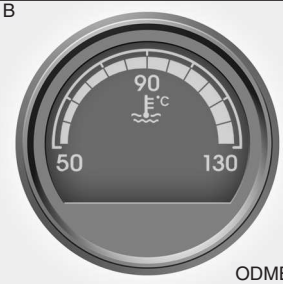
***Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.***

■ Type A




OEL049311

■ Type B




ODMEMM2352

***Engine temperature gauge***

This gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch is ON.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “If the engine overheats” in section 6.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the "🌡" position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.**

■ Type A




OEL049312

■ Type B




ODMEMM2351

***Fuel gauge***

The fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. The fuel tank capacity is given in section 8. The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.

On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.

**⚠ WARNING - Fuel gauge**

**Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.**

**You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the O (Empty) level.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 51

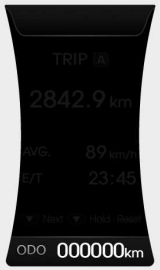


■ Type A




OEL043306

■ Type B




OLM043060

### *Odometer*

The odometer Indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

- Odometer range : 0 ~ 999999 kilometers or miles.




OEL049127L

### *Outside Temperature Gauge*

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

- Temperature range : -40°C ~ 60°C (-40°F ~ 140°F)

The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being inattentive.

The temperature unit (from °C to °F or from °F to °C) can be changed by using the “User Settings” mode of the LCD display.

❈ For more details, refer to “LCD Display” in this chapter.




OEL042127L

### *Icy Road Warning Light (if equipped)*

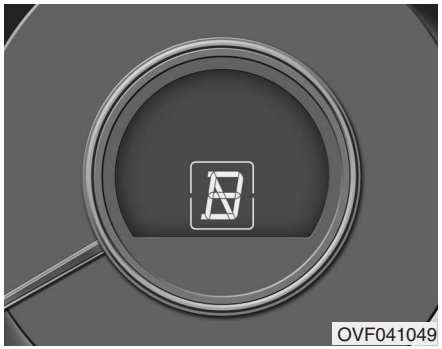
This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the following conditions occur, the warning light (including Outside Temperature Gauge) blinks 10 times and then illuminates, and also warning chime sounds 3 times.

- The temperature on the Outside Temperature Gauge is below approximately 4°C (39.2°F)
- The ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the icy road warning light appears while driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.**




## Transaxle Shift Indicator

***Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped)***

This indicator displays which automatic transaxle shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Sports Mode : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6




***Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped, For Europe)***

In the Sports Mode, this indicator informs which gear is desired while driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up : ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
- Shifting down : ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 53



For example
▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).
▼3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.




***Manual Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped)***

This indicator informs which gear is desired while driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up : ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
- Shifting down : ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5

For example
▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).
▼3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 54



## LCD DISPLAY

### LCD Modes (if equipped)

| Modes | Symbol<br>Type B | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Trip Computer |  | This mode displays driving information like the tripmeter, fuel economy, and so on. For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter. |
| Information |  | This mode informs of service interval (mileage or days) and warning messages related to TPMS or washer fluid. |
| User Settings |  | On this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps, and so on. |

❈ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:32 AM Page 55






OLM043404E




OLM043405E

## Information Mode

### *Service Interval*

**Service in**

It calculates and displays when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days).

If the remaining mileage or time reaches 1,500 km (900 mi.) or 30 days, "Service in" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.

**Service required**

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the already inputted service interval, “Service required” message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position. (The mileage and time changes to "---")

To reset the service interval to the mileage and days you inputted before:

- Activate the reset mode by pressing the [ ▼ ] button for more than 5 seconds, then press the [ ▼ ] button again for more than 1 second. (Europe)
- Press the [ ▼ ] button for more than 1 second (Except Europe).

### ✻ NOTICE

**If any of the following conditions occurs, the mileage and days may be incorrect.**

- **The battery cable is disconnected.**
- **The fuse switch is turned off.**
- **The battery is discharged.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 56





OLM043406E

## User Settings Mode

### *Description*

On this mode, you can change setting of the doors, lamps, and so on.

### *Door*

**Auto Door Lock (if equipped)**

- Off:
  The auto door lock operation will be deactivated.
- Speed:
  All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph).
- Shift Lever:
  All doors will be automatically locked if the automatic transaxle shift lever is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position.

**Auto Door Unlock (if equipped)**

- Off:
  The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.
- Key Out or Power Off:
  All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from ignition switch or Engine Star/Stop Button is set to the OFF position.
- Driver Door Unlock:
  All doors will be automatically unlocked if the driver's door is unlocked.
- Shift Lever:
  All doors will be automatically unlocked if the automatic transaxle shift lever is shifted to the P (Park) position.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 57



**Horn Feedback (if equipped)**

If this item is checked, the horn feedback operation will be activated.

After locking the door by pressing the lock button on the transmitter, if you press the lock button again within 4 seconds, the warning sound will operate once to indicate that all doors are locked.

### *Lamp*

**Head Lamp Delay (if equipped)**

If this item is checked, the headlamp delay and headlamp welcome function will be activated.

### *Settings*

**Language (if equipped)**

Choose the language you prefer within the LCD display.

**SPAS Voice (if equipped)**

Adjust the volume of SPAS voice information.

**Temperature Unit**

Convert the temperature unit from °C to °F or from °F to °C.

**AVG Fuel Eco Reset**

- Auto Reset:
  The average fuel economy will reset automatically when refueling.
- Manual Reset:
  The average fuel economy will not reset automatically whenever refueling.

For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 58






OLM043407E

***Service Interval (Except Europe)***

On this mode, you can activate the service interval function with mileage (km or mi.) and period (months).

## ✻ NOTICE

**If it is not available to set service interval on your vehicle, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**




OLM043413E

## Warning Messages (if equipped)

***Shift to "P" position (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in P (Park) position.
- At this time, the Engine Start/Stop Button turns to the ACC position (If you press the Engine Start/Stop Button once more, it will turn to the ON position).




OLM043410E

***Low Key Battery (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the battery of the smart key is discharged when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.




OLM043500N

***Press start button while turn steering (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed.
- It means that you should press the Engine Start/Stop Button while turning the steering wheel right and left.




OLM043502N

***Steering wheel unlocked (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.




OLM043503N

***Check steering wheel lock system (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 60






OLM043415E

***Press brake pedal to start engine (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.
- It means that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.




OLM043416E

***Press clutch pedal to start engine (for smart key system and manual transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the clutch pedal.
- It means that you should depress the clutch pedal to start the engine.




OLM043408E

***Key not in vehicle (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.
- It means that you always have the smart key with you.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 61






OLM043409E

***Key not detected (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.




OLM043411E

***Press start button again (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you can not operate the Engine Start/Stop Button when there is a problem with the Engine Start/Stop Button system.
- It means that you could start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button once more.
- If the warning illuminates each time you press the Engine Start/Stop Button, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.




OLM043412E

***Press start button with smart key (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button while the warning message “Key not detected” is illuminating.
- At this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 62






OLM043417E

***Check fuse "BRAKE SWITCH" (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.
- It means that you should replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.




OLM043414E

***Shift to "P" or "N" to start engine (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

**✻ NOTICE**

**You can start the engine with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position. But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.**



OLM043418

***Door Open***

- It means that any door is open.



OLM043419

***Tailgate Open***

- It means that the tailgate is open.



OLM043420

***Sunroof Open (if equipped)***

- It means that the sunroof is open.




OLM043501N

***Low Washer Fluid (if equipped)***

- This warning message illuminates on the service reminder mode if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.
- It means that you should refill the washer fluid.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 64



## TRIP COMPUTER

■ Type A




OEL043703

■ Type B



OEL043702

### Overview

***Description***

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

### ✻ NOTICE

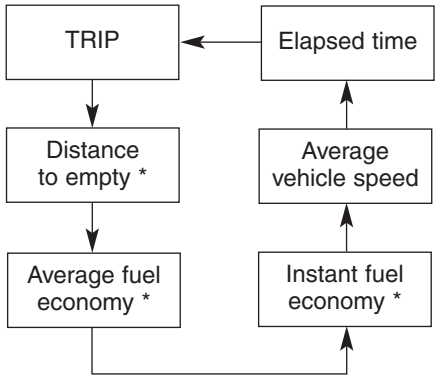
**Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Vehicle Speed) resets if the battery is disconnected.**

### Trip Modes

Trip mode is changed as below whenever pushing the button shortly.

- Type A : TRIP button
- Type B : [ ▼ ]

• **Type A (if equipped)**

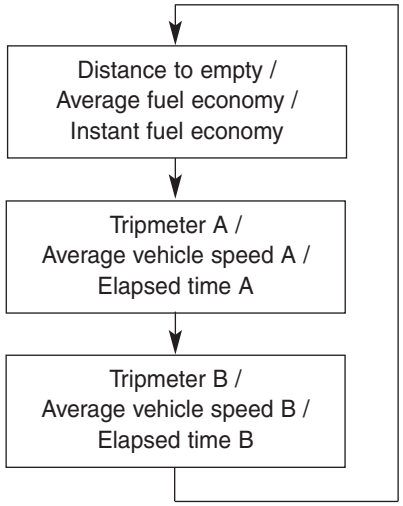



* : if equipped

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 65



- **Type B (if equipped)**




❊ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.




OLM049320/OEL049325/
OEL049326/OLM043403E

## Trip A/B

***Tripmeter (1)***

- Type A
  TRIP : Tripmeter

- Type B
  TRIP A :
  Tripmeter A→ 🗐 : Order changed
  TRIP B :
  Tripmeter B→ ▼ : Order changed

- The tripmeter is the total driving distance since the last tripmeter reset.
  - Distance range: 0.0 ~ 9999.9 km or mi.
- To reset the tripmeter, press Trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the tripmeter is displayed.

***Average Vehicle Speed (2)***

- The average vehicle speed is calculated by the total driving distance and driving time since the last average vehicle speed reset.
  - Speed range: 0 ~ 999 km/h or MPH
- To reset the average vehicle speed, press the trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 66



### ✻ NOTICE

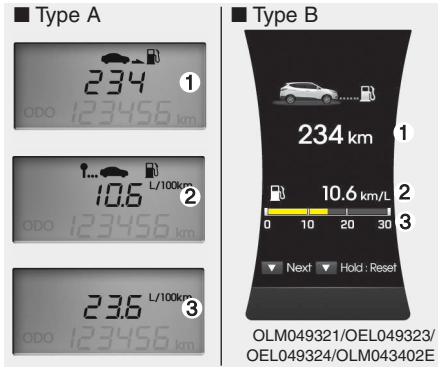
- **The average vehicle speed is not displayed if the driving distance is less than 300 meters (0.186 miles) or the driving time is less than 10 seconds since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is turned to ON.**
- **Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average vehicle speed keeps going while the engine is running.**

***Elapsed Time (3)***

- The elapsed time is the total driving time since the last elapsed time reset.
  - Time range (hh:mm): 00:00 ~ 99:59
- To reset the elapsed time, press the trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the elapsed time is displayed.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the elapsed time keeps going while the engine is running.**




OLM049321/OEL049323/
OEL049324/OLM043402E

## Fuel Economy

***Distance To Empty (1)***

- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
  - Distance range: 50 ~ 9999 km or 30 ~ 9999 mi.
- If the estimated distance is below 50 km (30 mi.), the trip computer will display "---" as distance to empty.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.**
- **The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.**
- **The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.**
- **The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 67



***Average Fuel Economy (2)***

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
  - Fuel economy range: 0.0 ~ 99.9 L/100km or MPG
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

**Manual reset**

To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

**Automatic reset**

The average fuel economy will be cleared to zero (---) when the vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h after refueling more than 6 liters (1.6 gallons).

### ✻ NOTICE

**The average fuel economy is not displayed for more accurate calculation if the vehicle does not drive more than 10 seconds or 50 meters (0.03 miles) since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is turned to ON.**

***Instant Fuel Economy (3)***

- This mode displays the instant fuel economy during the last few seconds when the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h (6.2 MPH).
  - Fuel economy range:

  Type A : 0 ~ 99.9 L/100 km or MPG

  Type B : 0 ~ 30 L/100 km or 0 ~ 50 MPG

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 68



## Warnings and indicators

All warning lights are checked by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). If any light does not illuminate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

After starting the engine, check to make sure that all warning lights are off. If any are still on, this indicates a situation that needs attention. When releasing the parking brake, the brake system warning light should go off. The fuel warning light will stay on if the fuel level is low.

### *ECO Indicator Light (if equipped)*




**This indicator light illuminates:**

When you activate the active ECO system by pressing the ACTIVE ECO button.

For more details, refer to “Active ECO System” in chapter 5.

### *Air bag warning light (if equipped)*



This warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON position.

This light also comes on when the SRS is not working properly. If the AIR BAG warning light does not come on, or continuously remains on after operating for about 6 seconds when you turned the ignition switch to the ON position or started the engine, or if it comes on while driving, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 69



***Anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light (if equipped)***




This light illuminates if the ignition switch is turned to ON and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the ABS warning light remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, this indicates that there may be a problem with the ABS.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. The normal braking system will still be operational, but without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system.

**Electronic brake force distribution (EBD) system warning light**




If two warning lights illuminate at the same time while driving, your vehicle may have a malfunction with ABS and EBD system.

In this case, your ABS and regular brake system may not work normally. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the both ABS and Brake warning lights are on and stay on, your vehicle's brake system will not work normally. So you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking. In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.**

**We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the ABS warning light or EBD warning light is on and stays on, the speedometer or odometer/tripmeter may not work. Also, the EPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease. In this case, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 70



***Seat belt warning and chime (if equipped)***



**Seat belt warning light**

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

For details, refer to the seat belt on chapter 3.

***Turn signal indicator lights***



The blinking green arrows on the instrument panel show the direction indicated by the turn signals. If the arrow comes on but does not blink, blinks more rapidly than normal, or does not illuminate at all, a malfunction in the turn signal system is indicated. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

This indicator also blinks when the hazard warning switch is turned on.

***Low Beam Indicator Light (if equipped)***



This indicator light illuminates when the headlights are on.

***High beam indicator***



This indicator illuminates when the headlights are on and in the high beam position or when the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

***Light on indicator (if equipped)***



The indicator illuminates when the tail lights or headlights are ON.

***Front fog light indicator (if equipped)***



The indicator illuminates when the front fog lights are ON.

***Rear fog light indicator (if equipped)***



This indicator illuminates when the rear fog lights are ON.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 8/8/2013 6:54 PM Page 71



### *Engine oil pressure warning*



This warning light indicates the engine oil pressure is low.

If the warning light illuminates while driving:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and stop.
2. With the engine off, check the engine oil level. If the level is low, add oil as required.

If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that you call an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the engine is not stopped immediately after the engine oil pressure warning light is illuminated, severe damage could result.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the oil pressure warning light stays on while the engine is running, serious engine damage may result. The oil pressure warning light comes on whenever there is insufficient oil pressure. In normal operation, it should come on when the ignition switch is turned on, then go out when the engine is started. If the oil pressure warning light stays on while the engine is running, there is a serious malfunction.***

***If this happens, stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so, turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level and start the engine again. If the light stays on with the engine running, turn the engine off immediately. In any instance where the oil light stays on when the engine is running, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

### *Engine oil level warning light (if equipped)*



The engine oil level warning light illuminates when the engine oil level should be checked.

If the warning light comes on, check the engine oil level as soon as possible and add engine oil as required.

Slowly pour the recommended oil little by little into a funnel. (Oil refill capacity : approximately 0.6 ~ 1.0 *l*)

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)

Do not overfill the engine oil to ensure the oil level is not above F mark on the dipstick.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 72



### ✻ NOTICE

- **If you travel approximately 50~100 km after the engine warms up, after adding the engine oil, the warning light will go off.**
- **Cycle the ignition from OFF to ON 3 times within 10 seconds, the warning light will go off immediately. However, when you turn off the warning light without adding the engine oil, the light will come on again after traveling approximately 50~100 km after the engine warms up.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the light comes on continuously after adding the engine oil and traveling approximately 50~100 km after the engine warms up, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

***Even if this light doesn't come on after the engine has started, the engine oil should be checked and supplied periodically.***

## *Parking brake & brake fluid warning*



**Parking brake warning**

This light is illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position. The warning light should go off when the parking brake is released.

**Low brake fluid level warning**

If the warning light remains on, it may indicate that the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.

If the warning light remains on:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required. Then check all brake components for fluid leaks.
3. Do not drive the vehicle if leaks are found, the warning light remains on or the brakes do not operate properly. We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail. With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the car. Also, the car will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working. If the brakes fail while you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so.

To check bulb operation, check whether the parking brake and brake fluid warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Driving the vehicle with a warning light on is dangerous. If the brake warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 73



### *TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) indicator (if equipped)*

**Low tire pressure telltale**



**Low tire pressure position telltale**



The low tire pressure telltale comes on for 3 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.

The low tire pressure and position telltales illuminate when one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated.

The low tire pressure telltale will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

For details, refer to the TPMS on chapter 6.

**⚠ WARNING - Safe stopping**

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

### *Auto stop indicator (if equipped)*



This indicator will illuminate when the engine enters the Idle Stop mode of the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system.

When the automatic starting occurrs, the auto stop indicator on the cluster will blink for 5 seconds.

For more details, refer to the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system on the front of chapter 5.

**✻ NOTICE**

**When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESP, ESP OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.**
**This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean the system is malfunctioning.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 74



***Charging system warning***



This warning light indicates a malfunction of either the generator or electrical charging system.

If the warning light comes on while the vehicle is in motion:

1. Drive to the nearest safe location.
2. With the engine off, check the generator drive belt for looseness or breakage.
3. If the belt is adjusted properly, a problem exists somewhere in the electrical charging system. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

***Door ajar warning light***



This warning light illuminates when a door is not closed securely with the ignition switch in any position.

***Tailgate open warning light***



This warning light illuminates when the tailgate is not closed securely with the ignition switch in any position.

***Door open position indicator (including tailgate)***



This indicator illuminates when a door or tailgate is not closed securely.
The indicator displays which door or tailgate is opened.

***Sunroof open warning light (if equipped)***



If the driver removes the ignition key (Smart key : turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for approximately 7 seconds and Sunroof Open Warning Light illuminate or blink for approximately 7 seconds.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/23/2013 4:34 PM Page 75



### *Immobilizer indicator (if equipped)*



**Without smart key system**

This indicator illuminates when the immobilizer key is inserted and turned to the ON position to start the engine.

At this time, you can start the engine. The indicator goes out after the engine is running.

If this indicator blinks when the ignition switch is in the ON position before starting the engine, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**With smart key system**

If any of the following occurs in a vehicle equipped with the smart key, the immobilizer indicator illuminates, blinks or goes off.

- When the battery of the smart key is weak.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button with the smart key. (For more details, refer to “Starting the Engine” in section 5).
- If the indicator illuminates only for 2 seconds and goes out when the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned to ON position with the smart key in the vehicle, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.
- When the battery is weak, if the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed, the indicator will blink and you are not able to start the engine. However, you are able to start the engine by inserting the smart key in the smart key holder. Also, if the smart key system related parts have a problem, the indicator will blink.

### *Low fuel level warning*



This warning light indicates the fuel tank is nearly empty. When it comes on, you should add fuel as soon as possible. Driving with the fuel level warning light on or with the fuel level below “E” can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:33 AM Page 76



***Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) (check engine light)***



This indicator light is part of the Engine Control System which monitors various emission control system components. If this light illuminates while driving, it indicates that a potential problem has been detected somewhere in the emission control system.

This light will also illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, and will go out in a few seconds after the engine is started. If it illuminates while driving, or does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Generally, your vehicle will continue to be drivable, but we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Prolonged driving with the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminated may cause damage to the emission control systems which could effect drivability and/or fuel economy.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Gasoline engine**

***If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine (if equipped with DPF)**

***When the malfunction indicator light is blinks, it may stop blinking after driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).***

***If the malfunction indicator light continues to blink in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

***If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine**

***If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light blinks, some error related to the injection quantity adjustment occurs which could result in loss of engine power, combustion noise and poor emission. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 77



## Indicator Lights



### *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**This indicator light blinks:**

While the ESC is operating.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 5.




### *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 5.



### *Cruise indicator (if equipped)*

**CRUISE indicator**

The indicator illuminates when the cruise control system is enabled.
The cruise indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the cruise control ON-OFF button on the steering wheel is pushed.
The indicator goes off when the cruise control ON-OFF button is pushed again.
For more information about the use of cruise control, refer to “Cruise control system” in section 5.

**Cruise SET indicator**




The indicator illuminates when the cruise control switch (-SET or RES+) is ON.
The cruise SET indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the cruise control switch (-SET or RES+) is pushed.
The cruise SET indicator does not illuminate when the cruise control switch (CANCEL) is pushed or the system is disengaged.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/23/2013 4:34 PM Page 78



***DBC (Downhill brake control) indicator (if equipped)***



The DBC indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds.

The DBC indicator will illuminate when the DBC button is pressed and the system is on.

When driving down a steep hill at a speed under 35 km/h (22 mph), the DBC will operate and the DBC indicator will blink to indicate the DBC is operating.

If the red indicator illuminates, the DBC system may have malfunctioned. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

***KEY OUT indicator (if equipped)***




When the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the indicator will blink, and if all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for about 5 seconds. The indicator will go off while the vehicle is moving. Keep the smart key in the vehicle.

***Key reminder warning chime (if equipped)***

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition key is left in the ignition switch (ACC or LOCK position), the key reminder warning chime will sound. This is to prevent you from locking your keys in the vehicle. The chime sounds until the key is removed from the ignition switch or the driver's door is closed.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 79



### *Glow indicator (Diesel engine)*



The indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is placed at the ON position. The engine can be started after the preheat indicator light goes off. The illuminating time varies with the water temperature, air temperature and battery condition.

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the engine was not started within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position during 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the preheat indicator continues to illuminate or flash on and off after the engine has warmed up or while driving, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

### *Fuel filter warning light (Diesel engine)*



This warning light illuminates for 3 seconds after the ignition switch is set to the ON position and then it will go out. If it lights up while the engine is running, it indicates that water has accumulated inside the fuel filter. If this happens, remove the water from the fuel filter. For more Information, refer to “Fuel filter” in section 7.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When the fuel filter warning light is illuminated, engine power (vehicle speed & idle speed) may decrease. If you keep driving with the warning light on, you can damage your vehicle's engine parts and injection system of the Common Rail. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

### *4WD system warning light (if equipped)*



When the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, the 4WD indicator will illuminate and then go off in a few seconds.
If the 4WD system warning light illuminates, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the 4WD system. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 80



### *4WD LOCK indicator (if equipped)*




The 4WD LOCK indicator light is illuminated when the 4WD LOCK button is pushed. The purpose of this 4WD LOCK mode is to increase the drive power when driving on wet pavement, snow-covered roads and/or off-road. The 4WD LOCK indicator light is turned off by pushing the button again.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use 4WD LOCK mode on dry paved roads or highway, it can cause noise, vibration or damage of 4WD related parts.***

### *Engine coolant temperature warning light (if equipped)*



The warning light illuminates if the temperature of the engine coolant is above 120±3°C (248±5.4°F).

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “Overheating” in section 6.

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the engine coolant temperature warning light illuminates, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.**

### *Electronic power steering (EPS) system warning light (if equipped)*



This indicator light comes on after the ignition key is turned to the ON position and then it will go out.

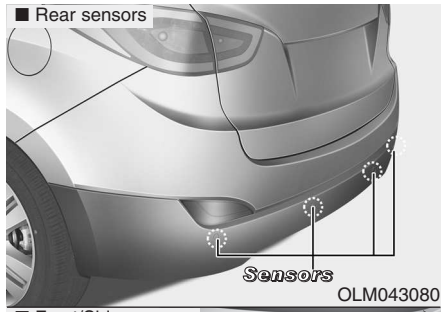
This light also comes on when the EPS has some troubles. If it comes on while driving, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 81



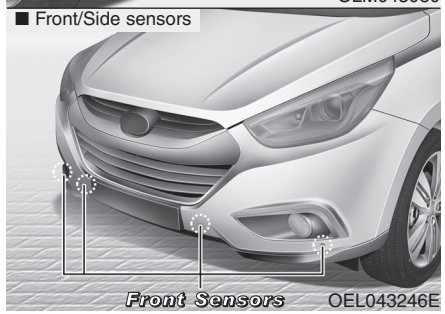
## PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Rear sensors




OLM043080

■ Front/Side sensors




OEL043246E

This is the parking assist system to warn the driver of object which are detected by front, rear and side sensors with range of distance of sensors operation as warning sound or indicator (LCD) when the vehicle is moved back or forward.

This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.

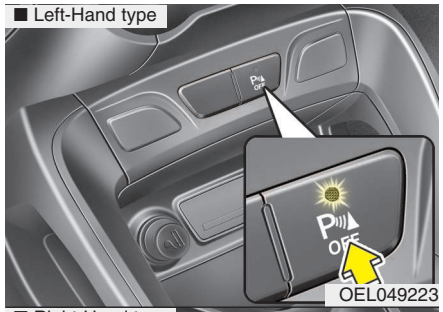
The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited.

Whenever getting forward or backing-up, pay as much attention to what is front or behind you as you would in a vehicle without a parking assist system.

**⚠ WARNING**

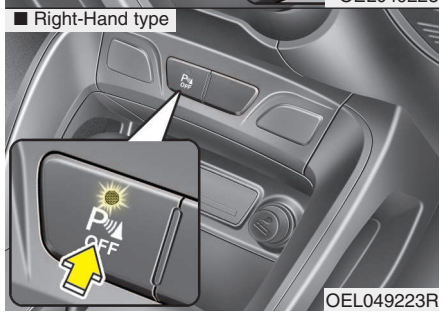
**The parking assist system should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view. The operational function of the parking assist system can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings and can not be operated normally, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.**

■ Left-Hand type




OEL049223

■ Right-Hand type




OEL049223R

### Rear parking assist system type (if equipped)

The rear sensor detects the distance between vehicle and object. The rear parking assist system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 120 cm (47 in.) behind the vehicle.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 82



This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the back sensors are limited. Whenever backing-up, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without a rear parking assist system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The rear parking assist system is a supplementary function only. The operation of the rear parking assist system can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area behind the vehicle before and while backing up.**

***Operating condition***

- This system will activate when backing up with the ignition switch ON.
  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 10 km/h (6 mph), the system may not be activated correctly.
- This system will activate when the indicator on the rear parking assist OFF button is not illuminated. If you desire to deactivate the rear parking assist system, press the rear parking assist OFF button again. (The indicator on the button will illuminate.) To turn the system on, press the button again. (The indicator on the button will go off.)
- The sensing distance while the rear parking assist system is in operation is approximately 120 cm (47 in.).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

***Types of warning sound***

- When an object is 120 cm to 61 cm (47.2 in. to 24 in.) from the rear bumper:
  Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23.6 in. to 12.2 in.) from the rear bumper:
  Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 30 cm (11.8 in.) of the rear bumper:
  Buzzer sounds continuously.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 83



***Non-operational conditions***

The rear parking assist system may not operate properly when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when the moisture has been cleared.)
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces. (unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, gradient)
4. Objects generating excessive noise (vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes) are within range of the sensor.
5. Heavy rain or water spray exists.
6. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are within range of the sensor.
7. The sensor is covered with snow.
8. Trailer towing.
9. The place light the fluorescent lamp.

The detecting range may decrease when:

1. The sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m (40 in.) in height and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.

***Rear parking assist system precautions***

- The rear parking assist system may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- The rear parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognize objects less than 30 cm (11.8 in.) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 84



### ✻ NOTICE

**This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors; It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.**
**Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.**
**Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the*1 sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.**

***Self-diagnosis***

If you don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the gear to the R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction in the rear parking assist system. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

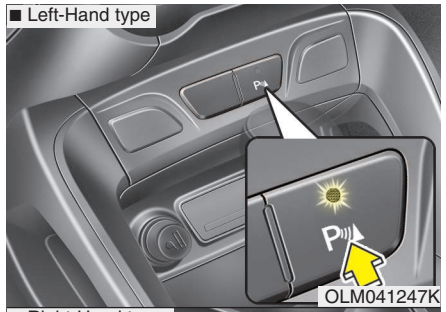
### ⚠ WARNING

**Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants due to a rear parking assist system malfunction. Always drive safely and cautiously.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 85

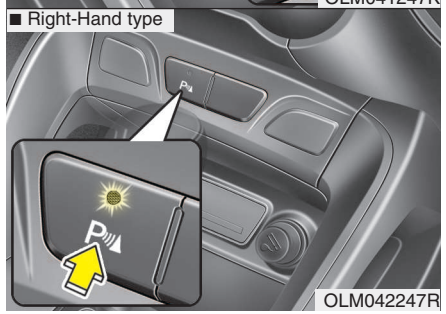


■ Left-Hand type



OLM041247K

■ Right-Hand type



OLM042247R

## Front/Rear parking assist system type (if equipped)

The front/rear parking assist system detects the object distance by using the front/rear sensor and front side sensor.
When you select the smart parking assist system*, the front/rear parking assist system will be operated.

When it is the step controlling the steering wheel if you cancel the front/rear parking assist system, the smart parking assist system will be cancelled.

### *Operating condition*

- This parking assist system activates and the indicator on the button illuminates when the parking assist button ( ) is pressed with the ignition switch ON. And it operates in forward, reverse and neutral position of the shift lever.

  The parking assist button turns on automatically and activates the parking assist system when you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position. If you drive the vehicle above 10km/h, the warning will not activate.
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, warning indicator is displayed all.
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be warned by warning sound.
- While backing up, if the front and rear sensor recognizes an object at the same distance, the rear will be warned first.
- The warnings by side sensors are operated when the shift lever is in R (Reverse) position.

### *Types of warning sound*

**When driving forward**

- When an object is 100 cm to 61 cm (39 in. to 24 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23 in. to 12 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 30 cm (11 in.) of the bumper:
  Buzzer sounds continuously.

**When driving rearward or the shift lever is in N position**

- When an object is 120 cm to 61 cm (47.2 in. to 24 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23 in. to 12 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 30 cm (11 in.) of the bumper:
  Buzzer sounds continuously.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 86



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors;***

  ***It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.***

  ***Always visually check front or behind the vehicle when getting forward or backing up.***
- ***Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.**

***Self-diagnosis***

When the front/rear parking assist system has a malfunction, if you operate the system, the warning sound sounds 3 times. In this time, the indicator on switch will blink and the warning on the cluster will blink. However, the warning regarding object will not sound.

In this time, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

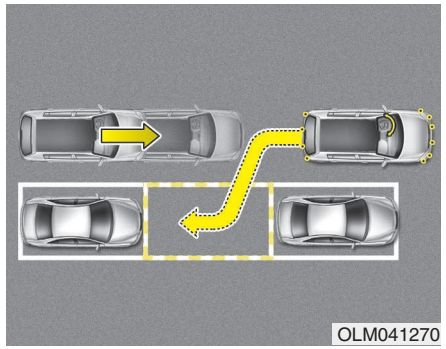
**⚠ WARNING**

**Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to a parking assist system. Always drive safely and cautiously.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 87



## SMART PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)


OLM041270

The smart parking assist system allows you to park the vehicle to search a space by sensors. This system is a supplemental system that shows message and gives auditory warning by controlling the steering wheel.

The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Whenever moving pay as much attention to what is in front and behind of you as you would in a vehicle without a parking assist system.

The rear parallel parking is only possible in this smart parking assist system.

Use this smart parking assist system in parking lot or parking space.

If there are no vehicles in front of space that you want to park the vehicle, the smart parking assist system is not supported. Also the diagonal line parking is not supported.

After parking the vehicle, the parking situation may be not desired parking position by arrangement situation between vehicle and vehicle or between wall and vehicle.

By necessity, turn off the smart parking assist system and park the vehicle by manual parking.

If you select this system, the warning sound always let you know whether there are the objects or not by distance with operating the front/rear parking assist system.

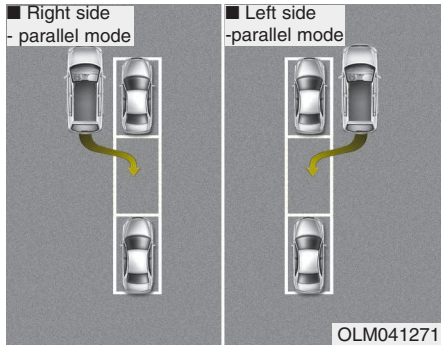
While operating this system, if you turn off the front/rear parking assist system after searching parking space, the smart parking assist system is also turned off.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The smart parking assist system can not be operated normally by surround situations and other conditions. The driver always needs to confirm the objects.**
  **This system is for parking assist, do not depend on this system only. By surrounding conditions, park the vehicle carefully and safely like applying the brake pedal.**
- **If the vehicle is necessary to control wheel alignment, this system is not operated normally. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **If you change the genuine tires to other tires type and size, the parking ability may change. When you change the tires, use the same tires and size.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 88






### Operating condition

Use the smart parking assist system as follows when all conditions are satisfied. This system helps you park the vehicle to center or rear of parked vehicle through steering wheel control with each information.

- When the parking space is straight line
- When the parallel parking required
- When the parked vehicles are located
- When there is enough space moving the vehicle with the smart parking assist system

### Non-operational conditions

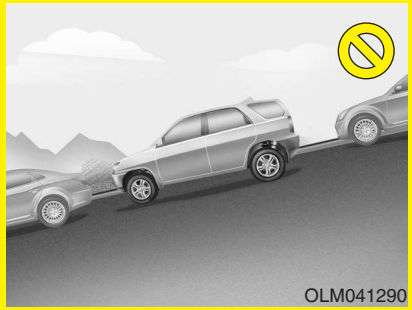
Never use the smart parking assist system as follows because of the system ability decrease, off or danger of crash.

- When the parking space is curved
- Inclined road
- When loading long or wide cargo compared to vehicle
- Diagonal line parking
- If there is trash, grass or barriers in parking space
- When snowing or raining heavily
- Pole is close to parking line
- Being equipped with snow chain or spare tire
- Low or High tire pressure
- Being connected to trailer
- Surface of road is slippery or not clear
- If there is bumpy road
- If there is truck or bus in parking space
- The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked
- Moisture is frozen to the sensor.
- If there is motorcycle or bicycle in parking space
- If there is the waste bin or barrier
- Heavy wind
- If the tire is changed to unauthorized tire
- If there is a problem with wheel alignment
- The parking place next to flower bed or bush

**⚠ WARNING**

**In following conditions, when smart parking assist system is operated, the unexpected result may occur and it could result in serious injury. Do not use the smart parking assist system.**

**1. Slope road parking**




**When the smart parking assist system is operated in slope road, driver needs to apply to accelerator and brake pedal by himself. If driver is unfamiliar with controlling the pedal, the crash accident may occur.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**2. Parking in snowed space**




**Following amount of snow cover, the sensing ability could be low.**

**When the vehicle is slipped during parking by smart parking assist System, system can be canceled, If driver is unfamiliar with controlling the accelerator and brake pedal, the crash accident may occur.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**3. Narrow parking space**

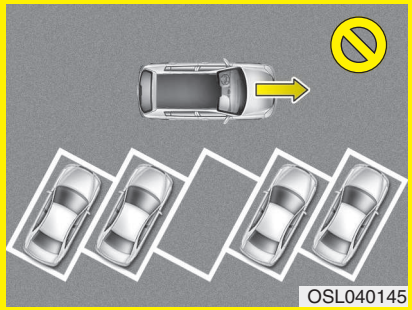



**When the space for parking is not enough, space searching may not operate in narrow road. Even if space searching is sensed, be careful.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**4. Diagonal line parking**



OSL040145

**The smart parking assist system is a supplemental system for parallel parking. Diagonal line parking is not applied. Even if vehicle could enter the space, do not operate the smart parking assist system. Because the smart parking assist system tries parallel parking.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**5. Parking in uneven road**



OLM041291

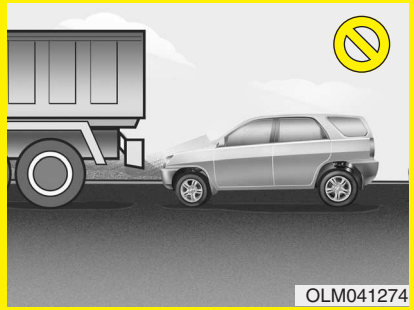
**When vehicle is parked in uneven road, driver needs to properly control the pedal (clutch, accelerator or brake) by himself. If not, unexpected result may occur.**

**The system may cancel when the vehicle slips. If driver is unfamiliar with controlling the pedal, the crash accident may occur.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**6. Parking behind a truck**



OLM041274

**When vehicle is parked behind a vehicle of which storage compartment is high like truck, the fender-bender may occur.**

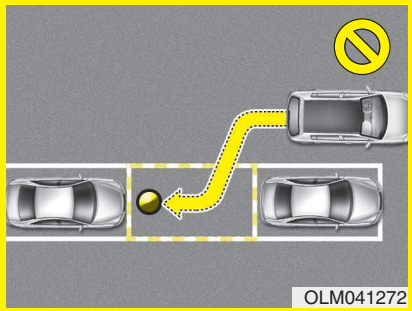
**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 91



**(Continued)**

**7. If there is an object in parking space**




**Even if there are barriers, the smart parking assist system may detect the parking space. In this case, if you try to park the vehicle, the accident may occur. Do not use the smart parking assist system.**

**In any cases, do not depend on the smart parking assist system. Take the necessary action regarding safety with confirming all situations.**

### Operation way

Before operating the smart parking assist system, confirm the condition that is possible to use. For safety, always operate it by applying the brake pedal under any condition, for example before each step, while pressing the ON/OFF button of this system or shifting the lever, etc.

When vehicle is parked by using the smart parking assist system, general steps are followings

1. The smart parking assist system select
2. Parking mode select
3. Parking space search : Direct way driving
4. Search complete : Automatic search by sensor

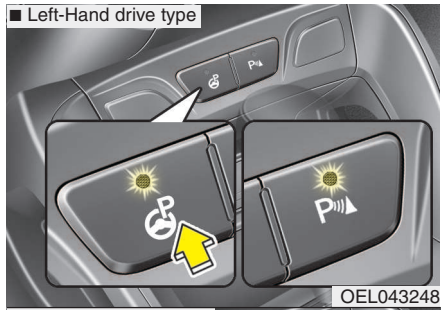
   However, before parking, real parking environment confirmations are needed for driver.
5. Steering wheel support (Rear Parking type)
   (1) Operate shift lever by display in cluster
   (2) Always drive slowly with applying to brake
6. Smart parking assist system complete
7. If required, move vehicle to manual operation

According to parking space, select mode, and surrounding environment, the sequence of display or situation could be changed. Refer to next operation way.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 92

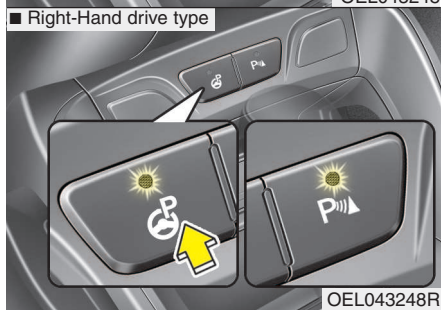


■ Left-Hand drive type



OEL043248

■ Right-Hand drive type



OEL043248R

### 1. Smart parking assist system select

Select the smart parking assist system by pushing the button. Instruction display of instrument cluster is displayed and the indicator on button of this system and front/rear parking assist system button are illuminated.

During operating system, warning sound is operated when objects are detected.

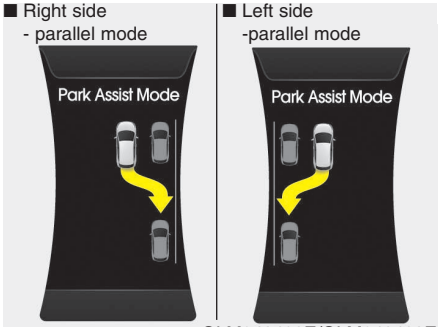
To turn off this system, push the button ( ) of system choice over 2 seconds.

After engine is off, if engine is turned on, this system is on position of turning off.

If needed, push this button.

■ Right side - parallel mode

■ Left side -parallel mode




OLM043428E/OLM043429E

### 2. Parking mode select

With applying the brake shift the transaxle to N or D and select the desired parking mode by pushing the button ( ).

When system is selected, it is automatically selected right side - parallel mode.

If you push the switch continuously, the left side-parallel mode is selected. If you push again, you can get out the smart parking assist system mode.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:34 AM Page 93



■ Right side
- parallel mode




■ Left side
-parallel mode




OLM043430E/OLM043431E

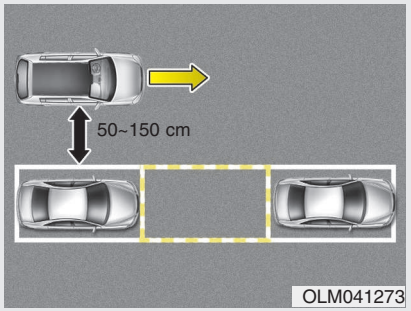
### 3. Parking space search

As pictures, keep distance between parked vehicles in 0.5-1.5m constantly.
Drive slowly to desired parking space. The parking space is searched from side sensor automatically. If the speed is over 30km/h, notice the warning message to driver. If the speed is over 40km/h, the system turns off.
When there are a lot of vehicles near vehicle, turn on the hazard warning flasher to let other vehicles not be close.
If parking space is narrow, drive slowly to desired parking space.
However, this step searches for a parking space if your vehicle has enough space to move except for parking space. If satisfied, this system searches for parking space.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***While driving the vehicle with searching for the parking space, it is impossible to search for the parking space if any of following occurs:***
  - ***(1) If there is no parked vehicle***
  - ***(2) If there is empty space after your vehicle passed***
  - ***(3) If there is empty space in front of your vehicle before passing***
- ***As followings, the smart parking assist system may normally not operate.***
  - ***(1) When the sensors are frozen***
  - ***(2) When the sensors are dirty***
  - ***(3) Heavy snowing or raining***
  - ***(4) By the pillar or objects***
- ***Use the smart parking assist system after confirming the safety securely even if the parking searching is completed.***

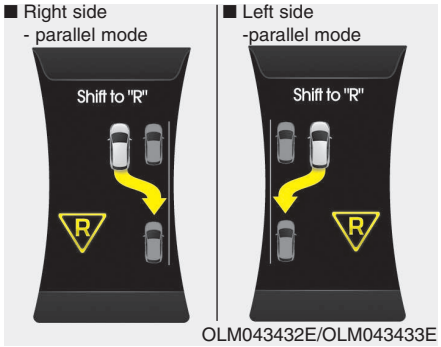
### ⚠ CAUTION - When the parking space is searched




OLM041273

***For parallel parking, when the parking space is searched, keep the 50-150cm distance with parked vehicle and drive slowly.***

***If the vehicle closes to the parked vehicle under 50cm or over 150cm, the parking space is not exactly detected.***




OLM043432E/OLM043433E

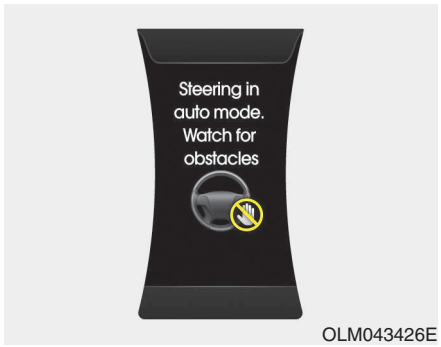
### 4. Searching completion

While driving slowly, when the parking space searching is completed, the parking space searching completion is indicated in the cluster with buzzer beeps sound. After stop, shift the transaxle to R.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Drive slowly with applying to brake.***
- ***If not enough parking space is detected, the system may be cancelled in support step of steering wheel control.***

  ***Such as not enough parking space, do not park the vehicle.***




OLM043426E

### 5. Steering wheel control support (Rear Parking type)

When the transaxle is shifted to R, the steering wheel is automatically controlled with the notice in cluster.

In this time, if you put your hands to space of steering wheel, it may result in damage to your hands. So do not left your hands to space of steering wheel.

**If you crab the steering wheel firmly not to support parking, the system turns off.**

However, the driver needs to confirm the surround situation before releasing the brake pedal. Drive slowly always.

**When the brake pedal is released, if the vehicle does not move backward, depress the accelerator pedal carefully after checking the surround objects.**

**However, do not pass 7km/h. If necessary, depress the brake pedal and stop. If the speed of vehicle is over 7km/h, the system turns off.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:35 AM Page 95



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***If you go forward or backward without notice like warning message, the parking state may be not good.***

  ***However, if the 3rd warning sound (continuous sound) occurs, drive the vehicle reverse direction slowly after confirming surrounding objects.***
- ***When parking the vehicle, carefully go forward or backward with depressing the brake pedal after completing steering wheel control support.***
- ***If the speed of vehicle is high, the crash accident may occur.***
- ***While parking the vehicle, if the 3rd warning sound (continuous sound) occurs, it means the vehicle is close to objects. Check the surround objects by yourself.***

### System cancellation while parking

Push the smart parking assist system or turn the steering wheel left side or right side.




OLM043434E/OLM043435E

OLM043422E

### 5-1. Gear shifting while controlling the steering wheel

By parking circumstance, if the buzzer beep sounds with warning messages, shift the transaxle to desired gear on cluster, park the vehicle with using brake.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:35 AM Page 96



Be sure to check the front and rear view before releasing the brake pedal. Stop the vehicle when the speed of your vehicle is high and stop immediately by depressing the brake pedal if necessary.

**⚠ WARNING**

**While parking the vehicle, unexpected vehicles or pedestrians may be close to vehicle, be careful for the accident.**




OLM043427E

### 6. Smart parking assist system completion

Even if the vehicle is parked by smart parking assist system, the driver needs to control the brake pedal by himself.

According to message on cluster, finish the parking the vehicle. By surrounding circumstance, finish the parking the vehicle with using the steering wheel.

After finishing the smart parking assist system, check the front and rear distance from front and rear vehicle and control your vehicle.




OLM043425E/OLM043423E

### Additional introductions

When the smart parking assist system operated, the message may indicate on cluster regardless information sequence. Other messages may indicate on cluster by circumstance.

When the system operated, control the vehicle with the notice. Regarding safety action, the driver needs to be careful.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:35 AM Page 97



### ⚠ CAUTION

***Park the vehicle by yourself as following because the system will be cancelled;***

1. ***While searching for the parking space***
   - ***When the ABS/ESP is operated***
   - ***When the vehicle speed is over 40km/h***
   - ***When you click the smart parking assist system button***
     ***(The front and rear parking assist system is normally operated)***
   - ***When you shift the transaxle to R***
2. ***While controlling the steering wheel***
   - ***When the ABS/ESP is operated***
   - ***When the vehicle speed is over 7km/h***
   - ***When you click the smart parking assist system button***
     ***(The front and rear parking assist system is normally operated.)***
   - ***When you shift the transaxle to D before entering the parking space***
   - ***When you grab the steering strongly***



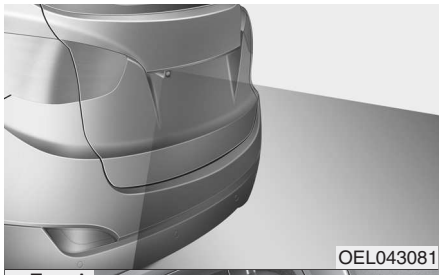

OLM043424E

### System malfunction warning

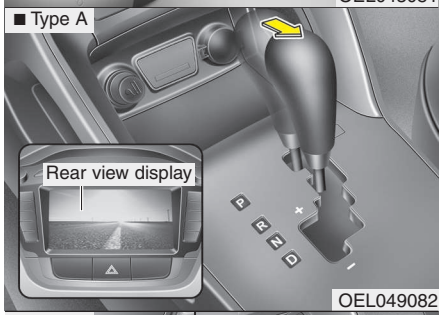
When problems occur in the smart parking assist system, if you turn on the system, the warning message occurs and the indicator on button. The buzzer beep sounds 3 times.

In this time, do not use the smart parking assist system. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

## REARVIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)

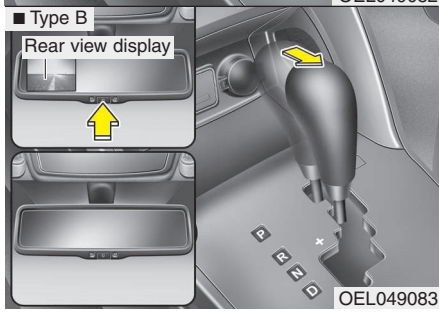

OEL043081

■ Type A



OEL049082

■ Type B



OEL049083

The rearview camera will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.
This system is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the rearview display mirror while backing-up.

Type B
The rearview camera may be turned off by pressing the ON/OFF button when the rearview camera is activated.
To turn the camera on again, press the ON/OFF button again when the ignition switch is on and the shift lever in R (Reverse). Also, the camera will turn on automatically whenever the ignition switch is turned off and on again.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **This system is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirror and the area behind the vehicle before and while backing up because there is a dead zone that can't see through the camera.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera may not operate normally.**

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHER


OLM049084

The hazard warning flasher should be used whenever you find it necessary to stop the car in a hazardous location. When you must make such an emergency stop, always pull off the road as far as possible.

The hazard warning lights are turned on by pushing in the hazard switch. This causes all turn signal lights to blink. The hazard warning lights will operate even though the key is not in the ignition switch.

To turn the hazard warning lights off, push the switch a second time.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:35 AM Page 99



## LIGHTING

### Battery saver function

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lights when the driver removes the ignition key and opens the driver- side door.
- With this feature, the parking lights will be turned off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

  If necessary, to keep the lights on when the ignition key is removed, perform the following :

  1) Open the driver-side door.
  2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

### Headlight escort function (if equipped)

The headlights (and/or taillights) remain on for approximately 5 minutes after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter (or smart key) twice or turning off the light switch from the headlight or Auto light position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate and the headlight escort function does not turn off automatically. Therefore, it causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamp before getting out of the vehicle.***

### Headlight welcome function (if equipped)

When the headlight switch is in the ON or AUTO position and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, if you press the door unlock button on the transmitter (or smart key), the headlights will come on for about 15 seconds.

If the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the function can only operate at night.

At this time, if you press the door unlock button again or door lock button on the transmitter (or smart key), the headlights will turn off immediately.




OBK049045N

## Lighting control

The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

(1) OFF position
(2) Parking light position
(3) Headlight position
(4) Auto light position (if equipped)



OBK049046N

***Parking light position ( )***

When the light switch is in the parking light position, the tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.



OBK049047N

***Headlight position ( )***

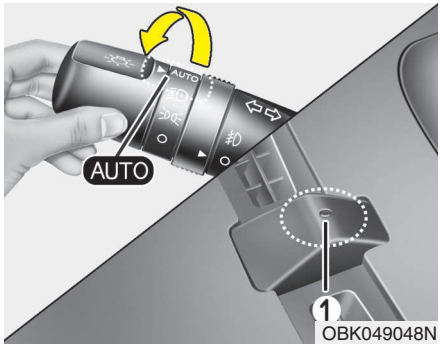
When the light switch is in the headlight position the head, tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:35 AM Page 101





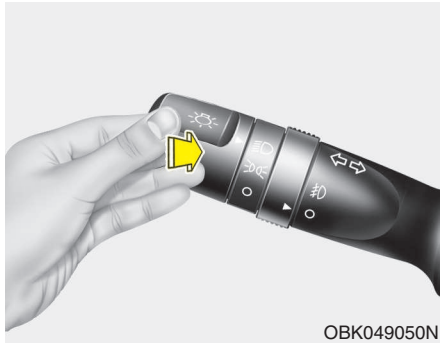
OBK049048N

***Auto light position (if equipped)***

When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Never place anything over the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel, this will ensure better auto-light system control.***
- ***Don't clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.***
- ***If your vehicle has window tint or other types of coating on the front windshield, the Auto light system may not work properly.***


OBK049050N

### High - beam operation

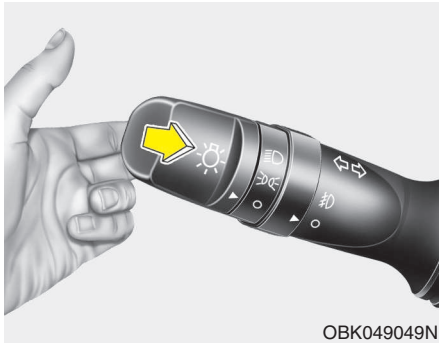
To turn on the high beam headlights, push the lever away from you. Pull it back for low beams.

The high-beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time while the engine is not running.

**⚠ WARNING**

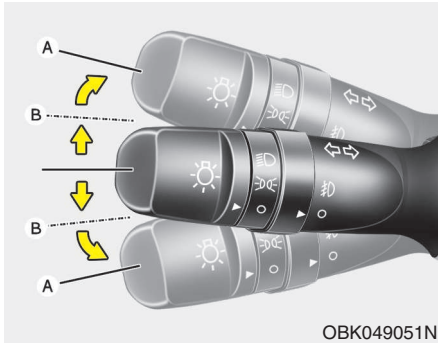
**Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.**



OBK049049N

***Flashing headlights***

To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low-beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.




OBK049051N

## Turn signals and lane change signals

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). Green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating.

They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

***One-touch lane change function (if equipped)***

To activate an one-touch lane change function, move the turn signal lever slightly and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3 times.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.**




OBK049052N

### Front fog light (if equipped)

Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc. The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned on after the parklight is turned on.

To turn off the fog lights, turn the fog light switch (1) to the OFF position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.***

■ Type A




OAM049046L

■ Type B




OED040806

### Rear fog light (if equipped)

To turn the rear fog lights on, turn the headlight switch to the headlight on position and turn the rear fog light switch (1) to the on position.

The rear fog lights turn on when the rear fog light switch is turned on after the front fog light switch (if equipped) is turned on and the headlight switch is in the park-light position.

To turn the rear fog lights off, turn the rear fog light switch to the on position again or turn the headlight switch off or front fog light switch off.

**✻ NOTICE**

**To turn on the rear fog light switch, the ignition switch must be in the ON position.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:36 AM Page 104

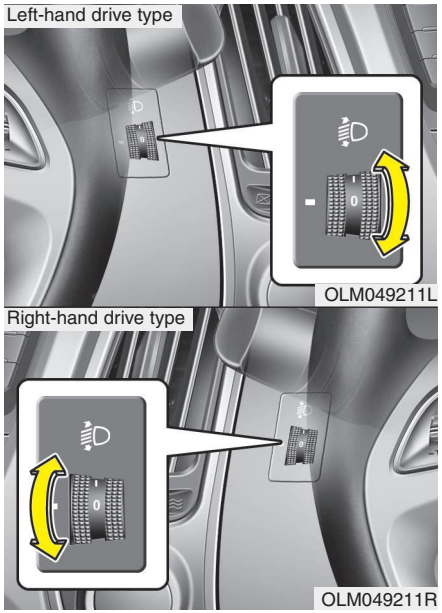


### Daytime running light (if equipped)

Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will make the headlights turn OFF when:

1. The parklight switch is ON.
2. Engine stops.




### Headlight leveling device (if equipped)

To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of the passengers and the loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam leveling switch.

The higher the number of the switch position, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper leveling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are the examples of proper switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

| Loading condition | Switch position |
|---|---|
| Driver only | 0 |
| Driver + Front passenger | 0 |
| Full passengers (including driver) | 1 |
| Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading | 2 |
| Driver + Maximum permissible loading | 3 |

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:36 AM Page 105



***Automatic type***

It automatically adjusts the headlight beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage area.

And it offers proper headlight beam under various conditions.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If it does not work properly even though your car is inclined backward according to passenger's posture, or the headlight beam is irradiated to the high or low position, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.**

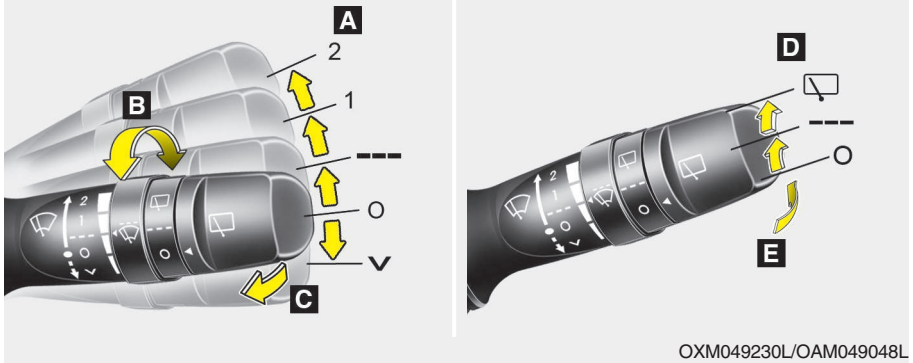
EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:36 AM Page 106



## WIPERS AND WASHERS

### Windshield wiper/washer

### Rear window wiper/washer




OXM049230L/OAM049048L

**A : Wiper speed control (front)**
- · ⩛ – Single wipe
- · O – Off
- · --- – Intermittent wipe
  AUTO* – Auto control wipe
- · 1 – Low wiper speed
- · 2 – High wiper speed

**B : Intermittent control wipe time adjustment**

**C : Wash with brief wipes (front)**

**D : Rear wiper/washer control**
- · ⩛ – Continuous wipe
- · --- – Intermittent wipe (if equipped)
- · O – Off

**E : Wash with brief wipes* (rear)**

* : if equipped

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:36 AM Page 107



### Windshield wipers

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

∨ : For a single wiping cycle, move the lever to this position and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

O : Wiper is not in operation

--- : Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

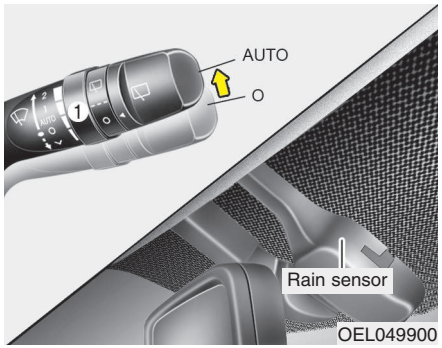
1 : Normal wiper speed

2 : Fast wiper speed

### ✻ NOTICE

**If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windshield, defrost the windshield for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windshield wipers to ensure proper operation.**

**If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.**




***Auto control (if equipped)***

The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windshield glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (1).

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the ignition switch is ON, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to OFF position when the wiper is not in use.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***When the ignition switch is ON and the windshield wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode, use caution in the following situations to avoid any injury to the hands or other parts of the body:***

- ***Do not touch the upper end of the windshield glass facing the rain sensor.***
- ***Do not wipe the upper end of the windshield glass with a damp or wet cloth.***
- ***Do not put pressure on the windshield glass.***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:36 AM Page 108



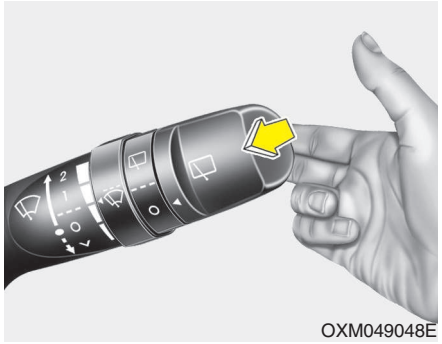
**⚠ CAUTION**

***When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF position to stop the auto wiper operation.***

***The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode while washing the vehicle.***

***Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windshield glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.***

***When starting the vehicle in winter, set the wiper switch in the OFF position. Otherwise, wipers may operate and ice may damage the windshield wiper blades. Always remove all snow and ice and defrost the windshield properly prior to operating the windshield wipers.***



OXM049048E

### Windshield washers

In the OFF position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windshield is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windshield washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the passenger side.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windshield with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windshield and obscure your vision.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***

***(Continued)***

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:36 AM Page 109



***(Continued)***

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter***

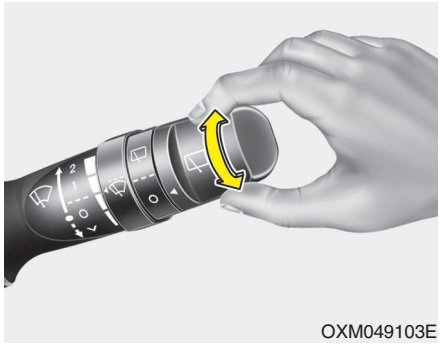
***Headlight washer (if equipped)***

If your vehicle is equipped with the headlight washer it will operate at the same time when you operate the windshield washer. It will operate when the headlight low beam is turned on and the ignition switch or engine start/stop button is in the ON position.

The washer fluid will be sprayed on to the headlights.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **Check the headlight washers periodically to confirm that the washer fluid is being sprayed properly onto the headlight lenses.**
- **The headlight washer can be operated 15 minutes after being operated last time.**



OXM049103E

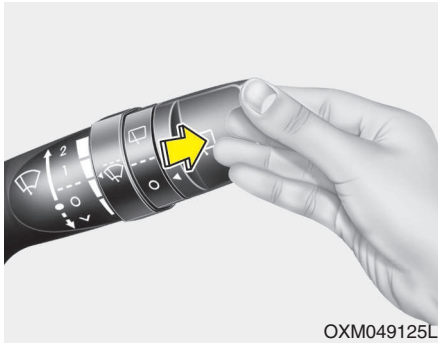
### Rear window wiper and washer switch

The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever. Turn the switch to the desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.

- - Normal wiper operation

--- - Intermittent wiper operation (if equipped)

O - Wiper is not in operation



OXM049125L

Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1~3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever. (if equipped)

## INTERIOR LIGHT

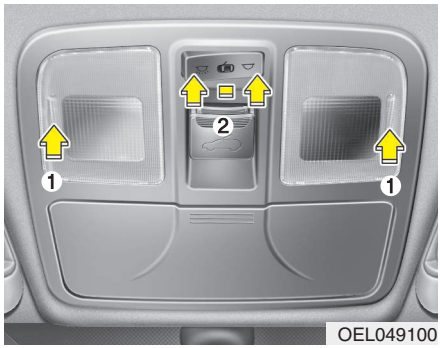
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.***

***It may cause battery discharge.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.**




### Map lamp (if equipped)

Push the lens (1) to turn the map lamp on or off.

- : The light (with room lamp) stays on at all times.
- : The light (with room lamp) comes on when any door (except tailgate) is opened regardless of the ignition switch position. When doors (except tailgate) are unlocked by the transmitter (or smart key), the light (with room lamp) comes on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door (except tailgate) is not opened.

  Also, the light (with room lamp) goes out gradually after approximately 30 seconds if the door (except tailgate) is closed. However, if the ignition switch is ON or all doors (except tailgate) are locked, the light will turn off immediately.

  If a door (except tailgate) is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC or LOCK position, the light (with room lamp) stays on for about 20 minutes. However, if a door (except tailgate) is opened with the ignition switch in the ON position, the light (with room lamp) stays on continuously.
- : The lights turn off even if a door is opened.

❈ When the lamp is turned ON by pressing the lens (1), the lamp does not turn off even if the switch (2) is in the OFF position.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:36 AM Page 111




OEL049101

### Room lamp

Press the button to turn the light on or off.

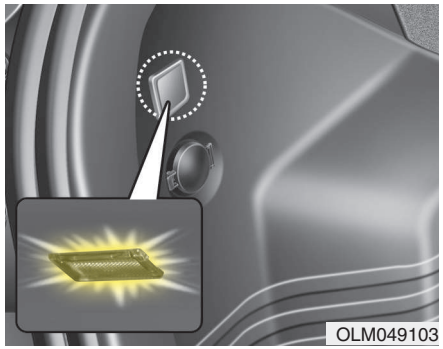

OLM049105

### Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

- : The lamp will turn on if this button is pressed.
- ◯ : The lamp will turn off if this button is pressed.

**⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)**

- ***Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.***
- ***Turn off the lamp before return the sunvisor to its original position.***

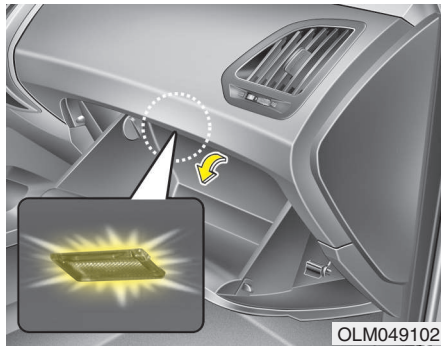

OLM049103

### Luggage room lamp (if equipped)

The luggage room lamp comes on when the trunk lid is opened.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:36 AM Page 112






**Glove box lamp (if equipped)**

The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

The parking lights or headlights must be ON for the glove box lamp to function.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:36 AM Page 113



## DEFROSTER

### ⚠ CAUTION

***To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.***

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you want to defrost and defog on the front windshield, refer to "Windshield Defrosting and Defogging" in this section.**

■ Type A



OLM049109

■ Type B



OLM049110

### Rear window defroster

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, while engine is running.

To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the center facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.

If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

***Outside mirror defroster (if equipped)***

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.




***Wiper deicer (if equipped)***

**Without smart key**

The engine must be running to enable this feature. To activate the front wiper deicer, press the front wiper deicer button. The indicator on the button illuminates when the deicer is ON.

The front wiper deicer automatically turns off after 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the deicer, press the front wiper deicer button again.

**With smart key**

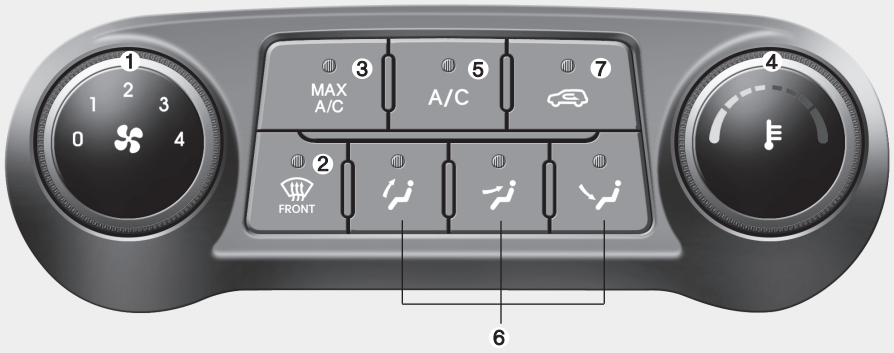
If your vehicle is equipped with the wiper deicer, it will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:37 AM Page 115

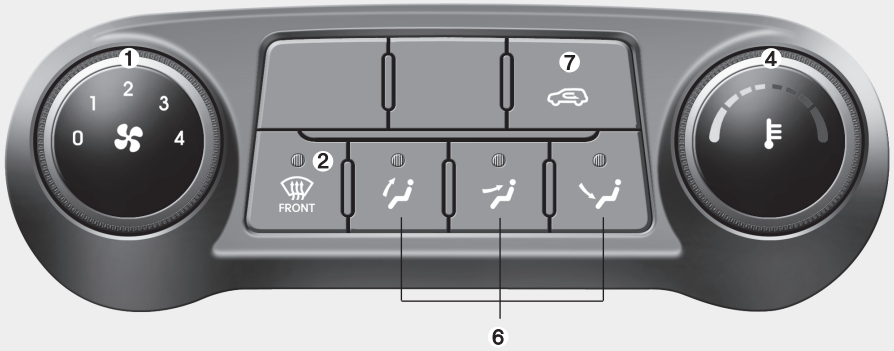


## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ **Type A**




■ **Type B**




1. Fan speed control knob
2. MAX defroster button (Front windshield defroster)
3. MAX A/C selection button (if equipped)
4. Temperature control knob
5. Air conditioning button (if equipped)
6. Mode selection button
7. Air intake control button

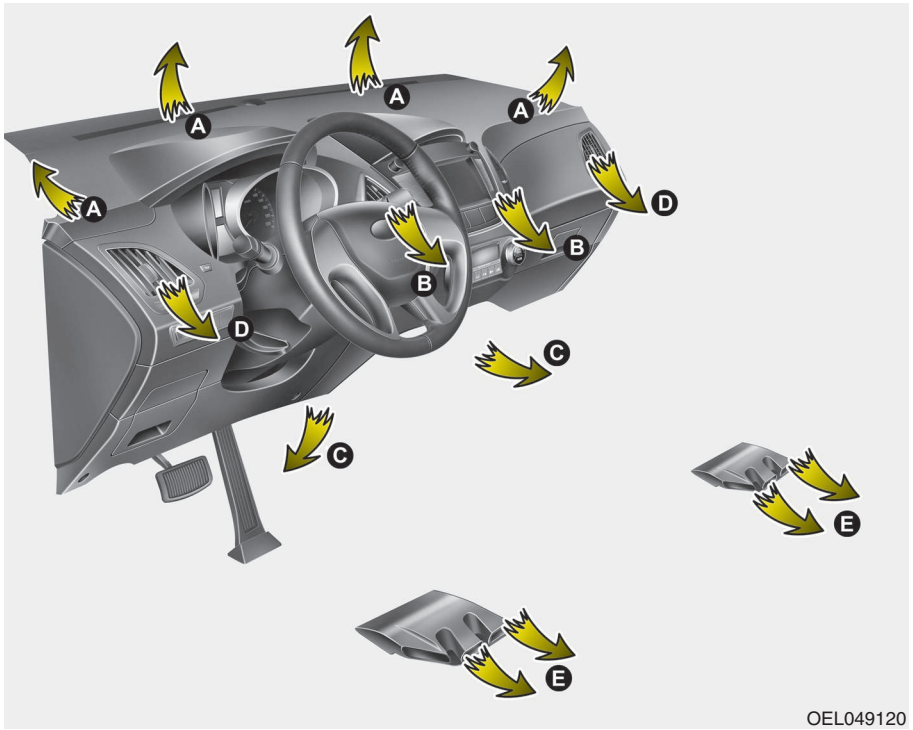
OEL049111/OEL049111U

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:37 AM Page 116



### Heating and air conditioning

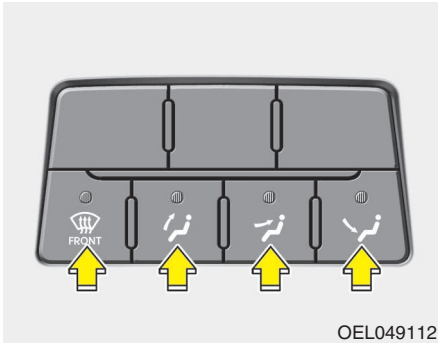
1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.



OEL049120

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:37 AM Page 117






OEL049112

***Mode selection***

The mode selection buttons controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

If you push the button once, the corresponding switch will turn on, and if you push the button again, the switch will turn off.

**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defroster.

**Face-Level (B, D)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Floor-Level (C, E, A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield.

Also you may select 2~3 modes at the same time for desired air flow.

- face ( ) + floor ( ) mode
- face ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- face ( ) + floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode



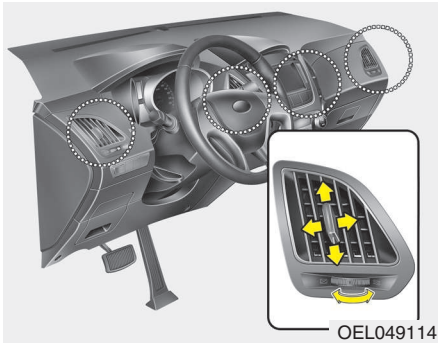

OEL049113

**MAX A/C-Level (B, D) (if equipped)**

The MAX A/C mode is used to cool the inside of the vehicle faster.

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.

In this mode, the air conditioning and the recirculated air position will be selected automatically.


OEL049114

**Instrument panel vents**

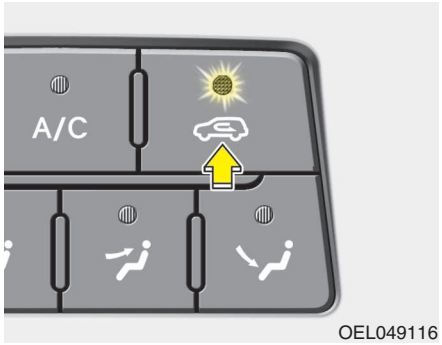
The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.


OEL049115

***Temperature control***

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the air temperature in the passenger compartment, turn the knob to the right position for warm and hot air or left position for cooler air.



OEL049116

***Air intake control***

The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

**Recirculated air position**



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

**Outside (fresh) air position**



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.**
**In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.**




OEL049117

***Fan speed control***

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.
The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the fan speed, turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.
Setting the fan speed control knob to the “0” position turns off the fan.




OYF043118A

***To turn off the blowers***

To turn off the blowers, turn the fan speed control knob to the "0" position.




OEL049118

***Air conditioning (if equipped)***

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

## System operation

***Ventilation***

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

***Heating***

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:37 AM Page 121



**Operation Tips**

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

***Air conditioning (if equipped)***

HYUNDAI Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly R-134a refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

- When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the extreme left position (press the MAX A/C position selection button (if equipped)) then set the fan speed control to the highest speed.

**✻ NOTICE**

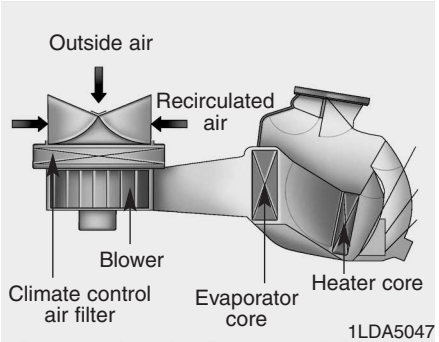
- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:37 AM Page 122



**Air conditioning system operation tips**

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.




## Climate control air filter (if equipped)

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:37 AM Page 123



### ✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  **If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.**
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

### Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**It is important when servicing the air conditioning system that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used. Otherwise, damage to the compressor and abnormal system operation may occur.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Improper service may cause serious injury to the person performing the service. For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:37 AM Page 124

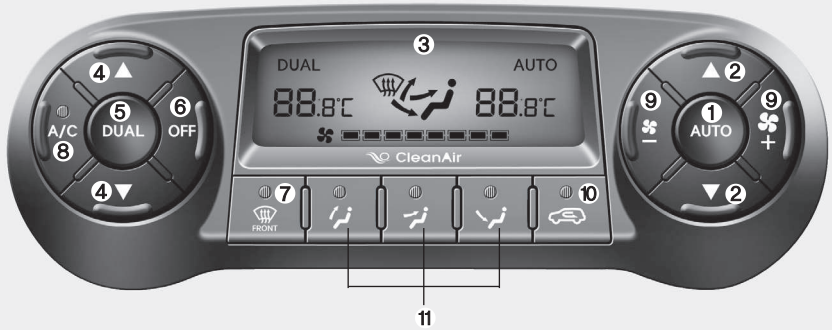


## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ **Type A**




■ **Type B**



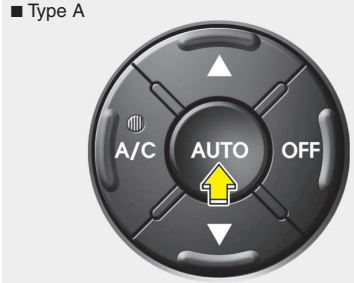

1. AUTO (automatic control) button
2. Driver's temperature control button
3. A/C display
4. Passenger's temperature control button
5. Dual temperature control selection button
6. OFF button
7. Front windshield defroster button
8. Air conditioning button*
9. Fan speed control button
10. Air intake control button
11. Mode selection button

OEL049121/OEL049121R

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:38 AM Page 125

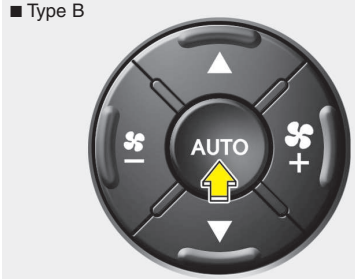


■ Type A




OEL049122

■ Type B




OEL049122R

**Automatic heating and air conditioning**

1. Press the AUTO button.

The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by setting the temperature.

■ Type A




■ Type B

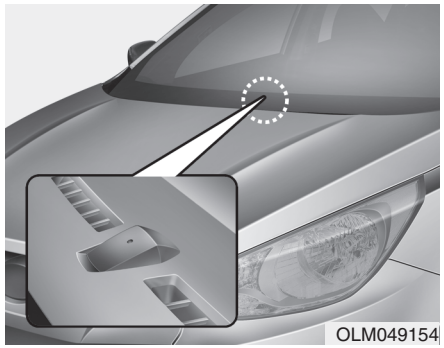



OEL049125-1

2. Set the temperature button to the desired temperature.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **To turn the automatic operation off, select any button of the following:**
  **- Mode selection button**
  **- Front windshield defroster button**
  **- Fan speed control button**
  **The selected function will be controlled manually while other functions operate automatically.**
- **For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C/71°F.**



OLM049154

## ✻ NOTICE

**Never place anything over the sensor located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:38 AM Page 126

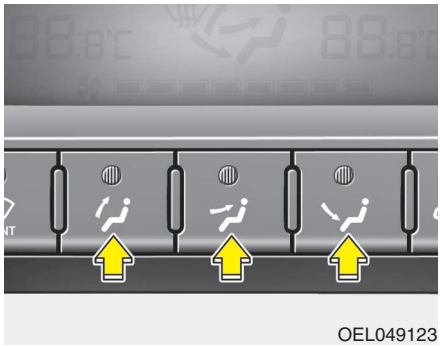


## Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pressing buttons or turning knob(s) other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons or knob(s) selected.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.



OEL049123

***Mode selection***

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Refer to the illustration in the “Manual climate control system”.

If you push the button once, the corresponding switch will turn on, and if you push the button again, the switch will turn off.

**Face-Level (B, D)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Floor-Level (C, E, A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield.

Also you may select 2~3 modes at the same time for desired air flow.

- face ( ) + floor ( ) mode
- face ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- face ( ) + floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:38 AM Page 127





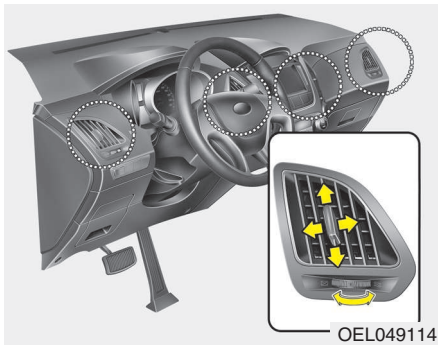
OEL049124

**Maximum (MAX) defrost mode**

When you select the MAX defrost mode, the following system settings will be made automatically;

- the air conditioning system will be turned on.
- the outside(fresh) air position will be selected.
- the fan speed will be set to the high speed.

To turn the MAX defrost mode off, press the mode button or MAX defrost button again or AUTO button.

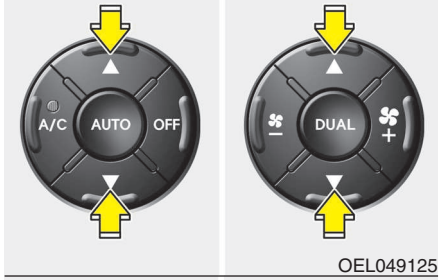

OEL049114

**Instrument panel vents**

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel.

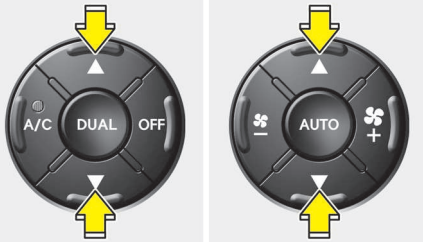
Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

■ Type A



OEL049125

■ Type B



OEL049125R

***Temperature control***

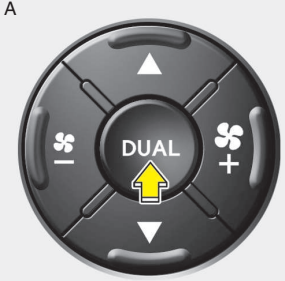
The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by holding the ▲ button.
The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by holding the ▼ button.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:38 AM Page 128



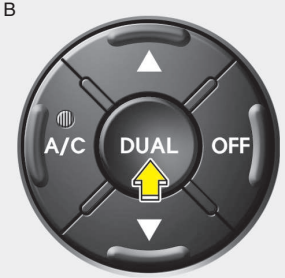
When pressing the button, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C/1°F. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

■ Type A




OEL049126

■ Type B




OEL049126R

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually**

1. Press the DUAL button to operate the driver and passenger side temperature individually. Also, if the passenger side temperature control button is operated, it will automatically change to the DUAL mode as well.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control to adjust the driver side temperature. Operate the passenger side temperature control to adjust the passenger side temperature.

When the driver side temperature is set to the highest (HI) or lowest (Lo) temperature setting, the DUAL mode is deactivated for maximum heating or cooling.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:38 AM Page 129



**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally**

1. Press the DUAL button again to deactivate DUAL mode. The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control button. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

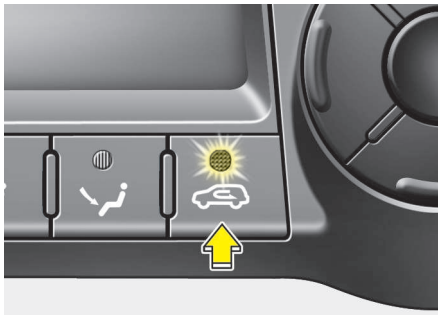
**Temperature conversion (if equipped)**

You can switch the temperature mode between Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

While pressing the OFF button, press the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.



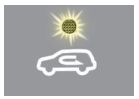
OEL049128

***Air intake control***

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

**Recirculated air position**



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

**Outside (fresh) air position**



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:38 AM Page 130



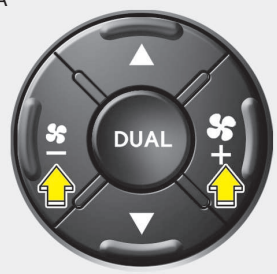
### ✻ NOTICE

**Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.**
**In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.**

### ⚠ WARNING

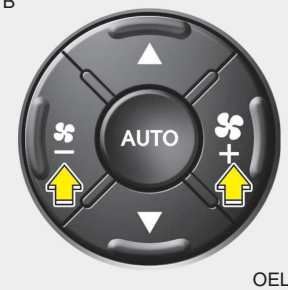
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.**

■ Type A




OEL049129

■ Type B




OEL049129R

***Fan speed control***

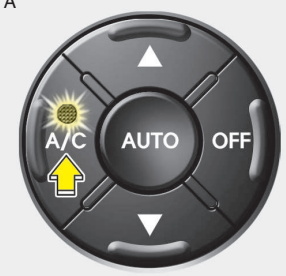
The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by operating the fan speed control button.

To change the fan speed, press (✤+) the switch for higher speed, or push (-✤) the switch for lower speed. To turn the fan speed control off, press the front blower OFF button.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:38 AM Page 131

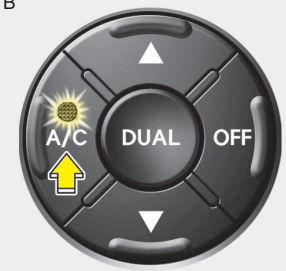


■ Type A




OEL049130

■ Type B



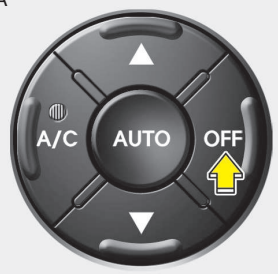

OEL049130R

***Air conditioning***

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

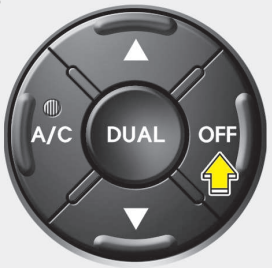
Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

■ Type A




OEL049131

■ Type B




OEL049131R

***OFF mode***

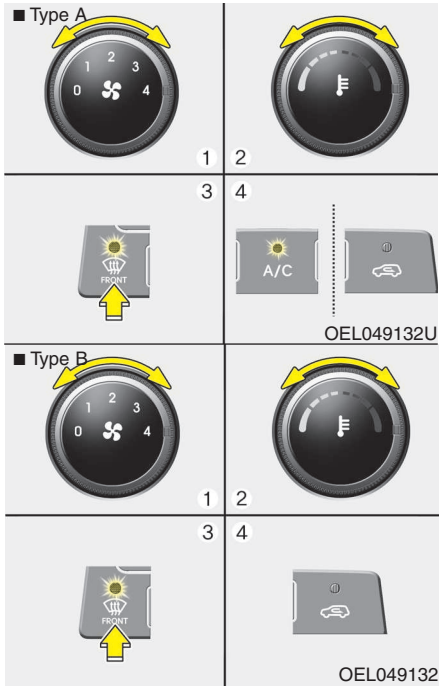
Press the front blower OFF button to turn off the front air climate control system. However, you can still operate the air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position.

## WINDSHIELD DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

**⚠ WARNING - Windshield heating**

**Do not use the position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lower speed.**

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired while defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windshield, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the hood and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield.




### Manual climate control system

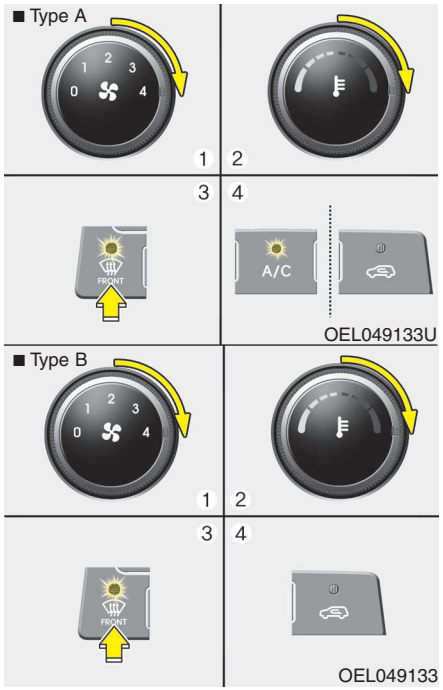
***To defog inside windshield***

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically. If the position is selected, air conditioning (if equipped) will also be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning (if equipped) and/or outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.

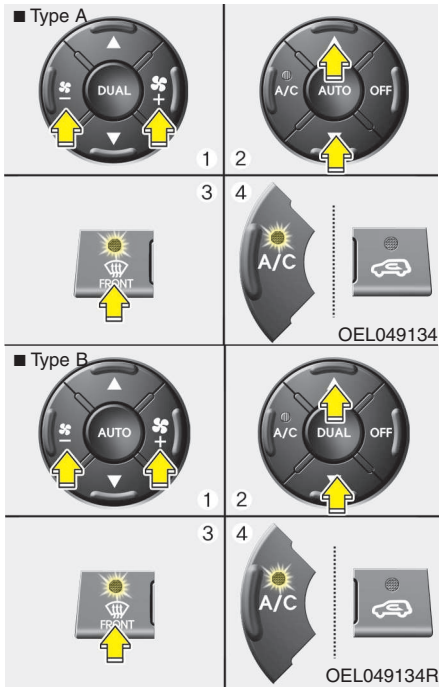
EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:39 AM Page 133






***To defrost outside windshield***

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning (if equipped) will be selected automatically.



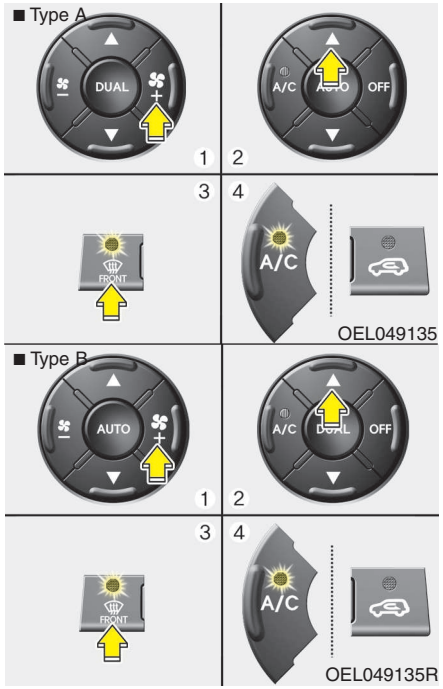

## Automatic climate control system

***To defog inside windshield***

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.

3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning is not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.




***To defrost outside windshield***

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:39 AM Page 135



## STORAGE COMPARTMENT

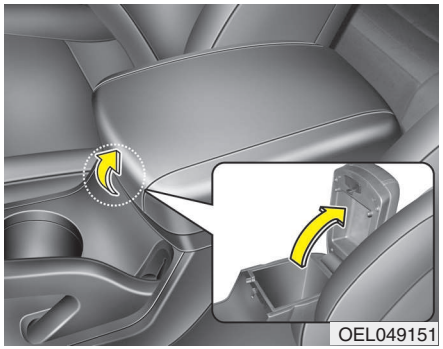
These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.***
- ***Always keep the storage compartment covers closed while driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover can not close securely.***

**⚠ WARNING - Flammable materials**

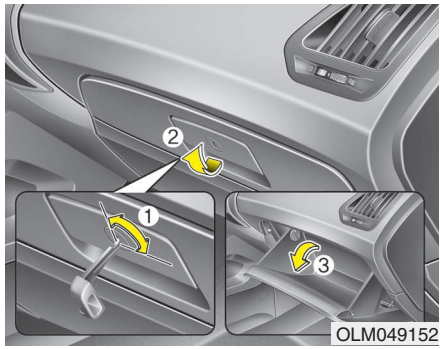
**Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.**


OEL049151

### Center console storage (if equipped)

These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or front passenger.

To open the center console storage pull up the lever.



OLM049152

### Glove box

The glove box can be locked and unlocked with a key. (if equipped)

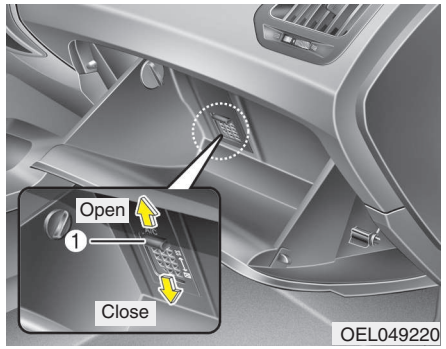
To open the glove box, pull the handle and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not keep food in the glove box for a long time.***



OEL049220

### Cool box (if equipped)

You can keep beverage cans or other items cool using the open/close lever (1) of the vent installed in the glove box.

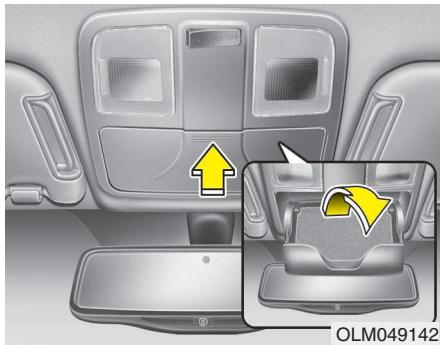
1. Turn on the air conditioning.
2. Slide the open/close lever (1) of the vent installed in the glove box to the open position.
3. When the cool box is not used, slide the lever (1) to its closed position.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If some items in the cool box block the vent, the cooling effectiveness of the cool box is reduced.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not put the perishable food in the cool box because it may not be able to maintain the necessary consistent temperature to keep the food fresh.**


OLM049142

### Sunglass holder

To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out. Push to close.

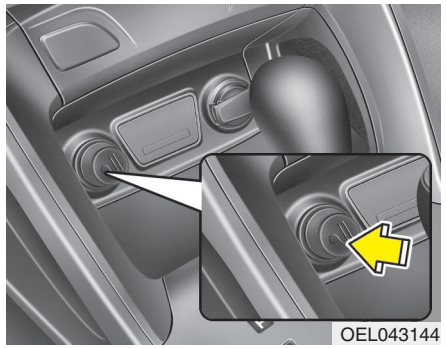
EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:39 AM Page 137



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglasses holder while the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglass holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder to prevent breakage or deformation of glasses. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in holder.**

## INTERIOR FEATURES


OEL043144

### Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

For the cigarette lighter to work, the ignition switch must be in the ACC position or the ON position.

To use the cigarette lighter, push it all the way into its socket. When the element has heated, the lighter will pop out to the "ready" position.

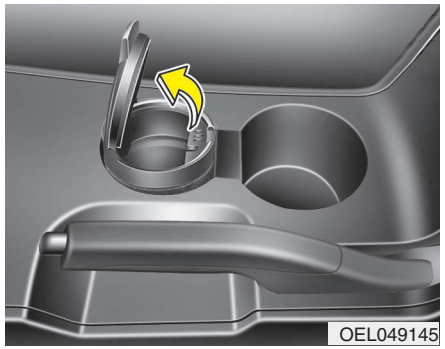
Do not hold the cigarette lighter pressed in. This can damage the heating element and create a fire hazard.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not hold the lighter in after it is already heated because it will overheat.**
- **If the lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The use of plug-in accessories (shavers, hand-held vacuums, and coffee pots, for example) may damage the socket or cause electrical failure.***


OEL049145

### Ashtray (if equipped)

To use the ashtray, open the cover.

To clean or empty the ashtray, pull it out.

**⚠ WARNING - Ashtray use**

- **Do not use the vehicle's ashtrays as waste receptacles.**
- **Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:39 AM Page 139



## Cup holder

**⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids**

- **Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.**

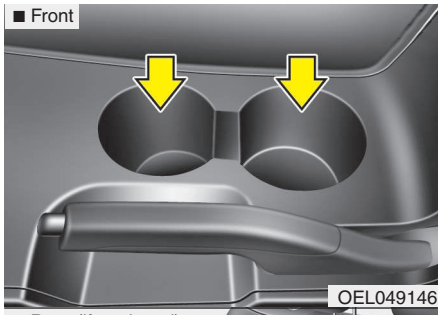
**⚠ WARNING**

**Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a vehicle that is heated up. It may explode.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

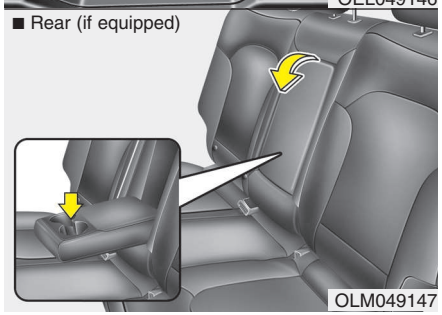
***Do not place uncovered cups in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the liquid spills, electric systems may malfunction.***

■ Front



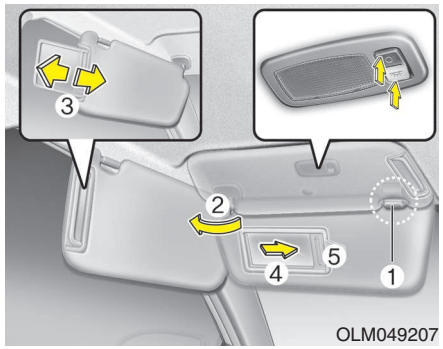
OEL049146

■ Rear (if equipped)



OLM049147

Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.




OLM049207

## Sunvisor

Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).

Adjust the sunvisor extension forward or backward (3). (if equipped)

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (4).

Push the switch to turn the light on or off. (if equipped)

- : The light turns on.
- O : The light turns off.

The ticket holder (5) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket. (if equipped)

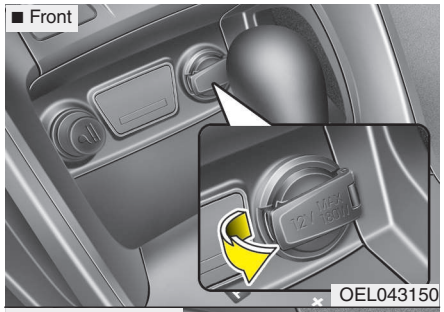
### ⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

- ***Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.***
- ***Always use the sunvisor extension, after swing the sunvisor to the side.***

### ⚠ WARNING

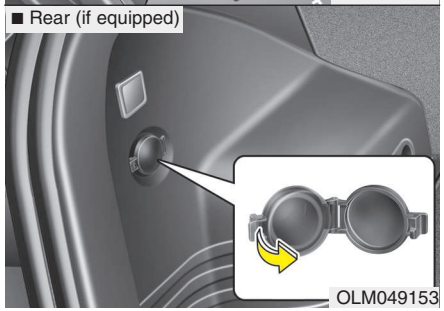
**For your safety, do not obstruct your vision when using the sunvisor.**

■ Front



OEL043150

■ Rear (if equipped)



OLM049153

## Power outlet

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Use power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.***
- ***Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.***
- ***Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.***
- ***Close the cover when not in use.***
- ***Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.***

### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not put a finger or a foreign element (pin, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get an electric shock.**

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:39 AM Page 141






## Digital clock (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the clock while driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.**

Whenever the battery terminals or related fuses are disconnected, you must reset the time.

When the ignition switch is in the ACC or ON position, the clock buttons operate as follows:

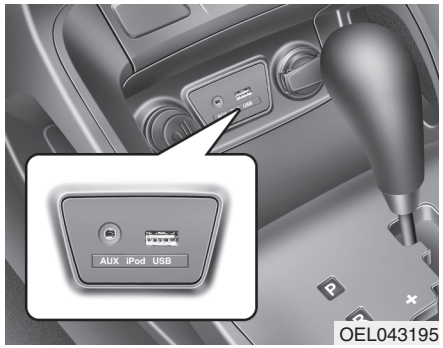
### *Setup the clock*

**With audio off**

1. Press the [SETUP CLOCK] button until the clock of the display blinks.
2. Set the clock by turning the knob(1) and press it.

**With audio on**

1. Press the [SETUP CLOCK] button.
2. Select the [CLOCK] mode by turning the knob(1) and press it.
3. Set the clock by turning the knob(1) and press it.



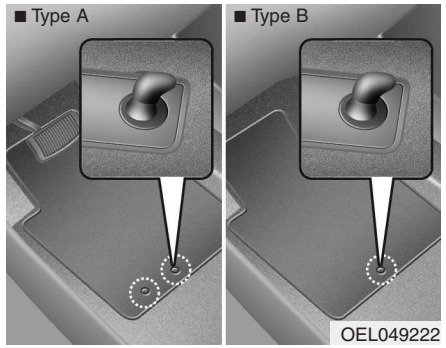

## Aux, USB and iPod® (if equipped)

If your vehicle has an aux and/or USB(universal serial bus) port, you can use an aux port to connect audio devices and an USB port to plug in an USB.

**✻ NOTICE**

**When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.**

✻ iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.




### Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)

When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.**

- **Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.**
- **Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**
- **Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.**

**IMPORTANT – Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, HYUNDAI recommends that only the HYUNDAI floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.**




### Luggage net (holder) (if equipped)

To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the four holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 4A.QXP 7/11/2013 11:40 AM Page 143

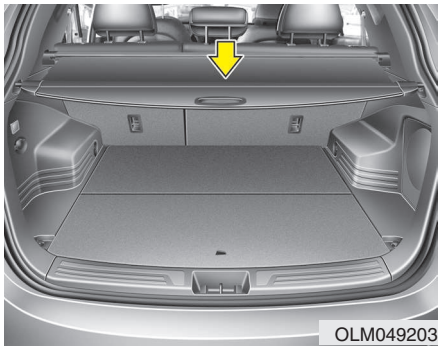


**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.***

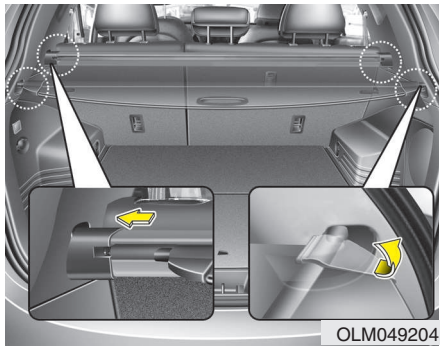
**⚠ WARNING**

**To avoid eye injury, DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.**

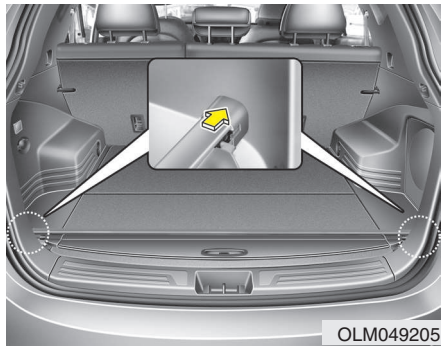

OLM049203

### Cargo security screen (if equipped)

Use the cargo security screen to hide items stored in the cargo area.


OLM049204

To use the cargo security screen, pull the handle backward and insert the edges into the slots.




When not in use, place the cargo security screen on the lower portion of the cargo area. (if equipped)

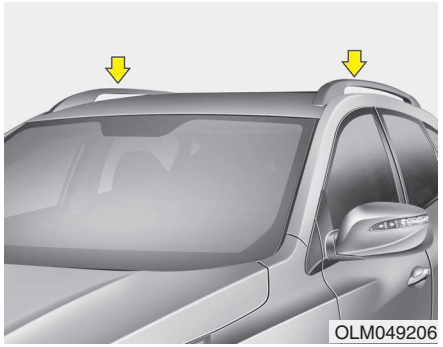
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as far forward as possible.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Since the cargo security screen may be damaged or malformed, do not put the luggage on it when it is used.***

## EXTERIOR FEATURES




### Roof rack (if equipped)

If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.***
- ***When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.***

### ⚠ WARNING

- **The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack. Distribute the load as evenly as possible onto the roof rack and secure the load firmly.**

| | |
|---|---|
| ROOF RACK | 100 kg (220 lbs.) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED |

**Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

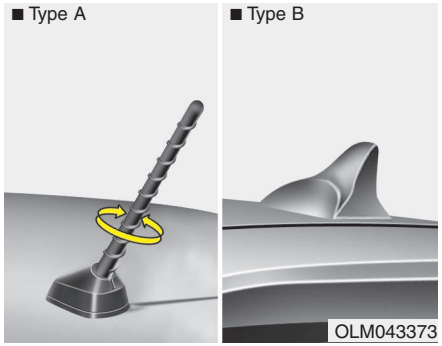
- **The vehicle center of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt maneuvers or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.**
- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.**
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo while driving, check frequently before or while driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.**

## AUDIO SYSTEM

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If you install an aftermarket HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.**
- **Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration.**

■ Type A ■ Type B



OLM043373

### Antenna

***Roof antenna***

Your car uses a roof antenna to receive both AM and FM broadcast signals. This antenna is a removable type. To remove the antenna, turn it counterclockwise. To install the antenna, turn it clockwise.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Before entering a place with a low height clearance or a car wash, remove the antenna by rotating it counterclockwise. If not, the antenna may be damaged.***
- ***When reinstalling your antenna, it is important that it is fully tightened and adjusted to the upright position to ensure proper reception. But it could be folded or removed when parking the vehicle or when loading cargo on the roof rack.***
- ***When cargo is loaded on the roof rack, do not place the cargo near the antenna pole to ensure proper reception.***

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 147





OLM049194

## Audio remote control (if equipped)

The steering wheel audio remote control button is installed to promote safe driving.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not operate audio remote control buttons simultaneously.***

***VOL (+ / -) (1)***

- Press the up button (+) to increase volume.
- Press the down button (-) to decease volume.

***SEEK ( ∧ / ∨ ) (2)***

If the SEEK button is pressed for 0.8 second or more, it will work as follows in each mode.

**RADIO mode**

It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button.

**CDP mode**

It will function as the FF/REW button.

**CDC mode**

It will function as the DISC UP/DOWN button.

If the SEEK button is pressed for less than 0.8 second, it will work as follows in each mode.

**RADIO mode**

It will function as the PRESET STATION select buttons.

**CDP mode**

It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.

**CDC mode**

It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.

Detailed information for audio control buttons is described in the following pages in this section.

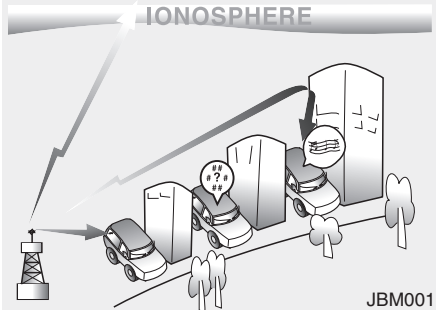
***MODE (3)***

Press the button to select Radio or CD (compact disc).

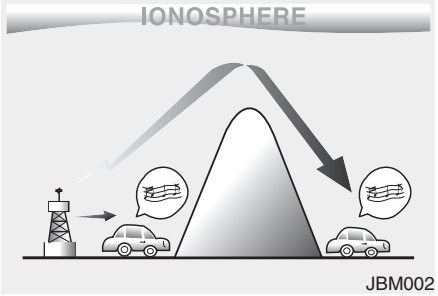
***MUTE (4)***

- Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

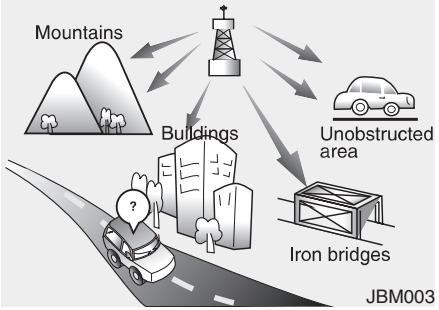
**FM reception**




**AM reception**




**FM radio station**




## How vehicle audio works

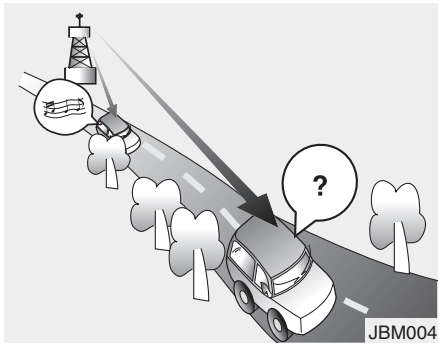
AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear.

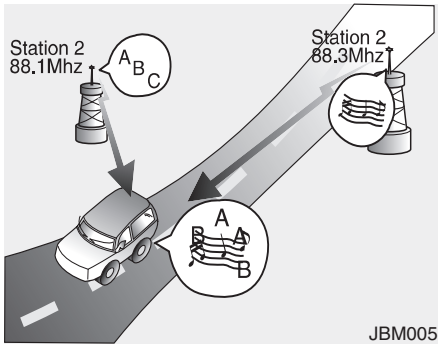
This can be due to factors, such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:




- Fading - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.




- Station Swapping - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

### *Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio*

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio system. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the cellular phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When using a communication system such as a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use a cellular phone while driving. Stop at a safe location to use a cellular phone.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 150



### Caring for disc

- If the temperature inside the car is too high, open the car windows to ventilate before using the system.
- It is illegal to copy and use MP3/WMA files without permission. Use CDs that are created only by lawful means.
- Do not apply volatile agents, such as benzene and thinner, normal cleaners and magnetic sprays made for analogue disc onto CDs.
- To prevent the disc surface from getting damaged, hold CDs by the edges or the center hole only.
- Clean the disc surface with a piece of soft cloth before playback (wipe it from the center to the outside edge).
- Do not damage the disc surface or attach pieces of sticky tape or paper.
- Make certain only CDs are inserted into the CD player (Do not insert more than one CD at a time).
- Keep CDs in their cases after use to protect them from scratches or dirt.
- Depending on the type of CD-R/CD-RW CDs, certain CDs may not operate normally according to manufacturing companies or making and recording methods. In such circumstances, continued use may cause malfunctions to your audio system.

### ✻ NOTICE - Playing an Incompatible Copy Protected Audio CD

**Some copy protected CDs, which do not comply with international audio CD standards (Red Book), may not play on your car audio. Please note that inabilities to properly play a copy protected CD may indicate that the CD is defective, not the CD player.**

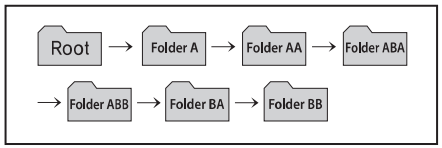
### ✻ NOTICE

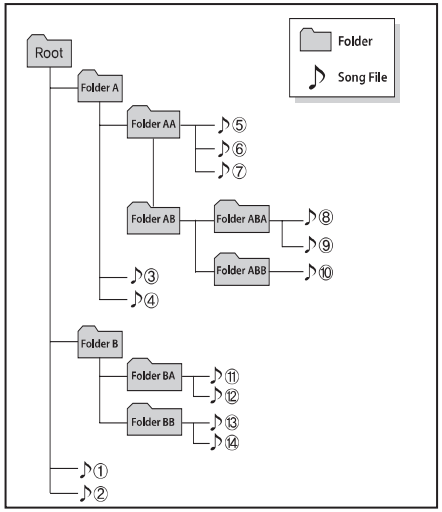
**Order of playing files (folders) :**

**1. Song playing order : ① to ⑭ sequentially.**

**2. Folder playing order :**

**❋ If no song file is contained in the folder, that folder is not displayed.**



EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 151



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not stare at the screen while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.**
- **Using the phone while driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.**
- **Heed caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents(fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.**
- **Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.**
- **Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Use the system with the vehicle ignition turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned off could result in battery discharge.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 152



### ⚠ CAUTION

- *Operating the device while driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.*
- *Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.*
- *Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)*

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- *Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.*
- *Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.*
- *When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color/quality deterioration*

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- *Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.*
- *In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service center.*
- *Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.*
- *Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil from contacting the dashboard because they may cause damage or discoloration.*

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 153



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE USB DEVICE

- **To use an external USB device, make sure the device is not connected when starting up the vehicle. Connect the device after starting up.**
- **If you start the engine when the USB device is connected, it may damage the USB device. (USB flashdrives are very sensitive to electric shock.)**
- **If the engine is started up or turned off while the external USB device is connected, the external USB device may not work.**
- **The System may not play inauthentic MP3 or WMA files.**
  1) **It can only play MP3 files with the compression rate between 8Kbps ~ 320Kbps.**
  2) **It can only play WMA music files with the compression rate between 8Kbps ~ 320Kbps.**
- **Take precautions for static electricity when connecting or disconnecting the external USB device.**
- **An encrypted MP3 PLAYER is not recognizable.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Depending on the condition of the external USB device, the connected external USB device can be unrecognizable.**
- **When the formatted byte/sector setting of External USB device is not either 512BYTE or 2048BYTE, then the device will not be recognized.**
- **Use only a USB device formatted to FAT 12/16/32.**
- **USB devices without USB I/F authentication may not be recognizable.**
- **Make sure the USB connection terminal does not come in contact with the human body or other objects.**
- **If you repeatedly connect or disconnect the USB device in a short period of time, it may break the device.**
- **You may hear a strange noise when connecting or disconnecting a USB device.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If you disconnect the external USB device during playback in USB mode, the external USB device can be damaged or may malfunction. Therefore, disconnect the external USB device when the audio is turned off or in another mode. (e.g, Radio, CD)**
- **Depending on the type and capacity of the external USB device or the type of the files stored in the device, there is a difference in the time taken for recognition of the device.**
- **Do not use the USB device for purposes other than playing music files.**
- **Playing videos through the USB is not supported.**
- **Use of USB accessories such as rechargers or heaters using USB I/F may lower performance or cause trouble.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 154



**(Continued)**

- **If you use devices such as a USB hub purchased separately, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB device. In that case, connect the USB device directly to the multimedia terminal of the vehicle.**
- **If the USB device is divided by logical drives, only the music files on the highest-priority drive are recognized by car audio.**
- **Devices such as MP3 Player/ Cellular phone/Digital camera can be unrecognizable by standard USB I/F can be unrecognizable.**
- **Charging through the USB may not be supported in some mobile devices.**
- **USB HDD or USB types liable to connection failures due to vehicle vibrations are not supported. (i-stick type)**
- **Some non-standard USB devices (METAL COVER TYPE USB) can be unrecognizable.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Some USB flash memory readers (such as CF, SD, micro SD, etc.) or external-HDD type devices can be unrecognizable.**
- **Music files protected by DRM (DIGITAL RIGHTS MANAGEMENT) are not recognizable.**
- **The data in the USB memory may be lost while using this audio. Always back up important data on a personal storage device.**
- **Please avoid using USB memory products which can be used as key chains or cellular phone accessories as they could cause damage to the USB jack. Please make certain only to use plug type connector products.**



EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 155



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE iPod® DEVICE

- Some iPod® models may not support communication protocol and files may not properly play.
  Supported iPod® models:
  - iPod® Mini
  - iPod® 4th (Photo) ~ 6th (Classic) generation
  - iPod® Nano 1st~4th generation
  - iPod® Touch 1st~2nd generation
- The order of search or playback of songs in the iPod® can be different from the order searched in the audio system.
- If the iPod® disabled due to its own malfunction, reset the iPod®. (Reset: Refer to iPod® manual)
- An iPod® may not operate normally on low battery.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some iPod® devices, such as the iPhone®, can be connected through the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology interface. The device must have audio *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology capability (such as for stereo headphone *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology ). The device can play, but it will not be controlled by the audio system.
- To use iPod® features within the audio, use the cable provided upon purchasing an iPod®d device.
- Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.
- If your iPhone® is connected to both the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When connecting iPod® with the iPod® Power Cable, insert the connector to the multimedia socket completely. If not inserted completely, communications between iPod® and audio may be interrupted.
- When adjusting the sound effects of the iPod® and the audio system, the sound effects of both devices will overlap and might reduce or distort the quality of the sound.
- Deactivate (turn off) the equalizer function of an iPod® when adjusting the audio system's volume, and turn off the equalizer of the audio system when using the equalizer of an iPod®.
- When not using iPod® with car audio, detach the iPod® cable from iPod®. Otherwise, iPod® may remain in accessory mode, and may not work properly.

■ **CD Player : AC100ELEE, AC110ELEE**




✻ No **Bluetooth** logo will be shown if the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature is not supported.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 157



## SYSTEM CONTROLLERS AND FUNCTIONS

❈ Display and settings may differ depending on the selected audio.

### Audio Head Unit




1. ⏏ (EJECT)
• Ejects the disc.

2. RADIO
• Changes to FM/AM mode.
• Each time the key is pressed,the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

3. MEDIA
• Changes to CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music, BT Audio mode.
• Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music, BT Audio.

4. PHONE (if eqipped)
• Operates Phone Screen
❈ When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

5. SEEK TRACK
• Radio Mode : Automatically searches for broadcast frequencies.
• CD, USB, iPod®, My Music modes
- Shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds): Moves to next or previous song (file)
- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Rewinds or fast-forwards the current song.

6. PWR/VOL knob
• Power Knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob
• Volume Knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right




7. 1 ~ 6 (Preset)

- Radio Mode: Saves frequencies (channels) or receives saved frequencies (channels)
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode
  - 1 RPT : Repeat
  - 2 RDM : Random
- In the Radio, Media, Setup, and Menu pop up screen, the number menu is selected.

8. ☾

- Each time the button is shortly pressed (under 0.8 seconds), sets screen Off ➟ Screen On ➟ Screen Off

❊ Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off. In the screen Off state, press any key to turn the screen On again.

9. TA SCAN

- Radio Mode
  - Shortly press the key (under 0.8seconds): TA On/Off- Press and hold the key (over 0.8seconds): Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each.
- Media mode
  - Press and hold the key (over 0.8seconds): Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.

❊ Press and holding the key again to continue listening to the current song (file).

10. SETUP CLOCK

- Shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds) : Moves to the Display, Sound, Clock, Phone, System setting modes
- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds) : Move to the Time setting screen

11. MENU

Displays menus for the current mode.

❊ iPod® List : Move to parent category

12. PTY FOLDER

- FM : RDS Program Type Search
- CD MP3, USB mode : Folder Search

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 159



13. TUNE knob
- Radio mode : Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode: Searches songs (files) by turning the knob left/right

✻ When the desired song is displayed, press the knob to play the song.
- Moves focus in all selection menus and selects menus




14. FM
- Changes to FM mode.
- Each time the key is pressed, the mode changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA.

15. AM
- Changes to AM mode.
- Each time the key is pressed, the mode changed in order of AM ➟ AMA.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 160

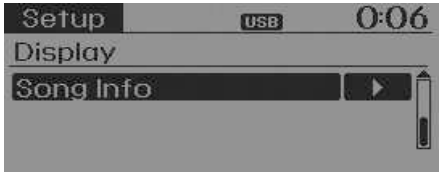


## SETUP
### - AC100ELEE, AC110ELEE

### Display Settings

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▶ Select [Display] through TUNE knob or 1 RPT key ▶ Select menu through TUNE knob




### Mode Pop up

[Mode Pop up] ▶ Changes (On). selection mode

- During On state, press the RADIO or MEDIA key to display the mode change pop up screen.
- When the pop up screen is displayed, use the TUNE knob or keys 1 ~ 6 to select the desired mode.

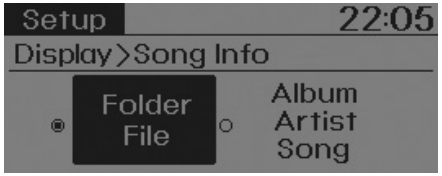
### Scroll text

[Scroll text] ▶ Set (On)/(Off)

- (On) : Maintains scroll
- (Off) : Scrolls only one (1) time.

### Song Info

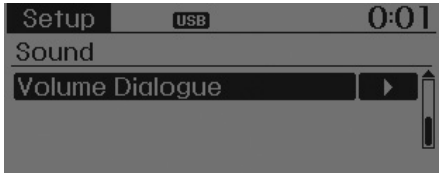
When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from 'Folder/File' or 'Album/Artist/Song'.




### Sound Settings

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▶ Select [Sound] through TUNE knob or 2 RDM key ▶ Select menu through TUNE knob



EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 161



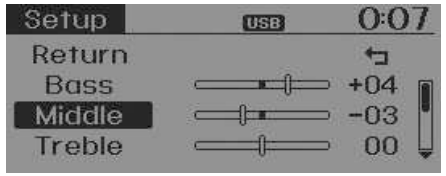
### Audio Settings

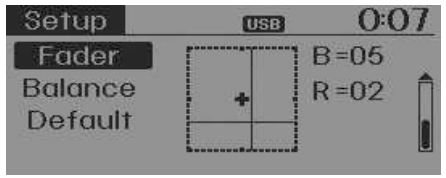
This menu allows you to set the 'Bass, Middle, Treble' and the Sound Fader and Balance.

Select [Audio Settings]▸ Select menu through ◎ TUNE knob▸ Turn ◎ TUNE knob left/right to set

- Bass, Middle, Treble : Selects the sound tone.
- Fader, Balance : Moves the sound fader and balance.
- Default : Restores default settings.

❊ Return : While adjusting values, re-pressing the ◎ TUNE knob will restore the parent menu.

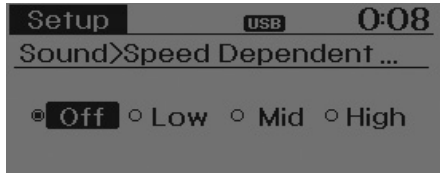



### Speed Dependent Volume Control

This feature is used to automatically control the volume level according to the speed of the vehicle.

Select [Speed Dependent Vol.]▸Set in 4 levels [Off/Low/Mid/High] of ◎TUNE knob




### Volume Dialogue

Adjusts voice recognition volume.

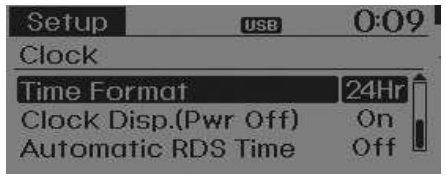
Select [Volume Dialogue]▸Set volume of ◎ TUNE knob



### Clock Settings

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▶ Select [Clock] through TUNE knob or 3 key ▶ Select menu through TUNE knob




### Clock Settings

This menu is used to set the time.

Select [Clock Settings] ▶ Set through TUNE knob ▶ Press TUNE knob

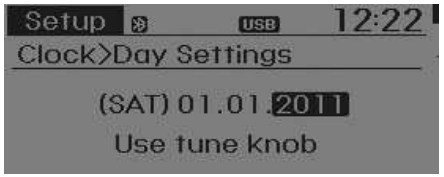



✻ Adjust the number currently in focus to set the [hour] and press the tune knob to set the [minute].

### Day Settings

This menu is used to set the date.

Select [Day Settings] ▶ Set through TUNE knob ▶ Press TUNE knob




✻ Adjust the number currently in focus to make the settings and press the tune knob to move to the next setting. (Set in order of Year/Month/Day)

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 163



### Time Format

This function is used to set the 12/24 hour time format of the audio system.

Select [Time Format]▶Set 12Hr / 24Hr through TUNE knob

### Clock Display when Power is OFF

Select [Clock Disp.(Pwr Off)▶Set On/ Off through TUNE knob

- On : Displays time/date on screen
- Off : Turn off.

### Automatic RDS Time

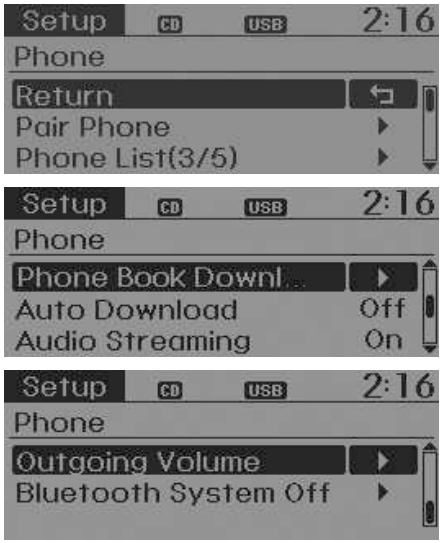
This option is used to automatically set the time by synchronizing with RDS.

Select [Automatic RDS Time]▶Set On / Off through TUNE knob

- On : Turn on Automatic Time
- Off : Turn off.

## Phone Setup (if eqipped)

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▸ Select [Phone]




### Pair Phone

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To pair a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone, authentication and connection processes are first required. As a result, you cannot pair your mobile phone while driving the vehicle. First park your vehicle before use.***

Select [Pair Phone] ▸ Set through TUNE knob

① Search for device names as displayed on your mobile phone and connect.

② Input the passkey displayed on the screen. (Passkey : 0000)

✻ The device name and passkey will be displayed on the screen for up to 3 minutes. If pairing is not completed within the 3 minutes, the mobile phone pairing process will automatically be canceled.

③ Pairing completion is displayed.

✻ In some mobile phones, pairing will automatically be followed by connection.

✻ It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phones.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 165



### Phone List

The names of up to 5 paired phones will be displayed.




A [▶] is displayed in front of the currently connected phone.

Select the desired name to setup the selected phone.

• Connecting a phone

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Connect Phone]




① Select a mobile phone that is not currently connected.

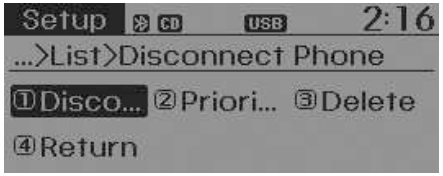
② Connect the selected mobile phone.

③ Connection completion is displayed.

❊ If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and select a new phone to connect.

• Disconnecting a connected phone

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Disconnect Phone]




① Select the currently connected mobile phone.

② Disconnect the selected mobile phone.

③ Disconnection completion is displayed.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 166



• Changing connection sequence (Priority)

This is used to change the order (priority) of automatic connection for the paired mobile phones.

Select [Phone List]▶Select [Priority] through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select No. 1 Priority mobile phone

① Select [Priority].
② From the paired phones, select the phone desired for No.1 priority.
③ The changed priority sequence is displayed.

❇ Once the connection sequence (priority) is changed, the new no. 1 priority mobile phone will be connected.
- when the no. 1 priority cannot be connected: Automatically attempts to connect the most recently connected phone.
- Cases when the most recently connected phone cannot be connected: Attempts to connect in the order in which paired phones are listed.
- The connected phone will automatically be changed to No. 1 priority.

• Delete

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Delete]

① Select the desired mobile phone.
② Delete the selected mobile phone.
③ Deletion completion is displayed.

❇ When attempting to delete a currently connected phone, the phone is first disconnected.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When you delete a mobile phone, the mobile phone phone book will also be erased.***
- ***For stable Bluetooth® Wireless Technology communication, delete the mobile phone from the audio and also delete the audio from your mobile phone.***

### Phone book Download

This feature is used to download phone book and call histories into the audio system.

Select [Phone book Download]▶Select through ◎ TUNE knob

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.***
- ***If a different operation is performed while phone book is being downloaded, downloading will be discontinued. Phone book already downloaded will be saved.***
- ***When downloading new phone book, delete all previously saved phone book before starting download.***

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 167



### Auto Download

When connecting a mobile phone, it is possible to automatically download new phone book and Call Histories.

Select [Auto Download]▶Set (On) / (Off) through ◎ TUNE knob

### Audio Streaming

Songs (files) saved in your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone can be played through the audio system.

Select [Audio Streaming]▶Set (On) / (Off) through ◎ TUNE knob

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The Bluetooth® Wireless Technology audio streaming feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.***

### Outgoing Volume

This is used to set the volume of your voice as heard by the other party while on a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call.

Select [Outgoing Volume]▶Set volume through ◎ TUNE knob

✻ While on a call, the volume can be changed by using the SEEK TRACK key.

### *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System Off

This feature is used when you do not wish to use the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system.

Select [Bluetooth System Off]▶Set through ◎TUNE knob

✻ If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and turn the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system off.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 168



### Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System

To use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology when the system is currently off, follow these next steps.

- Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the PHONE Key

Press the PHONE key ▶ Screen Guidance

❈ Moves to the screen where *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology functions can be used and displays guidance.

- Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the SETUP CLOCK Key

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▶ Select [Phone]

① A screen asking whether to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology will be displayed.

② On the screen, select YES to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and display guidance.

❈ If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system is turned on, the system will automatically try to connect the most recently connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Bluetooth® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these next steps to try again.***

***1) Turn the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone ON/OFF and try to connect again.***

***2) Turn the mobile phone power ON/OFF and try to connect again.***

***3) Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then try to connect again.***

***4) Reboot the audio system and try to connect again***

***5) Delete all paired devices in your mobile phone and the audio system and pair again for use.***

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 169



### System Settings

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▶ Select [System]




### Memory Information (if equipped)

Displays currently used memory and total system memory.

Select [Memory Information] ▶ OK

The currently used memory is displayed on the left side while the total system memory is displayed on the right side.




### Language

This menu is used to set the display and voice recognition language.

Select [Language] ▶ Set through TUNE knob




❊ The system will reboot after the language is changed.

❊ Language support by region

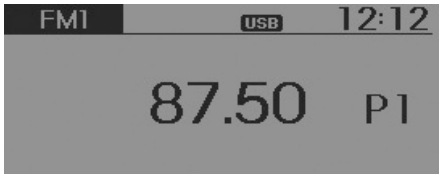
- Deutsch, English(UK), Français, Italiano, Español, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Polski Turkish

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 170



## RADIO

### Changing RADIO mode




### SEEK

Press the SEEK TRACK key

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Changes the frequency.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Automatically searches for the next frequency.

### Preset SEEK

Press the 1 ~ 6 key

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding key.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Pressing and holding the desired key from 1 ~ 6 will save the currently playing broadcast to the selected key and sound a BEEP.

### SCAN

Press the TA SCAN key

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 171



### Selecting through manual search

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to adjust the frequency.

- AC100ELEE, AC110ELEE
  - FM : Changes by 50KHz
  - AM : Changes by 9khz

### Traffic Announcement (TA)

Shortly pressing the TA SCAN key (under 0.8 seconds): Set On/Off TA Traffic Announcement) mode.

### PTY Up/Down

- Press the PTY FOLDER key when searching PTY in RDS Broadcasting Program Type selection.

### MENU

Within MENU key are the A.Store (Auto Store) and Info functions.




### AST (Auto Store)

Press the MENU key▶Set [①AST] through TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.

Select AST (Auto Store) to save frequencies with superior reception to presets 1 ~ 6. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.

❊ Saves only to the Preset memory 1 ~ 6 of FMA or AMA mode.

### AF (Alternative Frequency)

Press the MENU key▶Set [②AF] through TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

The Alternative Frequency option can be turned On/Off.

### Region

Press the MENU key▶Set [③Region] through TUNE knob or 3 key.

The Region option can be turned On/Off.

### News

Press the MENU key▶Set [④News] through TUNE knob or 4 key.

The News option can be turned On/Off.

### Info Volume

Info Volume refers to the sound volume upon receiving News or Traffic information.

The info volume can be controlled by turning the VOL knob left/right while a news or traffic broadcast is playing.

❊ AF, Region, and News are RDS Radio menus.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 172



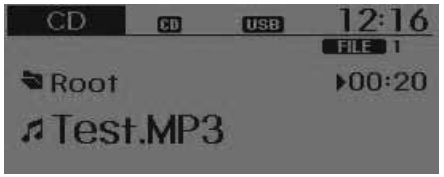
## BASIC METHOD OF USE : Audio CD / MP3 CD / USB / iPod® / My Music

Press the MEDIA key to change the mod mode in order of CD ➟ USB(iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.

The folder/file name is displayed on the screen.



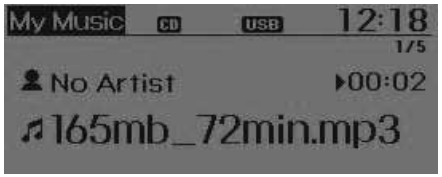

<Audio CD>




<CD MP3>




<USB>




<My Music>

❈ The CD is automatically played when a CD is inserted.

❈ The USB music is automatically played when a USB is connected.

### Repeat

While song (file) is playing ▶ RPT (RPT) key

Audio CD, MP3 CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode: RPT on screen

- To repeat one song (Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds)): Repeats the current song.

MP3 CD, USB mode: FLD.RPT on screen

- To repeat folder (pressing twice): repeats all files within the current folder.

❈ Press the RPT key again to turn off repeat.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 173



### Random

While song (file) is playing ▶ RDM (RDM) key

Audio CD, My Music mode: RDM on screen

- Random (Shortly pressing the key ): Plays all songs in random order.

MP3 CD, USB mode: FLD.RDM on screen

- Folder Random (Shortly pressing the key): Plays all files within the current folder in random order.

MP3 CD, USB mode: RDM on screen

- Random (pressing twice): Plays all files in random order.

iPod® mode: RDM on screen

- Random (press the key) : Plays all files in random order.

❈ Press the RDM key again to turn off random.

### Changing Song/File

While song (file) is playing ▶ SEEK TRACK key

- Shortly pressing the key: Plays the current song from the beginning.

❈ If the SEEK TRACK key is pressed again within 1 second, the previous song is played.

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Rewinds the song.

While song (file) is playing ▶ SEEK TRACK key

- Shortly pressing the key: Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Fast forwards the song.

### Scan

While song (file) is playing ▶ TA SCAN key

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds) : Scans all songs for 10 seconds starting from the next song.

❈ Pressing and holding the TA SCAN key again to turn off.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 174



### Folder Search : MP3 CD, USB Mode

While file is playing▶ PTY FOLDER ^ (Folder Up) key

• Searches the next folder.

While file is playing▶ PTY FOLDER v (Folder Down) key

• Searches the parent folder.

❊ If a folder is selected by pressing the TUNE knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

### Searching Songs (File)

• Turning TUNE knob : Searches for songs (files)
• Pressing TUNE knob : Plays selected song (file).

### MENU : Audio CD

Press the CD MP3 mode MENU key to set the Repeat, Random, Information features.




### Repeat

Press the MENU key▶Set [①RPT] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

❊ Press RPT again to turn off.

### Random

Press the MENU key▶Set [②RDM] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key to randomly play songs within the current folder.

❊ Press RDM again to turn off.

### Information

Press the MENU key▶Set [③Info] through the TUNE knob or 3 key to display information of the current song.

❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 175



### MENU : MP3 CD / USB

Press the CD MP3 mode MENU key to set the Repeat, Folder Random, Folder Repeat, All Random, Information, and Copy features.




### Repeat

Press the MENU key▶Set [①RPT] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

❊ Press RPT again to turn off.

### Folder Random

Press the MENU key▶Set [②F.RDM] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key to randomly play songs within the current folder.

❊ Press F.RDM again to turn off.

### Folder Repeat

Press the MENU key▶Set [③F.RPT] through the TUNE knob or 3 key to repeat songs within the current folder.

❊ Press F.RPT again to turn off.

### All Random

Press the MENU key▶Set [④A.RDM] through the TUNE knob or 4 key to randomly play all songs within the CD.

❊ Press A.RDM again to turn off.

### Information

Press the MENU key▶Set [⑤Info] through the TUNE knob or 5 key to display information of the current song.

❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

### Copy

Press the MENU key▶Set [⑥Copy] through the TUNE knob or 6 key.

❊ This is used to copy the current song into My Music. You can play the copied Music in My Music mode.

❊ If another key is pressed while copying is in progress, a pop up asking you whether to cancel copying is displayed.

❊ If another media is connected or inserted (USB, CD, iPod®, AUX) while copying is in progress, copying is canceled.

❊ Music will not be played while copying is in progress.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 176



### MENU : iPod®

In iPod® mode, press the MENU key to set the Repeat, Random, Information and Search features.




### Repeat

Press the MENU key▶Set [①RPT] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

✻ Press RPT again to turn repeat off.

### Random

Press the MENU key▶Set [②RDM] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

Plays all songs within the currently playing category in random order.

✻ Press RDM again to turn off.

### Information

Press the MENU key▶Set [③Info] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.

Displays information of the current song.

✻ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

### Search

Press the MENU key▶Set [④Search] through the TUNE knob or 4 key.

Displays iPod® category list.

✻ Searching iPod® category is MENU key pressed, move to parent category.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 177



### MENU : My Music Mode (if equipped)

In My Music mode, press the MENU key to set the Repeat, Random, Information, Delete, Delete All, and Delete Selection features.




### Repeat

Press the MENU key ▸ Set [①RPT] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.
Repeats the currently playing song.
❊ Press RPT again to turn repeat off.

### Random

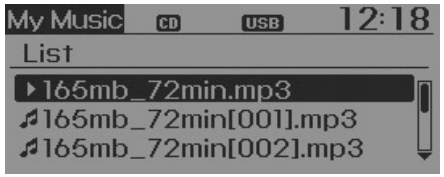
Press the MENU key ▸ Set [②RDM] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.
Plays all songs in random order.
❊ Press RDM again to turn random off.

### Information

Press the MENU key ▸ Set [③Info] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.
Displays information of the current song.
❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

### Delete

Press the MENU key ▸ Set [④Delete] through the TUNE knob or 4 key.
Deletes currently playing file
In the play screen, pressing delete will delete the currently playing song.
Deletes file from list
① Select the file you wish to delete by using the TUNE knob.




② Press the MENU key and select the delete menu to delete the selected file.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 178



### Delete All

Press the MENU key▶Set [⑤Del.All] through the TUNE knob or 5 key.
Deletes all songs of My Music.

### Delete Selection

Press the MENU key▶Set [⑥Del.Sel] through the TUNE knob or 6 key.
Songs within My Music are selected and deleted.

① Select the songs you wish to delete from the list.




② After selecting, press the MENU key and select the delete menu.




### ✻ NOTICE - Using the My Music

- **Even if memory is available, a maximum of 6,000 songs can be stored.**
- **The same song can be copied up to 1,000 times.**
- **Memory info can be checked in the System menu of Setup.**

### AUX

AUX is used to play external MEDIA currently connected with the AUX terminal.

AUX mode will automatically start when an external device is connected with the AUX terminal.

If an external device is connected, you can also press the MEDIA key to change to AUX mode.




✻ AUX mode cannot be started unless there is an external device connected to the AUX terminal.

### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE AUX

**Fully insert the AUX cable into the AUX terminal for use.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 179



## *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology AUDIO (if equipped)

### What is *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology?

*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology allows devices to be connected in a short distance, including hands-free devices, stereo headsets, wireless remote controllers, etc. For more information, visit the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology website at *www.Bluetooth.com*

Before using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio features

- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio may not be supported depending on the compatibility of your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- In order to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio, you must first pair and connect the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth®* SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners. A *Bluetooth®* enabled cell phone is required to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio can be used only when the [Audio Streaming] of Phone is turned On.

❈ Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Streaming : Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▸ Select [Phone] through the tune knob ▸ Select [Audio Streaming] through the TUNE knob ▸ Set On / Off

### Starting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio

- Press the MEDIA key to change the mode in order of CD ➟ USB ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.
- If BT Audio is selected, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio will start playing.

❈ Audio may not automatically start playing in some mobile phones.

### Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio features

- Play / Pause

Press the TUNE knob to play and pause the current song.




❈ The previous song / next song / play / pause functions may not be supported in some mobile phones.

## PHONE (if equipped)

Before using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone features

- In order to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone, you must first pair and connect the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- If the mobile phone is not paired or connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. Once a phone is paired or connected, the guidance screen will be displayed.
- If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want automatic *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone connection, set the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology power to OFF.

### Making a call using the Steering wheel remote controller




1. VOLUME button : Raises or lowers speaker volume.
2. MUTE button : Mute the microphone during a call.
3. button : Activates voice recognition.
4. button : Places and transfers calls.
5. button : Ends calls or cancels functions.

- Check call history and making call

① Shortly press (under 0.8 seconds) the key on the steering remote controller.
② The call history list will be displayed on the screen.
③ Press the key again to connect a call to the selected number.

- Redialing the most recently called number

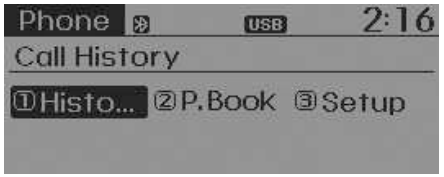
① Press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) the key on the steering remote controller.
② The most recently called number is redialed.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 181



### Phone MENU

Press the PHONE key to display three menus (Call History, Phone Book, Phone Setup).




### Call history

Press the PHONE key▶Set [① History] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.

The call history is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

If call history does not exist, a screen asking whether to download call history is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

### Phone Book

Press the PHONE key▶Set [②P. Book] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

The phone book is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

❊ If more than one number is saved to one contact, then a screen showing the mobile phone number, Home and office number is displayed. Select the desired number to make the call.

❊ If phone book do not exist, a screen asking whether to download phone book is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

### Phone Setup

Press the PHONE key▶Set [③ Setup] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.

The *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone setup screen is displayed. For more information, refer to “Phone Setup”.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 182



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology CELLULAR PHONE

- **Do not use a cellular phone or perform *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology settings (e.g. pairing a phone) while driving.**
- **Some *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology -enabled phones may not be recognized by the system or fully compatible with the system.**
- **Before using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology related features of the audio system, refer your phone's User's Manual for phone-side *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology operations.**
- **The phone must be paired to the audio system to use *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology related features.**
- **You will not be able to use the hands-free feature when your phone (in the car) is outside of the cellular service area (e.g. in a tunnel, in a underground, in a mountainous area, etc.).**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the cellular phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.**
- **Do not place the phone near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology system or cellular service stations can be disturbed.**
- **While a phone is connected through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology your phone may discharge quicker than usual for additional *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology-related operations.**
- **Some cellular phones or other devices may cause interference noise or malfunction to audio system. In this case, store the device in a different location may resolve the condition.**
- **Phone contact names should be saved in English or they may not be displayed correctly.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition(IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected.**
  **Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle.**
  **If you do not want automatic *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection, turn the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature off.**
- **The hands-free call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone type.**
- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features can be used only when the mobile phone has been paired and connected with the device. For more information on pairing and connecting *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phones, refer to the "Phone Setup" section.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 183



**(Continued)**

- **When a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phone is connected, a ( ) icon will appear at the top of the screen. If a ( ) icon is not displayed, this indicates that a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled device has not been connected. You must connect the device before use. For more information on *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phones, refer to the "Phone Setup" section.**
- **Pairing and connecting a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone will work only when the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology option within your mobile phone has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled feature may differ depending on the mobile phone.)**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **In some mobile phones, starting the ignition while talking through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected. (Switch the call back to your mobile phone when starting the ignition.)**
- **Some features may not be supported in some *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phone and devices.**
- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled operation may be unstable depending on the communication state.**
- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 184



### ✻ NOTICE - USING VOICE COMMAND

- **The voice recognition feature of this product supports recognition of the commands listed within this user's manual.**
- **While using voice recognition, operating the steering remote control or the device will terminate voice recognition and allow you to manually operate desired functions.**
- **Position the microphone above the head of the driver's seat. For superior performance, maintain good posture when saying voice commands.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Voice recognition may not function properly due to outside noise. The following conditions can affect the performance of Voice Recognition:**
  - **When the windows and sunroof are open**
  - **When the heating/cooling system is on**
  - **When passing a tunnel**
  - **When driving on rugged and uneven roads**
- **After downloading *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone book, the system requires some times to convert the phone book into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not operate properly.**
- **Upon inputting your phone book, special symbols and numbers cannot be recognized by voice. For example, "# John Doe%&" will be recognized as "John Doe".**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 185



## VOICE COMMAND (if equipped)

### Starting Voice Command

- To start voice command, shortly press the key on the steering wheel remote controller.
- If voice command is in [Normal Mode], then the system will say “Please say a command. Beep”

❈ If voice command is in [Expert Mode], then the system will only say a “Beep-”

❈ Setting Voice command [Normal Mode]/[Expert Mode]:
Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▸ Select [System] through the TUNE knob or 5 key ▸ Select [Voice Command Mode] through the TUNE knob ▸ Set [Normal Mode]/[Expert Mode]

- Say the voice command.

### ❈ NOTICE

**For proper voice recognition, say the voice command after the guidance message and the “Beep” sound.**

### Skipping the Guidance Message

While the guidance message is being stated, shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds) to discontinue the guidance message and sound the “beep”.

After the “beep”, say the voice command.

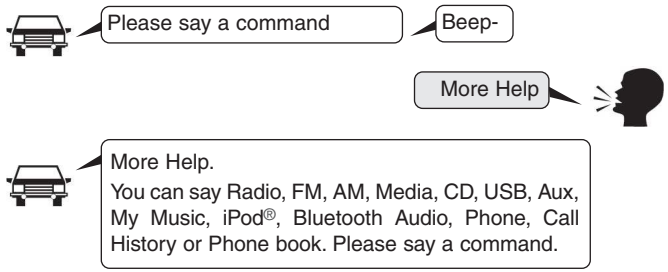



### Ending Voice Command

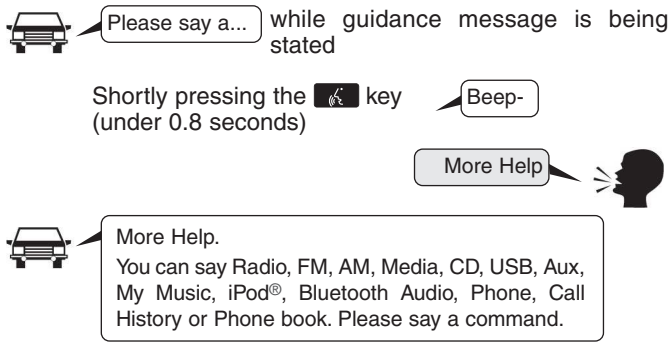
- While using voice command, press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds) to end voice command.
- While using voice command, pressing the steering wheel remote controller or a different key will end voice command.
- In a state where the system is waiting for your voice command, say “cancel” or “end” to end voice command.
- In a state where the system is waiting for your voice command, shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds) to end voice command.

❈ Illustration on using voice commands

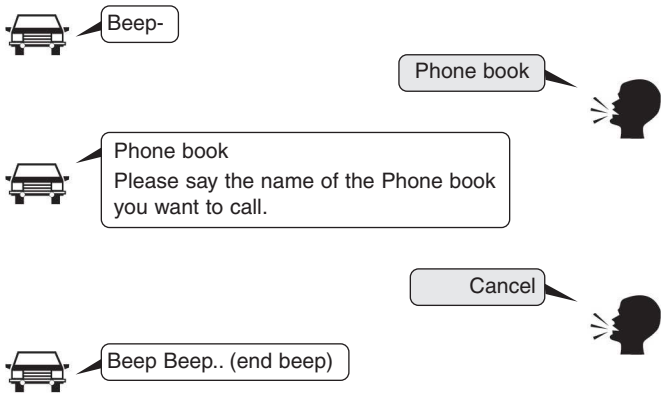
• Starting voice command.
Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):




• Skipping Voice Recognition
Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):




• End voice command.
Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):



EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 187



### Voice Command List

• Common Commands: These commands can be used in most operations. (However a few commands may not be available during certain operations)

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| More Help | Provides guidance on commands that can be used anywhere in the system. |
| Help | Provides guidance on commands that can be used within the current mode. |
| Call<Name> | Calls <Name> saved in phone book<br>Ex) Call “John Smith” |
| Phone | Provides guidance on Phone related commands. After saying this command, say “Call History”, “Phone book”, “Dial Number” to execute corresponding functions. |
| Call History | Displays the Call History screen. |
| Phone book | Displays the phone book screen. After saying this command, say the name of a phone book saved in the phone book to automatically connect the call. |
| Dial Number | Display the Dial number screen. After saying this command, you can say the number that you want to call. |
| Redial | Connects the most recently called number. |
| Radio | • When listening to the radio, displays the next radio screen. (FM1➟FM2➟FMA➟AM➟AMA)<br>• When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played radio screen. |
| FM | • When currently listening to the FM radio, maintains the current state.<br>• When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played FM screen. |
| FM1(FM One) | Displays the FM1 screen. |
| FM2(FM Two) | Displays the FM2 screen. |
| FMA | Displays the FMA screen. |
| AM | Displays the AM screen. |
| AMA | Displays the AMA screen. |
| FM Preset 1~6 | Plays the most recently played broadcast saved in FM Preset 1~6. |
| AM Preset 1~6 | Plays the broadcast saved in AM Preset 1~6. |
| FM 87.5~107.9 | Plays the FM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. |
| AM 530~1710 | Plays the AM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. |
| TA on | Enable Traffic Announcement |
| TA off | Disable Traffic Announcement |
| News on | Enable RDS News feature |
| News off | Disable RDS News feature |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 188



| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Media | Moves to the most recently played media screen. |
| Play Track 1~30 | If a music CD has been inserted, plays the corresponding track. |
| CD | Plays the music saved in the CD. |
| Search CD | Moves to the CD track or file selection screen.<br>• For audio CDs, move to the screen and say the track number to play the corresponding track.<br>• Moves to MP3 CD file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| USB | Plays USB music. |
| Search USB | Moves to USB file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| iPod® | Plays iPod® music. |
| Search iPod® | Moves to the iPod® file selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| My Music | Plays the music saved in My Music. |
| Search My Music | Moves to My Music file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| AUX (Auxiliary) | Plays the connected external device. |
| *Bluetooth* Audio | Plays the music saved in connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device. |
| Mute | Mutes the radio or music volume. |
| Pardon? | Repeats the most recent comment. |
| Cancel (Exit) | Ends voice command. |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 189



- FM/AM radio commands: Commands available during FM, AM radio operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Preset 1~6 | Plays the broadcast saved in Preset 1~6. |
| Auto Store | Automatically selects radio broadcast frequencies with superior reception and saves in Presets 1~6. |
| Preset Save 1~6 | Saves the current broadcast frequency to Preset 1~6. |
| Seek up | Plays the next (higher) receivable broadcast. |
| Seek down | Plays the previous (lower) receivable broadcast. |
| Next Preset | Selects the preset number next to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 4 will be selected.) |
| Previous Preset | Selects the preset number previous to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 2 will be selected.) |
| Scan | Scans receivable frequencies from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each. |
| Preset Scan | Moves to the next preset from the current present and plays for 10 seconds each. |
| AF on | Enable Alternative Frequency feature |
| AF off | Disable Alternative Frequency feature |
| Region | Enable Region feature |

- Audio CD commands: Commands that can be used while listening to Audio CD.

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Region off | Disable Region feature |
| Program Type | Moves to the RDS Program type selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select a desired program type. |
| Random | Randomly plays the tracks within the CD. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play tracks in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current track. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play tracks in sequential order. |
| Next Track | Plays the next track. |
| Previous Track | Plays the previous track. |
| Scan | Scans the tracks from the next track for 10 seconds each. |
| Track 1~30 | Plays the desired track number. |
| Search Track | Moves to the track selection screen. After, say the track name to play the corresponding track. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current track. |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 190



- MP3 CD / USB commands: Commands available during USB and MP3 CD operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Random | Randomly plays the files within the current folder. |
| All Random | Randomly plays all saved files. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play files in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current file. |
| Folder Repeat | Repeats all files in the current folder. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order. |
| Next File | Plays the next file. |
| Previous File | Plays the previous file. |
| Scan | Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each. |
| Search File | Moves to the file selection screen. |
| Search Folder | Moves to the folder selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current file. |
| Copy | Copies the current file into My Music. |

- iPod® Commands: Commands available during iPod® operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| All Random | Randomly plays all saved songs. |
| Random | Randomly plays the songs within the current category. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play songs in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current song. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play songs in sequential order. |
| Next Song | Plays the next song. |
| Previous Song | Plays the previous song. |
| Search Song | Moves to the song selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current song. |

• My Music Commands: Commands available during My Music operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Random | Randomly plays all saved files. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play files in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current file. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order. |
| Next File | Plays the next file. |
| Previous File | Plays the previous file. |
| Scan | Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each. |
| Search File | Moves to the file selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current file. |
| Delete | Deletes the current file. You will bypass an additional confirmation process. |
| Delete All | Deletes all files saved in My Music. You will bypass an additional confirmation process. |

• *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Commands: Commands available during *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio streaming from mobile phone operation Command Operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Play | Plays the currently paused song. |
| Pause | Pauses the current song. |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 192



## APPENDIX

| Name | | Description |
|---|---|---|
| AST (A.store) | | Automatically selects and saves channels |
| SDVC | | Speed Dependent Volume Control |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 193



■ **CD Player : AC111ELEE**



## SYSTEM CONTROLLERS AND FUNCTIONS

❊ Display and settings may differ depending on the selected audio.

### Audio Head Unit




1. ▲ (EJECT)
• Ejects the disc.

2. RADIO
• Converts to Radio(FM/AM) mode.
• Each time the key is pressed,the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

3. MEDIA
• Start Media mode
• Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB(iPod®) AUX, My Music, BT Audio.

4. PHONE
• Converts to Phone mode
❊ When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

5. PWR/VOL knob
• ◉ Power : Press to turn power on/off.
• ◉ Volume : Turn left/right to control volume.

6. SEEK TRACK
• When pressed shortly(under 0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode : plays previous/next frequency.
- Media (CD/USB/iPod®/My Music) modes : changes the track, Song(file)
• When pressed and held (0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode : continuously changes the frequency. Upon release, plays the current frequency.
- Media(CD/USB/iPod®/My Music) modes : rewinds or fast forwards the track or file
- During a Handsfree call, controls the call volume.

7. PTY FOLDER
• RDS Radio mode : searches RDS program types.
• CD/USB/MP3 modes : searches folders.

8. RESET
• Forced system termination and system restart.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 195






9.
• Turns the monitor display on/off.

10. CLOCK
Displays the time/date/day.

11. TA/SCAN
• Radio Mode :
- Short key : TA On/Off
- Long key : previews all receivable broadcasts for 5 seconds each.
• Media (CD/USB/My Music) modes :
- Long key : Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.

12. SETUP
Converts to Setup mode.

13. TUNE knob
• Radio mode : turn to change broadcast frequencies.
• Media (CD/USB/iPod®/My Music) modes : turn to search tracks/channels/files.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 196



## Radio Mode

### Basic Mode Screen







1. Mode Display
Displays currently operating mode

2. Frequency
Displays the current frequency

3. Preset
Displays current preset number [1] ~ [6]

4. Preset Display
Displays saved presets

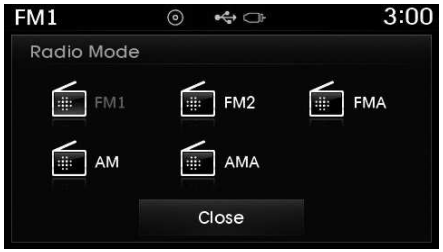
5. Autostore
Automatically saves frequencies with superior reception to Preset buttons

6. RDS Menu
Displays the RDS Menu

7. RDS Info
Displays RDS broadcast information

### Switching to Radio Mode

Pressing the RADIO key will change the operating mode in order of FM1 ➟FM2➟FMA➟AM➟AMA.




If [Pop-up Mode] is turned on within SETUP ▸[Display], then pressing the RADIO key will display the Radio Pop-up Mode screen.
Turn the TUNE knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 197



## Searching Radio Frequencies

### *Using Seek*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to play the previous/next frequency.

### *Using TUNE*

Turn the TUNE knob to select the desired frequency.

- FM : Increases/decreased by 50kHz
- AM : Increases/decreased by 9kHz

## Using Radio Mode

### *Selecting/Saving Presets*

Press the 1 ~ 6 buttons to play the desired preset.




Press the button to display the broadcast information for the frequency saved to each button.




### ✻ NOTICE

**While listening to a frequency you want to save as a preset, press and hold one of the [1] ~ [6] preset buttons (over 0.8 seconds) to save the current frequency to the selected preset.**

### *Auto Store*

Press the button to automatically save receivable frequencies to Preset buttons.

### ✻ NOTICE

**While Auto Store is operating, pressing the [Cancel] button again will cancel Auto Store and restore the previous frequency.**

***RDS Menu***

Press the button to set the AF (Alternative Frequency), Region and News features.




## ✻ NOTICE

**The RDS Menu is not supported within AM or AMA mode.**

***Scan***

Press and hold the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) to preview frequencies with superior reception for 5 seconds each.

## ✻ NOTICE

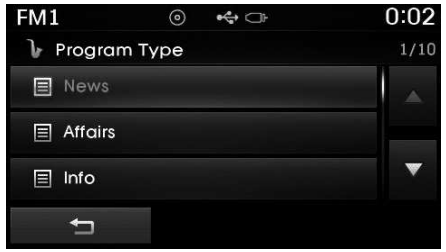
**Once scan is complete, the previous frequency will be restored.**
**While Scan is operating, pressing and holding the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) will cancel the scan operation.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 199



### Program Type

Press the PTY FOLDER key to search for the desired Program type.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired program type. Once you find the desired program type, press the TUNE knob.

After selecting the desired Program Type and while the Program Type is blinking (approximately 5 seconds), pressing the SEEK TRACK key will allow you to select a different Program Type broadcast.

### TA (Traffic Announcement)

Press the TA/SCAN key to turn the TA (Traffic Announcement) feature On/Off.



EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 200



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE DISCS

- **This device has been manufactured to be compatible with software bearing the following logo marks.**
- **Do not clean discs with chemical solutions, such as record sprays, antistatic sprays, antistatic liquids, benzene, or thinners.**
- **After using a disc, put the disc back in its original case to prevent disc scratches.**
- **Hold discs by their edges or within the center hole to prevent damages to disc surfaces.**
- **Do not introduce foreign substances into the disc insert/eject slot. Introducing foreign substances could damage the device interior.**
- **Do not insert two discs simultaneously.**
- **When using CD-R/CD-RW discs, differences in disc reading and playing times may occur depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the recording method as used by the user.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Clean fingerprints and dust off the disc surface (coated side) with a soft cloth.**
- **The use of CD-R/CD-RW discs attached with labels may result in disc slot jams or difficulties in disc removal. Such discs may also result in noise while playing.**
- **Some CD-R/CD-RW discs may not properly operate depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the record method as used by the user. If problems persist, trying using a different CD as continued use may result in malfunctions.**
- **The performance of this product may differ depending on the CD-RW Drive Software.**
- **Copy-protected CDs such as S-type CDs may not function in the device. DATA discs cannot be played. (However, such discs may still operate but will do so abnormally.)**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not use abnormally shaped discs (8cm, heart-shaped, octagon-shaped) as such discs could lead to malfunctions.**
- **If the disc is straddled on the disc slot without removal for 10 seconds, the disc will automatically be re-inserted into the disc player.**
- **Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure (e.g. copy CD-R, CDs with labels)**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 201



## MP3 File Information

### • Supported Audio Formats

| | |
|---|---|
| File System | ISO 9660 Level 1 |
| | ISO 9660 Level 2 |
| | Romeo / Juliet (128 characters) |
| Audio Compression | MPEG1 Audio Layer3 |
| | MPEG2 Audio Layer3 |
| | MPEG2.5 Audio Layer3 |
| | Windows Media Audio Ver 7.X & 8.X |

❈ File formats that do not comply with the above formats may not be properly recognized or play without properly displaying file names or other information.

### • Support for Compressed Files

1. Supported Bitrates (Kbps)

| BIT RATE(kbps) | MPEG1 Layer3 | MPEG2 Layer3 | MPEG2.5 Layer3 | WMA High Range |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 32 | 8 | 8 | 48 |
| | 40 | 16 | 16 | 64 |
| | 48 | 24 | 24 | 80 |
| | 56 | 32 | 32 | 96 |
| | 64 | 40 | 40 | 128 |
| | 80 | 48 | 48 | 160 |
| | 96 | 56 | 56 | 192 |
| | 112 | 64 | 64 | |
| | 128 | 80 | 80 | |
| | 160 | 96 | 96 | |
| | 192 | 112 | 112 | |
| | 224 | 128 | 128 | |
| | 256 | 144 | 144 | |
| | 320 | 160 | 160 | |

2. Sampling Frequencies (Hz)

| MPEG1 | MPEG2 | MPEG2.5 | WMA |
|---|---|---|---|
| 44100 | 22050 | 11025 | 32000 |
| 48000 | 24000 | 12000 | 44100 |
| 3000 | 16000 | 8000 | 48000 |

• For MP3/WMA compression files, differences in sound quality will occur depending on the bitrate. (Higher sound quality can be experienced with higher bitrates.)

• This device only recognizes files with MP3/WMA extensions. Other file extensions may not be properly recognized.

3. Maximum number of recognized folders and files

- Folder : 255 folders for CD, 2,000 folders for USB
- File : 999 files for CD, 6,000 files for USB

❈ There are no limitations to the number of recognized folder levels

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 202



**• Language Support (Unicode Support)**

1. English: 94 characters
2. Special characters and Symbols : 986 characters

❈ Languages other than Korean and English (including Chinese) are not included.

3. Text Display (Based on Unicode)
   - File name: Maximum 64 English characters
   - Folder name: Max 32 English characters

❈ Using the scroll feature allows you to see the entire name of files with names that are too long to be displayed at once.

**• Compatibility by Disc Type**

1. Playing MIXED CDs: First plays the audio CD, then plays the compressed file(s).
2. Playing EXTRA CDs: First plays the audio CD, then plays the compressed file(s).
3. Playing multisession CDs: Plays in order of sessions
   - MIXED CD : CD type in which both MP3 and audio CD files are recognized in one disc.
   - Multisession CD CD type that includes more than two sessions. Different from Extra CDs, multisession CDs are recorded by sessions and have no media limitation.

**• Precautions upon Writing CDs**

1. In all cases except when creating multisession discs, check the close session option before creating the disc. Though product malfunctions will not occur, some time may be required for the device to check whether the session state is closed (approximately 25 seconds). (Additional time may also be required depending on the number of folders or files.)
2. Changing the MP3/WMA file extensions or changing files of other extensions to MP3/WMA may result in product malfunction.
3. When naming files with MP3/WMA file extensions, write using only Korean and English. (Languages other than Korean and English are not supported and are displayed as blank.)
4. Unauthorized use or duplication of music files are prohibited by law.
5. Prolonged use of CD-R/CD-RW discs that do not satisfy related standards and/or specifications could result in product malfunction.
6. Unauthorized use or duplication of MP3/WMA files is prohibited by law.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 203



## MEDIA MODE

### Switching to Media Mode

Pressing the MEDIA key will change the operating mode in order of CD ➟ USB (iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.




If [Pop-up Mode] / [Mode Pop-up] is turned on within SETUP ▸ [Display], then pressing the MEDIA key will display the Media Pop-up Mode screen.

Turn the TUNE knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The media mode pop up screen can be displayed only when there are two or more media modes turned on.**

### Title Icon

When a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology, iPod®, USB, or AUX device is connected or a CD is inserted, the corresponding mode icon will be displayed.




| Icon | Title |
|---|---|
| | *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology |
| | CD |
| | iPod® |
| | USB |
| | AUX |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 204



## AUDIO CD MODE

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode
Displays currently operating mode

2. Operation State
From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/ Scan, displays the currently operating function

3. Track Info
Displays information about the current track

4. Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

5. Play Time
Displays the current play time

6. Info
Shows detailed information about the current track

7. Random(Shuffle)
Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off

8. Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

9. List
Moves to the list screen

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 205



## Using Audio CD Mode

### *Playing/Pausing CD Tracks*

Once an audio CD is inserted, the mode will automatically start and begin playing.




While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure (e.g. copy CD-R, CDs with labels)**
- **The artist and title information are displayed on the screen if track information is included within the audio CD.**

### *Changing Tracks*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next track.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the track has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current track from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the track has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous track.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:20 AM Page 206



***Selecting from the List***

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired track.




Once you find the desired track, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

***Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Tracks***

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current track.

***Scan (for RDS model)***

Press and hold the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Pressing and holding the key again to turn off.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 207



## Audio CD Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random(Shuffle), Repeat and List features.




***Info***

Press the *i* button to display details about the current disc.

***Random(Shuffle)***

Press the button to play tracks in random(Shuffle) order.

Press the button again to turn the Random(Shuffle) feature off.

- Random(Shuffle): Plays all tracks in random(Shuffle) order.

***Repeat***

Press the button to repeat the current track. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

- Repeat: Repeats the current track.

***List***

Press the button to display the track list screen.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for tracks. Once the desired track is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 208



## MP3 CD MODE

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode
Displays currently operating mode.

2. Operation State
From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/ Scan, displays the currently operating function

3. File Index
Displays the current file number

4. File Info
Displays information about the current file

5. Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

6. Play Time
Displays the current play time

7. Info
Shows detailed information about the current file

8. Random(Shuffle)
Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off

9. Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

10. Copy
Copies the current file into My Music

11. List
Moves to the list screen

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 209



## Using MP3 CD Mode

### *Playing/Pausing MP3 Files*

Once an MP3 disc is inserted the mode will automatically start and being playing.




While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If there are numerous files and folders within the disc, reading time could take more than 10 seconds and the list may not be displayed or song searches may not operate. Once loading is complete, try again.**

### *Changing Files*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

### *Selecting from the List*

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.




Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

### *Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files*

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

### *Scan(for RDS model)*

Press and hold the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Pressing and holding the key again to turn off.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 210



***Searching Folders***

Press the PTY FOLDER key to select and search folders.

Once the desired folder is displayed, press the TUNE knob to select.




The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 211



### MP3 CD Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random(Shuffle), Repeat, Copy and List features.




*Info*

Press the *i* button to display details about the current file.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **When the 'Folder File' option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **When the 'Album Artist Song' option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information are recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.**

*Random(Shuffle)*

Press the button to play files in random(Shuffle) order.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Random (Shuffle) Folder ➟ Random (Shuffle) All➟ Off.

- Random(Shuffle) Folder : Plays all files within the current folder in Random (Shuffle) order.
- Random(Shuffle) All : Plays all files in Random(Shuffle) order.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 212



***Repeat***

Press the button to repeat the current file or folder.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Repeat ➟Repeat Folder➟Off.

- Repeat: Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder: Repeats all files within the current Folder.

***Copying Files***

Press the button to copy the current file into My Music.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select 'Yes'.**

***List***

Press the button to display the file list screen.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 213



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE USB DEVICE

- **Connect the USB device after turning on the engine. The USB device may become damaged if it is already connected when the ignition is turned on.The USB device may not operate properly if the car ignition is turned on or off with the USB device connected.**
- **Heed caution to static electricity when connecting/disconnecting USB devices.**
- **Encoded MP3 Players will not be recognized when connected as an external device.**
- **When connecting an external USB device, the device may not properly recognize the USB is in some states.**
- **Only products formatted with byte/sectors under 64Kbyte will be recognized.**
- **This device recognizes USB devices formatted in FAT 12/16/32 file formats. This device does not recognize files in NTFS file format.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Some USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.**
- **Avoid contact between the USB connector with bodily parts or foreign objects.**
- **Repeated connecting/disconnecting of USB devices within short periods of time may result in product malfunction.**
- **A strange noise may occur when disconnecting the USB.**
- **Make sure to connect/disconnect external USB devices with the audio power turned off.**
- **The amount of time required to recognize the USB device may differ depending on the type, size or file formats stored in the USB. Such differences in time are not indications of malfunctions.**
- **The device only supports USB devices used to play music files.**
- **USB images and videos are not supported.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not use the USB I/F to charge batteries or USB accessories that generate heat. Such acts may lead to worsened performance or damage to the device.**
- **The device may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used. Connect the USB directly with the multimedia terminal of the vehicle.**
- **When using mass storage USB devices with separate logical drives, only files saved to the root drive can be played.**
- **Files may not properly operate if application programs are installed to the USBs.**
- **The device may not operate normally if MP3 Players, cellular phones, digital cameras, or other electronic devices (USB devices not recognized as portable disk drives) are connected with the device.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 214



**(Continued)**

- **Charging through the USB may not work for some mobile devices.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using a USB memory type besides (Metal Cover Type) USB Memory.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.**
- **The device will not support files locked by DRM (Digital Rights Management.)**
- **USB memory sticks used by connecting an Adaptor (SD Type or CF Type) may not be properly recognized.**
- **The device may not operate properly when using USB HDDs or USBs subject to connection failures caused by vehicle vibrations. (e.g. i-stick type)**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Avoid use of USB memory products that can also be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories. Use of such products may cause damage to the USB jack.**



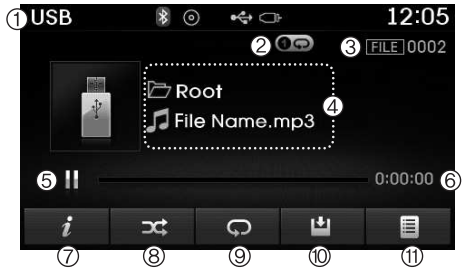
- **Connecting an MP3 device or phone through various channels, such as AUX/BT or Audio/USB mode may result in pop noises or abnormal operation.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 215



## USB MODE

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode
Displays currently operating mode

2. Operation State
From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/ Scan, displays the currently operating function

3. File Index
Displays the current file number

4. File Info
Displays information about the current file

5. Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

6. Play Time
Displays the current play time

7. Info
Displays detailed information for the current file

8. Random(Shuffle)
Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off

9. Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

10. Copy
Copies the current file into My Music

11. List
Moves to the list screen

## Using USB Mode

### *Playing/Pausing USB Files*

Once a USB is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing a USB file.







While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Loading may require additional time if there are many files and folders within the USB and result in faulty list display or file searching. Normal operations will resume once loading is complete.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using a USB memory type besides (Metal Cover Type) USB Memory.**

### *Changing Files*

Press the SEEK TRACK keys to move to the previous or next file.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 217



### *Selecting from the List*

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.




Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

### *Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files*

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

### *Scan*

Press and hold the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Pressing and holding the key again to turn off.

### *Searching Folders*

Press the PTY FOLDER key to select and search folders.




Once the desired folder is displayed, press the TUNE knob to select.

The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 218



### USB Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random(Shuffle), Repeat, Copy and List features.




***Info***

Press the *i* button to display details about the current file.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **When the 'Folder File' option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **When the 'Album Artist Song' option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information are recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.**

***Random(Shuffle)***

Press the button to play files in random(Shuffle) order.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Random(Shuffle) Folder ➟ Random(Shuffle) All ➟ Off.

- Random(Shuffle) Folder : Plays the files in the current folder in random(Shuffle) order.
- Random(Shuffle) All : Plays all files in random(Shuffle) order.

***Repeat***

Press the button to repeat the current file or folder.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Repeat➟ Repeat Folder ➟ Off.

- Repeat (Icon) : Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder (Icon) : Repeats all files within the current folder.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 219



***Copying Files***

Press the button to copy the current file into My Music.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select 'Yes'.**

***List***

Press the button to display the file list screen.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 220



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE iPod® DEVICE

- **iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.**
- **In order to use the iPod® while operating the keys, you must use a dedicated iPod® cable. (the cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod®/iPhone® products)**
- **If the iPod® is connected to the vehicle while it is playing, a high pitch sound could occur for approximately 1-2 seconds immediately after connecting. If possible, connect the iPod® to the vehicle with the iPod® stopped/paused.**
- **During ACC ON state, connecting the iPod® through the iPod® cable will charge the iPod® through the car audio system.**
- **When connecting with the iPod® cable, make sure to fully insert the jack to prevent communication interference.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When the EQ features of an external device, such as the iPod®, and the audio system are both active, EQ effects could overlap and cause sound deterioration and distortion. Whenever possible, turn off the EQ feature within the external device upon use by connecting with the audio system.**
- **Noise may occur when an iPod® or AUX device is connected. When such devices are not being used, disconnect the device for storage.**
- **When the iPod® or AUX device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may result in noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**
- **Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.**
- **If your iPhone is connected to both the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **iPod® mode cannot be operated when the iPod® cannot be recognized due to the playing of versions that do not support communication protocols, cases of iPod®abnormalities and defects.**
- **For fifth generation iPod® Nano devices, the iPod® may not be recognized when the battery level is low. Please charge the iPod® for use.**
- **Search/play orders shown within the iPod® device may differ with the orders shown within the audio system.**
- **If the iPod® malfunctions due to an iPod® device defect, reset the iPod® and try again. (To learn more, refer to your iPod® manual)**
- **Some iPod®s may not sync with the System depending on its version. If the Media is removed before the Media is recognized, then the system may not properly restore the previously operated mode. (iPad charging is not supported.)**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 221



## iPod MODE

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode
Displays currently operating mode

2. Operation State
From Repeat/Random(Shuffle), displays the currently operating function

3. Song Index
Displays the current song/total number of songs

4. Song Info
Displays information about the current song

5. Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

6. Play Time
Displays the current play time

7. Random(Shuffle)
Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off

8. Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

9. List
Moves to the list screen

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 222



## Using iPod® Mode

### *Playing/Pausing iPod Songs*

Once an iPod® is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing an iPod® song.




While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

**iPod®s with unsupported communication protocols may not properly operate in the audio system.**

### *Changing Songs*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next song.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the song has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current song from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the song has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous song.**
- **Slight time differences may exist depending your iPod® product.**

### *Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Songs*

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current song.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 223



***Searching Categories***

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired category.



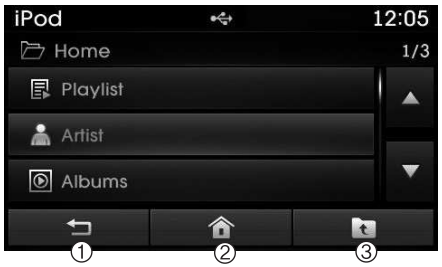

Once you find the desired category, press the TUNE knob to select and play.

### ✻ NOTICE

**There are eight categories that can be searched, including Playlists, Artists, Albums, Genres, Songs, Composers, Audiobooks and Podcasts.**

### Category Menu

Within the iPod® Category menu, you will have access to the , Home, and features.




1. : Displays the play screen
2. : Moves to the iPod® root category screen
3. : Moves to the previous category

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the search mode is accessed while playing a song, the most recently searched category is displayed.**
- **Search steps upon initial connection may differ depending on the type of iPod® device.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 224



## iPod® Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Random(Shuffle), Repeat and List features.




### *Random(Shuffle)*

Press the button to play songs in random(Shuffle) order.

Press the button again to turn the random(Shuffle)feature off.

### *Repeat*

Press the button to repeat the current song. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

• Repeat : Repeats the current song

### *List*

Press the button to display the Category Menu.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired category.

Once you find the desired category, press the TUNE knob to select and play.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 225



## AUX MODE

### Using AUX Mode

Press the MEDIA key ▶ Select [AUX]




An external device can be connected to play music.

### Connecting an External Device

External audio players (Camcorders, car VCR, etc.) can be played through a dedicated cable.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If an external device connector is connected with the AUX terminal, then AUX mode will automatically operate. Once the connector is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.**
- **AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player (camcorder, car VCR, etc.) has been connected.**
- **The AUX volume can be controlled separately from other audio modes.**
- **Connecting a connector jack to the AUX terminal without an external device will convert the system to AUX mode, but only output noise. When an external device is not being used, also remove the connector jack.**
- **When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**
- **Fully insert the AUX cable to the AUX jack upon use.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 226



## MY MUSIC MODE

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode
Displays currently operating mode

2. Operation State
From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/ Scan, displays the currently operating function

3. File Index
Displays the current file/total number of files

4. File Info
Displays information about the current file

5. Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

6. Play Time
Displays the current play time

7. Info
Displays detailed information for the current file

8. Random(Shuffle)
Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off

9. Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

10. Delete
Deletes the current file

11. List
Moves to the list screen

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 227



## Using My Music Mode

### *Playing/Pausing My Music Files*




While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If there are no files saved within My Music, the [My Music] button will be disabled.**

### *Changing Files*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

### *Selecting from the List*

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.




Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 228



***Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files***

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

***Scan(for RDS model)***

Press and hold the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Pressing and holding the key again to turn off.

## My Music Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random(Shuffle), Repeat, Delete and List features.




***Info***

Press the *i* button to display details about the current file.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information is recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.**

***Random***

Press the button to play files in random order. Press the button again to turn the Random feature off.

***Repeat***

Press the button to repeat the current song. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

***Deleting Files***

Press the button to delete the current file.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 229



***List***

Press the button to display the file list screen.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

## List Menu

From the List screen, it is possible to delete files you previously saved into My Music.




Press the button or individually select the files you want to delete. Once files are selected, the button and buttons will be enabled.

1) : Moves to the previous screen
2) Select All: Selects all files
3) Unselet All: Deselects all selected files
4) Delete: Deletes selected files

After selecting the files you want to delete, press the button to delete the selected files.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **If there is memory available, up to 6,000 files can be saved.**
- **Identical files cannot be copied more than 1,000 times.**
- **To check memory information, go to SETUP ▶ [System] ▶ [Memory Information]**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 230



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode

- ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology Audio Mode can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone has been connected.**
- ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology Audio Mode will not be available when connecting mobile phones that do not support this feature.**
- **While *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio is playing, if the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone is connected, then the music will also stop.**
- **Moving the Track up/down while playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio mode may result in pop noises in some mobile phones.**
- ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology streaming audio may not be supported in some mobile phones.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When returning to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio mode after ending a call, the mode may not automatically restart in some mobile phones.**
- **Receiving an incoming call or making an outgoing call while playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio may result in audio interference.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 231



## *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology AUDIO MODE

### Using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode

#### *Playing/Pausing Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology *Audio*

Once a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is connected, the mode will automatically start.




While playing, press the ▶II button to pause and press ▶II button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The play/pause feature may operate differently depending on the mobile phone.**

#### *Changing Files*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

#### *Setting Connection*

If a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device has not been connected, press the SETUP key ▸[Phone] button to display the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection screen.

It is possible to use the pair phone, connect/disconnect and delete features from your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio is not operating properly, check whether the feature is turned off at SETUP ▸[Phone] ▸[Audio streaming] (Streaming Audio). If the feature is off, turn back on and try again.**
- **If music is not yet playing from your mobile device after converting to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio mode, pressing the play button once may start playing the mode. Check to see that music is playing from the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device after converting to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 232



## *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology

### Using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree

- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology refers to a short-distance wireless networking technology which uses a 2.4GHz ~ 2.48GHz frequency to connect various devices within a certain distance.
- Supported within PCs, external devices, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phones, PDAs, various electronic devices, and automotive environments, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology allows data to be transmitted at high speeds without having to use a connector cable.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phones through the audio system.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Handsfree is a feature that enables drivers to practice safe driving. Connecting the car audio system with a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phone book. Before using the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology , carefully read the contents of this user's manual.***
- ***Excessive use or operations while driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents.***
- ***Do not operate the device excessively while driving.***
- ***Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time is dangerous and may lead to accidents. When driving, view the screen only for short periods of time.***

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 233



### ✻ NOTICE - USING UPON CONNECTING *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology PHONE

- **Before connecting the car audio system with the mobile phone, check to see that the mobile phone supports *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features.**
- **Even if the phone supports *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology, the phone will not be found during device searches if the phone has been set to hidden state or the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology power is turned off. Disable the hidden state or turn on the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology power prior to searching/connecting with the car audio system.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If you do not want to automatically connect your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone, try the following.**
  1. **Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your mobile phone.**
  - **For more information on *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features within your mobile, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**
  2. **Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system.**
  - **To turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system, go to SETUP > [Phone] and [turn off] the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature.**
- **Park the vehicle when connecting the car audio system with your mobile phone.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these steps to try again.**
  1. **Turn the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone off/on and try again.**
  2. **Turn the mobile phone power Off/On and try again.**
  3 **Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then again.**
  4. **Reboot the audio system and try again.**
  5. **Delete all paired devices, pair and try again.**
- **The Handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 234



**(Continued)**

- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device.**
  - **Answering and placing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree calls**
  - **Menu operation during call (Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, Outgoing volume)**
  - **Download Call History**
  - **Download Mobile Phone book**
  - **Phone book/Call History Auto Download**
  - ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device auto connection - *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio**
- **It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices to the car system.**
- **Only one *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Other devices cannot be paired while a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technologydevice is already connected.**
- **When a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is being connected, the connection process cannot be canceled.**
- **Only *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree and *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio related features will operate within this system.**
- **Normal operation is possible only for devices that support Handsfree or audio features, such as a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phone or a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio device.**
- **Only one function can be used at a time between the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree and *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio. (While playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio, streaming will end upon entering the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone screen.)**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If a connected *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device becomes disconnected for various reasons, such as being out of range, turning the device OFF, or a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology communication error, *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices are automatically searched and connected.**
- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 235



## Pairing a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Device

### What is *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Pairing?

Pairing refers to the process of synchronizing your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone or device with the car audio system for connection. Pairing is necessary to connect and use the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature.

### Pairing PHONE Key / Key on the Steering Remote Controller

***When No Devices have been Paired***

1. Press the PHONE key or the key on the steering remote controller. The following screen is displayed.
2. Press the OK button to enter the Pair Phone screen.







1) Device : Name of device as shown when searching from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device
2) Passkey : Passkey used to pair the device

3. From your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device (i.e. Mobile Phone), search and select your car audio system.
4. After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered. Here, enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.
5. Once pairing is complete, the following screen is displayed.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 236



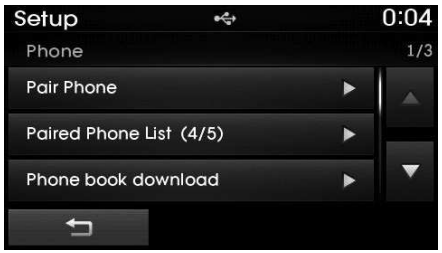
## ✻ NOTICE




**If *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices are paired but none are currently connected, pressing the PHONE key or the key on the steering wheel displays the following screen. Press the [Pair] button to pair a new device or press the [Connect] to connect a previously paired device.**

### Pairing through [PHONE] Setup

Press the SETUP key ▶Select [Phone]▶Select [Pair Phone] ▶Select TUNE knob




The following steps are the same as those described in the section "When No Devices have been Paired" on the previous page.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **The waiting period during phone pairing will last for one minute. The pairing process will fail if the device is not paired within the given time. If the pairing process fails, you must start the process from the beginning.**
- **Generally, most *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices will automatically connect once pairing is complete. However, some devices may require a separate verification process to connect. Check to see whether *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology has been properly connected within your mobile phone.**
- **List of paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices can be viewed at SETUP ▶ [Phone]▶[Paired Phone List].**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 237



### Connecting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List]




1) Connected Phone : Device that is currently connected
2) Paired Phone : Device that is paired but not connected

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to connect and press the button.



EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 238



## Changing Priority

***What is Priority?***

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices with the car audio system. The "Change Priority" feature is used to set the connection priority of paired phones. However, the most recently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List]




From the paired phone list, select the phone you want to switch to the highest priority, then press the button from the Menu. The selected device will be changed to the highest priority.




### ✻ NOTICE

**When a device is currently connected, even if you change the priority to a different device, the currently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.**

## Disconnecting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List]




From the paired phone list, select the currently connected device and press the button.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 239



### Deleting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List]




From the paired phone list, select the device you want to delete and press the button.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **When deleting the currently connected device, the device will automatically be disconnected to proceed with the deleting process.**
- **If a paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is deleted, the device's call history and phone book data will also be deleted.**
- **To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 240



## USING *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology

### Phone Menu Screen

***Phone Menus***

With a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected, press the PHONE key to display the Phone menu screen.




1) Dial Number : Displays the dial screen where numbers can be dialed to make calls
2) Call History : Displays the call history list screen
3) Phone book : Displays the Phone book list screen
4) Setup : Displays Phone related settings

**✻ NOTICE**

- **If you press the [Call History] button but there is no call history data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download call history data.**
- **If you press the [Phone book] button but there is no phone book data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download phone book data.**
- **This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information on download support, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 241



### Calling by Dialing a Number

Press the PHONE key ▸ Select [Dial Number]




1) Dial Pad : Used to enter phone number
2) Call : If a number has been entered, calls the number If no number has been entered, switches to call history screen
3) End : Deletes the entered phone number
4) Delete : Deletes entered numbers one digit at a time

### Answering Calls

***Answering a Call***

Answering a call with a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected will display the following screen.




1) Caller : Displays the other party's name when the incoming caller is saved within your phone book
2) Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number
3) Accept : Accept the incoming call
4) Reject : Reject the incoming call

### ✻ NOTICE

- **When an incoming call pop-up is displayed, most Audio and SETUP mode features are disabled. Only the call volume will operate.**
- **The telephone number may not be properly displayed in some mobile phones.**
- **When a call is answered with the mobile phone, the call mode will automatically revert to Private mode.**

***During a Handsfree Call***




1) Caller : Displays the other party's name if the incoming caller is saved within your phone book
2) Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number
3) Call time : Displays the call time
4) End : Ends call
5) Private : Converts to Private mode
6) Out Vol. : Sets call volume as heard by the other party
7) Mute : Turns Mic Mute On/Off

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the mic is muted, the other party will not be able to hear your voice.**

### Call History

Press the PHONE key ▶ Select [Call History]




A list of incoming, outgoing and missed calls is displayed.

Press the [Download] button to download the call history.

1) Call History :
   - Displays recent calls (call history)
   - Connects call upon selection
2) Download : Download Recent Call History

### ✻ NOTICE

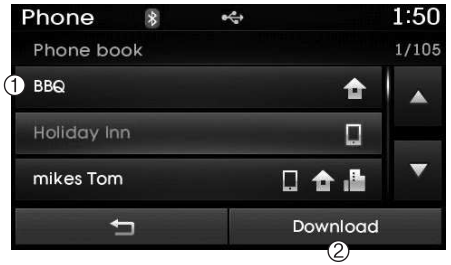
- **The call history list will display up to 30 outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.**
- **Upon downloading call histories, previously saved histories are deleted.**
- **Incoming calls with hidden caller IDs will not be saved in the call history list.**
- **Previously saved phone book entries are stored even if a device is disconnected and re-connected.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 243



### Phone Book

Press the PHONE key ▶ Select [Phone book]




The list of saved phone book entries is displayed. Press the [Download] button to download the call history.

1) Contact List :
   - Displays downloaded phone book entries
   - Connects call upon selection
2) Download : Download phone book entries

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be copied into car phone book.**
- **Upon downloading phone book data, previously saved phone book data will be deleted.**
- **Downloading is not possible if the phone book download feature is turned off within the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device. Also, some devices may require device authorization upon attempting to download. If downloading cannot be normally conducted, check the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device setting or the screen state.**
- **Caller ID information will not be displayed for unsaved callers.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 244



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE Voice Recognition

- **When using the voice recognition feature, only commands listed within the user's manual are supported.**
- **Be aware that during the operation of the voice recognition system, pressing any key other than the key or touching the screen will terminate voice recognition mode.**
- **For superior voice recognition performance, position the microphone used for voice recognition above the head of the driver's seat and maintain a proper position when saying commands.**
- **Within the following situations, voice recognition may not function properly due to external sound.**
  - **When the windows and sunroof are open**
  - **When the wind of the cooling / heating device is strong**
  - **When entering and passing through tunnels**
  - **When driving on rugged and uneven roads**
  - **During severe rain (heavy rains, windstorms)**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Phone related voice commands can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is connected.**
- **When making calls by stating a name, the corresponding contact must be downloaded and stored within the audio system.**
- **After downloading the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone book, it takes some times to convert the phone book data into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not properly operate.**
- **Pronounce the voice commands naturally and clearly as if in a normal conversation.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 245



## VOICE RECOGNITION

### Using Voice Recognition

***Starting Voice Recognition***

Shortly press the key on the steering wheel remote controller Say a command




If voice recognition is in [Normal Mode], then the system will say “Please say a command. Beep~”

- If voice recognition is in [Expert Mode], then the system will only say a “Beep~”
- To change the Normal Mode/Expert Mode setting, go to SETUP ▶ [System] ▶ [Prompt Feedback] / [Voice Recognition System].

### ✻ NOTICE

**For proper recognition, say the command after the voice instruction and beep tone.**

Contact List Best Practices

1) Do not store single-name entries (e.g., “Bob”, “Mom”, “Kim”, etc.). Instead, always use full names (including first and last names) for all contacts (e.g., use “Jacob Stevenson” instead of “Dad”).
2) Do not use abbreviations (i.e., use “Lieutenant” instead of “Lt.” or “Sergeant” instead of “Sgt.”).
3) Do not use acronyms (i.e., use “County Finance Department” instead of “CFD”).
4) Do not use special characters (e.g., “@”, “hyphen -“, “asterisk *”, ampersand &”).
5) If a name is not recognized from the contact list, change it to a more descriptive name (e.g., use “Grandpa Joseph” instead of “Pa Joe”).

***Skipping Prompt Messages***

While prompt message is being stated ▶ Shortly press the key on the steering wheel remote controller

The prompt message is immediately ended and the beep tone will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

***Re-starting Voice Recognition***

While system waits for a command ▶ Shortly press the key on the steering wheel remote controller

The command wait state is immediately ended and the beep ton will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 246



## ENDING VOICE RECOGNITION

While Voice Recognition is operating ▶ Press and hold the key on the steering wheel remote controller

### ✻ NOTICE

- **While using voice command, pressing a steering wheel remote control or a different key will end voice command.**
- **When the system is waiting for a voice command, say “cancel” or “end” to end voice command.**
- **When the system is waiting for a voice command, press and hold the key on the steering wheel remote controller to end voice command.**

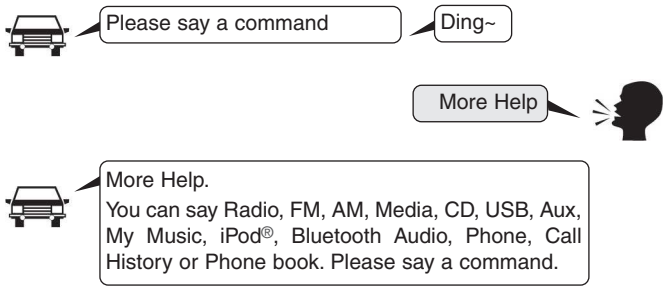
EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 247



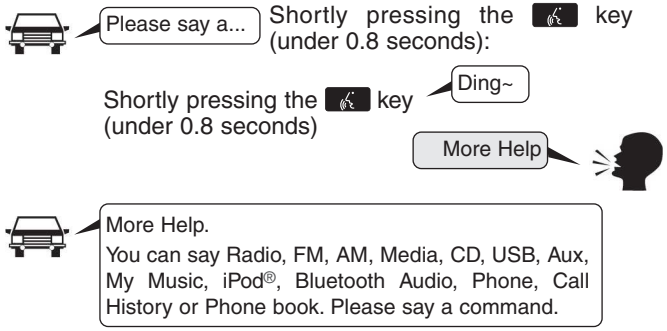
❈ Illustration on using voice commands

***• Starting voice command.***

Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):

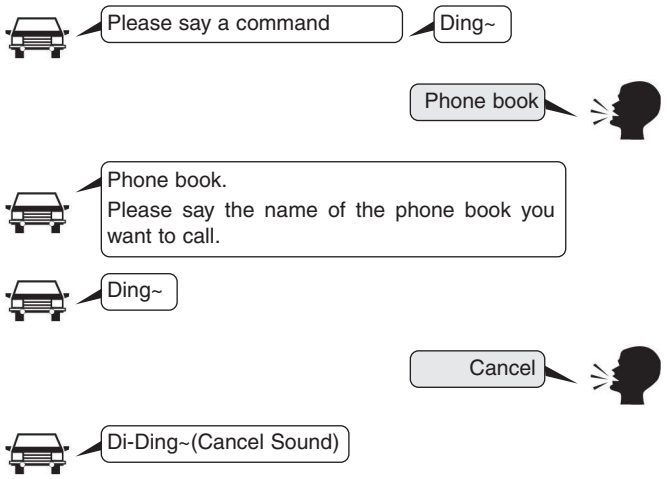



***• Skipping Voice Recognition***




***• End voice command.***

Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):



EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 248



### Voice Command List

• Common Commands: These commands can be used in most operations. (However a few commands may not be available during certain operations)

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| More Help | Provides guidance on commands that can be used anywhere in the system. |
| Help | Provides guidance on commands that can be used within the current mode. |
| Call<Name> | Calls <Name> saved in phone book<br>Ex) Call “John Smith” |
| Phone | Provides guidance on Phone related commands. After saying this command, say “Call History”, “Phone book”, “Dial Number” to execute corresponding functions. |
| Call History | Displays the Call History screen. |
| Phone book | Displays the phone book screen. After saying this command, say the name of a phone book saved in the phone book to automatically connect the call. |
| Dial Number | Display the Dial number screen. After saying this command, you can say the number that you want to call. |
| Redial | Connects the most recently called number. |
| Radio | • When listening to the radio, displays the next radio screen. (FM1➟ FM2➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA)<br>• When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played radio screen. |

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| FM | • When currently listening to the FM radio, maintains the current state.<br>• When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played FM screen. |
| FM1(FM One) | Displays the FM1 screen. |
| FM2(FM Two) | Displays the FM2 screen. |
| FMA | Displays the FMA screen. |
| AM | Displays the AM screen. |
| AMA | Displays the AMA screen. |
| FM Preset 1~6 | Plays the most recently played broadcast saved in FM Preset 1~6. |
| AM Preset 1~6 | Plays the broadcast saved in AM Preset 1~6. |
| FM 87.5~107.9 | Plays the FM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. |
| AM 530~1710 | Plays the AM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. |
| TA on | Enable Traffic Announcement |
| TA off | Disable Traffic Announcement |
| News on | Enable RDS News feature |
| News off | Disable RDS News feature |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 249



| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Media | Moves to the most recently played media screen. |
| Play Track 1~30 | If a music CD has been inserted, plays the corresponding track. |
| CD | Plays the music saved in the CD. |
| Search CD | Moves to the CD track or file selection screen.<br>• For audio CDs, move to the screen and say the track number to play the corresponding track.<br>• Moves to MP3 CD file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| USB | Plays USB music. |
| Search USB | Moves to USB file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| iPod® | Plays iPod® music. |
| Search iPod® | Moves to the iPod® file selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| My Music | Plays the music saved in My Music. |
| Search My Music | Moves to My Music file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| AUX (Auxiliary) | Plays the connected external device. |
| *Bluetooth* Audio | Plays the music saved in connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device. |
| Mute | Mutes the radio or music volume. |
| Pardon? | Repeats the most recent comment. |
| Cancel (Exit) | Ends voice command. |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 250



• FM/AM radio commands: Commands available during FM, AM radio operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Preset 1~6 | Plays the broadcast saved in Preset 1~6. |
| Auto Store | Automatically selects radio broadcast frequencies with superior reception and saves in Presets 1~6. |
| Preset Save 1~6 | Saves the current broadcast frequency to Preset 1~6. |
| Seek up | Plays the next (higher) receivable broadcast. |
| Seek down | Plays the previous (lower) receivable broadcast. |
| Next Preset | Selects the preset number next to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 4 will be selected.) |
| Previous Preset | Selects the preset number previous to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 2 will be selected.) |
| Scan | Scans receivable frequencies from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each. |
| Preset Scan | Moves to the next preset from the current present and plays for 10 seconds each. |
| AF on | Enable Alternative Frequency feature |
| AF off | Disable Alternative Frequency feature |
| Region | Enable Region feature |

• Audio CD commands: Commands available during Audio CD operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Region off | Disable Region feature |
| Program Type | Moves to the RDS Program type selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select a desired program type. |
| Random | Randomly plays the tracks within the CD. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play tracks in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current track. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play tracks in sequential order. |
| Next Track | Plays the next track. |
| Previous Track | Plays the previous track. |
| Scan | Scans the tracks from the next track for 10 seconds each. |
| Track 1~30 | Plays the desired track number. |
| Search Track | Moves to the track selection screen. After, say the track name to play the corresponding track. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current track. |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 251



• MP3 CD / USB commands: Commands available during USB and MP3 CD operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Random | Randomly plays the files within the current folder. |
| All Random | Randomly plays all saved files. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play files in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current file. |
| Folder Repeat | Repeats all files in the current folder. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order. |
| Next File | Plays the next file. |
| Previous File | Plays the previous file. |
| Scan | Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each. |
| Search File | Moves to the file selection screen. |
| Search Folder | Moves to the folder selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current file. |
| Copy | Copies the current file into My Music. |

• iPod® Commands: Commands available during iPod® operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| All Random | Randomly plays all saved songs. |
| Random | Randomly plays the songs within the current category. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play songs in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current song. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play songs in sequential order. |
| Next Song | Plays the next song. |
| Previous Song | Plays the previous song. |
| Search Song | Moves to the song selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current song. |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 252



• My Music Commands: Commands available during My Music operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Random | Randomly plays all saved files. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play files in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current file. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order. |
| Next File | Plays the next file. |
| Previous File | Plays the previous file. |
| Scan | Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each. |
| Search File | Moves to the file selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current file. |
| Delete | Deletes the current file. You will bypass an additional confirmation process. |
| Delete All | Deletes all files saved in My Music. You will bypass an additional confirmation process. |

• *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Commands: Commands available during *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio streaming from mobile phone operation Command Operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Play | Plays the currently paused song. |
| Pause | Pauses the current song. |

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 253



## SETUP

### Starting Mode

Press the SETUP key to display the Setup screen.

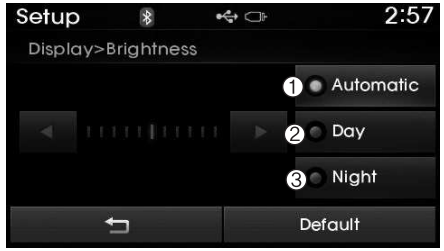



You can select and control options related to [Display], [Sound], [Clock/Day], [Phone] and [System].

### Display Settings

#### *Adjusting the Brightness*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Display] ▶ Select [Brightness]




Use the ◀, ▶ buttons to adjust the screen brightness or set the Brightness on Automatic, Day, or Night mode.
Press the Default button to reset.

1) Automatic : Adjusts the brightness automatically
2) Day : Always maintains the brightness on high
3) Night : Always maintains the brightness on low

#### *Pop-up Mode*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Display] ▶ Select [Pop-up Mode]




This feature is used to display the Pop-up Mode screen when entering radio and media modes.
When this feature is turned on, pressing the RADIO or MEDIA key will display the Pop-up Mode screen.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The media Pop-up Mode screen can be displayed only when two or more media modes have been connected.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 254



***Scroll Text***

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Display] ▶ Select [Scroll text]




This feature is used to scroll text displayed on the screen when it is too long to be displayed at once.

When turned on, the text is repeatedly scrolled. When turned off, the text is scrolled just once.

***MP3 Information Display***

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Display] ▶ Select [Song Info]




This feature is used to change the information displayed within USB and MP3 CD modes.

1) Folder File : Displays file name and folder name
2) Album Artist Song : Displays album name/artist name/song

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 255



## Sound Settings

### *Sound Settings*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Sound] ▶ Select [Audio Setting]







Use the ◀, ▶, ▲, ▼ buttons to adjust the Fader/Balance settings.

Use the ◀, ▶ buttons to adjust the Bass/Middle/Treble settings.

Press the Default button to reset.

### *SDVC (Speed Dependent Volume Control)*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Sound] ▶ Select [Speed Dependent Vol.]




The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from Off/Low/Mid/High.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 256



### *Voice Recognition Setting*

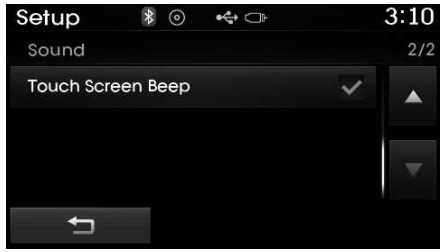
Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Sound] ▶ Select [Volume Dialogue]




Use the -, + buttons to adjust the Volume Dialog.

### *Touch Screen Beep*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Sound] ▶ Select [Touch Screen Beep]



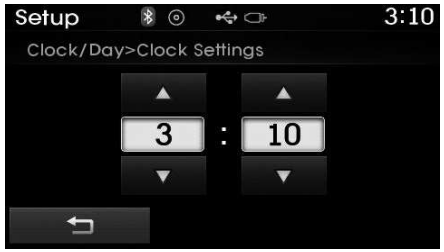

This feature is used to turn the touch screen beep on/off.

## Clock/Day Setting

### *Setting*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Clock/Day] ▶ Select [Clock Settings]

Use the ▲, ▼ buttons to set the Hour, Minutes and AM/PM setting.




### ✻ NOTICE

**Press and hold the CLOCK key (over 0.8 seconds) to display the Clock/ Day screen.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 257



### *Day Setting*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Clock/Day] ▶ Select [Day Settings]




Use the ▲, ▼ buttons to set the Day, Month and Year setting.

### *Time Format*

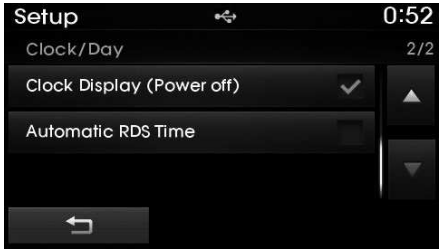
Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Clock/Day] ▶ Select [Time Format]




This feature is used to change the clock format between 12hr or 24hr.

### *Clock Display*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Clock/Day] ▶ Select [Clock Display (Power off)]



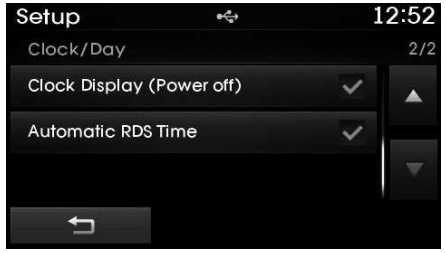

This feature is used to display a clock on the screen when the audio system is turned off.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 258



***Automatic RDS Time***

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Clock/Day] ▸ Select [Automatic RDS Time]




This feature is used to set time automatically by synchronizing with RDS.

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 259



## *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Setting

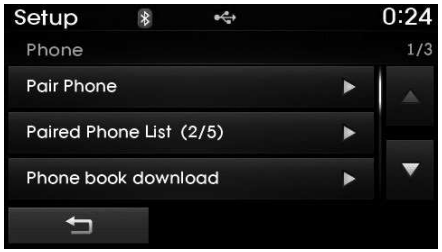
The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners. A *Bluetooth®* enabled cell phone is required to use *Bluetooth®* wireless technology

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.**

### *Pairing a New Device*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Pair Phone]




*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices can be paired with the audio system.

For more information, refer to the "Pairing through Phone Setup" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

### *Viewing Paired Phone List*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List]




This feature is used to view mobile phones that have been paired with the audio system. Upon selecting a paired phone, the setup menu is displayed.

For more information, refer to the "Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Connection" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

1) ⮌ : Moves to the previous screen
2) Connect/Disconnect Phone : Connect/disconnects currently selected phone
3) Delete : Deletes the currently selected phone
4) Change Priority : Sets currently selected phone to highest connection priority

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 260



## ✻ NOTICE BEFORE DOWNLOADING PHONE BOOKS

- **Only phone books within connected phones can be downloaded. Also check to see that your mobile phone supports the download feature.**
- **To learn more about whether your mobile phone supports phone book downloads, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**
- **The Phone book for only the connected phone can be downloaded. Before downloading, check to see whether your phone supports the download feature.**

### *Downloading Phone books*

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Phone book Download]



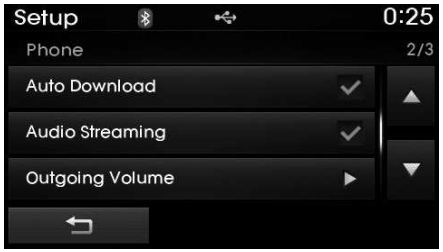

The Phone book is downloaded from the mobile phone and the download progress is displayed.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be copied into car phone book.**
- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be saved for each paired device.**
- **Upon downloading phone book data, previously saved phone book data will be deleted. However, Phone book entries saved to other paired phones are not deleted.**

### *Auto Download (Phone Book)*

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Phone] ▸ Select [Auto Download]




This feature is used to automatically download mobile phone book entries once a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone is connected.

## ✻ NOTICE

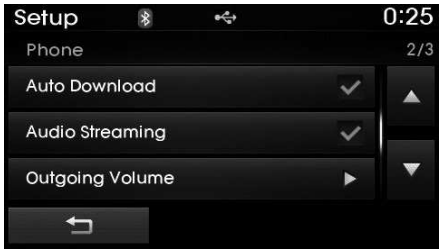
- **The Auto Download feature will download mobile phone book entries every time the phone is connected. The download time may differ depending on the number of saved phone book entries and the communication state.**
- **When downloading a phone book, first check to see that your mobile phone supports the phone book download feature.**

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 261



### *Audio Streaming*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Audio Streaming]




When Audio Streaming is turned on, you can play music files saved in your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device through the audio system.

### *Outgoing Volume*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Outgoing Volume]




Use the −, + buttons to adjust the outgoing volume level.

### *Turning Bluetooth System Off*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Bluetooth System Off]

Once *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology is turned off, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features will not be supported within the audio system.







**✻ NOTICE**

**To turn *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology back on, go to SETUP ▶ [Phone] and press "Yes".**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Bluetooth® Wireless Technology audio streaming may not be supported in some Bluetooth® Wireless Technology phones.***

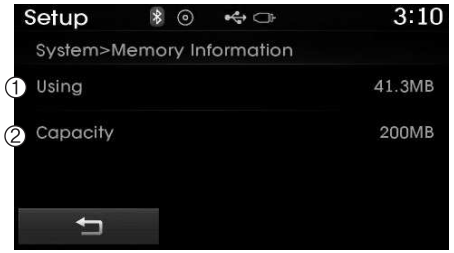
EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 262



## System Setting

### *Memory Information*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [System] ▶ Select [Memory Information]

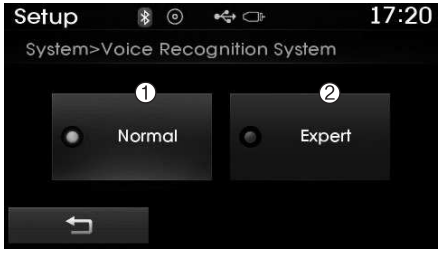



This feature displays information related to system memory.

1) Using : Displays capacity currently in use
2) Capacity : Displays total capacity

### *Voice Recognition Mode Setting*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [System] ▶ Select [Voice Recognition System]




This feature is used to select the desired prompt feedback option from Normal and Expert.

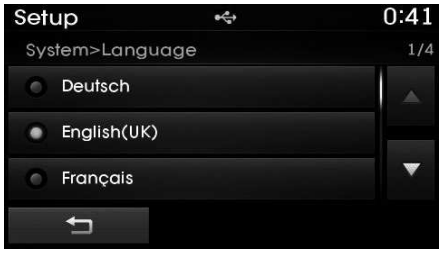
1) Normal : When using voice recognition, provides detailed guidance prompts
2) Expert : When using voice recognition, omits some guidance prompts

### ✻ NOTICE

**Voice Recognition is depend on the Audio System.**

### *Language*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [System] ▶ Select [Language]




This feature is used to change the system and voice recognition language.

If the language is changed, the system will restart and apply the selected language.

✻ Language support by region

Deutsch, English(UK), Français, Italiano, Español, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Polski Turkish

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 263



## REAR VIEW CAMERA (if equipped)

- The system has been equipped with a rear view camera for user safety by allowing a wider rear range of vision.
- The rear view camera will automatically operate when the ignition key is turned ON and the transmission lever is set to R.
- The rear view camera will automatically stop operating when set to a different lever.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The rear view camera has been equipped with an optical lens to provide a wider range of vision and may appear different from the actual distance. For safety, directly check the rear and left/right sides.***

EL(FL) Eng 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/11/2013 11:21 AM Page 264



## APPENDIX

| Name | | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 12hr | | 12 Hour |
| 24hr | | 24 Hour |
| AST(A.Store) | | Automatically selects and saves channels |
| AMA | | AM Radio (Auto store) |
| AUX | | External Audio mode |
| Bass | | Deep sound |
| Treble | | High sound |
| BT Audio | | *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio |
| FMA | | FM Radio (Auto store) |
| Power Bass | | This is a sound system feature that provides live bass. |
| Power Treble | | This is a sound system feature that provides live treble. |
| Preset | | Saved radio frequency |
| RDS Search | | Radio Data System Search |
| TA Off | | Traffic Announcement |

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 1

# Driving your vehicle


**Before driving** . . . . . 5-4
- Before entering vehicle . . . . . 5-4
- Necessary inspections . . . . . 5-4
- Before starting . . . . . 5-4

**Key positions** . . . . . 5-5
- Illuminated ignition switch . . . . . 5-5
- Ignition switch position . . . . . 5-6
- Starting the engine . . . . . 5-7

**Engine start/stop button** . . . . . 5-9
- Illuminated engine start/stop button . . . . . 5-9
- Engine start/stop button position . . . . . 5-9
- Starting the engine . . . . . 5-12

**ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system** . . . . . 5-15
- Auto stop . . . . . 5-15
- Auto start . . . . . 5-16
- Condition of ISG system operation . . . . . 5-17
- ISG system deactivation . . . . . 5-17
- ISG system malfunction . . . . . 5-18

**Manual transaxle** . . . . . 5-19
- Manual transaxle operation . . . . . 5-19
- Good driving practices . . . . . 5-21

**Automatic transaxle** . . . . . 5-22
- Automatic transaxle operation . . . . . 5-23
- Good driving practices . . . . . 5-27

**Four wheel drive (4WD)** . . . . . 5-28
- Tight corner brake effect . . . . . 5-28
- Four Wheel Drive (4WD) transfer mode selection . 5-29
- For safe four-wheel drive operation . . . . . 5-30
- Reducing the risk of a rollover . . . . . 5-32

**Brake system** . . . . . 5-35
- Power brakes . . . . . 5-35
- Parking brake . . . . . 5-36
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) . . . . . 5-38
- Electronic stability control (ESC) . . . . . 5-41
- Vehicle stability management (VSM) . . . . . 5-44
- Hill-start assist control (HAC) . . . . . 5-45
- Downhill brake control (DBC) . . . . . 5-46
- Emergency stop signal (ESS) . . . . . 5-47
- Trailer stability assist (TSA) . . . . . 5-47
- Good braking practices . . . . . 5-48

**Cruise control system** . . . . . 5-50
- To set cruise control speed . . . . . 5-51
- To increase cruise control set speed . . . . . 5-51
- To decrease the cruising speed . . . . . 5-52
- To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on . . . . . 5-52
- To cancel cruise control, do one of the following . . . 5-52
- To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) . . . . . 5-53

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 2

• To turn cruise control off, do one of the following . 5-53
**Active ECO system** . . . . . 5-54
• Active ECO operation. . . . . 5-54
• When Active ECO is activated. . . . . 5-54
• Limitation of Active ECO operation . . . . . 5-54
**Economical operation** . . . . . 5-55
**Special driving conditions** . . . . . 5-57
• Hazardous driving conditions . . . . . 5-57
• Rocking the vehicle . . . . . 5-57
• Smooth cornering . . . . . 5-58
• Driving at night . . . . . 5-58
• Driving in the rain. . . . . 5-59
• Driving in flooded areas . . . . . 5-59
• Driving off-road. . . . . 5-59
• Highway driving . . . . . 5-60
**Winter driving** . . . . . 5-61
• Snowy or Icy conditions . . . . . 5-61
• Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant. . . . . 5-63
• Check battery and cables . . . . . 5-63
• Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary . . . . . 5-63
• Check spark plugs and ignition system. . . . . 5-63
• To keep locks from freezing . . . . . 5-64
• Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system . . . . . 5-64
• Don't let your parking brake freeze . . . . . 5-64
• Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath . . . . 5-64
• Carry emergency equipment . . . . . 5-64
**Trailer towing** . . . . . 5-65
• Hitches . . . . . 5-66
• Safety chains . . . . . 5-67
• Trailer brakes . . . . . 5-67
• Driving with a trailer . . . . . 5-67
**Vehicle weight** . . . . . 5-74
• Base curb weight . . . . . 5-74
• Vehicle curb weight. . . . . 5-74
• Cargo weight . . . . . 5-74
• GAW (Gross axle weight) . . . . . 5-74
• GAWR (Gross axle weight rating). . . . . 5-74
• GVW (Gross vehicle weight) . . . . . 5-74
• GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating) . . . . . 5-74
• Overloading . . . . . 5-74

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 3



**⚠ WARNING - ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!**

Engine exhaust fumes can be extremely dangerous. If, at any time, you smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately.

- **Do not inhale exhaust fumes.**
  Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.
- **Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.**
  The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.
- **Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.**
  Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Never run the engine in your garage any longer than it takes to start the engine and back the vehicle out.
- **Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the vehicle.**
  If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the vehicle, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan operating at one of the higher speeds so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

If you must drive with the tailgate open because you are carrying objects that make this necessary:

1. Close all windows.
2. Open side vents.
3. Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at one of the higher speeds.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, be sure the ventilation air intakes located just in front of the windshield are kept clear of snow, ice, leaves or other obstructions.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 4



## BEFORE DRIVING

### Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tires.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

### Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, with the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in Section 7, “Maintenance”.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver’s primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver’s eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.**

### Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. Refer to “Seat belts” in section 3 for more information on their proper use.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a vehicle into “Drive” or “Reverse”.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 5



**⚠ WARNING - Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs**

**Drinking and driving is dangerous. Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgement. Driving while under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving drunk.**

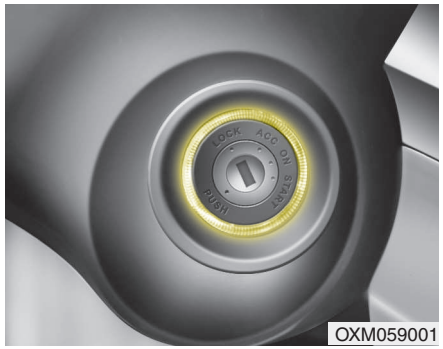
**You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive.**

**If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a cab.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.**
- **When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Keep all things in the vehicle safely stored.**
- **If you do not focus on driving, it may cause an accident. Be careful when operating what may disturb driving such as audio or heater. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely.**

## KEY POSITIONS



OXM059001

### Illuminated ignition switch (if equipped)

Whenever a front door is opened, the ignition switch will be illuminated for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on or go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 6



### Ignition switch position

***LOCK***

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position. When turning the ignition switch to the LOCK position, push the key inward at the ACC position and turn the key toward the LOCK position.

***ACC (Accessory)***

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key while turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.**

***ON***

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

*Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.*

***START***

Turn the ignition key to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning lamp can be checked in this position.

#### ⚠ WARNING - Ignition key

- **Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC while the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in 1st gear for the manual transaxle or P (Park) for the automatic transaxle, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**
- **Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move while driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 7



## Starting the engine

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal, and the clutch (if equipped).**

### ✻ NOTICE - Kick down mechanism (if equipped)

**If your vehicle is equipped with a kick down mechanism in the accelerator pedal, it prevents you from driving at full throttle unintentionally by making the driver require increased effort to depress the accelerator pedal. However, if you depress the pedal more than approximately 80%, the vehicle can be at full throttle and the accelerator pedal will be easier to depress. This is not a malfunction but a normal condition.**

***Starting the gasoline engine (if equipped)***

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed while turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.
4. In extremely cold weather (below -18°C / 0°F) or after the vehicle has not been operated for several days, let the engine warm up without depressing the accelerator.

*Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started* ***without depressing the accelerator.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the engine stalls while you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.***

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 8



***Starting the diesel engine (if equipped)***

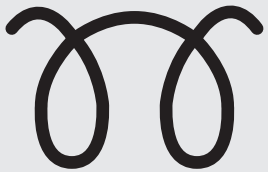
To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed while turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P(park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N(neutral) position.*

Glow indicator light



W-60

3. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position to pre-heat the engine. Then the glow indicator light will illuminate.
4. If the glow indicator light goes out, turn the ignition switch to the START position and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the engine were not started within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position during 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.**

**Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler**

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.

   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.

   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbo charger unit.***

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 9



## ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (IF EQUIPPED)



OLM059005

### Illuminated engine start/stop button

Whenever the front door is opened, the engine start/stop button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. It will also go off immediately when the theft-alarm system is armed.

### Engine start/stop button position

***OFF***



Not illuminated

**• With manual transaxle**

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), stop the vehicle then press the engine start/stop button.

**• With automatic transaxle**

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the engine start/stop button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the engine start/stop button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

Also, the steering wheel locks when the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position to protect you against theft. It locks when the door is opened.

If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound. Try locking the steering wheel again. If the problem is not solved, we recommend, that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

In addition, if the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position after the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel will not lock and the warning chime will sound. In such a situation, close the door. Then the steering wheel will lock and the warning chime will stop.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the engine start/stop button will not work. Press the engine start/stop button while turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 10



**⚠ CAUTION**

***You are able to turn off the engine (START/RUN) or vehicle power (ON), only when the vehicle is not in motion. In an emergency situation while the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the engine start/stop button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.***

***ACC(Accessory)***



Orange indicator

**• With manual transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the clutch pedal.

**• With automatic transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button while it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

The steering wheel unlocks and electrical accessories are operational.

If the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

***ON***



Blue indicator

**• With manual transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the ACC position without depressing the clutch pedal.

**• With automatic transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button while it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the engine start/stop button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 11



***START/RUN***



Not illuminated

**• With manual transaxle**

To start the engine, depress the clutch pedal and brake pedal, then press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

**• With automatic transaxle**

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

## ✻ NOTICE

**If you press the engine start/stop button without depressing the clutch pedal for manual transaxle vehicles or without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transaxle vehicles, the engine will not start and the engine start/stop button changes as follow:**
**OFF ➔ACC ➔ ON ➔ OFF or ACC**

## ✻ NOTICE

**If you leave the engine start/stop button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.**

## ⚠ WARNING

- **Never press the engine start/stop button while the vehicle is in motion. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never reach for the engine start/stop button or any other controls through the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in the area could cause loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move while driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 12



## Starting the engine

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal.**

### *Starting the gasoline engine (if equipped)*

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied.
3. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed while starting the engine.

   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*
4. Press the engine start/stop button.
5. In extremely cold weather (below -18°C / 0°F) or after the vehicle has not been operated for several days, let the engine warm up without depressing the accelerator.

Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without depressing the accelerator.

### *Starting the diesel engine (if equipped)*

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed while pressing the engine start/stop button to the START position.

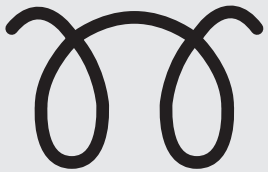
   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:01 AM Page 13



Glow indicator light



W-60

3. Press the engine start/stop button while depressing the brake pedal.
4. Continue depressing the brake pedal until the illuminated glow indicator goes off. (approximately 5 seconds)
5. The engine starts running when the glow indicator goes off.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the engine start/stop button is pressed once more while the engine is pre-heating, the engine may start.**

**Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler**

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.
   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.
   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.***

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the " " indicator and the "KEY OUT" indicator will blink. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off while the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

### ⚠ WARNING

**The engine will start, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.**

**Never allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle touch the engine start/stop button or related parts.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:02 AM Page 14



### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the engine stalls while the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and press the engine start/stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.***




OEL053007

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button with the smart key.**
- **When the brake switch fuse is blown, you cannot start the engine normally. Replace the fuse with a new one. If not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button for 10 seconds while it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not press the engine start/stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the brake switch fuse is blown.***

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:02 AM Page 15



## ISG (IDLE STOP AND GO) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ISG system, which reduces fuel consumption by automatically shutting down the engine, when the vehicle is at a standstill. (For example : red light, stop sign and traffic jam)

The engine starts automatically as soon as the starting conditions are met.

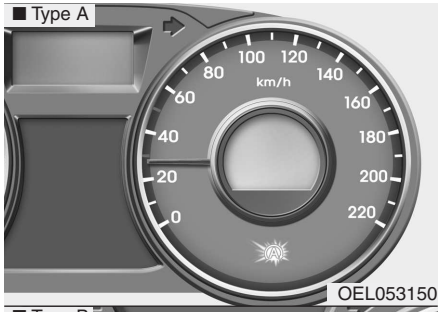
The ISG system is ON whenever the engine is running.

### ✻ NOTICE

**When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESC, ESC OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.**

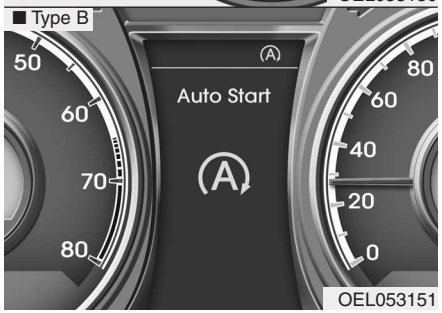
**This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean the system is malfunctioning.**

■ Type A




OEL053150

■ Type B




OEL053151

### Auto stop

***To stop the engine in idle stop mode***

1. Decrease the vehicle speed to less than 5 km/h.
2. Shift into N (Neutral) position.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will stop and the green AUTO STOP indicator ((Ⓐ)) on the instrument cluster will illuminate. If your vehicle is equipped with a supervision cluster, the notice will illuminate on the LCD display.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:02 AM Page 16



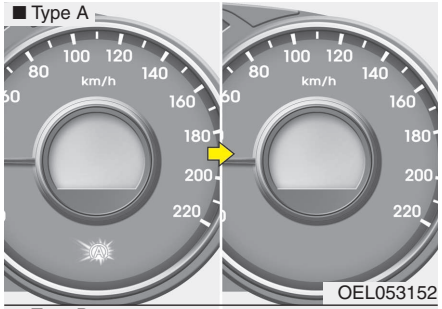



OLM053202N

## ✻ NOTICE

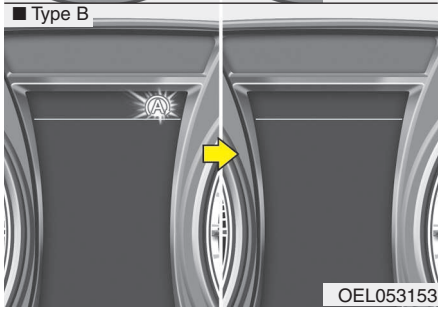
- **You must reach a speed of at least 10 km/h since last idle stop.**
- **If you unfasten the seat belt or open the driver's door (engine hood) in auto stop mode, the light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and ISG system is deactivated. If your vehicle is equipped with a supervision cluster, the notice will illuminate on the LCD display.**
  **Turn the ignition switch to the START position to start the engine manually.**

■ Type A




OEL053152

■ Type B



OEL053153

### Auto start

***To restart the engine from idle stop mode***

- Press the clutch pedal when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

The engine will start and the green AUTO STOP indicator (Ⓐ) on the instrument cluster will go out.

***The engine will also restart automatically without the driver's any actions if the following occurs:***

- The fan speed of manual climate control system is set above the 3rd position when the air conditioning is on.
- The fan speed of automatic climate control system is set above the 6th position when the air conditioning is on.
- When a certain amount of time has passed with the climate control system on.
- When the defroster is on.
- The brake vaccum pressure is low.
- The battery charging status is low.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h.

The green AUTO STOP indicator (Ⓐ) on the instrument cluster will blink for 5 seconds and the notice will illuminate on the LCD display (if equipped).

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:02 AM Page 17



### Condition of ISG system operation

***The ISG system will operate under the following condition:***

- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door and hood are closed.
- The brake vaccum pressure is adequate.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The outside temperature is between 2°C to 35°C.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too low.



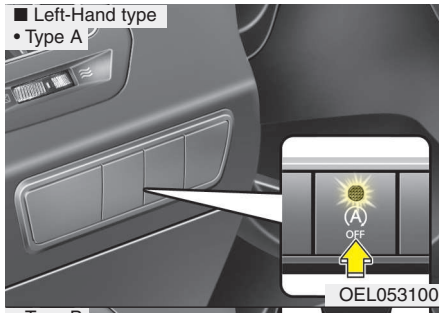

OLM053201N

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the ISG system does not meet that operation condition, the ISG system is deactivated. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and the notice will illuminate on the LCD display (if equipped).**
- **If the light or notice is come on continuously, please check the operation condition.**

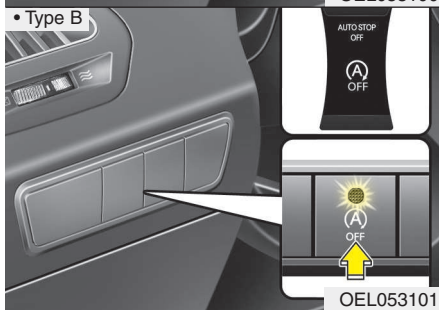
■ Left-Hand type

• Type A




OEL053100

• Type B




OEL053101

### ISG system deactivation

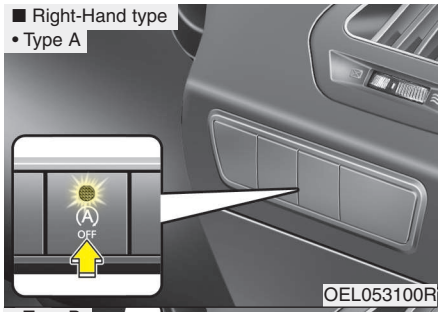
- If you desire to deactivate the ISG system, press the ISG OFF button. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and the notice will illuminate on the LCD display (if equipped).

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:02 AM Page 18

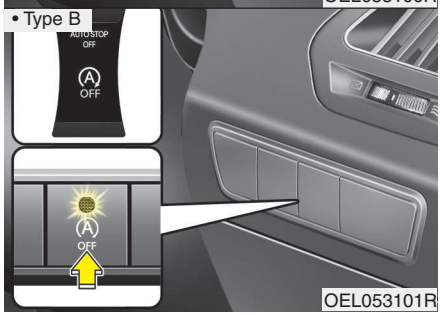


■ Right-Hand type

• Type A




• Type B




- If you press the ISG OFF button again, the system will be activated and the light on the ISG OFF button will turn off.

### ISG system malfunction

***The system may not operate when:***

- The ISG related sensors or system error occurs.

The yellow AUTO STOP indicator (Ⓐ) on the instrument cluster will stay on after blinking for 5 seconds and the light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the ISG OFF button light is not turned off by pressing the ISG OFF button again or if the ISG system continuously does not work correctly, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **When the ISG OFF button light comes on, it may stop illuminating after driving your vehicle at approximately 80 km/h for a maximum of two hours and setting the fan speed control knob below the 2nd position. If the ISG OFF button light continues to be illuminated in spite of the procedure, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

### ⚠ WARNING

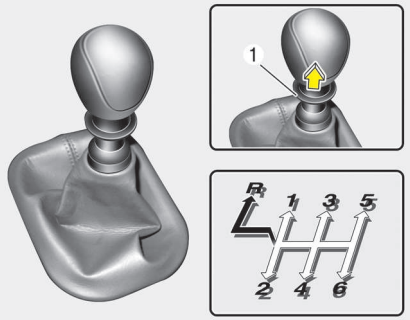
**When the engine is in Idle Stop mode, it's possible to restart the engine without the driver taking any action.**

**Before leaving the car or doing anything in the engine room area, stop the engine by turning the ignition switch to the LOCK(OFF) position or removing the ignition key.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:02 AM Page 19



## MANUAL TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)




⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pulling the ring (1).

➡ The ring (1) must be pulled up while moving the shift lever.

OEL059009

### Manual transaxle operation

The manual transaxle has 6 forward gears.

This shift pattern is imprinted on the shift knob. The transaxle is fully synchronized in all forward gears so shifting to either a higher or a lower gear is easily accomplished.

Press the clutch pedal down fully while shifting, then release it slowly.

If your vehicle is equipped with an ignition lock system, the engine will not start when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal. (if equipped)

The gearshift lever must be returned to the neutral position before shifting into R (Reverse). The ring located immediately below the shift knob must be pulled upward while moving the shift lever to the R position. (Type A)

*Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into R (Reverse).*

*Never operate the engine with the tachometer (rpm) in the red zone.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When downshifting from fifth gear to fourth gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently press the gear shift lever sideways in such a manner that second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such over-revving of the engine may possibly cause engine damage.***
- ***Do not downshift more than 2 gears or downshift the gear when the engine is running at high speed (5,000 RPM or higher). Such a downshifting may damage the engine.***

- During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transaxle lubricant has warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transaxle.
- If you've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1st or R (Reverse), put the shift lever in N (Neutral) position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1st or R (Reverse) gear position.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:02 AM Page 20



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an uphill grade, while waiting for a traffic light, etc.***
- ***Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transaxle shift forks.***
- ***When operating the clutch pedal, press the clutch pedal down fully. If you don¡¯t press the clutch pedal fully, the clutch may be damaged or noise may occur.***
- ***To prevent possible damage to the clutch system, do not start with the 2nd (second) gear engaged except when you start on a alippery road.***

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Then make sure the transaxle is shifted into 1st gear when the vehicle is parked on a level or uphill grade, and shifted into R (Reverse) on a downhill grade. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**
- **If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, it may move and cause a serious accident when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal while the parking brake is released and the shift lever not in the N(Neutral) position.**

***Using the clutch***

The clutch should be pressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be fully released while driving. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal while driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the vehicle on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the foot brake or parking brake to hold the vehicle on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When operating the clutch pedal, press the clutch pedal down fully. If you don't press the clutch pedal fully, the clutch may be damaged or noise may occur.***

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:02 AM Page 21



***Downshifting***

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or while driving up steep hills, downshift before the engine starts to labor. Downshifting reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you again need to increase your speed. When the vehicle is traveling down steep hills, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

## Good driving practices

- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This is extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear.
- Don't "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. This will help avoid over-revving the engine, which can cause damage.
- Slow down when you encounter cross winds. This gives you much better control of your vehicle.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into reverse. The transaxle can be damaged if you do not. To shift into reverse, depress the clutch, move the shift lever to neutral, wait three seconds, then shift to the reverse position.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

**⚠ WARNING**

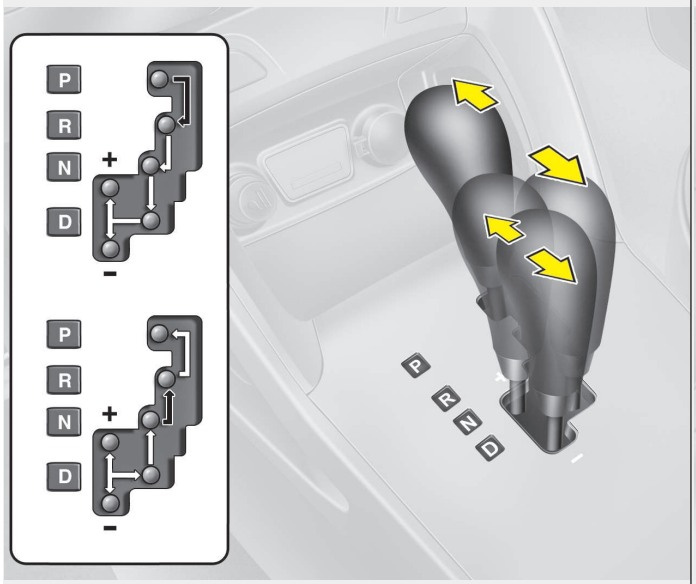
- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 22

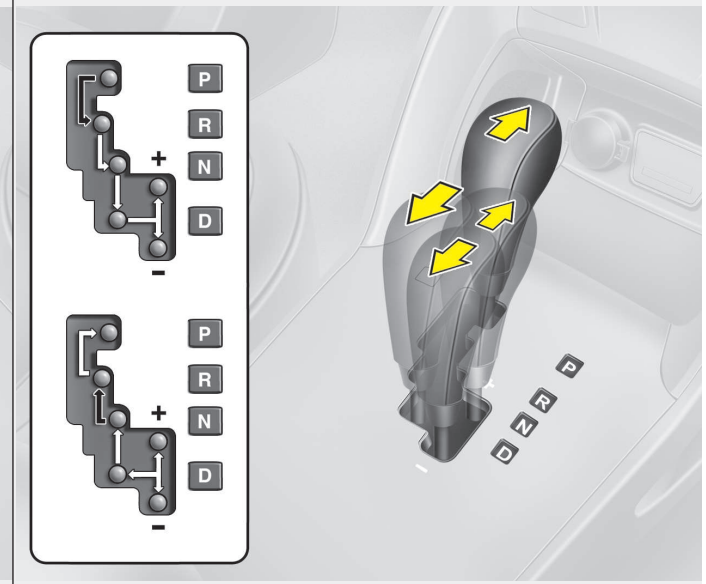


## AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A




■ Type B




➡ Depress the brake pedal when shifting, if your vehicle is equipped shift lock system.

⇨ The shift lever can be moved freely.

OEL059010/OEL059010R

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 23



### Automatic transaxle operation

The highly efficient automatic transaxle has 6 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

**✻ NOTICE**

**The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transaxle Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).**

*For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.*

**⚠ WARNING - Automatic transaxle**

- **Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid damage to your transaxle, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.***
- ***When stopped on an upgrade, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.***
- ***Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.***

***Transaxle ranges***

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

**P (Park)**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 24



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.**
- **Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The transaxle may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion.***

**R (Reverse)**

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transaxle if you shift into R (Reverse) while the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in "Rocking the vehicle", in this manual.***

**N (Neutral)**

The wheels and transaxle are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

**D (Drive)**

This is the normal forward driving position. The transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

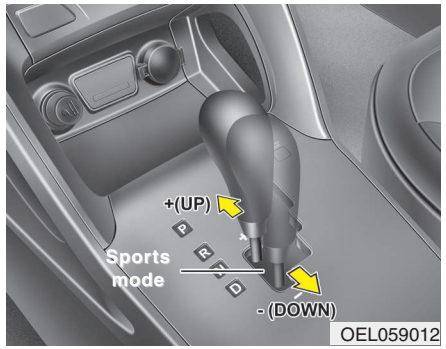
For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator fully, at which time the transaxle will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 25






**Sports mode**

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, sports mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In sports mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly. In contrast to a manual transaxle, the sports mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **In sports mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.**
- **In sports mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **In sports mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **In sports mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.**
- **To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.**
- **When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the -(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.**

***Shift lock system (if equipped)***

For your safety, the automatic transaxle has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift the transaxle from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

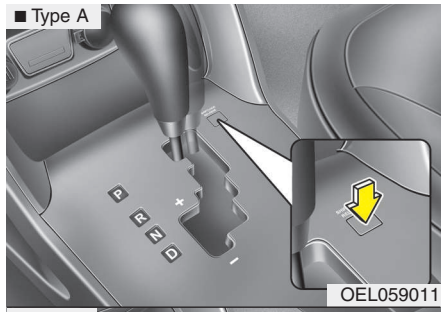
### ⚠ WARNING

**Always fully depress the brake pedal before and while shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 26

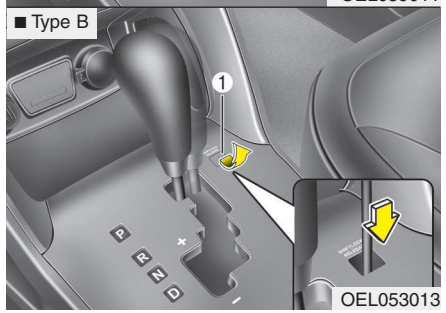


■ Type A




OEL059011

■ Type B




OEL053013

**Shift-lock override**

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

Type A

1. Press the shift-lock release button.
2. Move the shift lever.
3. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Type B

1. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock override access hole.
2. Insert a screwdriver into the access hole and press down on the screwdriver.
3. Move the shift lever.
4. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)**

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position. Even the ignition switch is in LOCK position, the key cannot be removed.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 27



## Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into "P" when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**

### *Moving up a steep grade from a standing start*

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually while releasing the service brakes.

**When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 28



## FOUR WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) (IF EQUIPPED)

Engine power can be delivered to all front and rear wheels for maximum traction. 4WD is useful when extra traction is required on road, such as, when driving on slippery, muddy, wet, or snow-covered roads. These vehicles are not designed for challenging off-road use. Occasional off-road use such as established unpaved roads and trails are OK. It is always important when traveling off-highway that the driver carefully reduces the speed to a level that does not exceed the safe operating speed for those conditions. In general, off-road conditions provide less traction and braking effectiveness than normal road conditions. The driver must be especially alert to avoid driving on slopes which tilt the vehicle to either side.

These factors must be carefully considered when driving off-road. Keeping the vehicle in contact with the driving surface and under control in these conditions is always the driver's responsibility for the safety of him/herself and his or her passengers.

**⚠ WARNING - Off road driving**

**This vehicle is designed primarily for on road use although it can operate effectively off road. However, it was not designed to drive in challenging off-road conditions. Driving in conditions that exceed the vehicle's intended design or the driver's experience level may result in severe injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the 4WD system warning light ( ) illuminates, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the 4WD system.**

**If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

### Tight corner brake effect

**⚠ CAUTION - 4WD**

***When turning sharply on a paved road at low speed while in four-wheel drive, steering control will be difficult.***

Tight corner brake effect is a unique characteristic of four-wheel drive vehicles caused by the difference in tire rotation at the four wheels and the zero-degree alignment of the front wheels and suspension.

Sharp turns at low speeds should be carried out with caution.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 29



**Four Wheel Drive (4WD) transfer mode selection**

| Transfer mode | Selection button | Indicator light | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| **4WD AUTO** (4WD LOCK is deactivated) |  |  (Indicator light is not illuminated) | • When driving in 4WD AUTO mode, the vehicle operates similar to conventional 2WD vehicles under normal operating conditions. However, if the system determines that there is a need for the 4WD mode, the engine's driving power is distributed to all four wheels automatically without driver intervention.<br>• When driving on normal roads and pavement, the vehicle moves similar to conventional 2WD vehicles. |
| **4WD LOCK** |  |  (Indicator light is illuminated) | • This mode is used for climbing or descending sharp grades, off-road driving, driving on sandy and muddy roads, etc., to maximize traction.<br>• This mode automatically begins to deactivate at speeds above 30 km/h (19 mph) and is shifted to 4WD AUTO mode at speed above 40 km/h (25 mph). If the vehicle decelerates to speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph), however, the transfer mode is shifted into 4WD LOCK mode again. |

## ✻ NOTICE

- **When driving on normal roads, deactivate the 4WD LOCK mode by pushing the 4WD LOCK button (the indicator light goes off). Driving on normal roads with 4WD LOCK mode(especially, when cornering) may cause mechanical noise or vibration. The noise and vibration will disappear when the 4WD LOCK mode is deactivated. Some parts of the power train may be damaged by prolonged driving with the noise and vibration.**
- **When the 4WD LOCK mode is deactivated, a shock may be felt as the drive power is delivered entirely to the front wheels. This shock is not a mechanical failure.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 30

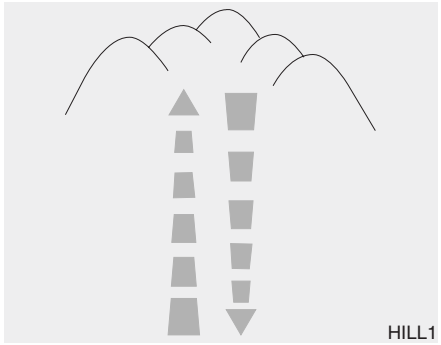


### For safe four-wheel drive operation

**⚠ WARNING - Four-wheel driving**

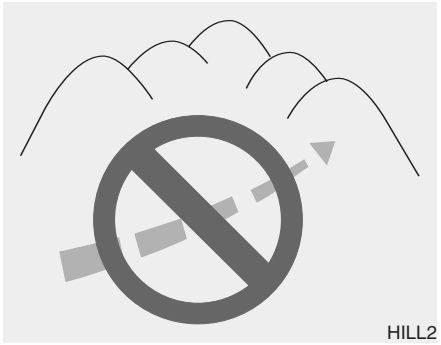
**The conditions of on-road or off-road that demand four-wheel drive mean all functions of your vehicle are exposed to extreme stress than under normal road conditions. Slow down and be ready for changes in the composition and traction of the surface under your tires. If you have any doubt about the safety of the conditions you are facing, stop and consider the best way to proceed. Do not exceed the ability of yourself or your vehicle to operate safely.**

- Do not try to drive in deep standing water or mud since such conditions can stall your engine and clog your exhaust pipes. Do not drive down steep hills since it requires extreme skill to maintain control of the vehicle.



HILL1

- When you are driving up or down hills drive as straight as possible. Use extreme caution in going up or down steep hills, since you may flip your vehicle over depending on the grade, terrain and water/mud conditions.



HILL2

**⚠ WARNING - Hills**

**Driving across the contour of steep hills can be extremely dangerous. This danger can come from slight changes in the wheel angle which can destabilize the vehicle or, even if the vehicle is maintaining stability under power, it can lose that stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over without warning and without time for you to correct a mistake that could cause serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 31



- You must consciously take the effort to learn how to corner in a 4WD vehicle. Do not rely on your experience in conventional 2WD vehicles in choosing safe cornering speed in 4WD mode. For starters, you must drive more slowly in 4WD.
- Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

**⚠ WARNING - 4WD**

**Reduce speed when you turn corners. The center of gravity of 4WD vehicles is higher than that of conventional 2WD vehicles, making them more likely to roll over when you turn corners too fast.**



OLM059022L

**⚠ WARNING - Steering wheel**

**Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering maneuver or from steering wheel rebound due to impact with objects on the ground. You could lose control of the steering wheel.**

- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.
- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.

**⚠ WARNING - Wind danger**

**If you are driving in heavy wind, the vehicle's higher center of gravity decreases your steering control capacity and requires you to drive more slowly.**

- If you need to drive in the water, stop your vehicle, set your transfer to the 4WD LOCK mode and drive at less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

**⚠ WARNING - Driving through water**

**Drive slowly. If you are driving too fast in water, the water can get into the engine compartment and wet the ignition system, causing your vehicle to suddenly stop. If this happens and your vehicle is in a tilted position, your vehicle may roll over.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 32



### ✻ NOTICE

- **Do not drive in water if the level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Press the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking forces return.**
- **Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud or water (see "Maintenance under severe usage conditions" in section 7). Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off road use, especially cleaning the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Since the driving torque is always applied to the 4 wheels the performance of the 4WD vehicle is greatly affected by the condition of the tires. Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tires of the same size and type.**
- **A full time four wheel drive vehicle cannot be towed by an ordinary tow truck. Make sure that the vehicle is placed on a flat bed truck for moving.**

### ⚠ WARNING - 4WD driving

- **Avoid high cornering speed.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at high speed.**
- **In a collision, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die compared to a person wearing a seat belt.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to re-enter the roadway. In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**

### ⚠ CAUTION - Mud or snow

***If one of the front or rear wheels begins to spin in mud, snow, etc. the vehicle can sometimes be driven out by depressing the accelerator pedal further; however avoid running the engine continuously at high rpm because doing so could damage the 4WD system.***

### Reducing the risk of a rollover

This multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). SUV's have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. Specific design characteristics give them a higher center of gravity than ordinary vehicles. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road, which allows you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional passenger vehicles, any more than low-slung sports vehicles are designed to perform satisfactorily in off-road conditions. Due to this risk, driver and passengers are strongly recommended to buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, do not load your roof rack with heavy cargo, and never modify your vehicle in any way.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 33



**⚠ WARNING - Rollover**

**As with other Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV), failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.**

- **Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.**
- **Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, narrower track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher center of gravity than ordinary vehicles.**
- **A SUV is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional vehicles.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.**
- **In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure everyone in the vehicle is properly buckled up.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tire and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tires, be sure to equip all four tires with the tire and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.If you nevertheless decide to equip your vehicle with any tire/wheel combination not recommended by HYUNDAI for off road driving, we recommend that you do not use these tires for highway driving.**

**⚠ WARNING - Jacked vehicle**

**While the full-time 4WD vehicle is being raised on a jack, never start the engine or cause the tires to rotate.**

**There is the danger that rotating tires touching the ground could cause the vehicle to go off the jack and to jump forward.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 34

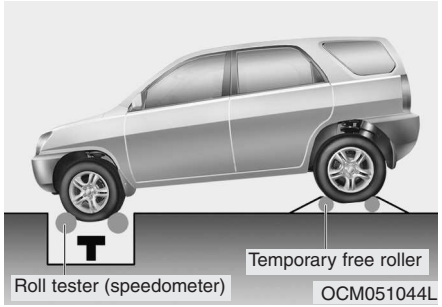


- Full-time 4WD vehicles must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Never engage the parking brake while performing these tests.**

- A full-time 4WD vehicle should not be tested on a 2WD roll tester. If a 2WD roll tester must be used, perform the following:




1. Check the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the front wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the rear wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

**⚠ WARNING - Dynamometer testing**

**Keep away from the front of the vehicle while the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. This is very dangerous as the vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When lifting up the vehicle, do not operate front and rear wheel separately. All four wheels should be operated.***
- ***If you need to operate the front wheel and rear wheel when lifting up the vehicle, you should release the parking brake.***

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 35



## BRAKE SYSTEM

### Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

**⚠ WARNING - Brakes**

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to sefely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly while maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.**
- **Always, confirm the position of the brake and accelerator pedal before driving. If you don't check the position of the accelerator and brake pedal before driving, you may depress the accelerator instead of the brake pedal. It may cause a serious accident.**

***In the event of brake failure***

If service brakes fail to operate while the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking brake**

**Applying the parking brake while the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 36



***Disc brakes wear indicator***

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

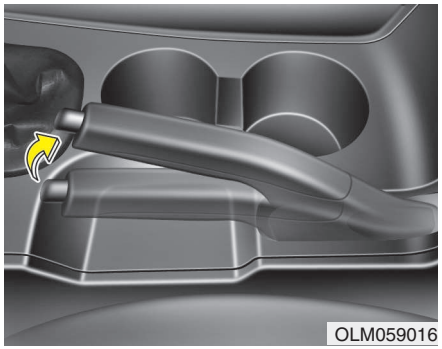
Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.***
- ***Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.***

**⚠ WARNING - Brake wear**

**This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.**



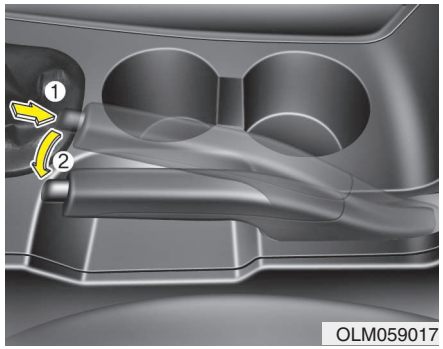
OLM059016

## Parking brake

***Applying the parking brake***

To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then pull up the parking brake lever as far as possible.

In addition it is recommended that when parking the vehicle on a gradient, the shift lever should be in a low gear on manual transaxle vehicles or in the Park position on automatic transaxle vehicles.




OLM059017

***Releasing the parking brake***

To release the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and pull up the parking brake lever slightly. Secondly depress the release button (1) and lower the parking brake lever (2) while holding the button.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 37



If the parking brake does not release or does not release all the way, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the gearshift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake AND make sure the gearshift lever is securely positioned in 1st (First) gear or R (Reverse) for manual transaxle equipped vehicles and in P (Park) for automatic transaxle equipped vehicles.**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.***
- ***Do not operate the parking brake while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.***



WK-23_TF

Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released while engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution while operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 38



### Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

**⚠ WARNING**

**ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.**

**The braking distance for vehicle equipped with an anti-lock braking system (Electronic Stability Program System) may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.**

**During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds:**

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **With tire chains installed.**
- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**The safety features of an ABS (or ESC) equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.**

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation warrants and allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 39



### ✻ NOTICE

**A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.**

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.




W-78

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the ABS warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, however, your regular brakes will work normally.***
- ***The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and operate your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the engine.***
- ***Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:03 AM Page 40



### ✻ NOTICE

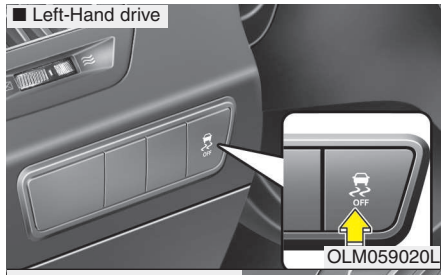
**When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning.**

- **Do not pump your brakes!**
- **Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 41

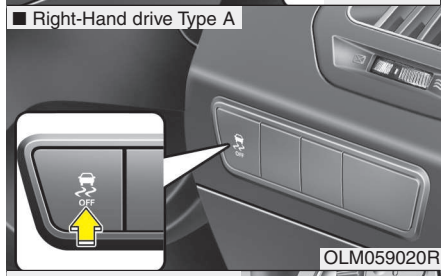


■ Left-Hand drive



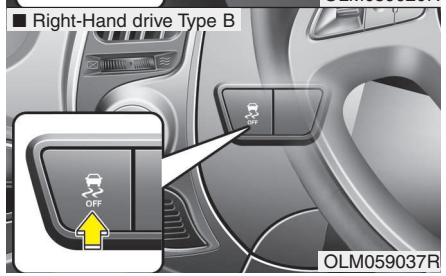
OLM059020L

■ Right-Hand drive Type A



OLM059020R

■ Right-Hand drive Type B



OLM059037R

## Electronic stability control (ESC) (if equipped)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies the brakes at individual wheels and intervenes in the engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding maneuvers that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.**

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices.

Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

**✻ NOTICE**

**A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Program System is functioning properly.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 42



### *ESC operation*

**ESC ON condition**

-

- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

**When operating**



When the ESC is in operation, ESP indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or slippery road, pressing the accelerator pedal may not cause the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) to increase.

### *ESC operation off*

**ESC OFF state**




This car has 2 kinds of ESC off states.

If the engine stops when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

**• ESC off state 1**

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF ) shortly (ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF ) illuminates). At this state, the engine control function does not operate. It means the traction control function does not operate. Brake control function only operates.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 43



**• ESC off state 2**

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) for more than 3 seconds. ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) illuminates and ESC OFF warning chime will sound. At this state, the engine control function and brake control function do not operate. It means the car stability control function does not operate any more.

■ ESC indicator light



■ ESC OFF indicator light




***Indicator light***

When ignition switch is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are the same size as your original tires.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**The Electronic Stability Control system is only a driving aid; use precautions for safe driving by slowing down on curved, snowy, or icy roads. Drive slowly and don't attempt to accelerate whenever the ESC indicator light is blinking, or when the road surface is slippery.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 44



*ESC OFF usage*

**When driving**

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off while driving, press the ESC OFF button while driving on a flat road surface.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never press the ESC OFF button while ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).**

**If ESC is turned off while ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.**
- **Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.**

## Vehicle stability management (VSM) (if equipped)

This system provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering responses when a vehicle is driving on a slippery road or a vehicle detected changes in coefficient of friction between right wheels and left wheels when braking.

*VSM operation*

When the vehicle stability management is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.

**The VSM does not operate when:**

- Driving rearward
- ESC OFF indicator light ( ) remains on the instrument cluster
- ESC indicator light remains on the instrument cluster

*VSM operation off*

If you press the ESC OFF button to turn off the ESC, the VSM will also cancel and the ESC OFF indicator light ( ) illuminates.

To turn on the VSM, press the button again. The ESC OFF indicator light goes out.

*Malfunction indicator*

The VSM can be deactivated even if you don't cancel the VSM operation by pressing the ESC OFF button. It indicates that a malfunction has been detected somewhere in the Electric Power Steering system or VSM system. If the ESC indicator light ( ) or EPS warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**✻ NOTICE**

- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) on curves.**
- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) when a vehicle is braking on a split-mu road. The split-mu road is made of surfaces which have different friction forces.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 45



**⚠ WARNING**

- **The Vehicle Stability Management system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. Always hold the steering wheel firmly while driving.**
- **Your vehicle is designed to activate according to the driver's intention, even with installed VSM. Always follow all the normal precautions for driving at safe speeds for the conditions – including driving inclement weather and on a slippery road.**
- **Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are the same size as your original tires.**

### Hill-start assist control (HAC) (if equipped)

A vehicle has the tendency to slip back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from slipping back by operating the brakes automatically for about 2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 2 seconds.

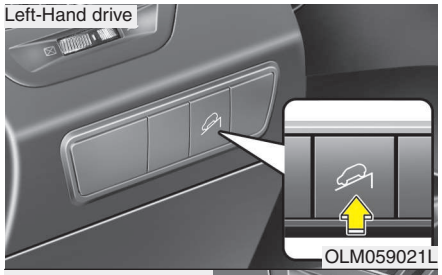
**⚠ WARNING**

**The HAC is activated only for about 2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.**

**✻ NOTICE**

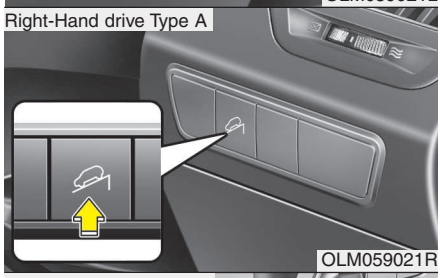
- **The HAC does not operate when the transaxle shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.**
- **The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.**

Left-Hand drive



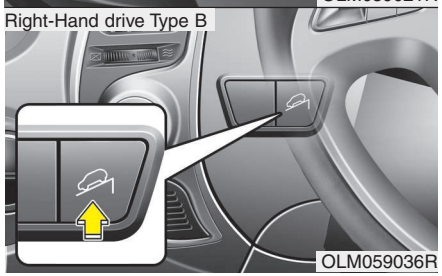
OLM059021L

Right-Hand drive Type A



OLM059021R

Right-Hand drive Type B



OLM059036R

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 46



### Downhill brake control (DBC) (if equipped)

The Downhill Brake Control (DBC) supports the driver come down a steep hill without the driver depressing the brake pedal. It slows down the vehicle under 8 km/h (5mph) with the automatic transaxle or 8 km/h (5 mph) with the manual transaxle and lets the driver concentrate on steering the vehicle.

DBC defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition is turned on.

The DBC can be turned on or off by pushing the button.

| Mode | Indicator light | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Standby** |  illuminated | Press the DBC button when the vehicle speed is under 40km/h (25mph). The DBC system will turn ON and enter the standby mode.<br>The system does not turn ON if the vehicle speed is over 40km/h (25mph). |
| **Activated** |  blinks | In the standby mode, if the vehicle speed is under 35km/h (22mph) while driving down a steep hill, the DBC will activate automatically. |
| **Temporarily deactivated** |  illuminated | In the activated mode, the DBC will temporarily deactivate under the following conditions:<br>• The hill is not steep enough.<br>• The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed.<br>If the above conditions are gone, the DBC will automatically activate again. |
| **OFF** |  not illuminated | The DBC will turn OFF under the following conditions:<br>• The DBC button is pressed again.<br>• The vehicle speed is over 60km/h (38mph). |

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the DBC red indicator light illuminates, the system has overheated or something is wrong. The DBC will not activate. If the DBC red indicator light illuminates even though the DBC system has been cooled enough, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 47



### ✻ NOTICE

- **The DBC does not turn ON in the P (Park) position.**
- **The DBC may not activate if the ESC (or BAS, if equipped) is activated.**
- **Noise or vibration may occur from the brakes when the DBC is activated.**
- **The rear stop light comes on when the DBC is activated.**
- **In a very steep hill even though the brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed the DBC may not deactivate.**
- **Always turn OFF the DBC on normal roads. The DBC might activate from the standby mode when abrupt corning or driving through speed bumps.**
- **DBC may activate and cause the engine to stop in vehicles with manual transaxle if you drive in 3rd gear (or above) with DBC on. Do not turn on DBC when driving in 3rd gear (or above).**

### ESS : Emergency Stop Signal

The Emergency Stop Signal system alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop light when the vehicle suddenly stops or when the ABS activates in a stop. (The system activates when the vehicle speed is over 55km/h and the vehicle deceleration is over 7m/s² or the ABS activates when the vehicle emergency braking.)

When the vehicle speed is under 40 km/h and the ABS deactivates or the sudden stop situation is over, the stop light will not blink. Instead, the hazard warning flasher will turn on automatically.

The hazard warning flasher will turn off when the vehicle speed is over 10km/h after the vehicle has stopped. Also, it will turn off when the vehicle drives at low speed for some time. You can turn it off manually by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***The Emergency Stop Signal system will not work if the hazard warning flasher is already on.***

### Trailer stability assist (TSA) (if equipped)

Trailer stability assist is operated as vehicle stability control system. Trailer stability assist system has an effort to stabilize the vehicle and trailer when the trailer sways or oscillates. There are various reasons making vehicle sway and oscillate. Almost case it happens at high speed however, if the trailer is affected by crosswinds, buffeting, and improper overloading, it may be a risk of swaying.

Factors of swaying such as:
- High speed
- Strong crosswinds
- Improper overloading
- Sudden controlling of steering wheel
- Uneven road

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 48



Trailer stability assist system continuously analyzes the vehicle and trailer instability. When the Trailer stability assist system detects some sway, the brakes are applied automatically to stabilize the vehicle on the front wheel. However, if it is not enough to stabilize, the brakes are applied on all wheels automatically and engine power is properly reduced. When the vehicle is stable from swaying, trailer stability assist system does not operate.

### Good braking practices

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Whenever you leave or park your vehicle, always set the parking brake as far as possible and fully engage the vehicle's transaxle into the P (Park) position. If the parking brake is not fully engaged, the vehicle may move inadvertently and injure yourself and others.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for assistance.
- Don't coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 49



- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving can be dangerous because it can result in the brakes overheating and losing their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tire goes flat while you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead while you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transaxle, don't let your vehicle creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.
- Be caution when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the curb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no curb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the gear selector lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transaxle to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 50



## CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




1. Cruise indicator
2. Cruise set indicator

The cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.

This system is designed to function above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

### ⚠ WARNING

- **If the cruise control is left on, (CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated), the cruise control can be switched on accidentally. Keep the cruise control system off (CRUISE indicator light OFF) when the cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Use the cruise control system only when traveling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use the cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.**
- **Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the cruise control system.**
- **Be careful when driving downhill using the cruise control system, which may increase the vehicle speed.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***During cruise-speed driving of a manual transaxle vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, since the engine will be overrevved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or release the cruise control ON-OFF switch.***

### ✻ NOTICE

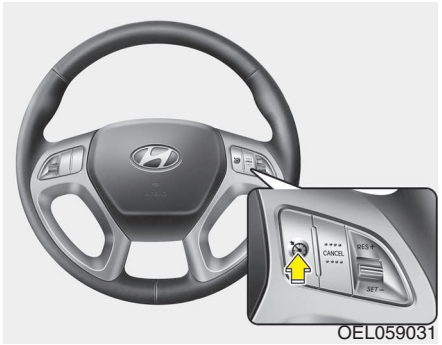
**During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**To activate cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel cruise control is in normal condition.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 51





OEL059031

**To set cruise control speed:**

1. Push the Cruise ON-OFF symbol button on the steering wheel to turn the system on. The Cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 40 km/h (25 mph).



OEL059033

3. Move the lever (1) down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate. Release the accelerator pedal. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

*On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly while going downhill.*



OEL059032

**To increase cruise control set speed:**

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever (1) up (to RES+) and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever (1) up (to RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 2.0 km/h (1.2 mph) or 1.6 km/h (1.0 mph) each time you move the lever up (to RES+) in this manner.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 52





OEL059033

**To decrease the cruising speed:**

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever (1) down (to SET-) and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the lever at the speed you want to maintain.
- Move the lever (1) down (to SET-) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 2.0 km/h (1.2 mph) or 1.6 km/h (1.0 mph) each time you move the lever down (to SET-) in this manner.

**To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:**

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.



OEL059034

**To cancel cruise control, do one of the following:**

- Press the brake pedal.
- Press the clutch pedal with a manual transaxle.
- Shift into N (Neutral) with an automatic transaxle.
- Press the CANCEL switch located on the steering wheel.
- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 15 km/h (9 mph).
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 53



*Each of these actions will cancel cruise control operation (the SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume cruise control operation, move up the lever (to RES+) located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed.*

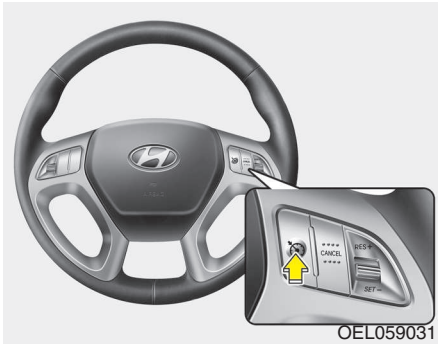


OEL059032

**To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph):**

If any method other than the cruise ON/OFF symbol switch was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when you move the lever (1) up (to RES+).

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).



OEL059031

**To turn cruise control off, do one of the following:**

- Push the Cruise ON-OFF symbol button (the Cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off).
- Turn the ignition off.

*Both of these actions cancel cruise control operation. If you want to resume cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in "To set cruise control speed" on the previous page.*

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 54



## ACTIVE ECO SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




### Active ECO operation

Active ECO helps improve fuel efficiency by controlling the engine, transaxle and air conditioner. But fuel-efficiency can be changed by the driver's driving habits and road conditions.

- When the Active ECO button is pressed the ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.
- When the Active ECO is activated, it does not turn off even though the engine is restarted again. To turn off the system, press the active ECO button again.
- If Active ECO is turned off, it will return to the ECO mode.

### When Active ECO is activated:

- Vehicle noise may become loud.
- Vehicle speed may drop.
- The air conditioner performance may decline.

### Limitation of Active ECO operation :

If the following conditions occur while Active ECO is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low:
  The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill:
  The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because the engine torque is restricted.
- When using sports mode:
  The system will be limited according to the shift location.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 55



## ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers (miles) you can get from a liter (gallon) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jack-rabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Don't "ride" the brake or clutch pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tires. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tire wear. Check the tire pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting curbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tire wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your vehicle in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule in Section 7. If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see Section 7 for details).
- Keep your vehicle clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the vehicle. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 56



- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Don't "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer to perform scheduled inspections and maintenance.

**⚠ WARNING - Engine off during motion**

**Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition while driving could engage the steering wheel lock resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 57



## SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

### Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

**⚠ WARNING - ABS**

**Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.**

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, tire chains, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

**⚠ WARNING - Downshifting**

**Downshifting with an automatic transaxle, while driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.**

### Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between 1st (First) and R (Reverse) in vehicles equipped with a manual transaxle or R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an automatic transaxle. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transaxle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transaxle damage or failure, and tire damage.***

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 58



**⚠ WARNING - Spinning tires**

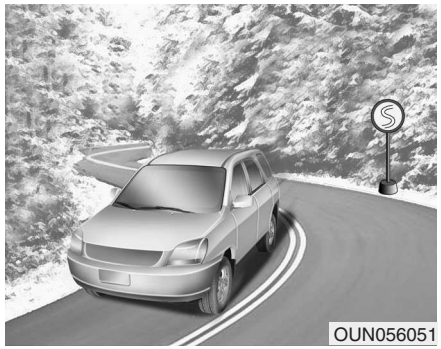
**Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tire to overheat which could result in tire damage that may injure bystanders.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The ESC system (if equipped) should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**


OUN056051

### Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tire wear will be held to a minimum.


OCM053010

### Driving at night

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed on vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 59



- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.


1VQA3003

## Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windshield wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windshield wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield.
- If your tires are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tires are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly while driving until normal braking operation returns.

## Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.

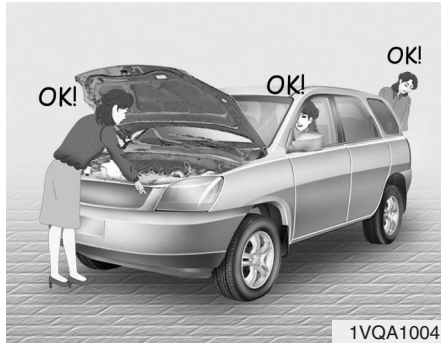
After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times while the vehicle is moving slowly.

## Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks of roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 60





1VQA1004

## Highway driving

***Tires:***

Adjust the tire inflation pressures to specification. Low tire inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tires.

Avoid using worn or damaged tires which may result in reduced traction or tire failure.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure shown on the tires.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Underinflated or overinflated tires can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. Always check the tires for proper inflation before driving. For proper tire pressures, refer to section 8, "Tires and wheels".**
- **Driving on tires with no or insufficient tread is dangerous. Worn-out tires can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, injury, and even death. Worn-out tires should be replaced as soon as possible and should never be used for driving. Always check the tire tread before driving your vehicle. For further information and tread limits, refer to section 7, "Tires and wheels".**

***Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil:***

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both engine coolant and engine oil.

***Drive belt:***

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 61



## WINTER DRIVING


1VQA3005

The more severe weather conditions of winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimize the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

### Snowy or Icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tires or to install tire chains on your tires. If snow tires are needed, it is necessary to select tires equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tires. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.
During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front and your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tire chains on the tire will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Tire chains are not legal in all countries. Check the country laws before fitting tire chains.**

#### *Snow tires*

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tires. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

**⚠ WARNING - Snow tire size**

**Snow tires should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tires. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.**

*Do not install studded tires without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.*




### *Tire chains*

Since the sidewalls of radial tires are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tires is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tire chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 15 mm (0.59 in). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturers warranty.

When using tire chains, attach them to the drive wheels as follows.

2WD : Front wheels

4WD : All four wheels

If a full set of chains is not available for an 4WD vehicle, chains may be installed on the front wheels only.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tires. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty. Also, the snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tire. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class "S" certified.***
- ***Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.5 to 1 km (0.3 to 0.6 miles) to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.***

**Chain installation**

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until it stops. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

**⚠ WARNING**
**- Mounting chains**

**When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always place the vehicle in P (park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 63



**⚠ WARNING - Tire chains**

- **The use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.**
- **Do not exceed 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Chains that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.***
- ***Stop driving and retighten the chains any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.***

### Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in section 7. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

### Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in section 7. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

### Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See section 8 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

### Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs as described in section 7 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 64



### To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

### Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

### Don't let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

### Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components is not obstructed.

### Carry emergency equipment

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:04 AM Page 65



## TRAILER TOWING

If you are considering towing with your vehicle, you should first check with your country's Department of Motor Vehicles to determine their legal requirements.

Since laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. We recommend that you ask an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - Towing a trailer**

**If you don't use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well - or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.**

**⚠ WARNING - Weight limits**

**Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (gross combination weight), GVW (gross vehicle weight), GAW (gross axle weight ) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.**

### ✻ NOTICE - For Europe

- **The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10 % or 100 kg (220.4 lbs), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) for vehicle of category M1 or 80 km/h (49.7 mph) for vehicle of category N1.**
- **When a vehicle of category M1 is towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the tire maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15 %. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) and increase the tire inflation pressure by at least 0.2 bar.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section.***

Your vehicle can tow a trailer. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the trailer” that appears later in this section.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

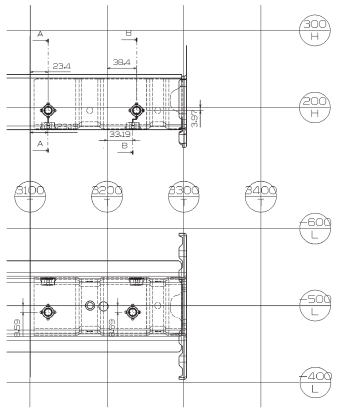
This section contains many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transaxle, wheel assemblies, and tires are forced to work harder against the load of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads. This additional burden generates extra heat. The trailer also adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

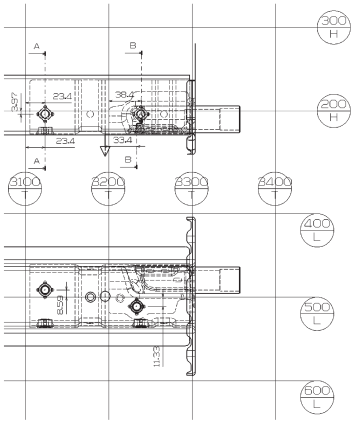
EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:05 AM Page 66



• Left side




• Right side




## Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- Will you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch.

  If you don't seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to them. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- A HYUNDAI accessory trailer hitch is available at an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:05 AM Page 67



### Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

### Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weight exceeds the maximum allowed weight without trailer brakes, then the trailer will also require its own brakes as well. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

- Don't tap into or modify your vehicle's brake system.

**⚠ WARNING - Trailer brakes**

**Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.**

### Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly so responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and any trailer brakes are still working.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:05 AM Page 68



***Following distance***

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

***Passing***

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

***Backing up***

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

***Making turns***

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

***Turn signals when towing a trailer***

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use only an approved trailer wiring harness.

An authorized HYUNDAI dealer can assist you in installing the wiring harness.

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:05 AM Page 69



**⚠ WARNING**

**Failure to use an approved trailer wiring harness could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury.**

***Driving on grades***

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an automatic transaxle, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimize heat build up and extend the life of your transaxle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat.***

  ***If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves across the dial towards "H" (HOT), pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.***
- ***You must decide driving speed depending on trailer weight and uphill grade to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.***

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:05 AM Page 70



***Parking on hills***

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill. People can be seriously or fatally injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged if unexpectedly roll down hill.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking on a hill**

**Parking your vehicle on a hill with a trailer attached could cause serious injury or death, should the trailer break loose.**

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the curb (right if headed down hill, left if headed up hill).
2. If the vehicle has a manual transaxle, place the car in neutral. If the vehicle has an automatic transaxle, place the car in P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes, reapply the parking brake and shift the vehicle to R (Reverse) for manual transaxle or P (Park) for automatic transaxle.
7. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking brake**

**It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the parking brake is not firmly set.**

**If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be seriously or fatally injured.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:05 AM Page 71



**When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill**

1. With the manual transaxle in Neutral or automatic transaxle in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down while you:
   - Start your engine;
   - Shift into gear; and
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

## Maintenance when trailer towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, automatic transaxle fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. Each item is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Don't forget to also maintain your trailer and hitch. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all hitch nuts and bolts should be tight.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur in hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the A/C and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.***
- ***When towing check transaxle fluid more frequently.***
- ***If your vehicle is not equipped with the air conditioner, you should install a condenser fan to improve engine performance when towing a trailer.***

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:05 AM Page 72



### If you do decide to pull a trailer

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

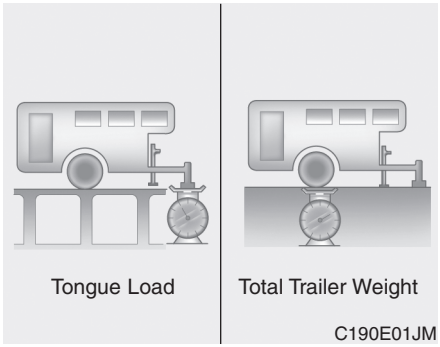
- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your car during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transaxle damage.
- When towing a trailer, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h (60 mph)).
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower.
- The chart contains important considerations that have to do with weight:

| Item \ Engine | | Gasoline Engine | | | Diesel Engine | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1.6L | 2.0L | | 1.7L | 2.0L | |
| | | M/T | M/T | A/T | M/T | M/T | A/T |
| Maximum trailer weight kg (lbs.) | Without brake System | 750 (1653) | 750 (1653) | 750 (1653) | 750 (1653) | 750 (1653) | 750 (1653) |
| | With brake System | 1200 (2646) | 1900 (4189) | 1600 (3527) | 1200 (2646) | 2000 (4409) | 1600 (3527) |
| Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device kg (lbs.) | | 50 (110) | 80 (176) | 80 (176) | 50 (110) | 80 (176) | 80 (176) |
| Recommended distance from rear wheel center to coupling point mm (Inch) | | 963 (37.9) | | | | | |

M/T : Manual transaxle
A/T : Automatic transaxle

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:05 AM Page 73

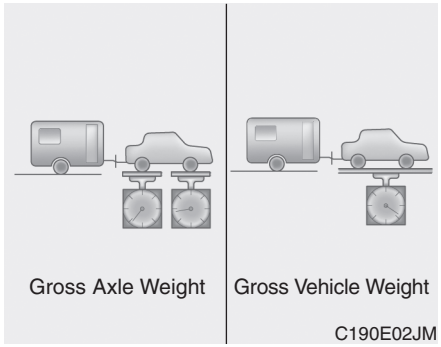





### *Weight of the trailer*

How heavy can a trailer safely be? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.




### *Weight of the trailer tongue*

The tongue load of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will also be carrying that weight.

The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum permissible trailer tongue load. After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

**⚠ WARNING - Trailer**

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**
- **An improperly loaded trailer can cause loss of vehicle control.**

EL(FL) Eng 5.QXP 7/11/2013 11:05 AM Page 74



## VEHICLE WEIGHT

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's specifications and the certification label:

### Base curb weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

### Vehicle curb weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

### Cargo weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

### GAW (Gross axle weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

### GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the certification label.
The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

### GVW (Gross vehicle weight)

This is the Base Curb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

### GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label.

### Overloading

**⚠ WARNING - Vehicle weight**

**The gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the certification label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.**

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:51 AM Page 1

# What to do in an emergency


Road warning . . . . . 6-2
- Hazard warning flasher . . . . . 6-2

In case of an emergency while driving. . . . . 6-3
- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing. . . . . 6-3
- If you have a flat tire while driving. . . . . 6-3
- If engine stalls while driving . . . . . 6-3

If the engine will not start . . . . . 6-4
- If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly . . . . 6-4
- If engine turns over normally but does not start . . . . 6-4

Emergency starting . . . . . 6-5
- Jump starting. . . . . 6-5
- Push-starting . . . . . 6-6

If the engine overheats. . . . . 6-7

Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (Type A) . . . . . 6-8
- Low tire pressure telltale . . . . . 6-9
- TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) malfunction indicator . . . . . 6-10
- Changing a tire with tpms . . . . . 6-11

Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (Type B) . . . . . 6-13
- Low tire pressure telltale . . . . . 6-14
- Low tire pressure position telltale . . . . . 6-14
- TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) malfunction indicator . . . . . 6-15
- Changing a tire with tpms . . . . . 6-16

If you have a flat tire . . . . . 6-19
- Jack and tools . . . . . 6-19
- Removing and storing the spare tire . . . . . 6-20
- Changing tires . . . . . 6-20

If you have a flat tire (with tire mobility kit) . . . 6-25
- Introduction . . . . . 6-25
- Notes on the safe use of the tire mobility kit . . . . . 6-26
- Components of the tire mobility kit . . . . . 6-27
- Using the tire mobility kit. . . . . 6-28
- Distributing the sealant. . . . . 6-29

Towing . . . . . 6-32
- Towing service . . . . . 6-32
- Removable towing hook . . . . . 6-33
- Emergency towing. . . . . 6-34

Emergency commodity . . . . . 6-37
- Fire extinguisher . . . . . 6-37
- First aid kit . . . . . 6-37
- Triangle reflector . . . . . 6-37
- Tire pressure gauge . . . . . 6-37

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 2



## ROAD WARNING




### Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the center console switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher while the vehicle is being towed.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 3



## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILE DRIVING

### If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.
- If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, the vehicle can move forward by shifting to the 2(second) or 3(third) gear and then turning the starter without depressing the clutch pedal.

### If you have a flat tire while driving

If a tire goes flat while you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
2. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transaxle in P (automatic transaxle) or reverse (manual transaxle).
3. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tire, follow the instruction provided later in this section.

### If engine stalls while driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 4



## IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

### If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. If your vehicle has an automatic transaxle, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting".

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the engine will not start, do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage. In addition, push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter to be overloaded and create a fire hazard.**

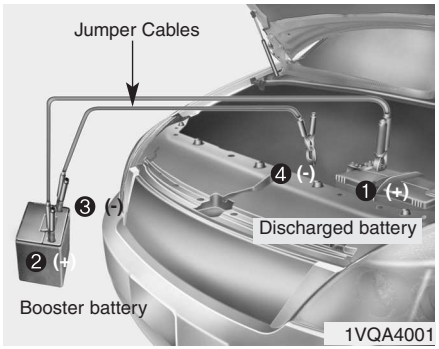
### If engine turns over normally but does not start

1. Check fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position, check all connectors at ignition, coil and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you call an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 5



## EMERGENCY STARTING




Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

### Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow the jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).***

**⚠ WARNING - Battery**

**Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Battery**

- **Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks.**
  **If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.**

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 6



***Jump starting procedure***

**⚠ CAUTION - AGM battery (if equipped)**

- ***Absorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.***
- ***When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***
- ***Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.***
- ***If the AGM battery is reconnected or replaced, ISG function will not operate immediately.***
  ***If you want to use the ISG function, the battery sensor needs to be calibrated for approximately 4 hours with the ignition off.***

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles to touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2). Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked. Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

**⚠ CAUTION - Battery cables**

***Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.***

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

*If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.*

## Push-starting

Your manual transaxle-equipped vehicle should not be push-started because it might damage the emission control system. Vehicles equipped with automatic transaxle cannot be push-started. Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.**

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 7



## IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or neutral (manual transaxle) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the hood, stop the engine. Do not open the hood until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

**⚠ WARNING**

**While the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.**

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and we recommend that you call an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This can allow coolant to be blown out of the opening and cause serious burns.**

6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, we recommend that you call an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 8



## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS, IF EQUIPPED) (TYPE A)




Low tire pressure telltale /
TPMS malfunction indicator

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 9



### ✻ NOTICE

**If the TPMS indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or engine is running, or if it comes on after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**



### Low tire pressure telltale

When the tire pressure monitoring system warning indicator is illuminated, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

If the telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible. Inflate the tires to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tire inflation pressure label located on the driver's side center pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tire cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire.

Then the Low Tire Pressure telltale may flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated after restarting and about 20 minutes of continuous driving before you have the low pressure tire repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***In winter or cold weather, the low tire pressure telltale may be illuminated if the tire pressure was adjusted to the recommended tire inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tire pressure.***

***When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tire inflation pressure and adjust the tires to the recommended tire inflation pressure.***

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 10



**⚠ WARNING - Low pressure damage**

**Significantly low tire pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.**

**Continued driving on low pressure tires can cause the tires to overheat and fail.**



### TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System. If the system is able to correctly detect an under inflation warning at the same time as system failure then it will illuminate the TPMS malfunction indicator.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may be illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***
- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may illuminate if snow chains or some separately purchased devices such as notebook computers, mobile charger, remote starter, navigation etc. are used in the vehicle. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 11



**Changing a tire with TPMS**

If you have a flat tire, the Low Tire Pressure will come on. We recommend that the flat tire be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***We recommend that you use a puncture-repairing agent approved by HYUNDAI.***

***The sealant on the tire pressure sensor and wheel shall be eleminated when you replace the tire with a new one.***

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you have your tires serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Even if you replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the Low Tire Pressure Telltale will blink or remain on until the low pressure tire is repaired and placed on the vehicle.

After you replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the Low Tire Pressure Telltale may blink or illuminate after a few minutes because the TPMS sensor mounted on the spare wheel is not initiated.

Once the low pressure tire is reinflated to the recommended pressure and installed on the vehicle or we recommend that the TPMS sensor mounted on the replaced spare wheel be initiated by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer, the TPMS malfunction indicator and the low tire pressure telltale will extinguish within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicator is not extinguished after a few minutes of driving, We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If original mounted tire is replaced with the spare tire, the TPMS sensor on the replaced spare wheel should be initiated and we recommend that the TPMS sensor on the original mounted wheel be deactivated by a HYUNDAI dealer. If the TPMS sensor on the original mounted wheel located in the spare tire carrier still activates, the tire pressure monitoring system may not operate properly. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 12



You may not be able to identify a low tire by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tire pressure gauge to measure the tire's inflation pressure. Please note that a tire that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tire that is cold.

A cold tire means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1 mile (1.6 km) in that 3 hour period.

Allow the tire to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tire is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***We recommend that you use the tire sealant approved by HYUNDAI if your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant can damage the tire pressure sensors.***

**⚠ WARNING - TPMS**

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

**⚠ WARNING - Protecting TPMS**

**Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tire pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING - For EUROPE**

- **Do not modify the vehicle, it may interfere with the TPMS function.**
- **The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.**

  **For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by a HYUNDAI dealer. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.**

**❋All vehicles sold in the EUROPE market during below period must be equipped with TPMS.**

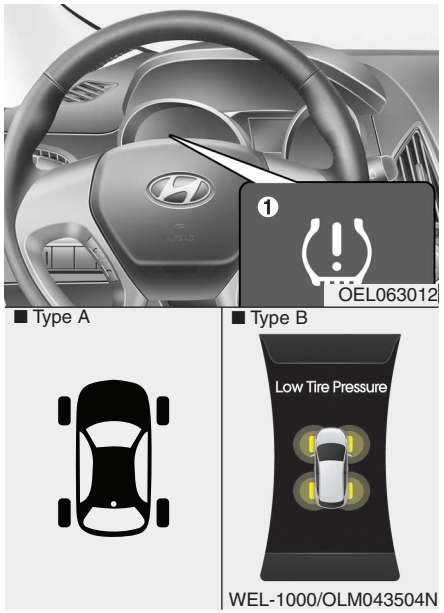
**- New model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2012 ~**

**- Current model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2014~ (Based on vehicle registrations)**

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 13



## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS, IF EQUIPPED) (TYPE B)




(1) Low tire pressure telltale / TPMS malfunction indicator

(2) Low tire pressure position telltale

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 14



Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

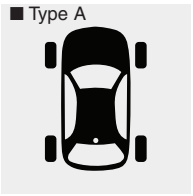
### ✻ NOTICE

**If the TPMS, Low Tire Pressure and Position indicators do not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or engine is running, or if they remain illuminated after coming on for approximately 3 seconds, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**Low tire pressure telltale**



**Low tire pressure position telltale**







When the tire pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. The low tire pressure position telltale light will indicate which tire is significantly under-inflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible.

Inflate the tires to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tire inflation pressure label located on the driver's side center pillar outer panel.

If you cannot reach a service station or if the tire cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire.

Then the TPMS malfunction indicator may turn on and the Low Tire Pressure and Position telltales will remain on after restarting and about 20 minutes of continuous driving before you have the low pressure tire repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 15



**⚠ CAUTION**

***In winter or cold weather, the low tire pressure telltale may be illuminated if the tire pressure was adjusted to the recommended tire inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tire pressure.***

***When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tire inflation pressure and adjust the tires to the recommended tire inflation pressure.***

**⚠ WARNING - Low pressure damage**

**Significantly low tire pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.**

**Continued driving on low pressure tires can cause the tires to overheat and fail.**

### TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator



The low tire pressure telltale will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System. If the system is able to correctly detect an under inflation warning at the same time as system failure then it will illuminate both the TPMS malfunction and low tire pressure position telltales e.g. if Front Left sensor fails, the TPMS malfunction indicator illuminates, but if the Front Right, Rear Left, or Rear Right tire is under-inflated, the low tire pressure position telltales may illuminate together with the TPMS malfunction indicator.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 16



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may be illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***
- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may be illuminated if snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computers, mobile charger, remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***

**Changing a tire with TPMS**

If you have a flat tire, the Low Tire Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***We recommend that you use the sealant approved by HYUNDAI. The sealant on the tire pressure sensor and wheel shall be eliminated when you replace the tire with a new one.***

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you have your tires serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

Even if you replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the Low Tire Pressure and Position telltales will remain on until the low pressure tire is repaired and placed on the vehicle.

After you replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the TPMS malfunction indicator may illuminate after a few minutes because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel.

Once the low pressure tire is reinflated to the recommended pressure and installed on the vehicle or the new TPMS sensor mounted on the wheel, the TPMS malfunction indicator and the low tire pressure and position telltales will extinguish within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicator is not extinguished after a few minutes of driving, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 17



**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the TPMS sensor on the original mounted wheel located in the spare tire carrier still activates, the tire pressure monitoring system may not operate properly. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

You may not be able identify a low tire by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tire pressure gauge to measure the tire's inflation pressure. Please note that a tire that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tire that is cold (from sitting stationary for at least 3 hours and driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) during that 3 hour period).

Allow the tire to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tire is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tire means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1 mile (1.6 km) in that 3 hour period.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***We recommend that you do not use any tire sealant except the Tire Mobility Kit approved by HYUNDAI if your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant can damage the tire pressure sensors.***

**⚠ WARNING - TPMS**

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 18



**⚠ WARNING - Protecting TPMS**

**Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tire pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING - For EUROPE**

- **Do not modify the vehicle, it may interfere with the TPMS function.**
- **The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.**

  **For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by a HYUNDAI dealer. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.**

**❋All vehicles sold in the EUROPE market during below period must be equipped with TPMS.**

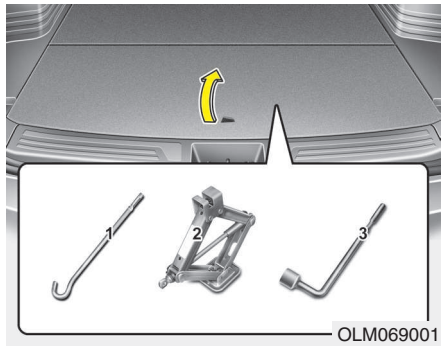
**- New model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2012 ~**

**- Current model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2014~ (Based on vehicle registrations)**

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 19



## IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE




### Jack and tools

The jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.

(1) Jack handle

(2) Jack

(3) Wheel lug nut wrench

***Jacking instructions***

The jack is provided for emergency tire changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store it properly and fasten the jack screw fully.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING - Changing tires**

- **Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.**
- **Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tire. The jack should be used on firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.**
- **Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.**

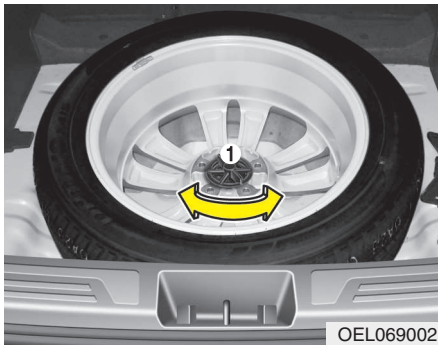
**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 20



**(Continued)**

- **The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.**
- **Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**
- **Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle while it is on the jack.**
- **Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.**

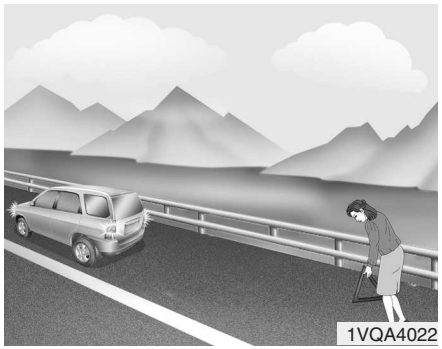



### Removing and storing the spare tire

1. Turn the tire hold-down wing bolt (1) counterclockwise.

Store the tire in the reverse order of removal.

To prevent the spare tire and tools from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

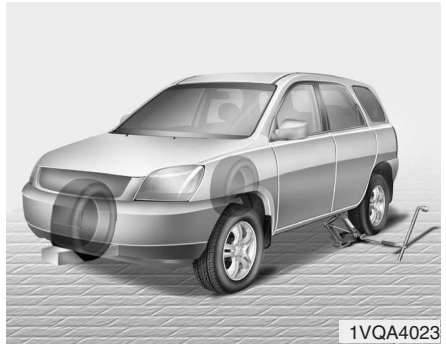



### Changing tires

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Shift the shift lever into R (Reverse) with manual transaxle or P (Park) with automatic transaxle.
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 21

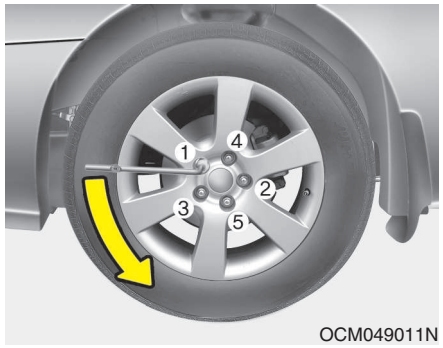



1VQA4023

4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tire from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.

**⚠ WARNING - Changing a tire**

- **To prevent vehicle movement while changing a tire, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.**
- **We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**

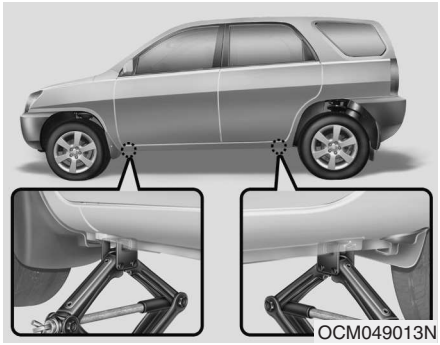


OCM049011N

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tire has been raised off the ground.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 22




OCM049013N

7. Place the jack at the front or rear jacking position closest to the tire you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to index with the jack.

**⚠ WARNING - Jack location**
**To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.**


OCM054012

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tire just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1.2 in). Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tire, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them. If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 23



**⚠ WARNING**

**Wheels and wheel covers may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.**

**If there is, remove it. If there is not good contact on the mounting surface between the wheel and hub, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.**

10. To reinstall the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. The nuts should be installed with their tapered small diameter ends directed inward. Jiggle the tire to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.



OEL069007

Then position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle.

Go around the wheel tightening every other nut until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**Wheel nut tightening torque:**

Steel wheel & aluminium alloy wheel:

9~11 kg.m (65~79 lb.ft)

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 24



If you have a tire gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tire pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tire. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed wheels, always secure the flat tire in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.***

***Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

**⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs**

**If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.**

To prevent the jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tire from rattling while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

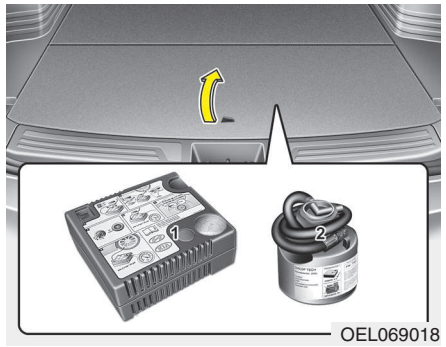
**⚠ WARNING - Inadequate spare tire pressure**

**Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to "Tires and wheels" in section 8.**

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 25



## IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE (WITH TIRE MOBILITY KIT, IF EQUIPPED)



OEL069018

For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.

(1) Compressor

(2) Sealant bottle

The Tire Mobility Kit is a temporary fix to the tire and we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION - One sealant for one tire**

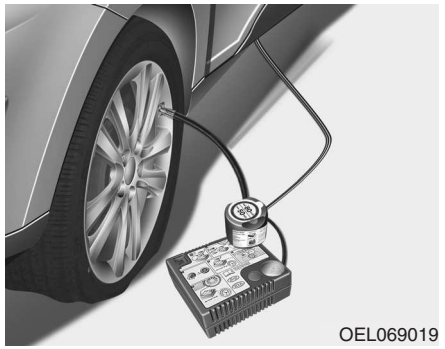
***When two or more tires are flat, do not use the tire mobility kit because the supported one sealant of Tire Mobility Kit is only used for one flat tire.***

**⚠ WARNING - Tire wall**

**Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit to repair punctures in the tire walls. This can result in an accident due to tire failure.**

**⚠ WARNING - Temporary fix**

**Have your tire repaired as soon as possible. The tire may loose air pressure at any time after inflating with the Tire Mobility Kit.**


OEL069019

### Introduction

With the Tire Mobility Kit you stay mobile even after experiencing a tire puncture.

The system of compressor and sealing compound effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger car tire caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tire.

After you ensured that the tire is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tire (distance up to 200 km (120 miles)) at a max. speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) in order to reach a service station or tire dealer to have the tire replaced.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 26



It is possible that some tires, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.
Air pressure loss in the tire may adversely affect tire performance.
For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving maneuvers, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.
The Tire Mobility Kit is not designed or intended as a permanent tire repair method and is to be used for one tire only. This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture simply and reliably. Read the section "Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit".

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the TMK if a tire is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.**

**Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tire can be sealed using the TMK.**

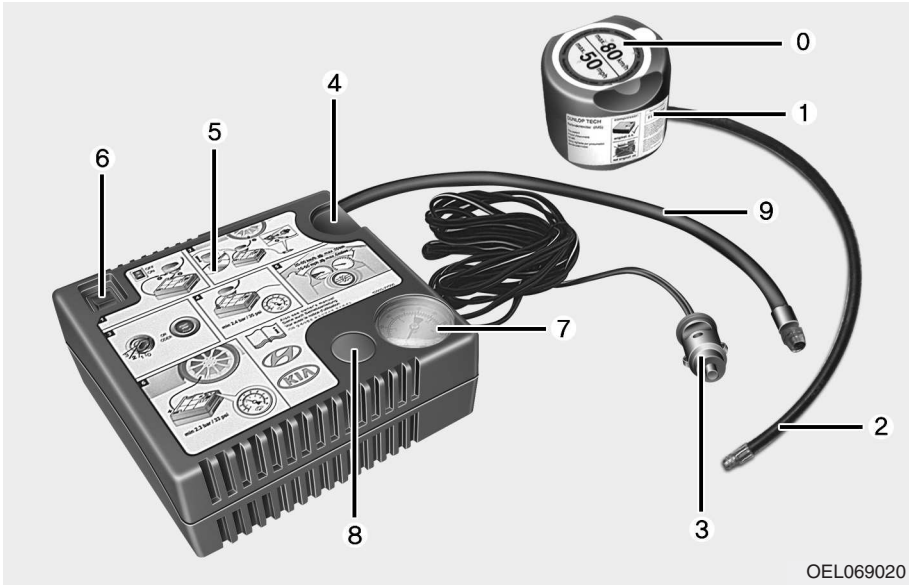
**Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit**

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the Tire Mobility Kit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the Tire Mobility Kit for sealing/inflation passenger car tires. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tire can be sealed using the tire mobility kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tires.
- When the tire and wheel are damaged, do not use Tire Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Use of the Tire Mobility Kit may not be effective for tire damage larger than approximately 6 mm (0.24 in).

  If the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the Tire Mobility Kit, we recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if a tire is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.
- Do not remove any foreign objects such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tire.
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the engine running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the Tire Mobility Kit unattended while it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if the ambient temperature is below --30°C (22°F).

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:52 AM Page 27






**Components of the Tire Mobility Kit**

0. Speed restriction label
1. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
2. Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel
3. Connectors and cable for the power outlet direct connection
4. Holder for the sealant bottle
5. Compressor
6. On/off switch
7. Pressure gauge for displaying the tire inflation pressure
8. Button for reducing tire inflation pressure
9. Hose to connect compressor and sealant bottle or compressor and wheel

Connectors, cable and connection hose are stored in the compressor housing.

**⚠ WARNING - Expired sealant**

**Do not use the Tire sealant after the sealant has expired (i.e. pasted the expiration date on the sealant container). This can increase the risk of tire failure.**

**⚠ WARNING - Sealant**

- **Keep out of reach of children.**
- **Avoid contact with eyes.**
- **Do not swallow.**

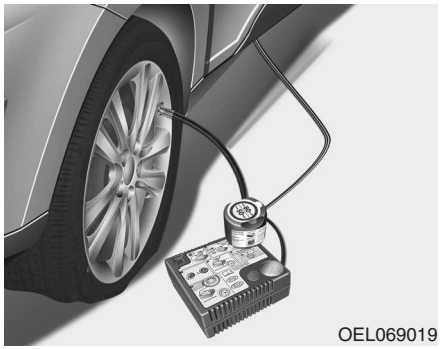
Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:53 AM Page 28

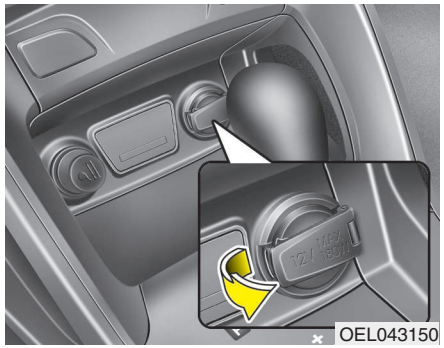


**Using the Tire Mobility Kit**

1. Detach the speed restriction label (0) from the sealant bottle (1), and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.
2. Screw connection hose (9) onto the connector of the sealant bottle.
3. Ensure that button (8) on the compressor is not pressed.
4. Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw filling hose (2) of the sealant bottle onto the valve.
5. Insert the sealant bottle into the housing of the compressor (4)so that the bottle is upright.




6. Ensure that the compressor is switched off, position 0.




7. Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Only use the front passenger side power outlet when connecting the power cord.**

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:53 AM Page 29



8. With the engine start/stop button position on or ignition switch position on, switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 5~7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper pressure. (refer to the Tire and Wheels, chapter 8). The inflation pressure of the tire after filling is unimportant and will be checked/corrected later.

   Be careful not to overinflate the tire and stay away from the tire when filling it.

**⚠ CAUTION - Tire pressure**

***Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tire pressure is below 29 PSI(200kpa). This could result in an accident due to sudden tire failure.***

9. Switch off the compressor.
10. Detach the hoses from the sealant bottle connector and from the tire valve.

Return the Tire Mobility Kit to its storage location in the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING - Carbon monoxide**

**Do not leave your vehicle running in a poorly ventilated area for extended periods of time. Carbon monoxide poisoning and suffocation can occur.**

**Distributing the sealant**

11. Immediately drive approximately 7~10 km (4~6 miles or, about 10min) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tire.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). If possible, do not fall below a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph).***

***While driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road.***

***Call for road side service or towing. When you use the Tire Mobility Kit, the tire pressure sensors and wheel may be damaged by sealant, remove the sealant stained with tire pressure sensors and wheel and inspect in authorized dealer.***

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:53 AM Page 30



**Checking the tire inflation pressure**

1. After driving approximately 7~10 km (4~6 miles or about 10 min), stop at a safety location.
2. Connect connection hose (9) of the compressor directly to the tire valve.
3. Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle power outlet.
4. Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the recomended tire inflation.

   With the ignition swithched on, proceed as follows.

   - **To increase the inflation pressure :** Switch on the compressor, position I. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The pressure gauge may show higher than actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tire reading, the compressor needs to be turned off.**

- **To reduce the inflation pressure:** Press the button 8 on the compressor.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to Distributing the sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4.***

***Use of the TMK may be ineffectual for tire damage larger than approximately 4 mm (0.16 in).***

***We recommend that you contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer if the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the Tire Mobility Kit.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**The tire inflation pressure must be at least 220 kPa (32 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving.**

**Call for road side service or towing.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Tire pressure sensor**

***The sealant on the tire pressure sensor and wheel should be removed when you replace the tire with a new one and inspect the tire pressure sensors in authorized dealer.***

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:53 AM Page 31



### Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the TMK away from moving traffic. Place your warning triangle in a prominent place to make passing vehicles aware of your location.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the TMK for sealing/inflation passenger car tires. Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tires.
- Do not remove any foreign objects-such as nails or screws -that have penetrated the tire.
- Before using the TMK, read the precautionary advice printed on the sealant bottle!
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the engine running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the TMK unattended while it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the TMK if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- When both the tire and wheel are damaged, do not use Tire Mobility Kit for your safety.

**Technical Data**

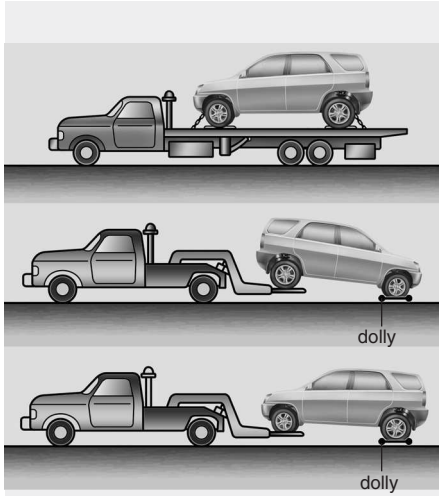
System voltage: DC 12 V
Working voltage: DC 10 - 15 V
Amperage rating: max. 15 A
Suitable for use at temperatures:
-30 ~ +70°C (-22 ~ +158°F)
Max. working pressure:
6 bar (87 psi)
Size
Compressor: 168 x 150 x 68 mm
(6.6 x 5.9 x 2.7 in.)
Sealant bottle: 104 x ø 85 mm
(4.1 x ø 3.3 in.)
Compressor weight:
1.05 kg (2.31 lbs)
Sealant volume:
300 ml (18.3 cu. in.)

❊ Sealant and spare parts can be obtained and replaced at an authorized vehicle or tire dealer. Empty sealant bottles may be disposed of at home. Liquid residue from the sealant should be disposed of by your vehicle or tire dealer or in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:53 AM Page 32



## TOWING




OXM069028

### Towing service

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

On 4WD vehicles, your vehicle must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.

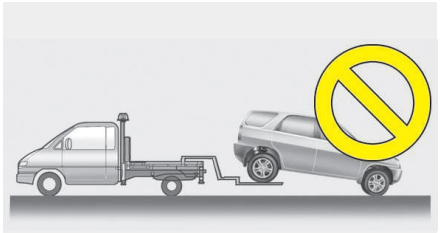
**⚠ CAUTION**

***The 4WD vehicle should never be towed with the wheels on the ground. This can cause serious damage to the transaxle or the 4WD system.***

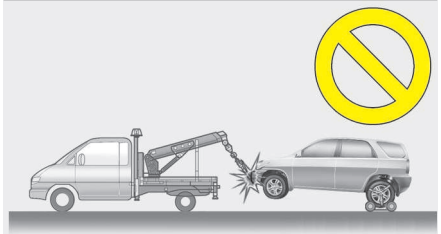
On 2WD vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.



OUN046030



OCM054034

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.***
- ***Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.***

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:53 AM Page 33



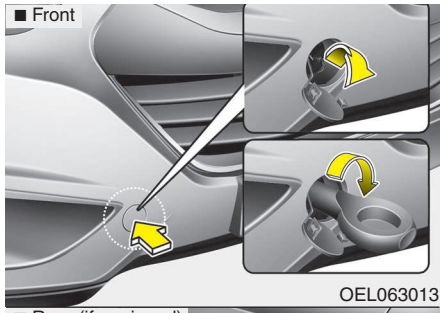
When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

**⚠ CAUTION**

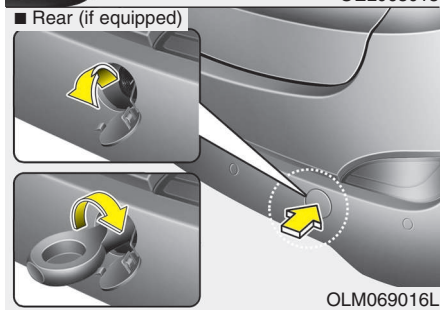
***Failure to place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transaxle.***

■ Front



OEL063013

■ Rear (if equipped)



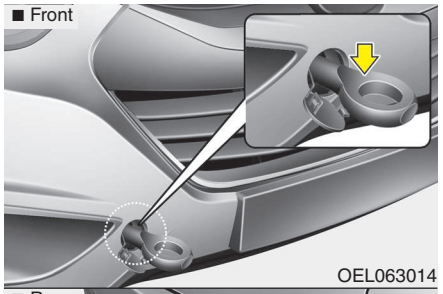
OLM069016L

**Removable towing hook (if equipped)**

1. Open the tailgate, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
2. Remove the hole cover pressing the lower part of the cover on the front or rear bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:53 AM Page 34






## Emergency towing

**If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer or a commercial tow truck service.**

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speed. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the towing hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.***
- ***Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.***
- ***Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.***

- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply steady and even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

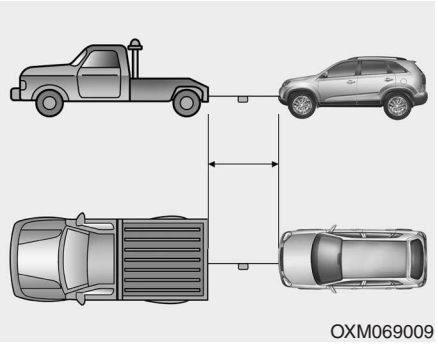
EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:53 AM Page 35



**⚠ WARNING**

**Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.**

- **Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.**
- **If the disabled vehicle is unable to be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. Contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.**
- **Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.**
- **Keep away from the vehicle during towing.**



OXM069009

- Use a towing strap less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 inches) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loosened during towing.

***Emergency towing precautions***

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:53 AM Page 36



### ⚠ CAUTION - Automatic transaxle

- ***If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transaxle is in neutral. Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the ignition switch in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.***
- ***To avoid serious damage to the automatic transaxle, limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h (10 mph) and drive less than 1.5 km (1 mile) when towing.***
- ***Before towing, check the automatic transaxle fluid leak under your vehicle. If the automatic transaxle fluid is leaking, a flatbed equipment or towing dolly must be used.***

EL(FL) Eng 6.QXP 7/11/2013 10:53 AM Page 37



## EMERGENCY COMMODITY (IF EQUIPPED)

There are some emergency commodities in the vehicle to help you respond to the emergency situation.

### Fire extinguisher

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, take the following steps carefully.

1. Pull the pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle toward the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch it carefully since it may re-ignite.

### First aid kit

There are some items such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape and etc. in the kit to give first aid to an injured person.

### Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to any problems.

### Tire pressure gauge (If equipped)

Tires normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a few pounds of air periodically and it is not usually a sign of a leaking tire, but of normal wear. Always check tire pressure when the tires are cold because tire pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tire pressure, take the following steps;

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tire.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tire valve. Some air will escape as you begin and more will escape if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tire pressure on the gauge to know whether the tire pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tire pressures to the specified pressure. Refer to “Tires and wheels” in section 8.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:28 AM Page 1

# Maintenance


Engine compartment . . . . . 7-3
Maintenance services . . . . . 7-7
• Owner's responsibility . . . . . 7-7
• Owner maintenance precautions . . . . . 7-7
• Engine compartment precautions (Diesel engine) . . . 7-8
Owner maintenance . . . . . 7-9
• Owner maintenance schedule. . . . . 7-9
Scheduled maintenance service. . . . . 7-11
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items . . . 7-48
Engine oil. . . . . 7-51
• Checking the engine oil level . . . . . 7-51
• Changing the engine oil and filter . . . . . 7-52
Engine coolant . . . . . 7-52
• Checking the coolant level . . . . . 7-52
• Changing the coolant . . . . . 7-54
Brake/clutch fluid. . . . . 7-55
• Checking the brake/clutch fluid level . . . . . 7-55
Washer fluid . . . . . 7-56
• Checking the washer fluid level . . . . . 7-56
Parking brake. . . . . 7-56
• Check the parking brake . . . . . 7-56
Fuel Filter (For Diesel). . . . . 7-57
• Draining water from fuel filter . . . . . 7-57
• Extracting air from the fuel filter . . . . . 7-57
• Fuel filter cartridge replacement. . . . . 7-58
Air cleaner. . . . . 7-59
• Filter replacement . . . . . 7-59
Climate control air filter . . . . . 7-61
• Filter inspection. . . . . 7-61
• Filter replacement . . . . . 7-61
Wiper blades. . . . . 7-63
• Blade inspection. . . . . 7-63
• Blade replacement . . . . . 7-63
Battery. . . . . 7-66
• For best battery service . . . . . 7-66
• Battery capacity label . . . . . 7-67
• Battery recharging . . . . . 7-68
• Reset items . . . . . 7-68
Tires and wheels. . . . . 7-69
• Tire care . . . . . 7-69
• Recommended cold tire inflation pressures . . . . . 7-69
• Checking tire inflation pressure. . . . . 7-71
• Tire rotation . . . . . 7-72
• Wheel alignment and tire balance . . . . . 7-73
• Tire replacement . . . . . 7-73
• Wheel replacement . . . . . 7-74
• Tire traction. . . . . 7-75
• Tire maintenance . . . . . 7-75
• Tire sidewall labeling . . . . . 7-75
• Low aspect ratio tire . . . . . 7-79

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:28 AM Page 2

**Fuses** . . . . . 7-80
- Fuse/relay panel description. . . . . 7-85

**Light bulbs** . . . . . 7-92
- Headlight, position light, turn signal light, front fog light bulb replacement. . . . . 7-93
- Headlight and front fog light aiming (for europe) . . 7-96
- Side repeater light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-102
- Rear combination light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-102
- Rear fog light . . . . . 7-104
- High mounted stop light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-104
- License plate light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-105
- Interior light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-106

**Appearance care** . . . . . 7-107
- Exterior care . . . . . 7-107
- Interior care . . . . . 7-112

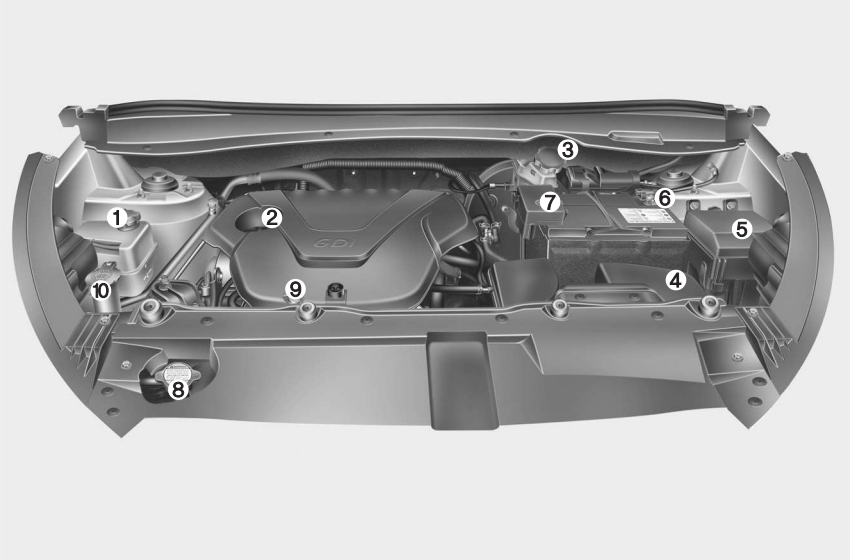
**Emission control system** . . . . . 7-113
- Crankcase emission control system . . . . . 7-113
- Evaporative emission control system. . . . . 7-113
- Exhaust emission control system . . . . . 7-114

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:28 AM Page 3



## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **Gasoline Engine (1.6L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Radiator cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

* : if equipped

* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL070301

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 4



■ **Gasoline Engine (2.0L) - MPI/GDI**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Radiator cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

* : if equipped

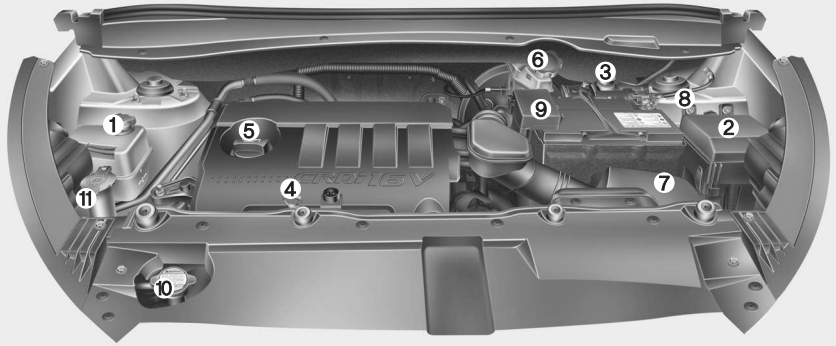
* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OLM073300

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 5



■ **Diesel Engine (1.7L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Fuse box
3. Fuel filter
4. Engine oil dipstick
5. Engine oil filler cap
6. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir
7. Air cleaner
8. Negative battery terminal
9. Positive battery terminal
10. Radiator cap
11. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

* : if equipped

* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL070302

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 6



■ **Diesel Engine (2.0L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Fuse box
3. Fuel filter
4. Engine oil dipstick
5. Engine oil filler cap
6. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir
7. Air cleaner
8. Negative battery terminal
9. Positive battery terminal
10. Radiator cap
11. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

* : if equipped

* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OLM079002

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 7



## MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

### Owner's responsibility

**✻ NOTICE**

**Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.**

We recommend in general that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties. Detailed warranty information is provided in your Service Passport. Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered when your vehicle is covered by warranty.

### Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 8



**⚠ WARNING - Maintenance work**

- **Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured while performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**
- **Working under the hood with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury. Therefore, if you must run the engine while working under the hood, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.**

### Engine compartment precautions (Diesel engine)

- The piezo injector operates at high voltage (maximum 200v). Therefore, the following accidents may occur.
  - Direct contact with the injector or injector wiring may cause electric shock or damage your muscle or nerve system.
  - The electromagnetic wave from the operating injector may cause the artificial heart pacemaker to malfunction.
- Follow the safety tips provided below, when you are checking the engine room while the engine is running.
  - Do not touch the injector, injector wirings, and the engine computer while the engine is running.
  - Do not remove the injector connector while the engine is running.
  - People using pacemakers must not go near the engine while the engine is starting or running.

**⚠ WARNING - Diesel Engine**

**Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High-pressure pump, rail, injectors and high-pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room while engine is running, since the high currents in the electronic engine control system produce considerable magnetic fields.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 9



## OWNER MAINTENANCE

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle. If you have any question, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labor, parts and lubricants used.

### Owner maintenance schedule

***When you stop for fuel:***

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check coolant level in coolant reservoir.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tires.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause burns or other serious injury.**

***While operating your vehicle:***

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transaxle occurs, check the transaxle fluid level.
- Check manual transaxle operation, including clutch operation.
- Check automatic transaxle P (Park) function.
- Check parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 10



***At least monthly:***

- Check coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tires including the spare.

***At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall) :***

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windshield washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlight alignment.
- Check muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tires and loose wheel lug nuts.

***At least once a year :***

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and checks, and hood hinges.
- Lubricate door and hood locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Check the power steering fluid level.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transaxle linkage and controls.
- Clean battery and terminals.
- Check the brake (and clutch) fluid level.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 11



## SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated short distance driving.
- Driving in dusty conditions or sandy areas.
- Extensive use of brakes.
- Driving in areas where salt or other corrosive materials are being used.
- Driving on rough or muddy roads.
- Driving in mountainous areas.
- Extended periods of idling or low speed operation.
- Driving for a prolonged period in cold temperatures and/or extremely humid climates.
- More than 50% driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32°C (90°F).

*If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.*

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 12



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 2.0 ENGINE, FOR EUROPE

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Months** | **12** | **24** | **36** | **48** | **60** | **72** | **84** | **96** |
| | **Miles×1,000** | **20** | **40** | **60** | **80** | **100** | **120** | **140** | **160** |
| | **Km×1,000** | **30** | **60** | **90** | **120** | **150** | **180** | **210** | **240** |
| Drive belts *1 | | First Inspect at 90,000km (60,000miles) or 48 months, after every 30,000km (20,000miles) or 24 months | | | | | | | |
| Engine oil and engine oil filter *2 *3 | | Replace every 30,000 km or 12 months | | | | | | | |
| Fuel additives *4 | | Add every 15,000 km or 12 months | | | | | | | |
| Air cleaner filter | | I | R | I | R | I | R | I | R |
| Spark plugs | 2.0L | Replace every 160,000 km *5 | | | | | | | |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*1 : Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

*2 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.
**Especially, confirm whether it needs to add the recommended oil or not at least every 15,000 km.**

*3 : The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount of oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

*4 : If good quality gasolines meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized HYUNDAI dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*5 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 13



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 2.0 ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Months** | **12** | **24** | **36** | **48** | **60** | **72** | **84** | **96** |
| **Miles×1,000** | **20** | **40** | **60** | **80** | **100** | **120** | **140** | **160** |
| **Km×1,000** | **30** | **60** | **90** | **120** | **150** | **180** | **210** | **240** |
| Vapor hose and fuel filler cap | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Fuel tank air filter | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Fuel filter *6 | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Fuel lines, hoses and connections | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Cooling system | Inspect “Coolant level adjustment and leak” every day | | | | | | | |
| | At first, inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months | | | | | | | |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*6 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 14



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 2.0 ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 |
| | Miles×1,000 | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 |
| | Km×1,000 | 30 | 60 | 90 | 120 | 150 | 180 | 210 | 240 |
| Engine coolant *7 | | At first, replace at 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years : after that, replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months *8 | | | | | | | |
| Battery condition | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Brake lines, hoses and connections | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Parking brake | 2.0L | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Brake/Clutch fluid | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Disc brakes and pads | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*7 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

*8 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 15



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 2.0 ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 |
| | Miles×1,000 | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 |
| | Km×1,000 | 30 | 60 | 90 | 120 | 150 | 180 | 210 | 240 |
| Driveshaft and boots | 2.0L | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Tire (pressure & tread wear) | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Front suspension ball joints | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Air conditioner refrigerant (if equipped) | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Air conditioner compressor (if equipped) | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Climate control air filter (if equipped) | | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *9 | | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped) | | No check, No service required | | | | | | | |
| Transfer case oil (4WD) *9 | | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Rear differential oil (4WD) *9 | | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Propeller shaft (if equipped) | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Exhaust system | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.
*9 : Manual transaxle fluid, transfer case oil and differential oil should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 16



**MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS - GASOLINE 2.0 ENGINE, FOR EUROPE**

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.
Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

| Maintenance item | Maintenance operation | Maintenance intervals | Driving condition |
|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil and engine oil filter | R | Every 15,000 km or 6 months | A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L |
| Air cleaner filter | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E |
| Spark plugs | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | B, H |
| Rear differential oil (4WD) | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, I, K, H |
| Transfer case oil (4WD) | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, I, K, H |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |
| Propeller shaft (if equipped) | I | Every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12 months | C, E |
| Front suspension ball joints | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 17



| Maintenance item | Maintenance operation | Maintenance intervals | Driving condition |
|---|---|---|---|
| Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, G, H |
| Parking brake | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, G, H |
| Driveshaft and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, H, I, J, K |
| Climate control air filter (if equipped) | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E |
| Manual transaxle fluid | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, H, I, K |
| Automatic transaxle fluid | R | Every 100,000 km (62,000 miles) | A, C, F, G, H, I, K |

### Severe driving conditions

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature
B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in sandy areas
F : Driving in heavy traffic area over 90°F (32°C)
G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road
H : Towing a Trailer, or using a camper, or roof rack
I : Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
J : Driving over 140 km/h (87 mile/h)
K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 18



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 1.6 ENGINE/DIESEL ENGINE, FOR EUROPE

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

*1 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.

*2 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced according to the severe maintenance schedule.

*3 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 20,000 km or 12 months.

*4 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 15,000 km.

*5 : The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

*6 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule. We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.

*7 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule. We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.

*8 : Manual transaxle fluid, transfer case oil and rear differential oil should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water.

*9 : Inspect and if necessary correct or replace. Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator, pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

*10 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

*11 : If good quality gasolines meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized HYUNDAI dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 19



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 1.6 ENGINE/DIESEL ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

**30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
  (30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (Every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives *11
  (Every 15,000 km or 12 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 20



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 1.6 ENGINE/DIESEL ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

**60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months**

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD)
- ❑ Inspect rear differential oil (4WD) *8
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect transfer case oil (4WD) *8

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap (Gasoline)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
  (60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (Every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Add fuel additives *11
  (Every 15,000 km or 12 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 21



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 1.6 ENGINE/DIESEL ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

**90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
  (90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 36 months)
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (First 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months,
  after every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (Every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives *11
  (Every 15,000 km or 12 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 22



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 1.6 ENGINE/DIESEL ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

**120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 96 months**

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (First 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months,
  after every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD)
- ❑ Inspect rear differential oil (4WD) *8

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect transfer case oil (4WD) *8
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap (Gasoline)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
  (120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 48 months)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (Every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Add fuel additives *11
  (Every 15,000 km or 12 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 23



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 1.6 ENGINE/DIESEL ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

**150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
  (150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 60 months)
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (First 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months,
  after every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (Every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (1.6 Gasoline)
- ❑ Add fuel additives *11
  (Every 15,000 km or 12 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 24



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 1.6 ENGINE/DIESEL ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

**180,000 km (120,000 miles) or 144 months**

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (First 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months,
  after every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect rear differential oil (4WD) *8
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect transfer case oil (4WD) *8
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap (Gasoline)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
  (180,000 km (120,000 miles) or 72 months)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (Every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Add fuel additives *11
  (Every 15,000 km or 12 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 25



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 1.6 ENGINE/DIESEL ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

**210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 168 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
  (210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 84 months)
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (First 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months,
  after every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine coolant *10
  (First 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120months,
  after every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (Every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives *11
  (Every 15,000 km or 12 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 26



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - GASOLINE 1.6 ENGINE/DIESEL ENGINE, FOR EUROPE (CONT.)

**240,000 km (160,000 miles) or 192 months**

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Diesel) *9
  (First 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 48months,
  after every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Inspect drive belt (Gasoline) *9
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *7
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *8
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD)
- ❑ Inspect rear differential oil (4WD) *8

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect transfer case oil (4WD) *8
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap (Gasoline)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
  (240,000 km (160,000 miles) or 96 months)
- ❑ Replace brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine coolant *10
  (First 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120months,
  after every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1 *2 *3
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1 *4 *5
  (Every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *6
- ❑ Add fuel additives *11
  (Every 15,000 km or 12 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 27



## MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS - GASOLINE 1.6 ENGINE/DIESEL ENGINE, FOR EUROPE

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.
Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

| MAINTENANCE ITEM | | MAINTENANCE OPERATION | MAINTENANCE INTERVALS | DRIVING CONDITION |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil and engine oil filter | Gasoline *1 | R | Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 6 months | A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L |
| | Diesel *2 | R | Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months | |
| Air cleaner filter | | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E |
| Spark plug | | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | B, H |
| Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) | | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, H, I, K |
| Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped) | | R | Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles) | A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |
| Propeller shaft (if equipped) | | I | Every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 12 months | C, E |

*1 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 7,500 km.
*2 : If the recommended oil is not available, replace engine oil and engine oil filter every 10,000 km or 6 months.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 28



| MAINTENANCE ITEM | MAINTENANCE OPERATION | MAINTENANCE INTERVALS | DRIVING CONDITION |
|---|---|---|---|
| Front suspension ball joints | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |
| Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, G, H |
| Parking brake | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, G, H |
| Drive shaft and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K |
| Climate control air filter (if equipped) | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E, G |
| Rear differential oil (4WD) | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, I, K, H |
| Transfer case oil (4WD) | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, I, K, H |

**SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS**

A : Repeated short distance driving
B : Extensive idling
C : Driving in dusty, rough roads
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in sandy areas
F : More than 50 % driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32 °C (90 °F)
G : Driving in mountainous areas.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing
J : Driving in very cold weather
K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 29



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

*1 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.

*2 : Driving in summer season temperature over 40 °C (104 °F - SAUDI, UAE, OMAN, KUWAIT, BAHRAIN, QATAR, IRAN, YEMEN ETC) or driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h) must conform the severe driving condition.

*3 : Inspect and if necessary correct or replace. Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator, pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

*4 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule. We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.

*5 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. HYUNDAI recommends "every 7,500km inspection, every 15,000km replacement".
If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule. We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.

*6 : Manual transaxle fluid, transfer case oil and rear differential oil should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water.

*7 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

*8 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

*9 : If good quality gasolines meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized HYUNDAI dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 30



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE (CONT.)

**15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel)*1
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - Except Middle East
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - For Middle East
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months) *2
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt *3
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *4
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *5
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots

(Continued)

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 31



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE (CONT.)

(Continued)

❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1
(Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
- Except Middle East
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
- For Middle East
(Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months) *2
❑ Add fuel additives *9
(Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**45,000 km (30,000 miles) or 36 months**

❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
❑ Inspect battery condition
❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
❑ Replace air cleaner filter
❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1
(Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months)
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
- Except Middle East
❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
- For Middle East
(Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months) *2
❑ Add fuel additives *9
(Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 32



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE (CONT.)

**60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt *3
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *6
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD) (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect rear differential oil (4WD) *6

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect transfer case oil (4WD) *6
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - Except Middle East
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - For Middle East
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months) *2
- ❑ Replace fuel filter (Gasoline) *4
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *5
- ❑ Replace fuel tank air filter (Gasoline)
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 33



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE (CONT.)

**75,000 km (50,000 miles) or 60 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter(Diesel) *1
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - Except Middle East
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter(Gasoline) *1
  - For Middle East
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months) *2
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months**

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt *3
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *4
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *5
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake

(Continued)

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 34



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE (CONT.)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD) (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - Except Middle East
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - For Middle East
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months) *2
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**105,000 km (70,000 miles) or 84 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - Except Middle East
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - For Middle East
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months) *2
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 35



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE (CONT.)

**120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 96 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt *3
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *6

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD) (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect rear differential oil (4WD) *6
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect transfer case oil (4WD) *6
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter - For Middle East
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace coolant *7
  (At first 200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months, after every 40,000 km (25,000 miles) or 24 months) *8
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Diesel) *1
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - Except Middle East
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter (Gasoline) *1
  - For Middle East
  (Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months) *2

(Continued)

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 36



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - EXCEPT EUROPE (CONT.)

(Continued)

- ❑ Replace fuel filter (Gasoline) *4
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *5
- ❑ Replace fuel tank air filter (Gasoline)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (2.0 Gasoline)
  (Every 160,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (1.6 Gasoline)
  (Every 150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives *9
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❊ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**No check, No service required**

- ❑ Automatic transaxle fluid

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 37



## MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS - EXCEPT EUROPE

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.
Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

| Maintenance item | | | Maintenance operation | Maintenance intervals | Driving condition |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil and engine oil filter | Gasoline | Except Middle East | R | Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months | A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L |
| | | For Middle East | R | Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months | |
| | Diesel | | R | Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months | |
| Air cleaner filter | | | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E |
| Spark plug | | | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | B, H |
| Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) | | | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, H, I, K |
| Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped) | | | R | Every 100,000 km (62,500 miles) | A, C, F, G, H, I, K |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | | | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |
| Propeller shaft (if equipped) | | | I | Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months | C, E |
| Front suspension ball joints | | | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 38



| Maintenance item | Maintenance operation | Maintenance intervals | Driving condition |
|---|---|---|---|
| Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, G, H |
| Parking brake | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, G, H |
| Drive shaft and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K |
| Climate control air filter (if equipped) | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E, G |
| Rear differential oil (4WD) | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, I, K, H |
| Transfer case oil (4WD) | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, I, K, H |

**SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS**

A : Repeated short distance driving
B : Extensive idling
C : Driving in dusty, rough roads
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in sandy areas
F : More than 50 % driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32 °C (90 °F)
G : Driving in mountainous areas.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing
J : Driving in very cold weather
K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 39



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR RUSSIA

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

*1 : Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.

*2 : This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. HYUNDAI recommends "every 7,500km inspection, every 15,000km replacement".

If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule. We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.

*3 : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule. We recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer for details.

*4 : Inspect and if necessary correct or replace. Inspect drive belt tentioner, idler and alternator, pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

*5 : Manual transaxle fluid, transfer case oil and rear differential oil should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water.

*6 : When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

*7 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

*8 : If good quality gasolines meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized HYUNDAI dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 40



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

**15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1
- ❑ Add fuel additives *8
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❋ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt *3
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *4
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *5
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots

(Continued)

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 41



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1
- ❑ Add fuel additives *8
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**45,000 km (30,000 miles) or 36 months**

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1
- ❑ Add fuel additives *8
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 42



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

**60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt *4
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *5
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD) (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect rear differential oil (4WD) *5

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Inspect transfer case oil (4WD) *5
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1
- ❑ Replace fuel filter (Gasoline) *3
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *2
- ❑ Replace fuel tank air filter (Gasoline)
- ❑ Add fuel additives *8
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 43



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

**75,000 km (50,000 miles) or 60 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1
- ❑ Add fuel additives *8
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months**

- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch(if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt *4
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter (Gasoline) *3
- ❑ Inspect fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *2
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect parking brake

(Continued)

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 44



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD) (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace air cleaner filter
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1
- ❑ Add fuel additives *8
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**105,000 km (70,000 miles) or 84 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter - Except Middle East
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1
- ❑ Add fuel additives *8
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 45



## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE - FOR RUSSIA (CONT.)

**120,000 km (80,000 miles) or 96 months**

- ❑ Inspect air cleaner filter
- ❑ Inspect air conditioner refrigerant/compressor (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect battery condition
- ❑ Inspect brake/clutch (if equipped) fluid
- ❑ Inspect brake lines, hoses and connections
- ❑ Inspect cooling system
  (At first, inspect 60,000 km (40,000 miles) or 48 months after that, inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months)
- ❑ Inspect disc brakes and pads
- ❑ Inspect drive belt *4
- ❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots
- ❑ Inspect exhaust system
- ❑ Inspect front suspension ball joints
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Diesel)
- ❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections (Gasoline)
- ❑ Inspect manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) *5
- ❑ Inspect parking brake
- ❑ Inspect propeller shaft (4WD) (if equipped)
- ❑ Inspect rear differential oil (4WD) *5
- ❑ Inspect steering gear rack, linkage and boots
- ❑ Inspect tire (pressure & tread wear)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ❑ Inspect transfer case oil (4WD) *5
- ❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap
- ❑ Replace climate control air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace coolant *6
  (At first 210,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months, after every 40,000 km (25,000 miles) or 24 months) *7
- ❑ Replace engine oil and filter *1
- ❑ Replace fuel filter (Gasoline) *3
- ❑ Replace fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *2
- ❑ Replace fuel tank air filter (Gasoline)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (2.0 Gasoline)
  (Every 160,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months)
- ❑ Replace spark plugs (1.6 Gasoline)
  (Every 150,000 km (100,000 miles) or 120 months)
- ❑ Add fuel additives *8
  (Every 5,000 km or 6 months)

❉ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

**No check, No service required**

- ❑ Automatic transaxle fluid

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 46



## MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS - FOR RUSSIA

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.
Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.
R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

| MAINTENANCE ITEM | MAINTENANCE OPERATION | MAINTENANCE INTERVALS | DRIVING CONDITION |
|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil and engine oil filter | R | Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months | A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L |
| Air cleaner filter | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E |
| Spark plug | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | B, H |
| Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped) | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, H, I, K |
| Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped) | R | Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles) | A, C, F, G, H, I, K |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |
| Propeller shaft (if equipped) | I | Every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months | C, E |
| Front suspension ball joints | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 47



| MAINTENANCE ITEM | MAINTENANCE OPERATION | MAINTENANCE INTERVALS | DRIVING CONDITION |
|---|---|---|---|
| Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, G, H |
| Parking brake | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, G, H |
| Drive shaft and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K |
| Climate control air filter (if equipped) | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E, G |
| Rear differential oil (4WD) | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, I, K, H |
| Transfer case oil (4WD) | R | Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) | C, D, E, G, I, K, H |

**SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS**

A : Repeated short distance driving
B : Extensive idling
C : Driving in dusty, rough roads
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in sandy areas
F : More than 50 % driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32 °C (90 °F)
G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, commercial car or vehicle towing
J : Driving in very cold weather
K : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
L : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 48



## EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

### Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the car is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

### Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

### Fuel filter (cartridge)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. We recommend that the fuel filter be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

### Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend that the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - Diesel only**

**Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touch the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room while engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 49



### Vapor hose and fuel filler cap

The vapor hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapor hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

### Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses (if equipped)

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

### Air cleaner filter

We recommend that you use air cleaner filter for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

### Spark plugs (for gasoline engine)

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

### Cooling system

Check the cooling system parts, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

### Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the manual transaxle fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

### Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Automatic transaxle fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.

But in severe conditions, we recommend that the fluid be changed by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer in accordance to the scheduled maintenance at the beginning of this chapter.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**Automatic transaxle fluid color is basically red.**

**As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transaxle fluid will begin to look darker. It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed color.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 50



**⚠ CAUTION**

***The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transaxle malfunction and failure.***

***Use only specified automatic transaxle fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)***

### Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

### Brake fluid

Check brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between "MIN" and "MAX" marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

### Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake lever and cables.

### Brake pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, refer to the Hyundai web site.

(**http://brakemanual.hmc.co.kr**)

### Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

### Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

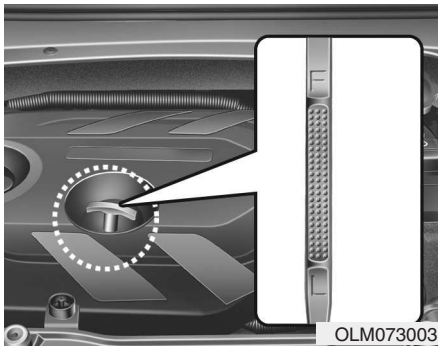
### Air conditioning refrigerant/ compressor (if equipped)

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 51



## ENGINE OIL




### Checking the engine oil level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

**⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose**

**Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.**

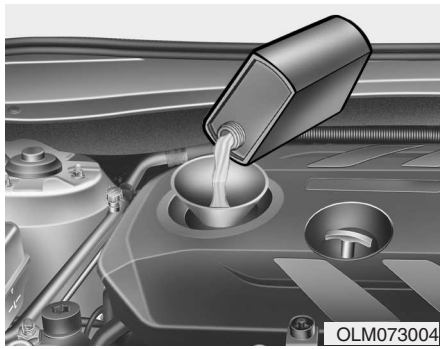
5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not overfill the engine oil. It may damage the engine.***
- ***Do not spill engine oil, when adding or changing engine oil. If you drop the engine oil on the engine room, wipe it off immediately.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine**

***Overfilling the engine oil may cause severe dieseling due to churning effect. It may lead to engine damage accompanied with abrupt engine speed increment, combustion noise and white smoke emission.***




If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. **Do not overfill.**

**Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.**

*Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)*

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 52



### Changing the engine oil and filter

We recommend that the engine oil and filter be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.




**⚠ WARNING**

**Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.**

## ENGINE COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant concentration level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before traveling to a colder climate.

### Checking the coolant level

**⚠ WARNING**



**Removing radiator cap**

- **Never attempt to remove the radiator cap while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.**
- **Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.**

- **Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug while the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 53

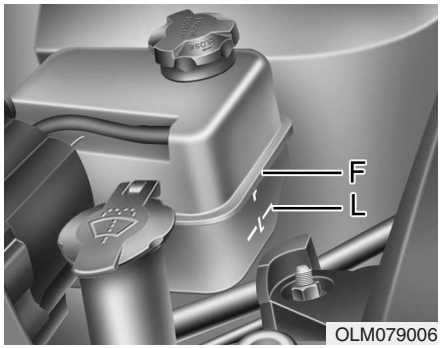


**⚠ WARNING**



**The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blades. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.**

**If your vehicle is equipped with GDI, the electric motor (cooling fan) may operate until you disconnect the nagative battery cable.**




Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F (MAX) and L (MIN) marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough specified coolant to provide protection against freezing and corrosion. Bring the level to F (MAX), but do not overfill. If frequent coolant refill is required, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

***Recommended engine coolant***

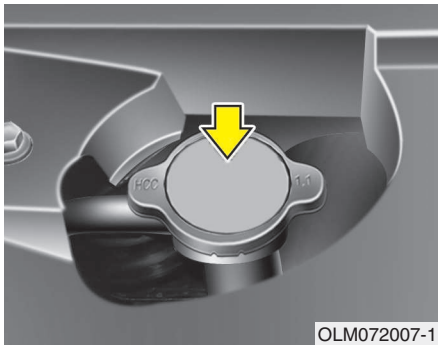
- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol-based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

| Ambient Temperature | Mixture Percentage (volume) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Antifreeze | Water |
| -15°C (5°F) | 35 | 65 |
| -25°C (-13°F) | 40 | 60 |
| -35°C (-31°F) | 50 | 50 |
| -45°C (-49°F) | 60 | 40 |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:29 AM Page 54




OLM072007-1

**⚠ WARNING**

**Radiator cap**



**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.**

### Changing the coolant

We recommend that the coolant be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Put a thick cloth or fabric around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as generator.***

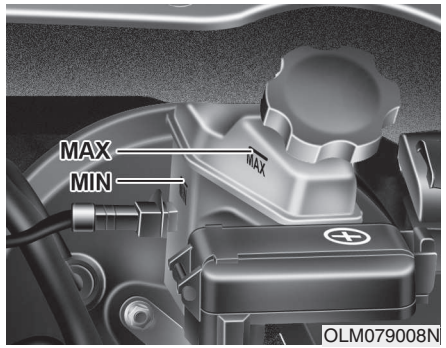
**⚠ WARNING - Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:30 AM Page 55



## BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)




### Checking the brake/clutch fluid level

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX (Maximum) and MIN (Minimum) marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake/clutch fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake/clutch fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX (Maximum) level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings and/or clutch disc (if equipped).

If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the brake system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

*Use only the specified brake/clutch fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants or capacities" in section 8.)*

*Never mix different types of fluid.*

**⚠ WARNING - Loss of brake fluid**

**In the event the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**⚠ WARNING - Brake/clutch fluid**

**When changing and adding brake/clutch fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake/clutch fluid come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

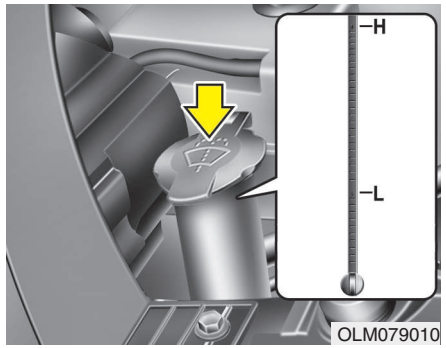
***Do not allow brake/clutch fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.***

***Brake/clutch fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be properly disposed. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake/clutch system can damage brake/clutch system parts.***

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:30 AM Page 56



## WASHER FLUID



OLM079010

### Checking the washer fluid level

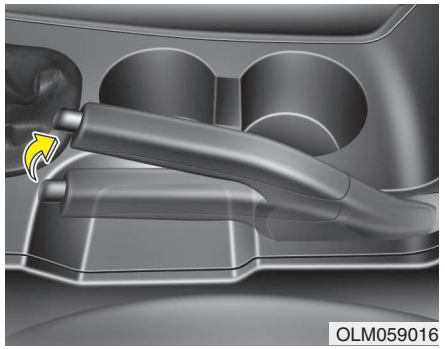
1. Open the cover.
2. Pull the gauge out and check the level. The level should be between H (High) and L (Low).
3. If it is near of at L (Low), add enough washer fluid to bring the level to H (High). Do not overfill.

Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

**⚠ WARNING - Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Windshield Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.**
- **Windshield washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windshield washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.**

## PARKING BRAKE


OLM059016

### Check the parking brake

Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of “clicks” heard while fully applying it from the released position. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**Stroke : 6 “clicks” at a force of 20 kg (44 lbs, 196 N).**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:30 AM Page 57



## FUEL FILTER (FOR DIESEL)

### Draining water from fuel filter

The fuel filter for diesel engine plays an important role of separating water from fuel and accumulating the water in its bottom.

If water accumulates in the fuel filter, the warning light comes on when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

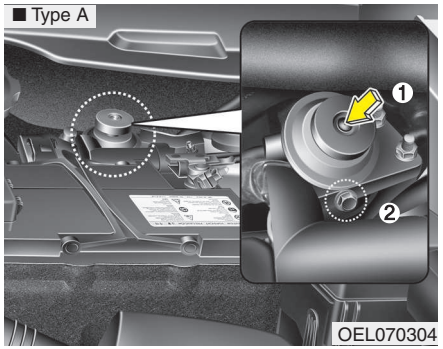


If this warning light illuminates, we recommend that the system by checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the water accumulated in the fuel filter is not drained at proper times, damages to the major parts such as the fuel system can be caused by water permeation in the fuel filter.***

■ Type A




OEL070304

### Extracting air from the fuel filter

If you drive until you have no fuel left or if you replace the fuel filter, be sure to extract air from the fuel system as it makes it difficult to start the engine.

1. Pump up and down(1) approximately 50 times until the pump is hard.
2. Extract air from the fuel filter by removing the bolt(2) with a cross-tip screw driver and reinstall the bolt(2).
3. Pump up and down(1) approximately 15 times.
4. Extract air from the fuel filter by removing the bolt(2) with a cross-tip screw driver and reinstall the bolt(2).
5. Pump up and down(1) approximately 5 times.

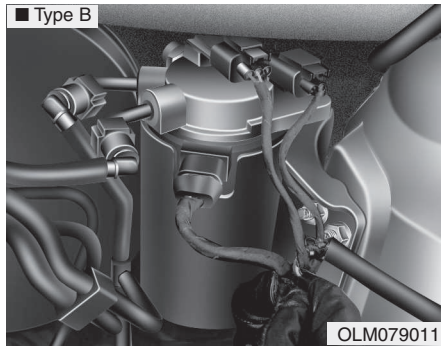
**✻ NOTICE**

- **Use cloths when you extract air so that the fuel is not sprayed around.**
- **Clean the fuel around the fuel filter or the injection pump before starting the engine to prevent fire.**
- **Finally, check each part if the fuel is leaking.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:30 AM Page 58



■ Type B




**Fuel filter cartridge replacement**

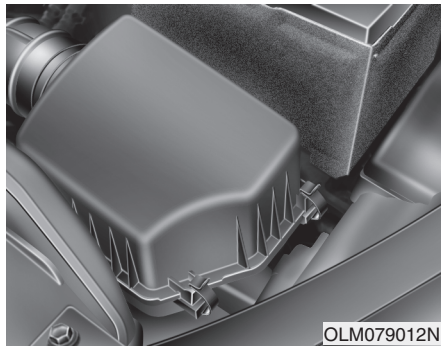
### ✻ NOTICE

**When replacing the fuel filter cartridge, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:30 AM Page 59



## AIR CLEANER

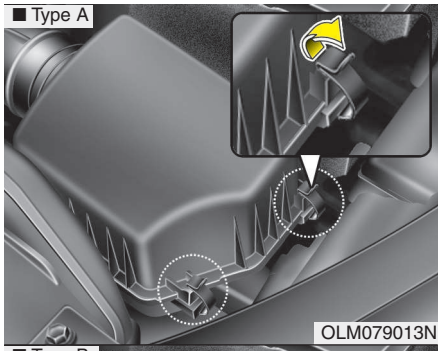


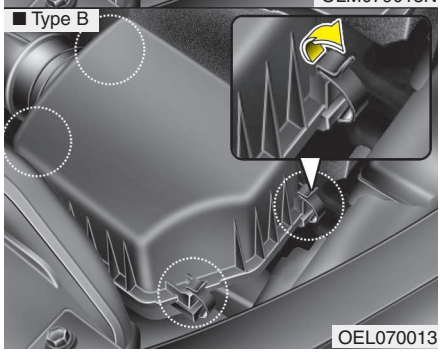

### Filter replacement

It must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

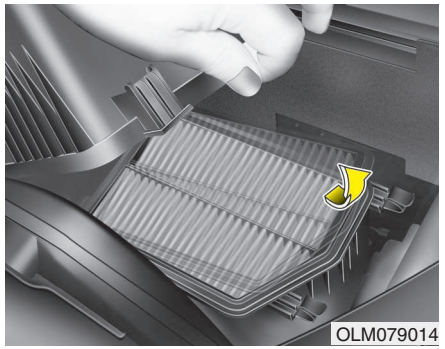
You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner element.

Clean the filter by using compressed air.




1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.




2. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner.
3. Replace the air cleaner filter.
4. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:30 AM Page 60



Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

*If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to "Maintenance under severe usage conditions" in this section.)*

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.***
- ***When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.***
- ***We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. Improper parts could damage the air flow sensor, turbocharger or engine.***

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:30 AM Page 61

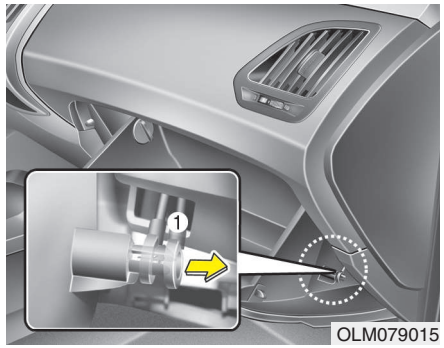


## CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER (IF EQUIPPED)

### Filter inspection

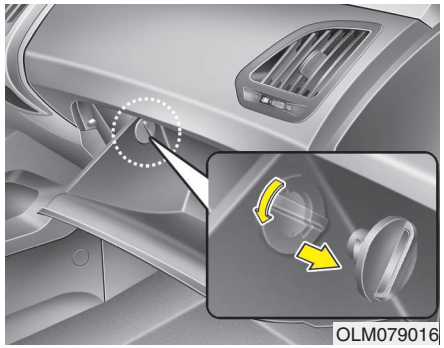
If the vehicle is operated in the severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you, the owner, replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

Replace the filter according to the maintenance Schedule.




### Filter replacement

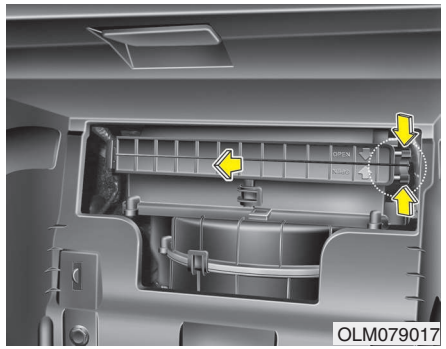
1. Open the glove box and remove the support strap (1).



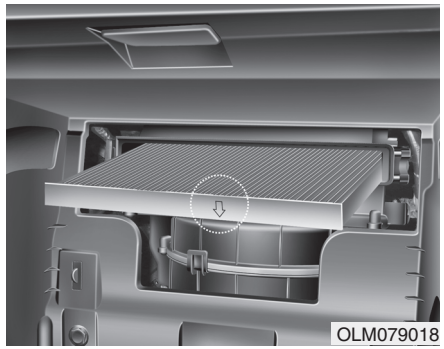

2. With the glove box open, remove the stoppers on both sides.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:30 AM Page 62






3. Remove the climate control air filter case while pressing the lock on the right of the cover.




4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

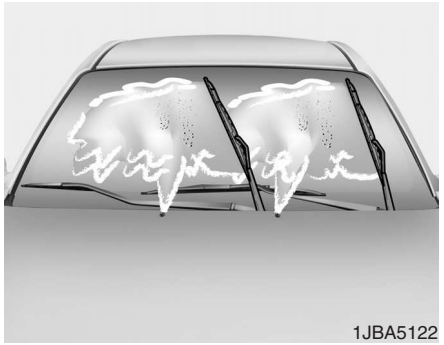
### ✻ NOTICE

**When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:30 AM Page 63



## WIPER BLADES




### Blade inspection

**✻ NOTICE**

**Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windshield difficult to clean.**

Contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***

### Blade replacement

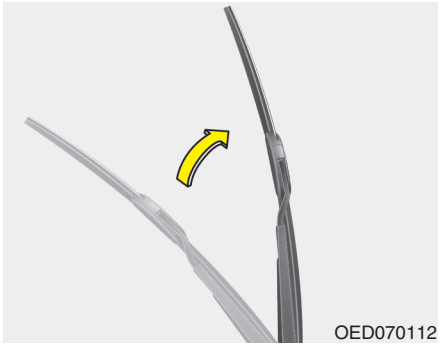
When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

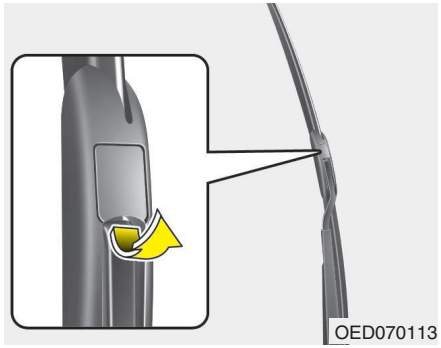
**⚠ CAUTION**

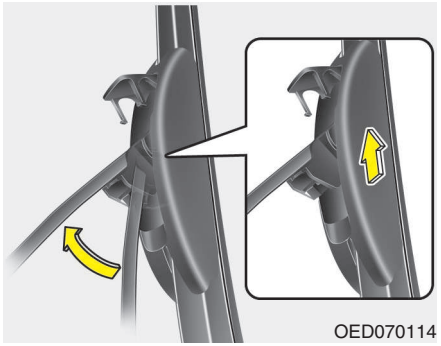
***To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.***




***Front windshield wiper blade***

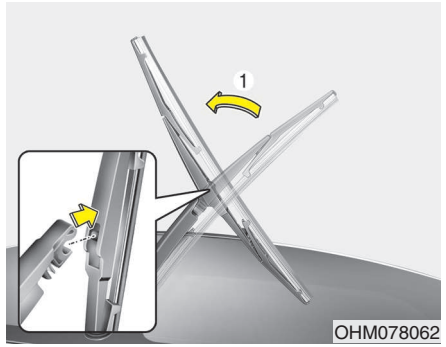
1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.
2. Open the cover of the blade.
3. Compress the clip behind the wiper arm and lift it off the arm.
4. Install the blade assembly until it clicks into place.
5. Close the cover of blade.
6. Place back the wiper arm to the proper position.

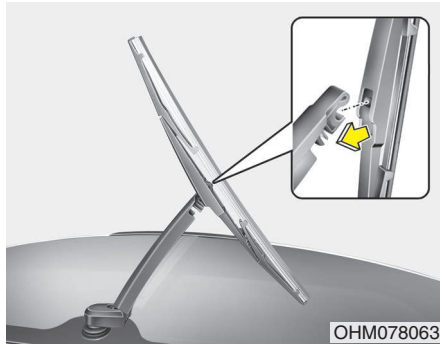
### ✻ NOTICE

**Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windshield.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:30 AM Page 65






***Rear window wiper blade***

1. Raise the wiper arm and pull out the wiper blade assembly.
2. Install the new blade assembly by inserting the center part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
3. Make sure the blade assembly is installed firmly by trying to pull it slightly.

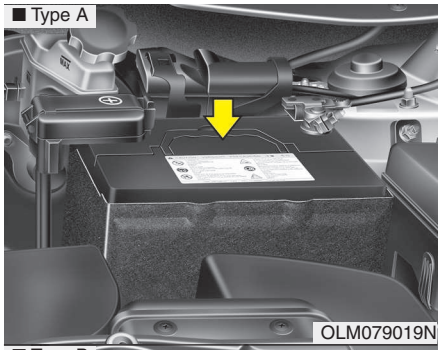
To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, we recommend that the wiper blade be replaced by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 66



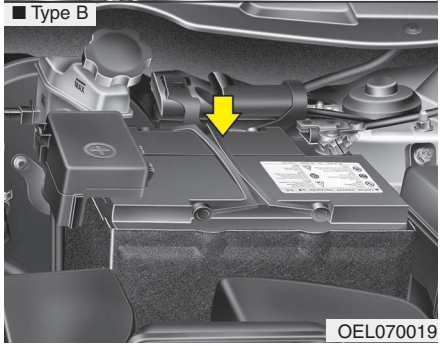
## BATTERY

■ Type A



OLM079019N

■ Type B



OEL070019

### For best battery service

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

**⚠ WARNING - Battery dangers**

**Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.**

**Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.**

**Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.**

**Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.**

**If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 67



**(Continued)**

**If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.**



**Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.**



**An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.**



**The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. We recommend that you return the battery to an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.**

**Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***If you connect unauthorized electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorized devices.***

■ Example




OJD072039

❊ The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

## Battery capacity label

1. CMF65L-BCI : The HYUNDAI model name of battery
2. 12V : The nominal voltage
3. 60Ah(20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. 92RC : The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
5. 550CCA : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 440A : The cold-test current in amperes by EN

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 68



### Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on while the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

**⚠ WARNING - Recharging battery**

**When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:**

- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.**
- **Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).**
- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.**
- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.**

### Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (See section 4)
- Sunroof (See section 4)
- Trip computer (See section 4)
- Climate control system (See section 4)
- Clock (See section 4)
- Audio (See section 4)

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 69



## TIRES AND WHEELS

### Tire care

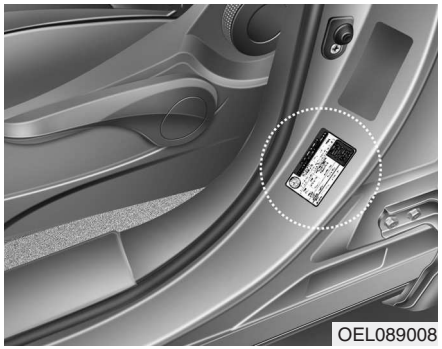
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

### Recommended cold tire inflation pressures

All tire pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tires are cold. “Cold Tires” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tire wear.

For recommended inflation pressure refer to “Tire and wheels” in section 8.


OEL089008

All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING - Tire underinflation**

**Severe underinflation (70 kPa (10 psi) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tire failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 70



**⚠ CAUTION**

- *Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tire pressures at the proper levels. If a tire frequently needs refilling, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.*
- *Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the center of the tire tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

- *Warm tires normally exceed recommended cold tire pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure or the tires will be underinflated.*
- *Be sure to reinstall the tire inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.*

**⚠ WARNING - Tire inflation**

**Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Tire pressure**

***Always observe the following:***

- *Check tire pressure when the tires are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km (1 mile) since startup.)*
- *Check the pressure of your spare tire each time you check the pressure of other tires.*
- *Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.*
- *Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.*

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 71



### Checking tire inflation pressure

Check your tires once a month or more.

Also, check the tire pressure of the spare tire.

#### *How to check*

Use a good quality gage to check tire pressure. You can not tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tire and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gage. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Inspect your tires frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tire pressure gauge.**
- **Tires with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tire pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tire label located on the driver's side center pillar.**
- **Worn tires can cause accidents. Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.**
- **Remember to check the pressure of your spare tire. HYUNDAI recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tires on your vehicle.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 72



### Tire rotation

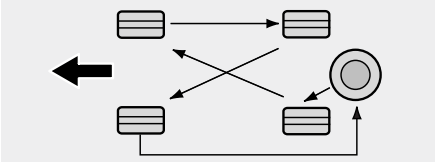
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tires be rotated every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tires for correct balance.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tire if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tire pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

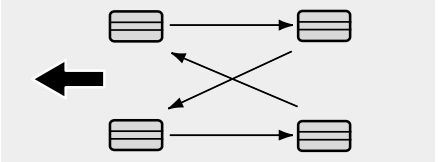
Refer to “Tire and wheels” in section 8.

With a full-size spare tire (if equipped)



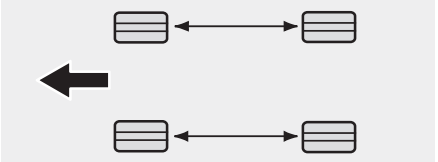
S2BLA790

Without a spare tire



S2BLA790A

Directional tires (if equipped)



CBGQ0707A

*Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tires are rotated.*

**✻ NOTICE**

**Rotate radial tires that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not use the compact spare tire for tire rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tires under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 73



### Wheel alignment and tire balance

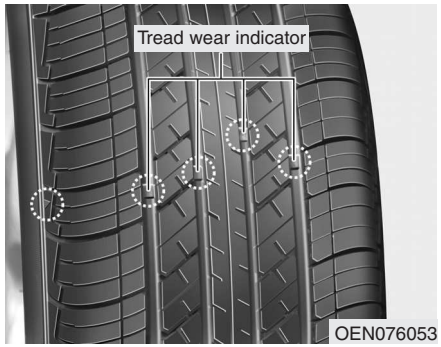
The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.***




### Tire replacement

If the tire is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tire. Replace the tire when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tire.

**⚠ WARNING - Replacing tires**

- **Driving on worn-out tires is very hazardous and will reduce braking effectiveness, steering accuracy, and traction.**
- **Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide for safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tire and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to handling failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tires, be sure to equip all four tires with the tire and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 74



**(Continued)**

- **The use of any other tire size or type may seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, stopping distance, body to tire clearance, snow tire clearance, and speedometer reliability.**
- **It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible, or necessary, then replace the two front or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.**
- **The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. Tire size can affect wheel speed. When replacing tires, all 4 tires must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tires of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESP (Electronic Stability Program) (if equipped) to work irregularly.**

***Compact spare tire replacement (if equipped)***

A compact spare tire has a shorter tread life than a regular size tire. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tire. The replacement compact spare tire should be the same size and design tire as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tire wheel. The compact spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tire wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tire.

**Wheel replacement**

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tire clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 75



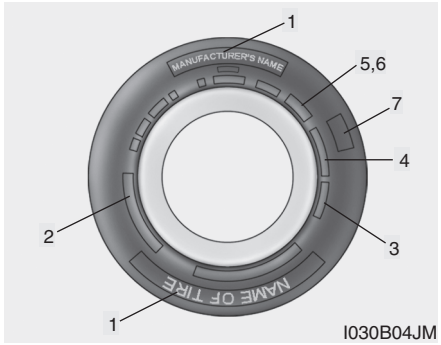
### Tire traction

Tire traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tires, tires that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tires should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

### Tire maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer or other repair shops that use qualified technicians check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tire life. Additionally, a tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.




### Tire sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides the tire identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tire in case of a recall.

***1. Manufacturer or brand name***

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

***2. Tire size designation***

A tire's sidewall is marked with a tire size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tires for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tire size designation mean.

Example tire size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

**P225/55R18 102H**

P - Applicable vehicle type (tires marked with the prefix "P" are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tires have this marking).

225 - Tire width in millimeters.

55 - Aspect ratio. The tire's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 76



102 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

H - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

**Wheel size designation**

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

**7.0JX18**

7.0 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

**Tire speed ratings**

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger cars. The speed rating is part of the tire size designation on the sidewall of the tire. This symbol corresponds to that tire's designed maximum safe operating speed.

| Speed Rating Symbol | Maximum Speed |
|---|---|
| S | 180 km/h (112 mph) |
| T | 190 km/h (118 mph) |
| H | 210 km/h (130 mph) |
| V | 240 km/h (149 mph) |
| Z | Above 240 km/h (149 mph) |

***3. Checking tire life (TIN : Tire Identification Number)***

Any tires that are over 6 years, based on the manufacturing date, tire strength and performance, decline with age naturally (even unused spare tires). Therefore, the tires (including the spare tire) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tire sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tire consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

**DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO**

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tire size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1613 represents that the tire was produced in the 16th week of 2013.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 77



**⚠ WARNING - Tire age**

**Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, it is recommended that tires generally be replaced after six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this Warning can result in sudden tire failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.**

***4. Tire ply composition and material***

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric are in the tire. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

***5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure***

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tire. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

***6. Maximum load rating***

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. When replacing the tires on the vehicle, always use a tire that has the same load rating as the factory installed tire.

***7. Uniform tire quality grading***

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

**Tread wear**

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm because of variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tires. The tires available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicles may vary with respect to grade.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 78



**Traction - AA, A, B & C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tires ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.**

**Temperature -A, B & C**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by the law.

**⚠ WARNING - Tire temperature**

**The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tire failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 79



**Low aspect ratio tire (if equipped)**

Low aspect ratio tires, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tires are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tires.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tire is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tire of the low aspect ratio tire is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.***

***- When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tires and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tires and wheels.***

***- When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or curb stone, drive slowly so that the tires and wheels are not damaged.***

***- If the tire is impacted, we recommend that you inspect the tire condition or contact an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***

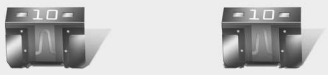
***- To prevent damage to the tire, inspect the tire condition and pressure every 3,000km.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***It is not easy to recognize the tire damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tire damage, even though you cannot see the tire damage with your own eyes, have the tire checked or replaced because the tire damage may cause air leakage from the tire.***
- ***If the tire is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or curb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.***
- ***You can find out the tire information on the tire sidewall.***

## FUSES

■ Blade type



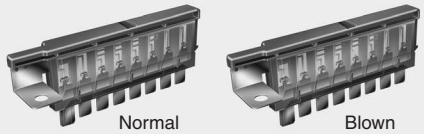
Normal Blown

■ Cartridge type



Normal Blown

■ Multi fuse



Normal Blown

■ BFT (Battery fuse terminal)



Normal Blown

OLM079051N

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 3 (or 4) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Before replacing a blown fuse, disconnect the negative battery cable.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

*Four kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and fusible link for higher amperage ratings.*

**⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement**

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.***

**✻ NOTICE**

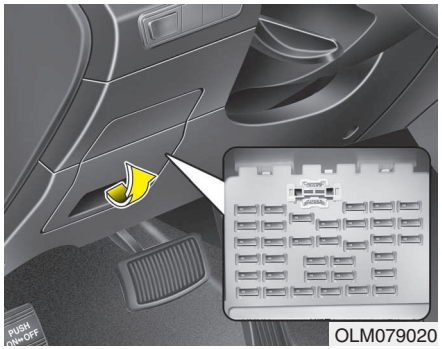
**The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 81



### ⚠ CAUTION

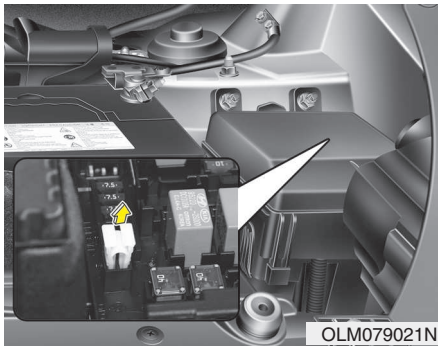
- ***When replacing a blown fuse or relay with a new one, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. The incomplete fastening fuse or relay may cause the vehicle wiring and electric systems damage and a possible fire.***
- ***Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, consult with an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.***
- ***Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a driver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.***



OLM079020

***Inner panel fuse replacement***

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.

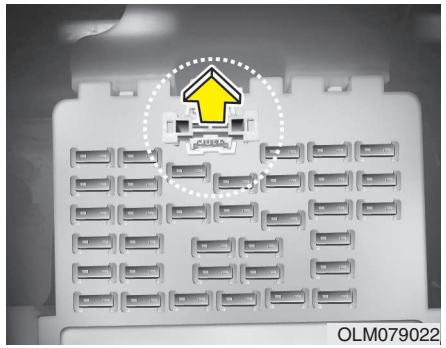

OLM079021N

3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

*If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigar lighter fuse.*

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse block in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.



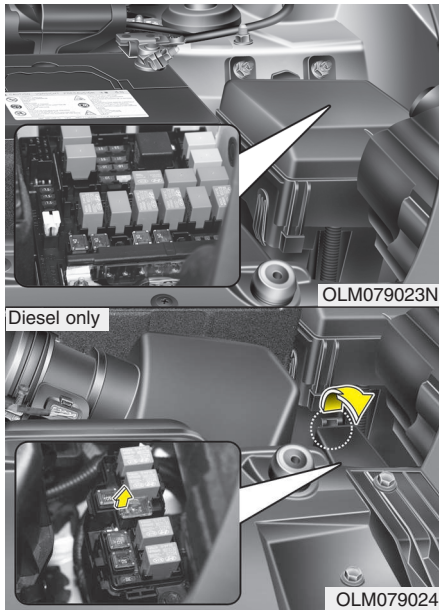

***Memory fuse (SHUNT connector)***

Your vehicle is equipped with a memory fuse (SHUNT connector) to prevent battery discharge if your vehicle is parked without being operated for prolonged periods. Use the following procedures before parking the vehicle for prolonged periods.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Turn off the headlights and tail lights.
3. Open the driver's side panel cover and pull out the memory fuse (SHUNT connector).

## ✻ NOTICE

- **If the memory fuse is pulled up from the fuse panel, the warning chime, audio, clock and interior lamps, etc., will not operate. Some items must be reset after replacement. Refer to "Battery" in this section.**
- **Even though the memory fuse is pulled up, the battery can still be discharged by operation of the headlights or other electrical devices.**




***Engine compartment panel fuse replacement***

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover by pressing the tap and pulling up.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 83

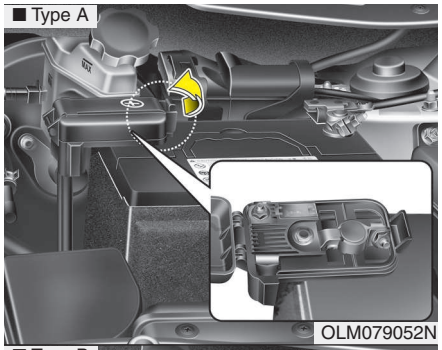


3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

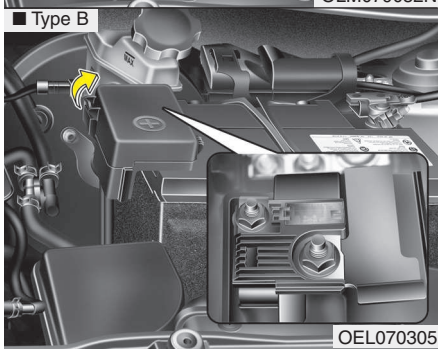
***After checking the fuse box in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse box cover. If not, electrical failures may occur from water leaking in.***

■ Type A



OLM079052N

■ Type B



OEL070305

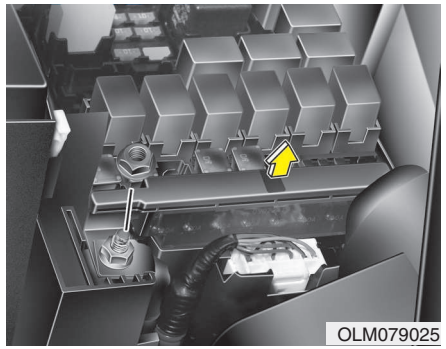
***Main fuse***

If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:31 AM Page 84






***Multi fuse***

If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the fuse panel on the right side in the engine compartment.
4. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
5. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
6. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the main fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

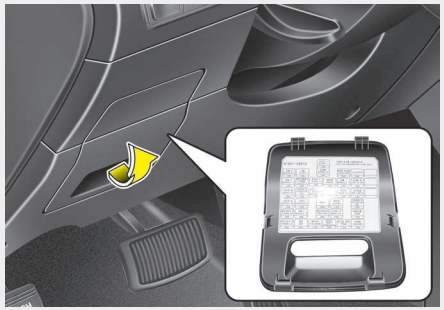
EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 85



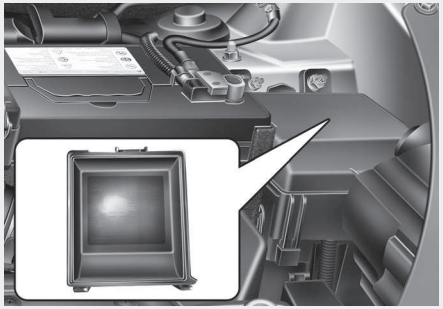
## Fuse/Relay panel description

Inside the fuse/relay box covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

**Driver's side panel**

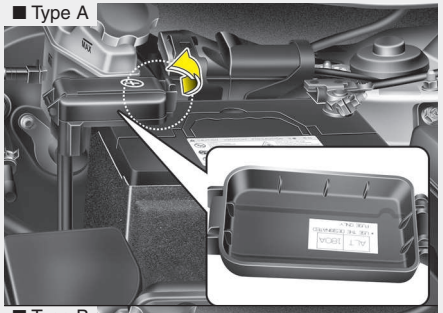


**Engine compartment**

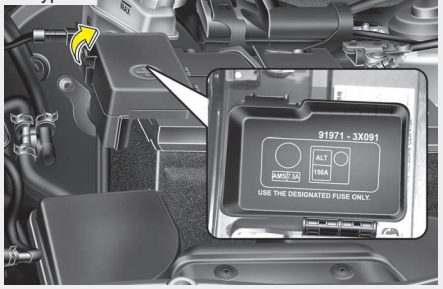


**Main fuse**

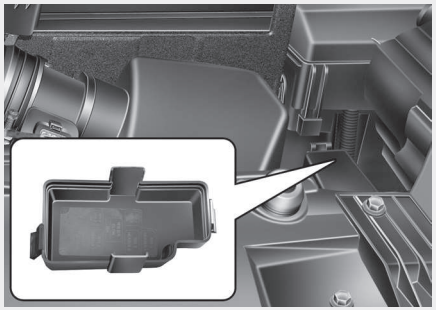
■ Type A



■ Type B




**Diesel only**



OLM079026/OLM079053N/OLM079027/
OEL070306/OLM079028

### ✻ NOTICE

**Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 86



**Inner fuse panel (Instrument panel)**

| No. | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 10A | **AUDIO 1** | AUDIO 1<br>POWER CONNECTOR | Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, DC/DC Converter |
| 2 | 10A | | ROOM LP<br>POWER CONNECTOR | IPS Control Module (B+), BCM, A/C Control Module, Data Link Connector, Instrument Cluster(IND), RF Receiver, Ignition Key ILL. & Door Warning Switch, Auto Light & Photo Sensor, MAP Lamp, Room Lamp, Luggage Lamp, Driver/Passenger, Vanity Lamp |
| 3 | 10A | **MODULE 3** | MODULE 3 | IPS Control Module (ON Input), Electro Chromic Mirror, BCM, PDM, Head Lamp Leveling Device Switch, Head Lamp Leveling Device Actuator LH/RH, ICM Relay Box (Rear Seat Warmer Relay Relay LH/RH) |
| 4 | 10A | 1 | START | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 4 / 11 - Start / ATM P/N)<br>Burglar Alarm Relay, ECM |
| 5 | 10A | IND | AIR BAG IND. | Instrument Cluster (IND.) |
| 6 | 10A | **CLUSTER** | CLUSTER | Instrument Cluster (IND.), Seat Belt Reminder Switch, Console Switch, BCM, Smart Key Control Module, Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, ISG Switch, Alternator |
| 7 | 10A | **MODULE 4** | MODULE 4 | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 1 - Blower), Rain Sensor, Diesel Box (RLY. 2, 3 - PTC Heater Relay #2, #3) A/C Control Module, Cluster Ionizer, Sunroof Motor |
| 8 | 25A | **POWER OUTLET 2** | POWER OUTLET 2 | Cigarette Lighter & Front Power Outlet, Rear Power Outlet |
| 9 | 10A | **AUDIO 2** | AUDIO 2 | Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, AMP, PDM, BCM, Power Outside Mirror Switch, Smart Key Control Module, DC/DC Converter, Sunroof Motor |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 87



| No. | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10 | 10A | | AIR BAG | SRS Control Module, Passenger Air Bag Lamp |
| 11 | 10A | MODULE 1 | MODULE 1 | IPS Control Module (ON/START Input), 4WD ECM, ICM Relay Box (DBC Relay), DBC Switch, Multifunction Switch (Light), Steering Angle Sensor, Stop Lamp Switch, EPS Control Module, Tire Pressure Monitoring Module, ESP Off Switch, E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 8 - ESS), DC/DC Converter, Smart Parking Assist Control Module |
| 12 | 15A | | HANDLE HTD | Clock Spring (Steering Wheel Heater) |
| 13 | 10A | | FOG LP RR | ICM Relay Box (Rear Fog Lamp Relay) |
| 14 | 25A | | WIPER FRT | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 12 - Front Wiper LO, RLY. 13 - Rain Wiper)<br>Front Wiper Motor, Multifunction Switch (Wiper) |
| 15 | 15A | FRT | S/HEATER FRT | Console Switch |
| 16 | 20A | POWER OUTLET 1 | POWER OUTLET 1 | Cigarette Lighter & Front Power Outlet |
| 17 | 10A | B/UP LP | BACK-UP LP | Back-Up Lamp Relay<br>Rear Parking Assist Sensor LH/RH, Rear Parking Assist Sensor Center LH/RH |
| 18 | 15A | | DR LOCK | Door Lock/Unlock Relay, Tail Gate Relay, ICM Relay Box (Dead Lock Relay) |
| 19 | 7.5A | MODULE 2 | MODULE 2 | BCM, Smart Key Control Module, PDM |
| 20 | 15A | | WIPER RR | ICM Relay Box (Rear Wiper Relay), Rear Wiper Motor, Multifunction Switch (Wiper) |
| 21 | 15A | | SUNROOF | Sunroof Motor |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 88



| No. | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 22 | 20A | IGN 1 | IGN 1 | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (FUSE - F23, F24, F25) |
| 23 | 7.5A | | A/CON | A/C Control Module (Auto) |
| 24 | 15A | RR | S/HEATER RR | ICM Relay Box (Rear Seat Warmer Relay LH/RH) |
| 25 | 25A | RH | P/WDW RH | Power Window Main Switch, Passenger Power Window Switch(LHD),<br>Rear Power Window Switch RH |
| 26 | 10A | FOLDING MIRR | FOLDING MIRR | Power Outside Mirror Switch |
| 27 | 10A | SMART KEY | SMART KEY | PDM, Smart Key Control ModuleFOB Holder, Start/Stop Button Switch |
| 28 | 15A | 2 | PDM | PDM |
| 29 | 25A | LH | P/WDW LH | Power Window Main Switch, Passenger Power Window Switch(RHD),<br>Rear Power Window Switch LH |
| 30 | 25A | AMP | AMP | AMP, DC/DC Converter |
| 31 | 7.5A | | HTD MIRR | Rear Defogger Switch, ECM(G4FD)<br>Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror |
| 32 | 20A | SAFETY | SAFETY P/WDW | Driver Safety Power Window Module |
| 33 | 7.5A | MODULE 5 | MODULE 5 | ATM Shift Lever, Rear Parking Assist Buzzer, Tire Pressure Monitoring Module |
| 34 | 15A | | HAZARD | ICM Relay Box (Flasher Sound Relay), BCM |
| 35 | 10A | 1 | MDPS | MDPS Unit |
| 36 | 20A | DRV | P/SEAT DRV | FRT DRV Seat |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 89



**Engine compartment main fuse panel**

| No. | | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MULTI FUSE | 1 | 80A | 1 | MDPS | EPS Control Module |
| | 2 | 60A | 1 | B+1 | Smart Junction Box (Fuse - F13 / F20 / F26 / F31 / F37, IPS 4 / IPS 5 / IPS 6 / IPS 7) |
| | 3 | 40A | 2 ABS | ABS 2 | ESP Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |
| | 4 | 40A | | EMS | EMS Box (Fuse - F1 / F2 / F3 / F6) |
| | 5 | 40A | 1 ABS | ABS 1 | ESP Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |
| | 6 | 40A | | BLOWER | RLY. 1 (Blower Relay) |
| | 7 | 60A | 3 | B+3 | Smart Junction Box (Fuse - F30 / F35 / F36, Power Connector - F1 / F2) |
| | 8 | 60A | 2 | B+2 | Smart Junction Box (Power Window Relay, Fuse - F23 / F28 / F33, IPS 0 / IPS 1 / IPS 2 / IPS 3) |
| FUSE | 9 | 40A(50A) GSL(DSL) | | COOLING FAN | RLY. 3 (Cooling Fan Low Relay), RLY. 9 (Cooling Fan High Relay) |
| | 10 | 40A | **RR HTD** | HEATED GLASS RR | RLY. 6 (Rear Defogger Relay) |
| | 11 | 30A | **IGN 1** | IGN 1 | W/O Smart Key - Ignition Switch,<br>With Smart Key - PDM Relay Box (IGN1 Relay) |
| | 12 | 40A | **IGN 2** | IGN 2 | RLY. 4 (Start Relay), W/O Smart Key - Ignition Switch,<br>With Smart Key - PDM Relay Box (IGN2 Relay) |
| | 13 | 15A | | HORN | RLY. 2 (Horn Relay), RLY. 5 (Burglar Alarm Horn Relay) |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 90



| No. | | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| FUSE | 14 | 15A | | DEICER | RLY. 10 (Front Wiper Deicer Relay) |
| | 15 | 10A | STOP LAMP | STOP LAMP | Stop Lamp Switch, ICM Relay Box (DBC Relay) |
| | 16 | 10A | AMS | B+ SENSOR | Battery Sensor (G4KD/D4HA) |
| | 17 | 20A | | 4WD | 4WD ECM |
| | 18 | 7.5A | 4 | ECU 2 | RLY. 11 (ATM P/N Relay), RLY. 4 (Start Relay), ECM/PCM, Multifunction Switch (G4KD), Mass Air Flow Sensor (D4FD/D4HA) |
| | 19 | 7.5A | ABS | ABS | ESP Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector, Fuel Filter Warning Sensor (D4FD/D4HA), Glow Relay Unit (D4HA), Diesel Box (RLY. 4 - Fuel Filter Heater Relay)(D4FD/D4HA) |
| | 20 | 7.5A | 3 | TCU 2 | Transaxle Range Switch(G4KD/D4HA), TCM (D4HA), Vehicle Speed Sensor |
| | 21 | 30A | 2 | B+4 | H/LP HI Fuse |
| | 22 | 30A | | H/LP WASHER | RLY (H/LP WASHER) |
| | 23 | 10A | | H/LP HI | RLY (H/LP HI) |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 91



**Engine compartment sub fuse panel (Disel Engine)**

| No. | Fuse rating | Fuse Symbol | Circuit Protected | Relay Symbol | Relay Type |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 50A | 1 PTC HEATER | PTC Heater Relay #1 | 1 PTC HEATER | MICRO PLUG |
| 2 | 50A | 2 PTC HEATER | PTC Heater Relay #2 | 2 PTC HEATER | MICRO PLUG |
| 3 | 50A | 3 PTC HEATER | PTC Heater Relay #3 | 3 PTC HEATER | MICRO PLUG |
| 4 | 30A |  | Fuel Filter Heater Relay |  | MICRO PLUG |
| 5 | 80A |  | Glow Relay Unit | - | - |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 92



## LIGHT BULBS

**⚠ WARNING - Working on the lights**

**Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK" position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.**

*Use only the bulbs of the specified wattage.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electric wiring system.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If you don't have necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, we recommend that you consult an authorized HYUNDAI dealer. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlight assembly to get to the bulb(s). Removing/installing the headlight assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**After heavy, driving rain or washing, headlight and taillight lenses could appear frosty. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside. This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and doesn't indicate a problem with your vehicle. If water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

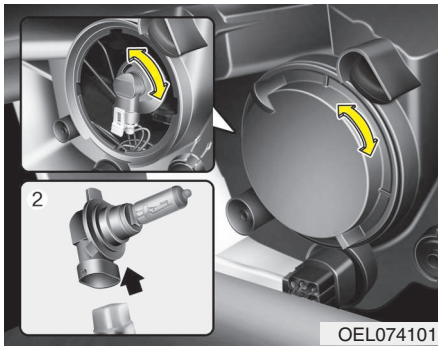
EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 93






**Headlight, position light, turn signal light, front fog light bulb replacement**

(1) Front turn signal light
(2) Headlight (High/Low)
(3) Position light (LED) (if equipped)
(4) Position light (LED)/Daytime running light (if equipped)
(5) Front fog light (if equipped)




***Headlight (High/Low)***

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the headlight bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
4. Unsnap the headlight bulb retaining wire by depressing the end and pushing it upward.
5. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly.
6. Install a new headlight bulb and snap the headlight bulb retaining wire into position by aligning the wire with the groove on the bulb.
7. Connect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
8. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

**✻ NOTICE**

**We recommend that the headlight aiming be adjusted after an accident or after the headlight assembly is reinstalled at a authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 94



*Headlight (Low, HID type)*

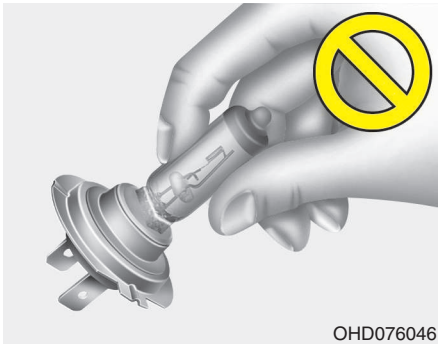
If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - HID Headlight low beam (if equipped)**

**Do not attempt to replace or inspect the low beam (XENON bulb) due to electric shock danger. If the low beam (XENON bulb) is not working, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**HID lamps have superior performance vs. halogen bulbs. HID lamps are estimated by the manufacturer to last twice as long or longer than halogen bulbs depending on their frequency of use. They will probably require replacement at some point in the life of the vehicle. Cycling the headlamps on and off more than typical use will shorten HID lamps life. HID lamps do not fail in the same manner as halogen incandescent lamps. If a headlamp goes out after a period of operation but will immediately relight when the headlamp switch is cycled it is likely the HID lamp needs to be replaced. HID lighting components are more complex than conventional halogen bulbs thus have higher replacement cost.**



OHD076046

**⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs**

- **Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.**
- **Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit. A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 95



**(Continued)**

- **If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.**
- **Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.**

### *Turn signal light/Position light*

**Turn signal light**

1. Turn off the engine and open the hood.
2. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket
4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
5. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

**Position light**

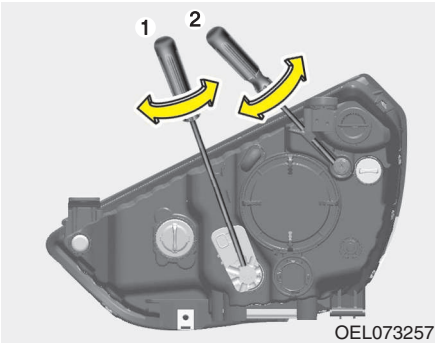
If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 96



***Front fog light bulbs (if equipped)***

1. Remove the front bumper under cover.
2. Reach your hand into the back of the front bumper.
3. Disconnect the power connector from the socket.
4. Remove the bulb-socket from the housing by turning the socket counter clockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the housing.
5. Install the new bulb-socket into the housing by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the housing. Push the socket into the housing and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Connect the power connector to the socket.
7. Reinstall the front bumper under cover.



OEL073257

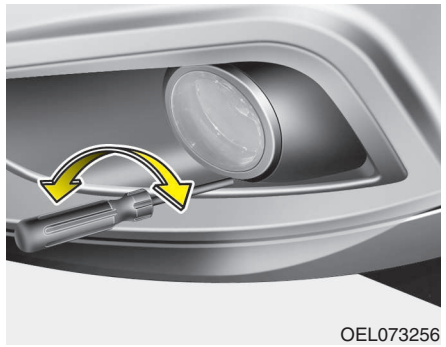
## Headlight and front fog light aiming (for Europe)

***Headlight aiming***

1. Inflate the tires to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tire, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centers) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through center of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the head lamp and battery in normal condition, aim the head lamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low/high beam left or right, turn the driver (2) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low/high beam up or down, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 97





OEL073256

***Front fog light aiming***

The front fog lamp can be aimed as the same manner of the head lamps aiming.

With the front fog lamps and battery normal condition, aim the front fog lamps. To aim the front fog lamp up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

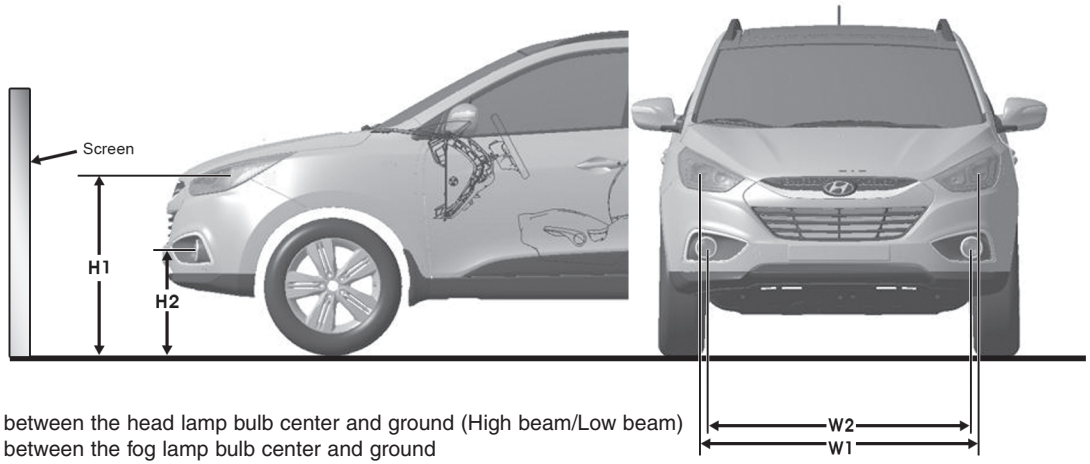
EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 98



***Aiming point***

<Ground Height>

<Distance between lamps>




H1 : Height between the head lamp bulb center and ground (High beam/Low beam)
H2 : Height between the fog lamp bulb center and ground
W1 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centers (High beam/Low beam)
W2 : Distance between the two fog lamp bulbs centers

OLMB073084

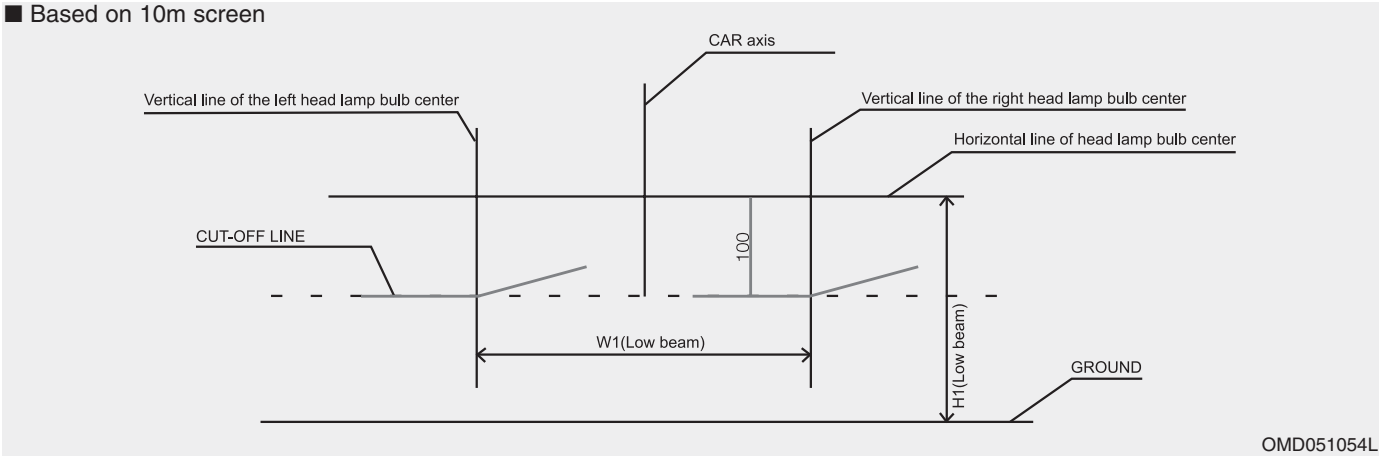
Unit: mm (in)

| Vehicle condition | H1 | H2 | W1 | W2 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Fog | | Fog |
| **Without driver** | 897 (35) | 510 (20) | 1413 (55.6) | 1350 (53.1) |
| **With driver** | 892 (35) | 505 (19.9) | | |

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 99



■ Based on 10m screen



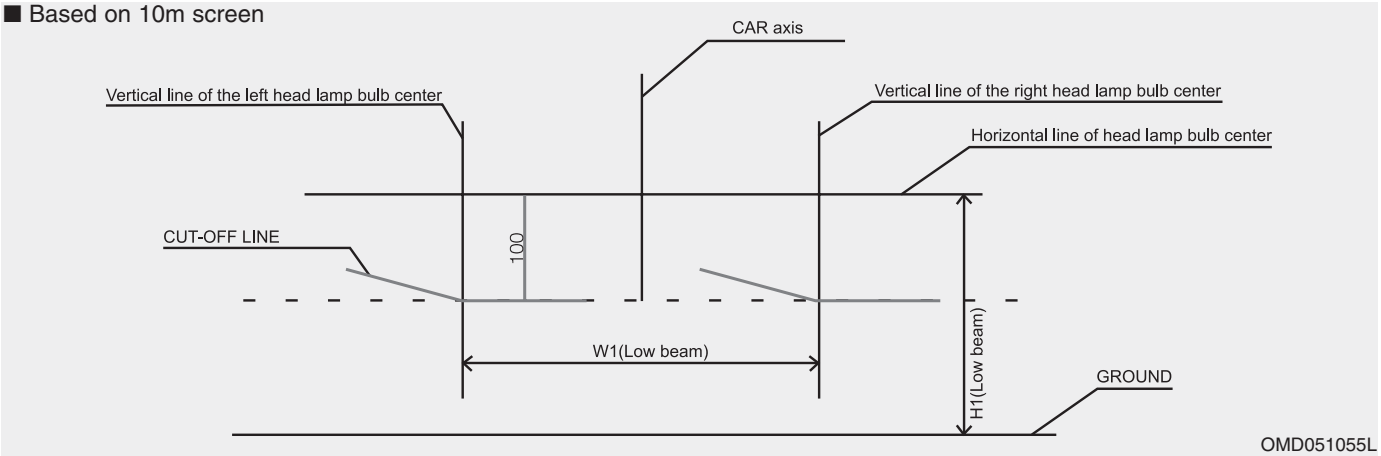

***Head lamp low beam (LHD side)***

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp leveling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp leveling device switch with 0 positions.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 100



■ Based on 10m screen



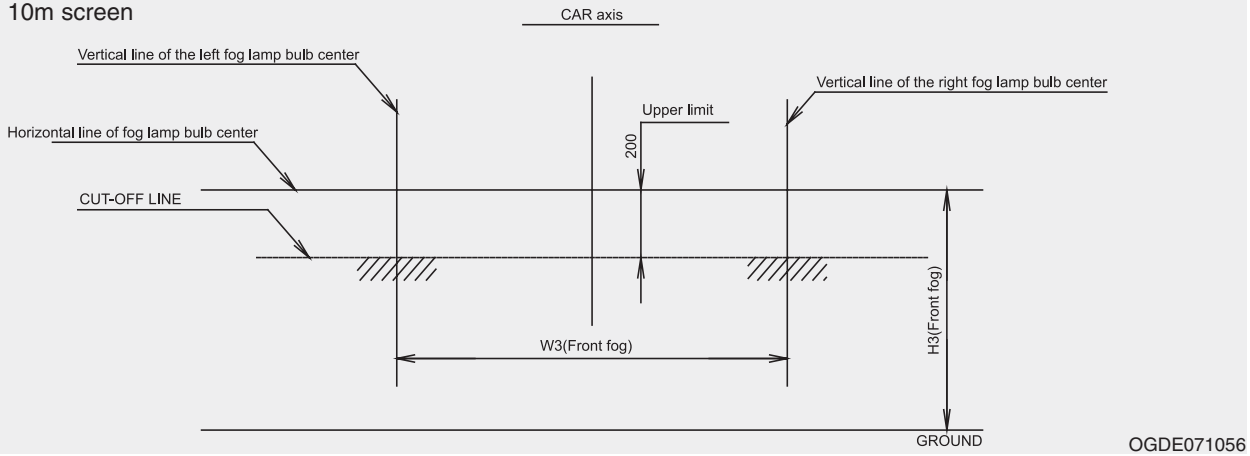

***Head lamp low beam (RHD side)***

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp leveling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp leveling device switch with 0 positions.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:32 AM Page 101



■ Based on 10m screen




***Front fog light***

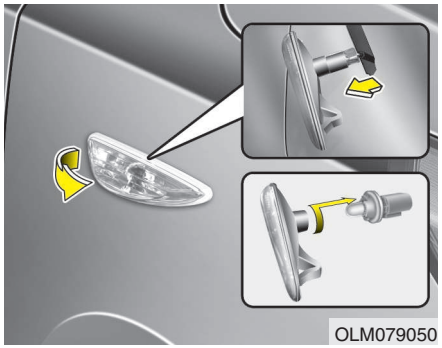
1. Turn the front fog lamp on with the driver (75 kg) aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the allowable range (shaded region).




## Side repeater light bulb replacement (if equipped)

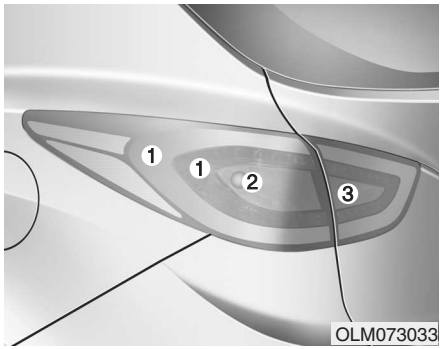
***Type A***

If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.




***Type B***

1. Remove the light assembly from the vehicle by prying the lens and pulling the assembly out.
2. Reinstall a new light assembly to the body of the vehicle.

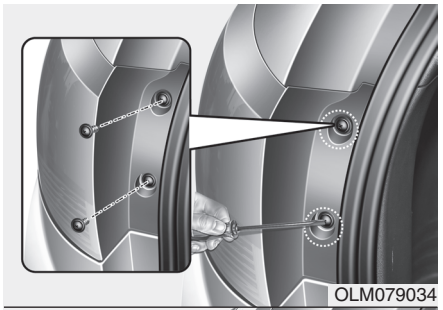



## Rear combination light bulb replacement

(1) Stop and tail light
(2) Rear turn signal light
(3) Back-up light

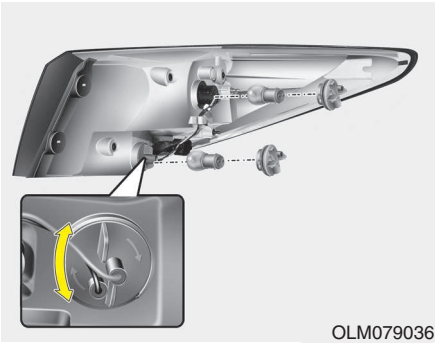
EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 103



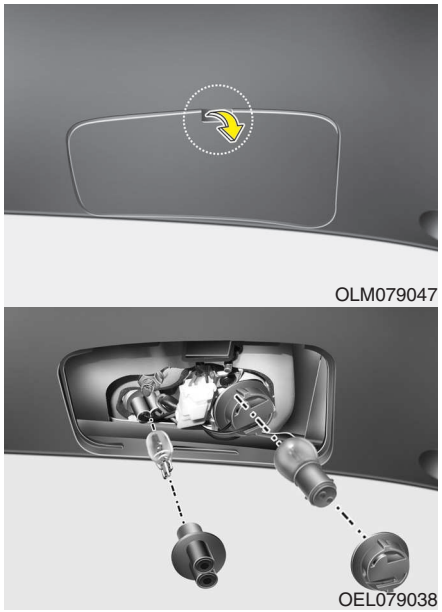



***Outside light***

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
3. Remove the rear combination light assembly from the body of the vehicle.




4. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
5. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
6. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
7. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
8. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.




***Inside light***

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover using a flat-blade screwdriver.
3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.

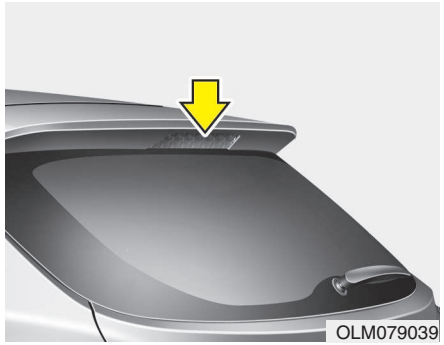
4. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

**Stop and tail light (LED type)**

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

### Rear fog light (if equipped)

1. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
2. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
3. Insert a new bulb in the socket.
4. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.

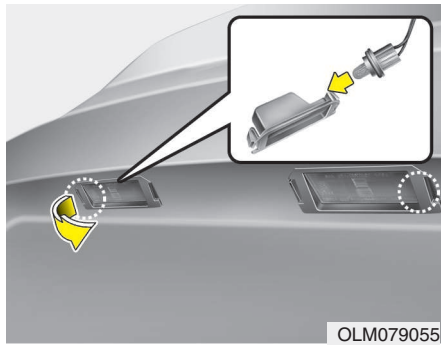



### High mounted stop light bulb replacement (if equipped)

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 105





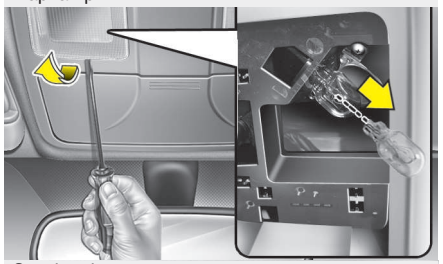

### License plate light bulb replacement

1. Remove the lens by pressing the tabs.
2. Remove the socket from the lens.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
4. Install a new bulb in the socket and install the socket to the lens.
5. Reinstall the lens securely.

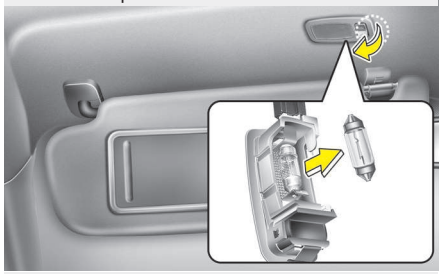
EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 106



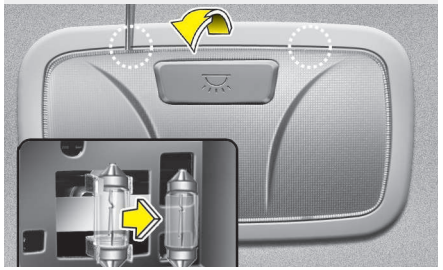
Map lamp



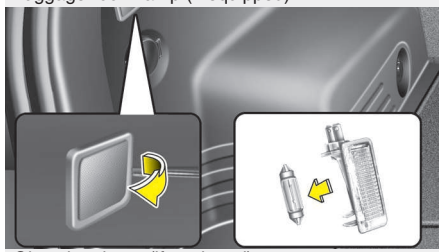
Sunvisor lamp



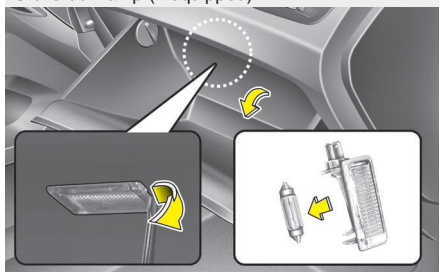
Room lamp



Luggage room lamp (if equipped)



Glove box lamp (if equipped)



OLM079040/OXM079041/OEL079042/OLM079044/
OLM079045

### Interior light bulb replacement

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens from the interior light housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Prior to working on the Interior Lights, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.**

3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens tabs with the interior light housing notches and snap the lens into place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Use care not to dirty or damage lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.***

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 107



# APPEARANCE CARE

## Exterior care

### *Exterior general caution*

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

### *Finish maintenance*

**Washing**

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits.

A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

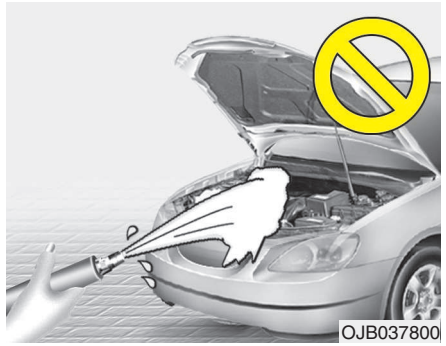
After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.***
- ***Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle. Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.***
- ***To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.***

**⚠ WARNING - Wet brakes**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.**


OJB037800

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

**Waxing**

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.***
- ***Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.***

***Finish damage repair***

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

**✻ NOTICE**

**If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 109



***Bright-metal maintenance***

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

***Underbody maintenance***

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

**⚠ WARNING**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.**

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 110



### *Aluminum or chrome wheel maintenance*

The aluminum or chrome wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum or chrome wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergent. It may damage and corrode the aluminum or chrome wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

### *Corrosion protection*

**Protecting your vehicle from corrosion**

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produces cars of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

**Common causes of corrosion**

The most common causes of corrosion on your car are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the car.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

**High-corrosion areas**

If you live in an area where your car is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

**Moisture breeds corrosion**

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the car surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your car clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the car.

**To help prevent corrosion**

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 111



**Keep your car clean**

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your car clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the car is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your car at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the car, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

**Keep your garage dry**

Don't park your car in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your car in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

**Keep paint and trim in good condition**

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

**Don't neglect the interior**

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting to cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the car.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 112



## Interior care

### *Interior general precautions*

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions that follow for the proper way to clean vinyl.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the color of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.***

### *Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim*

**Vinyl**

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

**Fabric**

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its color can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.***

### *Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing*

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

### *Cleaning the interior window glass*

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.***

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 113



## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Service Passport in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems which are as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your car inspected and maintained by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer or other repair shops that use qualified technicians in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

**Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system)**

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system off by pressing the ESP switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESP system back on by pressing the ESP switch again.**

### 1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

### 2. Evaporative emission control System

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

#### *Canister*

Fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

#### *Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)*

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms-up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 114



## 3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions while maintaining good vehicle performance.

### *Vehicle modifications*

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

  In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.
- If you use unauthorized electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorized electronic devices.

### *Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)*

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

**⚠ WARNING - Exhaust**

**Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colorless and odorless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions following to avoid CO poisoning.**

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 115



***Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)***

**⚠ WARNING - Fire**

- **A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park, idle, or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as dry grass, paper, leaves, etc.**
- **The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot while the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic, you may get burned.**

  **Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.**

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for gasoline engine.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.
- Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

***Diesel Particulate Filter (if equipped)***

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system removes the soot emitted from the vehicle.

Unlike a disposable air filter, the DPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot according to the driving condition. In other words, the active burning by engine control system and high exhaust gas temperature caused by normal/high driving condition burns and removes the accumulated soot.

However, if the vehicle continues to be driven at low speed for long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. In this particular case, the amount of soot is out of detection limit, the soot oxidation process by engine control system may not happen and the malfunction indicator light may blink.

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking by driving the vehicle at more than 60km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

EL(FL) Eng 7.QXP 10/7/2013 9:33 AM Page 116



If the malfunction indicator light continues to blink in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)**

***It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.***

***If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.***

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:57 PM Page 1

# Specifications & Consumer information

Dimensions . . . . . 8-2
Engine . . . . . 8-2
Air conditioning system . . . . . 8-2
Bulb wattage . . . . . 8-3
Tires and wheels . . . . . 8-4
Load and speed capacity tires . . . . . 8-4
Gross vehicle weight . . . . . 8-5
Luggage volume . . . . . 8-5
Recommended lubricants and capacities . . . . . 8-6
• Available engine oil . . . . . 8-7
• Recommended sae viscosity number . . . . . 8-8
Vehicle identification number (VIN) . . . . . 8-9
Vehicle certification label. . . . . 8-9
Tire specification and pressure label . . . . . 8-10
Engine number . . . . . 8-10
Air conditioner compressor label . . . . . 8-11
E-mark label (for europe) . . . . . 8-11
Declaration of conformity . . . . . 8-11

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:57 PM Page 2



## DIMENSIONS

| Item | mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length | 4410 (173.6) |
| Overall width | 1820 (71.6) |
| Overall height | 1655 (65.2)/1665 (65.6)*1 |
| Front tread | 1591 (62.6)*2/1585 (62.4)*3 |
| Rear tread | 1592 (62.6)*2/1586 (62.4)*3 |
| Wheelbase | 2640 (103.9) |

*1 with roof rack
*2 with 215/70R16
*3 with 225/60R17 or 225/55R18

## ENGINE

| Item | Gasoline 1.6 | Gasoline 2.0 | Diesel 1.7 | Diesel R2.0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Displacement cc (cu. in) | 1,591 (97.09) | 1,999 (121.99) | 1,685 (102.8) | 1,995 (121.74) |
| Bore x Stroke mm (in.) | 77X85.4 (3.03X3.36) | 81X97 (3.19X3.81) | 77.2X90 (3.04X3.81) | 84X90 (3.30X3.54) |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 |
| No. of cylinders | 4. In-line | 4. In-line | 4. In-line | 4. In-line |

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

| Item | Weight of volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|
| Refrigerant | 550±25g | R134a |
| Compressor lubricant | 120±10cc | PAG oil |

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:57 PM Page 3



## BULB WATTAGE

| Light Bulb | Wattage |
|---|---|
| Headlights (Low/High) | 55 or 35 (HID) |
| Front turn signal lights | 21 |
| Position lights | LED |
| Side repeater lights (Outside mirror)* | LED |
| Side repeater lights* | 5 |
| Front fog lights* | 27 |
| Rear fog light* | 21 |
| Stop and tail lights (Outside) | 21/5/LED |
| Stop and tail lights (Inside) | LED |
| Rear turn signal lights (Outside) | 21 |
| Tail light* (Inside) | 5 |
| Back-up lights (Inside) | 16 |
| High mounted stop light | LED |
| License plate lights | 5 |
| Map lamps | 10 |
| Room lamps | 10 |
| Luggage lamp* | 5 |
| Glove box lamp* | 5 |
| Vanity mirror lamps* | 5 |

* If equipped

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:58 PM Page 4



## TIRES AND WHEELS

| Item | Tire size | Wheel size | Inflation pressure bar (psi, kPa) | | | | Wheel lug nut torque kg•m (lb•ft, N•m) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Normal load ( + ) | | Maximum load ( + ) | | |
| | | | Front | Rear | Front | Rear | |
| Full size tire | 215/70R16 | 6.5Jx16 | 2.3 (33, 230) | 2.3 (33, 230) | 2.6 *1 (38,260) 2.3 *2 (33,230) | 2.7 *1 (39,270) 2.3 *2 (33,230) | 9~11 (65~79, 88~107) |
| | 225/60R17 | 6.5Jx17 | | | | | |
| | 225/55R18 | 6.5J×18 | | | | | |

*1 : For Europe

*2 : Except Europe

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.***
***Using tires of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.***

## LOAD AND SPEED CAPACITY TIRES

| Item | Tire size | Wheel size | Load Capacity | | Speed Capacity | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | LI *1 | kg | SS *2 | km/h |
| Full size tire | 215/70R16 | 6.5Jx16 | 100 | 800 | H | 210 |
| | 225/60R17 | 6.5Jx17 | 99 | 775 | H | 210 |
| | 225/55R18 | 6.5J×18 | 98 | 750 | H | 210 |

*1 LI : LOAD INDEX

*2 SS : SPEED SYMBOL

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:58 PM Page 5



## GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

Kg (lbs)

| Item | 1.6 GDI | | NU 2.0 MPI | | R2.0 | | U2 1.7 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 2WD | 4WD | 2WD | 4WD | 2WD | 4WD | 2WD | 4WD |
| 5 seater | 1,930 (4034) | - | 1,980 (4365) | 2,030 (4475) | 2,090 (4607) | 2,140 (4717) | 1,940 (4276) | - |

## LUGGAGE VOLUME

| Item | | 5 Seater |
|---|---|---|
| VDA | MIN. | 465 l (16.4 cu.ft) |
| | MAX. | 1436 l (50.7 cu.ft) |

Min : Behind rear seat to upper edge of the seat back.
Max : Behind front seat to roof.

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:58 PM Page 6



## RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.
These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

| Lubricant | | | | Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill) Recommends Shell HELIX Motor oils | Gasoline Engine | 1.6L | | 3.6 l (3.8 US qt.) | ACEA A5 (or above) |
| | | 2.0L | MPI | 4.0 l (4.16 US qt.) | API SM & ILSAC GF-4 (or above), ACEA A5 (or above) |
| | | | GDI | | ACEA A5 (or above) |
| | Diesel Engine | 1.7L | with DPF *3 | 5.3 l (5.60 US qt.) | ACEA C3 |
| | | | without DPF *3 | 5.3 l (5.60 US qt.) | ACEA B4 |
| | | 2.0L | with DPF *3 | 8.0 l (8.45 US qt.) | ACEA C3 |
| | | | without DPF *3 | 8.0 l (8.45 US qt.) | ACEA B4 |
| Engine Oil Consumption | Normal driving condition | | | MAX. 1L /1500 Km | - |
| | Severe driving condition | | | MAX. 1L /1000 Km | - |
| Manual transaxle fluid | Gasoline Engine | 1.6L | | 1.8 ~ 1.9 l (1.90 ~ 2.01 US qt.) | API GL-4, SAE 75W/85 |
| | | 2.0L | MPI | 2.1 ~ 2.2 l (2.22 ~ 2.32 US qt.) | |
| | | | GDI | | |
| | Diesel Engine | 1.7L | | 1.9 ~ 2.0 l (2.01 ~ 2.11 US qt.) | |
| | | 2.0L | | 1.8 ~ 1.9 l (1.90 ~ 2.01 US qt.) | |
| Automatic transaxle fluid | Gasoline Engine | 1.6L | | 7.3 l (7.7 US qt.) | MICHANG ATF SP-IV, SK ATF SP-IV NOCA ATF SP-IV, HYUNDAI genuine ATF SP-IV |
| | | 2.0L | | 7.1 l (7.5 US qt.) | |
| | Diesel Engine | | | 7.8 l (8.24 US qt.) | |

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:58 PM Page 7



| Lubricant | | Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Coolant | Gasoline Engine | 6.7 *l* (7.08 US qt.) | Mixture of antifreeze and distilled water (Ethylene glycol base coolant for aluminum radiator) |
| | Diesel Engine | 8.5 *l* (8.98 US qt.) | |
| Brake/clutch fluid | | 0.7~0.8 *l* (0.7~0.8 US qt.) | FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4 |
| Rear differential oil (4WD) | | 0.65 *l* ( 0.69 US qt.) | HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5, SAE 75W/90 (SHELL SPIRAX X or equivalent) |
| Transfer case oil (4WD) | | 0.6 *l* (0.63 US qt.) | HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5, SAE 75W/90 (SHELL SPIRAX X or equivalent) |
| Fuel | Gasoline Engine | 58 *l* (15.3 US gal.) | Refer to “Fuel requirements” in section 1 |
| | Diesel Engine | | |

*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on 8-8 page.

*2 Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year’s time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 Diesel Particulate Filter

## Available Engine oil

| Supplier | Product | |
|---|---|---|
| | Gasoline Engine | Diesel Engine |
| Shell | HELIX ULTRA AH-E 5W-30 | HELIX ULTRA AP 5W-30 |
| | HELIX ULTRA 5W-40 | |
| SK | ZIC LD5W-30 | ZIC LS 5W-30 |
| Chevron | KIXX G1 LL | KIXX D1 5W-30 |
| Total | QUARTZ HKS G-310 | QUARTZ INEO MC3 5W-30 |
| | QUARTZ INEO MC3 5W-30 | |
| Fuchs | TITAN SUPERSYN LONG LIFE 5W-30/40 | |

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:58 PM Page 8



### Recommended SAE viscosity number

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.***

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather.

Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

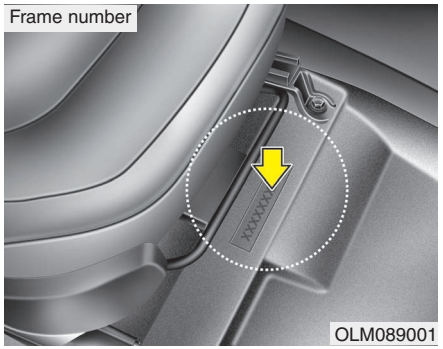
**Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers**

| Temperature | °C | -30 | -20 | -10 | 0 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | (°F) | -10 | 0 | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | | 100 | 120 |
| Gasoline Engine Oil (1.6L GDI/2.0L GDI) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | 20W-50 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 15W-40 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 10W-30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 5W-30, 5W-40 |
| Gasoline Engine Oil (2.0L MPI) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | 0W-40, 5W-20, 5W-30, 5W-40 |
| Diesel Engine Oil (1.7L) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | 15W-40 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 10W-30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 5W-30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 0W-30 |
| Diesel Engine Oil (2.0L) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | 15W-40 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 10W-30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 5W-30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 0W-30/40 |

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:58 PM Page 9

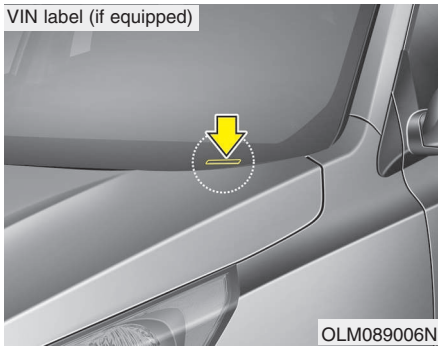


## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)



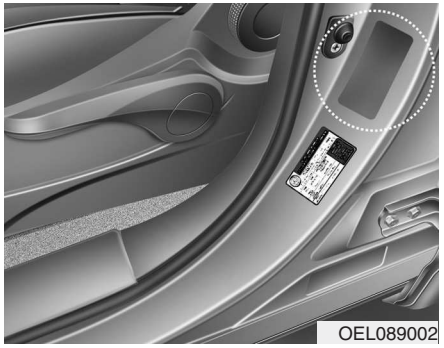

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the floor under the passenger seat. To check the number, open the cover.




The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windshield from outside.

## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

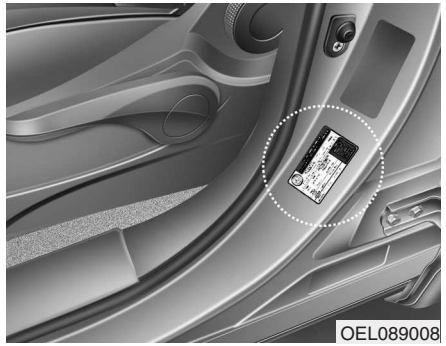



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side center pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:58 PM Page 10



## TIRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

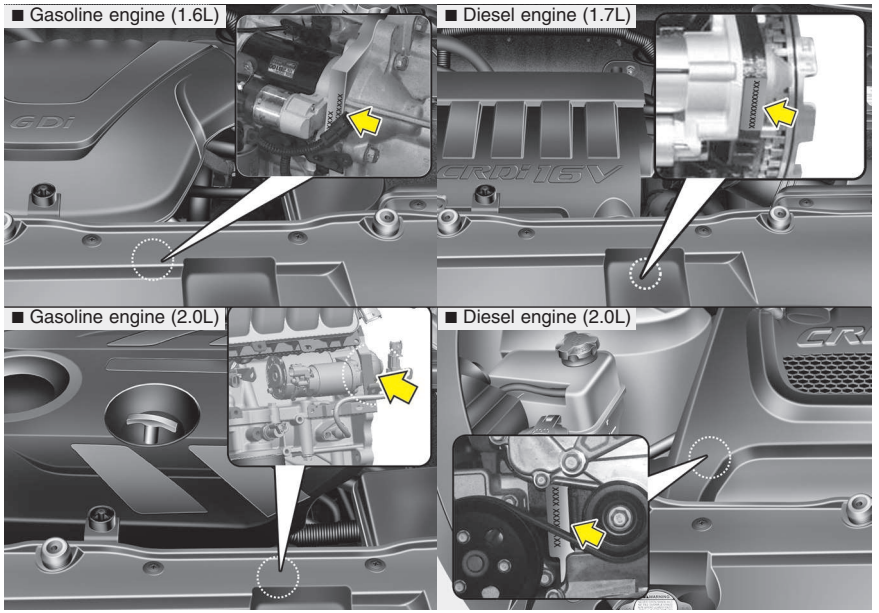


OEL089008

The tires supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tire label located on the driver's side center pillar gives the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.

## ENGINE NUMBER



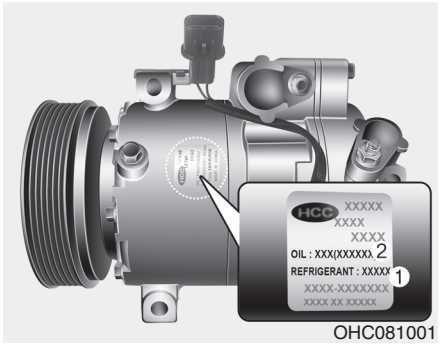

OEL080003/OEL083010/OEL080004/OLM089004

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

EL(FL) Eng 8.QXP 8/8/2013 6:58 PM Page 11



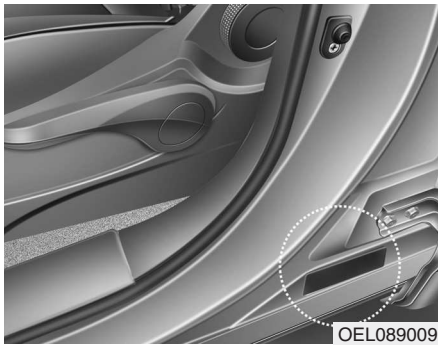
## AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL




OHC081001

A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

## E-MARK LABEL (FOR EUROPE) (IF EQUIPPED)



OEL089009

An E-mark label is located on the driver's side center pillar. The label certifies that your vehicle has satisfied the ECE Safety/Environment regulation. It contains the following information:

- Country code
- Regulation number
- Regulation amendment number
- Approval number

## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

■ Example

CE CE 0678

CE0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on HYUNDAI web site as follows;

http://service.hyundai-motor.com

EL(FL) UK 1.QXP 8/5/2013 6:21 PM Page 1

# Introduction

1

**How to use this manual . . . . . 1-2**
**Fuel requirements . . . . . 1-2**
- **Petrol engine . . . . . 1-2**
- **Diesel engine. . . . . 1-4**

**Vehicle handling instructions . . . . . 1-5**
**Vehicle break-In process . . . . . 1-5**
**Indicator symbols on the instrument cluster. . . . . 1-6**

EL(FL) UK 1.QXP 8/5/2013 6:21 PM Page 2



## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

This Owners Manual is designed to help vehicle users derive the greatest possible amount of enjoyment and satisfaction from driving the HYUNDAI vehicle. It is strongly recommended that the entire manual is read in order that all of the features, safety systems and maintenance requirements are understood.

To minimise the RISK of death or injury, the "WARNING" and "CAUTION" statements must be read and understood before operating the vehicle.

Illustrations are used throughout the manual to complement written descriptions intended to best explain how to enjoy using the vehicle.

Reading this manual will assist the vehicle user to learn about and understand the features, important safety information, and driving recommendations.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. The index has an alphabetical listing of all the information contained in the manual. The manual has eight sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents to easily identify at a glance if that section contains the information being sought.

"WARNING", "CAUTION", and "NOTICE" information is provided to enhance the personal safety of the vehicle user. This information must be carefully read and followed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.**

## FUEL REQUIREMENTS

### Petrol engine

***Unleaded***

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you to use unleaded petrol with an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 /AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher.

You may use unleaded petrol with an octane rating of RON 91~94/AKI 87~90 but it may result in slight performance reduction of the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.***

***Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. (We recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer for details.)***

EL(FL) UK 1.QXP 8/5/2013 6:21 PM Page 3



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

***Petrol containing alcohol and methanol***

Gasohol, a mixture of petrol and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and petrol or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded petrol.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use petrol or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or driveability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Petrol or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.***

***Use of MTBE***

HYUNDAI recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapour lock or hard starting.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)***

***Do not use methanol***

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system.

EL(FL) UK 1.QXP 8/5/2013 6:21 PM Page 4



***Fuel Additives***

HYUNDAI recommends that you use good quality petrols that meet European Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents.

For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 10,000 miles (15,000 km).

Additives are available from your HYUNDAI authorised repairer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

***Operation in foreign countries***

Drivers of vehicles which are to be operated in foreign countries must satisfy themselves that:

- The vehicle meets all local regulations with respect to insurance, specifications etc..
- The correct types and grades of fuel are available for satisfactory operation of the vehicle.

## Diesel engine

***Diesel fuel***

Diesel engine must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel that complies with EN 590 or comparable standard (EN stands for "European Norm"). Do not use marine diesel fuel, heating oils, or non-approved fuel additives, as this will increase wear and cause damage to the engine and fuel system. The use of non-approved fuels and / or fuel additives will result in a limitation of your warranty rights.

Diesel fuel of above cetane 51 is used in your vehicle. If two types of diesel fuel are available, use summer or winter fuel properly according to the following temperature conditions.

- Above -5°C(23°F) ... Summer type diesel fuel.
- Below -5°C(23°F) ... Winter type diesel fuel.

Watch the fuel level in the tank very carefully : If the engine stops through fuel failure, the circuits must be completely purged to permit restarting.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not allow petrol or water to enter the fuel tank. If this happens, the tank should be completely drained and the fuel lines must all be cleaned out to prevent the fuel pump from becoming contaminated.***

### ⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel

***It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.***

***If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.***

EL(FL) UK 1.QXP 8/5/2013 6:21 PM Page 5



***Biodiesel***

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7%, made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), fatty acid methyl ester (FAME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufactures warranty.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel, B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

## VEHICLE HANDLING INSTRUCTIONS

As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than other types of vehicles. In other words they are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional 2-wheel drive vehicles. Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres. Again, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover. **Be sure to read the "Reducing the risk of a rollover" driving guidelines, in section 5 of this manual.**

## VEHICLE RUN-IN PROCESS

No special run-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 600 miles (1,000 km) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Whilst driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly run-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than 3 minutes at one time.
- Don't tow a trailer/caravan during the first 1,200 miles (2,000 km) of operation.

EL(FL) UK 1.QXP 8/5/2013 6:21 PM Page 6



## INDICATOR SYMBOLS ON THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER


Door ajar warning light


Door and tailgate open position light


Tailgate open warning light


Sunroof open warning light


Seat belt warning light


Low beam indicator*


High beam indicator


Front fog light indicator*


Rear fog light indicator*


Light on indicator*


Turn signal indicator


ESC indicator*


ESC OFF indicator*


ABS warning light


Air bag warning light


Parking brake & Brake fluid warning light


Engine oil pressure warning light


Engine oil level warning light (Diesel engine*)


4WD system warning light*


4WD LOCK indicator*


Charging system warning light


Malfunction indicator*


Immobiliser indicator*


Cruise indicator*



Cruise SET indicator*


Low fuel level warning light


Electric power steering (EPS) system warning light*


Shift pattern indicator*


Manual transaxle shift indicator*/ Auto transaxle shift indicator*


Glow indicator (Diesel only)


Fuel filter warning light (Diesel only)


DBC indicator*



Key out warning*

EL(FL) UK 1.QXP 8/5/2013 6:21 PM Page 7




Low tyre pressure telltale*


Engine coolant temperature warning light


Low tyre pressure position telltale*



ECO indicator*


Auto stop for ISG system indicator*

*: if equipped

✻: For more detailed explanations, refer to section 4, “Instrument cluster”.

EL(FL) UK 2.QXP 8/5/2013 6:22 PM Page 1

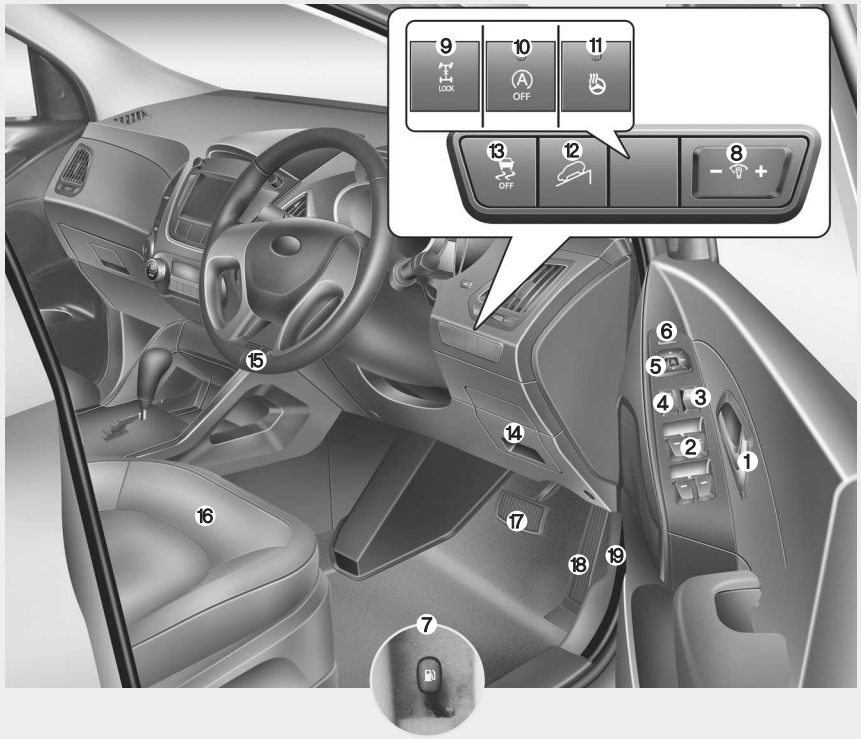
# Your vehicle at a glance

**Interior overview . . . . . 2-2**
**Instrument panel overview . . . . . 2-3**
**Engine compartment . . . . . 2-4**

EL(FL) UK 2.QXP 8/5/2013 6:22 PM Page 2



## INTERIOR OVERVIEW




❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

1. Door lock/unlock button .....4-16
2. Power window switches*.....4-21
3. Central door lock switch* .....4-16
4. Power window lock switch* .....4-24
5. Outside rearview mirror control switch*.....4-44
6. Outside rearview mirror folding button*.....4-45
7. Fuel filler lid release lever.....4-27
8. Instrument panel illumination control switch* .....4-47
9. 4WD Lock button*.....5-29
10. Idle Stop and Go system OFF button* .....5-17
11. Heated steering wheel button* .....4-35
12. DBC button* .....5-45
13. ESC OFF button* .....5-41
14. Fuse box .....7-45
15. Steering wheel .....4-34
16. Seat.....3-2
17. Brake pedal.....5-35
18. Accelerator pedal
19. Bonnet release lever.....4-25

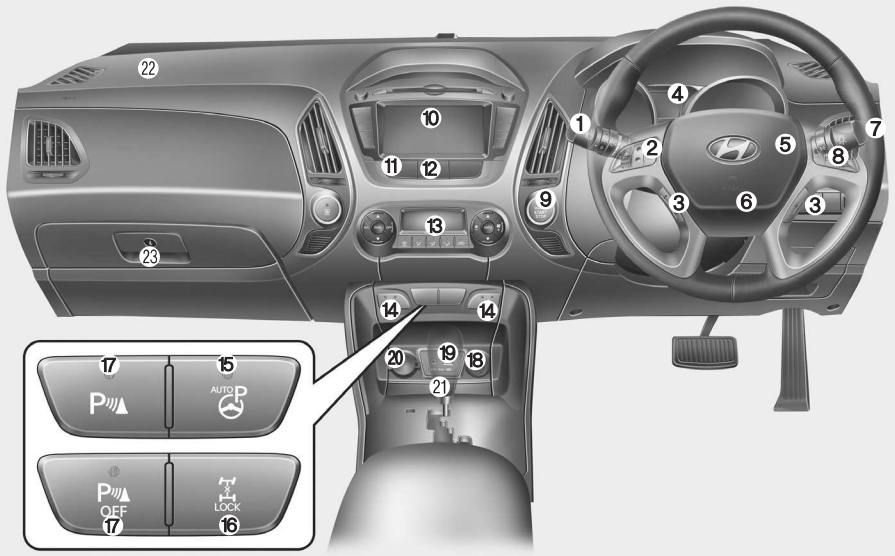
* : if equipped

OEL013001R-1

EL(FL) UK 2.QXP 8/5/2013 6:22 PM Page 3



## INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW




❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

1. Light control/Turn signals .....4-100
2. Steering wheel audio controls* ....4-146
3. Bluetooth phone controls* ....4-179, 232
4. Instrument cluster .....4-46
5. Horn .....4-36
6. Driver's front air bag.....3-47
7. Wiper/Washer.....4-106
8. Auto cruise controls* .....5-50
9. Engine start/stop button* .....5-9
10.Digital clock and Audio/AVN* .....4-140
11. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator*.....3-46
12. Hazard warning flasher switch.....4-98
13. Climate control system* .....4-115, 124
14. Seat warmer* .....3-13
15. Smart parking assist system ON/OFF button* .....4-92
16. 4WD Lock button* .....5-29
17. Parking assist system ON/OFF button* .....4-81
18. Cigarette lighter* .....4-137
19. AUX, USB*.....4-140
20. Power outlet* .....4-139
21. Shift lever .....5-19, 5-22
22. Passenger's front air bag* .....3-49
23. Glove box.....4-134

* : if equipped

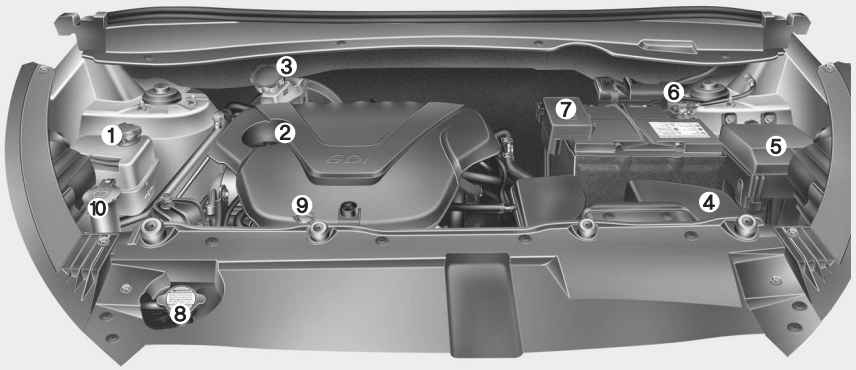
OEL013002R-1

EL(FL) UK 2.QXP 8/5/2013 6:22 PM Page 4



## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **Petrol Engine (1.6L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-17
2. Engine oil filler cap .....7-15
3. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir.....7-19
4. Air cleaner .....7-23
5. Fuse box.....7-45
6. Negative battery terminal .....7-30
7. Positive battery terminal .....7-30
8. Radiator cap .....7-18
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-15
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir.....7-20

* : if equipped

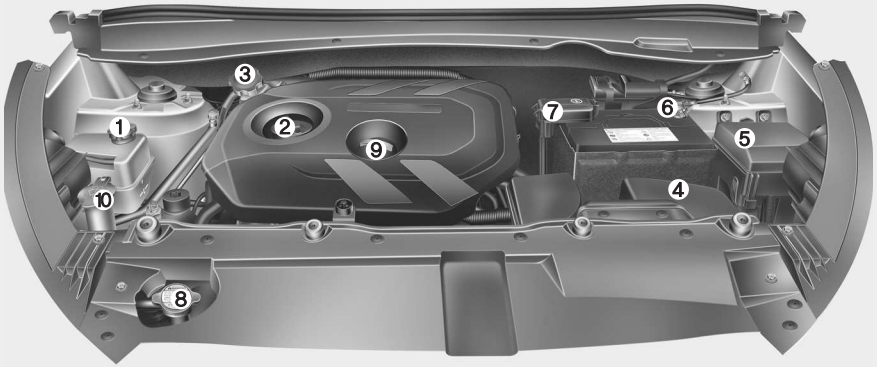
❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL070301R

EL(FL) UK 2.QXP 8/5/2013 6:22 PM Page 5



■ **Petrol Engine (2.0L) - MPI/GDI**




1. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-17
2. Engine oil filler cap .....7-15
3. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir.....7-19
4. Air cleaner .....7-23
5. Fuse box.....7-45
6. Negative battery terminal .....7-30
7. Positive battery terminal .....7-30
8. Radiator cap .....7-18
9. Engine oil dipstick.....7-15
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir.....7-20

* : if equipped

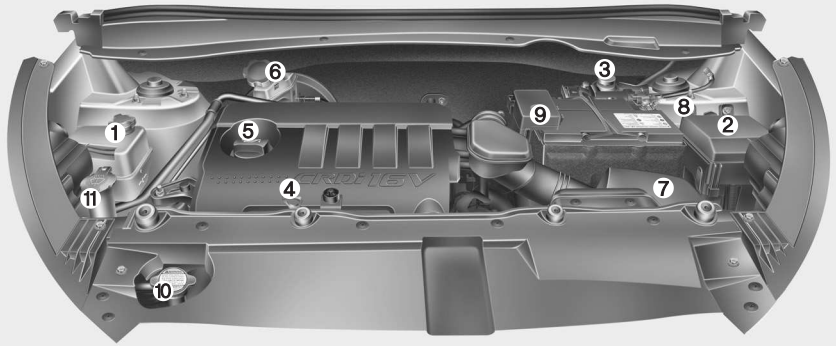
❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL073300R

EL(FL) UK 2.QXP 8/5/2013 6:22 PM Page 6



■ **Diesel Engine (1.7L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir .....7-17
2. Fuse box .....7-45
3. Fuel filter .....7-21
4. Engine oil dipstick .....7-15
5. Engine oil filler cap .....7-15
6. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir .....7-19
7. Air cleaner .....7-23
8. Negative battery terminal .....7-30
9. Positive battery terminal .....7-30
10. Radiator cap .....7-18
11. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir .....7-20

* : if equipped

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL070302R

EL(FL) UK 2.QXP 8/5/2013 6:22 PM Page 7



■ **Diesel Engine (2.0L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir .....7-17
2. Fuse box .....7-45
3. Fuel filter .....7-21
4. Engine oil dipstick .....7-15
5. Engine oil filler cap .....7-15
6. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir .....7-19
7. Air cleaner .....7-23
8. Negative battery terminal .....7-30
9. Positive battery terminal .....7-30
10. Radiator cap .....7-18
11. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir .....7-20

* : if equipped

❊ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OLM079002R

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:32 PM Page 1

# Safety features of your vehicle


**Seat** . . . . . 3-2
- Front seat . . . . . 3-5
- Rear seat . . . . . 3-12

**Seat belts** . . . . . 3-17
- Seat belt restraint system . . . . . 3-17
- Pre-tensioner seat belt. . . . . 3-24
- Seat belt precautions . . . . . 3-27
- Care of seat belts . . . . . 3-29

**Child restraint system** . . . . . 3-31
- Using a child restraint system . . . . . 3-32

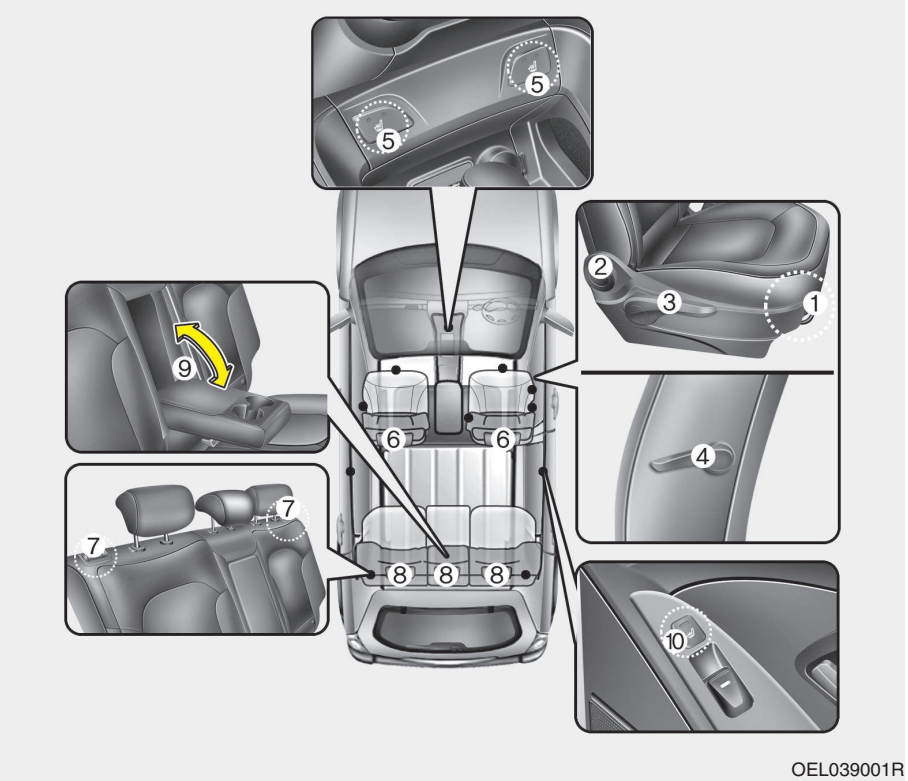
**Air bag - supplemental restraint system** . . . . . 3-42
- How does the air bag system operate . . . . . 3-43
- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat . . . . . 3-44
- Air bag warning and indicator . . . . . 3-45
- SRS components and functions . . . . . 3-47
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag . . . . . 3-49
- Side air bag . . . . . 3-54
- Curtain air bag . . . . . 3-56
- Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag) . . . . . 3-58
- SRS Care . . . . . 3-63
- Additional safety precautions. . . . . 3-64
- Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle . . . . . 3-64
- Air bag warning label . . . . . 3-65


3

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:25 PM Page 2



## SEAT




OEL039001R

### Front seat

(1) Forward and backward
(2) Seatback angle
(3) Seat cushion height (Driver's seat)
(4) Lumbar support (Driver's seat)*
(5) Seat warmer*
(6) Head restraint

### Rear seat

(7) Seatback folding
(8) Head restraint
(9) Armrest
(10) Seat warmer*

* if equipped

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:25 PM Page 3



**⚠ WARNING - Loose objects**

**Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.**

**⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat**

**When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly and be sure there are no other occupants around the seat. If the seatback is returned without being held and controlled, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in accidental injury to a person struck by the seatback.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driver responsibility for front seat passenger**

**Riding in a vehicle with a front seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a front seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the front passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use a sitting cushion that reduces friction between the seat and passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt can't operate normally.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat**

- **Never attempt to adjust seat whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.**
- **In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel whilst maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. It is recommended that your chest is at least 10 inches (250 mm) away from the steering wheel.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:25 PM Page 4



**⚠ WARNING - Rear seatbacks**

- **The rear seatback must be securely latched. If not, passengers and objects could be thrown forward resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Luggage and other cargo should be laid flat in the cargo area. If objects are large, heavy, or must be piled, they must be secured. Under no circumstances should cargo be piled higher than the seatbacks. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop, collision or rollover.**
- **No passenger should ride in the cargo area or sit or lie on folded seatbacks whilst the vehicle is moving. All passengers must be properly seated in seats and restrained properly whilst riding.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When resetting the seatback to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by pushing it forward and reverse.**

**⚠ WARNING**

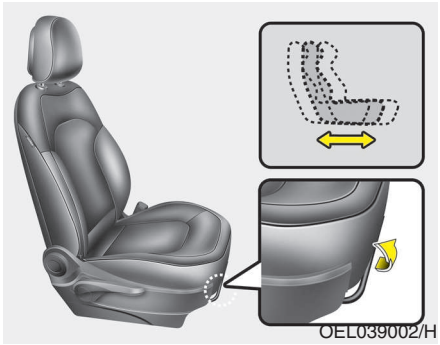
**After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to move the seat forward or reverse without using the lock release lever. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not adjust the seat whilst wearing seat belts. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on the abdomen.**
- **Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.**
- **Do not put a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may gush out of the lighter and cause fire.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:26 PM Page 5




OEL039002/H

## Front seat

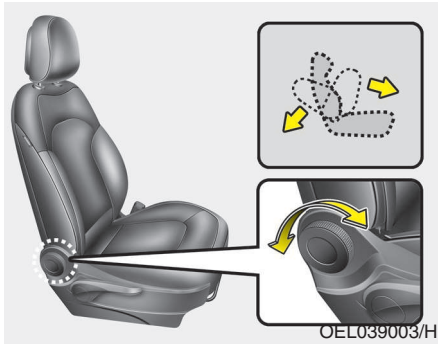
### *Manual adjustment*

**Forward and backward**

To move the seat forward or backward:

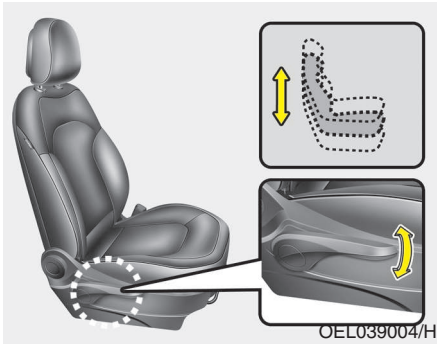
1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.


OEL039003/H

### *Adjusting the seatback recliner*

To recline the seatback, rotate the knob forward or rearward to the desired angle.


OEL039004/H

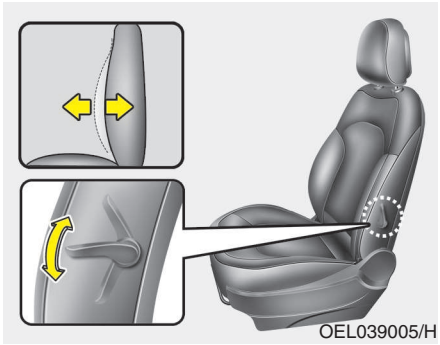
**Seat cushion height**
**(for driver's seat, if equipped)**

To change the height of the seat cushion, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat cushion, push down the lever several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull up the lever several times.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:26 PM Page 6




OEL039005/H

***Lumbar support (if equipped)***

The lumbar support can be adjusted by moving the lever on the side of seatback. Pivoting the lever increases or decreases lumbar support.

***Automatic adjustment (if equipped)***

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so as to easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF.**

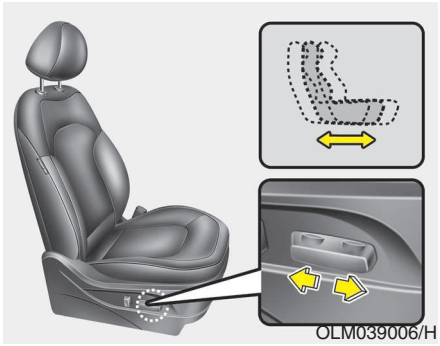
**Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The power seat is driven by an electric motor. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.***
- ***When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.***
- ***Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.***

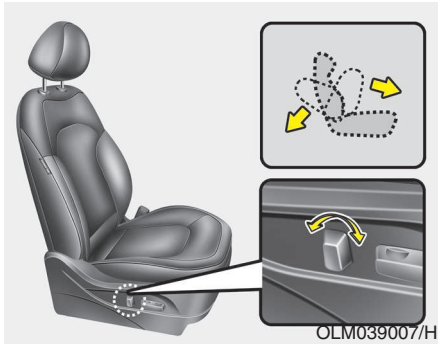
EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:26 PM Page 7





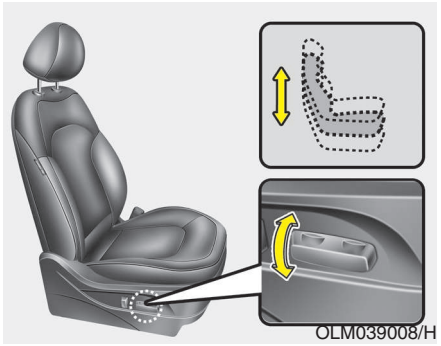

**Forward and backward**

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.




**Seatback angle**

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seatback to the desired angle. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

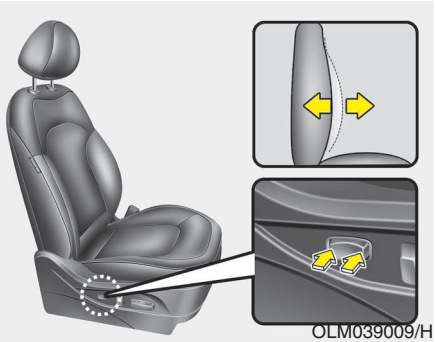



**Seat height (for driver's seat)**

Pull the control switch up to raise or down to lower the seat cushion. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

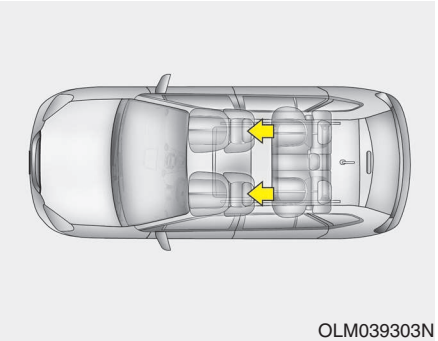
EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:26 PM Page 8




OLM039009/H

**Lumbar support (for driver's seat)**

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the button.


OLM039303N

***Head restraint***

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a head restraint for the occupant's safety and comfort.

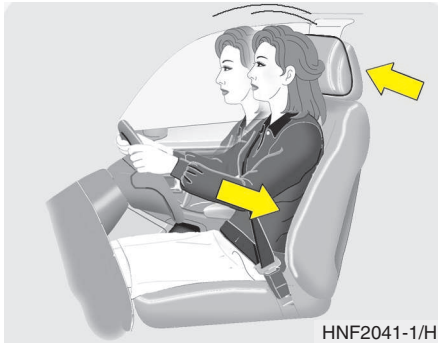
The head restraint not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the head restraint should be adjusted so the middle of the head restraint is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the head restraint as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the head restraints removed as severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Head restraints may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.**
- **Do not adjust the head restraint position of the driver's seat whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:26 PM Page 9



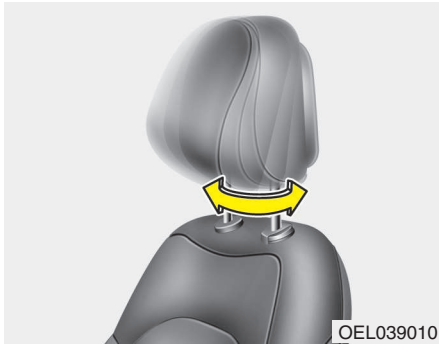

HNF2041-1/H

**Active head restraint (if equipped)**

The active head restraint is designed to move forward and upward during a rear impact. This helps prevent the driver's and front passenger's heads from moving backward and thus helps minimise neck injuries.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A gap between the seat and the head restraint release button may appear when seating on the seat or when you push or pull the seat. Be careful not to get your finger, etc. caught in the gap.**

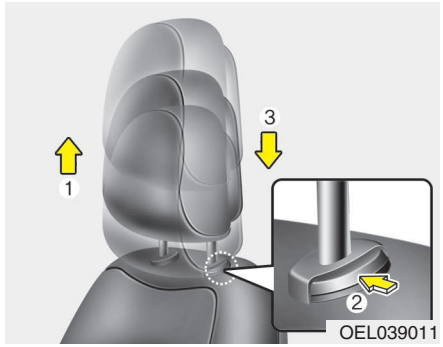

OEL039010

**Adjusting the angle (if equipped)**

The head restraint angle may be adjusted by pulling or pushing the lower part of the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that it properly supports the head and neck.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Excessive pulling or pushing may damage the head restraint.**



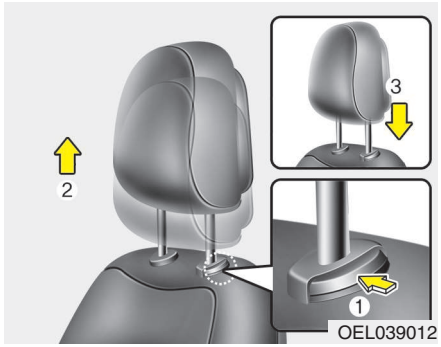
OEL039011

**Adjusting the height up and down**

To raise the head restraint, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the head restraint, push and hold the release button (2) on the head restraint support and lower the head restraint to the desired position (3).

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:26 PM Page 10





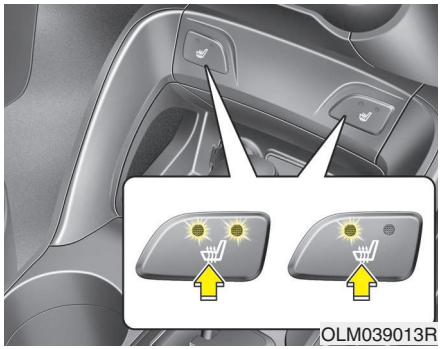

**Removal**

To remove the head restraint, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) whilst pulling upward (2).

To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint poles (3) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the head restraint locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.**




***Seat warmer (if equipped)***

The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

- The temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows :

OFF → HIGH (●●) → LOW (●)

- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

**✻ NOTICE**

**With the seat warmer switch in ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.***
- ***To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers whilst the seat warmer is in operation.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.***

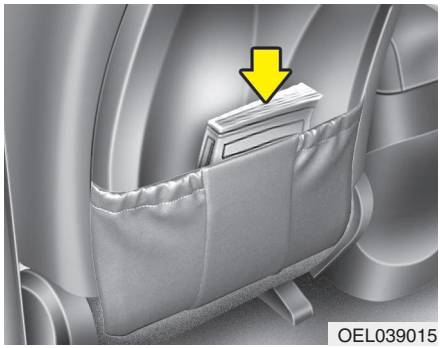
EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:26 PM Page 11



**⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns**

**Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:**

1. **Infants, children, elderly or handicapped persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**




***Seatback pocket***

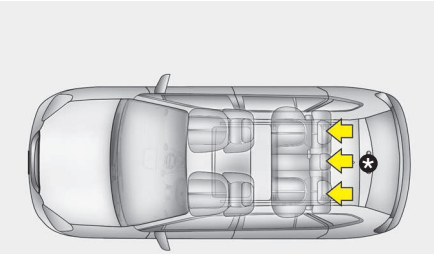
The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's and driver's seatbacks.

**⚠ WARNING - Seatback pockets**

**Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:26 PM Page 12





* if equipped

OLM039304N

## Rear seat

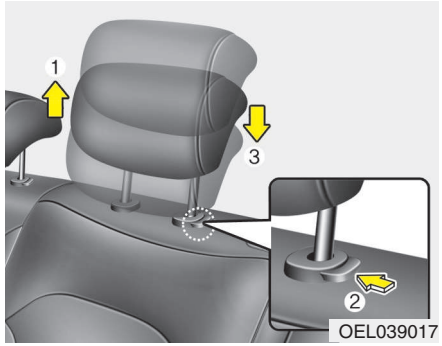
### *Head restraint*

The rear seat(s) is equipped with head restraints in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The head restraint not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the head restraint should be adjusted so the middle of the head restraint is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also adjust the head restraint as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the head restraints removed. Severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Head restraints may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**



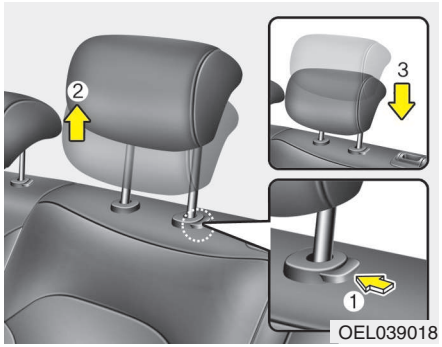

OEL039017

**Adjusting the height up and down**

To raise the head restraint, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the head restraint, push and hold the release button (2) on the head restraint support and lower the head restraint to the desired position (3).

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:26 PM Page 13





OEL039018

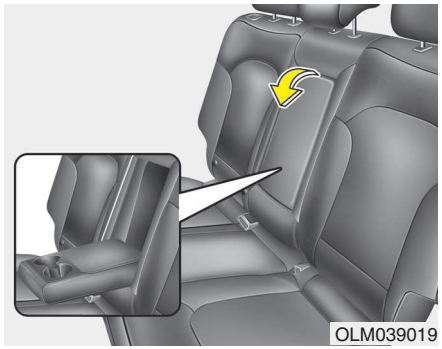
**Removal**

To remove the head restraint, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) whilst pulling the head restraint up (2).

To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint poles (3) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

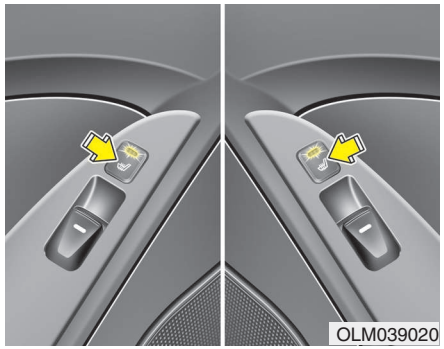
**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the head restraint locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.**


OLM039019

***Armrest***

To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.


OLM039020

***Seat warmer (if equipped)***

The seat warmer is provided to warm the rear seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm rear seats.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

**✻ NOTICE**

**With the seat warmer switch in ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:26 PM Page 14



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.***
- ***To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers whilst the seat warmer is in operation.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.***

**⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns**

**Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:**

1. **Infants, children, elderly or handicapped persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**

***Folding the rear seat***

The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

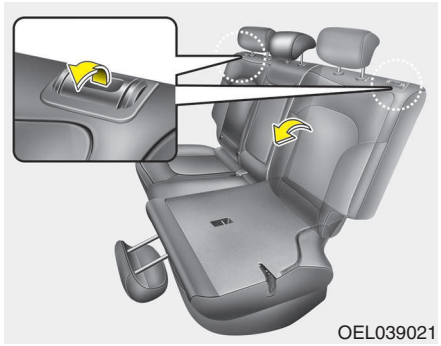
**The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks is to allow you to carry longer objects that could not be accommodated in the cargo area.**

**Never allow passengers sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop. Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 15

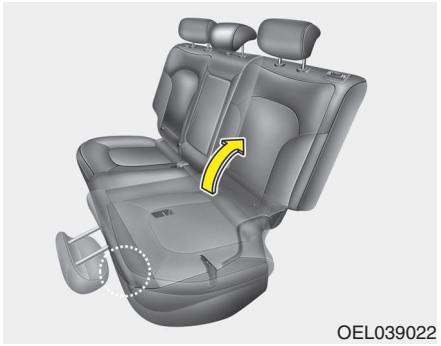


1. Insert the rear seat belt buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion, and insert the rear seat belt webbing in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear head restraints to the lowest position.



OEL039021

4. Pull on the seatback folding lever, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.



OEL039022

5. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.
7. When the seatback is completely installed, check the red label of seatback folding lever again.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 16



**⚠ WARNING**

**When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down:**

**Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden stop, the seat could fold down and allow cargo to enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat**

**When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. If the seatback is returned without holding it, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in injury caused by being struck by the seatback.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Damaging rear seat belt buckles**

***When you fold the rear seatback or put luggage on the rear seat cushion, insert the buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback or luggage.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Rear seat belts**

***When returning the rear seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position. Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.***

**⚠ WARNING - Cargo**

**Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Special care of objects should be taken when placing them in the rear seats, since those may hit the front seat occupants in a frontal collision.**

**⚠ WARNING - Cargo loading**

**Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transaxle is in P (Park) or the manual transaxle is in R (Reverse) or 1st, and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 17



## SEAT BELTS

### Seat belt restraint system

**⚠ WARNING**

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the car is moving.
- Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.
- Children age 12 and younger must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash. The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.
- Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.

**⚠ WARNING**

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 18



**⚠ WARNING**

- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**
- **When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of other seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.**
- **Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly whilst driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle. The seat belt may not be fastened securely.**



1GQA2083

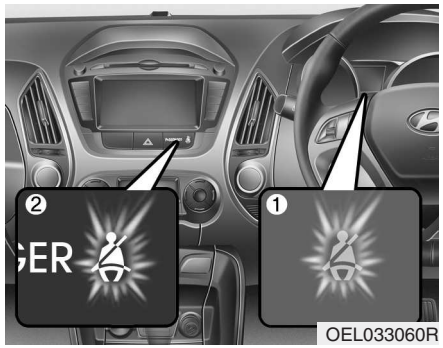
### *Seat belt warning*

■ **Type A**

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will blink for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's seat belt is unfastened after the ignition switch is ON, the seat belt warning light blinks again for approximately 6 seconds.

If the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON or if it is unfastened after the ignition switch is ON, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 6 seconds. At this time, if the seat belt is fastened, the chime will stop at once. (if equipped)




OEL033060R

■ **Type B**

(1) Driver's seat belt warning light

(2) Front passenger's seat belt warning light

As a reminder to the driver and front passenger, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON or if it is disconnected after the ignition switch is turned ON, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 19



If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 5mph (9km/h), the illuminated warning light will start to blink until you drive under 3mph (6km/h).

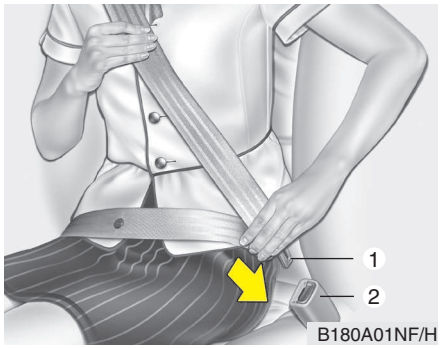
If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 12mph (20km/h) the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **You can find the front passenger's seat belt warning light on the centre fascia panel.**
- **Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**




*Lap/shoulder belt*

**To fasten your seat belt:**

To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

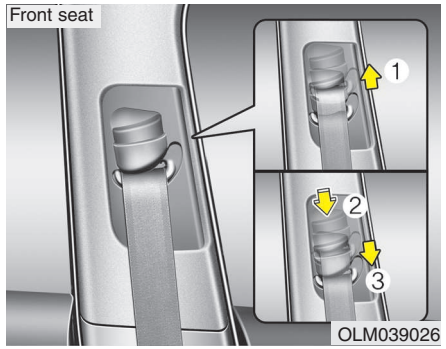
The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

**✻ NOTICE**

**If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 20






**Height adjustment**

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

If the height of the adjusting seat belt is too near your neck, you will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door and not your neck.

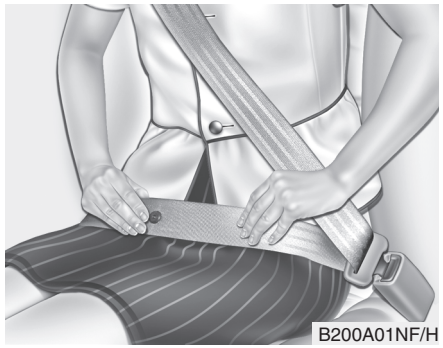
To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

**⚠ WARNING**

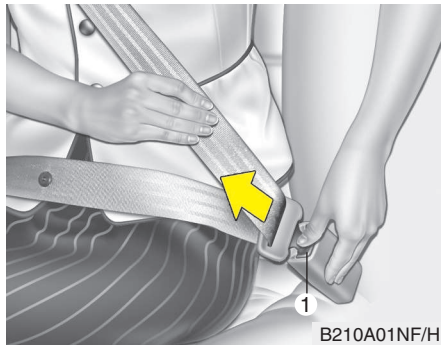
- **Verify the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face. Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.**
- **Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision leading to personal injury or death. Replace your seat belts after being in an accident as soon as possible.**




**⚠ WARNING**

**You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.**

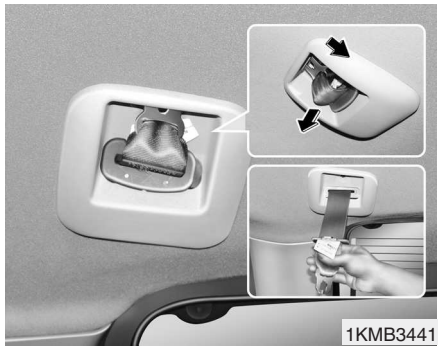
**Never wear the seat belt under the arm nearest the door.**




**To release the seat belt:**

The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (1) in the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.



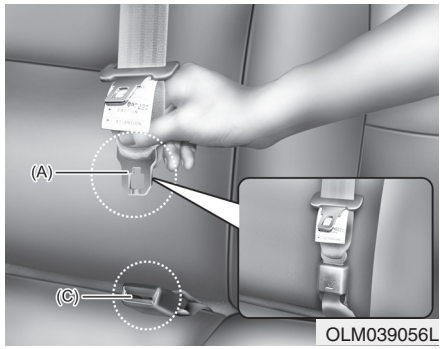

***3 Point rear centre belt (if equipped)***

**To fasten the rear centre belt**

1. Extract the tongue plate from the hole on the belt assembly cover and slowly pull the tongue plates out from the retractor.

**⚠ CAUTION - Cargo**

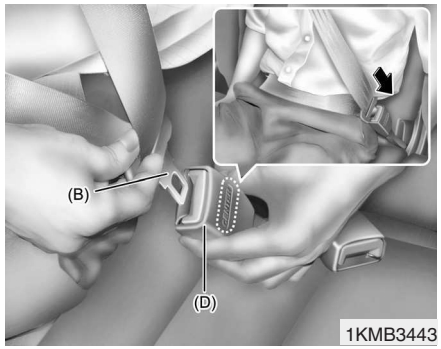
***Be sure that the cargo is securely loaded in the rear cargo area. Doing not so may damage the rear centre safety belt in sudden stop or certain collisions.***




2. Insert the tongue plate (A) into the open end of the buckle (C) until an audible “click" is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 22






3. Pull the tongue plate (B) and insert the tongue plate (B) into the open end of the buckle (D) until an audible “click” is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

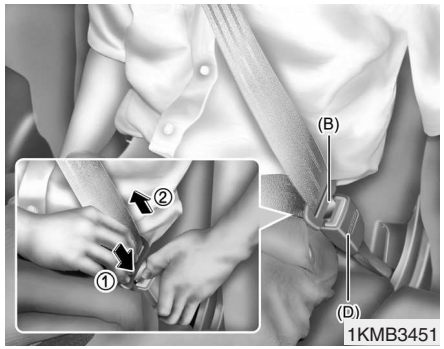
**⚠ CAUTION**

***When using the rear centre seat belt, the buckle with the “CENTER” mark must be used.***

There will be an audible “click” when the tab locks in the buckle. The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips, if you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the rear seat centre belt, you must lock all tongue plates and buckles. If any tongue plate or buckle is not locked, it will increase the chance of injury in the event of collision.**

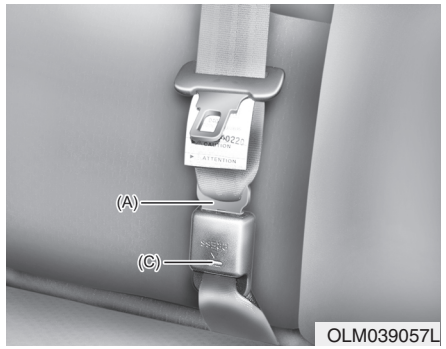



***To unfasten the rear centre belt***

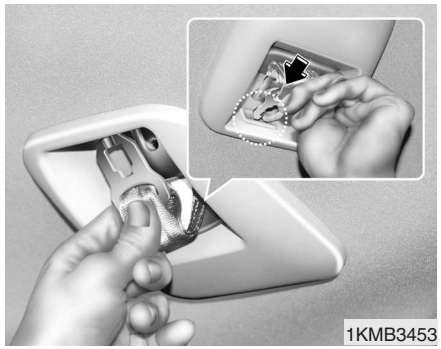
1. Press the release button on the buckle (D) and remove the tongue plate (B) from the buckle (D).

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 23

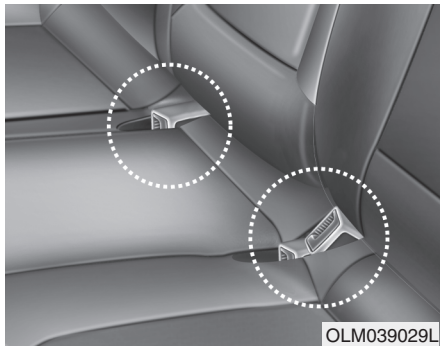





2. To retract the rear centre seatbelt, insert the buckle into the web release hole (C). Pull up on the seat belt web (A) and allow the webbing to retract automatically.




3. Insert the tongue plate (A) into the hole on the belt assembly cover.

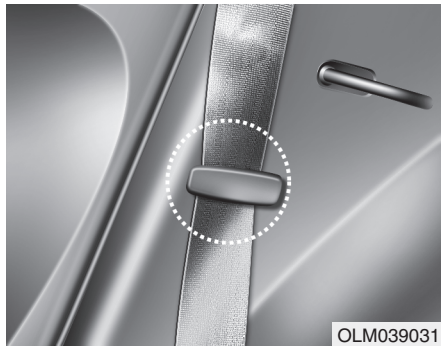



***Stowing the rear seat belt***

The rear seat belt buckles can be stowed in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion when not in use.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 24




OLM039031

- Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.

  After inserting the seat belt, tighten the belt webbing by pulling it up.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When using the seat belt, use it after taking it out of the guides.***

***If you pull the seat belt when it is stored in the guides, it may damage the guides and/or belt webbing.***


OED030300/H

### Pre-tensioner seat belt (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts. The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal collision is severe enough.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

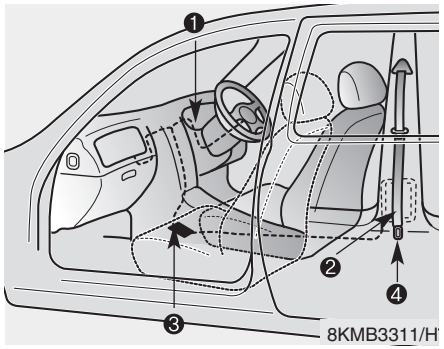
If the system senses excessive seat belt tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner activates, the load limiter inside the pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt. (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**For your safety, be sure that the belt webbing is not loose or twisted and always sit properly on your seat.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 25






The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:

1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module
4. Anchor pre-tensioner assembly (driver side, if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:**

1. **The seat belt must be worn correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle's occupant safety features – including seat belts and air bags – that are provided in this manual.**
2. **Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.**

## ✻ NOTICE

- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position, and then it should turn off.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 26



**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, this warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.**
- **The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.**
- **Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. We recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **Do not strike the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies.**
- **Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.**
- **Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 27



### Seat belt precautions

**⚠ WARNING**

**All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards.**

**Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant seat contained in this manual.**

*Infant or small child*

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standards of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 28



***Larger children***

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips and as low as possible. Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 12) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 12 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 12 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children**

- **Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.**

***Pregnant women***

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women. The seat belt should be worn as low and snugly as possible across the hips, not across the abdomen. A qualified Medical Practitioner should be consulted for further information.

**⚠ WARNING - Pregnant women**

**Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 29



*Injured person*

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. For specific recommendations, the advice of a qualified Medical Practioner should be sought.

*One person per belt*

The seat belts are designed to be used by one seat occupant only. The use of a seat belt by more than one person increases the levels of injury which may be sustained in the event of an accident.

*Do not lie down*

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front seats should be in an upright position when the car is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front seat is in a reclined position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries or the occupant's neck could strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.**

## Care of seat belts

Seat belt assemblies must never be disassembled or modified in any way. In addition, care should be exercised to ensure that the belt assemblies do not become damaged by being trapped in seat mechanisms, door shuts etc.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback was folded down, be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat. A seat belt with damaged webbing or buckle will not be as strong and could possibly fail during a collision or sudden stop, resulting in serious injury. If the webbing or buckles are damaged, get them replaced immediately.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 30



***Periodic inspection***

It is recommended that all seat belts be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Parts of the system that are damaged should be replaced as soon as possible. Under no circumstances must any part of the seat belt assemblies be dismantled or repaired.

***Keep belts clean and dry***

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used since the fabric may become damaged and weakened.

***When to replace seat belts***

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be inspected by an authorised repairer if the vehicle has been involved in an accident even if no damage is evident. We recommend additional questions concerning seat belt operation be directed to a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 31



## CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Children riding in the car should sit in the rear seat and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Larger children not in a child restraint should use one of the seat belts provided.

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant safety seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. You must use a commercially available child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt, or by a tether anchor and/or ISOFIX anchors (if equipped).

Children could be injured or killed in a crash if their restraints are not properly secured. For small children and babies, a child seat or infant seat must be used. Before buying a particular child restraint system, make sure it fits your car seat and seat belts, and fits your child. Follow all the instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **A child restraint system must be placed in the rear seat. Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger side air bag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Thus only use a child restraint in the rear seat of your vehicle.**
- **A seat belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle on a sunny day, even if the outside temperature does not feel hot. Be sure to check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.**
- **When the child restraint system is not in use, store it in the luggage area or fasten it with a seat belt so that it will not be thrown forward in case of a sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Children may be seriously injured or killed by an inflating air bag. All children, even those too large for child restraints, must ride in the rear seat.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the chance or serious or fatal injuries:**

- **Children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating air bag resulting in serious or fatal injuries.**
- **Always follow the instructions for installation and use of the child restraint maker.**
- **Always make sure the child seat is secured properly in the car and your child is securely restrained in the child seat.**
- **Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the car's interior.**
- **Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child causing serious internal injuries.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 32



**(Continued)**

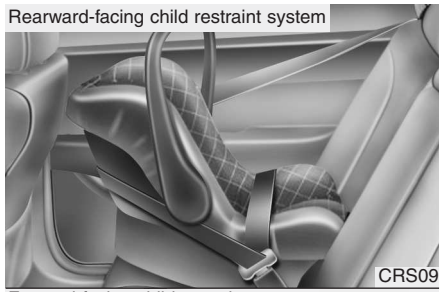
- **Never leave children unattended in a vehicle – not even for a short time. The car can heat up very quickly, resulting in serious injuries to children inside. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or lock themselves or others inside the vehicle.**
- **Never allow two children, or any two persons, to use the same seat belt.**
- **Children often squirm and reposition themselves improperly. Never let a child ride with the shoulder belt under their arm or behind their back. Always properly position and secure children in rear seat.**
- **Never allow a child to stand-up or kneel on the seat or floorboard of a moving vehicle. During a collision or sudden stop, the child can be violently thrown against the vehicles interior, resulting in serious injury.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate security in an accident.**
- **Seat belts can become very hot, especially when the car is parked in direct sunlight. Always check seat belt buckles before fastening them over a child.**
- **After an accident, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **If there is not enough space to place the child restraint system because of the driver's seat, install the child restraint system in the rear left seat.**

Rearward-facing child restraint system



CRS09

Forward-facing child restraint system



OUN026150

## Using a child restraint system

For small children and babies, the use of a child seat or infant seat is required. This child seat or infant seat should be of appropriate size for the child and should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. For safety reasons, we recommend that the child restraint system be used in the rear seats.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 33

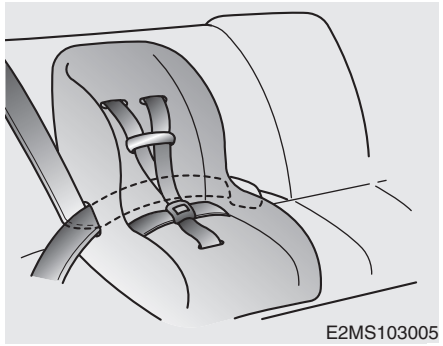


**⚠ WARNING**

**Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, because of the danger that an inflating passenger-side air bag could impact the rear-facing child restraint and kill the child.**

**⚠ WARNING - Child seat installation**

- **A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the vehicle and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Before installing the child restraint system, read the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **If the seat belt does not operate as described in this section, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **Failure to observe this manual's instructions regarding child restraint system and the instructions provided with the child restraint system could increase the chance and/or severity of injury in an accident.**



E2MS103005

***Installing a child restraint system by lap/shoulder belt***

To install a child restraint system on the outboard or centre rear seats, do the following:

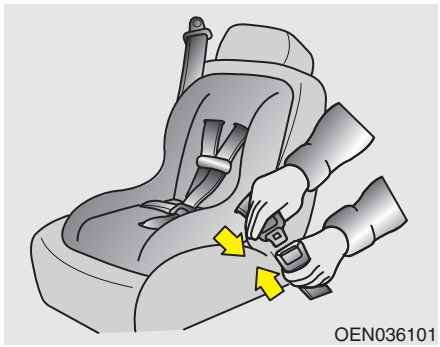
1. Place the child restraint system in the seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the restraint, following the restraint manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the rear centre seat belt, you should also refer to "3 point rear centre seat belt" in this chapter.**

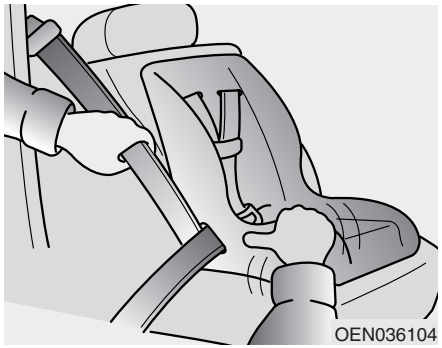
EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 34




OEN036101

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct “click” sound.

*Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.*


OEN036104

3. Buckle the seat belt and allow the seat belt to take up any slack. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.

If you need to tighten the belt, pull more webbing toward the retractor. When you unbuckle the seat belt and allow it to retract, the retractor will automatically revert back to its normal seated passenger emergency locking usage condition.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 35



***Child Seat Restraint Suitability For Seat Position using the Seat Belt - For Europe***

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children. When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table.

| Age Group | Seating Position | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Front passenger | Rear outboard | Rear centre |
| 0 : Up to 10 kg<br>(0 - 9 months) | U* | U | U |
| 0+ : Up to 13 kg<br>(0 - 2 years) | U* | U | U |
| I : 9 kg to 18 kg<br>(9 months - 4 years) | U* | U | U |
| II & III : 15 kg to 36 kg<br>(4 - 12 years) | U* | U | U |

U : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

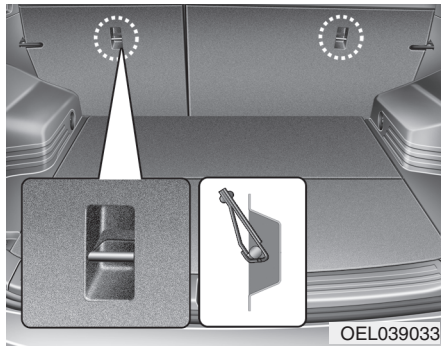
U* : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group (Seat position : foremost, Seat back : upright)

**⚠ WARNING**

**We recommend that a child restraint seat be installed in the rear seat, even if the front passenger's air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position. To ensure the safety of your child, the front passenger's air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a child restraint seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.**

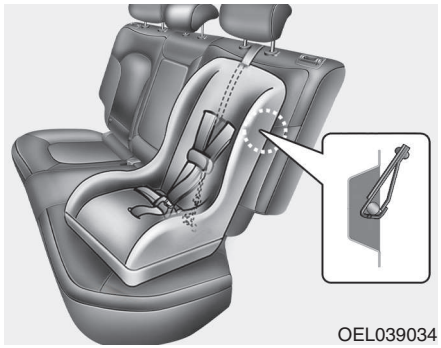
EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 36






***Securing a child restraint seat with "Tether Anchor" system (if equipped)***

Child restraint hook holders are located on the back of the rear seats.




1. Route the child restraint seat strap over the seatback.
   For vehicles with adjustable head restraint, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the appropriate child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the car and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**

**⚠ WARNING - Tether strap**

**Never mount more than one child restraint to a single tether or to a single lower anchorage point. The increased load caused by multiple seats may cause the tethers or anchorage points to break, causing serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 37

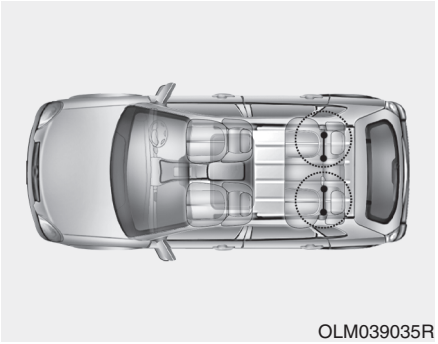


**⚠ WARNING - Child restraint check**

**Check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, twist, tip or separate causing death or serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Child restraint anchorage**

- **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**
- **The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.**

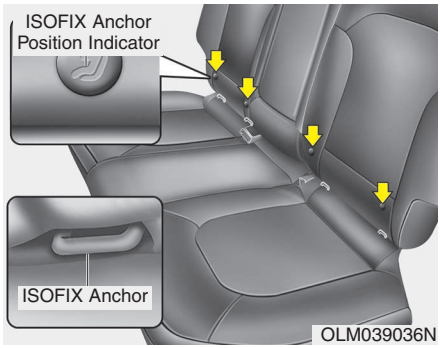


OLM039035R

***Securing a child restraint system with "ISOFIX" system and "Tether Anchorage" system (if equipped)***

ISOFIX is a standardised method of fitting child seats that eliminates the need to use the standard adult seat belt to secure the seat in the vehicle. This enables a much more secure and positive location with the added benefit of easier and quicker installation.

An ISOFIX-seat may only be installed if it has vehicle-specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R 44.

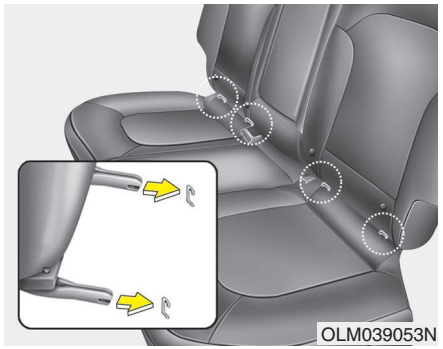



OLM039036N

There are ISOFIX symbols located on the lower portion of each side of the rear seatbacks. These symbols indicate the position of the lower anchors for child restraints so equipped.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:27 PM Page 38






Both rear outboard seats are equipped with a pair of ISOFIX anchorages as well as a corresponding top tether anchorage on the back side of the back rest. The ISOFIX anchorages are located between seat cushion and back rest, marked with the ISOFIX icon.

For installation, CRS ISOFIX connecters have to engage with the vehicles ISOFIX anchorages (listen for a CLICK, check potential visual indicators on the CRS and cross-check by pulling).

CRS with universal approval to ECE-R 44 need to be fixed additionally with a top tether strap connected to the corresponding top tether anchorage point in the back rest.

The installing and the use of a child-seat has to be done according to the installing-manual, which is added to the ISOFIX-seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Install the child restraint seat fully rearward against the seatback with the seatback reclined two positions from the most upright latched position.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When using the vehicle's "ISOFIX" system to install a child restraint system in the rear seat, all unused vehicle rear seat belt metal latch plates or tabs must be latched securely in their seat belt buckles and the seat belt webbing must be retracted behind the child restraint to prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts. Unlatched metal latch plates or tabs may allow the child to reach the unretracted seat belts which may result in strangulation and a serious injury or death to the child in the child restraint.**
- **Do not place anything around the lower anchors. Also make sure that the seat belt is not caught in the lower anchors.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 39



**To secure the child restraint seat**

1. To engage the child restraint seat to the ISOFIX anchor, insert the child restraint seat latch into the ISOFIX anchor. Listen for the audible “click” sound.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not allow the rear seat belt webbing to get scratched or pinched by the ISOFIX-seat latch and ISOFIX anchor during installation.***

2. Connect the tether strap hook to the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat. (Refer to the previous page.)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not install a child restraint seat at the centre of the rear seat using the vehicle's ISOFIX anchors. The ISOFIX anchors are only provided for the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Do not misuse the ISOFIX anchors by attempting to attach a child restraint seat in the middle of the rear seat to the ISOFIX anchors.**

  **In a crash, the child restraint seat ISOFIX attachments may not be strong enough to secure the child restraint seat properly in the centre of the rear seat and may break, causing serious injury or death.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not mount more than one child restraint to a child restraint lower anchorage point. The improper increased load may cause the anchorage points or tether anchor to break, causing serious injury or death.**
- **Attach the ISOFIX or ISOFIX-compatible child restraint seat only to the appropriate locations shown in the illustration.**
- **Always follow the installation and use instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 40



***Child seat restraint suitability for vehicle ISOFIX positions - For Europe***

| Mass Group | Size Class | Fixture | vehicle ISOFIX positions | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Front Passenger | Rear Outboard (Driver side) | Rear Outboard (Passenger side) | Rear Centre |
| Carrycot | F | ISO/L1 | - | X | X | - |
| | G | ISO/L2 | - | X | X | - |
| 0 : UP to 10kg | E | ISO/R1 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| 0+ : UP to 13kg | E | ISO/R1 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | D | ISO/R2 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | C | ISO/R3 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| I : 9 to 18kg | D | ISO/R2 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | C | ISO/R3 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | B | ISO/F2 | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | - | IUF | IUF | - |
| | A | ISO/F3 | - | IUF | IUF | - |

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems (CRS) given in the attached list. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semi-universal" categories.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system in this mass group and/or this size class.

* Both ISO/R2 and ISO/R3 are able to be set up only at the foremost position of the passenger seat.

* ISOFIX child restraint system size classes and fixtures

A - ISO/F3: Full-Height Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 720mm)

B - ISO/F2: Reduced-Height Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 650mm)

B1 - ISO/F2X: Reduced-Height Second Version Back Surface Shape Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 650mm)

C - ISO/R3: Full-Size Rearward-Facing toddler CRS

D - ISO/R2: Reduced-Size Rearward-Facing toddler CRS

E - ISO/R1: Infant-Size Rearward-Facing CRS

F - ISO/L1: Left Lateral Facing position CRS (carry-cot)

G - ISO/L2: Right Lateral Facing position CRS (carry-cot)

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 41



***Recommended child restraint systems – For Europe***

| Mass Group | Name | Manufacturer | Type of Fixation | ECE-R44 Approval No. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Group 0-1 (0-18kg) | FAIR G0/1 S | FAIR S.r.l | rearward facing with vehicle specific ISOFIX platform type “D” | E4 04443718 |
| | Baby Safe Plus | Britax Römer | with vehicle 3-point safety seatbelt | E1 04301146 |
| Group 1 (9-18kg) | FAIR G0/1 S | FAIR S.r.l | forward facing with vehicle specific ISOFIX platform type “A” | E4 04443718 |
| | Duo Plus | Britax Römer | vehicle ISOFIX lower anchorage + Top Tether | E1 04301133 |
| | | Britax Römer | with vehicle 3-point safety seatbelt | E1 04301133 |

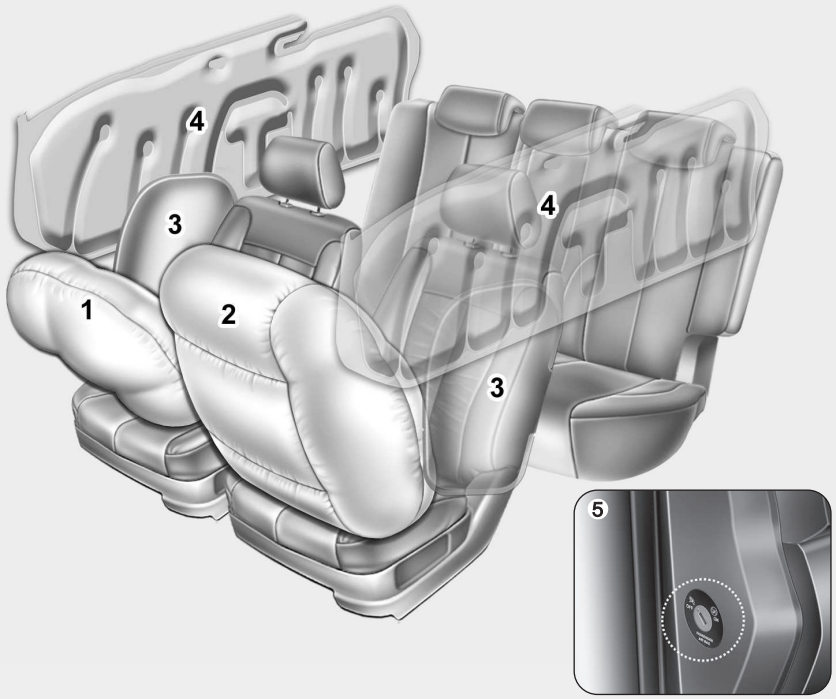
***CRS Manufacturer information***

FAIR S.r.l http://www.fairbimbofix.com
Britax Römer http://www.britax.com

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 42



## AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




❇ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL033301R/OYN039026R

(1) Driver's front air bag
(2) Passenger's front air bag*
(3) Side air bag*
(4) Curtain air bag*
(5) Front passenger's air bag ON/OFF switch*

* : if equipped

**⚠ WARNING**

**Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimise the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 43



### How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of serious frontal or side collision (if equipped with side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.

  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining, factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to get the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least (10 inches) 250 mm away). The front passenger should always move their seat as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.**
- **Air bag inflates instantly in an event of a collision, passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in a proper position.**
- **Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 44



***Noise and smoke***

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are nontoxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc.). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult the doctor if the symptom persists.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel and/or instrument panel and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage areas internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.**




OYDESA2042

***Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat***

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger's seat other than that explained in section - Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped). If the air bag deploys, it would impact the rear-facing child restraint, causing serious or fatal injury.

In addition, do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

If your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, you can activate or deactivate the front passenger's air bag when necessary.

For more details, please refer to 3-52 page.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 45



**⚠ WARNING**

- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat other than that as mentioned in section - Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped). If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position.**

  **Inflation of side and/or curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.**



W7-147

## Air bag warning and indicator

### *Air bag warning light*

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 46





OEL039061

***Passenger's front air bag ON indicator (if equipped)***

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position and goes off after approximately 60 seconds.



OEL039052

***Passenger's front air bag OFF indicator (if equipped)***

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position and goes off when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch malfunctions, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds) and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in a frontal impact even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.***

***If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 47



### SRS components and functions

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module*
2. Front impact sensors*
3. Passenger's front air bag module*
4. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies*
5. Side impact sensors*
6. Curtain air bag modules*
7. Side air bag modules*
8. SRS control module (SRSCM)
9. Air bag warning light
10. Anchor pre-tensioner assembly* (driver side)
11. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch*
12. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator*

*: if equipped

The SRSCM continually monitors all elements whilst the ignition switch is ON to determine if a frontal, near-frontal impact or side impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, after which the air bag warning light should go out.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. We recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

- **The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.**
- **The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.**

Driver's front air bag (1)



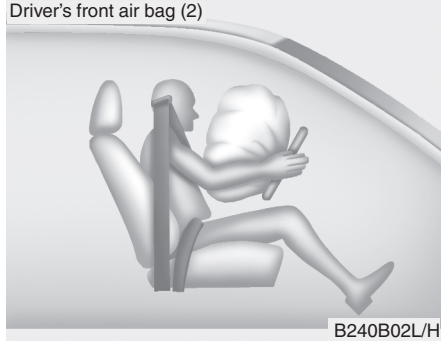
B240B01L/H

The front air bag modules are located both in the centre of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 48



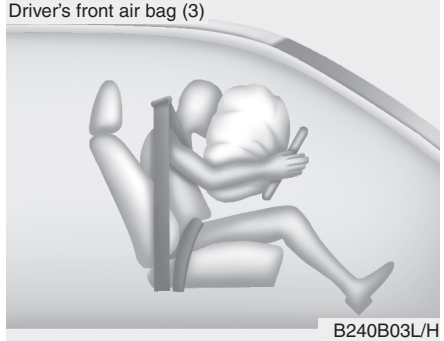
Driver's front air bag (2)



B240B02L/H

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3)

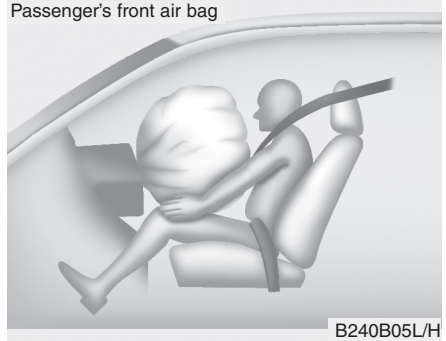


B240B03L/H

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front air bag



B240B05L/H

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, cassette holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**
- **When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface.**
  **It may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 49



**⚠ WARNING**

- **If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with lukewarm water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

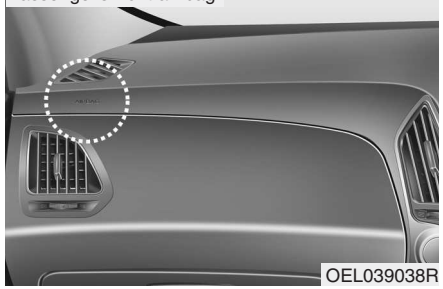
- **The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on whilst driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.**

Driver's front air bag



OEL039037R

Passenger's front air bag



OEL039038R

## Driver's and passenger's front air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 50



The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover on the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the centre of the steering wheel and the passenger's side in the front panel above the glove box.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always use seat belts and child restraints – every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with air bags, improperly and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.**

**To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:**

- **Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat. NB See section - Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped).**
- **ABC – Always Buckle Children in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Front and side air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.**
- **Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned drivers and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.**
- **Never lean against the door or centre console – always sit in an upright position.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 51



**(Continued)**

- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **Air bags can only be used once – we recommend that the system be replaced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer immediately after deployment.**
- **The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.**
- **A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident. NB See section - Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped).**
- **Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seat back in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the ignition key is removed.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 52



**(Continued)**

- **The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.**



OEL039054R

***Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)***

The passenger's front air bag can be deactivated by the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch. When switched off a rearward facing child seat can be installed in this seating position. When using this facility the seat must always be put in its most rearward position.

NB. For safety reasons, when installing child seats within the vehicle the back seat positions are preferred, such practice for installing a child seat in the front passenger seat (with the Air Bag switch positioned OFF) should only be used in exceptional circumstances.

In addition the air bag can also be deactivated if the front passenger's seat is unoccupied by a person.



OLM039052L

**To deactivate or reactivate the passenger's front air bag:**

To deactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the master key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator ( ) will illuminate and stay on until the passenger's front air bag is reactivated.

To reactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the master key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will go out and the passenger's front air bag ON indicator ( ) will illuminate for approximately 60 seconds.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 53



**⚠ WARNING**

**On some models, the front air bag ON/OFF switch could turn by using a similar small rigid device. Always check the status of the front air bag ON/OFF switch and passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator.**

## ✻ NOTICE

- When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position, the passenger's front air bag is activated and child or infant seat should not be installed on the front passenger seat.
- When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position, the passenger's front air bag is deactivated.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- *If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is not working properly, the air bag warning light () on the instrument panel will illuminate.*

  *And, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator () will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds), the SRS Control Module reactivate the passenger's front air bag and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.*

  *If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.*

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- *If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.*

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 54



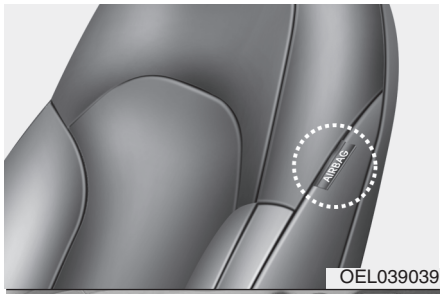
**⚠ WARNING**

- **The driver is responsible for the proper position of the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch.**
- **Deactivate the passenger's front air bag only when the ignition switch is switched off, or the malfunction may occur in the SRS Control Module.**
  **And there may be a danger that the driver's and/or front passenger's and/or side and curtain air bag may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly during a collision.**
- **Never install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the passenger's front air bag has been deactivated. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**

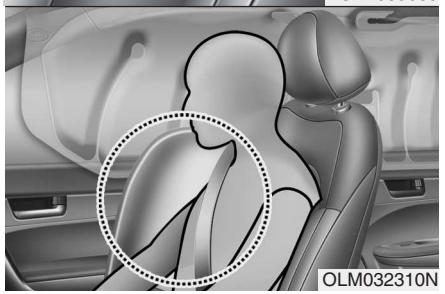
**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Even though your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, do not install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat other than that explained in section - Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped). Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat, reactivate the front passenger's air bag.**




OEL039039



OLM032310N

### Side air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a side impact air bag in each front seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:37 PM Page 55



- The side air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.
- The side air bags do not only deploy on the side of the impact but also on the opposite side.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The side air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times whilst the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact conditions severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.**
- **For best protection from the side air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.**
- **Do not use any accessory seat covers.**

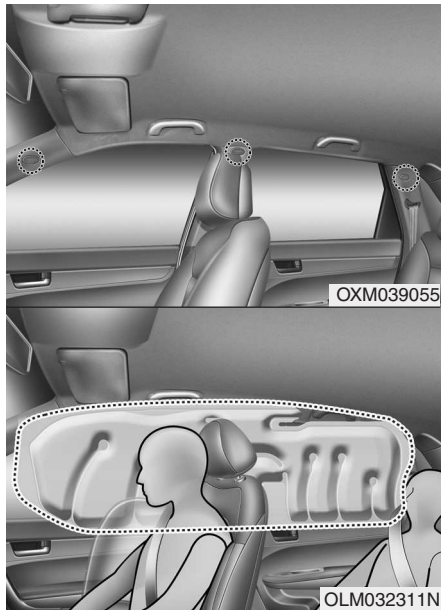
**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bag.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.**
- **Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the supplemental side air bag inflates.**
- **To prevent unexpected deployment of the side air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition key is on.**
- **If seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer. Inform that your vehicle is equipped with side air bags.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:34 PM Page 56






**Curtain air bag (if equipped)**

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.
They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

- The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.
- The curtain air bags do not only deploy on the side of the impact but also on the opposite side.
- The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **In order for side and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, both front seat occupants and both outboard rear occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened. Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system.**
  **Make sure to put the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:34 PM Page 57



**(Continued)**

- **Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.**
- **Never try to open or repair any components of the side curtain air bag system. We recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

**Failure to follow the above mentioned instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.**

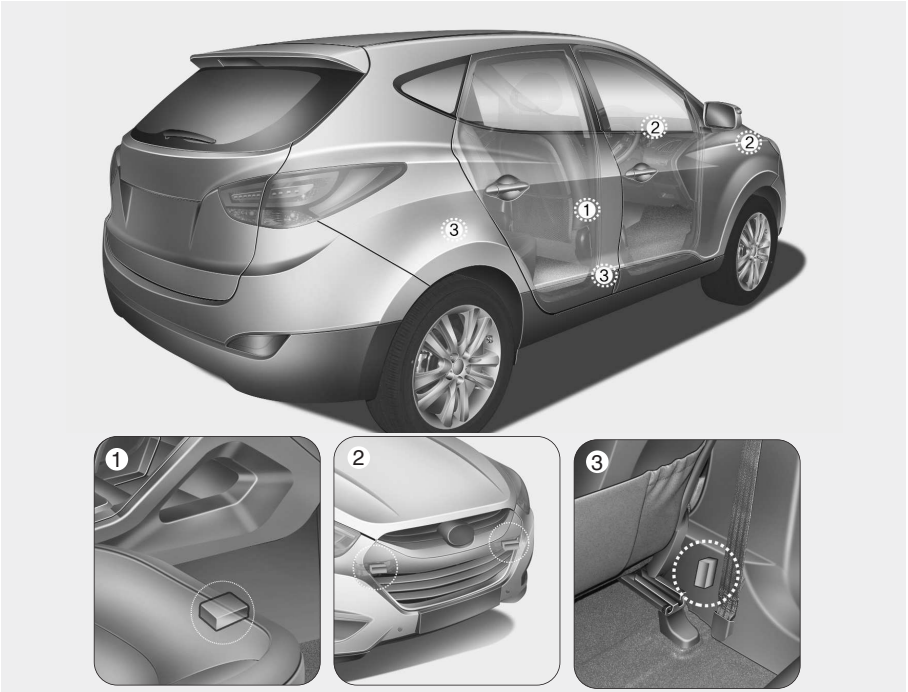
EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 58



### Air bag system operation (deployment/non deployment)

**There are many types of situations in which an air bag would not provide additional protection to the vehicle occupants.**

**These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, low speed impacts, offset collisions and vehicle roll over.**




OLM039040R/OLM039041/H/OEL033061/H/OEL039044

***Air bag collision sensors***

(1) SRS control module
(2) Front impact sensor
(3) Side impact sensor (if equipped)

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 59



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed.**

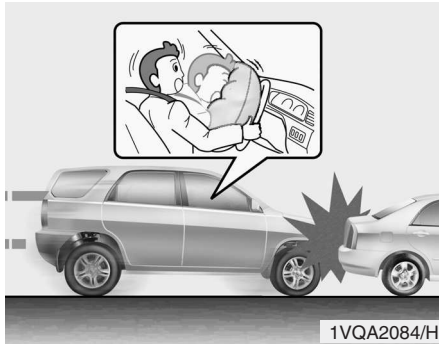
  **This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.**
- **If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.**

  **Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. We recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, body or B pillar and C pillars where side collision sensors are installed. We recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Installing bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicles collision and air bag deployment performance.**




***Air bag inflation conditions***

**Front air bags**

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 60







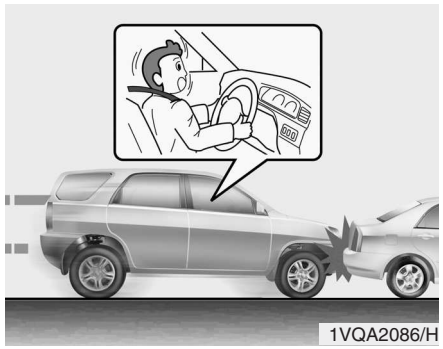


**Side and curtain air bags (if equipped)**

Side and/or curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side air bags (side and/or curtain air bags) are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads or sidewalks, air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

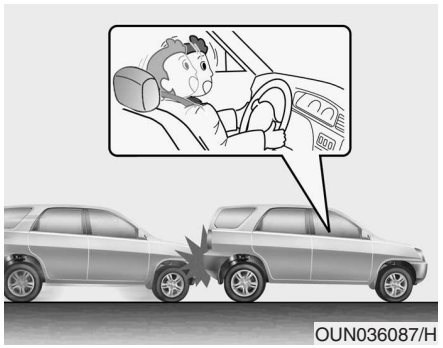



***Air bag non-inflation conditions***

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 61



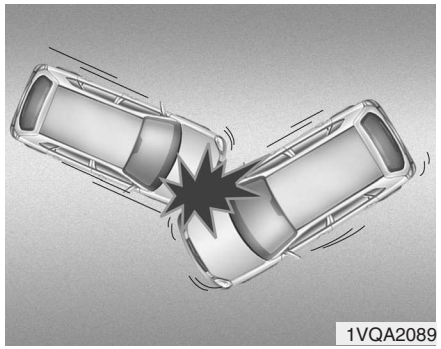

OUN036087/H

- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.



OVQ036018N

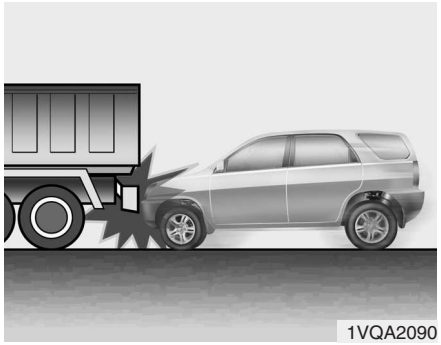
- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.
- However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.


1VQA2089

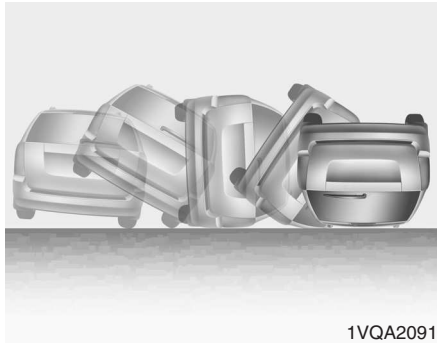
- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 62



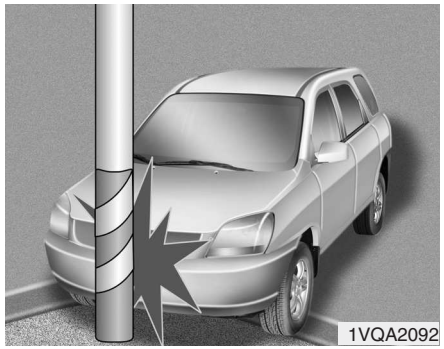

1VQA2090

- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly replaced by such “under-ride” collisions.


1VQA2091

- Air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because air bag deployment would not provide protection to the occupants.

  However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side air bags and curtain air bags.


1VQA2092

- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 63



### SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.**
- **If the air bags inflate, we recommend that the system be replaced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. We recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer for these precautions and necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.**
- **If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 64



### Additional safety precautions

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.
- **Passengers should not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- **Each seat belt is designed to restrain one occupant.** If more than one person uses the same seat belt, they could be seriously injured or killed in a collision.
- **Do not use any accessories on seat belts.** Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Passengers should not place hard or sharp objects between themselves and the air bags.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap or in your mouth can result in injuries if an air bag inflates.
- **Keep occupants away from the air bag covers.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor. If occupants are too close to the air bag covers, they could be injured if the air bags inflate.
- **Do not attach or place objects on or near the air bag covers.** Any object attached to or placed on the front or side air bag covers could interfere with the proper operation of the air bags.
- **Do not modify the front seats.** Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.
- **Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.
- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** The infant or child could be seriously injured or killed in the event of a crash. All infants and children should be properly restrained in appropriate child safety seats or seat belts in the rear seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.**

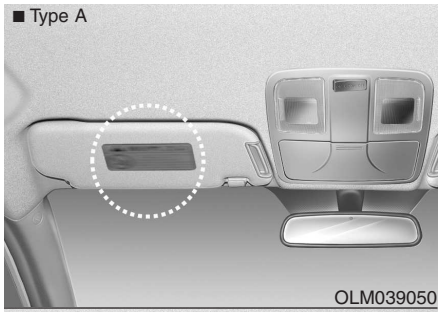
### Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

EL(FL) UK 3.QXP 8/5/2013 6:28 PM Page 65

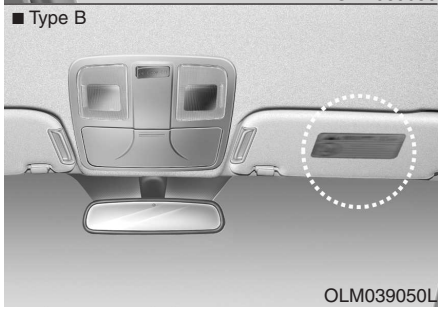


■ Type A



OLM039050

■ Type B



OLM039050L

**Air bag warning label (if equipped)**

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert driver and passengers (including children) of potential risk of air bag system.

Note that these government warnings focus on the risk to children, we also wants you to be aware of the risks which adults are exposed to. Those have been described in previous pages.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:38 PM Page 1

# Features of your vehicle


**Keys** . . . . . 4-4
- Record your key number . . . . . 4-4
- Key operations . . . . . 4-4
- Immobiliser system . . . . . 4-5

**Remote keyless entry** . . . . . 4-7
- Remote keyless entry system operations . . . . . 4-7
- Transmitter precautions . . . . . 4-8
- Battery replacement . . . . . 4-9

**Smart key** . . . . . 4-10
- Smart key functions . . . . . 4-10
- Smart key precautions . . . . . 4-12
- Door lock/unlock in an emergency situation . . . . . 4-12

**Theft-alarm system** . . . . . 4-13
- Theft-alarm stage . . . . . 4-14
- Disarmed stage . . . . . 4-14

**Door locks** . . . . . 4-15
- Operating door locks from outside the vehicle . . . . 4-15
- Operating door locks from inside the vehicle . . . . . 4-16
- Deadlocks . . . . . 4-17
- Speed sensing door lock system . . . . . 4-18
- Child-protector rear door lock . . . . . 4-18

**Tailgate** . . . . . 4-19
- Opening the tailgate . . . . . 4-19
- Closing the tailgate . . . . . 4-19

**Windows** . . . . . 4-21
- Power windows . . . . . 4-22

**Bonnet** . . . . . 4-25
- Opening the bonnet . . . . . 4-25
- Closing the bonnet . . . . . 4-26

**Fuel filler lid** . . . . . 4-27
- Opening the fuel filler lid . . . . . 4-27
- Closing the fuel filler lid . . . . . 4-27

**Panorama sunroof** . . . . . 4-30
- Sunroof open warning . . . . . 4-30
- Tilting the sunroof . . . . . 4-32
- Resetting the sunroof . . . . . 4-33

**Steering wheel** . . . . . 4-34
- Electric power steering . . . . . 4-34
- Heated steering wheel . . . . . 4-35
- Horn . . . . . 4-36
- Flex steering wheel . . . . . 4-37

**Mirrors** . . . . . 4-39
- Inside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-39
- Outside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-43

**Instrument cluster** . . . . . 4-46
- Instrument panel illumination . . . . . 4-47
- LCD Display Control . . . . . 4-47
- Gauges . . . . . 4-48
- Transaxle Shift Indicator . . . . . 4-52

**LCD display** ..... 4-54
- LCD Modes ..... 4-54
- Information Mode ..... 4-55
- User Settings Mode ..... 4-56
- Warning Messages ..... 4-58

**Trip computer** ..... 4-64
- Overview ..... 4-64
- Trip Modes ..... 4-64
- Trip A/B ..... 4-65
- Fuel Economy ..... 4-66
- Warnings and indicators ..... 4-68
- Indicator Lights ..... 4-77

**Parking assist system** ..... 4-81
- Rear parking assist system type ..... 4-81
- Front/Rear parking assist system type ..... 4-85

**Smart parking assist system** ..... 4-87
- Operating condition ..... 4-88
- Non-operational conditions ..... 4-88
- Operation way ..... 4-91
- System cancellation whilst parking ..... 4-95
- Additional introductions ..... 4-96
- System malfunction warning ..... 4-97

**Rearview camera** ..... 4-98

**Hazard warning flasher** ..... 4-98

**Lighting** ..... 4-99
- Battery saver function ..... 4-99
- Headlight escort function ..... 4-99
- Headlight welcome function ..... 4-99
- Lighting control ..... 4-100
- High - beam operation ..... 4-101
- Turn signals and lane change signals ..... 4-102
- Front fog light ..... 4-103
- Rear fog light ..... 4-103
- Daytime running light ..... 4-104
- Headlight levelling device ..... 4-104

**Wipers and washers** ..... 4-106
- Windscreen wipers ..... 4-107
- Windscreen washers ..... 4-108
- Rear window wiper and washer switch ..... 4-109

**Interior light** ..... 4-110
- Map lamp ..... 4-110
- Room lamp ..... 4-111
- Vanity mirror lamp ..... 4-111
- Luggage room lamp ..... 4-111
- Glove box lamp ..... 4-112

**Defroster** ..... 4-113
- Rear window defroster ..... 4-113

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:38 PM Page 3

**Manual climate control system** . . . . . 4-115
- Heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-116
- System operation . . . . . 4-120
- Climate control air filter . . . . . 4-122
- Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant . . . . . 4-123

**Automatic climate control system** . . . . . 4-124
- Automatic heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-125
- Manual heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-126

**Windscreen defrosting and defogging** . . . . . 4-131
- Manual climate control system . . . . . 4-131
- Automatic climate control system . . . . . 4-133

**Storage compartment** . . . . . 4-134
- Centre console storage . . . . . 4-134
- Glove box . . . . . 4-134
- Cool box . . . . . 4-135
- Sunglass holder . . . . . 4-135

**Interior features** . . . . . 4-137
- Cigarette lighter . . . . . 4-137
- Ashtray . . . . . 4-137
- Cup holder . . . . . 4-138
- Sunvisor . . . . . 4-138
- Power outlet . . . . . 4-139
- Digital clock . . . . . 4-140
- Aux, USB and iPod® . . . . . 4-140
- Floor mat anchor(s) . . . . . 4-141
- Luggage net (holder) . . . . . 4-141
- Cargo security screen . . . . . 4-142

**Exterior features** . . . . . 4-144
- Roof rack . . . . . 4-144

**Audio system** . . . . . 4-145

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:38 PM Page 4



# KEYS

## Record your key number



The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set.

Should you lose your keys, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the code number and keep it in a safe and handy place, but not in the vehicle.

## Key operations

- Used to start the engine.
- Used to lock and unlock the doors.
- Used to lock and unlock the glove box. (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**We recommend that you use parts for replacement from a HYUNDAI authorised repairer. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.**

**⚠ WARNING - Ignition key (Smart key)**

**Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key (Smart key) is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition or start button is ACC or ON position.**

**Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition or press the start button.**

**The ignition key (Smart key) would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death.**

**Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:38 PM Page 5



## Immobiliser system

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobiliser system to reduce the risk of unauthorised vehicle use.

Your immobiliser system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobiliser system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

***To deactivate the immobiliser system:***

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

***To activate the immobiliser system:***

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

**⚠ WARNING**

**In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobiliser password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The immobiliser system detects the presence of a key in the ignition switch. To ensure the system performs correctly, the keys should be separated after delivery of the vehicle so that only one key is near the ignition switch when using the vehicle. The engine may not start or may stop shortly after starting if more than one key is near the ignition switch.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch.***

***The engine may not start for the metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal from normally transmitting.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**If you need additional keys or lose your keys, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:38 PM Page 6



**⚠ CAUTION**

***The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobiliser system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobiliser system malfunction could occur.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not change, alter or adjust the immobiliser system because it could cause the immobiliser system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

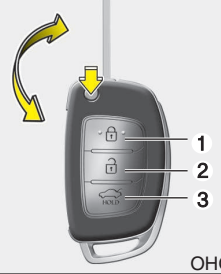
***Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobiliser system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:38 PM Page 7



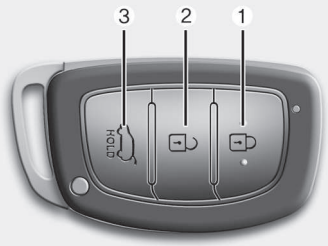
## REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A (if equipped)




OHG040001L/Q

■ Type B (if equipped)




OLMB043003

### Remote keyless entry system operations

■ ***Type A***

To unfold the key, press the release button then the key will unfold automatically.

To fold the key, fold the key manually whilst pressing the release button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.***

■ ***Type B***

To remove the mechanical key, press and hold the release button and remove the mechanical key.

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

***Lock (1)***

All doors (and tailgate) are locked if the lock button is pressed. If all doors are closed, the hazard warning lights blink once to indicate that all doors are locked. However, if any door remains open, the hazard warning lights will not blink. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.

***Unlock (2)***

All doors are unlocked if the unlock button is pressed.
The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.
After depressing this button, the doors will be locked automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

***Tailgate unlock (3) (if equipped)***

The tailgate is unlocked if the button is pressed for more than 1 second.
The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the tailgate is unlocked.
However, after pressing this button, the tailgate will lock automatically unless you open the tailgate within 30 seconds.
Also, once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

**✻ NOTICE**

**The word "HOLD" is written on the button to inform you that you must press and hold the button.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:38 PM Page 8



### Transmitter precautions

#### ✻ NOTICE

**The transmitter will not work if any of following occur:**

- **The ignition key is in ignition switch.**
- **You exceed the operating distance limit (about 30 feet [10 m]).**
- **The battery in the transmitter is weak.**
- **Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.**
- **The weather is extremely cold.**
- **The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**

**When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer vehicle warranty.***

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:38 PM Page 9

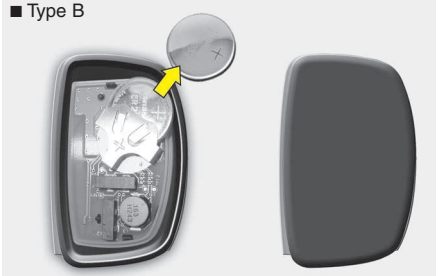


■ Type A



OLM042302

■ Type B



OLM043439

### Battery replacement

Transmitter uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years. When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter centre cover.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery positive.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For transmitter replacement, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The keyless entry system transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use your transmitter or replace the battery, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***
- ***Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.***
- ***To avoid damaging the transmitter, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.***

***Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:38 PM Page 10



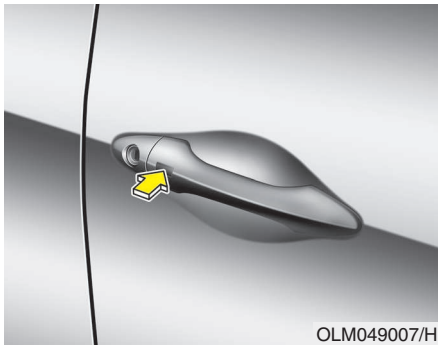
## SMART KEY (IF EQUIPPED)




OLMB043005

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door (and tailgate) and even start the engine without inserting the key.

The functions of the buttons on a smart key are similar to the remote keyless entry. (Refer to the “Remote keyless entry” in this section.)



OLM049007/H

### Smart key functions

Carrying the smart key, you may lock and unlock the vehicle doors (and tailgate). Also, you may start the engine. Refer to the following, for more details.

***Locking***

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and tailgate) closed and any door unlocked, locks all the doors (and tailgate). The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are locked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 28~40 in. (0.7~1 m) from the outside door handle. If you want to make sure that a door has locked or not, you should check the door lock button inside the vehicle or pull the outside door handle.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:38 PM Page 11



Even though you press the button, the doors will not lock and the chime sounds 3 seconds if any of the following occurs:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The engine start/stop button is in the ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the tailgate is opened.

***Unlocking***

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and tailgate) closed and locked, unlocks all the doors (and tailgate). The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are unlocked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 28~40 in. (0.7~1 m) from the outside door handle.

When the smart key is recognized in the area of 28~40 in. (0.7~1 m) from the front outside door handle, other people can also open a door without possession of the smart key.

***Tailgate unlocking***

If you are within 28 ~ 40 in. (0.7 ~ 1 m) from the outside tailgate handle, with your smart key in possession, the tailgate will unlock and open when you press the tailgate handle switch.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the tailgate is unlocked.

Also, once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

***Start-up***

You can start the engine without inserting the key. For detailed information refer to “Starting the engine with a smart key” in section 5.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 12



### Smart key precautions

#### ✻ NOTICE

- **If, for some reason, you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. Tow the vehicle, if necessary. We recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you lose a smart key, you should immediately take the vehicle and key and we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **The smart key will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two-way radio system or a mobile phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**

  **When the smart key does not work properly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the smart key is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the smart key could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the smart key and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***Keep the smart key away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.***



OEL043305

### Door lock/unlock in an emergency situation

If the smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the doors by using the mechanical key.

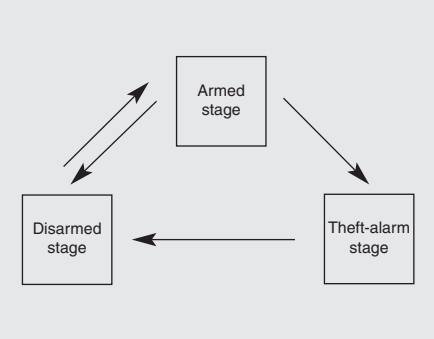
1. Depress and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2).
2. Insert the key into hole of the outside door handle. Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock.

   To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 13



## THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorised entry into the vehicle. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Theft-alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

### Armed stage

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or turn off the engine.
2. Make sure that all doors (and tailgate) and the engine bonnet are closed and latched.
3. • Lock the doors by depressing the door lock button on the transmitter (or smart key).

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If any door, tailgate remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.

   • Lock the doors by pressing the button of the front outside door handles with the smart key in your possession.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If any door (and tailgate) remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.

   If engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. Close the engine bonnet. The hazard warning lights blink once and theft-alarm arms.

- **Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the system is armed whilst a passenger(s) remains in the vehicle, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leave the vehicle. If any door, tailgate or engine bonnet is opened within 30 seconds after entering the armed stage, the system is disarmed to prevent unnecessary alarm.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 14



### Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed.

- A front or rear door is opened without using transmitter (or smart key).
- The tailgate is opened without using transmitter (or smart key).
- The engine bonnet is opened.

The siren will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for 27 seconds, unless the system is disarmed. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the transmitter. (or smart key)

### Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when:

***Transmitter***

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The engine is started.
- The ignition switch is in the “ON” position for 30 seconds or more.

***Smart key***

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The button of the front outside door is pressed whilst carrying the smart key.
- The engine is started.

After the doors are unlocked, the hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.
After pressing the unlock button, if any door (or tailgate) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

### ✻ NOTICE - Immobiliser system

- **If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.**
- **If you lose your keys, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

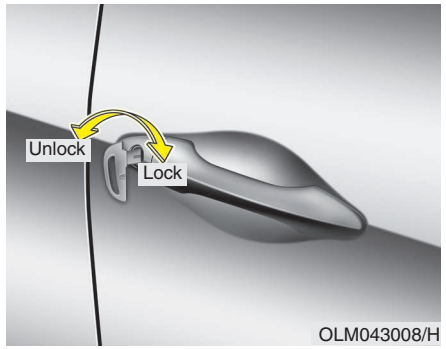
***Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction. We recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

***Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 15



## DOOR LOCKS




### Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

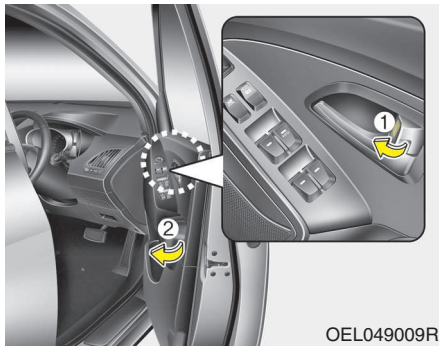
- Turn the key toward rear of vehicle to unlock and toward front of vehicle to lock.
- If you lock/unlock the door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock/unlock automatically. (if equipped)
- Doors can also be locked and unlocked with the transmitter key (or smart key).
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

### ⚠ WARNING

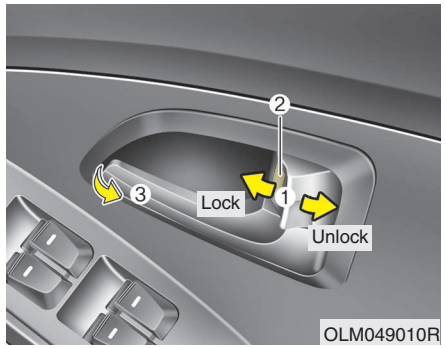
- **If you don't close the door securely, the door may open again.**
- **Be careful that someone's body and hands are not trapped when closing the door.**




- To lock a door without the key, push the inside door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position and close the door (2).
- If you lock the door with the central door lock switch, all vehicle doors will lock automatically.
- Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 16

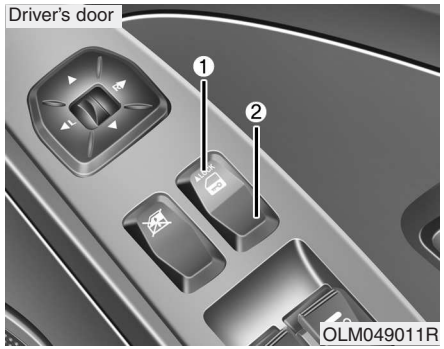





## Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

***With the door lock button***

- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Unlock” position. The red mark (2) on the button will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark (2) on the door lock button will not be visible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (3) outward.
- If the inner door handle of all doors are pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button will unlock and the door will open. (if equipped)
- Front doors cannot be locked if the ignition key is in the ignition switch and any front door is opened.
- Doors cannot be locked if the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is opened.




***With central door lock switch***

Operate by depressing the central door lock switch.

- When pushing down on the front portion (1) of the switch, all vehicle doors will lock.
- When pushing down on the rear portion (2) of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.
- However, if any door (and tailgate) is open, the doors will not lock even though the front portion (1) of central door lock switch is pressed.
- However, if the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is open, the doors will not lock even though the front portion (1) of central door lock switch is pressed.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 17



**⚠ WARNING - Doors**

- **The doors should always be fully closed and locked whilst the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows.**
- **Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unlocked vehicles**

**Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle whilst you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unattended children**

**An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.**

### Deadlocks (if equipped)

Some vehicles are equipped with a deadlocking system. Deadlocks prevent opening of a door from either inside or outside the vehicle once the deadlocks have been activated providing an additional measure of vehicle security.

To lock the vehicle using the deadlock function, the doors must be locked using the (Smart) key or the Remote Keyless Entry transmitter. To unlock the vehicle, the (Smart) key or the transmitter must again be used.

**⚠ WARNING**

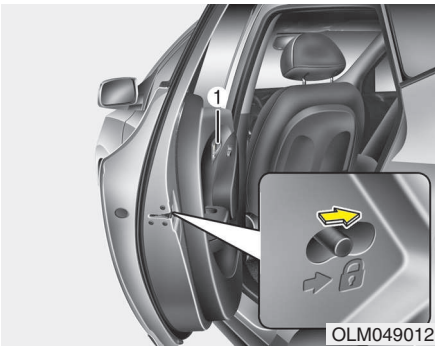
**Do not lock the doors with the (smart) key or the transmitter with anybody left in the vehicle. The passenger in the vehicle cannot unlock the doors with the door lock button. For example, if the door is locked with the transmitter, the passenger in the vehicle cannot unlock the door without the transmitter.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 18



### Speed sensing door lock system (if equipped)

All doors will be automatically locked after the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h. And all doors will be automatically unlocked when you turn the engine off or when you remove the ignition key. (if equipped)




### Child-protector rear door lock

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

1. Open the rear door.
2. Push the child safety lock located on the rear edge of the door to the “Lock” position. When the child safety lock is in the “Lock ( )” position, rear door will not open even though the inner door handle is pulled inside the vehicle.
3. Close the rear door.

To open the rear door, pull the outside door handle.

Even though the doors may be unlocked, the rear door will not open by pulling the inner door handle (1) until rear door child safety lock is unlocked.

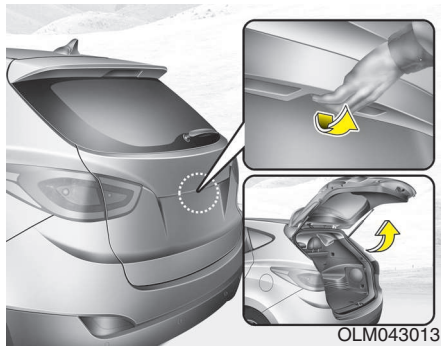
**⚠ WARNING - Rear door locks**

**If children accidentally open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out and be severely injured or killed. To prevent children from opening the rear doors from the inside, the rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 19



## TAILGATE


OLM043013

### Opening the tailgate

- The tailgate is locked or unlocked when all doors are locked or unlocked with the key, transmitter (or smart key) or central door lock switch.
- If unlocked, the tailgate can be opened by pressing the handle and pulling it up.
- When all doors are lock if the tailgate unlock button on the smart key is pressed for more than 1 second, the tailgate is unlocked. Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate is locked automatically.

### ✻ NOTICE

**In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the tailgate lift cylinders and attaching hardware if the tailgate is not closed prior to driving.***


OLM043014

### Closing the tailgate

To close the tailgate, lower and push down the tailgate firmly. Make sure that the tailgate is securely latched.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the tailgate.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Make sure nothing is near the tailgate latch and striker whilst closing the tailgate. It may damage the tailgate's latch.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 20



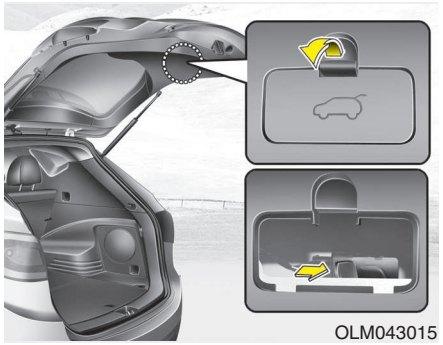
**⚠ WARNING - Exhaust fumes**

**If you drive with the tailgate open, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.**

**If you must drive with the tailgate open, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING - Rear cargo area**

**Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.**


OLM043015

### Emergency tailgate safety release

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the luggage compartment, the tailgate can be opened by pushing the release lever and pushing open the tailgate.

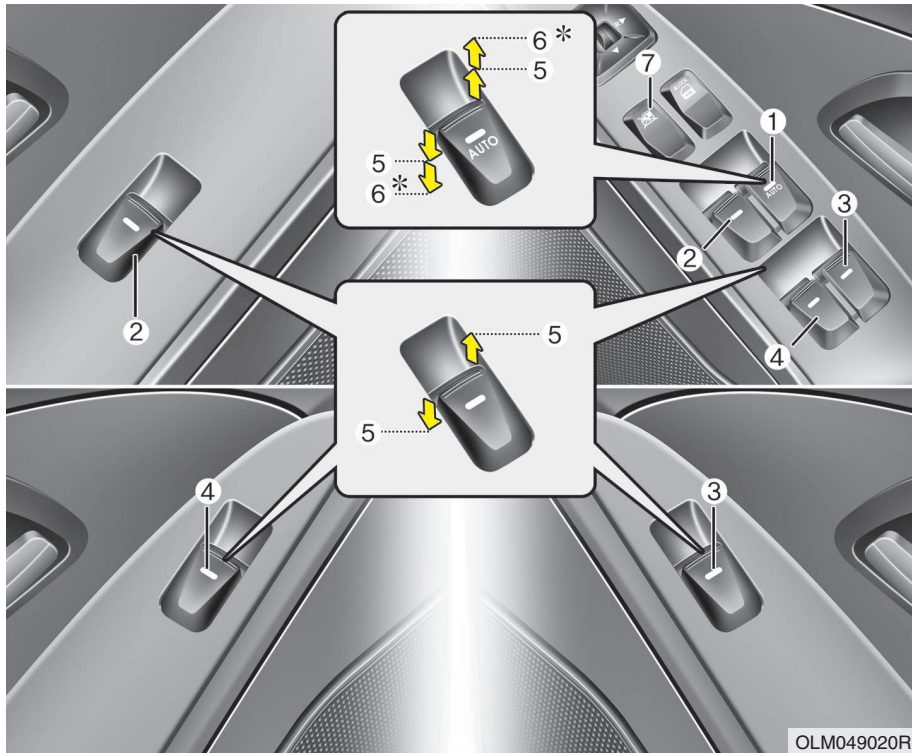
**⚠ WARNING**

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 21



## WINDOWS




(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (right) power window switch
(4) Rear door (left) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window up*/down*
(7) Power window lock switch

*: if equipped

### ✻ NOTICE

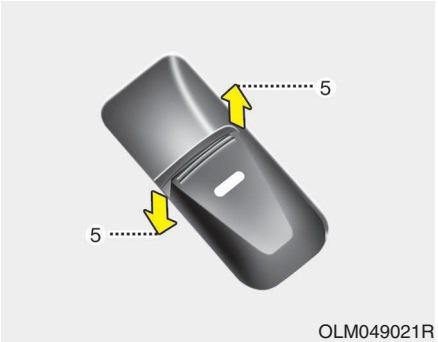
**In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

## Power windows

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate. Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver has a power window lock switch which can block the operation of rear (or front) passenger windows.
The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 seconds period. The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Whilst driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open position), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.**




OLM049021R

***Window opening and closing***

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).




OLM049022R

***Auto down window (if equipped) (Driver's window)***

Pressing the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers the driver's window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up the switch momentarily to the opposite direction of the window movement.

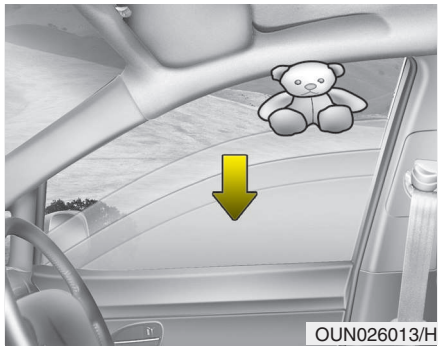



***Auto up/down window (if equipped) (Driver's window)***

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Close the driver's window and continue pulling up the driver's power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.




**Automatic reversal (if equipped)**

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 12 in. (30 cm) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 1 in. (2.5 cm). And if the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The automatic reverse feature for the driver's window is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 0.16 in. (4 mm) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.**




***Power window lock button***

The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers' doors by pressing the power window lock switch to the lock position (pressed).

When the power window lock switch is pressed :

- The driver's master control can operate the front passenger's power window but cannot operate the rear passengers' power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passengers' control cannot operate the rear passengers' power window.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.***
- ***Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposing directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.***

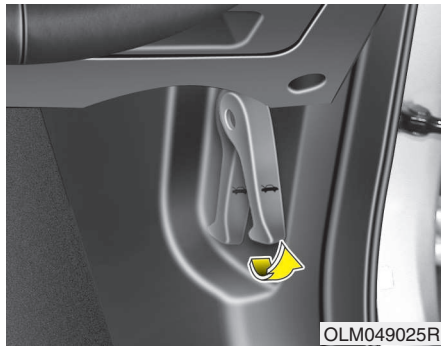
### ⚠ WARNING - Windows

- **NEVER leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.**
- **NEVER leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.**
- **Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.**
- **Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock switch in the LOCK position (depressed). Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.**
- **Do not extend face or arms outside the window whilst driving.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 25



## BONNET

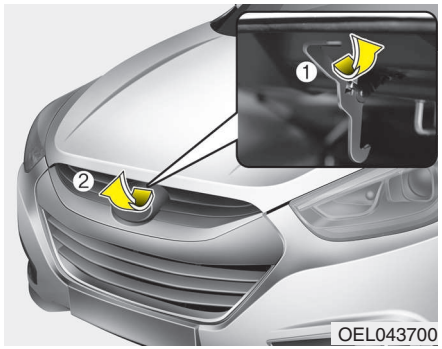

OLM049025R

### Opening the bonnet

1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet should pop open slightly.

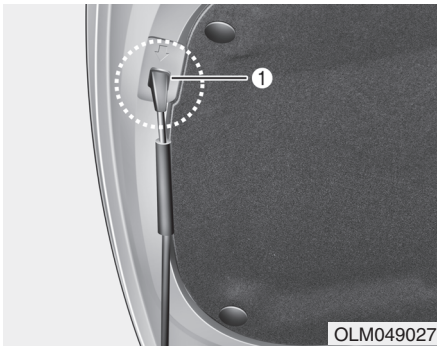
**⚠ WARNING**

**Open the bonnet after turning off the engine on a flat surface, shifting the shift lever to the P(Park) position for automatic transaxle and to the 1st(First) gear or R(Reverse) for manual transaxle, and setting the parking brake.**



OEL043700

2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, pull the secondary latch (1) inside of the bonnet centre and lift the bonnet (2).



OLM049027

3. Pull out the support rod.
4. Hold the bonnet opened with the support rod.

**⚠ WARNING - Hot parts**

**Grasp the support rod in the area wrapped in rubber. The plastic will help prevent you from being burned by hot metal when the engine is hot.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:39 PM Page 26



### Closing the bonnet

1. Before closing the bonnet, check the following:
   - All filler caps in engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Return the support rod to its clip to prevent it from rattling.
3. Lower the bonnet until it is about 12 in. (30 cm) above the closed position and let it drop. Make sure that it locks into place.

**⚠ WARNING - Bonnet**

- **Before closing the bonnet, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the bonnet opening. Closing the bonnet with an obstruction present in the bonnet opening may result in property damage or severe personal injury.**
- **Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.**

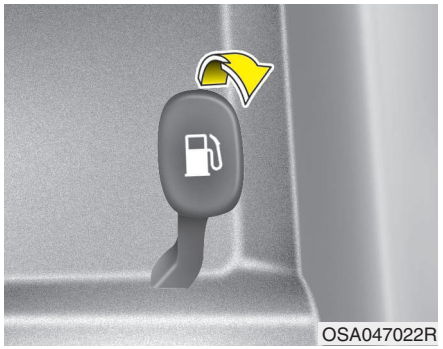
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the bonnet could fly open whilst the vehicle is being driven, causing a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **The support rod must be inserted completely into the hole whenever you inspect the engine compartment. This will prevent the bonnet from falling and possibly injuring you.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet raised. The view will be blocked and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 27



## FUEL FILLER LID

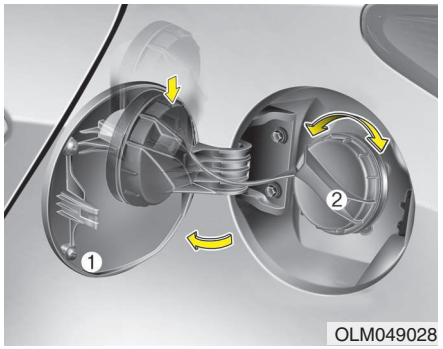

OSA047022R

### Opening the fuel filler lid

The fuel-filler lid must be opened from inside the vehicle by pulling up the fuel-filler lid opener.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the fuel-filler lid does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.**



OLM049028

1. Stop the engine.
2. To open the fuel filler lid, pull the fuel filler lid opener up.
3. Pull the fuel filler lid (1) out to fully open.
4. To remove the cap (2), turn the fuel tank cap counterclockwise.
5. Refuel as needed.

### Closing the fuel filler lid

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks”. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. Close the fuel filler lid and push it lightly and make sure that it is securely closed.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 28



**⚠ WARNING - Refuelling**

- **If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.**
- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

**⚠ WARNING - Refuelling dangers**

**Automotive fuels are flammable materials. When refuelling, please note the following guidelines carefully. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death by fire or explosion.**

- **Read and follow all warning posted at the gas station facility.**
- **Before refuelling note the location of the Emergency Petrol Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station facility.**
- **Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refuelling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapours resulting in rapid burning. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other petrol source.**
- **When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refuelling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 29



**(Continued)**

**Use only portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store petrol.**

- **Do not use mobile phones whilst refuelling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from mobile phones can potentially ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.**
- **When refuelling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.**
- **DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle whilst at a gas station especially during refuelling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If a fire breaks out during refuelling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in section 1.***
- ***If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from a HYUNDAI authorised repairer. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.***
- ***Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.***
- ***After refuelling, make sure the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 30



## PANORAMA SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)



OLM049030

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

The sunroof can only be opened, closed, or tilted when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### Sunroof open warning (if equipped)

■ Type A



■ Type B



WEL-400/OLM043420

If the driver removes the ignition key(Smart key : turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for approximately 7 seconds and

- Type A : Sunroof Open Warning Light illuminate or blink for approximately 7 seconds.
- Type B : Sunroof open image will appear on the LCD display.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **After a vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.***
- ***Make sure the sunroof is closed fully when leaving your vehicle attended. If the sunroof is open, rain or snow may leak through the sunroof and wet the interior as well as cause theft.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 31

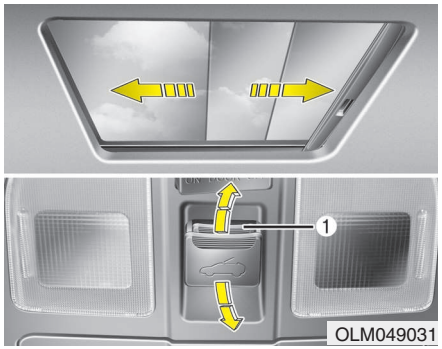


### ✻ NOTICE

**The sunroof cannot tilt when it is in the slide position but can be slid whilst in a tilt position.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the sunroof or roller blind whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **If you would like to carry items on the roof rack using a cross bar, do not operate the sunroof.**
- **When carrying cargo on the roof rack, do not load heavy items above the sunroof or glass roof.**
- **Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.**




## Sliding the sunroof

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind.

To open the sunroof, pull the sunroof control lever backward.

To close the sunroof, push or pull the sunroof control lever with the safety switch (1) forward or downward.

**To open the sunroof automatically:**

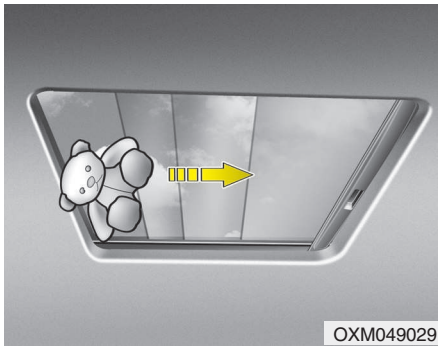
Pull the sunroof control lever backward to the second detent position and then release it. The sunroof will slide all the way open.

To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

**To close the sunroof automatically:**

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the second detent position and then release it. The sunroof will automatically close all the way.

To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.


OXM049029

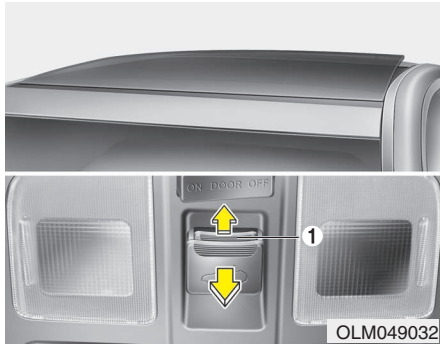
***Automatic reversal***

If an object or part of the body is detected whilst the sunroof is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never try pinching any part of your body intentionally to activate the Automatic reversal function.**
- **The Automatic reversal function may not work if something gets caught just before the sunroof fully closes.**



OLM049032

## Tilting the sunroof

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind.

To open the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever upward.

To close the sunroof, pull the sunroof lever with the safety switch (1) downward until the sunroof moves to the desired position.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 33



**⚠ WARNING - Sunroof**

- **Be careful that no head, hands and body parts are obstructed by a closing sunroof.**
- **Do not extend the face, neck, arms or body outside the sunroof whilst driving.**
- **Make sure your hands and head are safely out of the way before closing a sunroof.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.***
- ***If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.***
- ***Do not leave the roller blind closed whilst the sunroof is opened.***




### Roller blind

The roller blinds are installed inside of the sunroof and glass roof.

Open or close it manually when you need to.

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind.

**✻ NOTICE**

**It is normal for wrinkles to form on the blind because of its material characteristic.**

### Resetting the sunroof

Whenever the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, you must reset your sunroof system as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Open the roller blind.
3. Close the sunroof.
4. Release the sunroof control lever.
5. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close (about 10 seconds) until the sunroof is moved a little. Then, release the lever.
6. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close until the sunroof operates as follows;

   TILT OPEN → SLIDE OPEN → SLIDE CLOSE

   Then, release the lever.

When this is complete, the sunroof system has been reset.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 34



## STEERING WHEEL

### Electric power steering (if equipped)

Power steering uses the motor to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

The motor driven power steering is controlled by the power steering control unit which senses the steering wheel torque and vehicle speed to command the motor.

The steering wheel becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for better control of the steering wheel.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steering during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:**

- **The EPS warning light does not illuminate.**
- **The steering effort is high immediately after turning the ignition switch on. This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics is completed, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the ignition switch is turned to the ON or LOCK position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **The steering effort increases if the steering wheel is rotated continuously when the vehicle is not in motion. However, after a few minutes, it will return to its normal conditions.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the Electric Power Steering System does not operate normally, the warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel may become difficult to control or operate abnormally. We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, abnormal noise could occur. If temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 35



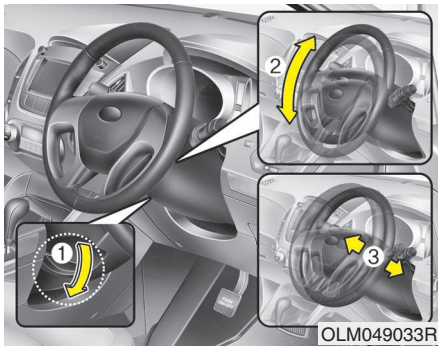
### Tilt steering

A tilt steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle (if equipped).

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, whilst permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

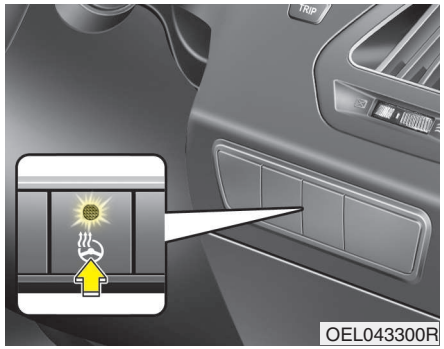
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never adjust the angle and height of steering wheel whilst driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.**
- **After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.**



OLM049033R

To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock release lever (1), adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3, if equipped), then pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.


OEL043300R

### Heated steering wheel (if equipped)

When the ignition switch is in the ON position, pressing the heated steering wheel button warms the steering wheel. The indicator on the button will illuminate.

To turn the steering wheel off, press the button once again. The indicator on the button will turn off.

It will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.

If you turn on the ignition again after turn off your engine in half an hour (after operating heater button), the heating system will be maintained in its 'on' condition.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 36



### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not install any grip to operate the steering wheel. This causes damage to the heated steering wheel system.***
- ***When cleaning the heated steering wheel, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the steering wheel.***
- ***If the surface of steering wheel is damaged by sharp object, damage to the heated steering wheel components could occur.***



OLM049034

## Horn

To sound the horn, press the horn symbol on your steering wheel.
Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

### ✻ NOTICE

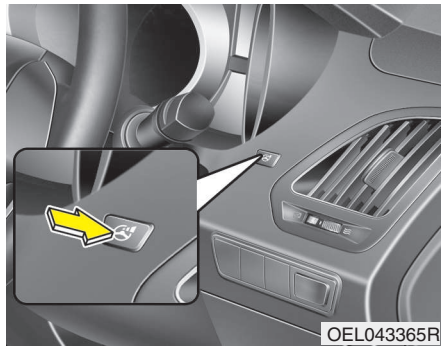
**To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 37




OEL043365R

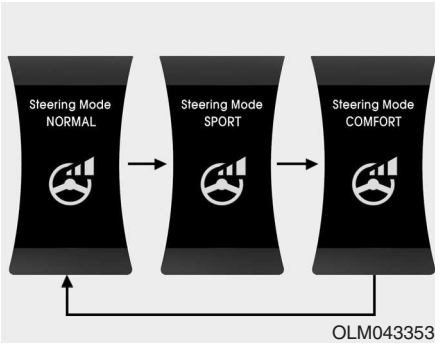
## Flex steering wheel (if equipped)

The flex steering wheel controls steering effort as driver's preference or road condition.

You can select the desired steering mode by pressing the steering mode button.

When the steering mode button is pressed, the selected steering mode will appear on the LCD display.

If the steering mode button is pressed within 4 seconds, the steering mode will change as above pictures.



OLM043353

If the steering wheel mode button is not pressed for about 4 seconds, the LCD display will change to the previous screen.



OLM043354

***Normal mode***

The normal mode offers medium steering effort.




OLM043355

***omfort mode***

The steering wheel becomes lighter. The comfort mode is usually used when driving in downtown or parking the vehicle.

Also, the comfort mode helps weak people to drive easily.




OLM043356

***Sport mode***

The steering wheel becomes heavier. The sport mode is usually used when driving in highway.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***For your safety, if you press the steering mode button whilst operating the steering wheel, the LCD display will change, but the steering effort will not change immediately. After operating the steering wheel, the steering effort will change automatically to the selected mode.***
- ***Be careful when changing the steering mode whilst driving.***
- ***When the electronic power steering is not working properly, the flex steering wheel will not work.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 39



## MIRRORS

### Inside rearview mirror

Adjust the rearview mirror to centre on the view through the rear window. Make this adjustment before you start driving.

**⚠ WARNING - Rear visibility**

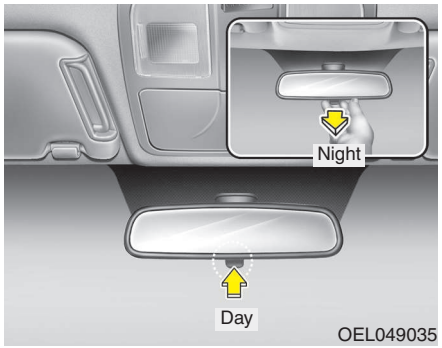
**Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision out the rear window.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the rearview mirror whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not modify the inside mirror and do not install a wide mirror. It could result in injury, during an accident or deployment of the air bag.**




***Day/night rearview mirror***

Make this adjustment before you start driving and whilst the day/night lever is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever toward you to reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind you during night driving.

*Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.*

***Electric chromic mirror (ECM) (if equipped)***

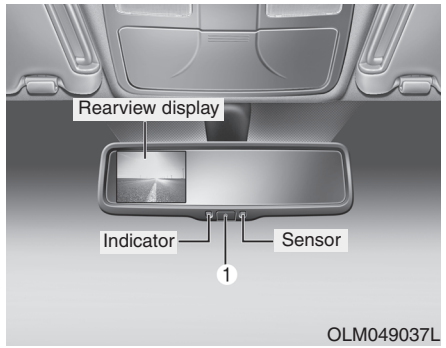
The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the car behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

Whenever the shift lever is shifted into reverse (R), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the drivers view behind the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

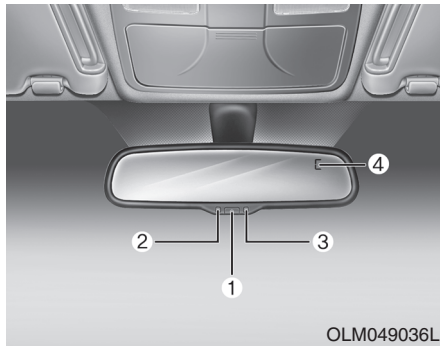
***When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.***



OLM049037L

**To operate the electric rearview mirror**

- Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function on. The mirror indicator light will illuminate.
  Press the ON/OFF button to turn the automatic dimming function off. The mirror indicator light will turn off.
- The mirror defaults to the ON position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.



OLM049036L

***Electric chromic mirror (ECM) with compass***

1. Feature Control Button
2. Status Indicator LED
3. Rear Light Sensor
4. Display Window

Automatic dimming rear view mirror controls automatically the glare of headlights of the vehicle behind you when it turned on by pressing and holding the button for more than 3 but less than 6 seconds. It is turned off by pressing and holding the button for same time once more.

**1. To operate Compass feature**

Press and release the button, then the vehicle's directional heading will be displayed. Pressing and releasing the button again will turn off the display.

Heading display
- E : East
- W : West
- S : South
- N : North

ex) NE : North East

**2. Calibration procedure**

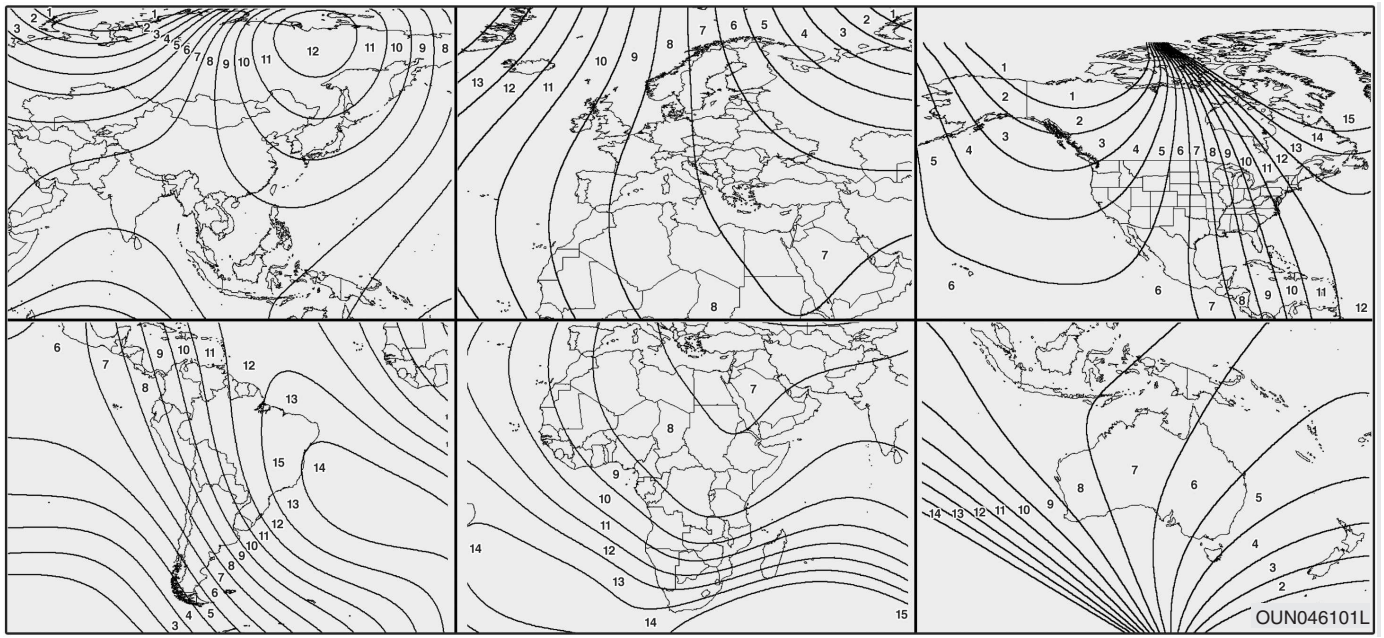
Press and hold the button for more than 9 but less than 12 seconds. When the compass memory is cleared a "C" will appear in the display.

- Driving the vehicle in a circle at less than 5 mph (8km/h) 2 times or until the compass heading appears.
- Driving in a circle in right-handed direction and opposite direction are possible, and if the calibration is completed, the compass heading will appear.
- Keep driving in a circle until a compass heading appears.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 41



**Campasss Zone**



EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:40 PM Page 42



**3. Setting the compass zone**

1. Find your current location and variance zone number on the zone map.
2. Press and hold the button for more than 6 but less than 9 seconds. The current zone number will appear in the display.
3. Press the button until the new zone number appears in the display. After you stop pressing the button in, the display will show a compass direction within a few seconds.

**4. Changing Mirror Angle setting (if equipped):**

Due to mirror positions being angled towards the driver, the compass mirror can also compensate for drivers seated on the Left Hand side of the vehicle (steering wheel on the LH side of the vehicle) or Right Hand side of the vehicle (steering wheel on the RH side of the vehicle).

To adjust the Left Hand, “L” or Right Hand, “R”, setting:

1. Press and hold the button for more than 12 seconds.
2. Release then press the button to toggle between “L” and “R”.

### ✻ NOTICE

**This procedure also causes the compass to be de-calibrated.**

3. To re-calibrate the compass, drive the vehicle in 2 complete circles at less than 5mph (8km/h).

### ⚠ CAUTION

***1. Do not install the ski rack, antenna, etc. which are attached to the vehicle by means of a magnet. They affect the operation of the compass.***

***2. If the compass deviates from the correct indication soon after repeated adjustment, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI delaer.***

***3. The compass may not indicate the correct compass point in tunnels or whilst driving up or down a steep hill.***
***(The compass returns to the correct compass point when the vehicle moves to an area where the geomagnetism is stabilized.)***

***4. When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.***

### Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing in a narrow street.

**⚠ WARNING - Rearview mirrors**

- **The right outside rearview mirror is convex. In some countries, the left outside rearview mirror is also convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.**
- **Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.**




*Remote control*

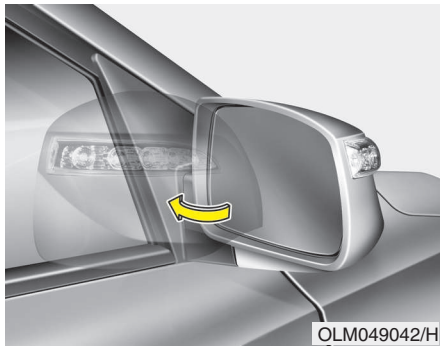
**Electric type (if equipped)**

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror, move the lever (1) to R (Right) or L (Left) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

After adjustment, put the lever into neutral position to prevent the inadvertent adjustment.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is depressed. Do not depress the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.***
- ***Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.***




*Folding the outside rearview mirror*

**Manual type**

To fold outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 45






**Electric type (if equipped)**

To fold the outside rearview mirror, depress the button.

To unfold it, depress the button again.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the ignition switch is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***In case it is an electric type outside rearview mirror, don't fold it by hand. It could cause motor failure.***

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ **Type A**




■ **Type B**



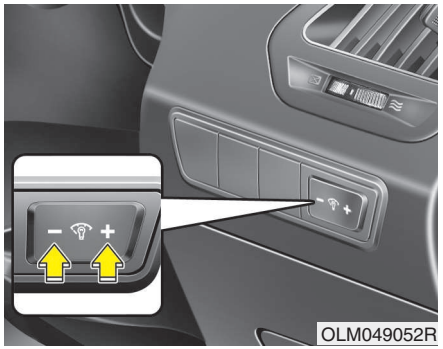

1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights (if equipped)
6. Odometer/Trip computer (if equipped)
7. LCD display

* The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
  For more details refer to the "Gauges" in the next pages.

OEL043308R/OEL043307R

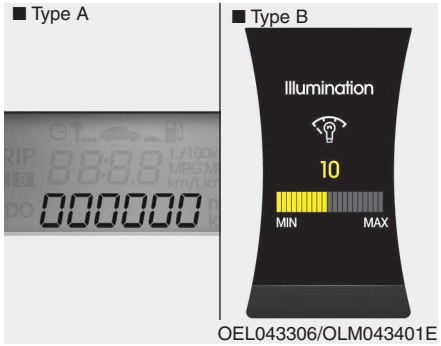
EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 47






### Instrument panel illumination (if equipped)

When the vehicle's parking lights or headlights are on, press the illumination control button to adjust the instrument panel illumination intensity.




- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, an alarm will sound.




### LCD Display Control (if equipped)

The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons on the crash pad.

(1) : MODE button for changing modes

(2) ▼ : SELECT/RESET button

✻ For the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 48



■ Type A (km/h)




■ Type B (km/h)




■ Type A (MPH)




■ Type B (MPH)




OEL049307/OEL049038/OEL049309/OEL049310

## Gauges

### *Speedometer*

The speedometer indicates the forward speed of the vehicle.

The speedometer is calibrated in miles per hour and/or kilometers per hour.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 49



■ Type A

Petrol




Diesel




OEL049305

■ Type B

Petrol




Diesel




OEL049306

### *Tachometer*

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

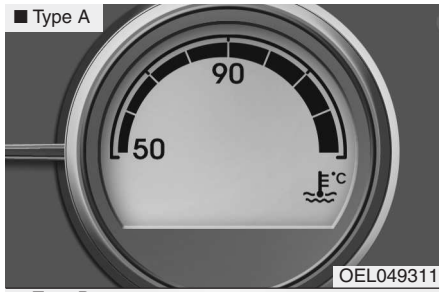
Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

The tachometer pointer may move slightly when the ignition switch is in ACC or ON position with the engine OFF. This movement is normal and will not affect the accuracy of the tachometer once the engine is running.

**⚠ CAUTION**

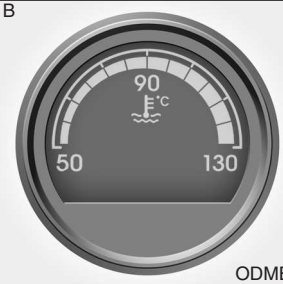
***Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.***

■ Type A




OEL049311

■ Type B




ODMEMM2352

### *Engine temperature gauge*

This gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch is ON.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “If the engine overheats” in section 6.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the "🌡" position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.**

■ Type A




OEL049312

■ Type B




ODMEMM2351

***Fuel gauge***

The fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. The fuel tank capacity is given in section 8. The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.

On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.

**⚠ WARNING - Fuel gauge**

**Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.**

**You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the O (Empty) level.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 51

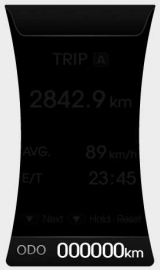


■ Type A




OEL043306

■ Type B




OLM043060

### *Odometer*

The odometer Indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

- Odometer range : 0 ~ 999999 kilometers or miles.




OEL049127L

### *Outside Temperature Gauge*

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

- Temperature range : -40°C ~ 60°C (-40°F ~ 140°F)

The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being inattentive.

The temperature unit (from °C to °F or from °F to °C) can be changed by using the “User Settings” mode of the LCD display.

❈ For more details, refer to “LCD Display” in this chapter.




OEL042127L

### *Icy Road Warning Light (if equipped)*

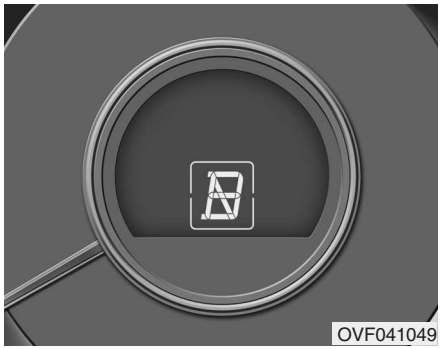
This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the following conditions occur, the warning light (including Outside Temperature Gauge) blinks 10 times and then illuminates, and also warning chime sounds 3 times.

- The temperature on the Outside Temperature Gauge is below approximately 4°C (39.2°F)
- The ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the icy road warning light appears whilst driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.**




## Transaxle Shift Indicator

***Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped)***

This indicator displays which automatic transaxle shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Sports Mode : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6




***Automatic Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped, For Europe)***

In the Sports Mode, this indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up : ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
- Shifting down : ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5

For example
▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).
▼3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.




***Manual Transaxle Shift Indicator (if equipped)***

This indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up : ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
- Shifting down : ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5

For example
▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).
▼3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 54



## LCD DISPLAY

### LCD Modes (if equipped)

| Modes | Symbol<br>Type B | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Trip Computer |  | This mode displays driving information like the tripmeter, fuel economy, and so on. For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter. |
| Information |  | This mode informs of service interval (mileage or days) and warning messages related to TPMS or washer fluid. |
| User Settings |  | On this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps, and so on. |

❈ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 55






OLM043404E

## Information Mode

### *Service Interval*

**Service in**

It calculates and displays when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days).

If the remaining mileage or time reaches 1,500 km (900 mi.) or 30 days, "Service in" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.




OLM043405E

**Service required**

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the already inputted service interval, “Service required” message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position. (The mileage and time changes to "---")

To reset the service interval to the mileage and days you inputted before:

- Activate the reset mode by pressing the [ ▼ ] button for more than 5 seconds, then press the [ ▼ ] button again for more than 1 second. (Europe)
- Press the [ ▼ ] button for more than 1 second (Except Europe).

### ✻ NOTICE

**If any of the following conditions occurs, the mileage and days may be incorrect.**

- **The battery cable is disconnected.**
- **The fuse switch is turned off.**
- **The battery is discharged.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 56






OLM043406E

## User Settings Mode

### *Description*

On this mode, you can change setting of the doors, lamps, and so on.

### *Door*

**Auto Door Lock (if equipped)**

- Off:
  The auto door lock operation will be deactivated.
- Speed:
  All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h (9.3mph).
- Shift Lever:
  All doors will be automatically locked if the automatic transaxle shift lever is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position.

**Auto Door Unlock (if equipped)**

- Off:
  The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.
- Key Out or Power Off:
  All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from ignition switch or Engine Star/Stop Button is set to the OFF position.
- Driver Door Unlock:
  All doors will be automatically unlocked if the driver's door is unlocked.
- Shift Lever:
  All doors will be automatically unlocked if the automatic transaxle shift lever is shifted to the P (Park) position.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 57



**Horn Feedback (if equipped)**

If this item is checked, the horn feedback operation will be activated.

After locking the door by pressing the lock button on the transmitter, if you press the lock button again within 4 seconds, the warning sound will operate once to indicate that all doors are locked.

### *Lamp*

**Head Lamp Delay (if equipped)**

If this item is checked, the headlamp delay and headlamp welcome function will be activated.

### *Settings*

**Language (if equipped)**

Choose the language you prefer within the LCD display.

**SPAS Voice (if equipped)**

Adjust the volume of SPAS voice information.

**Temperature Unit**

Convert the temperature unit from °C to °F or from °F to °C.

**AVG Fuel Eco Reset**

- Auto Reset:
  The average fuel economy will reset automatically when refuelling.
- Manual Reset:
  The average fuel economy will not reset automatically whenever refuelling.

For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 58






OLM043407E

***Service Interval (Except Europe)***

On this mode, you can activate the service interval function with mileage (km or mi.) and period (months).

### ✻ NOTICE

**If it is not available to set service interval on your vehicle, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**




OLM043413E

## Warning Messages (if equipped)

***Shift to "P" position (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in P (Park) position.
- At this time, the Engine Start/Stop Button turns to the ACC position (If you press the Engine Start/Stop Button once more, it will turn to the ON position).




OLM043410E

***Low Key Battery (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the battery of the smart key is discharged when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:41 PM Page 59






OLM043500N

***Press start button while turn steering (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed.
- It means that you should press the Engine Start/Stop Button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.




OLM043502N

***Steering wheel unlocked (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.




OLM043503N

***Check steering wheel lock system (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.




OLM043415E

***Press brake pedal to start engine (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.
- It means that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.




OLM043416E

***Press clutch pedal to start engine (for smart key system and manual transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the clutch pedal.
- It means that you should depress the clutch pedal to start the engine.




OLM043408E

***Key not in vehicle (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.
- It means that you always have the smart key with you.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 61






OLM043409E

***Key not detected (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.




OLM043411E

***Press start button again (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you can not operate the Engine Start/Stop Button when there is a problem with the Engine Start/Stop Button system.
- It means that you could start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button once more.
- If the warning illuminates each time you press the Engine Start/Stop Button, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.




OLM043412E

***Press start button with smart key (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button whilst the warning message “Key not detected” is illuminating.
- At this time, the immobiliser indicator light blinks.




OLM043417E

***Check fuse "BRAKE SWITCH" (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.
- It means that you should replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.




OLM043414E

***Shift to "P" or "N" to start engine (for smart key system and automatic transaxle)***

- This warning message illuminates if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

**✻ NOTICE**

**You can start the engine with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position. But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.**



OLM043418

***Door Open***

- It means that any door is open.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 63




OLM043419

***Tailgate Open***

- It means that the tailgate is open.


OLM043420

***Sunroof Open (if equipped)***

- It means that the sunroof is open.



OLM043501N

***Low Washer Fluid (if equipped)***

- This warning message illuminates on the service reminder mode if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.
- It means that you should refill the washer fluid.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 64



## TRIP COMPUTER

■ Type A




OEL043703

■ Type B



OEL043702

### Overview

***Description***

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

### ✻ NOTICE

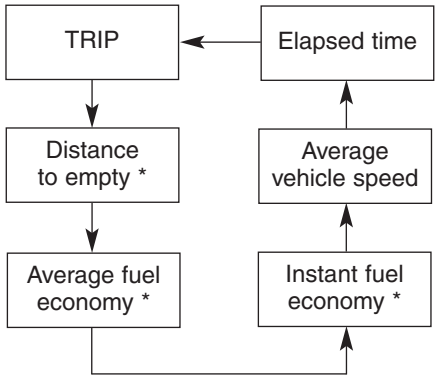
**Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Vehicle Speed) resets if the battery is disconnected.**

### Trip Modes

Trip mode is changed as below whenever pushing the button shortly.

- Type A : TRIP button
- Type B : [ ▼ ]

- **Type A (if equipped)**

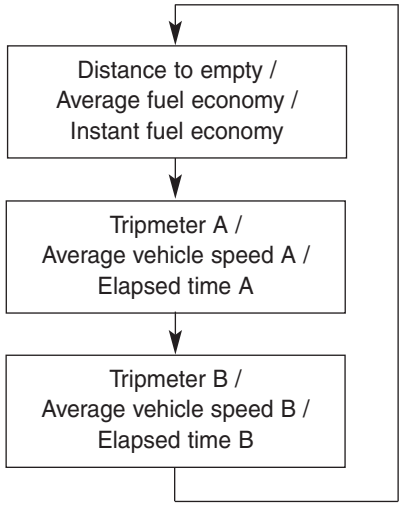



* : if equipped

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 65



- **Type B (if equipped)**




❈ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.




OLM049320/OEL049325/
OEL049326/OLM043403E

## Trip A/B

***Tripmeter (1)***

- Type A
  TRIP : Tripmeter

- Type B
  TRIP A :
  Tripmeter A→ 🗐 : Order changed
  TRIP B :
  Tripmeter B→ ▼ : Order changed

- The tripmeter is the total driving distance since the last tripmeter reset.
  - Distance range: 0.0 ~ 9999.9 km or mi.
- To reset the tripmeter, press Trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the tripmeter is displayed.

***Average Vehicle Speed (2)***

- The average vehicle speed is calculated by the total driving distance and driving time since the last average vehicle speed reset.
  - Speed range: 0 ~ 999 km/h or MPH
- To reset the average vehicle speed, press the trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 66



### ✻ NOTICE

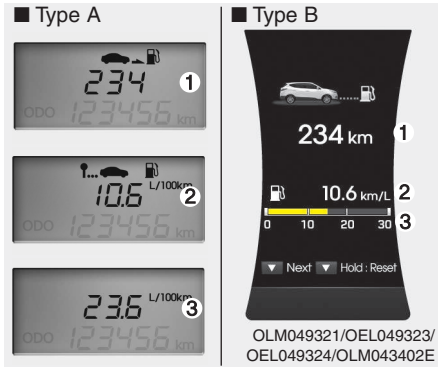
- **The average vehicle speed is not displayed if the driving distance is less than 300 meters (0.186 miles) or the driving time is less than 10 seconds since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is turned to ON.**
- **Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average vehicle speed keeps going whilst the engine is running.**

***Elapsed Time (3)***

- The elapsed time is the total driving time since the last elapsed time reset.
  - Time range (hh:mm): 00:00 ~ 99:59
- To reset the elapsed time, press the trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the elapsed time is displayed.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the elapsed time keeps going whilst the engine is running.**




OLM049321/OEL049323/
OEL049324/OLM043402E

## Fuel Economy

***Distance To Empty (1)***

- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
  - Distance range: 50 ~ 9999 km or 30 ~ 9999 mi.
- If the estimated distance is below 50 km (30 mi.), the trip computer will display "---" as distance to empty.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.**
- **The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.**
- **The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 litres (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.**
- **The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 67



***Average Fuel Economy (2)***

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
  - Fuel economy range: 0.0 ~ 99.9 L/100km or MPG
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

**Manual reset**

To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the trip button (Type A : TRIP, Type B : ▼) for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

**Automatic reset**

The average fuel economy will be cleared to zero (---) when the vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h after refuelling more than 6 litres (1.6 gallons).

### ✻ NOTICE

**The average fuel economy is not displayed for more accurate calculation if the vehicle does not drive more than 10 seconds or 50 meters (0.03 miles) since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is turned to ON.**

***Instant Fuel Economy (3)***

- This mode displays the instant fuel economy during the last few seconds when the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h (6.2 MPH).
  - Fuel economy range:

  Type A : 0 ~ 99.9 L/100 km or MPG

  Type B : 0 ~ 30 L/100 km or 0 ~ 50 MPG

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 68



## Warnings and indicators

All warning lights are checked by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). If any light does not illuminate, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

After starting the engine, check to make sure that all warning lights are off. If any are still on, this indicates a situation that needs attention. When releasing the parking brake, the brake system warning light should go off. The fuel warning light will stay on if the fuel level is low.

### *ECO Indicator Light (if equipped)*




**This indicator light illuminates:**

When you activate the active ECO system by pressing the ACTIVE ECO button.

For more details, refer to “Active ECO System” in chapter 5.

### *Air bag warning light (if equipped)*



This warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON position.

This light also comes on when the SRS is not working properly. If the AIR BAG warning light does not come on, or continuously remains on after operating for about 6 seconds when you turned the ignition switch to the ON position or started the engine, or if it comes on whilst driving, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 69



### *Anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light (if equipped)*




This light illuminates if the ignition switch is turned to ON and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the ABS warning light remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, this indicates that there may be a problem with the ABS.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer. The normal braking system will still be operational, but without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system.

### Electronic brake force distribution (EBD) system warning light




If two warning lights illuminate at the same time whilst driving, your vehicle may have a malfunction with ABS and EBD system.

In this case, your ABS and regular brake system may not work normally. We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the both ABS and Brake warning lights are on and stay on, your vehicle's brake system will not work normally. So you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking. In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.**

**We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the ABS warning light or EBD warning light is on and stays on, the speedometer or odometer/tripmeter may not work. Also, the EPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease. In this case, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 70



***Seat belt warning and chime (if equipped)***



**Seat belt warning light**

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

For details, refer to the seat belt on chapter 3.

***Turn signal indicator lights***



The blinking green arrows on the instrument panel show the direction indicated by the turn signals. If the arrow comes on but does not blink, blinks more rapidly than normal, or does not illuminate at all, a malfunction in the turn signal system is indicated. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

This indicator also blinks when the hazard warning switch is turned on.

***Low Beam Indicator Light (if equipped)***



This indicator light illuminates when the headlights are on.

***High beam indicator***



This indicator illuminates when the headlights are on and in the high beam position or when the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

***Light on indicator (if equipped)***



The indicator illuminates when the tail lights or headlights are ON.

***Front fog light indicator (if equipped)***



The indicator illuminates when the front fog lights are ON.

***Rear fog light indicator (if equipped)***



This indicator illuminates when the rear fog lights are ON.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 71



### *Engine oil pressure warning*



This warning light indicates the engine oil pressure is low.

If the warning light illuminates whilst driving:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and stop.
2. With the engine off, check the engine oil level. If the level is low, add oil as required.

If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that you call a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the engine is not stopped immediately after the engine oil pressure warning light is illuminated, severe damage could result.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the oil pressure warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, serious engine damage may result. The oil pressure warning light comes on whenever there is insufficient oil pressure. In normal operation, it should come on when the ignition switch is turned on, then go out when the engine is started. If the oil pressure warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, there is a serious malfunction.***

***If this happens, stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so, turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level and start the engine again. If the light stays on with the engine running, turn the engine off immediately. In any instance where the oil light stays on when the engine is running, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

### *Engine oil level warning light (Diesel engine, if equipped)*



The engine oil level warning light illuminates when the engine oil level should be checked.

If the warning light comes on, check the engine oil level as soon as possible and add engine oil as required.

Slowly pour the recommended oil little by little into a funnel. (Oil refill capacity : approximately 0.6 ~ 1.0 *l*)

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)

Do not overfill the engine oil to ensure the oil level is not above F mark on the dipstick.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 72



### ✻ NOTICE

- **If you travel approximately 50~100 km after the engine warms up, after adding the engine oil, the warning light will go off.**
- **Cycle the ignition from OFF to ON 3 times within 10 seconds, the warning light will go off immediately. However, when you turn off the warning light without adding the engine oil, the light will come on again after travelling approximately 50~100 km after the engine warms up.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the light comes on continuously after adding the engine oil and travelling approximately 50~100 km after the engine warms up, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

***Even if this light doesn't come on after the engine has started, the engine oil should be checked and supplied periodically.***

***Parking brake & brake fluid warning***



**Parking brake warning**

This light is illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position. The warning light should go off when the parking brake is released.

**Low brake fluid level warning**

If the warning light remains on, it may indicate that the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.

If the warning light remains on:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required. Then check all brake components for fluid leaks.
3. Do not drive the vehicle if leaks are found, the warning light remains on or the brakes do not operate properly. We recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail. With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the car. Also, the car will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working. If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so.

To check bulb operation, check whether the parking brake and brake fluid warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Driving the vehicle with a warning light on is dangerous. If the brake warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 73



### *TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) indicator (if equipped)*

**Low tyre pressure telltale**



**Low tyre pressure position telltale**



The low tyre pressure telltale comes on for 3 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.

The low tyre pressure and position telltales illuminate when one or more of your tyres is significantly underinflated.

The low tyre pressure telltale will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

For details, refer to the TPMS on chapter 6.

**⚠ WARNING - Safe stopping**

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

### *Auto stop indicator (if equipped)*



This indicator will illuminate when the engine enters the Idle Stop mode of the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system.

When the automatic starting occurrs, the auto stop indicator on the cluster will blink for 5 seconds.

For more details, refer to the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system on the front of chapter 5.

**✻ NOTICE**

**When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESP, ESP OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.**
**This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean the system is malfunctioning.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 74



***Charging system warning***



This warning light indicates a malfunction of either the generator or electrical charging system.

If the warning light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion:

1. Drive to the nearest safe location.
2. With the engine off, check the generator drive belt for looseness or breakage.
3. If the belt is adjusted properly, a problem exists somewhere in the electrical charging system. We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

***Door ajar warning light***



This warning light illuminates when a door is not closed securely with the ignition switch in any position.

***Tailgate open warning light***



This warning light illuminates when the tailgate is not closed securely with the ignition switch in any position.

***Door open position indicator (including tailgate)***



This indicator illuminates when a door or tailgate is not closed securely.
The indicator displays which door or tailgate is opened.

***Sunroof open warning light (if equipped)***



If the driver removes the ignition key (Smart key : turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for approximately 7 seconds and Sunroof Open Warning Light illuminate or blink for approximately 7 seconds.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 75



### *Immobiliser indicator (if equipped)*



**Without smart key system**

This indicator illuminates when the immobiliser key is inserted and turned to the ON position to start the engine.

At this time, you can start the engine. The indicator goes out after the engine is running.

If this indicator blinks when the ignition switch is in the ON position before starting the engine, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**With smart key system**

If any of the following occurs in a vehicle equipped with the smart key, the immobiliser indicator illuminates, blinks or goes off.

- When the battery of the smart key is weak.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button with the smart key. (For more details, refer to “Starting the Engine” in section 5).
- If the indicator illuminates only for 2 seconds and goes out when the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned to ON position with the smart key in the vehicle, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.
- When the battery is weak, if the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed, the indicator will blink and you are not able to start the engine. However, you are able to start the engine by inserting the smart key in the smart key holder. Also, if the smart key system related parts have a problem, the indicator will blink.

### *Low fuel level warning*



This warning light indicates the fuel tank is nearly empty. When it comes on, you should add fuel as soon as possible. Driving with the fuel level warning light on or with the fuel level below “E” can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 76



***Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) (check engine light)***



This indicator light is part of the Engine Control System which monitors various emission control system components. If this light illuminates whilst driving, it indicates that a potential problem has been detected somewhere in the emission control system.

This light will also illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, and will go out in a few seconds after the engine is started. If it illuminates whilst driving, or does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

Generally, your vehicle will continue to be drivable, but we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Prolonged driving with the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminated may cause damage to the emission control systems which could effect drivability and/or fuel economy.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Petrol engine**

***If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power. We recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine (if equipped with DPF)**

***When the malfunction indicator light is blinks, it may stop blinking after driving the vehicle at more than 37 mph (60km/h) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).***

***If the malfunction indicator light continues to blink in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

***If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine**

***If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light blinks, some error related to the injection quantity adjustment occurs which could result in loss of engine power, combustion noise and poor emission. We recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 77



## Indicator Lights

### *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light (if equipped)*



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

  In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**This indicator light blinks:**

Whilst the ESC is operating.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 5.

### *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light (if equipped)*




**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 5.

### *Cruise indicator (if equipped)*



**CRUISE indicator**

The indicator illuminates when the cruise control system is enabled.
The cruise indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the cruise control ON-OFF button on the steering wheel is pushed.
The indicator goes off when the cruise control ON-OFF button is pushed again.
For more information about the use of cruise control, refer to “Cruise control system” in section 5.

**Cruise SET indicator**




The indicator illuminates when the cruise control switch (-SET or RES+) is ON.
The cruise SET indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the cruise control switch (-SET or RES+) is pushed.
The cruise SET indicator does not illuminate when the cruise control switch (CANCEL) is pushed or the system is disengaged.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 78



***DBC (Downhill brake control) indicator (if equipped)***



The DBC indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds.

The DBC indicator will illuminate when the DBC button is pressed and the system is on.

When driving down a steep hill at a speed under 22 mph (35 km/h), the DBC will operate and the DBC indicator will blink to indicate the DBC is operating.

If the red indicator illuminates, the DBC system may have malfunctioned. We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

***KEY OUT indicator (if equipped)***




When the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the indicator will blink, and if all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for about 5 seconds. The indicator will go off whilst the vehicle is moving. Keep the smart key in the vehicle.

***Key reminder warning chime (if equipped)***

If the driver's door is opened whilst the ignition key is left in the ignition switch (ACC or LOCK position), the key reminder warning chime will sound. This is to prevent you from locking your keys in the vehicle. The chime sounds until the key is removed from the ignition switch or the driver's door is closed.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 79



### *Glow indicator (Diesel engine)*



The indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is placed at the ON position. The engine can be started after the preheat indicator light goes off. The illuminating time varies with the water temperature, air temperature and battery condition.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**If the engine was not started within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position during 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.**

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the preheat indicator continues to illuminate or flash on and off after the engine has warmed up or whilst driving, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

### *Fuel filter warning light (Diesel engine)*



This warning light illuminates for 3 seconds after the ignition switch is set to the ON position and then it will go out. If it lights up whilst the engine is running, it indicates that water has accumulated inside the fuel filter. If this happens, remove the water from the fuel filter. For more Information, refer to “Fuel filter” in section 7.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***When the fuel filter warning light is illuminated, engine power (vehicle speed & idle speed) may decrease. If you keep driving with the warning light on, you can damage your vehicle's engine parts and injection system of the Common Rail. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

### *4WD system warning light (if equipped)*



When the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, the 4WD indicator will illuminate and then go off in a few seconds.

If the 4WD system warning light illuminates, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the 4WD system. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 80



### *4WD LOCK indicator (if equipped)*




The 4WD LOCK indicator light is illuminated when the 4WD LOCK button is pushed. The purpose of this 4WD LOCK mode is to increase the drive power when driving on wet pavement, snow-covered roads and/or off-road.The 4WD LOCK indicator light is turned off by pushing the button again.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use 4WD LOCK mode on dry paved roads or motorway, it can cause noise, vibration or damage of 4WD related parts.***

### *Engine coolant temperature warning light (if equipped)*



The warning light illuminates if the temperature of the engine coolant is above 120±3°C (248±5.4°F).

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “Overheating” in section 6.

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the engine coolant temperature warning light illuminates, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.**

### *Electronic power steering (EPS) system warning light (if equipped)*



This indicator light comes on after the ignition key is turned to the ON position and then it will go out.

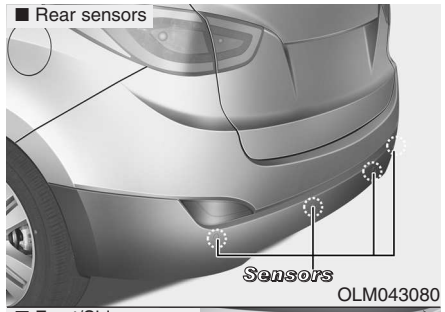
This light also comes on when the EPS has some troubles. If it comes on whilst driving, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 81



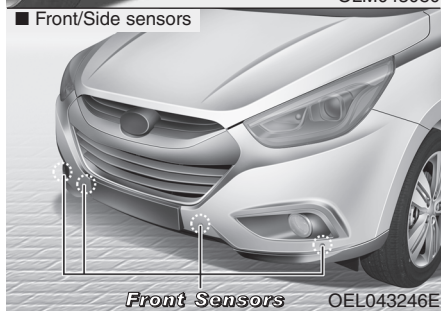
## PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Rear sensors




OLM043080

■ Front/Side sensors



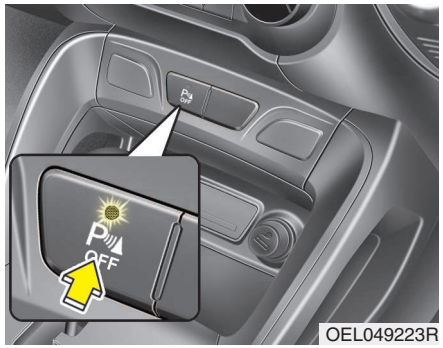

OEL043246E

This is the parking assist system to warn the driver of object which are detected by front, rear and side sensors with range of distance of sensors operation as warning sound or indicator (LCD) when the vehicle is moved back or forward.

This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.
The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited.
Whenever getting forward or backing-up, pay as much attention to what is front or behind you as you would in a vehicle without a parking assist system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The parking assist system should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view. The operational function of the parking assist system can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings and can not be operated normally, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.**




OEL049223R

### Rear parking assist system type (if equipped)

The rear sensor detects the distance between vehicle and object. The rear parking assist system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 120 cm (47 in.) behind the vehicle. This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.
The sensing range and objects detectable by the back sensors are limited. Whenever backing-up, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without a rear parking assist system.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 82



**⚠ WARNING**

**The rear parking assist system is a supplementary function only. The operation of the rear parking assist system can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area behind the vehicle before and whilst backing up.**

***Operating condition***

- This system will activate when backing up with the ignition switch ON.
  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 10 km/h (6 mph), the system may not be activated correctly.
- This system will activate when the indicator on the rear parking assist OFF button is not illuminated. If you desire to deactivate the rear parking assist system, press the rear parking assist OFF button again. (The indicator on the button will illuminate.) To turn the system on, press the button again. (The indicator on the button will go off.)
- The sensing distance whilst the rear parking assist system is in operation is approximately 120 cm (47 in.).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

***Types of warning sound***

- When an object is 120 cm to 61 cm (47.2 in. to 24 in.) from the rear bumper:
  Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23.6 in. to 12.2 in.) from the rear bumper:
  Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 30 cm (11.8 in.) of the rear bumper:
  Buzzer sounds continuously.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 83



***Non-operational conditions***

The rear parking assist system may not operate properly when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when the moisture has been cleared.)
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces. (unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, gradient)
4. Objects generating excessive noise (vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes) are within range of the sensor.
5. Heavy rain or water spray exists.
6. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are within range of the sensor.
7. The sensor is covered with snow.
8. Trailer towing.
9. The place light the fluorescent lamp.

The detecting range may decrease when:

1. The sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m (40 in.) in height and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.

***Rear parking assist system precautions***

- The rear parking assist system may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- The rear parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognize objects less than 30 cm (11.8 in.) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

3. Undetectable objects smaller than 40 in. (1 m) in height and narrower than 6 in. (14 cm) in diameter.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 84



### ✻ NOTICE

**This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors; It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.**
**Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.**
**Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.**

***Self-diagnosis***

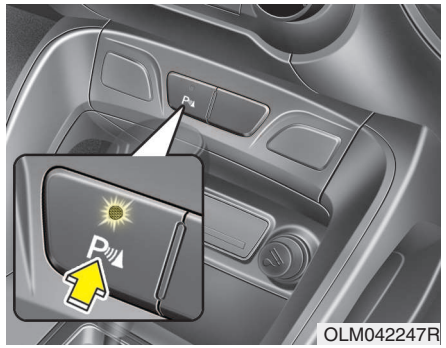
If you don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the gear to the R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction in the rear parking assist system. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants due to a rear parking assist system malfunction. Always drive safely and cautiously.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 85






## Front/Rear parking assist system type (if equipped)

The front/rear parking assist system detects the object distance by using the front/rear sensor and front side sensor.
When you select the smart parking assist system*, the front/rear parking assist system will be operated.
When it is the step controlling the steering wheel if you cancel the front/rear parking assist system, the smart parking assist system will be cancelled.

### *Operating condition*

- This parking assist system activates and the indicator on the button illuminates when the parking assist button ( ) is pressed with the ignition switch ON. And it operates in forward, reverse and neutral position of the shift lever.

  The parking assist button turns on automatically and activates the parking assist system when you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position. If you drive the vehicle above 10km/h, the warning will not activate.
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, warning indicator is displayed all.
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be warned by warning sound.
- Whilst backing up, if the front and rear sensor recognizes an object at the same distance, the rear will be warned first.
- The warnings by side sensors are operated when the shift lever is in R (Reverse) position.

### *Types of warning sound*

**When driving forward**

- When an object is 100 cm to 61 cm (39 in. to 24 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23 in. to 12 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 30 cm (15 in.) of the bumper:
  Buzzer sounds continuously.

**When driving rearward or the shift lever is in N position**

- When an object is 120 cm to 61 cm (47.2 in. to 24 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 60 cm to 31 cm (23 in. to 12 in.) from the bumper:
  Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 30 cm (11 in.) of the bumper:
  Buzzer sounds continuously.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 86



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors;***

  ***It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.***

  ***Always visually check front or behind the vehicle when getting forward or backing up.***
- ***Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.**

***Self-diagnosis***

When the front/rear parking assist system has a malfunction, if you operate the system, the warning sound sounds 3 times. In this time, the indicator on switch will blink and the warning on the cluster will blink. However, the warning regarding object will not sound.

In this time, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

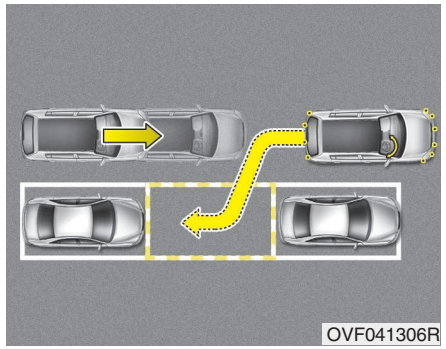
**⚠ WARNING**

**Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to a parking assist system. Always drive safely and cautiously.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 87



## SMART PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)


OVF041306R

The smart parking assist system allows you to park the vehicle to search a space by sensors. This system is a supplemental system that shows message and gives auditory warning by controlling the steering wheel.

The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Whenever moving pay as much attention to what is in front and behind of you as you would in a vehicle without a parking assist system.

The rear parallel parking is only possible in this smart parking assist system.

Use this smart parking assist system in parking lot or parking space.

If there are no vehicles in front of space that you want to park the vehicle, the smart parking assist system is not supported. Also the diagonal line parking is not supported.

After parking the vehicle, the parking situation may be not desired parking position by arrangement situation between vehicle and vehicle or between wall and vehicle.

By necessity, turn off the smart parking assist system and park the vehicle by manual parking.

If you select this system, the warning sound always let you know whether there are the objects or not by distance with operating the front/rear parking assist system.

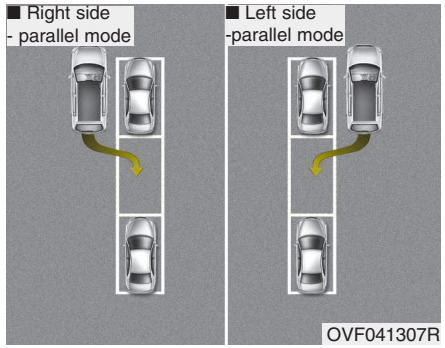
Whilst operating this system, if you turn off the front/rear parking assist system after searching parking space, the smart parking assist system is also turned off.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The smart parking assist system can not be operated normally by surround situations and other conditions. The driver always needs to confirm the objects.**
  **This system is for parking assist, do not depend on this system only. By surrounding conditions, park the vehicle carefully and safely like applying the brake pedal.**
- **If the vehicle is necessary to control wheel alignment, this system is not operated normally. We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **If you change the genuine tyres to other tyres type and size, the parking ability may change. When you change the tyres, use the same tyres and size.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 88






### Operating condition

Use the smart parking assist system as follows when all conditions are satisfied. This system helps you park the vehicle to centre or rear of parked vehicle through steering wheel control with each information.

- When the parking space is straight line
- When the parallel parking required
- When the parked vehiclces are located
- When there is enough space moving the vehicle with the smart parking assist system

### Non-operational conditions

Never use the smart parking assist system as follows because of the system ability decrease, off or danger of crash.

- When the parking space is curved
- Inclined road
- When loading long or wide cargo compared to vehicle
- Diagonal line parking
- If there is trash, grass or barriers in parking space
- When snowing or raining heavily
- Pole is close to parking line
- Being equipped with snow chain or spare tyre
- Low or High tyre pressure
- Being connected to trailer
- Surface of road is slippery or not clear
- If there is bumpy road
- If there is truck or bus in parking space
- The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked
- Moisture is frozen to the sensor.
- If there is motorcycle or bicycle in parking space
- If there is the waste bin or barrier
- Heavy wind
- If the tyre is changed to unauthorised tyre
- If there is a problem with wheel alignment
- The parking place next to flower bed or bush

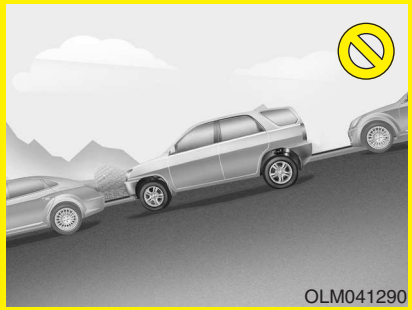
EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:42 PM Page 89



**⚠ WARNING**

**In following conditions, when smart parking assist system is operated, the unexpected result may occur and it could result in serious injury. Do not use the smart parking assist system.**

**1. Slope road parking**




**When the smart parking assist system is operated in slope road, driver needs to apply to accelerator and brake pedal by himself. If driver is unfamiliar with controlling the pedal, the crash accident may occur.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**2. Parking in snowed space**




**Following amount of snow cover, the sensing ability could be low.**

**When the vehicle is slipped during parking by smart parking assist System, system can be canceled, If driver is unfamiliar with controlling the accelerator and brake pedal, the crash accident may occur.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**3. Narrow parking space**

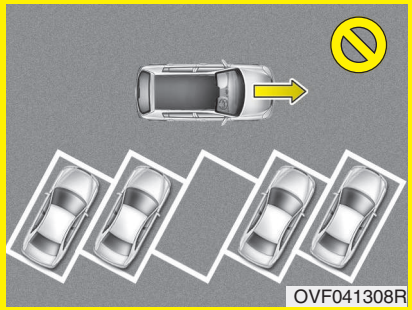



**When the space for parking is not enough, space searching may not operate in narrow road. Even if space searching is sensed, be careful.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**4. Diagonal line parking**



OVF041308R

**The smart parking assist system is a supplemental system for parallel parking. Diagonal line parking is not applied. Even if vehicle could enter the space, do not operate the smart parking assist system. Because the smart parking assist system tries parallel parking.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**5. Parking in uneven road**



OLM041291

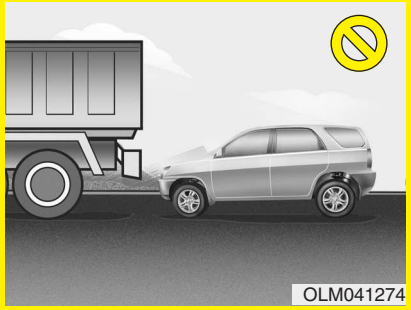
**When vehicle is parked in uneven road, driver needs to properly control the pedal (clutch, accelerator or brake) by himself. If not, unexpected result may occur.**

**The system may cancel when the vehicle slips. If driver is unfamiliar with controlling the pedal, the crash accident may occur.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**6. Parking behind a truck**



OLM041274

**When vehicle is parked behind a vehicle of which storage compartment is high like truck, the fender-bender may occur.**

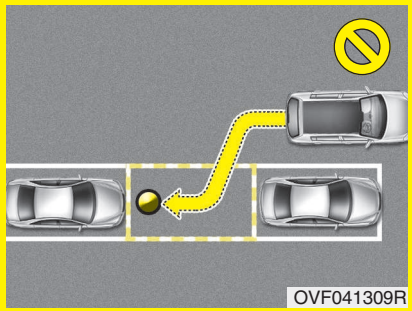
**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:43 PM Page 91



**(Continued)**

**7. If there is an object in parking space**



OVF041309R

**Even if there are barriers, the smart parking assist system may detect the parking space. In this case, if you try to park the vehicle, the accident may occur. Do not use the smart parking assist system.**

**In any cases, do not depend on the smart parking assist system. Take the necessary action regarding safety with confirming all situations.**

### Operation way

Before operating the smart parking assist system, confirm the condition that is possible to use. For safety, always operate it by applying the brake pedal under any condition, for example before each step, whilst pressing the ON/OFF button of this system or shifting the lever, etc.

When vehicle is parked by using the smart parking assist system, general steps are followings

1. The smart parking assist system select
2. Parking mode select
3. Parking space search : Direct way driving
4. Search complete : Automatic search by sensor

   However, before parking, real parking environment confirmations are needed for driver.
5. Steering wheel support (Rear Parking type)
   (1) Operate shift lever by display in cluster
   (2) Always drive slowly with applying to brake
6. Smart parking assist system complete
7. If required, move vehicle to manual operation

According to parking space, select mode, and surrounding environment, the sequence of display or situation could be changed. Refer to next operation way.



OEL043248R

### 1. Smart parking assist system select

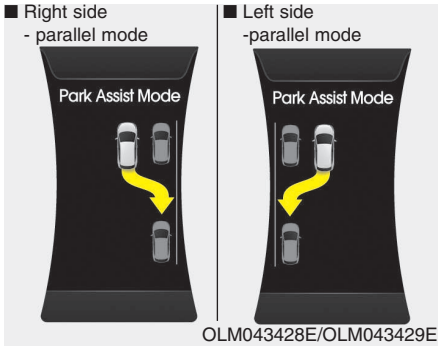
Select the smart parking assist system by pushing the button. Instruction display of instrument cluster is displayed and the indicator on button of this system and front/rear parking assist system button are illuminated.

During operating system, warning sound is operated when objects are detected.

To turn off this system, push the button ( ) of system choice over 2 seconds.

After engine is off, if engine is turned on, this system is on position of turning off.

If needed, push this button.



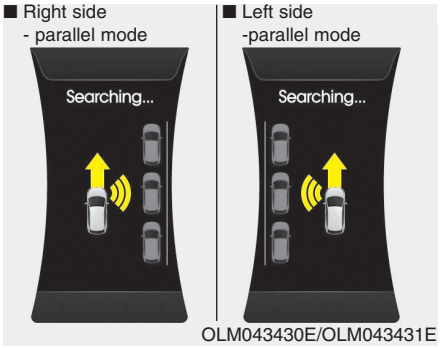
OLM043428E/OLM043429E

### 2. Parking mode select

With applying the brake shift the transaxle to N or D and select the desired parking mode by pushing the button ( ).

When system is selected, it is automatically selected right side - parallel mode.

If you push the switch continuously, the left side-parallel mode is selected. If you push again, you can get out the smart parking assist system mode.



OLM043430E/OLM043431E

### 3. Parking space search

As pictures, keep distance between parked vehicles in 0.5-1.5m constantly.

Drive slowly to desired parking space.

The parking space is searched from side sensor automatically. If the speed is over 30km/h, notice the warning message to driver. If the speed is over 40kn/h, the system turns off.

When there are a lot of vehicles near vehicle, turn on the hazard warning flasher to let other vehicles not be close.

If parking space is narrow, drive slowly to desired parking space.

However, this step searches for a parking space if your vehicle has enough space to move except for parking space. If satisfied, this system searches for parking space.

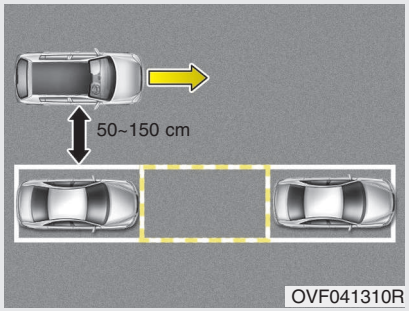
EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:43 PM Page 93



### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Whilst driving the vehicle with searching for the parking space, it is impossible to search for the parking space if any of following occurs:***
  - ***(1) If there is no parked vehicle***
  - ***(2) If there is empty space after your vehicle passed***
  - ***(3) If there is empty space in front of your vehicle before passing***
- ***As followings, the smart parking assist system may normally not operate.***
  - ***(1) When the sensors are frozen***
  - ***(2) When the sensors are dirty***
  - ***(3) Heavy snowing or raining***
  - ***(4) By the pillar or objects***
- ***Use the smart parking assist system after confirming the safety securely even if the parking searching is completed.***

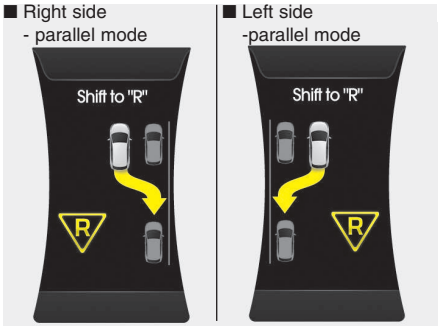
### ⚠ CAUTION - *When the parking space is searched*




OVF041310R

***For parallel parking, when the parking space is searched, keep the 50-150cm distance with parked vehicle and drive slowly.***

***If the vehicle closes to the parked vehicle under 50cm or over 150cm, the parking space is not exactly detected.***




OLM043432E/OLM043433E

### 4. Searching completion

Whilst driving slowly, when the parking space searching is completed, the parking space searching completion is indicated in the cluster with buzzer beeps sound. After stop, shift the transaxle to R.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Drive slowly with applying to brake.***
- ***If not enough parking space is detected, the system may be cancelled in support step of steering wheel control.***

  ***Such as not enough parking space, do not park the vehicle.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:43 PM Page 94






OLM043426E

### 5. Steering wheel control support (Rear Parking type)

When the transaxle is shifted to R, the steering wheel is automatically controlled with the notice in cluster.

In this time, if you put your hands to space of steering wheel, it may result in damage to your hands. So do not left your hands to space of steering wheel.

**If you crab the steering wheel firmly not to support parking, the system turns off.**

However, the driver needs to confirm the surround situation before releasing the brake pedal. Drive slowly always.

**When the brake pedal is released, if the vehicle does not move backward, depress the accelerator pedal carefully after checking the surround objects.**

**However, do not pass 7km/h. If necessary, depress the brake pedal and stop. If the speed of vehicle is over 7km/h, the system turns off.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***If you go forward or backward without notice like warning message, the parking state may be not good.***

  ***However, if the 3rd warning sound (continuous sound) occurs, drive the vehicle reverse direction slowly after confirming surrounding objects.***
- ***When parking the vehicle, carefully go forward or backward with depressing the brake pedal after completing steering wheel control support.***
- ***If the speed of vehicle is high, the crash accident may occur.***
- ***Whilst parking the vehicle, if the 3rd warning sound (continuous sound) occurs, it means the vehicle is close to objects. Check the surround objects by yourself.***

### System cancellation whilst parking

Push the smart parking assist system or turn the steering wheel left side or right side.




OLM043434E/OLM043435E




OLM043422E

### 5-1. Gear shifting whilst controlling the steering wheel

By parking circumstance, if the buzzer beep sounds with warning messages, shift the transaxle to desired gear on cluster, park the vehicle with using brake.

Be sure to check the front and rear view before releasing the brake pedal. Stop the vehicle when the speed of your vehicle is high and stop immediately by depressing the brake pedal if necessary.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Whilst parking the vehicle, unexpected vehicles or pedestrians may be close to vehicle, be careful for the accident.**



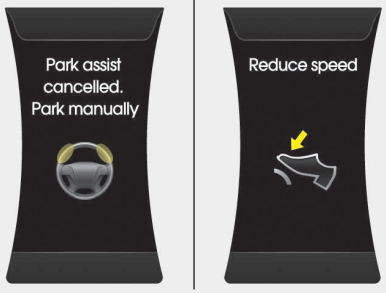

OLM043427E

### 6. Smart parking assist system completion

Even if the vehicle is parked by smart parking assist system, the driver needs to control the brake pedal by himself.

According to message on cluster, finish the parking the vehicle. By surrounding circumstance, finish the parking the vehicle with using the steering wheel.

After finishing the smart parking assist system, check the front and rear distance from front and rear vehicle and control your vehicle.




OLM043425E/OLM043423E

### Additional introductions

When the smart parking assist system operated, the message may indicate on cluster regardless information sequence. Other messages may indicate on cluster by circumstance.

When the system operated, control the vehicle with the notice. Regarding safety action, the driver needs to be careful.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Park the vehicle by yourself as following because the system will be cancelled;***

***1. Whilst searching for the parking space***
- ***When the ABS/ESP is operated***
- ***When the vehicle speed is over 40km/h***
- ***When you click the smart parking assist system button***
  ***(The front and rear parking assist system is normally operated)***
- ***When you shift the transaxle to R***

***2. Whilst controlling the steering wheel***
- ***When the ABS/ESP is operated***
- ***When the vehicle speed is over 7km/h***
- ***When you click the smart parking assist system button***
  ***(The front and rear parking assist system is normally operated.)***
- ***When you shift the transaxle to D before entering the parking space***
- ***When you grab the steering strongly***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:43 PM Page 97





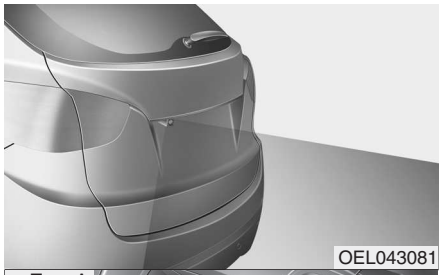

OLM043424E

### System malfunction warning

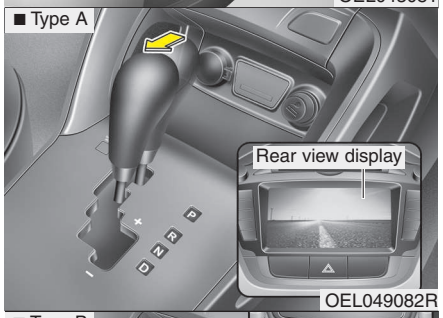
When problems occur in the smart parking assist system, if you turn on the system, the warning message occurs and the indicator on button. The buzzer beep sounds 3 times.

In this time, do not use the smart parking assist system. We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

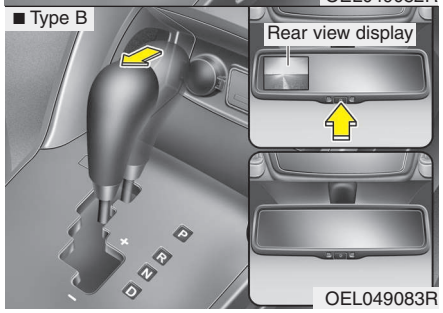
## REARVIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)




■ Type A




■ Type B




The rearview camera will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.
This system is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the rearview display mirror whilst backing-up.

Type B
The rearview camera may be turned off by pressing the ON/OFF button when the rearview camera is activated.
To turn the camera on again, press the ON/OFF button again when the ignition switch is on and the shift lever in R (Reverse). Also, the camera will turn on automatically whenever the ignition switch is turned off and on again.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **This system is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirror and the area behind the vehicle before and whilst backing up because there is a dead zone that can't see through the camera.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera may not operate normally.**

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHER




The hazard warning flasher should be used whenever you find it necessary to stop the car in a hazardous location. When you must make such an emergency stop, always pull off the road as far as possible.

The hazard warning lights are turned on by pushing in the hazard switch. This causes all turn signal lights to blink. The hazard warning lights will operate even though the key is not in the ignition switch.

To turn the hazard warning lights off, push the switch a second time.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:44 PM Page 99



## LIGHTING

### Battery saver function

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lights when the driver removes the ignition key and opens the driver- side door.
- With this feature, the parking lights will be turned off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

  If necessary, to keep the lights on when the ignition key is removed, perform the following :

  1) Open the driver-side door.
  2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

### Headlight escort function (if equipped)

IThe headlights (and/or taillights) remain on for approximately 5 minutes after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter (or smart key) twice or turning off the light switch from the headlight or Auto light position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate and the headlight escort function does not turn off automatically. Therefore, it causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamp before getting out of the vehicle.***

### Headlight welcome function (if equipped)

When the headlight switch is in the ON or AUTO position and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, if you press the door unlock button on the transmitter (or smart key), the headlights will come on for about 15 seconds.

If the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the function can only operate at night.

At this time, if you press the door unlock button again or door lock button on the transmitter (or smart key), the headlights will turn off immediately.




OBK049045N

## Lighting control

The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

(1) OFF position
(2) Parking light position
(3) Headlight position
(4) Auto light position (if equipped)



OBK049046N

***Parking light position ( )***

When the light switch is in the parking light position, the tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.



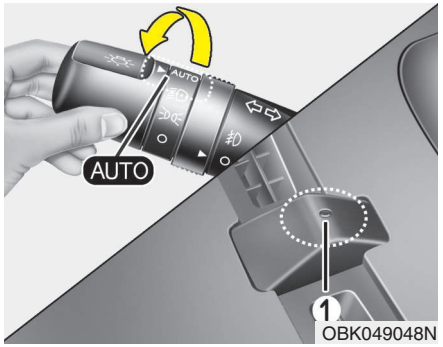
OBK049047N

***Headlight position ( )***

When the light switch is in the headlight position the head, tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.**



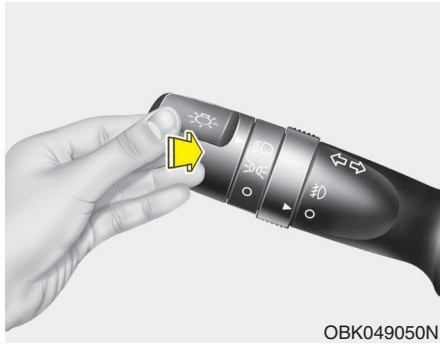
OBK049048N

*Auto light position (if equipped)*

When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never place anything over the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel, this will ensure better auto-light system control.***
- ***Don't clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.***
- ***If your vehicle has window tint or other types of coating on the front windscreen, the Auto light system may not work properly.***


OBK049050N

## High - beam operation

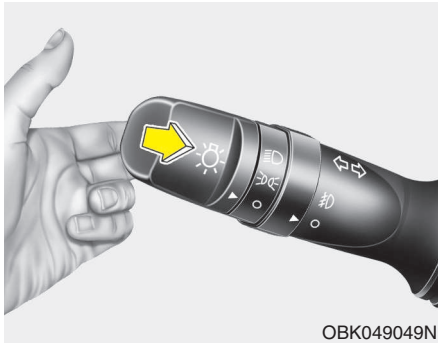
To turn on the high beam headlights, push the lever away from you. Pull it back for low beams.

The high-beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time whilst the engine is not running.

### ⚠ WARNING

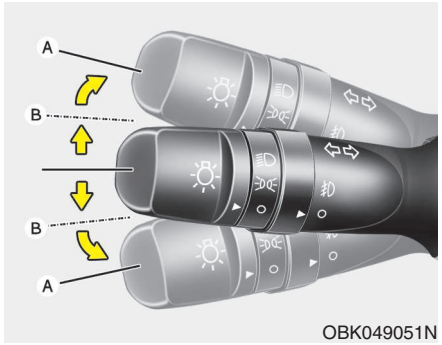
**Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.**



OBK049049N

***Flashing headlights***

To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low-beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.




OBK049051N

## Turn signals and lane change signals

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). Green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating.

They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

***One-touch lane change function (if equipped)***

To activate an one-touch lane change function, move the turn signal lever slightly and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3 times.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.**




OBK049052N

### Front fog light (if equipped)

Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc. The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned on after the parklight is turned on.

To turn off the fog lights, turn the fog light switch (1) to the OFF position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.***

■ Type A




OAM049046L

■ Type B




OED040806

### Rear fog light (if equipped)

To turn the rear fog lights on, turn the headlight switch to the headlight on position and turn the rear fog light switch (1) to the on position.

The rear fog lights turn on when the rear fog light switch is turned on after the front fog light switch (if equipped) is turned on and the headlight switch is in the park-light position.

To turn the rear fog lights off, turn the rear fog light switch to the on position again or turn the headlight switch off or front fog light switch off.

**✻ NOTICE**

**To turn on the rear fog light switch, the ignition switch must be in the ON position.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:44 PM Page 104

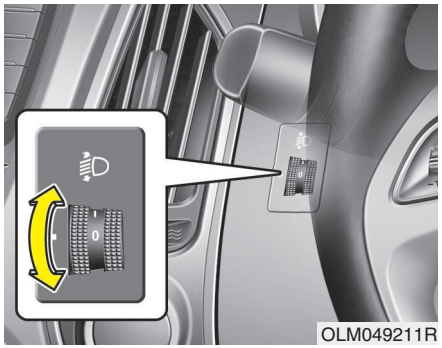


### Daytime running light (if equipped)

Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will make the headlights turn OFF when:

1. The parklight switch is ON.
2. Engine stops.




### Headlight levelling device (if equipped)

To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of the passengers and the loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam levelling switch.

The higher the number of the switch position, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper levelling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are the examples of proper switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

| Loading condition | Switch position |
|---|---|
| Driver only | 0 |
| Driver + Front passenger | 0 |
| Full passengers (including driver) | 1 |
| Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading | 2 |
| Driver + Maximum permissible loading | 3 |

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:44 PM Page 105



***Automatic type***

It automatically adjusts the headlight beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage area.

And it offers proper headlight beam under various conditions.

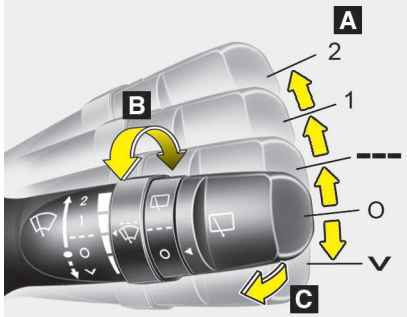
**⚠ WARNING**

**If it does not work properly even though your car is inclined backward according to passenger's posture, or the headlight beam is irradiated to the high or low position, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

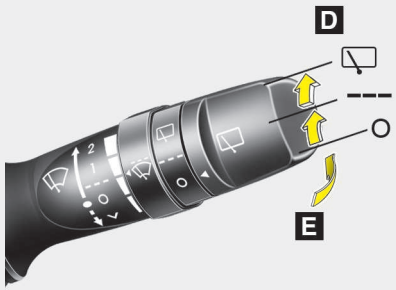
**Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.**

## WIPERS AND WASHERS

### Windscreen wiper/washer




### Rear window wiper/washer




OXM049230L/OAM049048L

**A : Wiper speed control (front)**
- · ⩛ – Single wipe
- · O – Off
- · --- – Intermittent wipe
  AUTO* – Auto control wipe
- · 1 – Low wiper speed
- · 2 – High wiper speed

**B : Intermittent control wipe time adjustment**

**C : Wash with brief wipes (front)**

**D : Rear wiper/washer control**
- · ⧉ – Continuous wipe
- · --- – Intermittent wipe (if equipped)
- · O – Off

**E : Wash with brief wipes* (rear)**

* : if equipped

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:44 PM Page 107



### Windscreen wipers

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

∨ : For a single wiping cycle, move the lever to this position and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

O : Wiper is not in operation

--- : Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

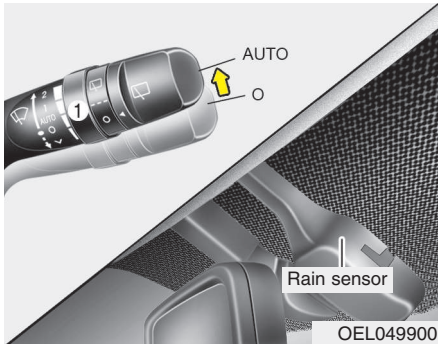
1 : Normal wiper speed

2 : Fast wiper speed

### ✻ NOTICE

**If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers to ensure proper operation.**

**If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.**




***Auto control (if equipped)***

The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (1).

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the ignition switch is ON, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to OFF position when the wiper is not in use.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***When the ignition switch is ON and the windscreen wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode, use caution in the following situations to avoid any injury to the hands or other parts of the body:***

- ***Do not touch the upper end of the windscreen glass facing the rain sensor.***
- ***Do not wipe the upper end of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.***
- ***Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.***

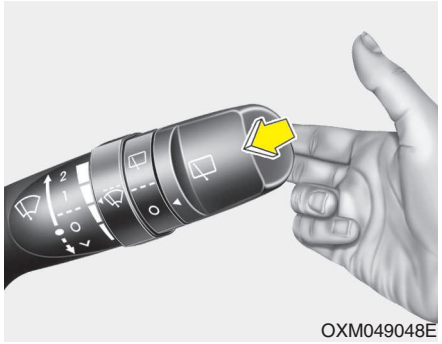
**⚠ CAUTION**

***When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF position to stop the auto wiper operation.***

***The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode whilst washing the vehicle.***

***Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the driver side windscreen glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.***

***When starting the vehicle in winter, set the wiper switch in the OFF position. Otherwise, wipers may operate and ice may damage the windscreen wiper blades. Always remove all snow and ice and defrost the windscreen properly prior to operating the windscreen wipers.***



OXM049048E

## Windscreen washers

In the OFF position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windscreen is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windscreen washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the driver side.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windscreen with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windscreen and obscure your vision.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windscreen, do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***

***(Continued)***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:44 PM Page 109



***(Continued)***

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter***

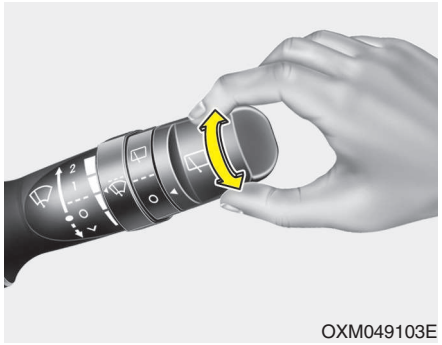
***Headlight washer (if equipped)***

If your vehicle is equipped with the headlight washer it will operate at the same time when you operate the windscreen washer. It will operate when the headlight low beam is turned on and the ignition switch or engine start/stop button is in the ON position.

The washer fluid will be sprayed on to the headlights.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **Check the headlight washers periodically to confirm that the washer fluid is being sprayed properly onto the headlight lenses.**
- **The headlight washer can be operated 15 minutes after being operated last time.**



OXM049103E

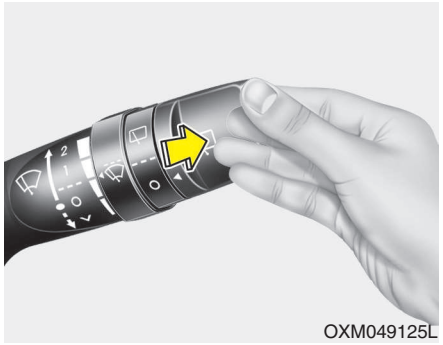
### Rear window wiper and washer switch

The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever. Turn the switch to the desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.

- - Normal wiper operation

--- - Intermittent wiper operation (if equipped)

O - Wiper is not in operation



OXM049125L

Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1~3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever. (if equipped)

## INTERIOR LIGHT

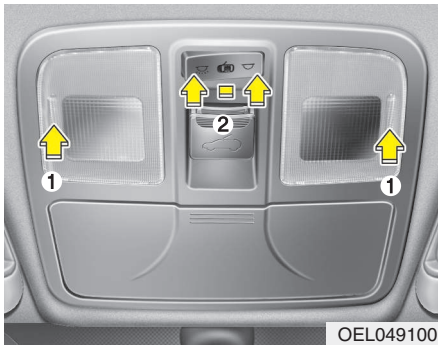
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.***

***It may cause battery discharge.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.**




### Map lamp (if equipped)

Push the lens (1) to turn the map lamp on or off.

- : The light (with room lamp) stays on at all times.
- : The light (with room lamp) comes on when any door (except tailgate) is opened regardless of the ignition switch position. When doors (except tailgate) are unlocked by the transmitter (or smart key), the light (with room lamp) comes on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door (except tailgate) is not opened.

  Also, the light (with room lamp) goes out gradually after approximately 30 seconds if the door (except tailgate) is closed. However, if the ignition switch is ON or all doors (except tailgate) are locked, the light will turn off immediately.

  If a door (except tailgate) is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC or LOCK position, the light (with room lamp) stays on for about 20 minutes. However, if a door (except tailgate) is opened with the ignition switch in the ON position, the light (with room lamp) stays on continuously.
- : The lights turn off even if a door is opened.

  ✻ When the lamp is turned ON by pressing the lens (1), the lamp does not turn off even if the switch (2) is in the OFF position.




### Room lamp

Press the button to turn the light on or off.

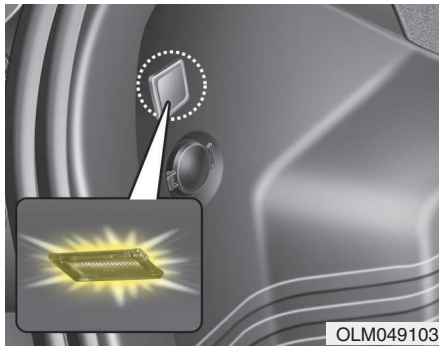



### Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

- : The lamp will turn on if this button is pressed.
- : The lamp will turn off if this button is pressed.

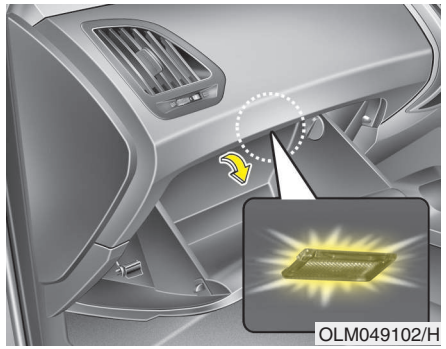
**⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)**

- ***Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.***
- ***Turn off the lamp before return the sunvisor to its original position.***




### Luggage room lamp (if equipped)

The luggage room lamp comes on when the boot lid is opened.




**Glove box lamp (if equipped)**

The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

The parking lights or headlights must be ON for the glove box lamp to function.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:45 PM Page 113



## DEFROSTER

### ⚠ CAUTION

***To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.***

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you want to defrost and defog on the front windscreen, refer to "Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging" in this section.**

■ Type A



OLM049110

■ Type B



OLM049109

### Rear window defroster

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, whilst engine is running.

To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the centre facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.

If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

***Outside mirror defroster (if equipped)***

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.




***Wiper deicer (if equipped)***

**Without smart key**

The engine must be running to enable this feature. To activate the front wiper deicer, press the front wiper deicer button. The indicator on the button illuminates when the deicer is ON.

The front wiper deicer automatically turns off after 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the deicer, press the front wiper deicer button again.

**With smart key**

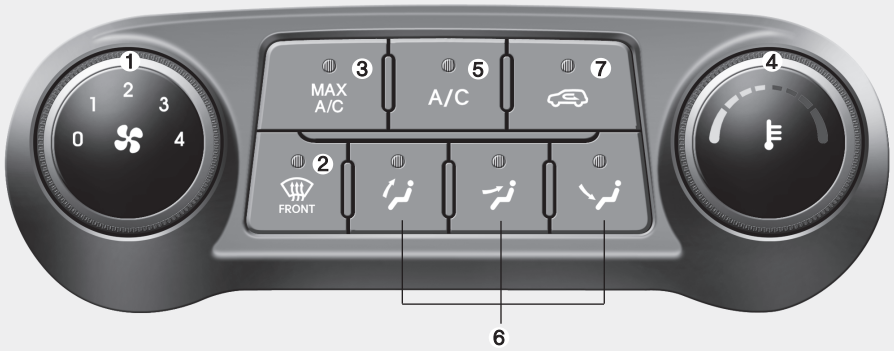
If your vehicle is equipped with the wiper deicer, it will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:45 PM Page 115

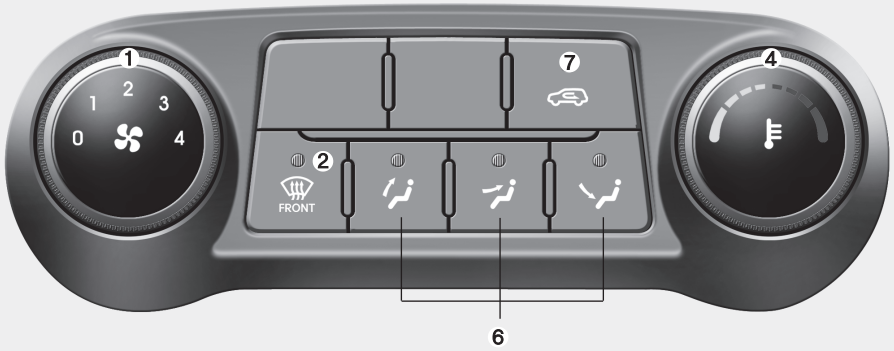


## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ **Type A**




■ **Type B**




1. Fan speed control knob
2. MAX defroster button (Front windscreen defroster)
3. MAX A/C selection button (if equipped)
4. Temperature control knob
5. Air conditioning button (if equipped)
6. Mode selection button
7. Air intake control button

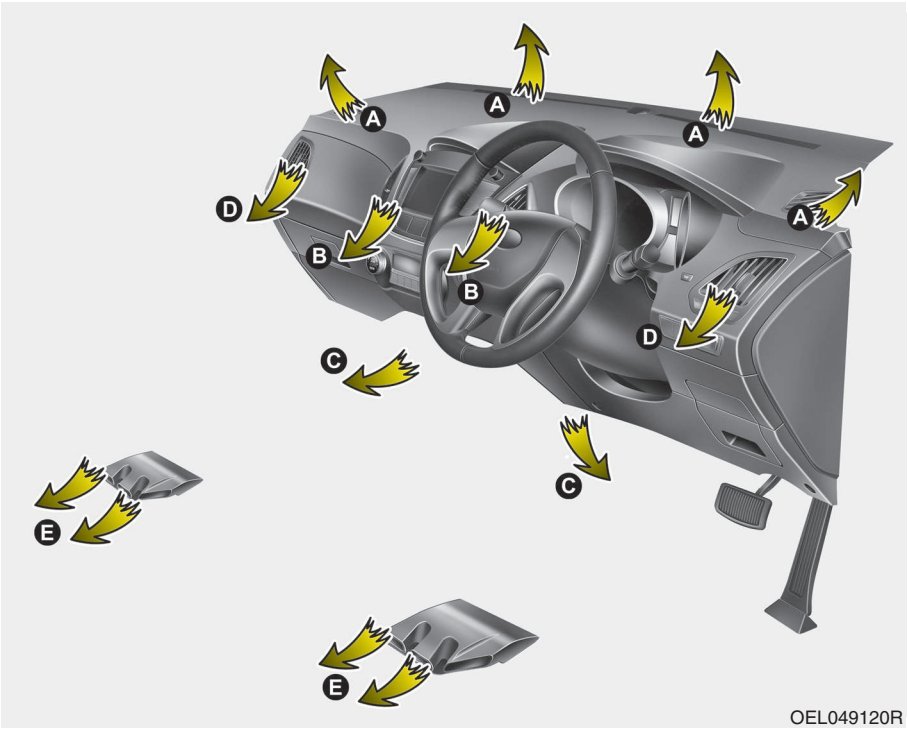
OEL049111/OEL049111U

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:45 PM Page 116



### Heating and air conditioning

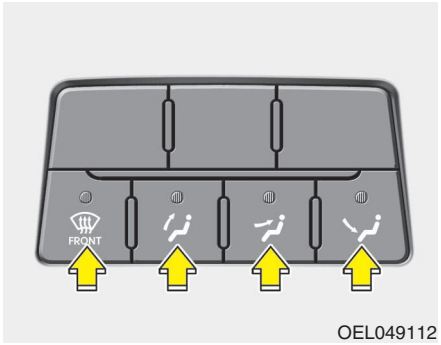
1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.



OEL049120R

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:45 PM Page 117






OEL049112

***Mode selection***

The mode selection buttons controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

If you push the button once, the corresponding switch will turn on, and if you push the button again, the switch will turn off.

**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defroster.

**Face-Level (B, D)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Floor-Level (C, E, A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen.

Also you may select 2~3 modes at the same time for desired air flow.

- face ( ) + floor ( ) mode
- face ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- face ( ) + floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode



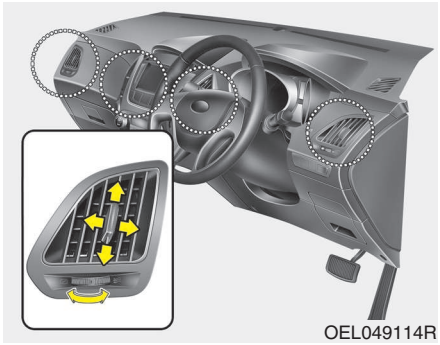

OEL049113

**MAX A/C-Level (B, D) (if equipped)**

The MAX A/C mode is used to cool the inside of the vehicle faster.

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.

In this mode, the air conditioning and the recirculated air position will be selected automatically.



OEL049114R

**Instrument panel vents**

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel.

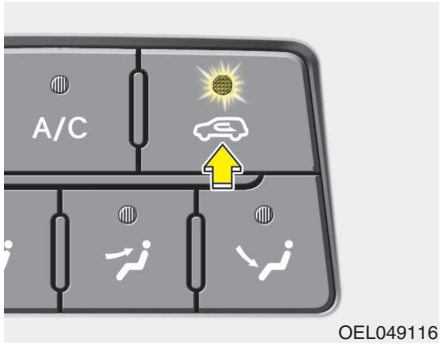
Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.



OEL049115

***Temperature control***

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the air temperature in the passenger compartment, turn the knob to the right position for warm and hot air or left position for cooler air.




OEL049116

***Air intake control***

The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

**Recirculated air position**



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

**Outside (fresh) air position**



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.**
**In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.**




OEL049117

***Fan speed control***

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.
The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the fan speed, turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.
Setting the fan speed control knob to the “0” position turns off the fan.




OYFA043118A

***To turn off the blowers***

To turn off the blowers, turn the fan speed control knob to the "0" position.




OEL049118

***Air conditioning (if equipped)***

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

## System operation

***Ventilation***

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

***Heating***

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:45 PM Page 121



**Operation Tips**

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windscreen. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windscreen, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

***Air conditioning (if equipped)***

HYUNDAI Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly R-134a refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

- When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the extreme left position (press the MAX A/C position selection button (if equipped)) then set the fan speed control to the highest speed.

**✻ NOTICE**

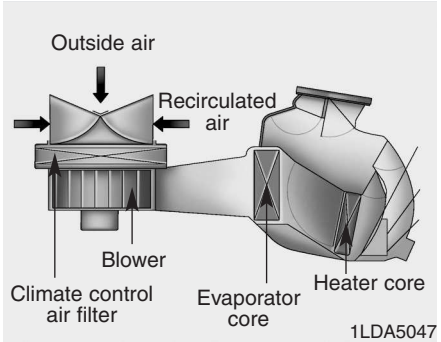
- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:45 PM Page 122



**Air conditioning system operation tips**

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.




## Climate control air filter (if equipped)

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windscreen even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:45 PM Page 123



### ✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  **If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.**
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

### Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**It is important when servicing the air conditioning system that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used. Otherwise, damage to the compressor and abnormal system operation may occur.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Improper service may cause serious injury to the person performing the service. For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




1. AUTO (automatic control) button
2. Driver's temperature control button
3. A/C display
4. Passenger's temperature control button
5. Dual temperature control selection button
6. OFF button
7. Front windscreen defroster button
8. Air conditioning button*
9. Fan speed control button
10. Air intake control button
11. Mode selection button

OEL049121R

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:46 PM Page 125



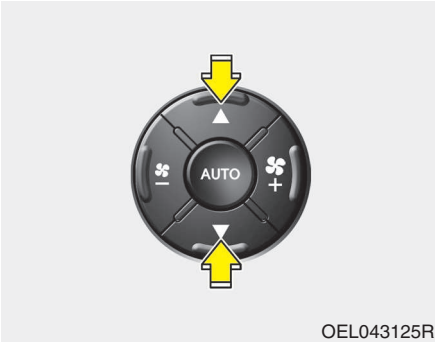


OEL049122R

### Automatic heating and air conditioning

1. Press the AUTO button.

The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by setting the temperature.

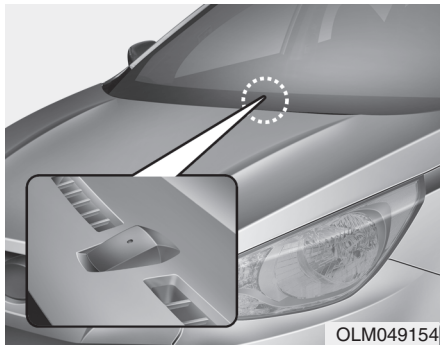


OEL043125R

2. Set the temperature button to the desired temperature.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **To turn the automatic operation off, select any button of the following:**
  **- Mode selection button**
  **- Front windscreen defroster button**
  **- Fan speed control button**
  **The selected function will be controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.**
- **For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C/71°F.**


OLM049154

### ✻ NOTICE

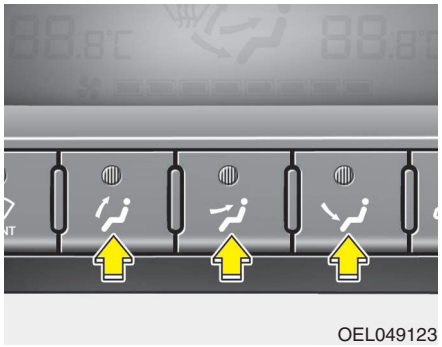
**Never place anything over the sensor located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.**

## Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pressing buttons or turning knob(s) other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons or knob(s) selected.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.



OEL049123

***Mode selection***

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Refer to the illustration in the “Manual climate control system”.

If you push the button once, the corresponding switch will turn on, and if you push the button again, the switch will turn off.

**Face-Level (B, D)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Floor-Level (C, E, A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen.

Also you may select 2~3 modes at the same time for desired air flow.

- face ( ) + floor ( ) mode
- face ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode
- face ( ) + floor ( ) + defrost ( ) mode

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:46 PM Page 127





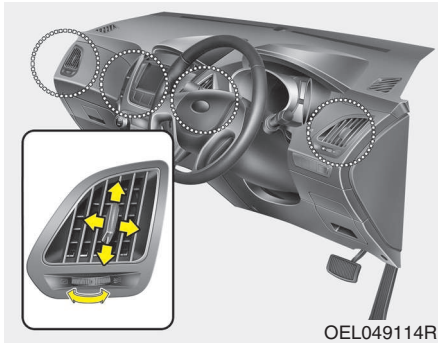
OEL049124

**Maximum (MAX) defrost mode**

When you select the MAX defrost mode, the following system settings will be made automatically;

- the air conditioning system will be turned on.
- the outside(fresh) air position will be selected.
- the fan speed will be set to the high speed.

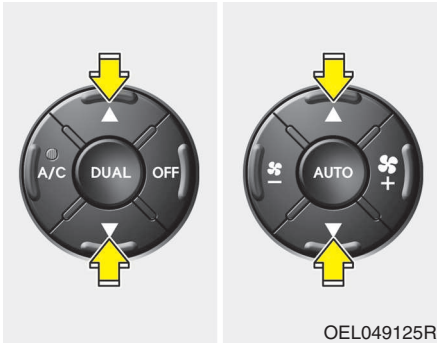
To turn the MAX defrost mode off, press the mode button or MAX defrost button again or AUTO button.


OEL049114R

**Instrument panel vents**

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.



OEL049125R

***Temperature control***

The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by holding the ▲ button.
The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by holding the ▼ button.
When pressing the button, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C/1°F. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.




OEL049126R

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually**

1. Press the DUAL button to operate the driver and passenger side temperature individually. Also, if the passenger side temperature control button is operated, it will automatically change to the DUAL mode as well.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control to adjust the driver side temperature. Operate the passenger side temperature control to adjust the passenger side temperature.

When the driver side temperature is set to the highest (HI) or lowest (Lo) temperature setting, the DUAL mode is deactivated for maximum heating or cooling.

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally**

1. Press the DUAL button again to deactivate DUAL mode. The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control button. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

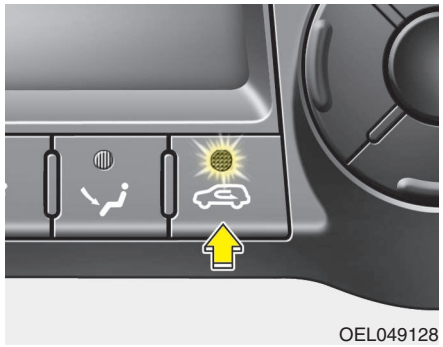
**Temperature conversion (if equipped)**

You can switch the temperature mode between Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

Whilst pressing the OFF button, press the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.



OEL049128

***Air intake control***

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:46 PM Page 129



**Recirculated air position**



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

**Outside (fresh) air position**



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.**
**In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.**

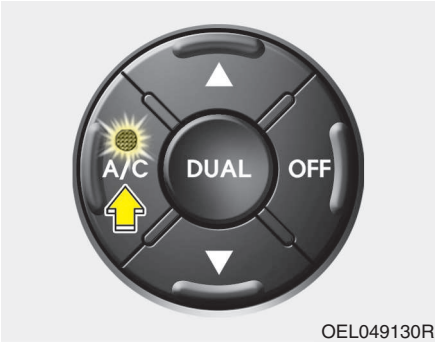



OEL049129R

***Fan speed control***

The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by operating the fan speed control button.

To change the fan speed, press (+) the switch for higher speed, or push (-) the switch for lower speed. To turn the fan speed control off, press the front blower OFF button.




OEL049130R

***Air conditioning***

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.




OEL049131R

***OFF mode***

Press the front blower OFF button to turn off the front air climate control system. However, you can still operate the air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:46 PM Page 131

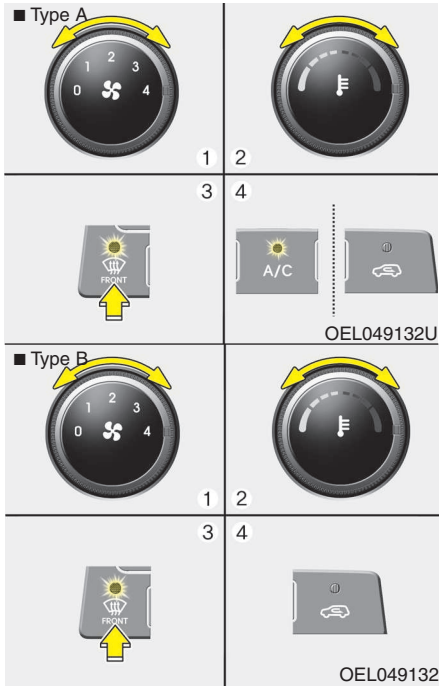


## WINDSCREEN DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

**⚠ WARNING - Windscreen heating**

**Do not use the position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lower speed.**

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.



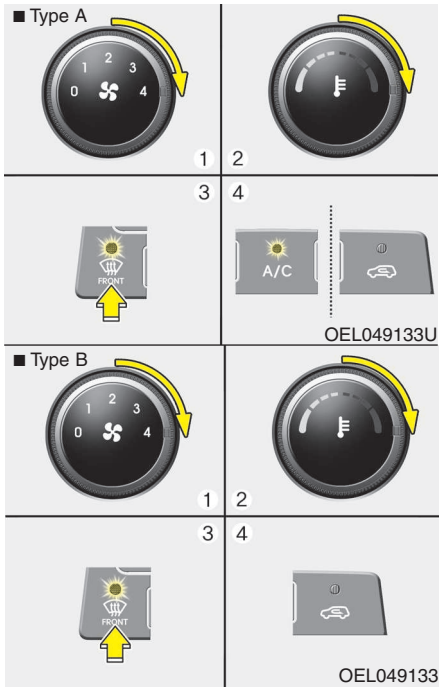

### Manual climate control system

***To defog inside windscreen***

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.

3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically. If the position is selected, air conditioning (if equipped) will also be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning (if equipped) and/or outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.

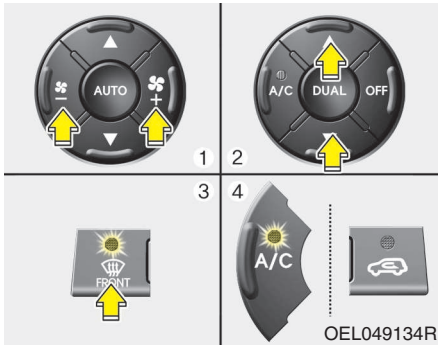



***To defrost outside windscreen***

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning (if equipped) will be selected automatically.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:47 PM Page 133



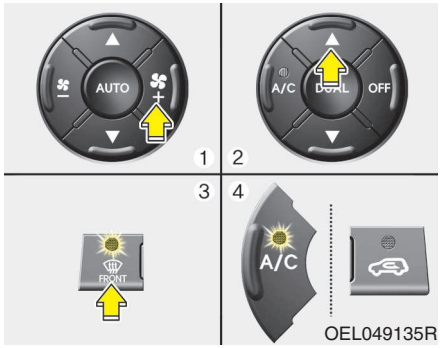



## Automatic climate control system

### *To defog inside windscreen*

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning is not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.




### *To defrost outside windscreen*

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

## STORAGE COMPARTMENT

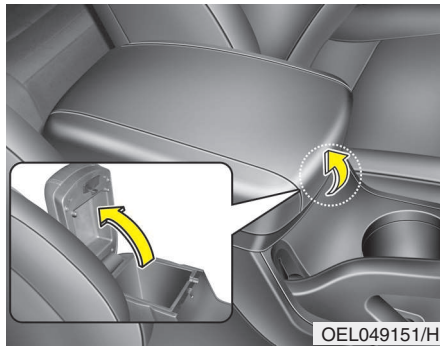
These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.***
- ***Always keep the storage compartment covers closed whilst driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover can not close securely.***

**⚠ WARNING - Flammable materials**

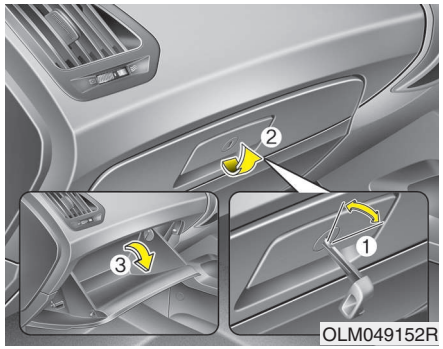
**Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.**


OEL049151/H

### Centre console storage (if equipped)

These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or front passenger.

To open the centre console storage, pull up the lever.



OLM049152R

### Glove box

The glove box can be locked and unlocked with a key. (if equipped)

To open the glove box, pull the handle and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.

**⚠ WARNING**

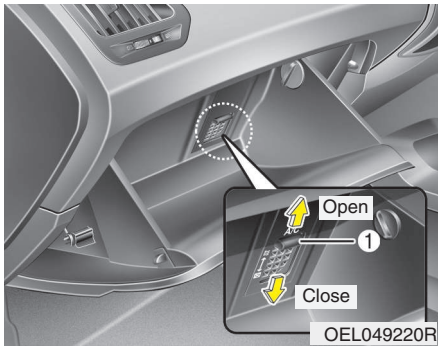
**To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed whilst driving.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not keep food in the glove box for a long time.***

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:47 PM Page 135





OEL049220R

### Cool box (if equipped)

You can keep beverage cans or other items cool using the open/close lever (1) of the vent installed in the glove box.

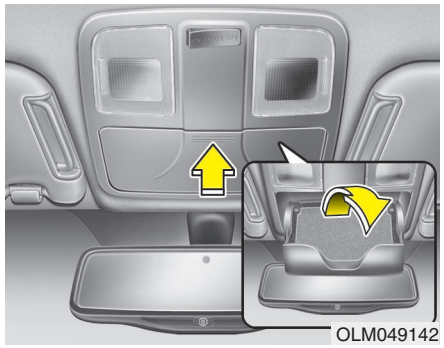
1. Turn on the air conditioning.
2. Slide the open/close lever (1) of the vent installed in the glove box to the open position.
3. When the cool box is not used, slide the lever (1) to its closed position.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If some items in the cool box block the vent, the cooling effectiveness of the cool box is reduced.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not put the perishable food in the cool box because it may not be able to maintain the necessary consistent temperature to keep the food fresh.**


OLM049142

### Sunglass holder

To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out. Push to close.

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:47 PM Page 136



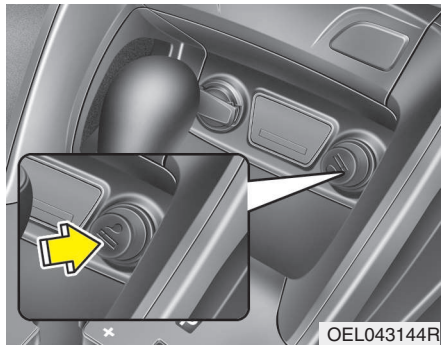
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglasses holder whilst the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglass holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder to prevent breakage or deformation of glasses. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in holder.**

EL(FL) UK 4A.QXP 8/5/2013 6:47 PM Page 137



## INTERIOR FEATURES


OEL043144R

### Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

For the cigarette lighter to work, the ignition switch must be in the ACC position or the ON position.

To use the cigarette lighter, push it all the way into its socket. When the element has heated, the lighter will pop out to the "ready" position.

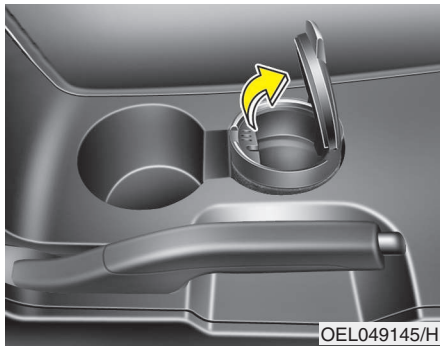
Do not hold the cigarette lighter pressed in. This can damage the heating element and create a fire hazard.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not hold the lighter in after it is already heated because it will overheat.**
- **If the lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The use of plug-in accessories (shavers, hand-held vacuums, and coffee pots, for example) may damage the socket or cause electrical failure.***


OEL049145/H

### Ashtray (if equipped)

To use the ashtray, open the cover.

To clean or empty the ashtray, pull it out.

**⚠ WARNING - Ashtray use**

- **Do not use the vehicle's ashtrays as waste receptacles.**
- **Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.**

## Cup holder

**⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids**

- **Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

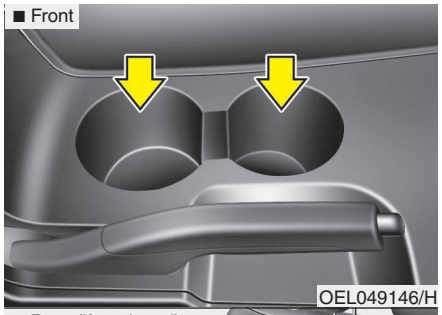
**⚠ WARNING**

**Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a vehicle that is heated up. It may explode.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

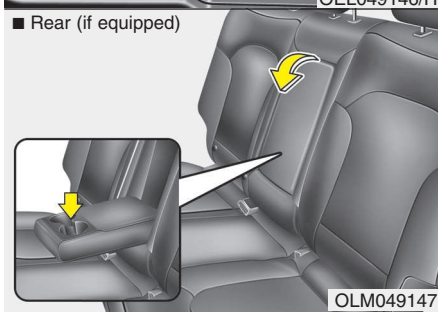
***Do not place uncovered cups in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the liquid spills, electric systems may malfunction.***

■ Front



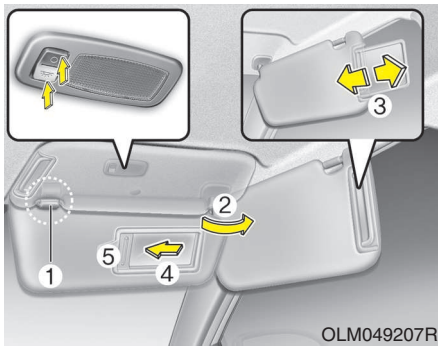
OEL049146/H

■ Rear (if equipped)



OLM049147

Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.




OLM049207R

## Sunvisor

Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).

Adjust the sunvisor extension forward or backward (3). (if equipped)

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (4).

Push the switch to turn the light on or off. (if equipped)

- : The light turns on.
- O : The light turns off.

The ticket holder (5) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket. (if equipped)

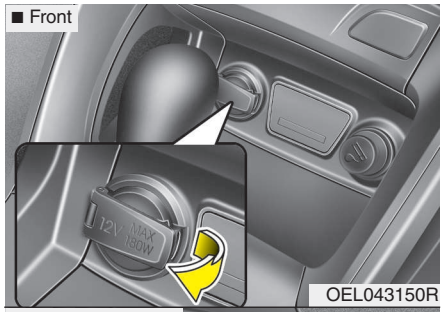
### ⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

- *Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.*
- *Always use the sunvisor extension, after swing the sunvisor to the side.*

### ⚠ WARNING

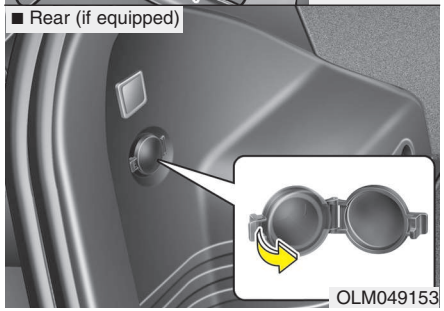
**For your safety, do not obstruct your vision when using the sunvisor.**

■ Front




OEL043150R

■ Rear (if equipped)



OLM049153

## Power outlet

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- *Use power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.*
- *Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.*
- *Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.*
- *Close the cover when not in use.*
- *Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.*

### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not put a finger or a foreign element (pin, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get an electric shock.**




## Digital clock (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the clock whilst driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.**

Whenever the battery terminals or related fuses are disconnected, you must reset the time.

When the ignition switch is in the ACC or ON position, the clock buttons operate as follows:

### *Setup the clock*

**With audio off**

1. Press the [SETUP CLOCK] button until the clock of the display blinks.
2. Set the clock by turning the knob(1) and press it.

**With audio on**

1. Press the [SETUP CLOCK] button.
2. Select the [CLOCK] mode by turning the knob(1) and press it.
3. Set the clock by turning the knob(1) and press it.



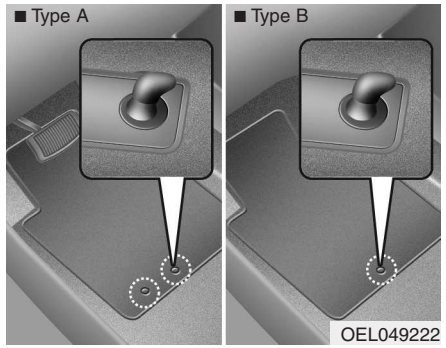

## Aux, USB and iPod® (if equipped)

If your vehicle has an aux and/or USB(universal serial bus) port, you can use an aux port to connect audio devices and an USB port to plug in an USB.

**✻ NOTICE**

**When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.**

✻ iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.




### Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)

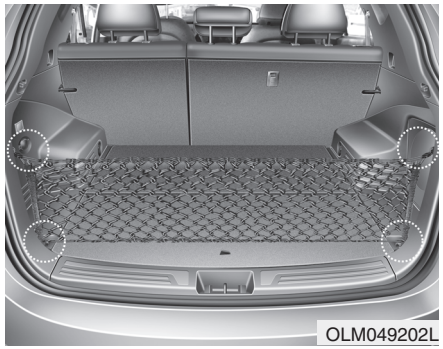
When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.**

- **Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.**
- **Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**
- **Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.**

**IMPORTANT – Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, HYUNDAI recommends that only the HYUNDAI floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.**




### Luggage net (holder) (if equipped)

To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the four holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net.

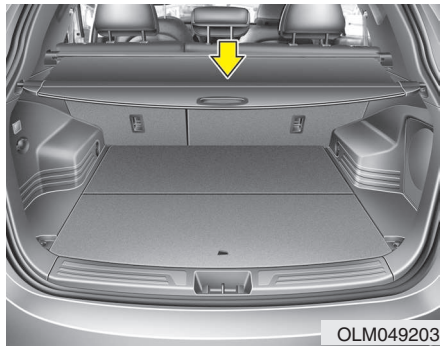
If necessary, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.***

**⚠ WARNING**

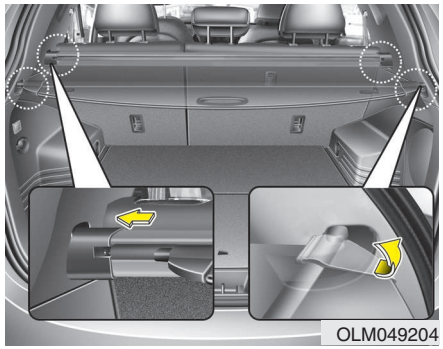
**To avoid eye injury, DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.**



OLM049203

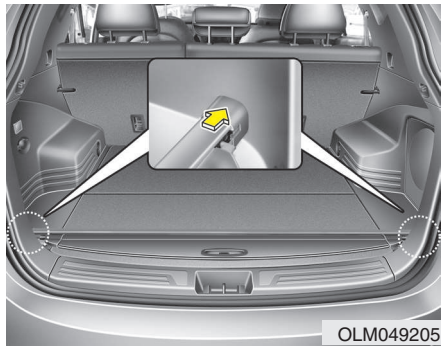
### Cargo security screen (if equipped)

Use the cargo security screen to hide items stored in the cargo area.



OLM049204

To use the cargo security screen, pull the handle backward and insert the edges into the slots.




When not in use, place the cargo security screen on the lower portion of the cargo area. (if equipped)

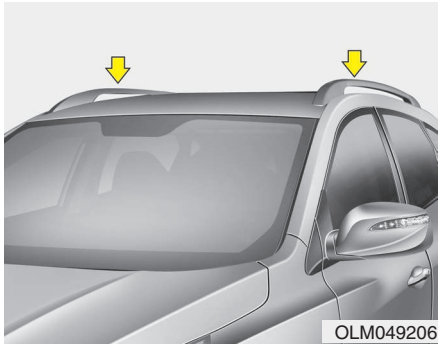
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as far forward as possible.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Since the cargo security screen may be damaged or malformed, do not put the luggage on it when it is used.***

## EXTERIOR FEATURES




### Roof rack (if equipped)

If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of the vehicle by installing roof bars. Roof bars suitable for this application, can be purchased from your HYUNDAI authorised repairer that will attach to the roof rack.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.***
- ***When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.***

### ⚠ WARNING

- **The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack. Distribute the load as evenly as possible onto the roof rack and secure the load firmly.**

| | |
|---|---|
| ROOF RACK | 220 lbs. (100 kg) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED |

**Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The vehicle centre of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt manoeuvres or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.**
- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.**
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo whilst driving, check frequently before or whilst driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 145

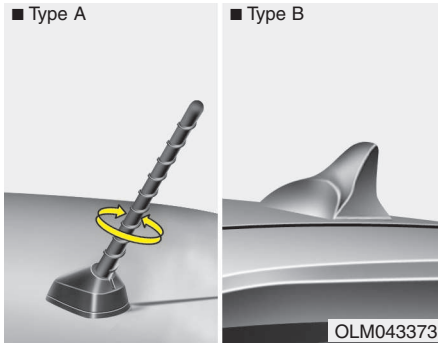


## AUDIO SYSTEM

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If you install an aftermarket HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.**
- **Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration.**

■ Type A ■ Type B



OLM043373

### Antenna

***Roof antenna***

Your car uses a roof antenna to receive both AM and FM broadcast signals. This antenna is a removable type. To remove the antenna, turn it counterclockwise. To install the antenna, turn it clockwise.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Before entering a place with a low height clearance or a car wash, remove the antenna by rotating it counterclockwise. If not, the antenna may be damaged.***
- ***When reinstalling your antenna, it is important that it is fully tightened and adjusted to the upright position to ensure proper reception. But it could be folded or removed when parking the vehicle or when loading cargo on the roof rack.***
- ***When cargo is loaded on the roof rack, do not place the cargo near the antenna pole to ensure proper reception.***



OLM049194

## Audio remote control (if equipped)

The steering wheel audio remote control button is installed to promote safe driving.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not operate audio remote control buttons simultaneously.***

***VOL (+ / -) (1)***

- Press the up button (+) to increase volume.
- Press the down button (-) to decease volume.

***SEEK ( ∧ / ∨ ) (2)***

If the SEEK button is pressed for 0.8 second or more, it will work as follows in each mode.

**RADIO mode**

It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button.

**CDP mode**

It will function as the FF/REW button.

**CDC mode**

It will function as the DISC UP/DOWN button.

If the SEEK button is pressed for less than 0.8 second, it will work as follows in each mode.

**RADIO mode**

It will function as the PRESET STATION select buttons.

**CDP mode**

It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.

**CDC mode**

It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.

Detailed information for audio control buttons is described in the following pages in this section.

***MODE (3)***

Press the button to select Radio or CD (compact disc).

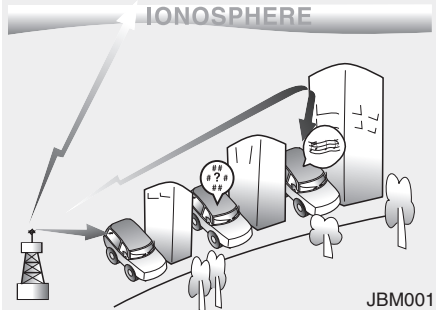
***MUTE (4)***

- Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

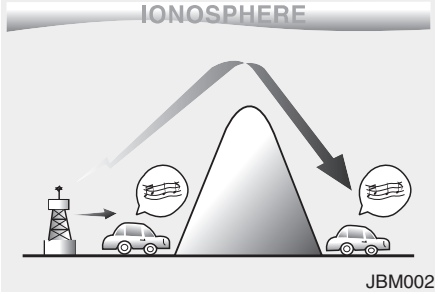
EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 147



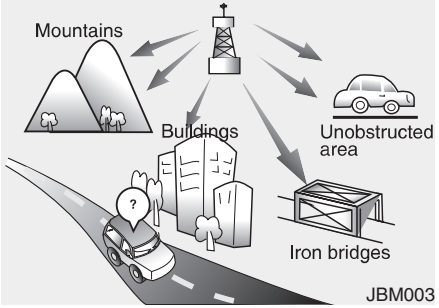
**FM reception**




**AM reception**




**FM radio station**




## How vehicle audio works

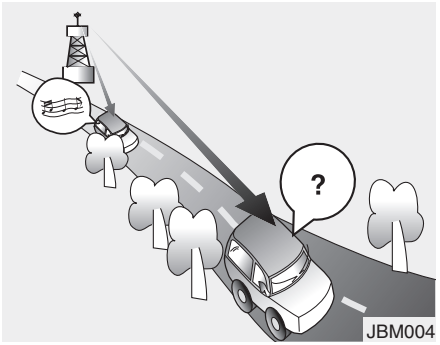
AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear.

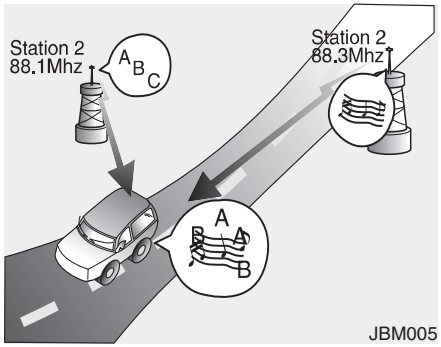
This can be due to factors, such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:




- Fading - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.




- Station Swapping - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

### *Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio*

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio system. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the cellular phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When using a communication system such as a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use a cellular phone while driving. Stop at a safe location to use a cellular phone.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 149



### Caring for disc

- If the temperature inside the car is too high, open the car windows to ventilate before using the system.
- It is illegal to copy and use MP3/WMA files without permission. Use CDs that are created only by lawful means.
- Do not apply volatile agents, such as benzene and thinner, normal cleaners and magnetic sprays made for analogue disc onto CDs.
- To prevent the disc surface from getting damaged, hold CDs by the edges or the center hole only.
- Clean the disc surface with a piece of soft cloth before playback (wipe it from the center to the outside edge).
- Do not damage the disc surface or attach pieces of sticky tape or paper.
- Make certain only CDs are inserted into the CD player (Do not insert more than one CD at a time).
- Keep CDs in their cases after use to protect them from scratches or dirt.
- Depending on the type of CD-R/CD-RW CDs, certain CDs may not operate normally according to manufacturing companies or making and recording methods. In such circumstances, continued use may cause malfunctions to your audio system.

### ✻ NOTICE - Playing an Incompatible Copy Protected Audio CD

**Some copy protected CDs, which do not comply with international audio CD standards (Red Book), may not play on your car audio. Please note that inabilities to properly play a copy protected CD may indicate that the CD is defective, not the CD player.**

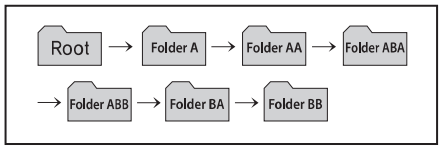
### ✻ NOTICE

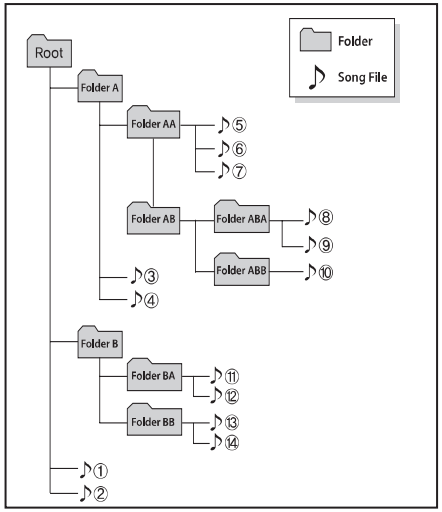
**Order of playing files (folders) :**

**1. Song playing order : ① to ⑭ sequentially.**

**2. Folder playing order :**

**❋ If no song file is contained in the folder, that folder is not displayed.**



EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 150



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not stare at the screen while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.**
- **Using the phone while driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.**
- **Heed caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents(fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.**
- **Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.**
- **Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Use the system with the vehicle ignition turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned off could result in battery discharge.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 151



### ⚠ CAUTION

- *Operating the device while driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.*
- *Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.*
- *Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)*

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- *Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.*
- *Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.*
- *When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color/quality deterioration*

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- *Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.*
- *In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service center.*
- *Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.*
- *Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil from contacting the dashboard because they may cause damage or discoloration.*

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 152



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE USB DEVICE

- **To use an external USB device, make sure the device is not connected when starting up the vehicle. Connect the device after starting up.**
- **If you start the engine when the USB device is connected, it may damage the USB device. (USB flashdrives are very sensitive to electric shock.)**
- **If the engine is started up or turned off while the external USB device is connected, the external USB device may not work.**
- **The System may not play inauthentic MP3 or WMA files.**
  1) **It can only play MP3 files with the compression rate between 8Kbps ~ 320Kbps.**
  2) **It can only play WMA music files with the compression rate between 8Kbps ~ 320Kbps.**
- **Take precautions for static electricity when connecting or disconnecting the external USB device.**
- **An encrypted MP3 PLAYER is not recognizable.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Depending on the condition of the external USB device, the connected external USB device can be unrecognizable.**
- **When the formatted byte/sector setting of External USB device is not either 512BYTE or 2048BYTE, then the device will not be recognized.**
- **Use only a USB device formatted to FAT 12/16/32.**
- **USB devices without USB I/F authentication may not be recognizable.**
- **Make sure the USB connection terminal does not come in contact with the human body or other objects.**
- **If you repeatedly connect or disconnect the USB device in a short period of time, it may break the device.**
- **You may hear a strange noise when connecting or disconnecting a USB device.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If you disconnect the external USB device during playback in USB mode, the external USB device can be damaged or may malfunction. Therefore, disconnect the external USB device when the audio is turned off or in another mode. (e.g, Radio, CD)**
- **Depending on the type and capacity of the external USB device or the type of the files stored in the device, there is a difference in the time taken for recognition of the device.**
- **Do not use the USB device for purposes other than playing music files.**
- **Playing videos through the USB is not supported.**
- **Use of USB accessories such as rechargers or heaters using USB I/F may lower performance or cause trouble.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 153



**(Continued)**

- **If you use devices such as a USB hub purchased separately, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB device. In that case, connect the USB device directly to the multimedia terminal of the vehicle.**
- **If the USB device is divided by logical drives, only the music files on the highest-priority drive are recognized by car audio.**
- **Devices such as MP3 Player/ Cellular phone/Digital camera can be unrecognizable by standard USB I/F can be unrecognizable.**
- **Charging through the USB may not be supported in some mobile devices.**
- **USB HDD or USB types liable to connection failures due to vehicle vibrations are not supported. (i-stick type)**
- **Some non-standard USB devices (METAL COVER TYPE USB) can be unrecognizable.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Some USB flash memory readers (such as CF, SD, micro SD, etc.) or external-HDD type devices can be unrecognizable.**
- **Music files protected by DRM (DIGITAL RIGHTS MANAGEMENT) are not recognizable.**
- **The data in the USB memory may be lost while using this audio. Always back up important data on a personal storage device.**
- **Please avoid using USB memory products which can be used as key chains or cellular phone accessories as they could cause damage to the USB jack. Please make certain only to use plug type connector products.**



EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 154



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE iPod® DEVICE

- Some iPod® models may not support communication protocol and files may not properly play.
  Supported iPod® models:
  - iPod® Mini
  - iPod® 4th (Photo) ~ 6th (Classic) generation
  - iPod® Nano 1st~4th generation
  - iPod® Touch 1st~2nd generation
- The order of search or playback of songs in the iPod® can be different from the order searched in the audio system.
- If the iPod® disabled due to its own malfunction, reset the iPod®. (Reset: Refer to iPod® manual)
- An iPod® may not operate normally on low battery.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Some iPod® devices, such as the iPhone®, can be connected through the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology interface. The device must have audio *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology capability (such as for stereo headphone *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology ). The device can play, but it will not be controlled by the audio system.
- To use iPod® features within the audio, use the cable provided upon purchasing an iPod®d device.
- Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.
- If your iPhone® is connected to both the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When connecting iPod® with the iPod® Power Cable, insert the connector to the multimedia socket completely. If not inserted completely, communications between iPod® and audio may be interrupted.
- When adjusting the sound effects of the iPod® and the audio system, the sound effects of both devices will overlap and might reduce or distort the quality of the sound.
- Deactivate (turn off) the equalizer function of an iPod® when adjusting the audio system's volume, and turn off the equalizer of the audio system when using the equalizer of an iPod®.
- When not using iPod® with car audio, detach the iPod® cable from iPod®. Otherwise, iPod® may remain in accessory mode, and may not work properly.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 155



■ **CD Player : AC100ELEE, AC110ELEE**




✻ No Bluetooth logo will be shown if the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature is not supported.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 156



## SYSTEM CONTROLLERS AND FUNCTIONS

❈ Display and settings may differ depending on the selected audio.

### Audio Head Unit




1. ⏏ (EJECT)
• Ejects the disc.

2. RADIO
• Changes to FM/AM mode.
• Each time the key is pressed,the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

3. MEDIA
• Changes to CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music, BT Audio mode.
• Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB(iPod®), AUX, My Music, BT Audio.

4. PHONE (if eqipped)
• Operates Phone Screen
❈ When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

5. SEEK TRACK
• Radio Mode : Automatically searches for broadcast frequencies.
• CD, USB, iPod®, My Music modes
- Shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds): Moves to next or previous song (file)
- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds): Rewinds or fast-forwards the current song.

6. PWR/VOL knob
• Power Knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob
• Volume Knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 157






7. 1 ~ 6 (Preset)

- Radio Mode: Saves frequencies (channels) or receives saved frequencies (channels)
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode
  - 1 RPT : Repeat
  - 2 RDM : Random
- In the Radio, Media, Setup, and Menu pop up screen, the number menu is selected.

8. ☾

- Each time the button is shortly pressed (under 0.8 seconds), sets screen Off ➟ Screen On ➟ Screen Off

❊ Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off. In the screen Off state, press any key to turn the screen On again.

9. TA SCAN

- Radio Mode
  - Shortly press the key (under 0.8seconds): TA On/Off- Press and hold the key (over 0.8seconds): Previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each.
- Media mode
  - Press and hold the key (over 0.8seconds): Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.

❊ Press and holding the key again to continue listening to the current song (file).

10. SETUP CLOCK

- Shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds) : Moves to the Display, Sound, Clock, Phone, System setting modes
- Press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds) : Move to the Time setting screen

11. MENU

Displays menus for the current mode.

❊ iPod® List : Move to parent category

12. PTY FOLDER

- FM : RDS Program Type Search
- CD MP3, USB mode : Folder Search

13. TUNE knob
- Radio mode : Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right
- CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode: Searches songs (files) by turning the knob left/right

❊ When the desired song is displayed, press the knob to play the song.
- Moves focus in all selection menus and selects menus




14. FM
- Changes to FM mode.
- Each time the key is pressed, the mode changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA.

15. AM
- Changes to AM mode.
- Each time the key is pressed, the mode changed in order of AM ➟ AMA.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 159

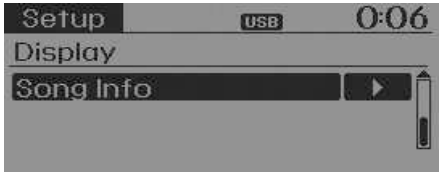


## SETUP
### - AC100ELEE, AC110ELEE

### Display Settings

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▶ Select [Display] through TUNE knob or 1 RPT key ▶ Select menu through TUNE knob




### Mode Pop up

[Mode Pop up] ▶ Changes (On). selection mode

- During On state, press the RADIO or MEDIA key to display the mode change pop up screen.
- When the pop up screen is displayed, use the TUNE knob or keys 1 ~ 6 to select the desired mode.

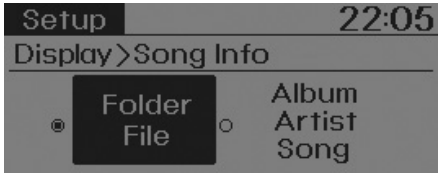
### Scroll text

[Scroll text] ▶ Set (On)/(Off)

- (On) : Maintains scroll
- (Off) : Scrolls only one (1) time.

### Song Info

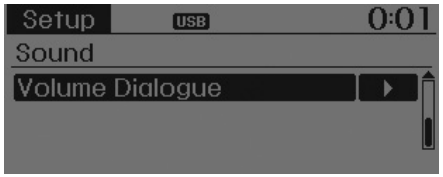
When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from 'Folder/File' or 'Album/Artist/Song'.




### Sound Settings

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▶ Select [Sound] through TUNE knob or 2 RDM key ▶ Select menu through TUNE knob



EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 160



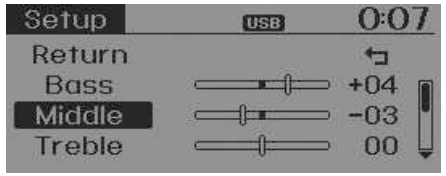
### Audio Settings

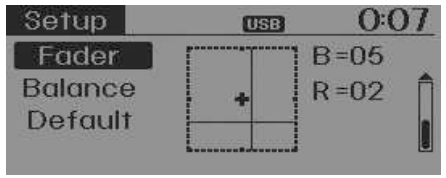
This menu allows you to set the 'Bass, Middle, Treble' and the Sound Fader and Balance.

Select [Audio Settings]▶ Select menu through ◎ TUNE knob▶ Turn ◎ TUNE knob left/right to set

- Bass, Middle, Treble : Selects the sound tone.
- Fader, Balance : Moves the sound fader and balance.
- Default : Restores default settings.

❊ Return : While adjusting values, re-pressing the ◎ TUNE knob will restore the parent menu.

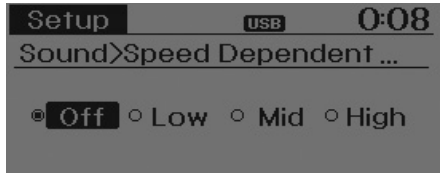



### Speed Dependent Volume Control

This feature is used to automatically control the volume level according to the speed of the vehicle.

Select [Speed Dependent Vol.]▶Set in 4 levels [Off/Low/Mid/High] of ◎TUNE knob




### Volume Dialogue

Adjusts voice recognition volume.

Select [Volume Dialogue]▶Set volume of ◎ TUNE knob



EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 161



### Clock Settings

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▶ Select [Clock] through TUNE knob or 3 key ▶ Select menu through TUNE knob







### Clock Settings

This menu is used to set the time.

Select [Clock Settings] ▶ Set through TUNE knob ▶ Press TUNE knob

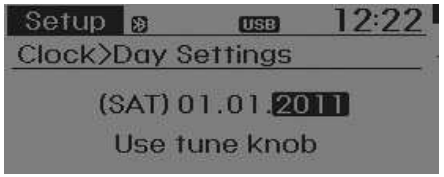



✻ Adjust the number currently in focus to set the [hour] and press the tune knob to set the [minute].

### Day Settings

This menu is used to set the date.

Select [Day Settings] ▶ Set through TUNE knob ▶ Press TUNE knob




✻ Adjust the number currently in focus to make the settings and press the tune knob to move to the next setting. (Set in order of Year/Month/Day)

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 162



### Time Format

This function is used to set the 12/24 hour time format of the audio system.

Select [Time Format]▶Set 12Hr / 24Hr through TUNE knob

### Clock Display when Power is OFF

Select [Clock Disp.(Pwr Off)▶Set On/ Off through TUNE knob

- On : Displays time/date on screen
- Off : Turn off.

### Automatic RDS Time

This option is used to automatically set the time by synchronizing with RDS.

Select [Automatic RDS Time]▶Set On / Off through TUNE knob

- On : Turn on Automatic Time
- Off : Turn off.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 163



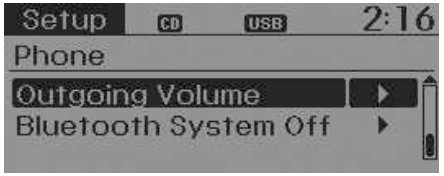
### Phone Setup (if eqipped)

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▸ Select [Phone]










### Pair Phone

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To pair a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone, authentication and connection processes are first required. As a result, you cannot pair your mobile phone while driving the vehicle. First park your vehicle before use.***

Select [Pair Phone] ▸ Set through TUNE knob

① Search for device names as displayed on your mobile phone and connect.

② Input the passkey displayed on the screen. (Passkey : 0000)

✻ The device name and passkey will be displayed on the screen for up to 3 minutes. If pairing is not completed within the 3 minutes, the mobile phone pairing process will automatically be canceled.

③ Pairing completion is displayed.

✻ In some mobile phones, pairing will automatically be followed by connection.

✻ It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phones.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 164



### Phone List

The names of up to 5 paired phones will be displayed.




A [▶] is displayed in front of the currently connected phone.

Select the desired name to setup the selected phone.

• Connecting a phone

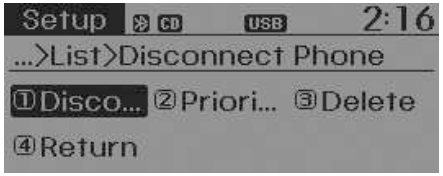
Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Connect Phone]




① Select a mobile phone that is not currently connected.
② Connect the selected mobile phone.
③ Connection completion is displayed.
✻ If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and select a new phone to connect.

• Disconnecting a connected phone

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Disconnect Phone]




① Select the currently connected mobile phone.
② Disconnect the selected mobile phone.
③ Disconnection completion is displayed.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 165



• Changing connection sequence (Priority)

This is used to change the order (priority) of automatic connection for the paired mobile phones.

Select [Phone List]▶Select [Priority] through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select No. 1 Priority mobile phone

① Select [Priority].
② From the paired phones, select the phone desired for No.1 priority.
③ The changed priority sequence is displayed.

❇ Once the connection sequence (priority) is changed, the new no. 1 priority mobile phone will be connected.
- when the no. 1 priority cannot be connected: Automatically attempts to connect the most recently connected phone.
- Cases when the most recently connected phone cannot be connected: Attempts to connect in the order in which paired phones are listed.
- The connected phone will automatically be changed to No. 1 priority.

• Delete

Select [Phone List]▶Select mobile phone through ◎ TUNE knob▶Select [Delete]

① Select the desired mobile phone.
② Delete the selected mobile phone.
③ Deletion completion is displayed.

❇ When attempting to delete a currently connected phone, the phone is first disconnected.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When you delete a mobile phone, the mobile phone phone book will also be erased.***
- ***For stable Bluetooth® Wireless Technology communication, delete the mobile phone from the audio and also delete the audio from your mobile phone.***

### Phone book Download

This feature is used to download phone book and call histories into the audio system.

Select [Phone book Download]▶Select through ◎ TUNE knob

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.***
- ***If a different operation is performed while phone book is being downloaded, downloading will be discontinued. Phone book already downloaded will be saved.***
- ***When downloading new phone book, delete all previously saved phone book before starting download.***

### Auto Download

When connecting a mobile phone, it is possible to automatically download new phone book and Call Histories.

Select [Auto Download]▶Set (On) / (Off) through ◎ TUNE knob

### Audio Streaming

Songs (files) saved in your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone can be played through the audio system.

Select [Audio Streaming]▶Set (On) / (Off) through ◎ TUNE knob

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The Bluetooth® Wireless Technology audio streaming feature may not be supported in some mobile phones.***

### Outgoing Volume

This is used to set the volume of your voice as heard by the other party while on a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call.

Select [Outgoing Volume]▶Set volume through ◎ TUNE knob

✻ While on a call, the volume can be changed by using the SEEK TRACK key.

### *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System Off

This feature is used when you do not wish to use the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system.

Select [Bluetooth System Off]▶Set through ◎TUNE knob

✻ If a phone is already connected, disconnect the currently connected phone and turn the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system off.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 167



### Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology System

To use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology when the system is currently off, follow these next steps.

- Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the PHONE Key

Press the PHONE key ▶ Screen Guidance

❈ Moves to the screen where *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology functions can be used and displays guidance.

- Turning On *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology through the SETUP CLOCK Key

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▶ Select [Phone]

① A screen asking whether to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology will be displayed.

② On the screen, select YES to turn on *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology and display guidance.

❈ If the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology system is turned on, the system will automatically try to connect the most recently connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Bluetooth® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these next steps to try again.***

***1) Turn the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone ON/OFF and try to connect again.***

***2) Turn the mobile phone power ON/OFF and try to connect again.***

***3) Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then try to connect again.***

***4) Reboot the audio system and try to connect again***

***5) Delete all paired devices in your mobile phone and the audio system and pair again for use.***

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 168



### System Settings

Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▶ Select [System]




### Memory Information (if equipped)

Displays currently used memory and total system memory.

Select [Memory Information] ▶ OK

The currently used memory is displayed on the left side while the total system memory is displayed on the right side.




### Language

This menu is used to set the display and voice recognition language.

Select [Language] ▶ Set through TUNE knob




❊ The system will reboot after the language is changed.

❊ Language support by region

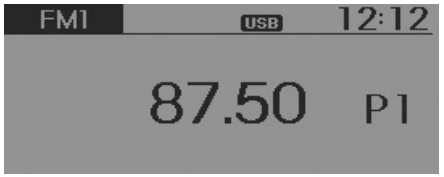
- Deutsch, English(UK), Français, Italiano, Español, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Polski Turkish

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 169



## RADIO

### Changing RADIO mode




### SEEK

Press the SEEK TRACK key

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Changes the frequency.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Automatically searches for the next frequency.

### Preset SEEK

Press the 1 ~ 6 key

- Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds): Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding key.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Pressing and holding the desired key from 1 ~ 6 will save the currently playing broadcast to the selected key and sound a BEEP.

### SCAN

Press the TA SCAN key

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 170



### Selecting through manual search

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to adjust the frequency.

- AC100ELEE, AC110ELEE
  - FM : Changes by 50KHz
  - AM : Changes by 9khz

### Traffic Announcement (TA)

Shortly pressing the TA SCAN key (under 0.8 seconds): Set On/Off TA Traffic Announcement) mode.

### PTY Up/Down

- Press the PTY FOLDER key when searching PTY in RDS Broadcasting Program Type selection.

### MENU

Within MENU key are the A.Store (Auto Store) and Info functions.




### AST (Auto Store)

Press the MENU key▶Set [①AST] through TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.

Select AST (Auto Store) to save frequencies with superior reception to presets 1 ~ 6. If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.

❊ Saves only to the Preset memory 1 ~ 6 of FMA or AMA mode.

### AF (Alternative Frequency)

Press the MENU key▶Set [②AF] through TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

The Alternative Frequency option can be turned On/Off.

### Region

Press the MENU key▶Set [③Region] through TUNE knob or 3 key.

The Region option can be turned On/Off.

### News

Press the MENU key▶Set [④News] through TUNE knob or 4 key.

The News option can be turned On/Off.

### Info Volume

Info Volume refers to the sound volume upon receiving News or Traffic information.

The info volume can be controlled by turning the VOL knob left/right while a news or traffic broadcast is playing.

❊ AF, Region, and News are RDS Radio menus.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:20 AM Page 171



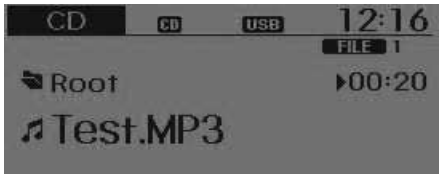
## BASIC METHOD OF USE : Audio CD / MP3 CD / USB / iPod® / My Music

Press the MEDIA key to change the mod mode in order of CD ➟ USB(iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.

The folder/file name is displayed on the screen.



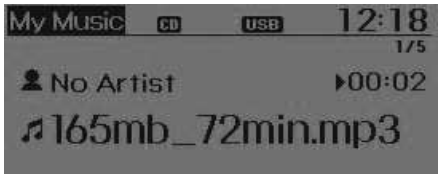

<Audio CD>




<CD MP3>




<USB>




<My Music>

❈ The CD is automatically played when a CD is inserted.

❈ The USB music is automatically played when a USB is connected.

### Repeat

While song (file) is playing ▶ RPT (RPT) key

Audio CD, MP3 CD, USB, iPod®, My Music mode: RPT on screen

- To repeat one song (Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds)): Repeats the current song.

MP3 CD, USB mode: FLD.RPT on screen

- To repeat folder (pressing twice): repeats all files within the current folder.

❈ Press the RPT key again to turn off repeat.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 172



### Random

While song (file) is playing ▶ RDM (RDM) key

Audio CD, My Music mode: RDM on screen

- Random (Shortly pressing the key ): Plays all songs in random order.

MP3 CD, USB mode: FLD.RDM on screen

- Folder Random (Shortly pressing the key): Plays all files within the current folder in random order.

MP3 CD, USB mode: RDM on screen

- Random (pressing twice): Plays all files in random order.

iPod® mode: RDM on screen

- Random (press the key) : Plays all files in random order.

❈ Press the RDM key again to turn off random.

### Changing Song/File

While song (file) is playing ▶ SEEK TRACK key

- Shortly pressing the key: Plays the current song from the beginning.

❈ If the SEEK TRACK key is pressed again within 1 second, the previous song is played.

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Rewinds the song.

While song (file) is playing ▶ SEEK TRACK key

- Shortly pressing the key: Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds): Fast forwards the song.

### Scan

While song (file) is playing ▶ TA SCAN key

- Pressing and holding the key (over 0.8 seconds) : Scans all songs for 10 seconds starting from the next song.

❈ Pressing and holding the TA SCAN key again to turn off.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 173



### Folder Search : MP3 CD, USB Mode

While file is playing▶ PTY FOLDER ^ (Folder Up) key

• Searches the next folder.

While file is playing▶ PTY FOLDER v (Folder Down) key

• Searches the parent folder.

❊ If a folder is selected by pressing the TUNE knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

### Searching Songs (File)

• Turning TUNE knob : Searches for songs (files)
• Pressing TUNE knob : Plays selected song (file).

### MENU : Audio CD

Press the CD MP3 mode MENU key to set the Repeat, Random, Information features.




### Repeat

Press the MENU key▶Set [①RPT] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

❊ Press RPT again to turn off.

### Random

Press the MENU key▶Set [②RDM] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key to randomly play songs within the current folder.

❊ Press RDM again to turn off.

### Information

Press the MENU key▶Set [③Info] through the TUNE knob or 3 key to display information of the current song.

❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

### MENU : MP3 CD / USB

Press the CD MP3 mode MENU key to set the Repeat, Folder Random, Folder Repeat, All Random, Information, and Copy features.




### Repeat

Press the MENU key▶Set [①RPT] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

❊ Press RPT again to turn off.

### Folder Random

Press the MENU key▶Set [②F.RDM] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key to randomly play songs within the current folder.

❊ Press F.RDM again to turn off.

### Folder Repeat

Press the MENU key▶Set [③F.RPT] through the TUNE knob or 3 key to repeat songs within the current folder.

❊ Press F.RPT again to turn off.

### All Random

Press the MENU key▶Set [④A.RDM] through the TUNE knob or 4 key to randomly play all songs within the CD.

❊ Press A.RDM again to turn off.

### Information

Press the MENU key▶Set [⑤Info] through the TUNE knob or 5 key to display information of the current song.

❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

### Copy

Press the MENU key▶Set [⑥Copy] through the TUNE knob or 6 key.

❊ This is used to copy the current song into My Music. You can play the copied Music in My Music mode.

❊ If another key is pressed while copying is in progress, a pop up asking you whether to cancel copying is displayed.

❊ If another media is connected or inserted (USB, CD, iPod®, AUX) while copying is in progress, copying is canceled.

❊ Music will not be played while copying is in progress.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 175



### MENU : iPod®

In iPod® mode, press the MENU key to set the Repeat, Random, Information and Search features.




### Repeat

Press the MENU key▶Set [①RPT] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key to repeat the current song.

❊ Press RPT again to turn repeat off.

### Random

Press the MENU key▶Set [②RDM] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

Plays all songs within the currently playing category in random order.

❊ Press RDM again to turn off.

### Information

Press the MENU key▶Set [③Info] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.

Displays information of the current song.

❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

### Search

Press the MENU key▶Set [④Search] through the TUNE knob or 4 key.

Displays iPod® category list.

❊ Searching iPod® category is MENU key pressed, move to parent category.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 176



### MENU : My Music Mode (if equipped)

In My Music mode, press the MENU key to set the Repeat, Random, Information, Delete, Delete All, and Delete Selection features.




### Repeat

Press the MENU key▶Set [①RPT] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.
Repeats the currently playing song.
❊ Press RPT again to turn repeat off.

### Random

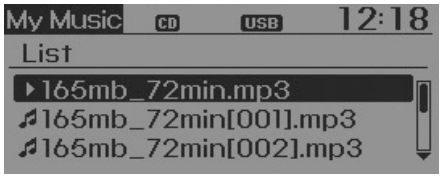
Press the MENU key▶Set [②RDM] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.
Plays all songs in random order.
❊ Press RDM again to turn random off.

### Information

Press the MENU key▶Set [③Info] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.
Displays information of the current song.
❊ Press the MENU key to turn off info display.

### Delete

Press the MENU key▶Set [④Delete] through the TUNE knob or 4 key.
Deletes currently playing file
In the play screen, pressing delete will delete the currently playing song.
Deletes file from list
① Select the file you wish to delete by using the TUNE knob.




② Press the MENU key and select the delete menu to delete the selected file.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 177



### Delete All

Press the MENU key▶Set [⑤Del.All] through the TUNE knob or 5 key.
Deletes all songs of My Music.

### Delete Selection

Press the MENU key▶Set [⑥Del.Sel] through the TUNE knob or 6 key.
Songs within My Music are selected and deleted.

① Select the songs you wish to delete from the list.




② After selecting, press the MENU key and select the delete menu.




### ✻ NOTICE - Using the My Music

- **Even if memory is available, a maximum of 6,000 songs can be stored.**
- **The same song can be copied up to 1,000 times.**
- **Memory info can be checked in the System menu of Setup.**

### AUX

AUX is used to play external MEDIA currently connected with the AUX terminal.

AUX mode will automatically start when an external device is connected with the AUX terminal.

If an external device is connected, you can also press the MEDIA key to change to AUX mode.




✻ AUX mode cannot be started unless there is an external device connected to the AUX terminal.

### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE AUX

**Fully insert the AUX cable into the AUX terminal for use.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 178



## *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology AUDIO (if equipped)

### What is *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology?

*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology allows devices to be connected in a short distance, including hands-free devices, stereo headsets, wireless remote controllers, etc. For more information, visit the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology website at *www.Bluetooth.com*

Before using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio features

- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio may not be supported depending on the compatibility of your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- In order to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio, you must first pair and connect the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth®* SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners. A *Bluetooth®* enabled cell phone is required to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio can be used only when the [Audio Streaming] of Phone is turned On.

❈ Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Streaming : Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▸ Select [Phone] through the tune knob ▸ Select [Audio Streaming] through the TUNE knob ▸ Set On / Off

### Starting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio

- Press the MEDIA key to change the mode in order of CD ➟ USB ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.
- If BT Audio is selected, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio will start playing.

❈ Audio may not automatically start playing in some mobile phones.

### Using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio features

- Play / Pause

Press the TUNE knob to play and pause the current song.




❈ The previous song / next song / play / pause functions may not be supported in some mobile phones.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 179



## PHONE (if equipped)

Before using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone features

- In order to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone, you must first pair and connect the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone.
- If the mobile phone is not paired or connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. Once a phone is paired or connected, the guidance screen will be displayed.
- If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want automatic *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone connection, set the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology power to OFF.

### Making a call using the Steering wheel remote controller




1. VOLUME button : Raises or lowers speaker volume.
2. MUTE button : Mute the microphone during a call.
3. button : Activates voice recognition.
4. button : Places and transfers calls.
5. button : Ends calls or cancels functions.

- Check call history and making call

① Shortly press (under 0.8 seconds) the key on the steering remote controller.
② The call history list will be displayed on the screen.
③ Press the key again to connect a call to the selected number.

- Redialing the most recently called number

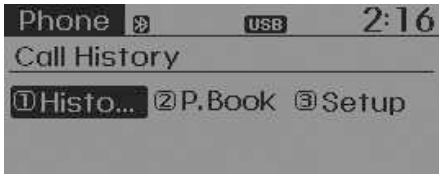
① Press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) the key on the steering remote controller.
② The most recently called number is redialed.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 180



### Phone MENU

Press the PHONE key to display three menus (Call History, Phone Book, Phone Setup).




### Call history

Press the PHONE key▶Set [① History] through the TUNE knob or 1 RPT key.

The call history is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

If call history does not exist, a screen asking whether to download call history is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

### Phone Book

Press the PHONE key▶Set [②P. Book] through the TUNE knob or 2 RDM key.

The phone book is displayed and can be used to select a number and make a call.

- ❊ If more than one number is saved to one contact, then a screen showing the mobile phone number, Home and office number is displayed. Select the desired number to make the call.
- ❊ If phone book do not exist, a screen asking whether to download phone book is displayed. (The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones)

### Phone Setup

Press the PHONE key▶Set [③ Setup] through the TUNE knob or 3 key.

The *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phone setup screen is displayed. For more information, refer to “Phone Setup”.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 181



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology CELLULAR PHONE

- **Do not use a cellular phone or perform *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology settings (e.g. pairing a phone) while driving.**
- **Some *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology -enabled phones may not be recognized by the system or fully compatible with the system.**
- **Before using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology related features of the audio system, refer your phone's User's Manual for phone-side *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology operations.**
- **The phone must be paired to the audio system to use *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology related features.**
- **You will not be able to use the hands-free feature when your phone (in the car) is outside of the cellular service area (e.g. in a tunnel, in a underground, in a mountainous area, etc.).**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the cellular phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.**
- **Do not place the phone near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology system or cellular service stations can be disturbed.**
- **While a phone is connected through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology your phone may discharge quicker than usual for additional *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology-related operations.**
- **Some cellular phones or other devices may cause interference noise or malfunction to audio system. In this case, store the device in a different location may resolve the condition.**
- **Phone contact names should be saved in English or they may not be displayed correctly.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If Priority is set upon vehicle ignition(IGN/ACC ON), the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected.**
  **Even if you are outside, the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle.**
  **If you do not want automatic *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection, turn the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature off.**
- **The hands-free call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone type.**
- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features can be used only when the mobile phone has been paired and connected with the device. For more information on pairing and connecting *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phones, refer to the "Phone Setup" section.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 182



**(Continued)**

- **When a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phone is connected, a ( ) icon will appear at the top of the screen. If a ( ) icon is not displayed, this indicates that a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled device has not been connected. You must connect the device before use. For more information on *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phones, refer to the "Phone Setup" section.**
- **Pairing and connecting a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled mobile phone will work only when the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology option within your mobile phone has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled feature may differ depending on the mobile phone.)**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **In some mobile phones, starting the ignition while talking through *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected. (Switch the call back to your mobile phone when starting the ignition.)**
- **Some features may not be supported in some *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phone and devices.**
- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology enabled operation may be unstable depending on the communication state.**
- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 183



### ✻ NOTICE - USING VOICE COMMAND

- **The voice recognition feature of this product supports recognition of the commands listed within this user's manual.**
- **While using voice recognition, operating the steering remote control or the device will terminate voice recognition and allow you to manually operate desired functions.**
- **Position the microphone above the head of the driver's seat. For superior performance, maintain good posture when saying voice commands.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Voice recognition may not function properly due to outside noise. The following conditions can affect the performance of Voice Recognition:**
  - **When the windows and sunroof are open**
  - **When the heating/cooling system is on**
  - **When passing a tunnel**
  - **When driving on rugged and uneven roads**
- **After downloading *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone book, the system requires some times to convert the phone book into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not operate properly.**
- **Upon inputting your phone book, special symbols and numbers cannot be recognized by voice. For example, "# John Doe%&" will be recognized as "John Doe".**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 184



## VOICE COMMAND (if equipped)

### Starting Voice Command

- To start voice command, shortly press the key on the steering wheel remote controller.
- If voice command is in [Normal Mode], then the system will say “Please say a command. Beep”

❈ If voice command is in [Expert Mode], then the system will only say a “Beep-”

❈ Setting Voice command [Normal Mode]/[Expert Mode]:
Press the SETUP CLOCK key ▸ Select [System] through the TUNE knob or 5 key ▸ Select [Voice Command Mode] through the TUNE knob ▸ Set [Normal Mode]/[Expert Mode]

- Say the voice command.

### ❈ NOTICE

**For proper voice recognition, say the voice command after the guidance message and the “Beep” sound.**

### Skipping the Guidance Message

While the guidance message is being stated, shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds) to discontinue the guidance message and sound the “beep”.

After the “beep”, say the voice command.




### Ending Voice Command

- While using voice command, press and hold the key (over 0.8 seconds) to end voice command.
- While using voice command, pressing the steering wheel remote controller or a different key will end voice command.
- In a state where the system is waiting for your voice command, say “cancel” or “end” to end voice command.
- In a state where the system is waiting for your voice command, shortly press the key (under 0.8 seconds) to end voice command.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 185

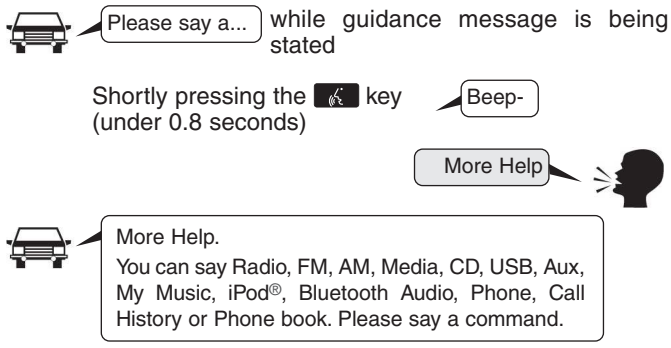


❈ Illustration on using voice commands

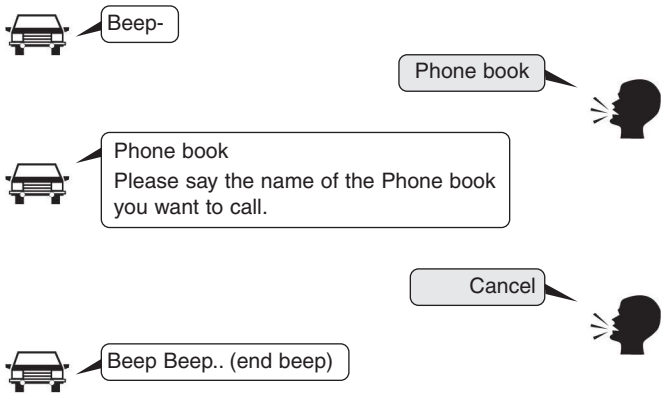
• Starting voice command.
Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):




• Skipping Voice Recognition
Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):




• End voice command.
Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):



EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 186



### Voice Command List

• Common Commands: These commands can be used in most operations. (However a few commands may not be available during certain operations)

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| More Help | Provides guidance on commands that can be used anywhere in the system. |
| Help | Provides guidance on commands that can be used within the current mode. |
| Call<Name> | Calls <Name> saved in phone book<br>Ex) Call “John Smith” |
| Phone | Provides guidance on Phone related commands. After saying this command, say “Call History”, “Phone book”, “Dial Number” to execute corresponding functions. |
| Call History | Displays the Call History screen. |
| Phone book | Displays the phone book screen. After saying this command, say the name of a phone book saved in the phone book to automatically connect the call. |
| Dial Number | Display the Dial number screen. After saying this command, you can say the number that you want to call. |
| Redial | Connects the most recently called number. |
| Radio | • When listening to the radio, displays the next radio screen. (FM1➟FM2➟FMA➟AM➟AMA)<br>• When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played radio screen. |
| FM | • When currently listening to the FM radio, maintains the current state.<br>• When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played FM screen. |
| FM1(FM One) | Displays the FM1 screen. |
| FM2(FM Two) | Displays the FM2 screen. |
| FMA | Displays the FMA screen. |
| AM | Displays the AM screen. |
| AMA | Displays the AMA screen. |
| FM Preset 1~6 | Plays the most recently played broadcast saved in FM Preset 1~6. |
| AM Preset 1~6 | Plays the broadcast saved in AM Preset 1~6. |
| FM 87.5~107.9 | Plays the FM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. |
| AM 530~1710 | Plays the AM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. |
| TA on | Enable Traffic Announcement |
| TA off | Disable Traffic Announcement |
| News on | Enable RDS News feature |
| News off | Disable RDS News feature |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 187



| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Media | Moves to the most recently played media screen. |
| Play Track 1~30 | If a music CD has been inserted, plays the corresponding track. |
| CD | Plays the music saved in the CD. |
| Search CD | Moves to the CD track or file selection screen.<br>• For audio CDs, move to the screen and say the track number to play the corresponding track.<br>• Moves to MP3 CD file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| USB | Plays USB music. |
| Search USB | Moves to USB file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| iPod® | Plays iPod® music. |
| Search iPod® | Moves to the iPod® file selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| My Music | Plays the music saved in My Music. |
| Search My Music | Moves to My Music file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| AUX (Auxiliary) | Plays the connected external device. |
| *Bluetooth* Audio | Plays the music saved in connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device. |
| Mute | Mutes the radio or music volume. |
| Pardon? | Repeats the most recent comment. |
| Cancel (Exit) | Ends voice command. |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 188



- FM/AM radio commands: Commands available during FM, AM radio operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Preset 1~6 | Plays the broadcast saved in Preset 1~6. |
| Auto Store | Automatically selects radio broadcast frequencies with superior reception and saves in Presets 1~6. |
| Preset Save 1~6 | Saves the current broadcast frequency to Preset 1~6. |
| Seek up | Plays the next (higher) receivable broadcast. |
| Seek down | Plays the previous (lower) receivable broadcast. |
| Next Preset | Selects the preset number next to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 4 will be selected.) |
| Previous Preset | Selects the preset number previous to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 2 will be selected.) |
| Scan | Scans receivable frequencies from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each. |
| Preset Scan | Moves to the next preset from the current present and plays for 10 seconds each. |
| AF on | Enable Alternative Frequency feature |
| AF off | Disable Alternative Frequency feature |
| Region | Enable Region feature |

- Audio CD commands: Commands that can be used while listening to Audio CD.

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Region off | Disable Region feature |
| Program Type | Moves to the RDS Program type selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select a desired program type. |
| Random | Randomly plays the tracks within the CD. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play tracks in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current track. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play tracks in sequential order. |
| Next Track | Plays the next track. |
| Previous Track | Plays the previous track. |
| Scan | Scans the tracks from the next track for 10 seconds each. |
| Track 1~30 | Plays the desired track number. |
| Search Track | Moves to the track selection screen. After, say the track name to play the corresponding track. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current track. |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 189



- MP3 CD / USB commands: Commands available during USB and MP3 CD operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Random | Randomly plays the files within the current folder. |
| All Random | Randomly plays all saved files. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play files in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current file. |
| Folder Repeat | Repeats all files in the current folder. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order. |
| Next File | Plays the next file. |
| Previous File | Plays the previous file. |
| Scan | Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each. |
| Search File | Moves to the file selection screen. |
| Search Folder | Moves to the folder selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current file. |
| Copy | Copies the current file into My Music. |

- iPod® Commands: Commands available during iPod® operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| All Random | Randomly plays all saved songs. |
| Random | Randomly plays the songs within the current category. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play songs in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current song. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play songs in sequential order. |
| Next Song | Plays the next song. |
| Previous Song | Plays the previous song. |
| Search Song | Moves to the song selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current song. |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 190



• My Music Commands: Commands available during My Music operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Random | Randomly plays all saved files. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play files in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current file. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order. |
| Next File | Plays the next file. |
| Previous File | Plays the previous file. |
| Scan | Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each. |
| Search File | Moves to the file selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current file. |
| Delete | Deletes the current file. You will bypass an additional confirmation process. |
| Delete All | Deletes all files saved in My Music. You will bypass an additional confirmation process. |

• *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Commands: Commands available during *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio streaming from mobile phone operation Command Operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Play | Plays the currently paused song. |
| Pause | Pauses the current song. |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 191



## APPENDIX

| Name | | Description |
|---|---|---|
| AST (A.store) | | Automatically selects and saves channels |
| SDVC | | Speed Dependent Volume Control |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 192



■ **CD Player : AC111ELEE**



EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 193



## SYSTEM CONTROLLERS AND FUNCTIONS

❊ Display and settings may differ depending on the selected audio.

### Audio Head Unit




1. ▲ (EJECT)
• Ejects the disc.

2. RADIO
• Converts to Radio(FM/AM) mode.
• Each time the key is pressed,the mode is changed in order of FM1 ➟ FM2 ➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA.

3. MEDIA
• Start Media mode
• Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of CD, USB(iPod®) AUX, My Music, BT Audio.

4. PHONE
• Converts to Phone mode
❊ When a phone is not connected, the connection screen is displayed.

5. PWR/VOL knob
• ◎ Power : Press to turn power on/off.
• ◎ Volume : Turn left/right to control volume.

6. SEEK TRACK
• When pressed shortly(under 0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode : plays previous/next frequency.
- Media (CD/USB/iPod®/My Music) modes : changes the track, Song(file)
• When pressed and held (0.8 seconds)
- Radio mode : continuously changes the frequency. Upon release, plays the current frequency.
- Media(CD/USB/iPod®/My Music) modes : rewinds or fast forwards the track or file
- During a Handsfree call, controls the call volume.

7. PTY FOLDER
• RDS Radio mode : searches RDS program types.
• CD/USB/MP3 modes : searches folders.

8. RESET
• Forced system termination and system restart.




9. ☾
• Turns the monitor display on/off.

10. CLOCK
Displays the time/date/day.

11. TA/SCAN
• Radio Mode :
- Short key : TA On/Off
- Long key : previews all receivable broadcasts for 5 seconds each.
• Media (CD/USB/My Music) modes :
- Long key : Previews each song (file) for 10 seconds each.

12. SETUP
Converts to Setup mode.

13. ◎ TUNE knob
• Radio mode : turn to change broadcast frequencies.
• Media (CD/USB/iPod®/My Music) modes : turn to search tracks/channels/files.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 195



## Radio Mode

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode Display
Displays currently operating mode

2. Frequency
Displays the current frequency

3. Preset
Displays current preset number [1] ~ [6]

4. Preset Display
Displays saved presets

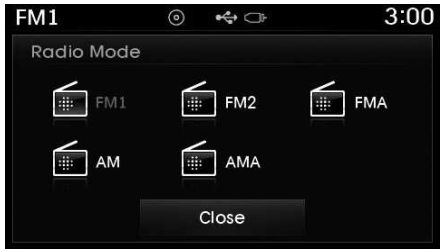
5. Autostore
Automatically saves frequencies with superior reception to Preset buttons

6. RDS Menu
Displays the RDS Menu

7. RDS Info
Displays RDS broadcast information

### Switching to Radio Mode

Pressing the RADIO key will change the operating mode in order of FM1 ➟FM2➟FMA➟AM➟AMA.




If [Pop-up Mode] is turned on within SETUP ▸[Display], then pressing the RADIO key will display the Radio Pop-up Mode screen.

Turn the TUNE knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

### Searching Radio Frequencies

***Using Seek***

Press the SEEK TRACK key to play the previous/next frequency.

***Using TUNE***

Turn the TUNE knob to select the desired frequency.

- FM : Increases/decreased by 50kHz
- AM : Increases/decreased by 9kHz

### Using Radio Mode

***Selecting/Saving Presets***

Press the 1 ~ 6 buttons to play the desired preset.




Press the button to display the broadcast information for the frequency saved to each button.




### ✻ NOTICE

**While listening to a frequency you want to save as a preset, press and hold one of the [1] ~ [6] preset buttons (over 0.8 seconds) to save the current frequency to the selected preset.**

***Auto Store***

Press the button to automatically save receivable frequencies to Preset buttons.

### ✻ NOTICE

**While Auto Store is operating, pressing the [Cancel] button again will cancel Auto Store and restore the previous frequency.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 197



### *RDS Menu*

Press the ⚙ button to set the AF (Alternative Frequency), Region and News features.




## ✻ NOTICE

**The RDS Menu is not supported within AM or AMA mode.**

### *Scan*

Press and hold the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) to preview frequencies with superior reception for 5 seconds each.

## ✻ NOTICE

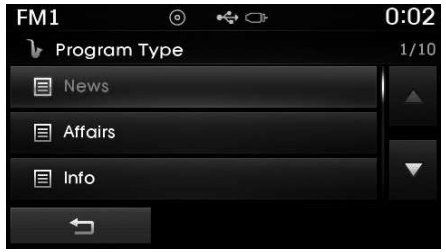
**Once scan is complete, the previous frequency will be restored.**
**While Scan is operating, pressing and holding the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) will cancel the scan operation.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 198



### Program Type

Press the PTY FOLDER key to search for the desired Program type.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired program type. Once you find the desired program type, press the TUNE knob.

After selecting the desired Program Type and while the Program Type is blinking (approximately 5 seconds), pressing the SEEK TRACK key will allow you to select a different Program Type broadcast.

### TA (Traffic Announcement)

Press the TA/SCAN key to turn the TA (Traffic Announcement) feature On/Off.



EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 199



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE DISCS

- **This device has been manufactured to be compatible with software bearing the following logo marks.**
- **Do not clean discs with chemical solutions, such as record sprays, antistatic sprays, antistatic liquids, benzene, or thinners.**
- **After using a disc, put the disc back in its original case to prevent disc scratches.**
- **Hold discs by their edges or within the center hole to prevent damages to disc surfaces.**
- **Do not introduce foreign substances into the disc insert/eject slot. Introducing foreign substances could damage the device interior.**
- **Do not insert two discs simultaneously.**
- **When using CD-R/CD-RW discs, differences in disc reading and playing times may occur depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the recording method as used by the user.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Clean fingerprints and dust off the disc surface (coated side) with a soft cloth.**
- **The use of CD-R/CD-RW discs attached with labels may result in disc slot jams or difficulties in disc removal. Such discs may also result in noise while playing.**
- **Some CD-R/CD-RW discs may not properly operate depending on the disc manufacturer, production method and the record method as used by the user. If problems persist, trying using a different CD as continued use may result in malfunctions.**
- **The performance of this product may differ depending on the CD-RW Drive Software.**
- **Copy-protected CDs such as S-type CDs may not function in the device. DATA discs cannot be played. (However, such discs may still operate but will do so abnormally.)**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not use abnormally shaped discs (8cm, heart-shaped, octagon-shaped) as such discs could lead to malfunctions.**
- **If the disc is straddled on the disc slot without removal for 10 seconds, the disc will automatically be re-inserted into the disc player.**
- **Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure (e.g. copy CD-R, CDs with labels)**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 200



## MP3 File Information

### • Supported Audio Formats

| | |
|---|---|
| File System | ISO 9660 Level 1 |
| | ISO 9660 Level 2 |
| | Romeo / Juliet (128 characters) |
| Audio Compression | MPEG1 Audio Layer3 |
| | MPEG2 Audio Layer3 |
| | MPEG2.5 Audio Layer3 |
| | Windows Media Audio Ver 7.X & 8.X |

❈ File formats that do not comply with the above formats may not be properly recognized or play without properly displaying file names or other information.

### • Support for Compressed Files

1. Supported Bitrates (Kbps)

| BIT RATE(kbps) | MPEG1 Layer3 | MPEG2 Layer3 | MPEG2.5 Layer3 | WMA High Range |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 32 | 8 | 8 | 48 |
| | 40 | 16 | 16 | 64 |
| | 48 | 24 | 24 | 80 |
| | 56 | 32 | 32 | 96 |
| | 64 | 40 | 40 | 128 |
| | 80 | 48 | 48 | 160 |
| | 96 | 56 | 56 | 192 |
| | 112 | 64 | 64 | |
| | 128 | 80 | 80 | |
| | 160 | 96 | 96 | |
| | 192 | 112 | 112 | |
| | 224 | 128 | 128 | |
| | 256 | 144 | 144 | |
| | 320 | 160 | 160 | |

2. Sampling Frequencies (Hz)

| MPEG1 | MPEG2 | MPEG2.5 | WMA |
|---|---|---|---|
| 44100 | 22050 | 11025 | 32000 |
| 48000 | 24000 | 12000 | 44100 |
| 3000 | 16000 | 8000 | 48000 |

• For MP3/WMA compression files, differences in sound quality will occur depending on the bitrate. (Higher sound quality can be experienced with higher bitrates.)

• This device only recognizes files with MP3/WMA extensions. Other file extensions may not be properly recognized.

3. Maximum number of recognized folders and files

- Folder : 255 folders for CD, 2,000 folders for USB
- File : 999 files for CD, 6,000 files for USB

❈ There are no limitations to the number of recognized folder levels

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 201



**• Language Support (Unicode Support)**

1. English: 94 characters
2. Special characters and Symbols : 986 characters

❈ Languages other than Korean and English (including Chinese) are not included.

3. Text Display (Based on Unicode)
   - File name: Maximum 64 English characters
   - Folder name: Max 32 English characters

❈ Using the scroll feature allows you to see the entire name of files with names that are too long to be displayed at once.

**• Compatibility by Disc Type**

1. Playing MIXED CDs: First plays the audio CD, then plays the compressed file(s).
2. Playing EXTRA CDs: First plays the audio CD, then plays the compressed file(s).
3. Playing multisession CDs: Plays in order of sessions
   - MIXED CD : CD type in which both MP3 and audio CD files are recognized in one disc.
   - Multisession CD CD type that includes more than two sessions. Different from Extra CDs, multisession CDs are recorded by sessions and have no media limitation.

**• Precautions upon Writing CDs**

1. In all cases except when creating multisession discs, check the close session option before creating the disc. Though product malfunctions will not occur, some time may be required for the device to check whether the session state is closed (approximately 25 seconds). (Additional time may also be required depending on the number of folders or files.)
2. Changing the MP3/WMA file extensions or changing files of other extensions to MP3/WMA may result in product malfunction.
3. When naming files with MP3/WMA file extensions, write using only Korean and English. (Languages other than Korean and English are not supported and are displayed as blank.)
4. Unauthorized use or duplication of music files are prohibited by law.
5. Prolonged use of CD-R/CD-RW discs that do not satisfy related standards and/or specifications could result in product malfunction.
6. Unauthorized use or duplication of MP3/WMA files is prohibited by law.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 202



## MEDIA MODE

### Switching to Media Mode

Pressing the MEDIA key will change the operating mode in order of CD ➟ USB (iPod®) ➟ AUX ➟ My Music ➟ BT Audio.




If [Pop-up Mode] / [Mode Pop-up] is turned on within SETUP ▸ [Display], then pressing the MEDIA key will display the Media Pop-up Mode screen.

Turn the TUNE knob to move the focus. Press the knob to select.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The media mode pop up screen can be displayed only when there are two or more media modes turned on.**

### Title Icon

When a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology, iPod®, USB, or AUX device is connected or a CD is inserted, the corresponding mode icon will be displayed.




| Icon | Title |
|---|---|
| | *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology |
| | CD |
| | iPod® |
| | USB |
| | AUX |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 203



## AUDIO CD MODE

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode
Displays currently operating mode

2. Operation State
From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/ Scan, displays the currently operating function

3. Track Info
Displays information about the current track

4. Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

5. Play Time
Displays the current play time

6. Info
Shows detailed information about the current track

7. Random(Shuffle)
Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off

8. Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

9. List
Moves to the list screen

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 204



## Using Audio CD Mode

### *Playing/Pausing CD Tracks*

Once an audio CD is inserted, the mode will automatically start and begin playing.




While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Only genuine audio CDs are supported. Other discs may result in recognition failure (e.g. copy CD-R, CDs with labels)**
- **The artist and title information are displayed on the screen if track information is included within the audio CD.**

### *Changing Tracks*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next track.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the track has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current track from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the track has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous track.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 205



***Selecting from the List***

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired track.




Once you find the desired track, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

***Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Tracks***

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current track.

***Scan (for RDS model)***

Press and hold the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Pressing and holding the key again to turn off.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 206



## Audio CD Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random(Shuffle), Repeat and List features.




***Info***

Press the i button to display details about the current disc.

***Random(Shuffle)***

Press the button to play tracks in random(Shuffle) order.

Press the button again to turn the Random(Shuffle) feature off.

- Random(Shuffle): Plays all tracks in random(Shuffle) order.

***Repeat***

Press the button to repeat the current track. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

- Repeat: Repeats the current track.

***List***

Press the button to display the track list screen.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for tracks. Once the desired track is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 207



## MP3 CD MODE

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode
Displays currently operating mode.

2. Operation State
From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/ Scan, displays the currently operating function

3. File Index
Displays the current file number

4. File Info
Displays information about the current file

5. Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

6. Play Time
Displays the current play time

7. Info
Shows detailed information about the current file

8. Random(Shuffle)
Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off

9. Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

10. Copy
Copies the current file into My Music

11. List
Moves to the list screen

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 208



## Using MP3 CD Mode

### *Playing/Pausing MP3 Files*

Once an MP3 disc is inserted the mode will automatically start and being playing.




While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If there are numerous files and folders within the disc, reading time could take more than 10 seconds and the list may not be displayed or song searches may not operate. Once loading is complete, try again.**

### *Changing Files*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

### *Selecting from the List*

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.




Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

### *Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files*

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

### *Scan(for RDS model)*

Press and hold the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Pressing and holding the key again to turn off.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 209



***Searching Folders***

Press the PTY FOLDER key to select and search folders.

Once the desired folder is displayed, press the TUNE knob to select.




The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 210



### MP3 CD Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random(Shuffle), Repeat, Copy and List features.




*Info*

Press the *i* button to display details about the current file.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **When the 'Folder File' option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **When the 'Album Artist Song' option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information are recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.**

*Random(Shuffle)*

Press the button to play files in random(Shuffle) order.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Random (Shuffle) Folder ➟ Random (Shuffle) All➟ Off.

- Random(Shuffle) Folder : Plays all files within the current folder in Random (Shuffle) order.
- Random(Shuffle) All : Plays all files in Random(Shuffle) order.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 211



***Repeat***

Press the button to repeat the current file or folder.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Repeat ➟Repeat Folder➟Off.

- Repeat: Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder: Repeats all files within the current Folder.

***Copying Files***

Press the button to copy the current file into My Music.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select 'Yes'.**

***List***

Press the button to display the file list screen.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 212



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE USB DEVICE

- **Connect the USB device after turning on the engine. The USB device may become damaged if it is already connected when the ignition is turned on.The USB device may not operate properly if the car ignition is turned on or off with the USB device connected.**
- **Heed caution to static electricity when connecting/disconnecting USB devices.**
- **Encoded MP3 Players will not be recognized when connected as an external device.**
- **When connecting an external USB device, the device may not properly recognize the USB is in some states.**
- **Only products formatted with byte/sectors under 64Kbyte will be recognized.**
- **This device recognizes USB devices formatted in FAT 12/16/32 file formats. This device does not recognize files in NTFS file format.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Some USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.**
- **Avoid contact between the USB connector with bodily parts or foreign objects.**
- **Repeated connecting/disconnecting of USB devices within short periods of time may result in product malfunction.**
- **A strange noise may occur when disconnecting the USB.**
- **Make sure to connect/disconnect external USB devices with the audio power turned off.**
- **The amount of time required to recognize the USB device may differ depending on the type, size or file formats stored in the USB. Such differences in time are not indications of malfunctions.**
- **The device only supports USB devices used to play music files.**
- **USB images and videos are not supported.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not use the USB I/F to charge batteries or USB accessories that generate heat. Such acts may lead to worsened performance or damage to the device.**
- **The device may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used. Connect the USB directly with the multimedia terminal of the vehicle.**
- **When using mass storage USB devices with separate logical drives, only files saved to the root drive can be played.**
- **Files may not properly operate if application programs are installed to the USBs.**
- **The device may not operate normally if MP3 Players, cellular phones, digital cameras, or other electronic devices (USB devices not recognized as portable disk drives) are connected with the device.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 213



**(Continued)**

- **Charging through the USB may not work for some mobile devices.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using a USB memory type besides (Metal Cover Type) USB Memory.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.**
- **The device will not support files locked by DRM (Digital Rights Management.)**
- **USB memory sticks used by connecting an Adaptor (SD Type or CF Type) may not be properly recognized.**
- **The device may not operate properly when using USB HDDs or USBs subject to connection failures caused by vehicle vibrations. (e.g. i-stick type)**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Avoid use of USB memory products that can also be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories. Use of such products may cause damage to the USB jack.**



- **Connecting an MP3 device or phone through various channels, such as AUX/BT or Audio/USB mode may result in pop noises or abnormal operation.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 214



## USB MODE

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode
Displays currently operating mode

2. Operation State
From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/ Scan, displays the currently operating function

3. File Index
Displays the current file number

4. File Info
Displays information about the current file

5. Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

6. Play Time
Displays the current play time

7. Info
Displays detailed information for the current file

8. Random(Shuffle)
Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off

9. Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

10. Copy
Copies the current file into My Music

11. List
Moves to the list screen

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 215



## Using USB Mode

### *Playing/Pausing USB Files*

Once a USB is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing a USB file.







While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Loading may require additional time if there are many files and folders within the USB and result in faulty list display or file searching. Normal operations will resume once loading is complete.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using a USB memory type besides (Metal Cover Type) USB Memory.**

### *Changing Files*

Press the SEEK TRACK keys to move to the previous or next file.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 216



***Selecting from the List***

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.




Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

***Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files***

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

***Scan***

Press and hold the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Pressing and holding the key again to turn off.

***Searching Folders***

Press the PTY FOLDER key to select and search folders.




Once the desired folder is displayed, press the TUNE knob to select.

The first file within the selected folder will begin playing.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 217



### USB Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random(Shuffle), Repeat, Copy and List features.




***Info***

Press the *i* button to display details about the current file.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **When the 'Folder File' option is set as the default display within Display setup, the album/artist/file information are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **When the 'Album Artist Song' option is set as the default display, the folder name/file name are displayed as detailed file information.**
- **The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information are recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.**

***Random(Shuffle)***

Press the button to play files in random(Shuffle) order.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Random(Shuffle) Folder ➟ Random(Shuffle) All ➟ Off.

- Random(Shuffle) Folder : Plays the files in the current folder in random(Shuffle) order.
- Random(Shuffle) All : Plays all files in random(Shuffle) order.

***Repeat***

Press the button to repeat the current file or folder.

Each time the button is pressed, the feature changes in order of Repeat➟ Repeat Folder ➟ Off.

- Repeat (Icon) : Repeats the current file.
- Repeat Folder (Icon) : Repeats all files within the current folder.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 218



***Copying Files***

Press the button to copy the current file into My Music.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Selecting another feature during copying will display a pop-up asking whether you wish to cancel copying. To cancel, select 'Yes'.**

***List***

Press the button to display the file list screen.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 219



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE iPod® DEVICE

- **iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.**
- **In order to use the iPod® while operating the keys, you must use a dedicated iPod® cable. (the cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod®/iPhone® products)**
- **If the iPod® is connected to the vehicle while it is playing, a high pitch sound could occur for approximately 1-2 seconds immediately after connecting. If possible, connect the iPod® to the vehicle with the iPod® stopped/paused.**
- **During ACC ON state, connecting the iPod® through the iPod® cable will charge the iPod® through the car audio system.**
- **When connecting with the iPod® cable, make sure to fully insert the jack to prevent communication interference.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When the EQ features of an external device, such as the iPod®, and the audio system are both active, EQ effects could overlap and cause sound deterioration and distortion. Whenever possible, turn off the EQ feature within the external device upon use by connecting with the audio system.**
- **Noise may occur when an iPod® or AUX device is connected. When such devices are not being used, disconnect the device for storage.**
- **When the iPod® or AUX device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may result in noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**
- **Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.**
- **If your iPhone is connected to both the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology to change the sound output (source).**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **iPod® mode cannot be operated when the iPod® cannot be recognized due to the playing of versions that do not support communication protocols, cases of iPod®abnormalities and defects.**
- **For fifth generation iPod® Nano devices, the iPod® may not be recognized when the battery level is low. Please charge the iPod® for use.**
- **Search/play orders shown within the iPod® device may differ with the orders shown within the audio system.**
- **If the iPod® malfunctions due to an iPod® device defect, reset the iPod® and try again. (To learn more, refer to your iPod® manual)**
- **Some iPod®s may not sync with the System depending on its version. If the Media is removed before the Media is recognized, then the system may not properly restore the previously operated mode. (iPad charging is not supported.)**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 220



## iPod MODE

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode
Displays currently operating mode

2. Operation State
From Repeat/Random(Shuffle), displays the currently operating function

3. Song Index
Displays the current song/total number of songs

4. Song Info
Displays information about the current song

5. Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

6. Play Time
Displays the current play time

7. Random(Shuffle)
Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off

8. Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

9. List
Moves to the list screen

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 221



## Using iPod® Mode

### *Playing/Pausing iPod Songs*

Once an iPod® is connected, the mode will automatically start and begin playing an iPod® song.




While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

**iPod®s with unsupported communication protocols may not properly operate in the audio system.**

### *Changing Songs*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next song.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the song has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current song from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the song has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous song.**
- **Slight time differences may exist depending your iPod® product.**

### *Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Songs*

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current song.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 222



***Searching Categories***

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired category.



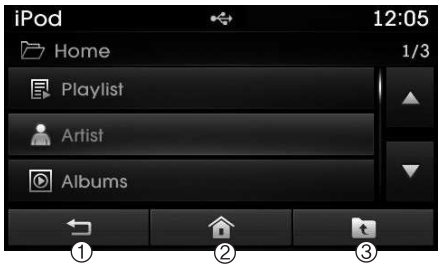

Once you find the desired category, press the TUNE knob to select and play.

### ✻ NOTICE

**There are eight categories that can be searched, including Playlists, Artists, Albums, Genres, Songs, Composers, Audiobooks and Podcasts.**

### Category Menu

Within the iPod® Category menu, you will have access to the , Home, and features.




1. : Displays the play screen
2. : Moves to the iPod® root category screen
3. : Moves to the previous category

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the search mode is accessed while playing a song, the most recently searched category is displayed.**
- **Search steps upon initial connection may differ depending on the type of iPod® device.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 223



## iPod® Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Random(Shuffle), Repeat and List features.




### *Random(Shuffle)*

Press the button to play songs in random(Shuffle) order.

Press the button again to turn the random(Shuffle)feature off.

### *Repeat*

Press the button to repeat the current song. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

• Repeat : Repeats the current song

### *List*

Press the button to display the Category Menu.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired category.

Once you find the desired category, press the TUNE knob to select and play.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 224



## AUX MODE

### Using AUX Mode

Press the MEDIA key ▶ Select [AUX]




An external device can be connected to play music.

### Connecting an External Device

External audio players (Camcorders, car VCR, etc.) can be played through a dedicated cable.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If an external device connector is connected with the AUX terminal, then AUX mode will automatically operate. Once the connector is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.**
- **AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player (camcorder, car VCR, etc.) has been connected.**
- **The AUX volume can be controlled separately from other audio modes.**
- **Connecting a connector jack to the AUX terminal without an external device will convert the system to AUX mode, but only output noise. When an external device is not being used, also remove the connector jack.**
- **When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**
- **Fully insert the AUX cable to the AUX jack upon use.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 225



## MY MUSIC MODE

### Basic Mode Screen




1. Mode
Displays currently operating mode

2. Operation State
From Repeat/Random(Shuffle)/ Scan, displays the currently operating function

3. File Index
Displays the current file/total number of files

4. File Info
Displays information about the current file

5. Play/Pause
Changes the play/pause state

6. Play Time
Displays the current play time

7. Info
Displays detailed information for the current file

8. Random(Shuffle)
Turns the Random(Shuffle) feature on/off

9. Repeat
Turns the Repeat feature on/off

10. Delete
Deletes the current file

11. List
Moves to the list screen

## Using My Music Mode

### *Playing/Pausing My Music Files*




While playing, press the ⏸ button to pause and press ▶ button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If there are no files saved within My Music, the [My Music] button will be disabled.**

### *Changing Files*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key after the file has been playing for 2 seconds will start the current file from the beginning.**
- **Pressing the SEEK TRACK key before the file has been playing for 1 seconds will start the previous file.**

### *Selecting from the List*

Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for the desired file.




Once you find the desired file, press the TUNE knob to start playing.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 227



***Rewinding / Fast-forwarding Files***

While playing, press and hold the SEEK TRACK key (over 0.8 seconds) to rewind or fast-forward the current file.

***Scan(for RDS model)***

Press and hold the TA/SCAN key (over 0.8 seconds) to play the first 10 seconds of each file.

Pressing and holding the key again to turn off.

## My Music Mode Menu

Within this mode, you will have access to the Info, Random(Shuffle), Repeat, Delete and List features.




***Info***

Press the *i* button to display details about the current file.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The title, artist and album info are displayed only when such information is recorded within the MP3 file ID3 tag.**

***Random***

Press the button to play files in random order. Press the button again to turn the Random feature off.

***Repeat***

Press the button to repeat the current song. Press the button again to turn the repeat feature off.

***Deleting Files***

Press the button to delete the current file.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 228



***List***

Press the button to display the file list screen.




Turn the TUNE knob left/right to search for files. Once the desired file is displayed, press the knob to select and play.

## List Menu

From the List screen, it is possible to delete files you previously saved into My Music.




Press the button or individually select the files you want to delete. Once files are selected, the button and buttons will be enabled.

1) : Moves to the previous screen
2) Select All: Selects all files
3) Unselet All: Deselects all selected files
4) Delete: Deletes selected files

After selecting the files you want to delete, press the button to delete the selected files.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **If there is memory available, up to 6,000 files can be saved.**
- **Identical files cannot be copied more than 1,000 times.**
- **To check memory information, go to SETUP ▶ [System] ▶ [Memory Information]**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 229



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode

- ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology Audio Mode can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone has been connected.**
- ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology Audio Mode will not be available when connecting mobile phones that do not support this feature.**
- **While *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio is playing, if the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone is connected, then the music will also stop.**
- **Moving the Track up/down while playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio mode may result in pop noises in some mobile phones.**
- ***Bluetooth***® **Wireless Technology streaming audio may not be supported in some mobile phones.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When returning to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio mode after ending a call, the mode may not automatically restart in some mobile phones.**
- **Receiving an incoming call or making an outgoing call while playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio may result in audio interference.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 230



## *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology AUDIO MODE

### Using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode

#### *Playing/Pausing Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology *Audio*

Once a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is connected, the mode will automatically start.




While playing, press the ▶II button to pause and press ▶II button to play.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The play/pause feature may operate differently depending on the mobile phone.**

#### *Changing Files*

Press the SEEK TRACK key to move to the previous or next file.

#### *Setting Connection*

If a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device has not been connected, press the SETUP key ▶[Phone] button to display the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection screen.

It is possible to use the pair phone, connect/disconnect and delete features from your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio is not operating properly, check whether the feature is turned off at SETUP ▶[Phone] ▶[Audio streaming] (Streaming Audio). If the feature is off, turn back on and try again.**
- **If music is not yet playing from your mobile device after converting to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio mode, pressing the play button once may start playing the mode. Check to see that music is playing from the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device after converting to *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio Mode.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 231



## *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology

### Using *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree

- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology refers to a short-distance wireless networking technology which uses a 2.4GHz ~ 2.48GHz frequency to connect various devices within a certain distance.
- Supported within PCs, external devices, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phones, PDAs, various electronic devices, and automotive environments, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology allows data to be transmitted at high speeds without having to use a connector cable.
- *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology mobile phones through the audio system.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Bluetooth® Wireless Technology Handsfree is a feature that enables drivers to practice safe driving. Connecting the car audio system with a Bluetooth® Wireless Technology phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phone book. Before using the Bluetooth® Wireless Technology , carefully read the contents of this user's manual.***
- ***Excessive use or operations while driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents.***
- ***Do not operate the device excessively while driving.***
- ***Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time is dangerous and may lead to accidents. When driving, view the screen only for short periods of time.***

### ✻ NOTICE - USING UPON CONNECTING *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology PHONE

- **Before connecting the car audio system with the mobile phone, check to see that the mobile phone supports *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features.**
- **Even if the phone supports *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology, the phone will not be found during device searches if the phone has been set to hidden state or the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology power is turned off. Disable the hidden state or turn on the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology power prior to searching/connecting with the car audio system.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If you do not want to automatically connect your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone, try the following.**
  1. **Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your mobile phone.**
  - **For more information on *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features within your mobile, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**
  2. **Turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system.**
  - **To turn off the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature in your car audio system, go to SETUP > [Phone] and [turn off] the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology feature.**
- **Park the vehicle when connecting the car audio system with your mobile phone.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these steps to try again.**
  1. **Turn the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology function within the mobile phone off/on and try again.**
  2. **Turn the mobile phone power Off/On and try again.**
  3 **Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then again.**
  4. **Reboot the audio system and try again.**
  5. **Delete all paired devices, pair and try again.**
- **The Handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 233



**(Continued)**

- ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device.**
  - **Answering and placing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree calls**
  - **Menu operation during call (Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, Outgoing volume)**
  - **Download Call History**
  - **Download Mobile Phone book**
  - **Phone book/Call History Auto Download**
  - ***Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device auto connection - *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Audio**
- **It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices to the car system.**
- **Only one *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device can be connected at a time.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Other devices cannot be paired while a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technologydevice is already connected.**
- **When a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is being connected, the connection process cannot be canceled.**
- **Only *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree and *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio related features will operate within this system.**
- **Normal operation is possible only for devices that support Handsfree or audio features, such as a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology mobile phone or a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio device.**
- **Only one function can be used at a time between the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology Handsfree and *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio. (While playing *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology audio, streaming will end upon entering the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone screen.)**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If a connected *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device becomes disconnected for various reasons, such as being out of range, turning the device OFF, or a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology communication error, *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices are automatically searched and connected.**
- **Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 234



## Pairing a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Device

### What is *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Pairing?

Pairing refers to the process of synchronizing your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone or device with the car audio system for connection. Pairing is necessary to connect and use the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology feature.

### Pairing PHONE Key / Key on the Steering Remote Controller

***When No Devices have been Paired***

1. Press the PHONE key or the key on the steering remote controller. The following screen is displayed.
2. Press the OK button to enter the Pair Phone screen.







1) Device : Name of device as shown when searching from your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device
2) Passkey : Passkey used to pair the device

3. From your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device (i.e. Mobile Phone), search and select your car audio system.
4. After a few moments, a screen is displayed where the passkey is entered. Here, enter the passkey “0000” to pair your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device with the car audio system.
5. Once pairing is complete, the following screen is displayed.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 235



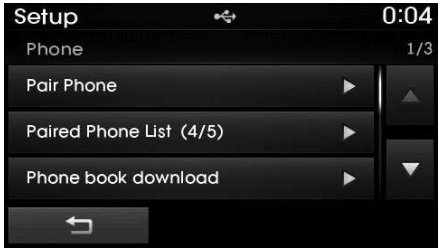
## ✻ NOTICE




**If *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices are paired but none are currently connected, pressing the PHONE key or the key on the steering wheel displays the following screen. Press the [Pair] button to pair a new device or press the [Connect] to connect a previously paired device.**

### Pairing through [PHONE] Setup

Press the SETUP key ▶Select [Phone]▶Select [Pair Phone] ▶Select TUNE knob




The following steps are the same as those described in the section "When No Devices have been Paired" on the previous page.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **The waiting period during phone pairing will last for one minute. The pairing process will fail if the device is not paired within the given time. If the pairing process fails, you must start the process from the beginning.**
- **Generally, most *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices will automatically connect once pairing is complete. However, some devices may require a separate verification process to connect. Check to see whether *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology has been properly connected within your mobile phone.**
- **List of paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology devices can be viewed at SETUP ▶ [Phone] ▶ [Paired Phone List].**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 236



### Connecting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List]




1) Connected Phone : Device that is currently connected
2) Paired Phone : Device that is paired but not connected

From the paired phone list, select the device you want to connect and press the button.



EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 237



## Changing Priority

***What is Priority?***

It is possible to pair up to five *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices with the car audio system. The "Change Priority" feature is used to set the connection priority of paired phones. However, the most recently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List]




From the paired phone list, select the phone you want to switch to the highest priority, then press the button from the Menu. The selected device will be changed to the highest priority.




### ✻ NOTICE

**When a device is currently connected, even if you change the priority to a different device, the currently connected phone will always be set as the highest priority.**

## Disconnecting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List]




From the paired phone list, select the currently connected device and press the button.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 238



### Deleting a Device

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List]




From the paired phone list, select the device you want to delete and press the button.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **When deleting the currently connected device, the device will automatically be disconnected to proceed with the deleting process.**
- **If a paired *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is deleted, the device's call history and phone book data will also be deleted.**
- **To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 239



## USING *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology

### Phone Menu Screen

#### *Phone Menus*

With a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected, press the PHONE key to display the Phone menu screen.




1) Dial Number : Displays the dial screen where numbers can be dialed to make calls
2) Call History : Displays the call history list screen
3) Phone book : Displays the Phone book list screen
4) Setup : Displays Phone related settings

**✻ NOTICE**

- **If you press the [Call History] button but there is no call history data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download call history data.**
- **If you press the [Phone book] button but there is no phone book data, a prompt is displayed which asks whether to download phone book data.**
- **This feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information on download support, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**

### Calling by Dialing a Number

Press the PHONE key ▸ Select [Dial Number]




1) Dial Pad : Used to enter phone number
2) Call : If a number has been entered, calls the number If no number has been entered, switches to call history screen
3) End : Deletes the entered phone number
4) Delete : Deletes entered numbers one digit at a time

### Answering Calls

***Answering a Call***

Answering a call with a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device connected will display the following screen.




1) Caller : Displays the other party's name when the incoming caller is saved within your phone book
2) Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number
3) Accept : Accept the incoming call
4) Reject : Reject the incoming call

### ✻ NOTICE

- **When an incoming call pop-up is displayed, most Audio and SETUP mode features are disabled. Only the call volume will operate.**
- **The telephone number may not be properly displayed in some mobile phones.**
- **When a call is answered with the mobile phone, the call mode will automatically revert to Private mode.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 241



***During a Handsfree Call***




1) Caller : Displays the other party's name if the incoming caller is saved within your phone book
2) Incoming Number : Displays the incoming number
3) Call time : Displays the call time
4) End : Ends call
5) Private : Converts to Private mode
6) Out Vol. : Sets call volume as heard by the other party
7) Mute : Turns Mic Mute On/Off

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the mic is muted, the other party will not be able to hear your voice.**

### Call History

Press the PHONE key ▶ Select [Call History]




A list of incoming, outgoing and missed calls is displayed.

Press the [Download] button to download the call history.

1) Call History :
   - Displays recent calls (call history)
   - Connects call upon selection
2) Download : Download Recent Call History

### ✻ NOTICE

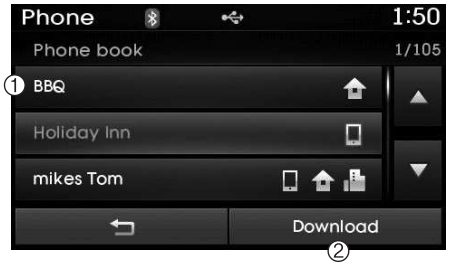
- **The call history list will display up to 30 outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.**
- **Upon downloading call histories, previously saved histories are deleted.**
- **Incoming calls with hidden caller IDs will not be saved in the call history list.**
- **Previously saved phone book entries are stored even if a device is disconnected and re-connected.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 242



### Phone Book

Press the PHONE key ▶ Select [Phone book]




The list of saved phone book entries is displayed. Press the [Download] button to download the call history.

1) Contact List :
   - Displays downloaded phone book entries
   - Connects call upon selection
2) Download : Download phone book entries

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be copied into car phone book.**
- **Upon downloading phone book data, previously saved phone book data will be deleted.**
- **Downloading is not possible if the phone book download feature is turned off within the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device. Also, some devices may require device authorization upon attempting to download. If downloading cannot be normally conducted, check the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device setting or the screen state.**
- **Caller ID information will not be displayed for unsaved callers.**
- **The download feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. Check to see that the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device supports the download feature.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 243



### ✻ NOTICE - USING THE Voice Recognition

- **When using the voice recognition feature, only commands listed within the user's manual are supported.**
- **Be aware that during the operation of the voice recognition system, pressing any key other than the key or touching the screen will terminate voice recognition mode.**
- **For superior voice recognition performance, position the microphone used for voice recognition above the head of the driver's seat and maintain a proper position when saying commands.**
- **Within the following situations, voice recognition may not function properly due to external sound.**
  - **When the windows and sunroof are open**
  - **When the wind of the cooling / heating device is strong**
  - **When entering and passing through tunnels**
  - **When driving on rugged and uneven roads**
  - **During severe rain (heavy rains, windstorms)**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Phone related voice commands can be used only when a *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology device is connected.**
- **When making calls by stating a name, the corresponding contact must be downloaded and stored within the audio system.**
- **After downloading the *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology phone book, it takes some times to convert the phone book data into voice information. During this time, voice recognition may not properly operate.**
- **Pronounce the voice commands naturally and clearly as if in a normal conversation.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 244



## VOICE RECOGNITION

### Using Voice Recognition

***Starting Voice Recognition***

Shortly press the key on the steering wheel remote controller Say a command




If voice recognition is in [Normal Mode], then the system will say “Please say a command. Beep~”

- If voice recognition is in [Expert Mode], then the system will only say a “Beep~”
- To change the Normal Mode/Expert Mode setting, go to SETUP ▶ [System] ▶ [Prompt Feedback] / [Voice Recognition System].

### ✻ NOTICE

**For proper recognition, say the command after the voice instruction and beep tone.**

Contact List Best Practices

1) Do not store single-name entries (e.g., “Bob”, “Mom”, “Kim”, etc.). Instead, always use full names (including first and last names) for all contacts (e.g., use “Jacob Stevenson” instead of “Dad”).
2) Do not use abbreviations (i.e., use “Lieutenant” instead of “Lt.” or “Sergeant” instead of “Sgt.”).
3) Do not use acronyms (i.e., use “County Finance Department” instead of “CFD”).
4) Do not use special characters (e.g., “@”, “hyphen -“, “asterisk *”, ampersand &”).
5) If a name is not recognized from the contact list, change it to a more descriptive name (e.g., use “Grandpa Joseph” instead of “Pa Joe”).

***Skipping Prompt Messages***

While prompt message is being stated ▶ Shortly press the key on the steering wheel remote controller

The prompt message is immediately ended and the beep tone will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

***Re-starting Voice Recognition***

While system waits for a command ▶ Shortly press the key on the steering wheel remote controller

The command wait state is immediately ended and the beep ton will sound. After the “beep”, say the voice command.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 245



## ENDING VOICE RECOGNITION

While Voice Recognition is operating ▶ Press and hold the key on the steering wheel remote controller

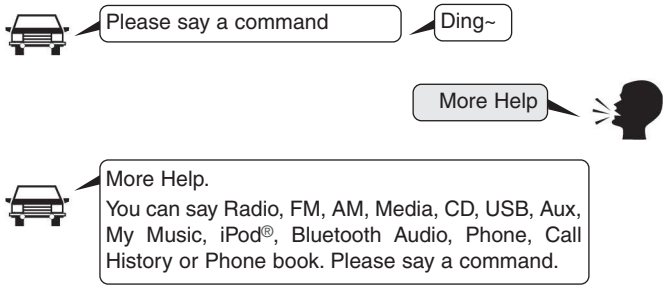
### ✻ NOTICE

- **While using voice command, pressing a steering wheel remote control or a different key will end voice command.**
- **When the system is waiting for a voice command, say “cancel” or “end” to end voice command.**
- **When the system is waiting for a voice command, press and hold the key on the steering wheel remote controller to end voice command.**

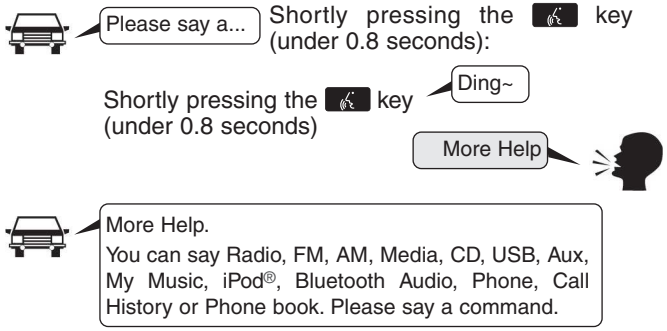
❊ Illustration on using voice commands

***• Starting voice command.***

Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):

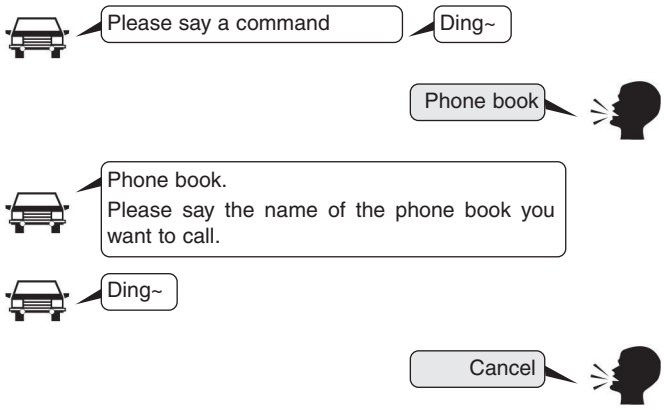



***• Skipping Voice Recognition***




***• End voice command.***

Shortly pressing the key (under 0.8 seconds):



EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 247



### Voice Command List

• Common Commands: These commands can be used in most operations. (However a few commands may not be available during certain operations)

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| More Help | Provides guidance on commands that can be used anywhere in the system. |
| Help | Provides guidance on commands that can be used within the current mode. |
| Call<Name> | Calls <Name> saved in phone book<br>Ex) Call “John Smith” |
| Phone | Provides guidance on Phone related commands. After saying this command, say “Call History”, “Phone book”, “Dial Number” to execute corresponding functions. |
| Call History | Displays the Call History screen. |
| Phone book | Displays the phone book screen. After saying this command, say the name of a phone book saved in the phone book to automatically connect the call. |
| Dial Number | Display the Dial number screen. After saying this command, you can say the number that you want to call. |
| Redial | Connects the most recently called number. |
| Radio | • When listening to the radio, displays the next radio screen. (FM1➟ FM2➟ FMA ➟ AM ➟ AMA)<br>• When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played radio screen. |

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| FM | • When currently listening to the FM radio, maintains the current state.<br>• When listening to a different mode, displays the most recently played FM screen. |
| FM1(FM One) | Displays the FM1 screen. |
| FM2(FM Two) | Displays the FM2 screen. |
| FMA | Displays the FMA screen. |
| AM | Displays the AM screen. |
| AMA | Displays the AMA screen. |
| FM Preset 1~6 | Plays the most recently played broadcast saved in FM Preset 1~6. |
| AM Preset 1~6 | Plays the broadcast saved in AM Preset 1~6. |
| FM 87.5~107.9 | Plays the FM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. |
| AM 530~1710 | Plays the AM broadcast of the corresponding frequency. |
| TA on | Enable Traffic Announcement |
| TA off | Disable Traffic Announcement |
| News on | Enable RDS News feature |
| News off | Disable RDS News feature |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 248



| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Media | Moves to the most recently played media screen. |
| Play Track 1~30 | If a music CD has been inserted, plays the corresponding track. |
| CD | Plays the music saved in the CD. |
| Search CD | Moves to the CD track or file selection screen.<br>• For audio CDs, move to the screen and say the track number to play the corresponding track.<br>• Moves to MP3 CD file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| USB | Plays USB music. |
| Search USB | Moves to USB file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| iPod® | Plays iPod® music. |
| Search iPod® | Moves to the iPod® file selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select and play music. |
| My Music | Plays the music saved in My Music. |
| Search My Music | Moves to My Music file selection screen. After manually operate the device to select and play music. |

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| AUX (Auxiliary) | Plays the connected external device. |
| *Bluetooth* Audio | Plays the music saved in connected *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device. |
| Mute | Mutes the radio or music volume. |
| Pardon? | Repeats the most recent comment. |
| Cancel (Exit) | Ends voice command. |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 249



• FM/AM radio commands: Commands available during FM, AM radio operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Preset 1~6 | Plays the broadcast saved in Preset 1~6. |
| Auto Store | Automatically selects radio broadcast frequencies with superior reception and saves in Presets 1~6. |
| Preset Save 1~6 | Saves the current broadcast frequency to Preset 1~6. |
| Seek up | Plays the next (higher) receivable broadcast. |
| Seek down | Plays the previous (lower) receivable broadcast. |
| Next Preset | Selects the preset number next to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 4 will be selected.) |
| Previous Preset | Selects the preset number previous to the most recently selected preset. (Example: When currently listening to preset no. 3, then preset no. 2 will be selected.) |
| Scan | Scans receivable frequencies from the current broadcast and plays for 10 seconds each. |
| Preset Scan | Moves to the next preset from the current present and plays for 10 seconds each. |
| AF on | Enable Alternative Frequency feature |
| AF off | Disable Alternative Frequency feature |
| Region | Enable Region feature |

• Audio CD commands: Commands available during Audio CD operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Region off | Disable Region feature |
| Program Type | Moves to the RDS Program type selection screen. After, manually operate the device to select a desired program type. |
| Random | Randomly plays the tracks within the CD. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play tracks in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current track. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play tracks in sequential order. |
| Next Track | Plays the next track. |
| Previous Track | Plays the previous track. |
| Scan | Scans the tracks from the next track for 10 seconds each. |
| Track 1~30 | Plays the desired track number. |
| Search Track | Moves to the track selection screen. After, say the track name to play the corresponding track. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current track. |

• MP3 CD / USB commands: Commands available during USB and MP3 CD operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Random | Randomly plays the files within the current folder. |
| All Random | Randomly plays all saved files. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play files in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current file. |
| Folder Repeat | Repeats all files in the current folder. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order. |
| Next File | Plays the next file. |
| Previous File | Plays the previous file. |
| Scan | Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each. |
| Search File | Moves to the file selection screen. |
| Search Folder | Moves to the folder selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current file. |
| Copy | Copies the current file into My Music. |

• iPod® Commands: Commands available during iPod® operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| All Random | Randomly plays all saved songs. |
| Random | Randomly plays the songs within the current category. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play songs in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current song. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play songs in sequential order. |
| Next Song | Plays the next song. |
| Previous Song | Plays the previous song. |
| Search Song | Moves to the song selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current song. |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 251



• My Music Commands: Commands available during My Music operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Random | Randomly plays all saved files. |
| Random Off | Cancels random play to play files in sequential order. |
| Repeat | Repeats the current file. |
| Repeat Off | Cancels repeat play to play files in sequential order. |
| Next File | Plays the next file. |
| Previous File | Plays the previous file. |
| Scan | Scans the files from the next files for 10 seconds each. |
| Search File | Moves to the file selection screen. |
| Information | Displays the information screen of the current file. |
| Delete | Deletes the current file. You will bypass an additional confirmation process. |
| Delete All | Deletes all files saved in My Music. You will bypass an additional confirmation process. |

• *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio Commands: Commands available during *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology audio streaming from mobile phone operation Command Operation

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| Play | Plays the currently paused song. |
| Pause | Pauses the current song. |

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:21 AM Page 252



## SETUP

### Starting Mode

Press the SETUP key to display the Setup screen.

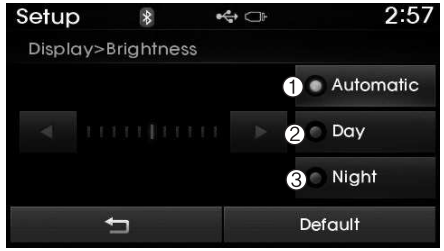



You can select and control options related to [Display], [Sound], [Clock/Day], [Phone] and [System].

### Display Settings

#### *Adjusting the Brightness*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Display] ▶ Select [Brightness]




Use the ◀, ▶ buttons to adjust the screen brightness or set the Brightness on Automatic, Day, or Night mode.
Press the Default button to reset.

1) Automatic : Adjusts the brightness automatically
2) Day : Always maintains the brightness on high
3) Night : Always maintains the brightness on low

#### *Pop-up Mode*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Display] ▶ Select [Pop-up Mode]




This feature is used to display the Pop-up Mode screen when entering radio and media modes.
When this feature is turned on, pressing the RADIO or MEDIA key will display the Pop-up Mode screen.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The media Pop-up Mode screen can be displayed only when two or more media modes have been connected.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:22 AM Page 253



***Scroll Text***

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Display] ▶ Select [Scroll text]




This feature is used to scroll text displayed on the screen when it is too long to be displayed at once.

When turned on, the text is repeatedly scrolled. When turned off, the text is scrolled just once.

***MP3 Information Display***

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Display] ▶ Select [Song Info]




This feature is used to change the information displayed within USB and MP3 CD modes.

1) Folder File : Displays file name and folder name
2) Album Artist Song : Displays album name/artist name/song

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:22 AM Page 254



## Sound Settings

### *Sound Settings*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Sound] ▶ Select [Audio Setting]







Use the ◀, ▶, ▲, ▼ buttons to adjust the Fader/Balance settings.

Use the ◀, ▶ buttons to adjust the Bass/Middle/Treble settings.

Press the Default button to reset.

### *SDVC (Speed Dependent Volume Control)*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Sound] ▶ Select [Speed Dependent Vol.]




The volume level is controlled automatically according to the vehicle speed. SDVC can be set by selecting from Off/Low/Mid/High.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:22 AM Page 255



### *Voice Recognition Setting*

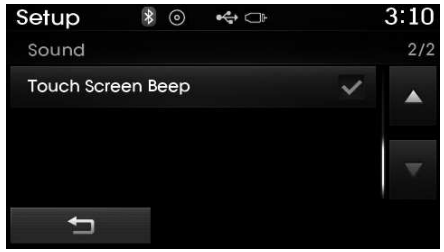
Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] ▸ Select [Volume Dialogue]




Use the -, + buttons to adjust the Volume Dialog.

### *Touch Screen Beep*

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Sound] ▸ Select [Touch Screen Beep]



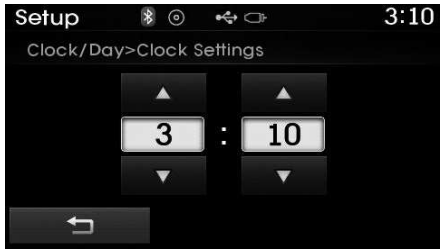

This feature is used to turn the touch screen beep on/off.

## Clock/Day Setting

### *Setting*

Press the SETUP key ▸ Select [Clock/Day] ▸ Select [Clock Settings]

Use the ▲, ▼ buttons to set the Hour, Minutes and AM/PM setting.




### ✻ NOTICE

**Press and hold the CLOCK key (over 0.8 seconds) to display the Clock/ Day screen.**

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:22 AM Page 256



### *Day Setting*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Clock/Day] ▶ Select [Day Settings]




Use the ▲, ▼ buttons to set the Day, Month and Year setting.

### *Time Format*

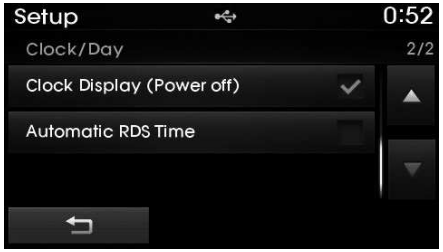
Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Clock/Day] ▶ Select [Time Format]




This feature is used to change the clock format between 12hr or 24hr.

### *Clock Display*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Clock/Day] ▶ Select [Clock Display (Power off)]



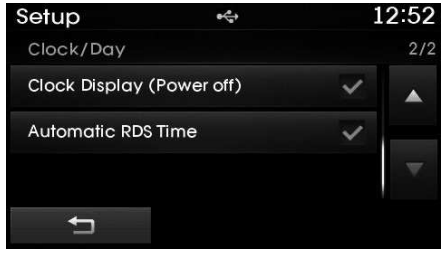

This feature is used to display a clock on the screen when the audio system is turned off.

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:22 AM Page 257



***Automatic RDS Time***

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Clock/Day] ▶ Select [Automatic RDS Time]




This feature is used to set time automatically by synchronizing with RDS.

## *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Setting

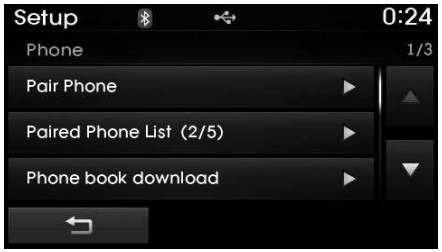
The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners. A *Bluetooth®* enabled cell phone is required to use *Bluetooth®* wireless technology

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.**

### *Pairing a New Device*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Pair Phone]




*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology devices can be paired with the audio system.

For more information, refer to the "Pairing through Phone Setup" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

### *Viewing Paired Phone List*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Phone List]




This feature is used to view mobile phones that have been paired with the audio system. Upon selecting a paired phone, the setup menu is displayed.

For more information, refer to the "Setting *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Connection" section within *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

1) : Moves to the previous screen
2) Connect/Disconnect Phone : Connect/disconnects currently selected phone
3) Delete : Deletes the currently selected phone
4) Change Priority : Sets currently selected phone to highest connection priority

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:22 AM Page 259



## ✻ NOTICE BEFORE DOWNLOADING PHONE BOOKS

- **Only phone books within connected phones can be downloaded. Also check to see that your mobile phone supports the download feature.**
- **To learn more about whether your mobile phone supports phone book downloads, refer to your mobile phone user's manual.**
- **The Phone book for only the connected phone can be downloaded. Before downloading, check to see whether your phone supports the download feature.**

### *Downloading Phone books*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Phone book Download]



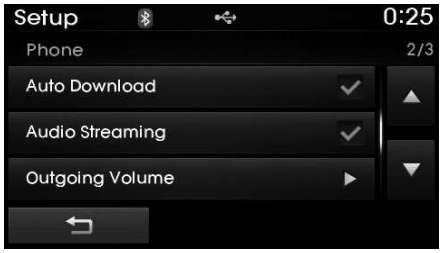

The Phone book is downloaded from the mobile phone and the download progress is displayed.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be copied into car phone book.**
- **Up to 1,000 phone book entries can be saved for each paired device.**
- **Upon downloading phone book data, previously saved phone book data will be deleted. However, Phone book entries saved to other paired phones are not deleted.**

### *Auto Download (Phone Book)*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Auto Download]



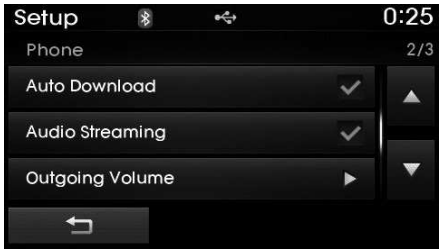

This feature is used to automatically download mobile phone book entries once a *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone is connected.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **The Auto Download feature will download mobile phone book entries every time the phone is connected. The download time may differ depending on the number of saved phone book entries and the communication state.**
- **When downloading a phone book, first check to see that your mobile phone supports the phone book download feature.**

### *Audio Streaming*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Audio Streaming]




When Audio Streaming is turned on, you can play music files saved in your *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology device through the audio system.

### *Outgoing Volume*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Outgoing Volume]




Use the –, + buttons to adjust the outgoing volume level.

### *Turning Bluetooth System Off*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Bluetooth System Off]

Once *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology is turned off, *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology related features will not be supported within the audio system.







**✻ NOTICE**

**To turn *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology back on, go to SETUP ▶ [Phone] and press "Yes".**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Bluetooth® Wireless Technology audio streaming may not be supported in some Bluetooth® Wireless Technology phones.***

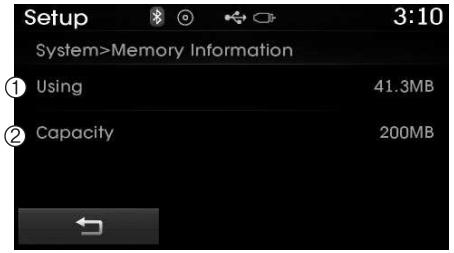
EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:22 AM Page 261



## System Setting

### *Memory Information*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [System] ▶ Select [Memory Information]

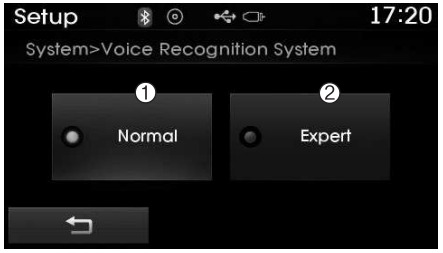



This feature displays information related to system memory.

1) Using : Displays capacity currently in use
2) Capacity : Displays total capacity

### *Voice Recognition Mode Setting*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [System] ▶ Select [Voice Recognition System]




This feature is used to select the desired prompt feedback option from Normal and Expert.

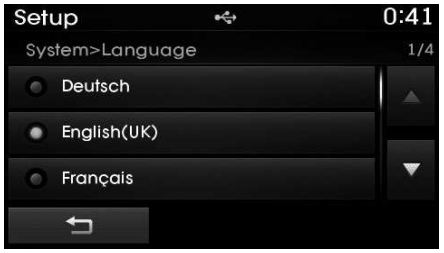
1) Normal : When using voice recognition, provides detailed guidance prompts
2) Expert : When using voice recognition, omits some guidance prompts

### ✻ NOTICE

**Voice Recognition is depend on the Audio System.**

### *Language*

Press the SETUP key ▶ Select [System] ▶ Select [Language]




This feature is used to change the system and voice recognition language.

If the language is changed, the system will restart and apply the selected language.

✻ Language support by region

Deutsch, English(UK), Français, Italiano, Español, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Polski Turkish

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:22 AM Page 262



## REAR VIEW CAMERA (if equipped)

- The system has been equipped with a rear view camera for user safety by allowing a wider rear range of vision.
- The rear view camera will automatically operate when the ignition key is turned ON and the transmission lever is set to R.
- The rear view camera will automatically stop operating when set to a different lever.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The rear view camera has been equipped with an optical lens to provide a wider range of vision and may appear different from the actual distance. For safety, directly check the rear and left/right sides.***

EL(FL) UK 4B AUDIO.QXP 7/15/2013 10:22 AM Page 263



## APPENDIX

| Name | | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 12hr | | 12 Hour |
| 24hr | | 24 Hour |
| AST(A.Store) | | Automatically selects and saves channels |
| AMA | | AM Radio (Auto store) |
| AUX | | External Audio mode |
| Bass | | Deep sound |
| Treble | | High sound |
| BT Audio | | *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology Audio |
| FMA | | FM Radio (Auto store) |
| Power Bass | | This is a sound system feature that provides live bass. |
| Power Treble | | This is a sound system feature that provides live treble. |
| Preset | | Saved radio frequency |
| RDS Search | | Radio Data System Search |
| TA Off | | Traffic Announcement |

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 1

# Driving your vehicle


**Before driving** . . . . . 5-4
- Before entering vehicle . . . . . 5-4
- Necessary inspections . . . . . 5-4
- Before starting . . . . . 5-4

**Key positions** . . . . . 5-5
- Illuminated ignition switch . . . . . 5-5
- Ignition switch position . . . . . 5-6
- Starting the engine . . . . . 5-7

**Engine start/stop button** . . . . . 5-9
- Illuminated engine start/stop button . . . . . 5-9
- Engine start/stop button position . . . . . 5-9
- Starting the engine . . . . . 5-12

**ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system** . . . . . 5-15
- Auto stop . . . . . 5-15
- Auto start . . . . . 5-16
- Condition of ISG system operation . . . . . 5-17
- ISG system deactivation . . . . . 5-17
- ISG system malfunction . . . . . 5-18

**Manual transaxle** . . . . . 5-19
- Manual transaxle operation . . . . . 5-19
- Good driving practices . . . . . 5-21

**Automatic transaxle** . . . . . 5-22
- Automatic transaxle operation . . . . . 5-23
- Good driving practices . . . . . 5-27

**Four wheel drive (4WD)** . . . . . 5-28
- Tight corner brake effect . . . . . 5-28
- Four Wheel Drive (4WD) transfer mode selection . 5-29
- For safe four-wheel drive operation . . . . . 5-30
- Reducing the risk of a rollover . . . . . 5-32

**Brake system** . . . . . 5-35
- Power brakes . . . . . 5-35
- Parking brake . . . . . 5-36
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) . . . . . 5-38
- Electronic stability control (ESC) . . . . . 5-41
- Vehicle stability management (VSM) . . . . . 5-44
- Hill-start assist control (HAC) . . . . . 5-45
- Downhill brake control (DBC) . . . . . 5-46
- Emergency stop signal (ESS) . . . . . 5-47
- Trailer stability assist (TSA) . . . . . 5-47
- Good braking practices . . . . . 5-48

**Cruise control system** . . . . . 5-50
- To set cruise control speed . . . . . 5-51
- To increase cruise control set speed . . . . . 5-51
- To decrease the cruising speed . . . . . 5-52
- To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on . . . . . 5-52
- To cancel cruise control, do one of the following . . . 5-52
- To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) . . . . . 5-53

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 2

• To turn cruise control off, do one of the following . 5-53
Active ECO system . . . . . 5-54
• Active ECO operation. . . . . 5-54
• When Active ECO is activated. . . . . 5-54
• Limitation of Active ECO operation . . . . . 5-54
Economical operation . . . . . 5-55
Special driving conditions . . . . . 5-57
• Hazardous driving conditions . . . . . 5-57
• Rocking the vehicle . . . . . 5-57
• Smooth cornering . . . . . 5-58
• Driving at night . . . . . 5-58
• Driving in the rain. . . . . 5-59
• Driving in flooded areas . . . . . 5-59
• Driving off-road. . . . . 5-59
• Highway driving . . . . . 5-60
Winter driving . . . . . 5-61
• Snowy or Icy conditions . . . . . 5-61
• Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant. . . . . 5-63
• Check battery and cables . . . . . 5-63
• Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary . . . . . 5-63
• Check spark plugs and ignition system. . . . . 5-63
• To keep locks from freezing . . . . . 5-64
• Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system . . . . . 5-64
• Don't let your parking brake freeze . . . . . 5-64
• Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath . . . . 5-64
• Carry emergency equipment . . . . . 5-64
Trailer towing . . . . . 5-65
• towbars . . . . . 5-66
• Safety chains . . . . . 5-67
• Trailer brakes . . . . . 5-67
• Driving with a trailer . . . . . 5-67
Vehicle weight . . . . . 5-74
• Base kerb weight . . . . . 5-74
• Vehicle kerb weight . . . . . 5-74
• Cargo weight . . . . . 5-74
• GAW (Gross axle weight) . . . . . 5-74
• GAWR (Gross axle weight rating). . . . . 5-74
• GVW (Gross vehicle weight) . . . . . 5-74
• GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating) . . . . . 5-74
• Overloading . . . . . 5-74

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 3



**⚠ WARNING - ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!**

Engine exhaust gases are potentially lethal. If at any time engine exhaust gas is detected within the passenger compartment, move the vehicle to an open area and open all windows.

**• Never inhale exhaust gas.**

Exhaust gases contain Carbon Monoxide which is colourless and odourless. Carbon Monoxide is poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

**• Exhaust System Maintenance.**

Ensure that the exhaust system is maintained in good condition and is free from excessive corrosion and damage which may result in leakage. If the vehicle is driven over an object which strikes the exhaust system, ensure that the exhaust system is inspected at the first available opportunity to ensure that no leakage exists.

**• Confined Areas.**

Do not run the engine in confined spaces, allowing the engine to idle in a garage, even when the doors are open is dangerous practice. Only start the engine immediately prior to moving the vehicle out of the garage.

**• Prolonged Idling.**

If it is necessary to allow the vehicle to idle for prolonged periods, ensure that the heating system air intake control is set to the "Fresh" position, the blower is set to high speed operation and that the vehicle is standing in an open area.

**• Load Carrying.**

If it is necessary to carry long objects which do not permit the tailgate door to be fully closed, the side windows must remain closed and the heating air intake control set to the "Fresh" position with the blower running at the highest speed setting.

To ensure correct operation of the heater system, the air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen must not be obstructed by snow leaves etc.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 4



## BEFORE DRIVING

### Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tyres.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

### Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, with the exact interval depending on the fluid.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving whilst distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.**

### Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. Refer to "Seat belts" in section 3 for more information on their proper use.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a vehicle into "Drive" or "Reverse".**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 5



**⚠ WARNING - Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs**

**Drinking and driving is dangerous. Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgement. Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving drunk.**

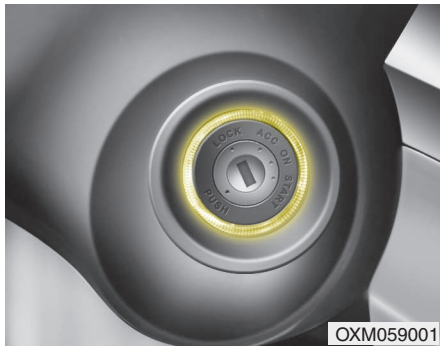
**You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive.**

**If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a cab.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.**
- **When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Keep all things in the vehicle safely stored.**
- **If you do not focus on driving, it may cause an accident. Be careful when operating what may disturb driving such as audio or heater. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely.**

## KEY POSITIONS



OXM059001

### Illuminated ignition switch (if equipped)

Whenever a front door is opened, the ignition switch will be illuminated for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on or go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 6



### Ignition switch position

***LOCK***

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position. When turning the ignition switch to the LOCK position, push the key inward at the ACC position and turn the key toward the LOCK position.

***ACC (Accessory)***

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.**

***ON***

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

*Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.*

***START***

Turn the ignition key to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning lamp can be checked in this position.

#### ⚠ WARNING - Ignition key

- **Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC whilst the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in 1st gear for the manual transaxle or P (Park) for the automatic transaxle, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**
- **Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 7



## Starting the engine

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal, and the clutch (if equipped).**

### ✻ NOTICE - Full throttle resistor (if equipped)

**If your vehicle is equipped with a resistor in the accelerator pedal, it prevents you from driving at full throttle unintentionally by making the driver require increased effort to depress the accelerator pedal. However, if you depress the pedal more than approximately 80%, the vehicle can be at full throttle and the accelerator pedal will be easier to depress. This is not a malfunction but a normal condition.**

***Starting the petrol engine (if equipped)***

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.
4. In extremely cold weather (below -18°C / 0°F) or after the vehicle has not been operated for several days, let the engine warm up without depressing the accelerator.

*Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started* ***without depressing the accelerator.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the engine stalls whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.***

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 8



***Starting the diesel engine (if equipped)***

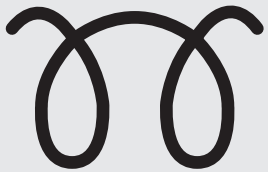
To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P(park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N(neutral) position.*

Glow indicator light



W-60

3. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position to pre-heat the engine. Then the glow indicator light will illuminate.
4. If the glow indicator light goes out, turn the ignition switch to the START position and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the engine were not started within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position during 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.**

**Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler**

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.

   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.

   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.***

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 9



## ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (IF EQUIPPED)



OLM059005R

### Illuminated engine start/stop button

Whenever the front door is opened, the engine start/stop button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. It will also go off immediately when the theft-alarm system is armed.

### Engine start/stop button position

***OFF***



Not illuminated

**• With manual transaxle**

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), stop the vehicle then press the engine start/stop button.

**• With automatic transaxle**

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the engine start/stop button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the engine start/stop button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

Also, the steering wheel locks when the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position to protect you against theft. It locks when the door is opened.

If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound. Try locking the steering wheel again. If the problem is not solved, we recommend, that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

In addition, if the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position after the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel will not lock and the warning chime will sound. In such a situation, close the door. Then the steering wheel will lock and the warning chime will stop.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the engine start/stop button will not work. Press the engine start/stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 10



**⚠ CAUTION**

***You are able to turn off the engine (START/RUN) or vehicle power (ON), only when the vehicle is not in motion. In an emergency situation whilst the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the engine start/stop button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.***

***ACC(Accessory)***



Orange indicator

**• With manual transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the clutch pedal.

**• With automatic transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button whilst it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.
The steering wheel unlocks and electrical accessories are operational.
If the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

***ON***



Blue indicator

**• With manual transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the ACC position without depressing the clutch pedal.

**• With automatic transaxle**

Press the engine start/stop button whilst it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.
The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the engine start/stop button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 11



***START/RUN***



Not illuminated

**• With manual transaxle**

To start the engine, depress the clutch pedal and brake pedal, then press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

**• With automatic transaxle**

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

## ✻ NOTICE

**If you press the engine start/stop button without depressing the clutch pedal for manual transaxle vehicles or without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transaxle vehicles, the engine will not start and the engine start/stop button changes as follow:**
**OFF ➔ACC ➔ ON ➔ OFF or ACC**

## ✻ NOTICE

**If you leave the engine start/stop button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.**

## ⚠ WARNING

- **Never press the engine start/stop button whilst the vehicle is in motion. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never reach for the engine start/stop button or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in the area could cause loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 12



## Starting the engine

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal.**

### *Starting the petrol engine (if equipped)*

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied.
3. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst starting the engine.

   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*
4. Press the engine start/stop button.
5. In extremely cold weather (below -18°C / 0°F) or after the vehicle has not been operated for several days, let the engine warm up without depressing the accelerator.

Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without depressing the accelerator.

### *Starting the diesel engine (if equipped)*

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst pressing the engine start/stop button to the START position.

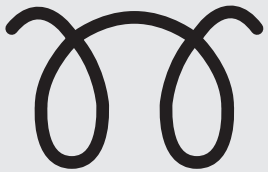
   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 13



Glow indicator light



W-60

3. Press the engine start/stop button whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Continue depressing the brake pedal until the illuminated glow indicator goes off. (approximately 5 seconds)
5. The engine starts running when the glow indicator goes off.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the engine start/stop button is pressed once more whilst the engine is pre-heating, the engine may start.**

**Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler**

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.
   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.
   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.***

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the " " indicator and the "KEY OUT" indicator will blink. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off whilst the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

### ⚠ WARNING

**The engine will start, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.**

**Never allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle touch the engine start/stop button or related parts.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 14



### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the engine stalls whilst the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the engine start/stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.***




### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button with the smart key.**
- **When the brake switch fuse is blown, you cannot start the engine normally. Replace the fuse with a new one. If not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button for 10 seconds whilst it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not press the engine start/stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.***

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:56 PM Page 15



## ISG (IDLE STOP AND GO) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ISG system, which reduces fuel consumption by automatically shutting down the engine, when the vehicle is at a standstill. (For example : red light, stop sign and traffic jam)

The engine starts automatically as soon as the starting conditions are met.

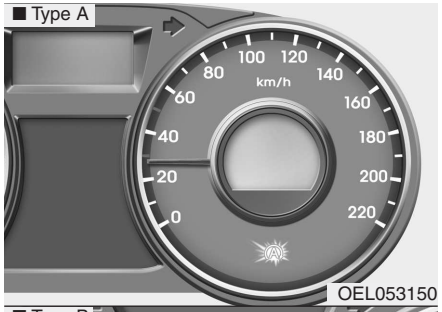
The ISG system is ON whenever the engine is running.

### ✻ NOTICE

**When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESC, ESC OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.**

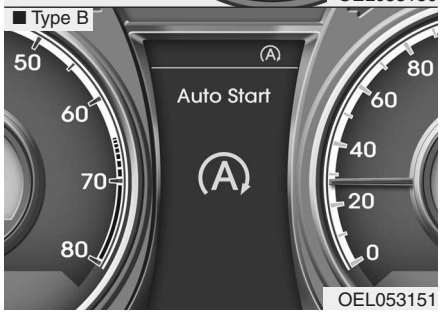
**This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean the system is malfunctioning.**

■ Type A




OEL053150

■ Type B




OEL053151

### Auto stop

***To stop the engine in idle stop mode***

1. Decrease the vehicle speed to less than 5 km/h.
2. Shift into N (Neutral) position.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will stop and the green AUTO STOP indicator ((Ⓐ)) on the instrument cluster will illuminate. If your vehicle is equipped with a supervision cluster, the notice will illuminate on the LCD display.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 16



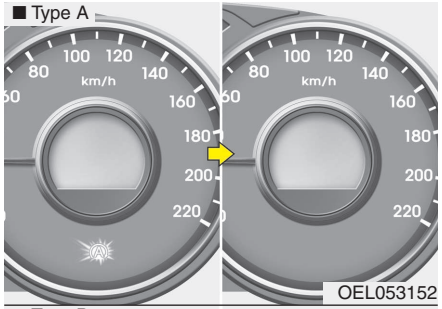



OLM053202N

## ✻ NOTICE

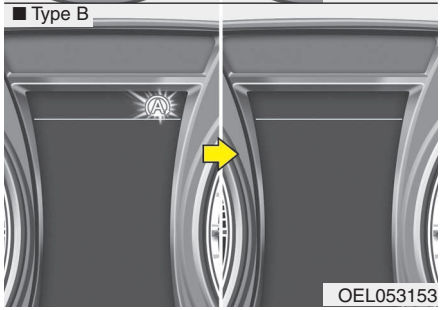
- **You must reach a speed of at least 10 km/h since last idle stop.**
- **If you unfasten the seat belt or open the driver's door (engine bonnet) in auto stop mode, the light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and ISG system is deactivated. If your vehicle is equipped with a supervision cluster, the notice will illuminate on the LCD display.**
  **Turn the ignition switch to the START position to start the engine manually.**

■ Type A




OEL053152

■ Type B



OEL053153

### Auto start

***To restart the engine from idle stop mode***

- Press the clutch pedal when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

The engine will start and the green AUTO STOP indicator (Ⓐ) on the instrument cluster will go out.

***The engine will also restart automatically without the driver's any actions if the following occurs:***

- The fan speed of manual climate control system is set above the 3rd position when the air conditioning is on.
- The fan speed of automatic climate control system is set above the 6th position when the air conditioning is on.
- When a certain amount of time has passed with the climate control system on.
- When the defroster is on.
- The brake vaccum pressure is low.
- The battery charging status is low.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h.

The green AUTO STOP indicator (Ⓐ) on the instrument cluster will blink for 5 seconds and the notice will illuminate on the LCD display (if equipped).

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 17



### Condition of ISG system operation

***The ISG system will operate under the following condition:***

- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door and bonnet are closed.
- The brake vaccum pressure is adequate.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The outside temperature is between 2°C to 35°C.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too low.

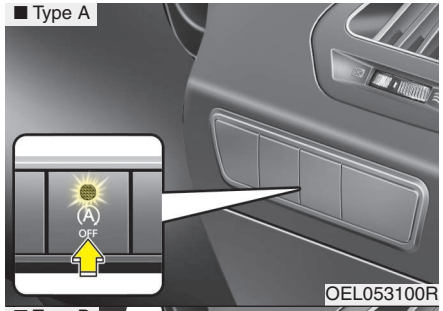



OLM053201N

### ✻ NOTICE

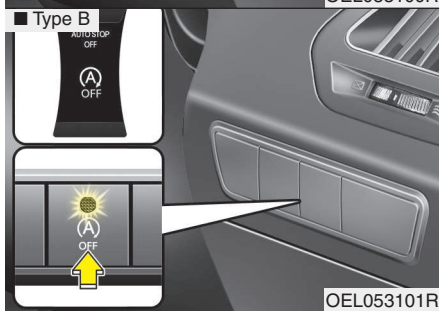
- **If the ISG system does not meet that operation condition, the ISG system is deactivated. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and the notice will illuminate on the LCD display (if equipped).**
- **If the light or notice is come on continuously, please check the operation condition.**

■ Type A




OEL053100R

■ Type B




OEL053101R

### ISG system deactivation

- If you desire to deactivate the ISG system, press the ISG OFF button. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and the notice will illuminate on the LCD display (if equipped).
- If you press the ISG OFF button again, the system will be activated and the light on the ISG OFF button will turn off.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 18



### ISG system malfunction

***The system may not operate when:***

- The ISG related sensors or system error occurs.

The yellow AUTO STOP indicator (Ⓐ) on the instrument cluster will stay on after blinking for 5 seconds and the light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the ISG OFF button light is not turned off by pressing the ISG OFF button again or if the ISG system continuously does not work correctly, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **When the ISG OFF button light comes on, it may stop illuminating after driving your vehicle at approximately 80 km/h for a maximum of two hours and setting the fan speed control knob below the 2nd position. If the ISG OFF button light continues to be illuminated in spite of the procedure, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

### ⚠ WARNING

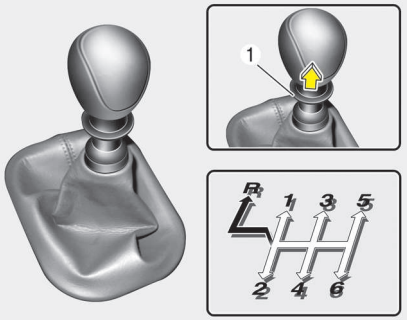
**When the engine is in Idle Stop mode, it's possible to restart the engine without the driver taking any action.**

**Before leaving the car or doing anything in the engine room area, stop the engine by turning the ignition switch to the LOCK(OFF) position or removing the ignition key.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 19



## MANUAL TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)




⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pulling the ring (1).

➡ The ring (1) must be pulled up whilst moving the shift lever.

OEL059009

### Manual transaxle operation

The manual transaxle has 6 forward gears.

This shift pattern is imprinted on the shift knob. The transaxle is fully synchronized in all forward gears so shifting to either a higher or a lower gear is easily accomplished.

Press the clutch pedal down fully whilst shifting, then release it slowly.

If your vehicle is equipped with an ignition lock switch, the engine will not start when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal. (if equipped)

The gearshift lever must be returned to the neutral position before shifting into R (Reverse). The ring located immediately below the shift knob must be pulled upward whilst moving the shift lever to the R position. (Type A)

*Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into R (Reverse).*

*Never operate the engine with the tachometer (rpm) in the red zone.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When downshifting from fifth gear to fourth gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently press the gear shift lever sideways in such a manner that second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such over-revving of the engine may possibly cause engine damage.***
- ***Do not downshift more than 2 gears or downshift the gear when the engine is running at high speed (5,000 RPM or higher). Such a downshifting may damage the engine.***

- During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transaxle lubricant has warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transaxle.
- If you've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1st or R (Reverse), put the shift lever in N (Neutral) position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1st or R (Reverse) gear position.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 20



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an uphill grade, whilst waiting for a traffic light, etc.***
- ***Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transaxle shift forks.***
- ***When operating the clutch pedal, press the clutch pedal down fully. If you don¡¯t press the clutch pedal fully, the clutch may be damaged or noise may occur.***
- ***To prevent possible damage to the clutch system, do not start with the 2nd (second) gear engaged except when you start on a alippery road.***

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Then make sure the transaxle is shifted into 1st gear when the vehicle is parked on a level or uphill grade, and shifted into R (Reverse) on a downhill grade. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**
- **If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, it may move and cause a serious accident when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal whilst the parking brake is released and the shift lever not in the N(Neutral) position.**

***Using the clutch***

The clutch should be pressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be fully released whilst driving. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal whilst driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the vehicle on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the foot brake or parking brake to hold the vehicle on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When operating the clutch pedal, press the clutch pedal down fully. If you don't press the clutch pedal fully, the clutch may be damaged or noise may occur.***

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 21



***Downshifting***

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or whilst driving up steep hills, downshift before the engine starts to labour. Downshifting reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you again need to increase your speed. When the vehicle is travelling down steep hills, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

## Good driving practices

- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This is extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear.
- Don't "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. This will help avoid over-revving the engine, which can cause damage.
- Slow down when you encounter cross winds. This gives you much better control of your vehicle.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into reverse. The transaxle can be damaged if you do not. To shift into reverse, depress the clutch, move the shift lever to neutral, wait three seconds, then shift to the reverse position.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

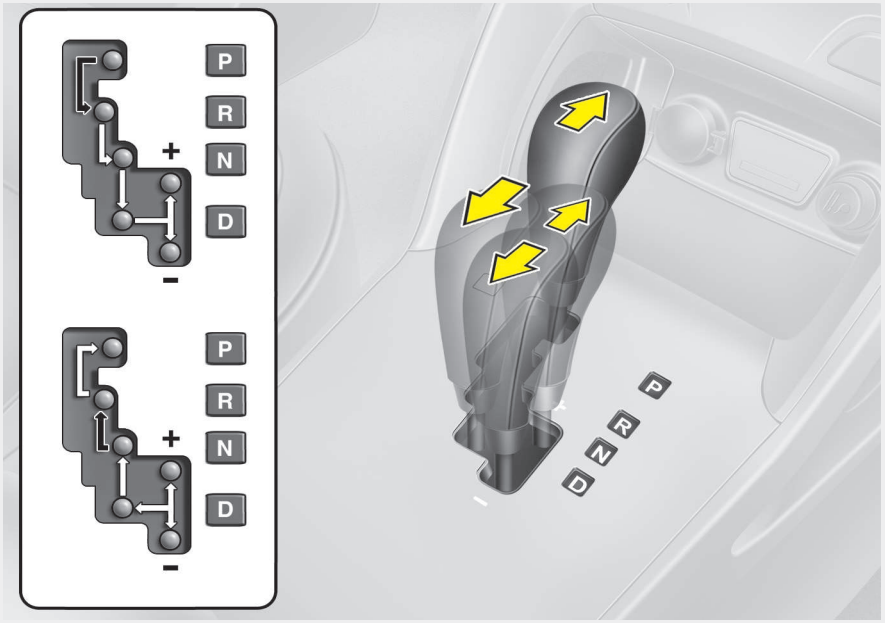
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to re-enter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 22



## AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)




➡ Depress the brake pedal when shifting, if your vehicle is equipped shift lock system.

⇨ The shift lever can be moved freely.

OEL059010R

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 23



### Automatic transaxle operation

The highly efficient automatic transaxle has 6 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transaxle Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).**

*For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.*

### ⚠ WARNING - Automatic transaxle

- **Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid damage to your transaxle, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.***
- ***When stopped on an upgrade, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.***
- ***Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.***

#### *Transaxle ranges*

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

**P (Park)**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 24



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.**
- **Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The transaxle may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion.***

**R (Reverse)**

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transaxle if you shift into R (Reverse) whilst the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in "Rocking the vehicle", in this manual.***

**N (Neutral)**

The wheels and transaxle are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

**D (Drive)**

This is the normal forward driving position. The transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

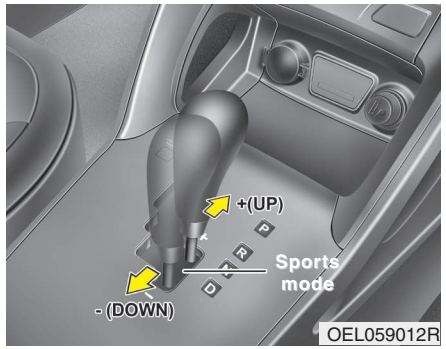
For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator fully, at which time the transaxle will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 25






**Sports mode**

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, sports mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In sports mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly. In contrast to a manual transaxle, the sports mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **In sports mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.**
- **In sports mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **In sports mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **In sports mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.**
- **To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.**
- **When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the -(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.**

***Shift lock system (if equipped)***

For your safety, the automatic transaxle has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift the transaxle from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

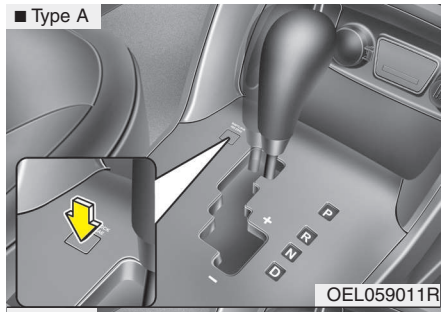
### ⚠ WARNING

**Always fully depress the brake pedal before and whilst shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 26

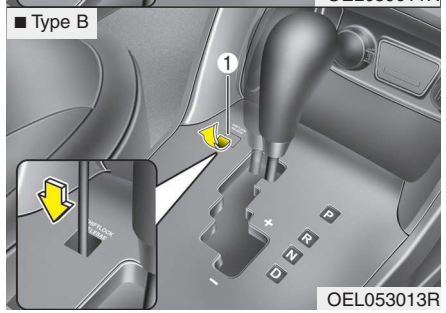


■ Type A




OEL059011R

■ Type B




OEL053013R

**Shift-lock override**

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

Type A

1. Press the shift-lock release button.
2. Move the shift lever.
3. We recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

Type B

1. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock override access hole.
2. Insert a screwdriver into the access hole and press down on the screwdriver.
3. Move the shift lever.
4. We recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)**

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position. Even the ignition switch is in LOCK position, the key cannot be removed.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 27



### Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into "P" when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**

#### *Moving up a steep grade from a standing start*

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually whilst releasing the service brakes.

**When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 28



## FOUR WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) (IF EQUIPPED)

Engine power can be delivered to all front and rear wheels for maximum traction. 4WD is useful when extra traction is required on road, such as, when driving on slippery, muddy, wet, or snow-covered roads. These vehicles are not designed for challenging off-road use. Occasional off-road use such as established unpaved roads and trails are OK. It is always important when travelling off-highway that the driver carefully reduces the speed to a level that does not exceed the safe operating speed for those conditions. In general, off-road conditions provide less traction and braking effectiveness than normal road conditions. The driver must be especially alert to avoid driving on slopes which tilt the vehicle to either side.

These factors must be carefully considered when driving off-road. Keeping the vehicle in contact with the driving surface and under control in these conditions is always the driver's responsibility for the safety of him/herself and his or her passengers.

**⚠ WARNING - Off road driving**

**This vehicle is designed primarily for on road use although it can operate effectively off road. However, it was not designed to drive in challenging off-road conditions. Driving in conditions that exceed the vehicle's intended design or the driver's experience level may result in severe injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the 4WD system warning light ( ) illuminates, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the 4WD system.**

**If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

### Tight corner brake effect

**⚠ CAUTION - 4WD**

***When turning sharply on a paved road at low speed whilst in four-wheel drive, steering control will be difficult.***

Tight corner brake effect is a unique characteristic of four-wheel drive vehicles caused by the difference in tyre rotation at the four wheels and the zero-degree alignment of the front wheels and suspension.

Sharp turns at low speeds should be carried out with caution.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 29



**Four Wheel Drive (4WD) transfer mode selection**

| Transfer mode | Selection button | Indicator light | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| **4WD AUTO** (4WD LOCK is deactivated) |  |  (Indicator light is not illuminated) | • When driving in 4WD AUTO mode, the vehicle operates similar to conventional 2WD vehicles under normal operating conditions. However, if the system determines that there is a need for the 4WD mode, the engine's driving power is distributed to all four wheels automatically without driver intervention.<br>• When driving on normal roads and pavement, the vehicle moves similar to conventional 2WD vehicles. |
| **4WD LOCK** |  |  (Indicator light is illuminated) | • This mode is used for climbing or descending sharp grades, off-road driving, driving on sandy and muddy roads, etc., to maximize traction.<br>• This mode automatically begins to deactivate at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h) and is shifted to 4WD AUTO mode at speed above 25 mph (40 km/h). If the vehicle decelerates to speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h), however, the transfer mode is shifted into 4WD LOCK mode again. |

## ✻ NOTICE

- **When driving on normal roads, deactivate the 4WD LOCK mode by pushing the 4WD LOCK button (the indicator light goes off). Driving on normal roads with 4WD LOCK mode(especially, when cornering) may cause mechanical noise or vibration. The noise and vibration will disappear when the 4WD LOCK mode is deactivated. Some parts of the power train may be damaged by prolonged driving with the noise and vibration.**
- **When the 4WD LOCK mode is deactivated, a shock may be felt as the drive power is delivered entirely to the front wheels. This shock is not a mechanical failure.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 30

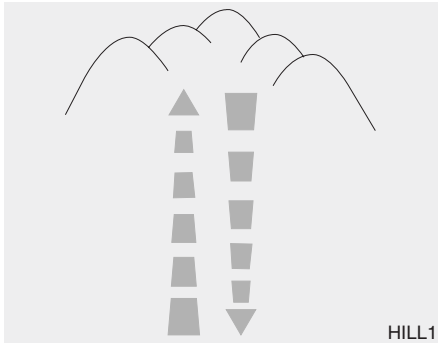


### For safe four-wheel drive operation

**⚠ WARNING - Four-wheel driving**

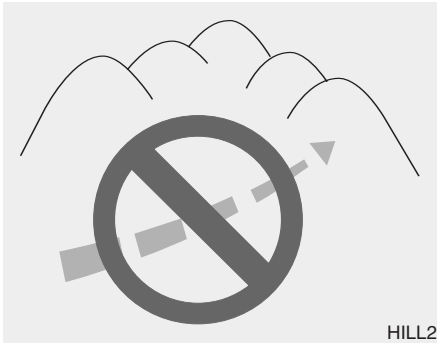
**The conditions of on-road or off-road that demand four-wheel drive mean all functions of your vehicle are exposed to extreme stress than under normal road conditions. Slow down and be ready for changes in the composition and traction of the surface under your tyres. If you have any doubt about the safety of the conditions you are facing, stop and consider the best way to proceed. Do not exceed the ability of yourself or your vehicle to operate safely.**

- Do not drive in deep standing water or mud conditions since such conditions can damage your engine and/or restrict your exhaust pipes. Do not drive down steep hills since it requires extreme skill to maintain control of the vehicle.



HILL1

- When you are driving up or down hills drive as straight as possible. Use extreme caution in going up or down steep hills, since you may flip your vehicle over depending on the grade, terrain and water/mud conditions.



HILL2

**⚠ WARNING - Hills**

**Driving across the contour of steep hills can be extremely dangerous. This danger can come from slight changes in the wheel angle which can destabilize the vehicle or, even if the vehicle is maintaining stability under power, it can lose that stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over without warning and without time for you to correct a mistake that could cause serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 31



- You must consciously take the effort to learn how to corner in a 4WD vehicle. Do not rely on your experience in conventional 2WD vehicles in choosing safe cornering speed in 4WD mode. For drivers with little or no experience of driving a 4WD, you must drive more slowly in 4WD.
- Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

**⚠ WARNING - 4WD**

**Reduce speed when you turn corners. The centre of gravity of 4WD vehicles is higher than that of conventional 2WD vehicles, making them more likely to roll over when you turn corners too fast.**



OLM059022L

**⚠ WARNING - Steering wheel**

**Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering manoeuvre or from steering wheel rebound due to impact with objects on the ground. You could lose control of the steering wheel.**

- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.
- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.

**⚠ WARNING - Wind danger**

**If you are driving in heavy wind, the vehicle's higher centre of gravity decreases your steering control capacity and requires you to drive more slowly.**

- If you need to drive in the water, stop your vehicle, set your transfer to the 4WD LOCK mode and drive at less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

**⚠ WARNING - Driving through water**

**Drive slowly. If you are driving too fast in water, the water can get into the engine compartment and wet the ignition system, causing your vehicle to suddenly stop. If this happens and your vehicle is in a tilted position, your vehicle may roll over.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 32



### ✻ NOTICE

- **Do not drive in water if the level is higher than the floor of the vehicle.**
- **Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Press the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking forces return.**
- **Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud or water. Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off road use, especially cleaning the bottom of the vehicle.**
- **Since the driving torque is always applied to the 4 wheels the performance of the 4WD vehicle is greatly affected by the condition of the tyres. Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tyres of the same size and type.**
- **A full time four wheel drive vehicle cannot be towed by an ordinary tow truck. Make sure that the vehicle is placed on a flat bed truck for moving.**

### ⚠ WARNING - 4WD driving

- **Avoid high cornering speed.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at high speed.**
- **In a collision, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die compared to a person wearing a seat belt.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to re-enter the roadway. In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**

### ⚠ CAUTION - Mud or snow

***If one of the front or rear wheels begins to spin in mud, snow, etc. the vehicle can sometimes be driven out by depressing the accelerator pedal further; however avoid running the engine continuously at high rpm because doing so could damage the 4WD system.***

### Reducing the risk of a rollover

This multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). SUV's have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. Specific design characteristics give them a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road, which allows you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional passenger vehicles, any more than low-slung sports vehicles are designed to perform satisfactorily in off-road conditions. Due to this risk, driver and passengers are strongly recommended to buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres, do not load your roof rack with heavy cargo, and never modify your vehicle in any way.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 33



**⚠ WARNING - Rollover**

**As with other Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV), failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.**

- **Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.**
- **Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, narrower track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles.**
- **A SUV is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional vehicles.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres.**
- **In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure everyone in the vehicle is properly buckled up.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Your vehicle is equipped with tyres designed to provide safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tyre and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the tyre and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity. If you nevertheless decide to equip your vehicle with any tyre/wheel combination not recommended by HYUNDAI for off road driving, we recommend that you do not use these tyres for highway driving.**

**⚠ WARNING - Jacked vehicle**

**Whilst the full-time 4WD vehicle is being raised on a jack, never start the engine or cause the tyres to rotate.**

**There is the danger that rotating tyres touching the ground could cause the vehicle to go off the jack and to jump forward.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 34

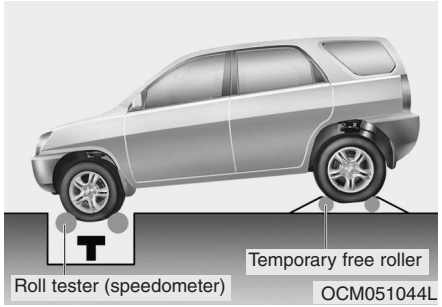


- Full-time 4WD vehicles must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Never engage the parking brake whilst performing these tests.**

- A full-time 4WD vehicle should not be tested on a 2WD roll tester. If a 2WD roll tester must be used, perform the following:




1. Check the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the front wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the rear wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

**⚠ WARNING - Dynamometer testing**

**Keep away from the front of the vehicle whilst the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. This is very dangerous as the vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When lifting up the vehicle, do not operate front and rear wheel separately. All four wheels should be operated.***
- ***If you need to operate the front wheel and rear wheel when lifting up the vehicle, you should release the parking brake.***

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 35



## BRAKE SYSTEM

### Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

**⚠ WARNING - Brakes**

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to sefely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly whilst maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.**
- **Always, confirm the position of the brake and accelerator pedal before driving. If you don't check the position of the accelerator and brake pedal before driving, you may depress the accelerator instead of the brake pedal. It may cause a serious accident.**

***In the event of brake failure***

If service brakes fail to operate whilst the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking brake**

**Applying the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 36



***Disc brakes wear indicator***

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

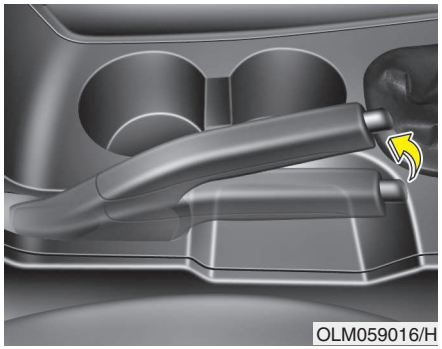
Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.***
- ***Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.***

**⚠ WARNING - Brake wear**

**This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.**



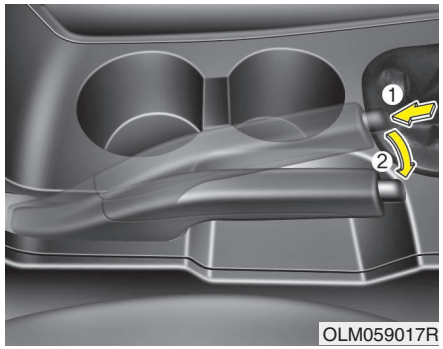
OLM059016/H

## Parking brake

***Applying the parking brake***

To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then pull up the parking brake lever as far as possible.

In addition it is recommended that when parking the vehicle on a gradient, the shift lever should be in a low gear on manual transaxle vehicles or in the Park position on automatic transaxle vehicles.




OLM059017R

***Releasing the parking brake***

To release the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and pull up the parking brake lever slightly. Secondly depress the release button (1) and lower the parking brake lever (2) whilst holding the button.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 37



If the parking brake does not release or does not release all the way, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the gearshift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake AND make sure the gearshift lever is securely positioned in 1st (First) gear or R (Reverse) for manual transaxle equipped vehicles and in P (Park) for automatic transaxle equipped vehicles.**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.***
- ***Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.***



WK-23_TF

Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 38



### Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

**⚠ WARNING**

**ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.**

**The braking distance for vehicle equipped with an anti-lock braking system (Electronic Stability Program System) may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.**

**During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds:**

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **With tyre chains installed.**
- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**The safety features of an ABS (or ESC) equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.**

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation warrants and allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 39



### ✻ NOTICE

**A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.**

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.




W-78

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the ABS warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, however, your regular brakes will work normally.***
- ***The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and operate your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the engine.***
- ***Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. We recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:57 PM Page 40



### ✻ NOTICE

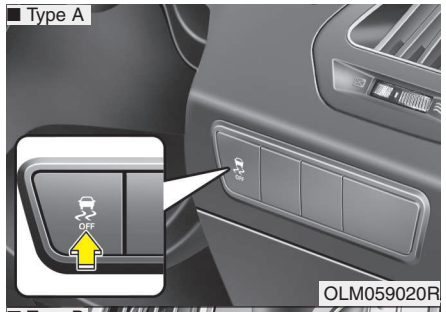
**When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning.**

- **Do not pump your brakes!**
- **Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:58 PM Page 41

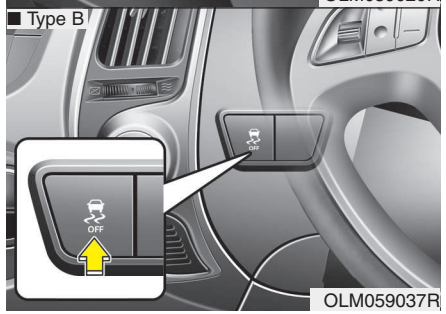


■ Type A




OLM059020R

■ Type B




OLM059037R

## Electronic stability control (ESC) (if equipped)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies the brakes at individual wheels and intervenes in the engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding manoeuvres that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.**

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices.

Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

**✻ NOTICE**

**A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Program System is functioning properly.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:58 PM Page 42



### *ESC operation*

**ESC ON condition**

-

- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

**When operating**



When the ESC is in operation, ESP indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or slippery road, pressing the accelerator pedal may not cause the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) to increase.

### *ESC operation off*

**ESC OFF state**




This car has 2 kinds of ESC off states.

If the engine stops when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

**• ESC off state 1**

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF ) shortly (ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF ) illuminates). At this state, the engine control function does not operate. It means the traction control function does not operate. Brake control function only operates.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:58 PM Page 43



**• ESC off state 2**

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF ) for more than 3 seconds. ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF ) illuminates and ESC OFF warning chime will sound. At this state, the engine control function and brake control function do not operate. It means the car stability control function does not operate any more.

■ ESC indicator light



■ ESC OFF indicator light




***Indicator light***

When ignition switch is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**The Electronic Stability Control system is only a driving aid; use precautions for safe driving by slowing down on curved, snowy, or icy roads. Drive slowly and don't attempt to accelerate whenever the ESC indicator light is blinking, or when the road surface is slippery.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:58 PM Page 44



**When driving**

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never press the ESC OFF button whilst ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).**

**If ESC is turned off whilst ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.**
- **Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.**

## Vehicle stability management (VSM) (if equipped)

This system provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering responses when a vehicle is driving on a slippery road or a vehicle detected changes in coefficient of friction between right wheels and left wheels when braking.

### *VSM operation*

When the vehicle stability management is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.

**The VSM does not operate when:**

- Driving rearward
- ESC OFF indicator light ( ) remains on the instrument cluster
- ESC indicator light remains on the instrument cluster

### *VSM operation off*

If you press the ESC OFF button to turn off the ESC, the VSM will also cancel and the ESC OFF indicator light ( ) illuminates.

To turn on the VSM, press the button again. The ESC OFF indicator light goes out.

### *Malfunction indicator*

The VSM can be deactivated even if you don't cancel the VSM operation by pressing the ESC OFF button. It indicates that a malfunction has been detected somewhere in the Electric Power Steering system or VSM system. If the ESC indicator light ( ) or EPS warning light remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**✻ NOTICE**

- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 9 mph (15 km/h) on curves.**
- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) when a vehicle is braking on a split-mu road. The split-mu road is made of surfaces which have different friction forces.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:58 PM Page 45



**⚠ WARNING**

- **The Vehicle Stability Management system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. Always hold the steering wheel firmly whilst driving.**
- **Your vehicle is designed to activate according to the driver's intention, even with installed VSM. Always follow all the normal precautions for driving at safe speeds for the conditions – including driving inclement weather and on a slippery road.**
- **Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as your original tyres.**

### Hill-start assist control (HAC) (if equipped)

A vehicle has the tendency to slip back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from slipping back by operating the brakes automatically for about 2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 2 seconds.

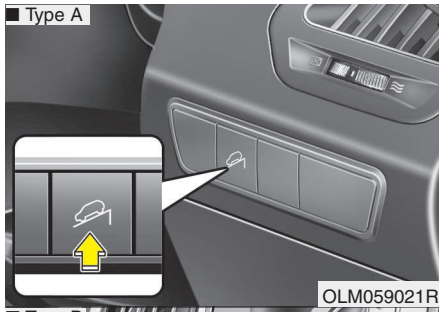
**⚠ WARNING**

**The HAC is activated only for about 2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.**

**✻ NOTICE**

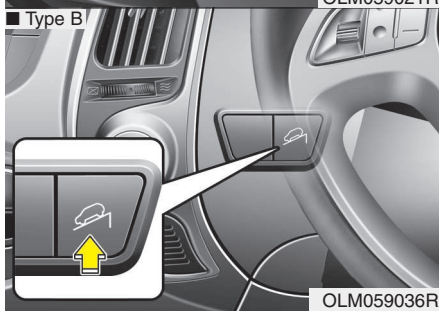
- **The HAC does not operate when the transaxle shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.**
- **The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.**

■ Type A



OLM059021R

■ Type B



OLM059036R

### Downhill brake control (DBC) (if equipped)

The Downhill Brake Control (DBC) supports the driver come down a steep hill without the driver depressing the brake pedal. It slows down the vehicle under 5 mph (8 km/h) with the automatic transaxle or 5 mph (8 km/h) with the manual transaxle and lets the driver concentrate on steering the vehicle.

DBC defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition is turned on.

The DBC can be turned on or off by pushing the button.

| Mode | Indicator light | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Standby** |  illuminated | Press the DBC button when the vehicle speed is under 25 mph (40 km/h). The DBC system will turn ON and enter the standby mode.<br>The system does not turn ON if the vehicle speed is over 25 mph (40 km/h). |
| **Activated** |  blinks | In the standby mode, if the vehicle speed is under 22 mph (35 km/h) whilst driving down a steep hill, the DBC will activate automatically. |
| **Temporarily deactivated** |  illuminated | In the activated mode, the DBC will temporarily deactivate under the following conditions:<br>• The hill is not steep enough.<br>• The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed.<br>If the above conditions are gone, the DBC will automatically activate again. |
| **OFF** |  not illuminated | The DBC will turn OFF under the following conditions:<br>• The DBC button is pressed again.<br>• The vehicle speed is over 38 mph (60 km/h). |

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the DBC red indicator light illuminates, the system has overheated or something is wrong. The DBC will not activate. If the DBC red indicator light illuminates even though the DBC system has been cooled enough, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:58 PM Page 47



### ✻ NOTICE

- **The DBC does not turn ON in the P (Park) position.**
- **The DBC may not activate if the ESC (or BAS, if equipped) is activated.**
- **Noise or vibration may occur from the brakes when the DBC is activated.**
- **The rear stop light comes on when the DBC is activated.**
- **In a very steep hill even though the brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed the DBC may not deactivate.**
- **Always turn OFF the DBC on normal roads. The DBC might activate from the standby mode when abrupt corning or driving through speed bumps.**
- **DBC may activate and cause the engine to stop in vehicles with manual transaxle if you drive in 3rd gear (or above) with DBC on. Do not turn on DBC when driving in 3rd gear (or above).**

### ESS : Emergency Stop Signal

The Emergency Stop Signal system alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop light when the vehicle suddenly stops or when the ABS activates in a stop. (The system activates when the vehicle speed is over 34 mph (55 km/h) and the vehicle deceleration is over 7m/s² or the ABS activates when the vehicle emergency braking.)

When the vehicle speed is under 25 mph (40 km/h) and the ABS deactivates or the sudden stop situation is over, the stop light will not blink. Instead, the hazard warning flasher will turn on automatically.

The hazard warning flasher will turn off when the vehicle speed is over 6 mph (10 km/h) after the vehicle has stopped. Also, it will turn off when the vehicle drives at low speed for some time. You can turn it off manually by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***The Emergency Stop Signal system will not work if the hazard warning flasher is already on.***

### Trailer stability assist (TSA) (if equipped)

Trailer stability assist is operated as vehicle stability control system. Trailer stability assist system has an effort to stabilize the vehicle and trailer when the trailer sways or oscillates. There are various reasons making vehicle sway and oscillate. Almost case it happens at high speed however, if the trailer is affected by crosswinds, buffeting, and improper overloading, it may be a risk of swaying.

Factors of swaying such as:
- High speed
- Strong crosswinds
- Improper overloading
- Sudden controlling of steering wheel
- Uneven road

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:58 PM Page 48



Trailer stability assist system continuously analyzes the vehicle and trailer instability. When the Trailer stability assist system detects some sway, the brakes are applied automatically to stabilize the vehicle on the front wheel. However, if it is not enough to stabilize, the brakes are applied on all wheels automatically and engine power is properly reduced. When the vehicle is stable from swaying, trailer stability assist system does not operate.

### Good braking practices

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Whenever you leave or park your vehicle, always set the parking brake as far as possible and fully engage the vehicle's transaxle into the P (Park) position. If the parking brake is not fully engaged, the vehicle may move inadvertently and injure yourself and others.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call a HYUNDAI authorised repairer for assistance.
- Don't coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:58 PM Page 49



- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal whilst driving can be dangerous because it can result in the brakes overheating and losing their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transaxle, don't let your vehicle creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.
- Be caution when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no kerb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the gear selector lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transaxle to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

## CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




1. Cruise indicator
2. Cruise set indicator

The cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.

This system is designed to function above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

### ⚠ WARNING

- **If the cruise control is left on, (CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated), the cruise control can be switched on accidentally. Keep the cruise control system off (CRUISE indicator light OFF) when the cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Use the cruise control system only when travelling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use the cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.**
- **Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the cruise control system.**
- **Be careful when driving downhill using the cruise control system, which may increase the vehicle speed.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***During cruise-speed driving of a manual transaxle vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, since the engine will be overrevved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or release the cruise control ON-OFF switch.***

### ✻ NOTICE

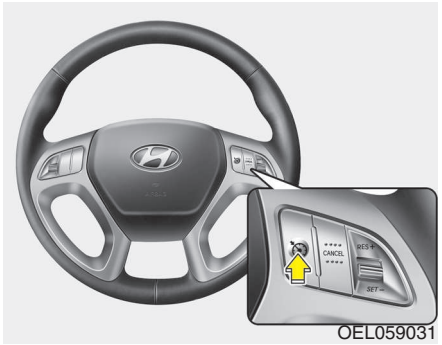
**During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**To activate cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel cruise control is in normal condition.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:58 PM Page 51





OEL059031

### To set cruise control speed:

1. Push the Cruise ON-OFF symbol button on the steering wheel to turn the system on. The Cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 25 mph (40 km/h).



OEL059033

3. Move the lever (1) down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate. Release the accelerator pedal. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

*On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly whilst going downhill.*



OEL059032

### To increase cruise control set speed:

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever (1) up (to RES+) and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever (1) up (to RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1.2 mph (2.0 km/h) or 1.0 mph (1.6 km/h) each time you move the lever up (to RES+) in this manner.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 52





OEL059033

**To decrease the cruising speed:**

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever (1) down (to SET-) and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the lever at the speed you want to maintain.
- Move the lever (1) down (to SET-) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1.2 mph (2.0 km/h) or 1.0 mph (1.6 km/h) each time you move the lever down (to SET-) in this manner.

**To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:**

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.



OEL059034

**To cancel cruise control, do one of the following:**

- Press the brake pedal.
- Press the clutch pedal with a manual transaxle.
- Shift into N (Neutral) with an automatic transaxle.
- Press the CANCEL switch located on the steering wheel.
- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 9 mph (15 km/h).
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 53



*Each of these actions will cancel cruise control operation (the SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume cruise control operation, move up the lever (to RES+) located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed.*

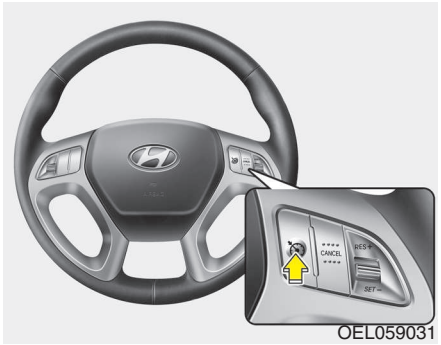


OEL059032

**To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h):**

If any method other than the cruise ON/OFF symbol switch was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when you move the lever (1) up (to RES+).

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).



OEL059031

**To turn cruise control off, do one of the following:**

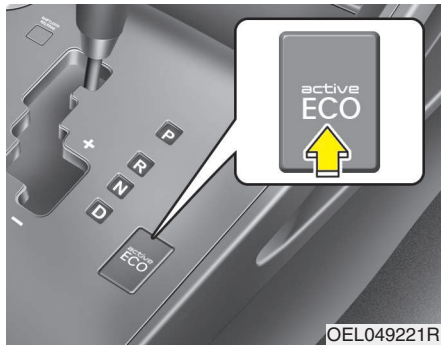
- Push the Cruise ON-OFF symbol button (the Cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off).
- Turn the ignition off.

*Both of these actions cancel cruise control operation. If you want to resume cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in "To set cruise control speed" on the previous page.*

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 54



## ACTIVE ECO SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




### Active ECO operation

Active ECO helps improve fuel efficiency by controlling the engine, transaxle and air conditioner. But fuel-efficiency can be changed by the driver's driving habits and road conditions.

- When the Active ECO button is pressed the ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.
- When the Active ECO is activated, it does not turn off even though the engine is restarted again. To turn off the system, press the active ECO button again.
- If Active ECO is turned off, it will return to the ECO mode.

### When Active ECO is activated:

- Vehicle noise may become loud.
- Vehicle speed may drop.
- The air conditioner performance may decline.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Vehicle speed is limited to 87 mph (140 km/h) when Active ECO is operating. It will not go over the limited speed.***

### Limitation of Active ECO operation :

If the following conditions occur whilst Active ECO is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low:
  The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill:
  The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because the engine torque is restricted.
- When using sports mode:
  The system will be limited according to the shift location.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 55



## ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many miles (kilometers) you can get from a gallon (litre) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jack-rabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Don't "ride" the brake or clutch pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tyres. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tyre wear. Check the tyre pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting kerbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tyre wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your vehicle in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule. If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required.
- Keep your vehicle clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the vehicle. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 56



- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Don't "labour" or "over-rev" the engine. Labouring is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer to perform scheduled inspections and maintenance

**⚠ WARNING - Engine off during motion**

**Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition whilst driving could engage the steering wheel lock resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 57



## SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

### Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

**⚠ WARNING - ABS**

**Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.**

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, tyre chains, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

**⚠ WARNING - Downshifting**

**Downshifting with an automatic transaxle, whilst driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.**

### Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between 1st (First) and R (Reverse) in vehicles equipped with a manual transaxle or R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an automatic transaxle. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transaxle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transaxle damage or failure, and tyre damage.***

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 58



**⚠ WARNING - Spinning tyres**

**Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 35 mph (56 km/h). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tyre to overheat which could result in tyre damage that may injure bystanders.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The ESC system (if equipped) should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**



OUN056051/H

## Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tyre wear will be held to a minimum.



OCM050200R

## Driving at night

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed on vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 59



- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.


1VQA3003/H

## Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windscreen wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- If your tyres are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tyres are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly whilst driving until normal braking operation returns.

## Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.

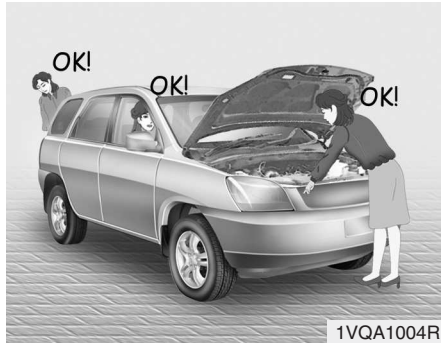
After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

## Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks of roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 60






## Dual carrigeway/Motorway driving

***Tyres:***

Adjust the tyre inflation pressures to specification. Low tyre inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tyres.

Avoid using worn or damaged tyres which may result in reduced traction or tyre failure.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Never exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure shown on the tyres.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Underinflated or overinflated tyres can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. Always check the tyres for proper inflation before driving. For proper tyre pressures, refer to section 8, "Tyres and wheels".**
- **Driving on tyres with no or insufficient tread is dangerous. Worn-out tyres can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, injury, and even death. Worn-out tyres should be replaced as soon as possible and should never be used for driving. Always check the tyre tread before driving your vehicle. For further information and tread limits, refer to section 7, "Tyres and wheels".**

***Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil:***

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both engine coolant and engine oil.

***Drive belt:***

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 61



## WINTER DRIVING


1VQA3005

The onset of winter conditions subject motor vehicles to greater operating demands. Therefore, the following suggestions will assist in maintaining peak performance and reliability during these periods:

### Snowy or Icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tyres or to install tyre chains on your tyres. If snow tyres are needed, it is necessary to select tyres equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tyres. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.
During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front and your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tyre chains on the tyre will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Tyre chains are not legal in all countries. Check the country laws before fitting tyre chains.**

#### *Snow tyres*

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tyres of the same size and load range as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

**⚠ WARNING - Snow tyre size**

**Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.**

*Do not install studded tyres without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.*




### *Tyre chains*

Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tyres is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 0.59 in (15 mm). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturers warranty.

When using tyre chains, attach them to the drive wheels as follows.

2WD : Front wheels

4WD : All four wheels

If a full set of chains is not available for an 4WD vehicle, chains may be installed on the front wheels only.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tyres. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty. Also, the snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tyre. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class "S" certified.***
- ***Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.3 to 0.6 miles (0.5 to 1 km) to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.***

**Chain installation**

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until it stops. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

**⚠ WARNING**
**- Mounting chains**

**When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always place the vehicle in P (park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 63



**⚠ WARNING - Tyre chains**

- **The use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.**
- **Do not exceed 20 mph (30 km/h) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Chains that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.***
- ***Stop driving and retighten the chains any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.***

### Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

### Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in section 7. We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

### Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See section 8 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

### Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 64



### To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

### Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from a HYUNDAI authorised repairer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

### Don't let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

Do not park a vehicle on a public road without the parking brake applied.

### Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components is not obstructed.

### Carry emergency equipment

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 65



## TRAILER TOWING

If you are considering towing with your vehicle, you should first check with your Local Laws to determine their legal requirements.

Since laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. We recommend that you ask a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ WARNING - Towing a trailer**

**If you don't use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well - or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.**

**⚠ WARNING - Weight limits**

**Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (gross combination weight), GVW (gross vehicle weight), GAW (gross axle weight ) and trailer nose weight are all within the limits.**

### ✻ NOTICE - For Europe

- **The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10 % or 220.4 lbs (100 kg), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 62.1 mph (100 km/h) for vehicle of category M1 or 49.7 mph (80 km/h) for vehicle of category N1.**
- **When a vehicle of category M1 is towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the tyre maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15 %. In this case, do not exceed 62.1 mph (100 km/h) and increase the tyre inflation pressure by at least 0.2 bar.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section.***

Your vehicle can tow a trailer. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the trailer” that appears later in this section.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

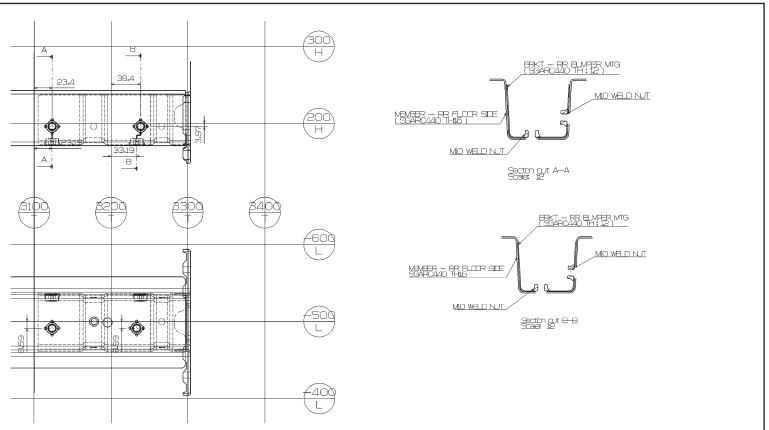
This section contains many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transaxle, wheel assemblies, and tyres are forced to work harder against the load of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads. This additional burden generates extra heat. The trailer also adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

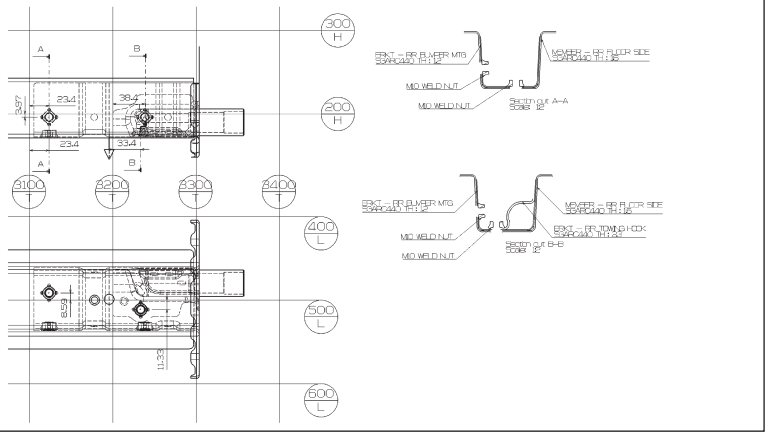
EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 66



• Left side



• Right side



## Towbars

It's important to have the correct towbar equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right towbar. Here are some rules to follow:

- Will you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer towbar? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the towbar.

  If you don't seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for towbars. Do not attach rental towbars or other bumper-type towbars to them. Use only a frame-mounted towbar that does not attach to the bumper.
- A HYUNDAI accessory trailer towbar is available at an authorised HYUNDAI repairer.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 67



### Safety cables

You should always attach cables between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety cables under the nose of the trailer so that the nose will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the towbar.

Instructions about safety cables may be provided by the towbar manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety cables. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety cables to drag on the ground.

### Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to local regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weight exceeds the maximum allowed weight without trailer brakes, then the trailer will also require its own brakes as well. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

- Don't tap into or modify your vehicle's brake system.

**⚠ WARNING - Trailer brakes**

**Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.**

### Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly so responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer towbar and platform, safety cables, electrical connector(s), lights, tyres and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and any trailer brakes are still working.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 68



***Following distance***

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

***Passing***

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

***Backing up***

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

***Making turns***

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, kerbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden manoeuvres. Signal well in advance.

***Turn signals when towing a trailer***

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use only an approved trailer wiring harness.

A HYUNDAI authorised repairer can assist you in installing the wiring harness.

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 69



**⚠ WARNING**

**Failure to use an approved trailer wiring harness could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury.**

***Driving on grades***

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 45 mph (70 km/h) to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an automatic transaxle, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimise heat build up and extend the life of your transaxle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat.***

  ***If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves across the dial towards "H" (HOT), pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.***
- ***You must decide driving speed depending on trailer weight and uphill grade to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.***

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 70



***Parking on hills***

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill. People can be seriously or fatally injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged if unexpectedly roll down hill.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking on a hill**

**Parking your vehicle on a hill with a trailer attached could cause serious injury or death, should the trailer break loose.**

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the kerb (left if headed down hill, right if headed up hill).
2. If the vehicle has a manual transaxle, place the car in neutral. If the vehicle has an automatic transaxle, place the car in P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes, reapply the parking brake and shift the vehicle to R (Reverse) for manual transaxle or P (Park) for automatic transaxle.
7. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking brake**

**It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the parking brake is not firmly set.**

**If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be seriously or fatally injured.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 71



**When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill**

1. With the manual transaxle in Neutral or automatic transaxle in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down whilst you:
   - Start your engine;
   - Shift into gear; and
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

## Maintenance when trailer towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, automatic transaxle fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. Each item is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Don't forget to also maintain your trailer and towbar. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all towbar nuts and bolts should be tight.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur in hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the A/C and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.***
- ***When towing check transaxle fluid more frequently.***
- ***If your vehicle is not equipped with the air conditioner, you should install a condenser fan to improve engine performance when towing a trailer.***

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 72



### If you do decide to pull a trailer

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

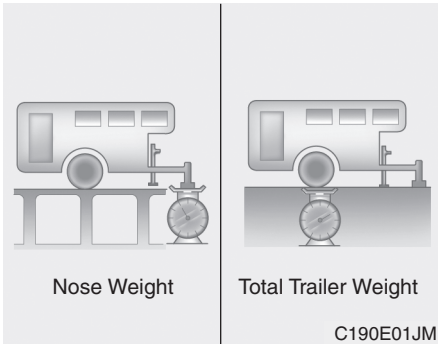
- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a towbar dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your car during its first 1,200 miles (2,000 km) in order to allow the engine to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transaxle damage.
- When towing a trailer, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 60 mph (100 km/h)).
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 45 mph (70 km/h) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower.
- The chart contains important considerations that have to do with weight:

| Item \ Engine | | Petrol Engine | | | Diesel Engine | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1.6L | 2.0L | | 1.7L | 2.0L | |
| | | M/T | M/T | A/T | M/T | M/T | A/T |
| Maximum trailer weight lbs. (kg) | Without brake System | 1653 (750) | 1653 (750) | 1653 (750) | 1653 (750) | 1653 (750) | 1653 (750) |
| | With brake System | 2646 (1200) | 4189 (1900) | 3527 (1600) | 2646 (1200) | 4409 (2000) | 3527 (1600) |
| Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device lbs. (kg) | | 110 (50) | 176 (80) | 176 (80) | 110 (50) | 176 (80) | 176 (80) |
| Recommended distance from rear wheel centre to coupling point inch (mm) | | 37.9 (963) | | | | | |

M/T : Manual transaxle
A/T : Automatic transaxle

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 73

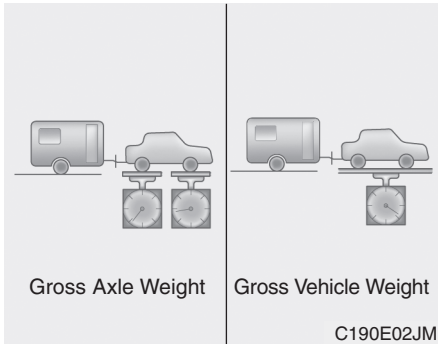





### *Weight of the trailer*

How heavy can a trailer safely be? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.




### *Weight of the trailer nose*

The nose weight of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the kerb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the nose weight to the GVW because your vehicle will also be carrying that weight.

The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum permissible trailer tongue load. After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

**⚠ WARNING - Trailer**

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**
- **An improperly loaded trailer can cause loss of vehicle control.**

EL(FL) UK 5.QXP 8/5/2013 6:59 PM Page 74



## VEHICLE WEIGHT

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's specifications and the compliance label:

**Vehicle kerb weight**

This is the weight of the vehicle including fuel, driver and all standard equipment.

**Payload**

This is the weight of passengers, luggage and any optional equipment installed.

**GAW (Gross axle weight)**

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

**GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)**

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the compliance label.

The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

**GVW (Gross vehicle weight)**

This is the maximum allowed weight of the vehicle, contents, passengers and optional equipment.

**GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)**

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label located on the driver's (or front passenger's) door sill.

### Overloading

**⚠ WARNING - Vehicle weight**

**The gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the certification label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.**

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 1

# What to do in an emergency


Road warning . . . . . 6-2
- Hazard warning flasher . . . . . 6-2

In case of an emergency whilst driving . . . . . 6-3
- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing. . . . . 6-3
- If you have a flat tyre whilst driving. . . . . 6-3
- If engine stalls whilst driving . . . . . 6-3

If the engine will not start . . . . . 6-4
- If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly . . . . 6-4
- If engine turns over normally but does not start . . . . 6-4

Emergency starting . . . . . 6-5
- Jump starting. . . . . 6-5
- Push-starting . . . . . 6-6

If the engine overheats. . . . . 6-7

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (Type A) . . . . . 6-8
- Low tyre pressure telltale . . . . . 6-9
- TPMS (tyre pressure monitoring system) malfunction indicator . . . . . 6-10
- Changing a tyre with tpms . . . . . 6-11

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (Type B) . . . . . 6-13
- Low tyre pressure telltale . . . . . 6-14
- Low tyre pressure position telltale. . . . . 6-14
- TPMS (tyre pressure monitoring system) malfunction indicator . . . . . 6-15
- Changing a tyre with tpms . . . . . 6-16

If you have a flat tyre. . . . . 6-19
- Jack and tools . . . . . 6-19
- Removing and storing the spare tyre . . . . . 6-20
- Changing tyres . . . . . 6-20

If you have a flat tyre (with tyre mobility kit) . . 6-25
- Introduction . . . . . 6-25
- Notes on the safe use of the tyre mobility kit . . . . . 6-26
- Components of the tyre mobility kit . . . . . 6-27
- Using the tyre mobility kit . . . . . 6-28
- Distributing the sealant. . . . . 6-29

Towing . . . . . 6-32
- Towing service . . . . . 6-32
- Removable towing hook . . . . . 6-33
- Emergency towing. . . . . 6-34

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 2



## ROAD WARNING




### Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the centre console switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher whilst the vehicle is being towed.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 3



## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILST DRIVING

### If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.
- If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, the vehicle can move forward by shifting to the 2(second) or 3(third) gear and then turning the starter without depressing the clutch pedal.

### If a puncture occurs whilst driving the vehicle

1. Bring the car to rest as soon as it is safe to do so and with the minimum amount of braking required which will assist in maintaining the maximum amount of control. The vehicle should be parked wherever possible upon firm level ground to facilitate wheel changing.
2. If the vehicle is creating a hazard and the road conditions do not permit the wheel to be changed safely, assistance should be sought.
3. Passengers must not be allowed to remain inside the vehicle during wheel changing. If a puncture occurs whilst the vehicle is on a motorway, the passengers should take refuge on the motorway embankment to avoid the possibility of injury occurring should the vehicle be struck by other motorway traffic.
4. Wheel changing should be performed according to the following instructions.

### If engine stalls whilst driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 4



## IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

### If engine cannot be cranked

1. If your vehicle has an automatic transaxle, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery terminals and connections to ensure that these are clean and also tight.
3. If the interior lights dim when the engine is cranked and the battery terminals have been checked, a discharged battery is indicated.
4. Do not attempt to push or tow start the vehicle, refer to "Jump Starting" for information regarding engine starting when the battery is discharged.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the engine refuses to start, no attempt should be made to push or tow start the vehicle. Vehicles with automatic transaxle or fuel injection will not be able to be started in this manner since no drive is transmitted through the automatic transaxle whilst the engine is not running, and in the case of fuel injected derivatives, the fuel pump will not operate under tow start conditions. In addition, if the vehicle is equipped with an exhaust catalyst, damage to the catalyst may result if the vehicle is tow started.**

F030200AFD

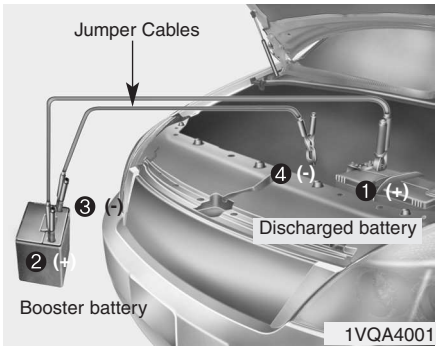
### If engine turns over normally but does not start

1. Check fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position, check all connectors at ignition, coil and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you call a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 5



## EMERGENCY STARTING




Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

### Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow the jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).***

**⚠ WARNING - Battery**

**Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Battery**

- **Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks.**
  **If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.**

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 6



***Jump starting procedure***

**⚠ CAUTION - AGM battery (if equipped)**

- ***AAbsorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.***
- ***When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***
- ***Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.***
- ***If the AGM battery is reconnected or replaced, ISG function will not operate immediately.***

  ***If you want to use the ISG function, the battery sensor needs to be calibrated for approximately 4 hours with the ignition off.***

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles to touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2). Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

**⚠ CAUTION - Battery cables**

***Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.***

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

*If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.*

## Push-starting

Your manual transaxle-equipped vehicle should not be push-started because it might damage the emission control system.

Vehicles equipped with automatic transaxle cannot be push-started.

Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.**

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 7



## IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or neutral (manual transaxle) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the bonnet, stop the engine. Do not open the bonnet until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

**⚠ WARNING**

**Whilst the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.**

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and we recommend that you call a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This can allow coolant to be blown out of the opening and cause serious burns.**

6. If the cause of the overheating cannot be found, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the base of the radiator fill opening. Fill the coolant expansion tank to the halfway mark. To ensure the correct water to coolant mix is obtained after top up, testing by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer is required.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, we recommend that you call a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 8



## TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS, IF EQUIPPED) (TYPE A)




Low tyre pressure telltale /
TPMS malfunction indicator

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 9



### ✻ NOTICE

**If the TPMS indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or engine is running, or if it comes on after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**



### Low tyre pressure telltale

When the tyre pressure monitoring system warning indicator is illuminated, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated.

If the telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre.

Then the Low Tyre Pressure telltale may flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated after restarting and about 20 minutes of continuous driving before you have the low pressure tyre repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***In winter or cold weather, the low tyre pressure telltale may be illuminated if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tyre pressure.***

***When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.***

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 10



**⚠ WARNING - Low pressure damage**

**Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.**

**Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.**



### TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. If the system is able to correctly detect an under inflation warning at the same time as system failure then it will illuminate the TPMS malfunction indicator.

We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may be illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***
- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may illuminate if snow chains or some separately purchased devices such as notebook computers, mobile charger, remote starter, navigation etc. are used in the vehicle. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 11



**Changing a tyre with TPMS**

If you have a flat tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure will come on. We recommend that the flat tyre be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***We recommend that you use a puncture-repairing agent approved by HYUNDAI.***

***The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel shall be eleminated when you replace the tyre with a new one.***

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you have your tyres serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

Even if you replace the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale will blink or remain on until the low pressure tyre is repaired and placed on the vehicle.

After you replace the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale may blink or illuminate after a few minutes because the TPMS sensor mounted on the spare wheel is not initiated.

Once the low pressure tyre is reinflated to the recommended pressure and installed on the vehicle or we recommend that the TPMS sensor mounted on the replaced spare wheel be initiated by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer, the TPMS malfunction indicator and the low tyre pressure telltale will extinguish within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicator is not extinguished after a few minutes of driving, We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If original mounted tyre is replaced with the spare tyre, the TPMS sensor on the replaced spare wheel should be initiated and we recommend that the TPMS sensor on the original mounted wheel be deactivated by a HYUNDAI dealer. If the TPMS sensor on the original mounted wheel located in the spare tyre carrier still activates, the tyre pressure monitoring system may not operate properly. We recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:53 PM Page 12



You may not be able to identify a low tyre by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure the tyre's inflation pressure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1 mile (1.6 km) in that 3 hour period.

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***We recommend that you use the tyre sealant approved by HYUNDAI if your vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant can damage the tyre pressure sensors.***

**⚠ WARNING - TPMS**

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

**⚠ WARNING - Protecting TPMS**

**Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING - For EUROPE**

- **Do not modify the vehicle, it may interfere with the TPMS function.**
- **The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.**

  **For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by a HYUNDAI dealer. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.**

**❋All vehicles sold in the EUROPE market during below period must be equipped with TPMS.**

**- New model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2012 ~**

**- Current model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2014~ (Based on vehicle registrations)**

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 13



## TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS, IF EQUIPPED) (TYPE B)




(1) Low tyre pressure telltale / TPMS malfunction indicator

(2) Low tyre pressure position telltale

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 14



Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

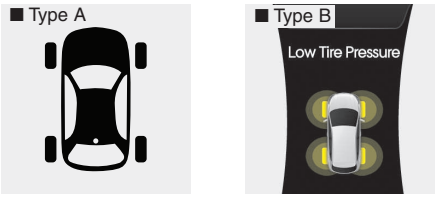
### ✻ NOTICE

**If the TPMS, Low Tyre Pressure and Position indicators do not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or engine is running, or if they remain illuminated after coming on for approximately 3 seconds, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

**Low tyre pressure telltale**



**Low tyre pressure position telltale**




When the tyre pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. The low tyre pressure position telltale light will indicate which tyre is significantly under-inflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible.

Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel.

If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre.

Then the TPMS malfunction indicator may turn on and the Low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will remain on after restarting and about 20 minutes of continuous driving before you have the low pressure tyre repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 15



**⚠ CAUTION**

***In winter or cold weather, the low tyre pressure telltale may be illuminated if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tyre pressure.***

***When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.***

**⚠ WARNING - Low pressure damage**

**Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.**

**Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.**

### TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator



The low tyre pressure telltale will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. If the system is able to correctly detect an under inflation warning at the same time as system failure then it will illuminate both the TPMS malfunction and low tyre pressure position telltales e.g. if Front Left sensor fails, the TPMS malfunction indicator illuminates, but if the Front Right, Rear Left, or Rear Right tyre is under-inflated, the low tyre pressure position telltales may illuminate together with the TPMS malfunction indicator.

We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 16



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may be illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***
- ***The TPMS malfunction indicator may be illuminated if snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computers, mobile charger, remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).***

**Changing a tyre with TPMS**

If you have a flat tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***We recommend that you use the sealant approved by HYUNDAI. The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel shall be eliminated when you replace the tyre with a new one.***

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you have your tyres serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

Even if you replace the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will remain on until the low pressure tyre is repaired and placed on the vehicle.

After you replace the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, the TPMS malfunction indicator may illuminate after a few minutes because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel.

Once the low pressure tyre is reinflated to the recommended pressure and installed on the vehicle or the new TPMS sensor mounted on the wheel, the TPMS malfunction indicator and the low tyre pressure and position telltales will extinguish within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicator is not extinguished after a few minutes of driving, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 17



**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the TPMS sensor on the original mounted wheel located in the spare tyre carrier still activates, the tyre pressure monitoring system may not operate properly. We recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

You may not be able identify a low tyre by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure the tyre's inflation pressure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold (from sitting stationary for at least 3 hours and driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) during that 3 hour period).

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1 mile (1.6 km) in that 3 hour period.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***We recommend that you do not use any tyre sealant except the Tyre Mobility Kit approved by HYUNDAI if your vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant can damage the tyre pressure sensors.***

**⚠ WARNING - TPMS**

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 18



**⚠ WARNING - Protecting TPMS**

**Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING - For EUROPE**

- **Do not modify the vehicle, it may interfere with the TPMS function.**
- **The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.**

  **For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by a HYUNDAI dealer. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.**

**❋All vehicles sold in the EUROPE market during below period must be equipped with TPMS.**

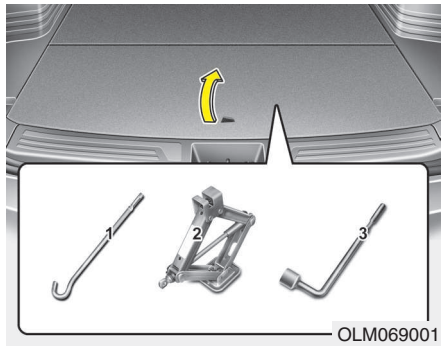
**- New model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2012 ~**

**- Current model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2014~ (Based on vehicle registrations)**

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 19



## IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE




### Jack and tools

The jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.

(1) Jack handle

(2) Jack

(3) Wheel lug nut wrench

***Jacking instructions***

The jack is provided for emergency tyre changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” whilst the vehicle is in motion, store it properly and fasten the jack screw fully.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING - Changing tyres**

- **Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or motorway.**
- **Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tyre. The jack should be used on firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.**
- **Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jack support.**

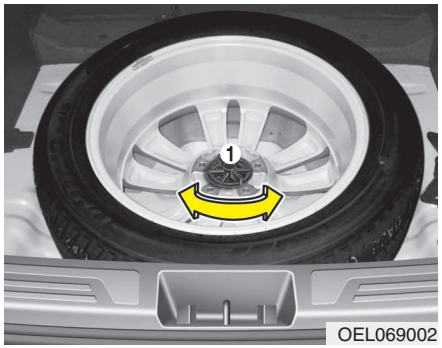
**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 20



**(Continued)**

- **The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.**
- **Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**
- **Do not start or run the engine whilst the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle whilst it is on the jack.**
- **Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.**

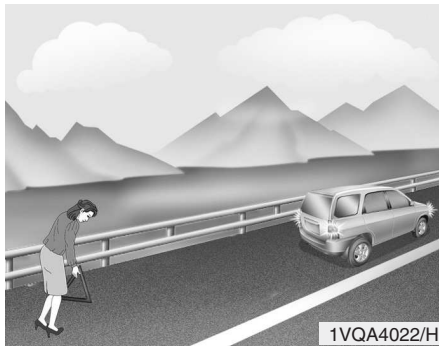



### Removing and storing the spare tyre

1. Turn the tyre hold-down wing bolt (1) counterclockwise.

Store the tyre in the reverse order of removal.

To prevent the spare tyre and tools from “rattling” whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

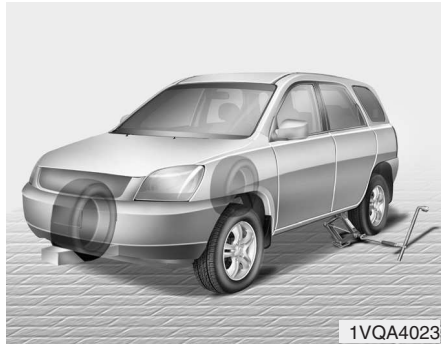



### Changing tyres

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Shift the shift lever into R (Reverse) with manual transaxle or P (Park) with automatic transaxle.
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 21

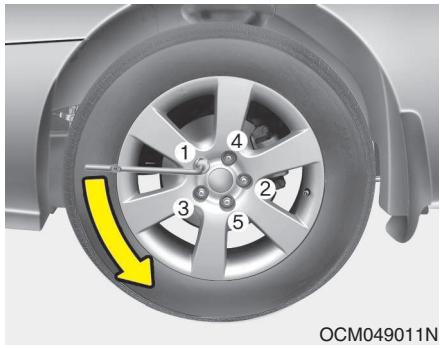




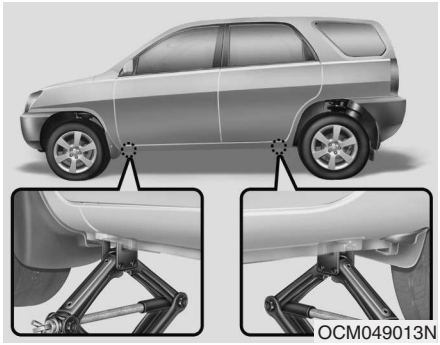

4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tyre from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.

**⚠ WARNING - Changing a tyre**

- **To prevent vehicle movement whilst changing a tyre, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.**
- **We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**




6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tyre has been raised off the ground.


OCM049013N

7. Place the jack at the front or rear jacking position closest to the tyre you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to index with the jack.

**⚠ WARNING - Jack location**
**To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.**


OCM054012

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tyre just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 1.2 in (30 mm). Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tyre, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them. If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 23



**⚠ WARNING**

**Wheels and wheel covers may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.**

**If there is, remove it. If there is not good contact on the mounting surface between the wheel and hub, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.**

10. To reinstall the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. The nuts should be installed with their tapered small diameter ends directed inward. Jiggle the tyre to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.



OEL069007

Then position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle.

Go around the wheel tightening every other nut until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**Wheel nut tightening torque:**

Steel wheel & aluminium alloy wheel:

65~79 lb.ft (9~11 kg.m)

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 24



If you have a tyre gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tyre pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tyre. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed wheels, always secure the flat tyre in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.***

***Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

**⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs**

**If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.**

To prevent the jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tyre from rattling whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

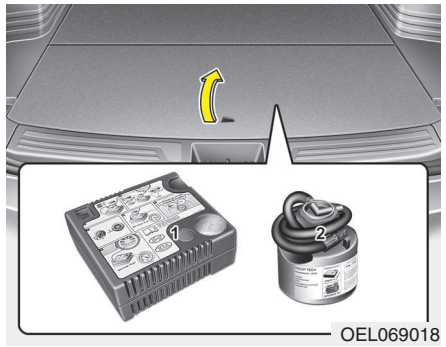
**⚠ WARNING - Inadequate spare tyre pressure**

**Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to "Tyres and wheels" in section 8.**

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 25



## IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE (WITH TYREMOBILITYKIT, IF EQUIPPED)



OEL069018

For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.

(1) Compressor

(2) Sealant bottle

The Tyre Mobility Kit is a temporary fix to the tyre and we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ CAUTION - One sealant for one tyre**

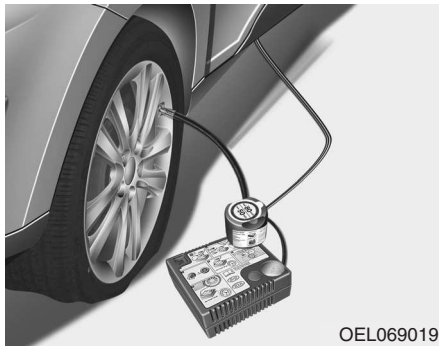
***When two or more tyres are flat, do not use the tyre mobility kit because the supported one sealant of Tyre Mobility Kit is only used for one flat tyre.***

**⚠ WARNING - Tyre wall**

**Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit to repair punctures in the tyre walls. This can result in an accident due to tyre failure.**

**⚠ WARNING - Temporary fix**

**Have your tyre repaired as soon as possible. The tyre may loose air pressure at any time after inflating with the Tyre Mobility Kit.**


OEL069019

### Introduction

With the TyreMobilityKit you stay mobile even after experiencing a tyre puncture.

The system of compressor and sealing compound effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger car tyre caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tyre.

After you ensured that the tyre is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tyre (distance up to 120 miles (200 km)) at a max. speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) in order to reach a service station or tyre dealer to have the tyre replaced.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 26



It is possible that some tyres, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tyre may adversely affect tyre performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving manoeuvres, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.

The TyreMobilityKit is not designed or intended as a permanent tyre repair method and is to be used for one tyre only. This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture simply and reliably. Read the section "Notes on the safe use of the TyreMobilityKit".

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the TMK if a tyre is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.**

**Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the TMK.**

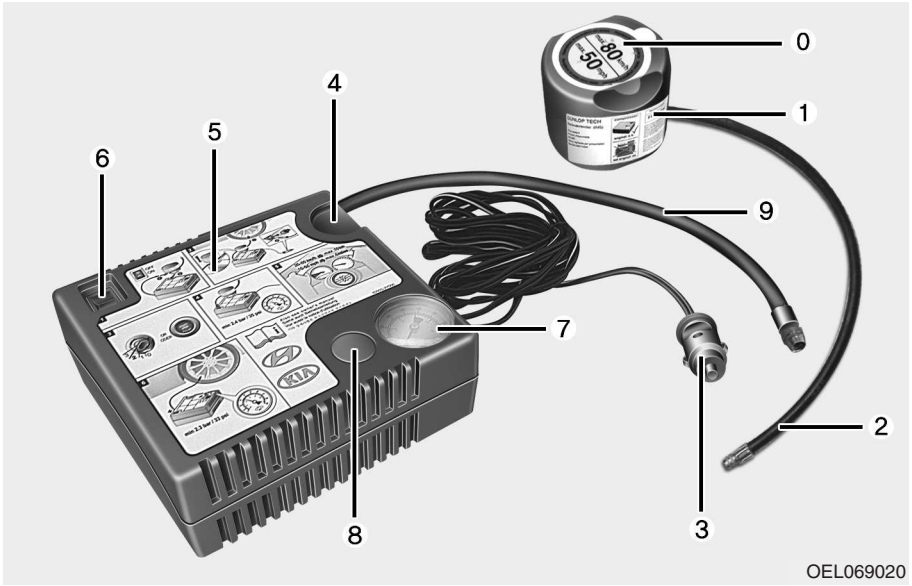
**Notes on the safe use of the TyreMobilityKit**

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the TyreMobilityKit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle won't move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the TyreMobilityKit for sealing/inflation passenger car tyres. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the tyre mobility kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tyres.
- When the tyre and wheel are damaged, do not use Tyre Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Use of the Tyre Mobility Kit may not be effective for tyre damage larger than approximately 0.24 in (6 mm).

  If the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the Tyre Mobility Kit, we recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.
- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if a tyre is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.
- Do not remove any foreign objects-such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tyre.
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the engine running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the TyreMobilityKit unattended whilst it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the TyreMobilityKit if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 27






**Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit**

0. Speed restriction label
1. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
2. Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel
3. Connectors and cable for the power outlet direct connection
4. Holder for the sealant bottle
5. Compressor
6. On/off switch
7. Pressure gauge for displaying the tyre inflation pressure
8. Button for reducing tyre inflation pressure
9. Hose to connect compressor and sealant bottle or compressor and wheel

Connectors, cable and connection hose are stored in the compressor housing.

**⚠ WARNING - Expired sealant**

**Do not use the Tyre sealant after the sealant has expired (i.e. pasted the expiration date on the sealant container). This can increase the risk of tyre failure.**

**⚠ WARNING - Sealant**

- **Keep out of reach of children.**
- **Avoid contact with eyes.**
- **Do not swallow.**

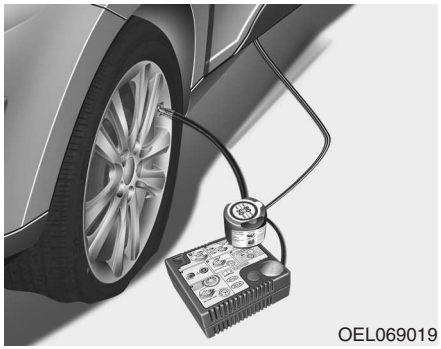
Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 28

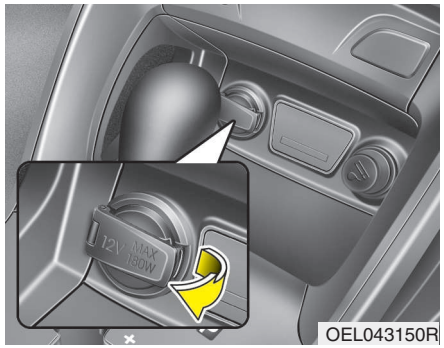


**Using the TyreMobilityKit**

1. Detach the speed restriction label (0) from the sealant bottle (1), and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.
2. Screw connection hose (9) onto the connector of the sealant bottle.
3. Ensure that button (8) on the compressor is not pressed.
4. Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw filling hose (2) of the sealant bottle onto the valve.
5. Insert the sealant bottle into the housing of the compressor (4) so that the bottle is upright.


OEL069019

6. Ensure that the compressor is switched off, position 0.



OEL043150R

7. Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Only use the front passenger side power outlet when connecting the power cord.**

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 29



8. With the engine start/stop button position on or ignition switch position on, switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 5~7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper pressure. (refer to the Tyre and Wheels, chapter 8). The inflation pressure of the tyre after filling is unimportant and will be checked/corrected later.

   Be careful not to overinflate the tyre and stay away from the tyre when filling it.

**⚠ CAUTION - Tyre pressure**

***Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tyre pressure is below 200kpa(29 PSI). This could result in an accident due to sudden tyre failure.***

9. Switch off the compressor.
10. Detach the hoses from the sealant bottle connector and from the tyre valve.

Return the TyreMobilityKit to its storage location in the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING - Carbon monoxide**

**Do not leave your vehicle running in a poorly ventilated area for extended periods of time. Carbon monoxide poisoning and suffocation can occur.**

**Distributing the sealant**

11. Immediately drive approximately 4~6 miles (7~10 km or, about 10min) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tyre.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). If possible, do not fall below a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph).***

***Whilst driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road.***

***Call for road side service or towing. When you use the Tyre Mobility Kit, the tyre pressure sensors and wheel may be damaged by sealant, remove the sealant stained with tyre pressure sensors and wheel and inspect in authorized dealer.***

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 30



**Checking the tyre inflation pressure**

1. After driving approximately 4~6 miles (7~10 km or about 10 min), stop at a safety location.
2. Connect connection hose (9) of the compressor directly to the tyre valve.
3. Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle power outlet.
4. Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the recomended tyre inflation. With the ignition switched on, proceed as follows.
   - **To increase the inflation pressure:** Switch on the compressor, position I. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The pressure gauge may show higher than actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tyre reading, the compressor needs to be turned off.**

- **To reduce the inflation pressure:** Press the button 8 on the compressor.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to Distributing the sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4.***

***Use of the TMK may be ineffectual for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm (0.16 in).***

***We recommend that you contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer if the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the Tyre Mobility Kit.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**The tyre inflation pressure must be at least 220 kPa (32 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving.**

**Call for road side service or towing.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Tyre pressure sensor**

***The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel should be removed when you replace the tyre with a new one and inspect the tyre pressure sensors in authorised dealer.***

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:54 PM Page 31



### Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the TMK away from moving traffic. Place your warning triangle in a prominent place to make passing vehicles aware of your location.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the TMK for sealing/inflation passenger car tyres. Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tyres.
- Do not remove any foreign objects-such as nails or screws -that have penetrated the tyre.
- Before using the TMK, read the precautionary advice printed on the sealant bottle!
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the engine running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the TMK unattended whilst it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the TMK if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- When both the tyre and wheel are damaged, do not use Tyre Mobility Kit for your safety.

**Technical Data**

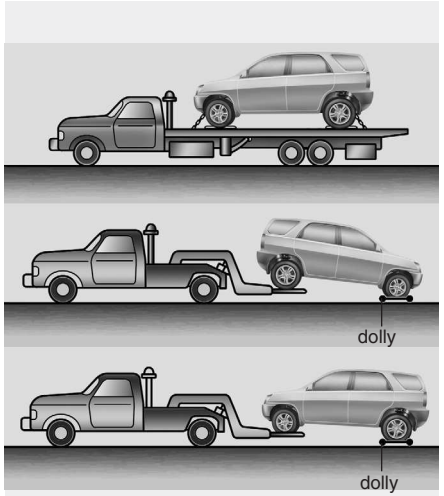
System voltage: DC 12 V
Working voltage: DC 10 - 15 V
Amperage rating: max. 15 A
Suitable for use at temperatures:
-30 ~ +70°C (-22 ~ +158°F)
Max. working pressure:
87 psi (6 bar)
Size
Compressor: 6.6 x 5.9 x 2.7 in.
(168 x 150 x 68 mm)
Sealant bottle: 4.1 x ø 3.3 in.
(104 x ø 85 mm)
Compressor weight:
2.31 lbs (1.05 kg)
Sealant volume:
18.3 cu. in. (300 ml)

❊ Sealant and spare parts can be obtained and replaced at an authorized vehicle or tyre dealer. Empty sealant bottles may be disposed of at home. Liquid residue from the sealant should be disposed of by your vehicle or tyre dealer or in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:55 PM Page 32



## TOWING




OXM069028

### Towing service

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

On 4WD vehicles, your vehicle must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.

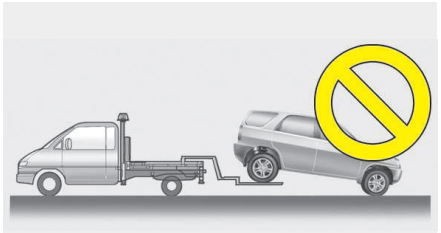
**⚠ CAUTION**

***The 4WD vehicle should never be towed with the wheels on the ground. This can cause serious damage to the transaxle or the 4WD system.***

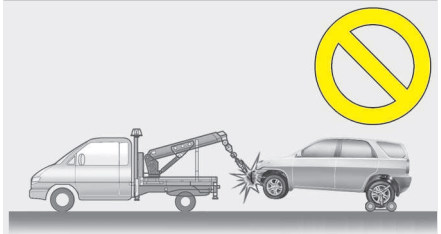
On 2WD vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.



OUN046030



OCM054034

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.***
- ***Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.***

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:55 PM Page 33



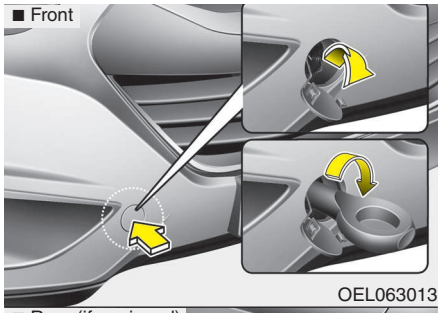
When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

**⚠ CAUTION**

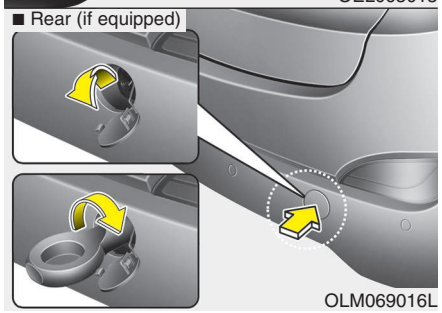
***Failure to place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transaxle.***

■ Front



OEL063013

■ Rear (if equipped)



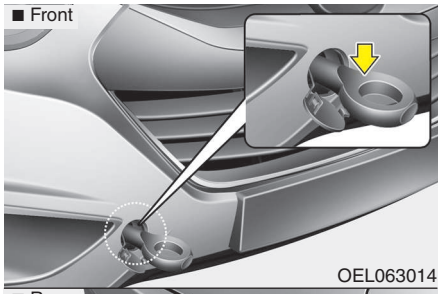
OLM069016L

**Removable towing hook (if equipped)**

1. Open the tailgate, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
2. Remove the hole cover pressing the lower part of the cover on the front or rear bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:55 PM Page 34






## Emergency towing

**If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer or a commercial tow truck service.**

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speed. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the towing hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.***
- ***Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.***
- ***Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.***

- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply steady and even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

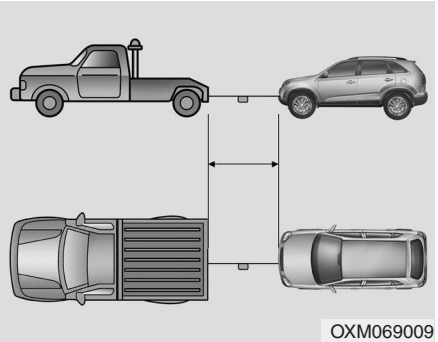
EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:55 PM Page 35



**⚠ WARNING**

**Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.**

- **Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving manoeuvres which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.**
- **If the disabled vehicle is unable to be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. Contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.**
- **Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.**
- **Keep away from the vehicle during towing.**



OXM069009

- Use a towing strap less than 16 feet (5 m) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 12 inches (30 cm) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loosened during towing.

***Emergency towing precautions***

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

EL(FL) UK 6.QXP 8/5/2013 6:55 PM Page 36



### ⚠ CAUTION - Automatic transaxle

- ***If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transaxle is in neutral. Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the ignition switch in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.***
- ***To avoid serious damage to the automatic transaxle, limit the vehicle speed to 10 mph (15 km/h) and drive less than 1 mile (1.5 km) when towing.***
- ***Before towing, check the automatic transaxle fluid leak under your vehicle. If the automatic transaxle fluid is leaking, a flatbed equipment or towing dolly must be used.***

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:01 PM Page 1

# Maintenance


**Engine compartment** . . . . . 7-3
**Maintenance services** . . . . . 7-7
- Owner's responsibility . . . . . 7-7
- Owner maintenance precautions . . . . . 7-7
- Engine compartment precautions (Diesel engine) . . . 7-8

**Owner maintenance** . . . . . 7-9
- Owner maintenance schedule. . . . . 7-9

**Scheduled maintenance service**. . . . . 7-11
**Explanation of scheduled maintenance items** . . . 7-12
**Engine oil**. . . . . 7-15
- Checking the engine oil level . . . . . 7-15
- Changing the engine oil and filter . . . . . 7-16

**Engine coolant** . . . . . 7-16
- Checking the coolant level . . . . . 7-16
- Changing the coolant . . . . . 7-19

**Brake/clutch fluid**. . . . . 7-19
- Checking the brake/clutch fluid level . . . . . 7-19

**Washer fluid** . . . . . 7-20
- Checking the washer fluid level . . . . . 7-20

**Parking brake**. . . . . 7-21
- Check the parking brake . . . . . 7-21

**Fuel Filter (For Diesel)**. . . . . 7-21
- Draining water from fuel filter . . . . . 7-21
- Extracting air from the fuel filter . . . . . 7-21
- Fuel filter cartridge replacement. . . . . 7-22

**Air cleaner**. . . . . 7-23
- Filter replacement . . . . . 7-23

**Climate control air filter** . . . . . 7-25
- Filter inspection. . . . . 7-25
- Filter replacement . . . . . 7-25

**Wiper blades**. . . . . 7-27
- Blade inspection. . . . . 7-27
- Blade replacement . . . . . 7-27

**Battery**. . . . . 7-30
- For best battery service . . . . . 7-30
- Battery capacity label . . . . . 7-31
- Battery recharging . . . . . 7-32
- Reset items . . . . . 7-32

**Tyres and wheels** . . . . . 7-33
- Tyre care . . . . . 7-33
- Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures . . . . . 7-33
- Checking tyre inflation pressure . . . . . 7-35
- Tyre rotation . . . . . 7-36
- Wheel alignment and tyre balance . . . . . 7-37
- Tyre replacement. . . . . 7-37
- Wheel replacement . . . . . 7-38
- Tyre traction. . . . . 7-39
- Tyre maintenance . . . . . 7-39
- Tyre sidewall labeling . . . . . 7-39
- Low aspect ratio tyre . . . . . 7-43

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:01 PM Page 2

**Fuses** . . . . . 7-44
- Fuse/relay panel description. . . . . 7-49

**Light bulbs** . . . . . 7-56
- Headlight, position light, turn signal light, front fog light bulb replacement. . . . . 7-57
- Headlight and front fog light aiming (for europe) . . 7-60
- Side repeater light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-65
- Rear combination light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-65
- Rear fog light . . . . . 7-67
- High mounted stop light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-67
- License plate light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-68
- Interior light bulb replacement . . . . . 7-69

**Appearance care** . . . . . 7-70
- Exterior care . . . . . 7-70
- Interior care . . . . . 7-75

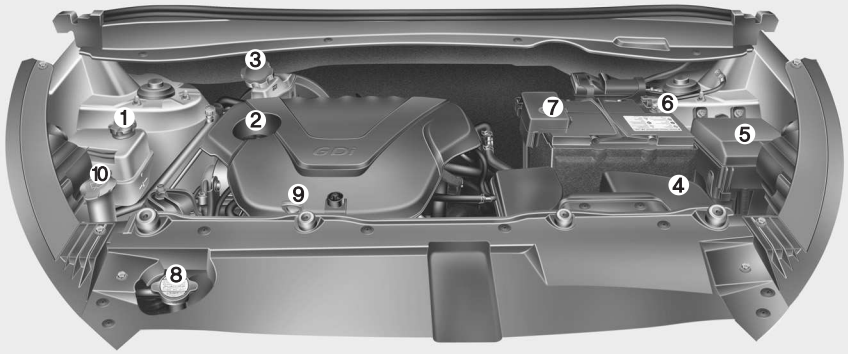
**Emission control system** . . . . . 7-76
- Crankcase emission control system . . . . . 7-76
- Evaporative emission control system . . . . . 7-76
- Exhaust emission control system . . . . . 7-77

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:01 PM Page 3



## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **Petrol Engine (1.6L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Radiator cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

* : if equipped

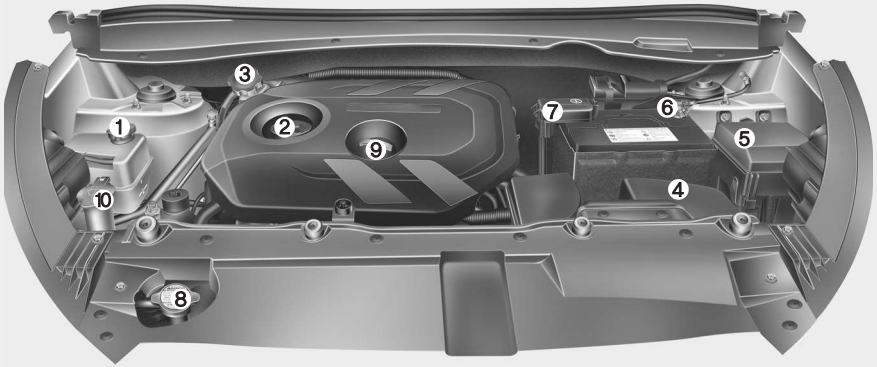
❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL070301R

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:01 PM Page 4



■ **Petrol Engine (2.0L) - MPI/GDI**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Radiator cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

* : if equipped

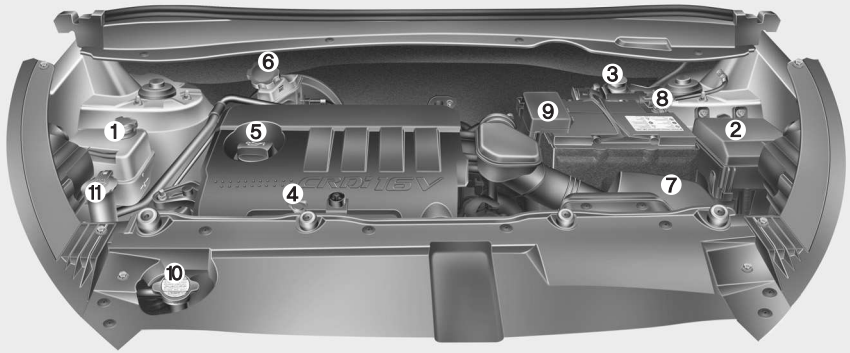
❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL073300R

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:01 PM Page 5



■ **Diesel Engine (1.7L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Fuse box
3. Fuel filter
4. Engine oil dipstick
5. Engine oil filler cap
6. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir
7. Air cleaner
8. Negative battery terminal
9. Positive battery terminal
10. Radiator cap
11. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

* : if equipped

❊ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL070302R

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:01 PM Page 6



**■ Diesel Engine (2.0L)**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Fuse box
3. Fuel filter
4. Engine oil dipstick
5. Engine oil filler cap
6. Brake/clutch* fluid reservoir
7. Air cleaner
8. Negative battery terminal
9. Positive battery terminal
10. Radiator cap
11. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

* : if equipped

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OEL079002R

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:01 PM Page 7



## MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

### Owner's responsibility

**✻ NOTICE**

**Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.**

We recommend in general that you have your vehicle serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer. You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties. Detailed warranty information is provided in your Service Passport. Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered when your vehicle is covered by warranty.

### Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 8



**⚠ WARNING - Maintenance work**

- **Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured whilst performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that the system be serviced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**
- **Working under the bonnet with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury. Therefore, if you must run the engine whilst working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.**

### Engine compartment precautions (Diesel engine)

- The piezo injector operates at high voltage (maximum 200v). Therefore, the following accidents may occur.
  - Direct contact with the injector or injector wiring may cause electric shock or damage your muscle or nerve system.
  - The electromagnetic wave from the operating injector may cause the artificial heart pacemaker to malfunction.
- Follow the safety tips provided below, when you are checking the engine room whilst the engine is running.
  - Do not touch the injector, injector wirings, and the engine computer whilst the engine is running.
  - Do not remove the injector connector whilst the engine is running.
  - People using pacemakers must not go near the engine whilst the engine is starting or running.

**⚠ WARNING - Diesel Engine**

**Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High-pressure pump, rail, injectors and high-pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst engine is running, since the high currents in the electronic engine control system produce considerable magnetic fields.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 9



# OWNER MAINTENANCE

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle. If you have any question, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

## Owner maintenance schedule

***When you stop for fuel:***

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check coolant level in coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tyres.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause burns or other serious injury.**

***Whilst operating your vehicle:***

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transaxle occurs, check the transaxle fluid level.
- Check manual transaxle operation, including clutch operation.
- Check automatic transaxle P (Park) function.
- Check parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 10



***At least monthly:***

- Check coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare.

***At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall) :***

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlight alignment.
- Check muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tyres and loose wheel lug nuts.

***At least once a year :***

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and checks, and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Check the power steering fluid level.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transaxle linkage and controls.
- Clean battery and terminals.
- Check the brake (and clutch) fluid level.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 11



## SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated short distance driving.
- Driving in dusty conditions or sandy areas.
- Extensive use of brakes.
- Driving in areas where salt or other corrosive materials are being used.
- Driving on rough or muddy roads.
- Driving in mountainous areas.
- Extended periods of idling or low speed operation.
- Driving for a prolonged period in cold temperatures and/or extremely humid climates.
- More than 50% driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32°C (90°F).

*If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than "Normal Maintenance Schedule which is provied in your Service Passport."*

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 12



## EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

### Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the car is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

### Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

### Fuel filter (cartridge)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. We recommend that the fuel filter be replaced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

### Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend that the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections be replaced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ WARNING - Diesel only**

**Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touch the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 13



### Vapour hose and fuel filler cap

The vapour hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapour hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

### Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses (if equipped)

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

### Air cleaner filter

We recommend that you use air cleaner filter for replacement from a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

### Spark plugs (for petrol engine)

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

### Cooling system

Check the cooling system parts, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

### Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the manual transaxle fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

### Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Automatic transaxle fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.

But in severe conditions, we recommend that the fluid be changed by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer in accordance to the scheduled maintenance at the beginning of this chapter.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**Automatic transaxle fluid colour is basically red.**

**As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transaxle fluid will begin to look darker. It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed colour.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 14



**⚠ CAUTION**

***The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transaxle malfunction and failure.***

***Use only specified automatic transaxle fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)***

### Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

### Brake fluid

Check brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between "MIN" and "MAX" marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

### Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake lever and cables.

### Brake pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, refer to the Hyundai web site.

(**http://brakemanual.hmc.co.kr**)

### Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

### Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

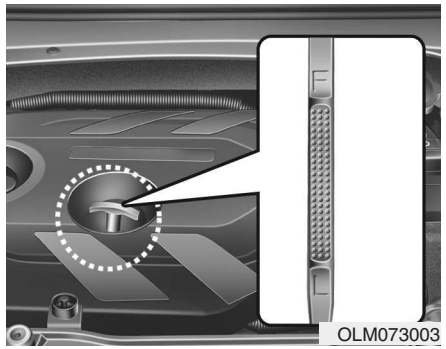
### Air conditioning refrigerant/ compressor (if equipped)

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 15



## ENGINE OIL




### Checking the engine oil level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

**⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose**

**Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.**

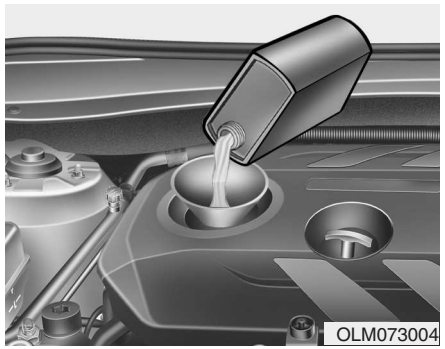
5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not overfill with engine oil. Engine damage may result.***
- ***Do not spill engine oil, when adding or changing engine oil. If you drop the engine oil on the engine room, wipe it off immediately.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel engine**

***Overfilling the engine oil may cause severe dieseling due to churning effect. It may lead to engine damage accompanied with abrupt engine speed increment, combustion noise and white smoke emission.***




If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. **Do not overfill.**

**Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.**

*Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)*

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 16



### Changing the engine oil and filter

We recommend that the engine oil and filter be replaced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.




**⚠ WARNING**

**Prolonged and repeated contact with used engine oils may result in serious skin disorders including dermatitis and cancer. Avoid contact with skin as far as possible and always wash thoroughly after any contact. Keep used oils out of reach of children. It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses and soil. Use only authorised waste collection facilities including civic amenity sites and garages for the disposal of used oil and oil filters. If in doubt, contact the local authority for disposal instructions.**

## ENGINE COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant concentration level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before travelling to a colder climate.

### Checking the coolant level

**⚠ WARNING**



**Removing radiator cap**

- **Never attempt to remove the radiator cap whilst the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.**
- **Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 17



**(Continued)**

**Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.**

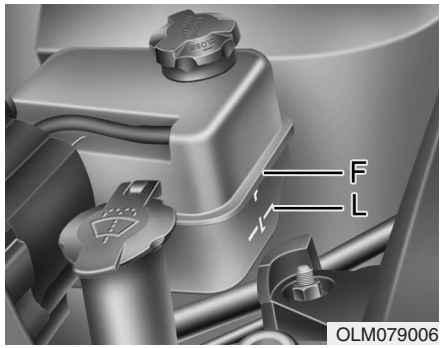
- **Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug whilst the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING**



**The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blades. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.**

**If your vehicle is equipped with GDI, the electric motor (cooling fan) may operate until you disconnect the nagative battery cable.**




OLM079006

Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F (MAX) and L (MIN) marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough specified coolant to provide protection against freezing and corrosion. Bring the level to F (MAX), but do not overfill. If frequent coolant refill is required, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 18

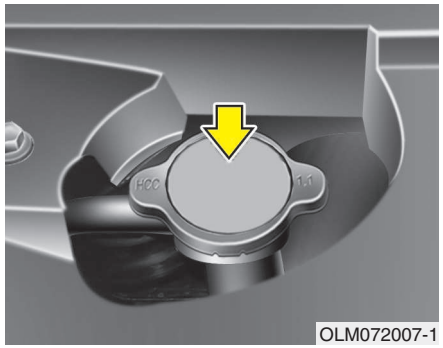


***Recommended engine coolant***

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol-based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

| Ambient Temperature | Mixture Percentage (volume) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Antifreeze | Water |
| -15°C (5°F) | 35 | 65 |
| -25°C (-13°F) | 40 | 60 |
| -35°C (-31°F) | 50 | 50 |
| -45°C (-49°F) | 60 | 40 |


OLM072007-1

**⚠ WARNING**



**Radiator cap**

**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 19



### Changing the coolant

We recommend that the coolant be replaced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

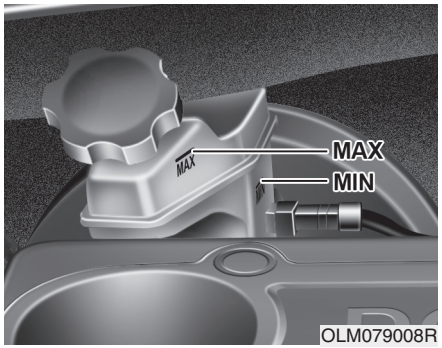
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Put a thick cloth or fabric around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as generator.***

**⚠ WARNING - Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or anti-freeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**

## BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)




### Checking the brake/clutch fluid level

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX (Maximum) and MIN (Minimum) marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake/clutch fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake/clutch fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX (Maximum) level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings and/or clutch disc (if equipped).

If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the brake system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

*Use only the specified brake/clutch fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants or capacities" in section 8.)*

*Never mix different types of fluid.*

**⚠ WARNING - Loss of brake fluid**

**In the event the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid, we recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 20



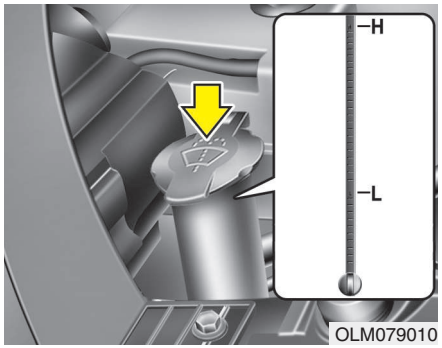
**⚠ WARNING - Brake fluid**

**When changing and adding brake fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result. Brake fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake system can damage brake system parts.***

## WASHER FLUID




### Checking the washer fluid level

1. Open the cover.
2. Pull the gauge out and check the level. The level should be between H (High) and L (Low).
3. If it is near of at L (Low), add enough washer fluid to bring the level to H (High). Do not overfill.

Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

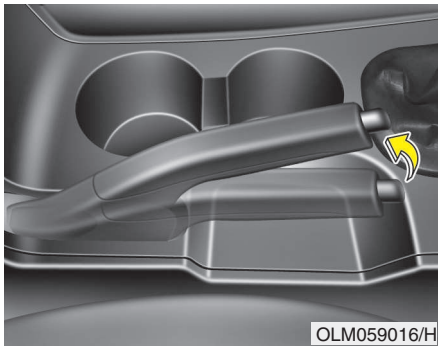
**⚠ WARNING - Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Windscreen Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.**
- **Windscreen washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windscreen washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 21



## PARKING BRAKE




### Check the parking brake

Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of “clicks” heard whilst fully applying it from the released position. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**Stroke : 6 “clicks” at a force of 44 lbs (20 kg, 196 N).**

## FUEL FILTER (FOR DIESEL)

### Draining water from fuel filter

The fuel filter for diesel engine plays an important role of separating water from fuel and accumulating the water in its bottom.

If water accumulates in the fuel filter, the warning light comes on when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

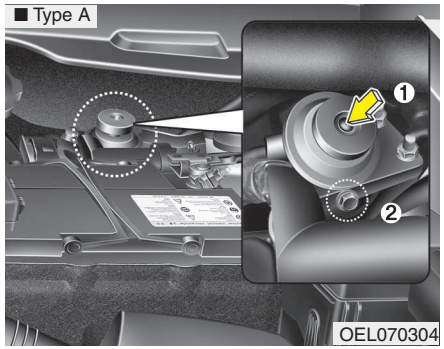


If this warning light illuminates, we recommend that the system by checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the water accumulated in the fuel filter is not drained at proper times, damages to the major parts such as the fuel system can be caused by water permeation in the fuel filter.***

■ Type A




### Extracting air from the fuel filter

If you drive until you have no fuel left or if you replace the fuel filter, be sure to extract air from the fuel system as it makes it difficult to start the engine.

1. Pump up and down(1) approximately 50 times until the pump is hard.
2. Extract air from the fuel filter by removing the bolt(2) with a cross-tip screw driver and reinstall the bolt(2).
3. Pump up and down(1) approximately 15 times.
4. Extract air from the fuel filter by removing the bolt(2) with a cross-tip screw driver and reinstall the bolt(2).
5. Pump up and down(1) approximately 5 times.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 22



**⚠ WARNING - Brake/clutch fluid**

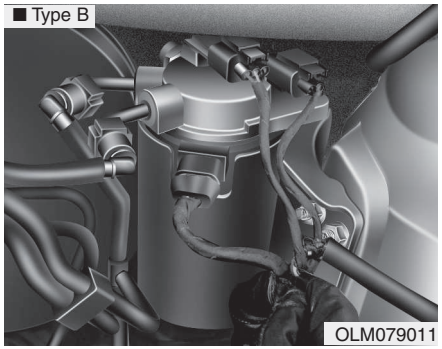
**When changing and adding brake/clutch fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake/clutch fluid come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not allow brake/clutch fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.***

***Brake/clutch fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be properly disposed. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake/clutch system can damage brake/clutch system parts.***

■ Type B



OLM079011

**✻ NOTICE**

- **Use cloths when you extract air so that the fuel is not sprayed around.**
- **Clean the fuel around the fuel filter or the injection pump before starting the engine to prevent fire.**
- **Finally, check each part if the fuel is leaking.**

### Fuel filter cartridge replacement

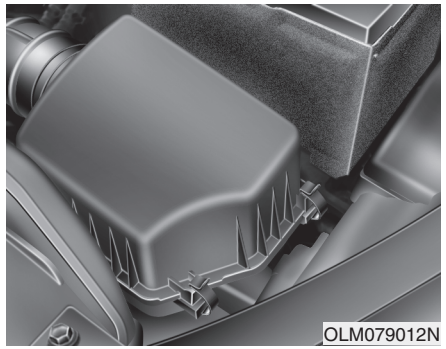
**✻ NOTICE**

**When replacing the fuel filter cartridge, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 23



## AIR CLEANER

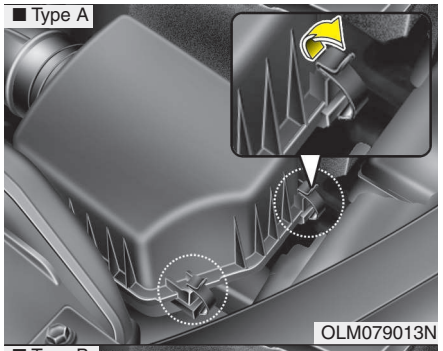


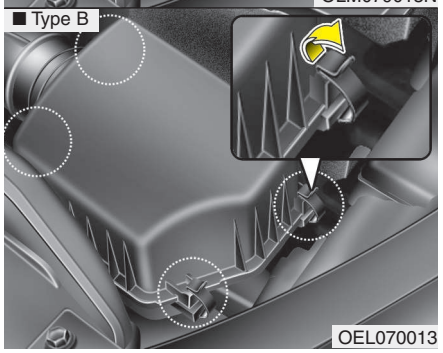

### Filter replacement

It must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

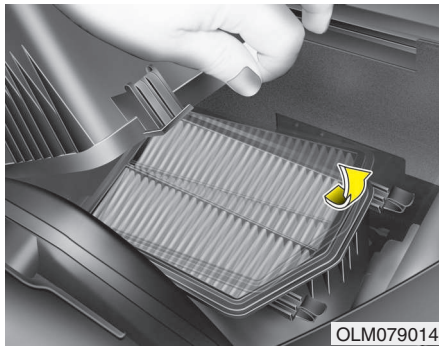
You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner element.

Clean the filter by using compressed air.




1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.




2. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner.
3. Replace the air cleaner filter.
4. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 24



Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

*If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.***
- ***When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.***
- ***We recommend that you use parts for replacement from a HYUNDAI authorised repairer. Improper parts could damage the air flow sensor, turbocharger or engine.***

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:02 PM Page 25

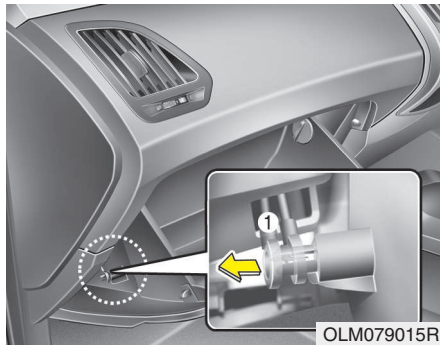


## CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER (IF EQUIPPED)

### Filter inspection

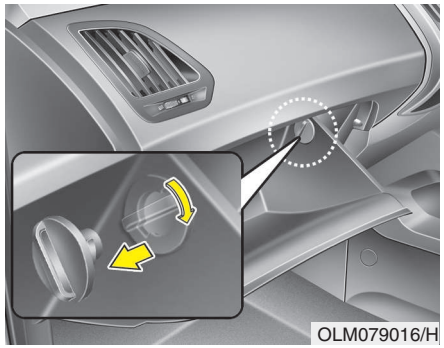
If the vehicle is operated in the severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you, the owner, replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

Replace the filter according to the maintenance Schedule.




### Filter replacement

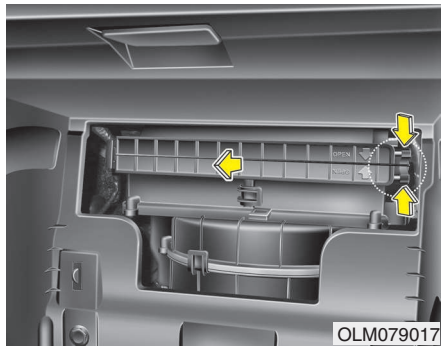
1. Open the glove box and remove the support strap (1).



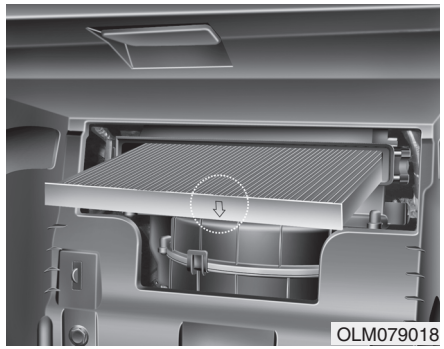

2. With the glove box open, remove the stoppers on both sides.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 26






3. Remove the climate control air filter case whilst pressing the lock on the right of the cover.




4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

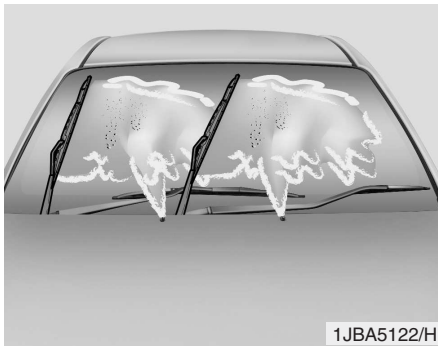
### ✻ NOTICE

**When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 27



## WIPER BLADES




### Blade inspection

**✻ NOTICE**

**Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windscreen difficult to clean.**

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***

### Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

**⚠ CAUTION**

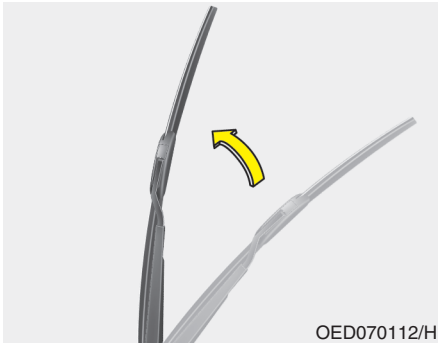
***To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.***

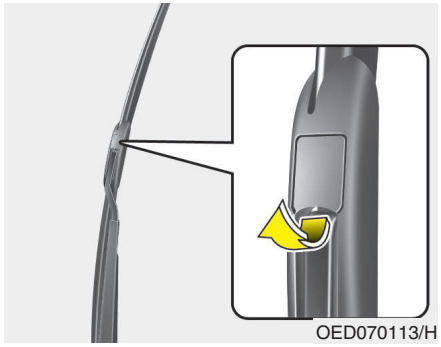
EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 28



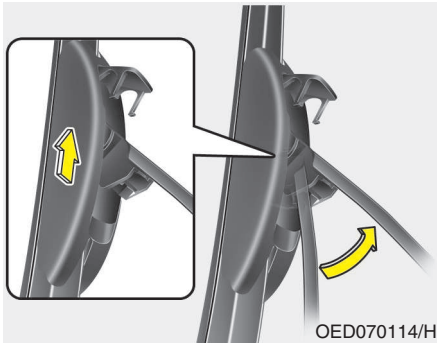

OED070112/H

***Front windscreen wiper blade***

1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.


OED070113/H

2. Open the cover of the blade.
3. Compress the clip behind the wiper arm and lift it off the arm.


OED070114/H

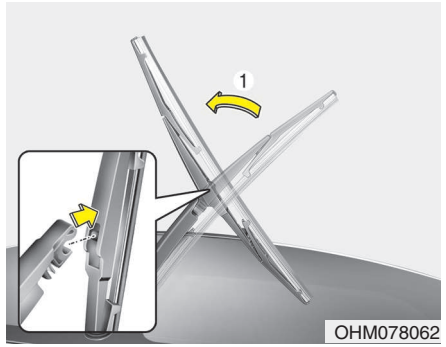
4. Install the blade assembly until it clicks into place.
5. Close the cover of blade.
6. Place back the wiper arm to the proper position.

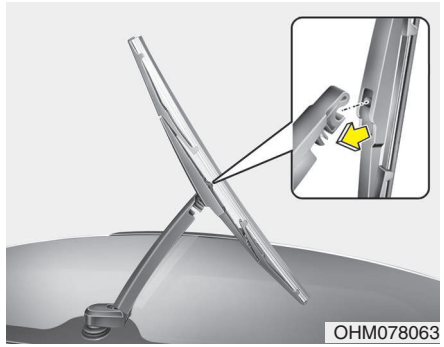
### ✻ NOTICE

**Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windscreen.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 29






***Rear window wiper blade***

1. Raise the wiper arm and pull out the wiper blade assembly.
2. Install the new blade assembly by inserting the centre part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
3. Make sure the blade assembly is installed firmly by trying to pull it slightly.

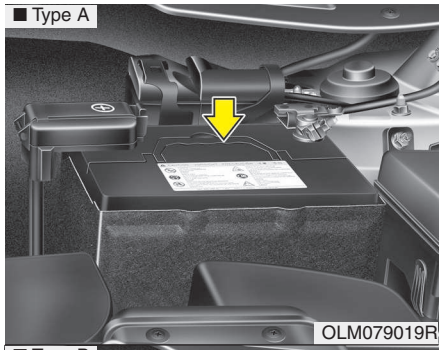
To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, we recommend that the wiper blade be replaced by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 30



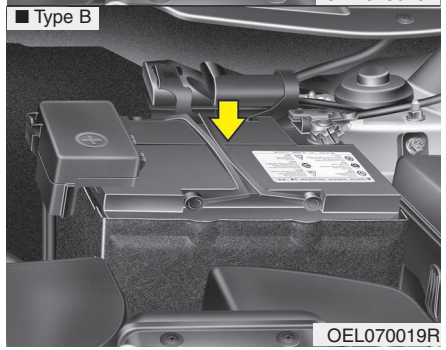
## BATTERY

■ Type A



OLM079019R

■ Type B



OEL070019R

### For best battery service

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

**⚠ WARNING - Battery dangers**

**Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.**

**Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.**

**Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.**

**Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 31



**(Continued)**

**If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.**

**If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.**

**Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.**

**An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. We recommend that you return the battery to a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.**

**Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***If you connect unauthorised electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.***

■ Example




OJD072039

✻ The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

## Battery capacity label

1. CMF60L-BCI : HYUNDAI model name of battery
2. 12V : Nominal voltage
3. 60Ah(20HR) : Nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. 92RC : Nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
5. 550CCA : Cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 440A : Cold-test current in amperes by EN

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 32



### Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on whilst the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load whilst the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

**⚠ WARNING - Recharging battery**

**When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:**

- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.**
- **Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).**
- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.**
- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.**

### Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (See section 4)
- Sunroof (See section 4)
- Trip computer (See section 4)
- Climate control system (See section 4)
- Clock (See section 4)
- Audio (See section 4)

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 33



## TYRES AND WHEELS

### Tyre care

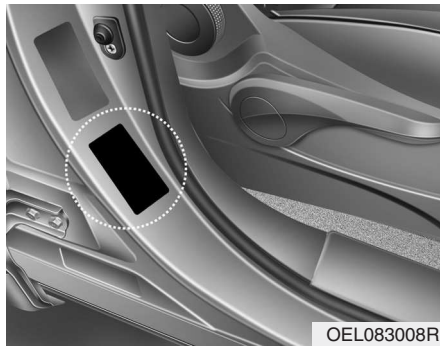
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

### Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

All tyre pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tyres are cold. “Cold Tyres” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.

For recommended inflation pressure refer to “Tyre and wheels” in section 8.




All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING - Tyre underinflation**

**Severe underinflation (10 psi (0.7 bar) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tyre failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 34



**⚠ CAUTION**

- *Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.*
- *Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

- *Warm tyres normally exceed recommended cold tyre pressures by 4 to 6 psi (0.28 to 0.41 bar). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure or the tyres will be underinflated.*
- *Be sure to reinstall the tyre inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.*

**⚠ WARNING - Tyre inflation**

**Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Tyre pressure**

*Always observe the following:*

- *Check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1 mile (1.6 km) since startup.)*
- *Check the pressure of your spare tyre each time you check the pressure of other tyres.*
- *Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.*
- *Worn, old tyres can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tyres have been damaged, replace them.*

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 35



### Checking tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres once a month or more.

Also, check the tyre pressure of the spare tyre.

#### *How to check*

Use a good quality gauge to check tyre pressure. You can not tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tyre's inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Inspect your tyres frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tyre pressure gauge.**
- **Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar.**
- **Worn tyres can cause accidents. Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.**
- **Remember to check the pressure of your spare tyre. HYUNDAI recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 36



### Tyre rotation

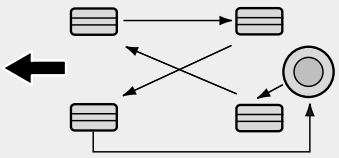
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tyres be rotated every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tyre. Replace the tyre if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

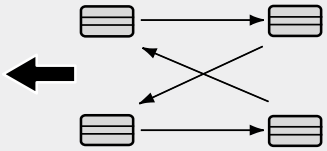
Refer to “Tyre and wheels” in section 8.

With a full-size spare tyre (if equipped)



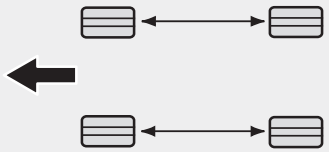
S2BLA790

Without a spare tyre



S2BLA790A

Directional tyres (if equipped)



CBGQ0707A

*Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.*

**✻ NOTICE**

**Rotate radial tyres that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not use the compact spare tyre for tyre rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 37



### Wheel alignment and tyre balance

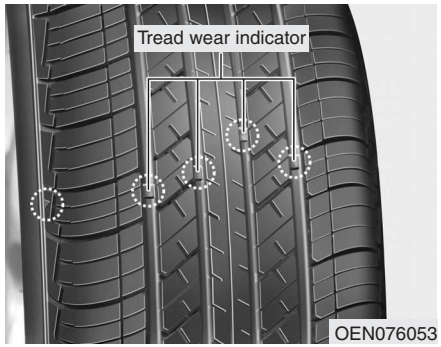
The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tyre life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.***




### Tyre replacement

If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

**⚠ WARNING - Replacing tyres**

- **Driving on worn-out tyres is very hazardous and will reduce braking effectiveness, steering accuracy, and traction.**
- **Your vehicle is equipped with tyres designed to provide for safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tyre and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to handling failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the tyre and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 38



**(Continued)**

- **The use of any other tyre size or type may seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, stopping distance, body to tyre clearance, snow tyre clearance, and speedometer reliability.**
- **It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that is not possible, or necessary, then replace the two front or two rear tyres as a pair. Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.**
- **The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. Tyre size can affect wheel speed. When replacing tyres, all 4 tyres must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tyres of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESP (Electronic Stability Program) (if equipped) to work irregularly.**

***Compact spare tyre replacement (if equipped)***

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

**Wheel replacement**

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tyre clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 39



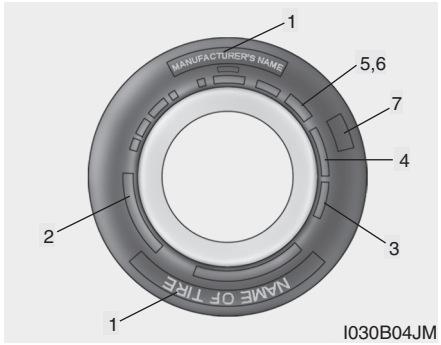
### Tyre traction

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres, tyres that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tyres should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

### Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.




### Tyre sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.

***1. Manufacturer or brand name***

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

***2. Tyre size designation***

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tyre size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

**P225/55R18 102H**

P - Applicable vehicle type (tyres marked with the prefix "P" are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tyres have this marking).

225 - Tyre width in millimeters.

55 - Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tyre construction code (Radial).

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 40



102 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.

H - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

**Wheel size designation**

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

**7.0JX18**

7.0 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

**Tyre speed ratings**

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger cars. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

| Speed Rating Symbol | Maximum Speed |
|---|---|
| S | 112 mph (180 km/h) |
| T | 118 mph (190 km/h) |
| H | 130 mph (210 km/h) |
| V | 149 mph (240 km/h) |
| Z | Above 149 mph (240 km/h) |

***3. Checking tyre life (TIN : Tyre Identification Number)***

Any tyres that are over 6 years, based on the manufacturing date, tyre strength and performance, decline with age naturally (even unused spare tyres). Therefore, the tyres (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

**DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO**

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1613 represents that the tyre was produced in the 16th week of 2013.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 41



**⚠ WARNING - Tyre age**

**Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, it is recommended that tyres generally be replaced after six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this Warning can result in sudden tyre failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.**

***4. Tyre ply composition and material***

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric are in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

***5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure***

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

***6. Maximum load rating***

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

***7. Uniform tyre quality grading***

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

**Tread wear**

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm because of variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicles may vary with respect to grade.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 42



**Traction - AA, A, B & C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tyres ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.**

**Temperature -A, B & C**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by the law.

**⚠ WARNING - Tyre temperature**

**The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 43



**Low aspect ratio tyre (if equipped)**

Low aspect ratio tyres, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tyres are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tyres.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tyre is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tyre of the low aspect ratio tyre is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.***

***- When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tyres and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tyres and wheels.***

***- When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive slowly so that the tyres and wheels are not damaged.***

***- If the tyre is impacted, we recommend that you inspect the tyre condition or contact a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***

***- To prevent damage to the tyre, inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 1,800 miles (3,000 km).***

**⚠ CAUTION**

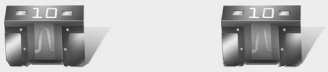
- ***It is not easy to recognize the tyre damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tyre damage, even though you cannot see the tyre damage with your own eyes, have the tyre checked or replaced because the tyre damage may cause air leakage from the tyre.***
- ***If the tyre is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or kerb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.***
- ***You can find out the tyre information on the tyre sidewall.***

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 44



## FUSES

■ Blade type



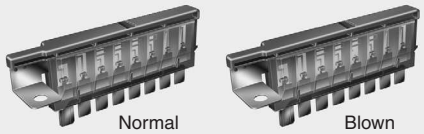
Normal Blown

■ Cartridge type



Normal Blown

■ Multi fuse



Normal Blown

■ BFT (Battery fuse terminal)



Normal Blown

OLM079051N

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 3 (or 4) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Before replacing a blown fuse, disconnect the negative battery cable.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

*Four kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and fusible link for higher amperage ratings.*

**⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement**

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.***

**✻ NOTICE**

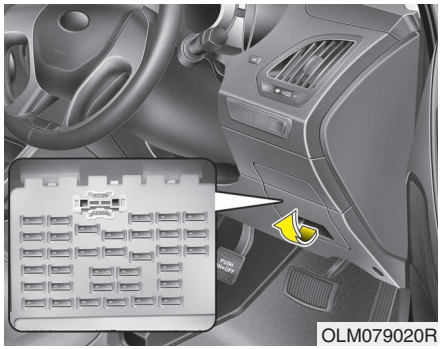
**The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 45



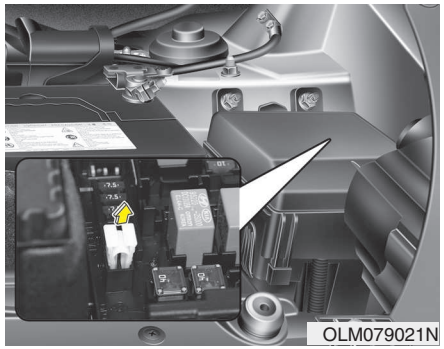
### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When replacing a blown fuse or relay with a new one, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. The incomplete fastening fuse or relay may cause the vehicle wiring and electric systems damage and a possible fire.***
- ***Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, we recommend that you consult with a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.***
- ***Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a driver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.***


OLM079020R

***Inner panel fuse replacement***

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.


OLM079021N

3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

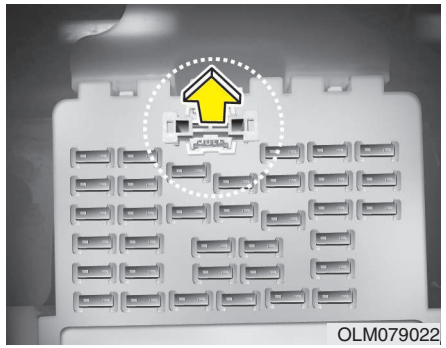
If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

*If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigar lighter fuse.*

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse block in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:03 PM Page 46





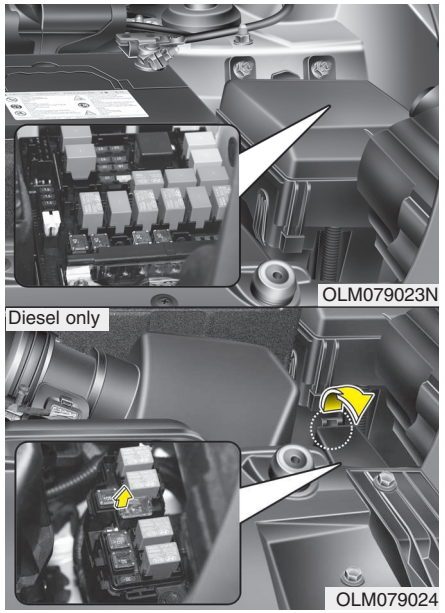

***Memory fuse***

Your vehicle is equipped with a memory fuse to prevent battery discharge if your vehicle is parked without being operated for prolonged periods. Use the following procedures before parking the vehicle for prolonged periods.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Turn off the headlights and tail lights.
3. Open the driver's side panel cover and pull out the memory fuse.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **If the memory fuse is pulled up from the fuse panel, the warning chime, audio, clock and interior lamps, etc., will not operate. Some items must be reset after replacement. Refer to "Battery" in this section.**
- **Even though the memory fuse is pulled up, the battery can still be discharged by operation of the headlights or other electrical devices.**




***Engine compartment panel fuse replacement***

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover by pressing the tap and pulling up.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 47

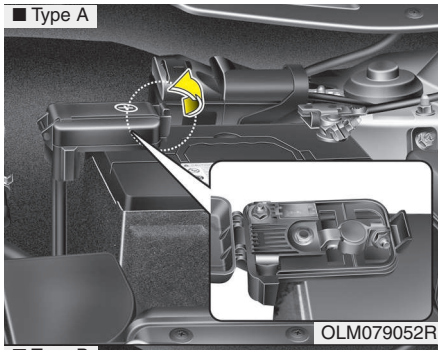


3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

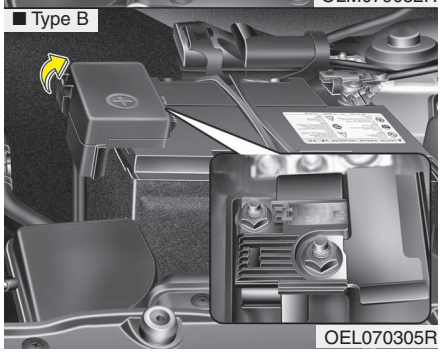
***After checking the fuse box in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse box cover. If not, electrical failures may occur from water leaking in.***

■ Type A



OLM079052R

■ Type B



OEL070305R

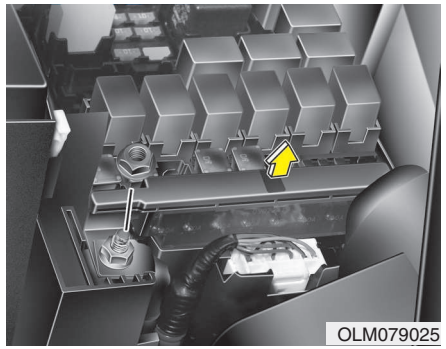
***Main fuse***

If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 48






***Multi fuse***

If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the fuse panel on the right side in the engine compartment.
4. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
5. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
6. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the main fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 49



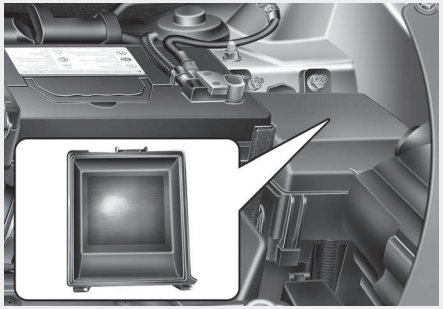
## Fuse/Relay panel description

Inside the fuse/relay box covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

**Driver's side panel**

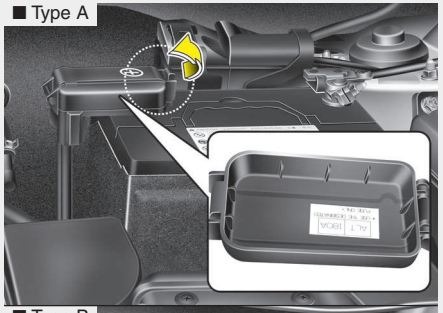


**Engine compartment**

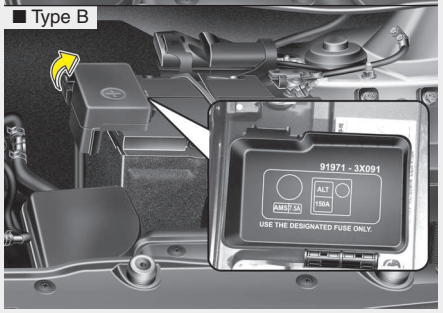


**Main fuse**

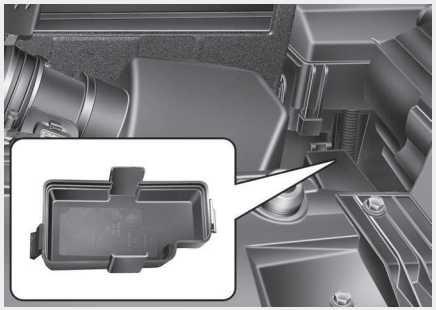
■ Type A



■ Type B




**Diesel only**



OLM079026R/OLM079053R/OLM079027/
OEL070306R/OLM079028

### ✻ NOTICE

**Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 50



**Inner fuse panel (Instrument panel)**

| No. | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 10A | **AUDIO 1** | AUDIO 1<br>POWER CONNECTOR | Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, DC/DC Converter |
| 2 | 10A | | ROOM LP<br>POWER CONNECTOR | IPS Control Module (B+), BCM, A/C Control Module, Data Link Connector, Instrument Cluster(IND), RF Receiver, Ignition Key ILL. & Door Warning Switch, Auto Light & Photo Sensor, MAP Lamp, Room Lamp, Luggage Lamp, Driver/Passenger, Vanity Lamp |
| 3 | 10A | **MODULE 3** | MODULE 3 | IPS Control Module (ON Input), Electro Chromic Mirror, BCM, PDM, Head Lamp Levelling Device Switch, Head Lamp Levelling Device Actuator LH/RH, ICM Relay Box (Rear Seat Warmer Relay Relay LH/RH) |
| 4 | 10A | 1 | START | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 4 / 11 - Start / ATM P/N) Burglar Alarm Relay, ECM |
| 5 | 10A | IND | AIR BAG IND. | Instrument Cluster (IND.) |
| 6 | 10A | **CLUSTER** | CLUSTER | Instrument Cluster (IND.), Seat Belt Reminder Switch, Console Switch, BCM, Smart Key Control Module, Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, ISG Switch, Alternator |
| 7 | 10A | **MODULE 4** | MODULE 4 | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 1 - Blower), Rain Sensor, Diesel Box (RLY. 2, 3 - PTC Heater Relay #2, #3) A/C Control Module, Cluster Ionizer, Sunroof Motor |
| 8 | 25A | **POWER OUTLET 2** | POWER OUTLET 2 | Cigarette Lighter & Front Power Outlet, Rear Power Outlet |
| 9 | 10A | **AUDIO 2** | AUDIO 2 | Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, AMP, PDM, BCM, Power Outside Mirror Switch, Smart Key Control Module, DC/DC Converter, Sunroof Motor |

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 51



| No. | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10 | 10A | | AIR BAG | SRS Control Module, Passenger Air Bag Lamp |
| 11 | 10A | MODULE 1 | MODULE 1 | IPS Control Module (ON/START Input), 4WD ECM, ICM Relay Box (DBC Relay), DBC Switch, Multifunction Switch (Light), Steering Angle Sensor, Stop Lamp Switch, EPS Control Module, Tyre Pressure Monitoring Module, ESP Off Switch, E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 8 - ESS), DC/DC Converter, Smart Parking Assist Control Module |
| 12 | 15A | | HANDLE HTD | Clock Spring (Steering Wheel Heater) |
| 13 | 10A | | FOG LP RR | ICM Relay Box (Rear Fog Lamp Relay) |
| 14 | 25A | | WIPER FRT | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (RLY. 12 - Front Wiper LO, RLY. 13 - Rain Wiper)<br>Front Wiper Motor, Multifunction Switch (Wiper) |
| 15 | 15A | FRT | S/HEATER FRT | Console Switch |
| 16 | 20A | POWER OUTLET 1 | POWER OUTLET 1 | Cigarette Lighter & Front Power Outlet |
| 17 | 10A | B/UP LP | BACK-UP LP | Back-Up Lamp Relay<br>Rear Parking Assist Sensor LH/RH, Rear Parking Assist Sensor Centre LH/RH |
| 18 | 15A | | DR LOCK | Door Lock/Unlock Relay, Tail Gate Relay, ICM Relay Box (Dead Lock Relay) |
| 19 | 7.5A | MODULE 2 | MODULE 2 | BCM, Smart Key Control Module, PDM |
| 20 | 15A | | WIPER RR | ICM Relay Box (Rear Wiper Relay), Rear Wiper Motor, Multifunction Switch (Wiper) |
| 21 | 15A | | SUNROOF | Sunroof Motor |

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 52



| No. | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 22 | 20A | IGN 1 | IGN 1 | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (FUSE - F23, F24, F25) |
| 23 | 7.5A | | A/CON | A/C Control Module (Auto) |
| 24 | 15A | RR | S/HEATER RR | ICM Relay Box (Rear Seat Warmer Relay LH/RH) |
| 25 | 25A | RH | P/WDW RH | Power Window Main Switch, Passenger Power Window Switch(LHD),<br>Rear Power Window Switch RH |
| 26 | 10A | FOLDING MIRR | FOLDING MIRR | Power Outside Mirror Switch |
| 27 | 10A | SMART KEY | SMART KEY | PDM, Smart Key Control ModuleFOB Holder, Start/Stop Button Switch |
| 28 | 15A | 2 | PDM | PDM |
| 29 | 25A | LH | P/WDW LH | Power Window Main Switch, Passenger Power Window Switch(RHD),<br>Rear Power Window Switch LH |
| 30 | 25A | AMP | AMP | AMP, DC/DC Converter |
| 31 | 7.5A | | HTD MIRR | Rear Defogger Switch, ECM(G4FD)<br>Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror |
| 32 | 20A | SAFETY | SAFETY P/WDW | Driver Safety Power Window Module |
| 33 | 7.5A | MODULE 5 | MODULE 5 | ATM Shift Lever, Rear Parking Assist Buzzer, Tyre Pressure Monitoring Module |
| 34 | 15A | | HAZARD | ICM Relay Box (Flasher Sound Relay), BCM |
| 35 | 10A | 1 | MDPS | MDPS Unit |
| 36 | 20A | DRV | P/SEAT DRV | FRT DRV Seat |

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 53



**Engine compartment main fuse panel**

| No. | | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MULTI FUSE | 1 | 80A | 1 | MDPS | EPS Control Module |
| | 2 | 60A | 1 | B+1 | Smart Junction Box (Fuse - F13 / F20 / F26 / F31 / F37, IPS 4 / IPS 5 / IPS 6 / IPS 7) |
| | 3 | 40A | 2 ABS | ABS 2 | ESP Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |
| | 4 | 40A | | EMS | EMS Box (Fuse - F1 / F2 / F3 / F6) |
| | 5 | 40A | 1 ABS | ABS 1 | ESP Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |
| | 6 | 40A | | BLOWER | RLY. 1 (Blower Relay) |
| | 7 | 60A | 3 | B+3 | Smart Junction Box (Fuse - F30 / F35 / F36, Power Connector - F1 / F2) |
| | 8 | 60A | 2 | B+2 | Smart Junction Box (Power Window Relay, Fuse - F23 / F28 / F33, IPS 0 / IPS 1 / IPS 2 / IPS 3) |
| FUSE | 9 | 40A(50A) GSL(DSL) | | COOLING FAN | RLY. 3 (Cooling Fan Low Relay), RLY. 9 (Cooling Fan High Relay) |
| | 10 | 40A | **RR HTD** | HEATED GLASS RR | RLY. 6 (Rear Defogger Relay) |
| | 11 | 30A | **IGN 1** | IGN 1 | W/O Smart Key - Ignition Switch,<br>With Smart Key - PDM Relay Box (IGN1 Relay) |
| | 12 | 40A | **IGN 2** | IGN 2 | RLY. 4 (Start Relay), W/O Smart Key - Ignition Switch,<br>With Smart Key - PDM Relay Box (IGN2 Relay) |
| | 13 | 15A | | HORN | RLY. 2 (Horn Relay), RLY. 5 (Burglar Alarm Horn Relay) |

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 54



| No. | | Fuse rating | Symbol | Fuse Name | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| FUSE | 14 | 15A | | DEICER | RLY. 10 (Front Wiper Deicer Relay) |
| | 15 | 10A | STOP LAMP | STOP LAMP | Stop Lamp Switch, ICM Relay Box (DBC Relay) |
| | 16 | 10A | AMS | B+ SENSOR | Battery Sensor (G4KD/D4HA) |
| | 17 | 20A | | 4WD | 4WD ECM |
| | 18 | 7.5A | 4 | ECU 2 | RLY. 11 (ATM P/N Relay), RLY. 4 (Start Relay), ECM/PCM, Multifunction Switch (G4KD), Mass Air Flow Sensor (D4FD/D4HA) |
| | 19 | 7.5A | ABS | ABS | ESP Control Module, ABS Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector, Fuel Filter Warning Sensor (D4FD/D4HA), Glow Relay Unit (D4HA), Diesel Box (RLY. 4 - Fuel Filter Heater Relay)(D4FD/D4HA) |
| | 20 | 7.5A | 3 | TCU 2 | Transaxle Range Switch(G4KD/D4HA), TCM (D4HA), Vehicle Speed Sensor |
| | 21 | 30A | 2 | B+4 | H/LP HI Fuse |
| | 22 | 30A | | H/LP WASHER | RLY (H/LP WASHER) |
| | 23 | 10A | | H/LP HI | RLY (H/LP HI) |

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 55



**Engine compartment sub fuse panel (Disel Engine)**

| No. | Fuse rating | Fuse Symbol | Circuit Protected | Relay Symbol | Relay Type |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 50A | 1 PTC HEATER | PTC Heater Relay #1 | 1 PTC HEATER | MICRO PLUG |
| 2 | 50A | 2 PTC HEATER | PTC Heater Relay #2 | 2 PTC HEATER | MICRO PLUG |
| 3 | 50A | 3 PTC HEATER | PTC Heater Relay #3 | 3 PTC HEATER | MICRO PLUG |
| 4 | 30A | | Fuel Filter Heater Relay | | MICRO PLUG |
| 5 | 80A | | Glow Relay Unit | - | - |

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 56



## LIGHT BULBS

**⚠ WARNING - Working on the lights**

**Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK" position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.**

*Use only the bulbs of the specified wattage.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electric wiring system.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If you don't have necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, we recommend that you consult a HYUNDAI authorised repairer. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlight assembly to get to the bulb(s). Removing/installing the headlight assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**After heavy, driving rain or washing, headlight and taillight lenses could appear frosty. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside. This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and doesn't indicate a problem with your vehicle. If water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

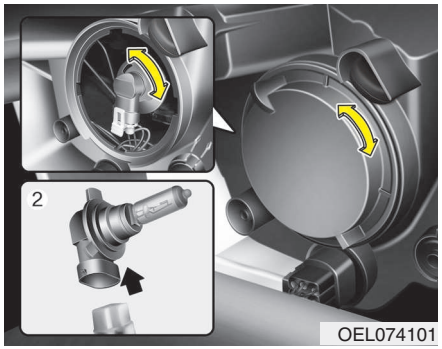
EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 57






**Headlight, position light, turn signal light, front fog light bulb replacement**

(1) Front turn signal light
(2) Headlight (High/Low)
(3) Position light (LED) (if equipped)
(4) Position light (LED)/Daytime running light (if equipped)
(5) Front fog light (if equipped)




***Headlight (High/Low)***

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlight bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
4. Unsnap the headlight bulb retaining wire by depressing the end and pushing it upward.
5. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly.
6. Install a new headlight bulb and snap the headlight bulb retaining wire into position by aligning the wire with the groove on the bulb.
7. Connect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
8. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

**✻ NOTICE**

**We recommend that the headlight aiming be adjusted after an accident or after the headlight assembly is reinstalled at a authorized HYUNDAI dealer.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 58



*Headlight (Low, HID type)*

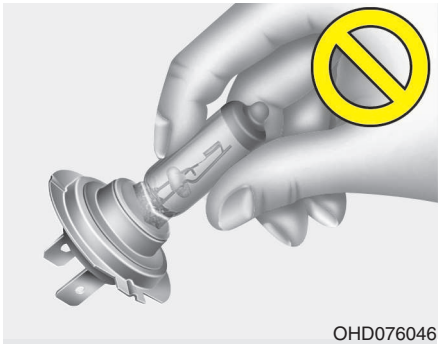
If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

**⚠ WARNING - HID Headlight low beam (if equipped)**

**Do not attempt to replace or inspect the low beam (XENON bulb) due to electric shock danger. If the low beam (XENON bulb) is not working, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**HID lamps have superior performance vs. halogen bulbs. HID lamps are estimated by the manufacturer to last twice as long or longer than halogen bulbs depending on their frequency of use. They will probably require replacement at some point in the life of the vehicle. Cycling the headlamps on and off more than typical use will shorten HID lamps life. HID lamps do not fail in the same manner as halogen incandescent lamps. If a headlamp goes out after a period of operation but will immediately relight when the headlamp switch is cycled it is likely the HID lamp needs to be replaced. HID lighting components are more complex than conventional halogen bulbs thus have higher replacement cost.**



OHD076046

**⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs**

- **Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.**
- **Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit. A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.**

**(Continued)**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 59



**(Continued)**

- **If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.**
- **Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.**

### *Turn signal light/Position light*

**Turn signal light**

1. Turn off the engine and open the bonnet.
2. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
5. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

**Position light**

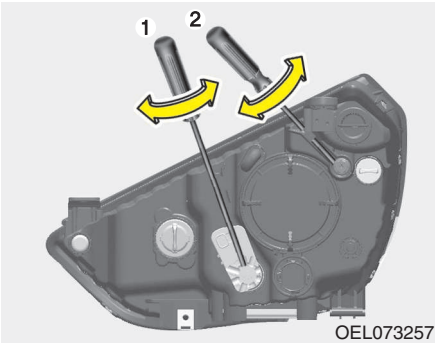
If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 60



***Front fog light bulbs (if equipped)***

1. Remove the front bumper under cover.
2. Reach your hand into the back of the front bumper.
3. Disconnect the power connector from the socket.
4. Remove the bulb-socket from the housing by turning the socket counter clockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the housing.
5. Install the new bulb-socket into the housing by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the housing. Push the socket into the housing and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Connect the power connector to the socket.
7. Reinstall the front bumper under cover.



OEL073257

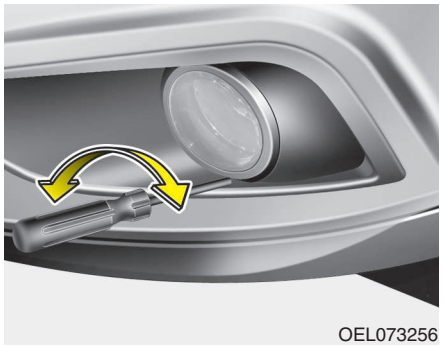
## Headlight and front fog light aiming (for Europe)

***Headlight aiming***

1. Inflate the tyres to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tyre, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centres) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through centre of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the head lamp and battery in normal condition, aim the head lamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low/high beam left or right, turn the driver (2) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low/high beam up or down, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:04 PM Page 61





OEL073256

***Front fog light aiming***

The front fog lamp can be aimed as the same manner of the head lamps aiming.

With the front fog lamps and battery normal condition, aim the front fog lamps. To aim the front fog lamp up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

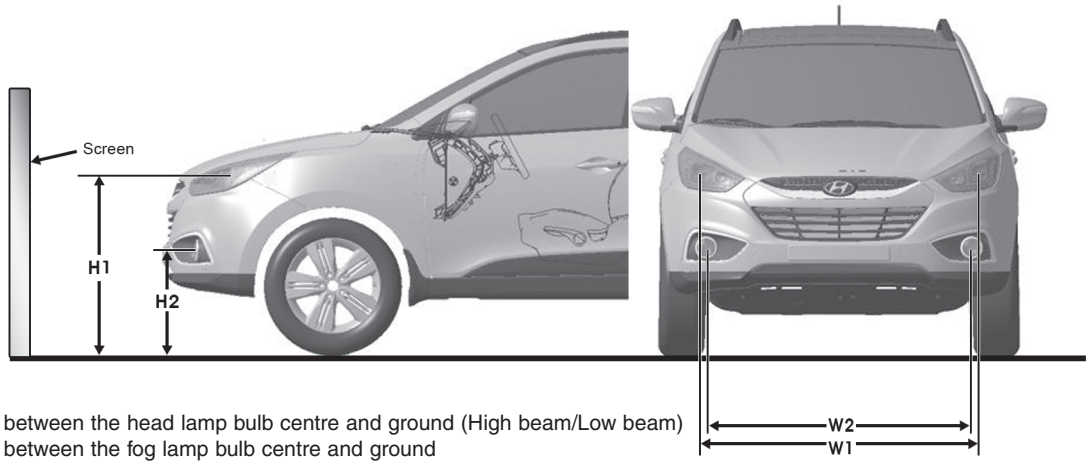
EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 62



***Aiming point***

<Ground Height>

<Distance between lamps>




H1 : Height between the head lamp bulb centre and ground (High beam/Low beam)
H2 : Height between the fog lamp bulb centre and ground
W1 : Distance between the two head lamp bulbs centres (High beam/Low beam)
W2 : Distance between the two fog lamp bulbs centres

OLMB073084

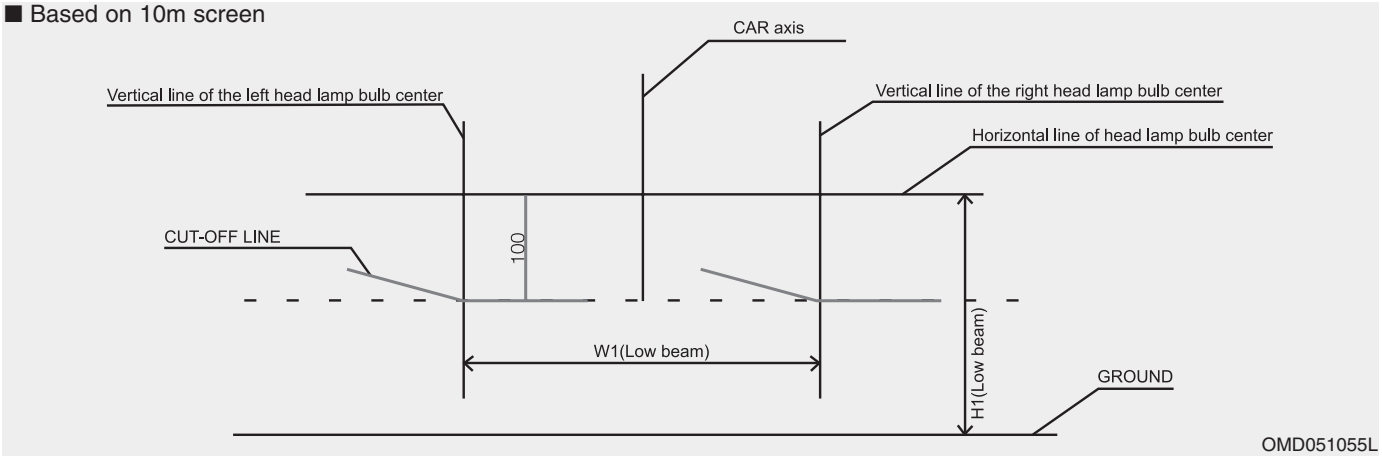
Unit: in (mm)

| Vehicle condition | H1 | H2 | W1 | W2 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Fog | | Fog |
| **Without driver** | 35 (897) | 20 (510) | 55.6 (1413) | 53.1 (1350) |
| **With driver** | 35 (892) | 19.9 (505) | | |

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 63



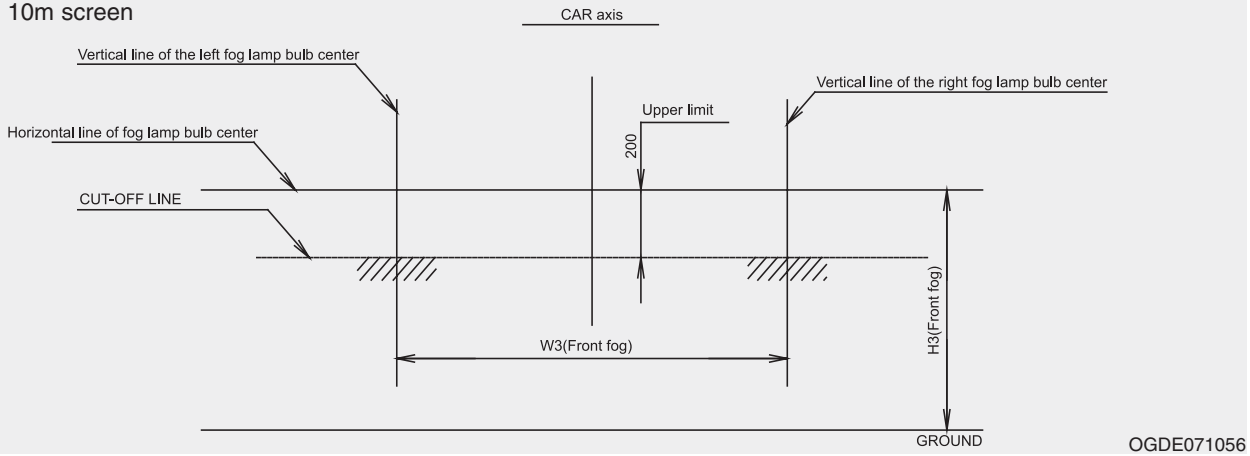
■ Based on 10m screen




***Head lamp low beam***

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp levelling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp levelling device switch with 0 positions.

■ Based on 10m screen




***Front fog light***

1. Turn the front fog lamp on with the driver (75 kg) aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the allowable range (shaded region).

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 65

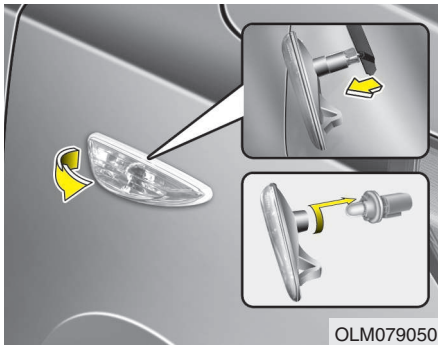





## Side repeater light bulb replacement (if equipped)

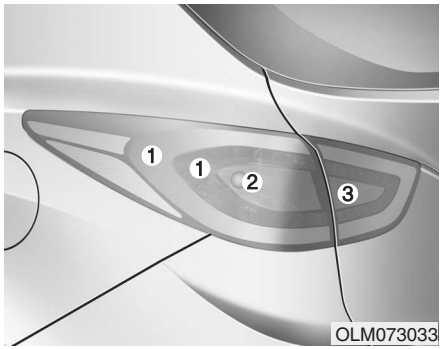
***Type A***

If the light bulb does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.




***Type B***

1. Remove the light assembly from the vehicle by prying the lens and pulling the assembly out.
2. Reinstall a new light assembly to the body of the vehicle.

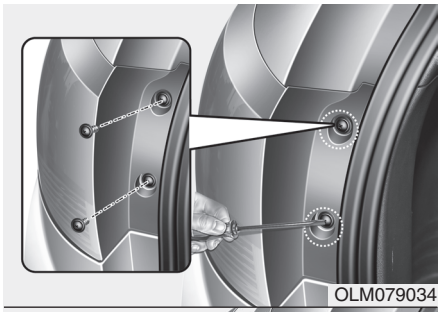



## Rear combination light bulb replacement

(1) Stop and tail light
(2) Rear turn signal light
(3) Back-up light

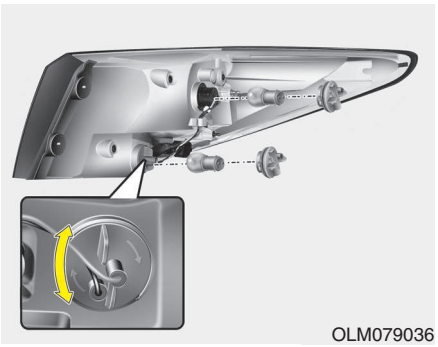
EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 66



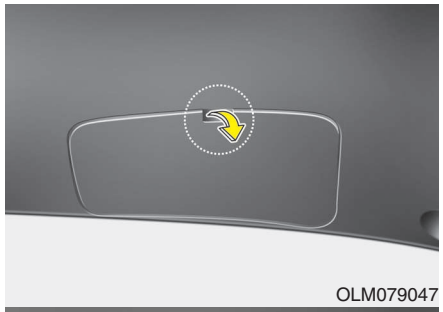



***Outside light***

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
3. Remove the rear combination light assembly from the body of the vehicle.




4. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
5. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counter-clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
6. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
7. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
8. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.




***Inside light***

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover using a flat-blade screwdriver.
3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 67



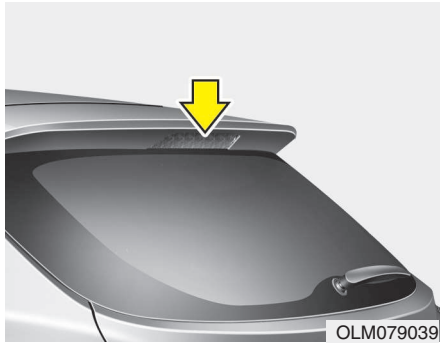
4. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

**Stop and tail light (LED type)**

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

## Rear Fog Light (if equipped)

1. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
2. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
3. Insert a new bulb in the socket.
4. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.

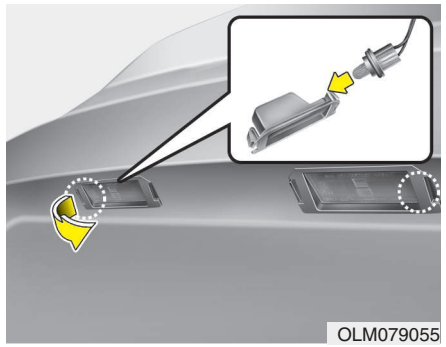



## High mounted stop light bulb replacement (if equipped)

If the light does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 68





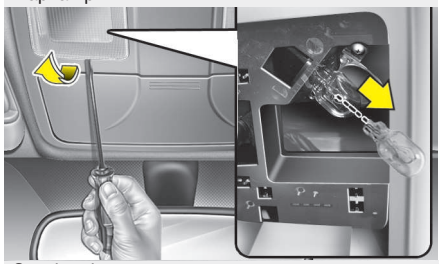

**License plate light bulb replacement**

1. Remove the lens by pressing the tabs.
2. Remove the socket from the lens.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
4. Install a new bulb in the socket and install the socket to the lens.
5. Reinstall the lens securely.

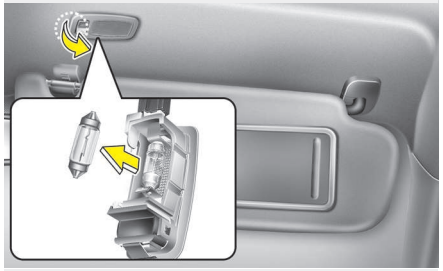
EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 69



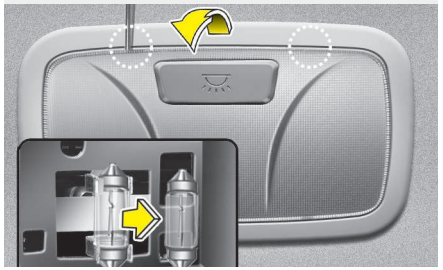
Map lamp



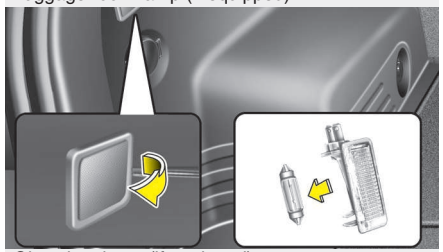
Sunvisor lamp



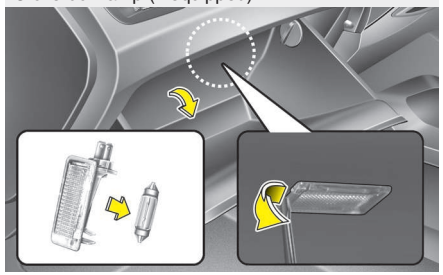
Room lamp



Luggage room lamp (if equipped)



Glove box lamp (if equipped)



OLM079040/OXM079041/H/OEL079042/OLM079044/OLM079045/H

## Interior light bulb replacement

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens from the interior light housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Prior to working on the Interior Lights, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.**

3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens tabs with the interior light housing notches and snap the lens into place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Use care not to dirty or damage lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.***

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 70



# APPEARANCE CARE

## Exterior care

### *Exterior general caution*

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

### *Finish maintenance*

**Washing**

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits.

A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

**⚠ CAUTION**

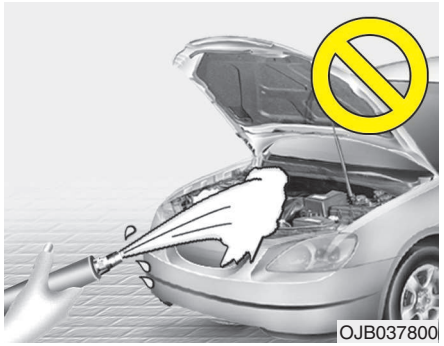
- ***Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.***
- ***Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle. Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.***
- ***To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.***

**⚠ WARNING - Wet brakes**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 71






### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

**Waxing**

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.***
- ***Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.***

***Finish damage repair***

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 72



***Bright-metal maintenance***

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

***Underbody maintenance***

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

**⚠ WARNING**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.**

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 73



### *Aluminum or chrome wheel maintenance*

The aluminum or chrome wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum or chrome wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergent. It may damage and corrode the aluminum or chrome wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

### *Corrosion protection*

**Protecting your vehicle from corrosion**

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produces cars of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

**Common causes of corrosion**

The most common causes of corrosion on your car are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the car.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

**High-corrosion areas**

If you live in an area where your car is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

**Moisture breeds corrosion**

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the car surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your car clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the car.

**To help prevent corrosion**

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 74



**Keep your car clean**

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your car clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the car is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your car at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the car, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

**Keep your garage dry**

Don't park your car in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your car in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

**Keep paint and trim in good condition**

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

**Don't neglect the interior**

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting to cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the car.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 75



## Interior care

### *Interior general precautions*

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions that follow for the proper way to clean vinyl.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.***

### *Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim*

**Vinyl**

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

**Fabric**

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its colour can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.***

### *Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing*

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

### *Cleaning the interior window glass*

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.***

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 76



## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Service Passport in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems which are as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your car inspected and maintained by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer in accordance with the maintenance schedule.

**Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system)**

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system off by pressing the ESP switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESP system back on by pressing the ESP switch again.**

### 1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

### 2. Evaporative emission control System

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapours from escaping into the atmosphere.

***Canister***

Fuel vapours generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapours absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

***Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)***

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms-up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 77



## 3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions whilst maintaining good vehicle performance.

### *Vehicle modifications*

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

  In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.
- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorised electronic devices.

### *Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)*

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

**⚠ WARNING - Exhaust**

**Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colourless and odourless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions following to avoid CO poisoning.**

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:05 PM Page 78



***Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)***

**⚠ WARNING - Fire**

- **A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park, idle, or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as dry grass, paper, leaves, etc.**
- **The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot whilst the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic, you may get burned.**

  **Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.**

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for petrol engine.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. We recommend that the system be inspected by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.
- Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

***Diesel Particulate Filter (if equipped)***

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system removes the soot emitted from the vehicle.

Unlike a disposable air filter, the DPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot according to the driving condition. In other words, the active burning by engine control system and high exhaust gas temperature caused by normal/high driving condition burns and removes the accumulated soot.

However, if the vehicle continues to be driven at low speed for long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. In this particular case, the amount of soot is out of detection limit, the soot oxidation process by engine control system may not happen and the malfunction indicator light may blink.

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking by driving the vehicle at more than 37 mph (60km/h) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

EL(FL) UK 7.QXP 8/5/2013 7:06 PM Page 79



If the malfunction indicator light continues to blink in spite of the procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by a HYUNDAI authorised repairer.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen.

**⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)**

***It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.***

***If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.***

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:54 PM Page 1

# Specifications & Consumer information

**Dimensions** . . . . . 8-2
**Engine** . . . . . 8-2
**Air conditioning system** . . . . . 8-2
**Bulb wattage** . . . . . 8-3
**Tyres and wheels** . . . . . 8-4
**Load and speed capacity tyres** . . . . . 8-4
**Gross vehicle weight** . . . . . 8-5
**Luggage volume** . . . . . 8-5
**Recommended lubricants and capacities** . . . . . 8-6
• **Available engine oil** . . . . . 8-7
• **Recommended sae viscosity number** . . . . . 8-8
**Vehicle identification number (VIN)** . . . . . 8-9
**Vehicle certification label** . . . . . 8-9
**Tyre specification and pressure label** . . . . . 8-10
**Engine number** . . . . . 8-10
**Air conditioner compressor label** . . . . . 8-11
**E-mark label (for europe)** . . . . . 8-11
**Declaration of conformity** . . . . . 8-11

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:54 PM Page 2



## DIMENSIONS

| Item | in (mm) |
|---|---|
| Overall length | 173.6 (4410) |
| Overall width | 71.6 (1820) |
| Overall height | 65.2 (1655)/65.6 (1665)*1 |
| Front tread | 62.6 (1591)*2/62.4 (1585)*3 |
| Rear tread | 62.6 (1592)*2/62.4 (1586)*3 |
| Wheelbase | 103.9 (2640) |

*1 with roof rack
*2 with 215/70R16
*3 with 225/60R17 or 225/55R18

## ENGINE

| Item | Petrol 1.6 | Petrol 2.0 | Diesel 1.7 | Diesel R2.0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Displacement cu. in (cc) | 97.09 (1,591) | 121.99 (1,999) | 102.8 (1,685) | 121.74 (1,995) |
| Bore x Stroke in. (mm) | 3.03X3.36 (77X85.4) | 3.19X3.81 (81X97) | 3.04X3.81 (77.2X90) | 3.30X3.54 (84X90) |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 |
| No. of cylinders | 4. In-line | 4. In-line | 4. In-line | 4. In-line |

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

| Item | Weight of volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|
| Refrigerant | 550±25g | R134a |
| Compressor lubricant | 120±10cc | PAG oil |

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:54 PM Page 3



## BULB WATTAGE

| Light Bulb | Wattage |
|---|---|
| Headlights (Low/High) | 55 or 35 (HID) |
| Front turn signal lights | 21 |
| Position lights | LED |
| Side repeater lights (Outside mirror)* | LED |
| Side repeater lights* | 5 |
| Front fog lights* | 27 |
| Rear fog light* | 21 |
| Stop and tail lights (Outside) | 21/5/LED |
| Stop and tail lights (Inside) | LED |
| Rear turn signal lights (Outside) | 21 |
| Tail light* (Inside) | 5 |
| Back-up lights (Inside) | 16 |
| High mounted stop light | LED |
| License plate lights | 5 |
| Map lamps | 10 |
| Room lamps | 10 |
| Luggage lamp* | 5 |
| Glove box lamp* | 5 |
| Vanity mirror lamps* | 5 |

* If equipped

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:54 PM Page 4



## TYRES AND WHEELS

| Item | Tyre size | Wheel size | Inflation pressure bar (psi, kPa) | | | | Wheel lug nut torque kg•m (lb•ft, N•m) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Normal load ( + ) | | Maximum load ( + ) | | |
| | | | Front | Rear | Front | Rear | |
| Full size tyre | 215/70R16 | 6.5Jx16 | 2.3 (33, 230) | 2.3 (33, 230) | 2.6 *1 (38,260) 2.3 *2 (33,230) | 2.7 *1 (39,270) 2.3 *2 (33,230) | 9~11 (65~79, 88~107) |
| | 225/60R17 | 6.5Jx17 | | | | | |
| | 225/55R18 | 6.5J×18 | | | | | |

*1 : For Europe
*2 : Except Europe

**⚠ CAUTION**
***When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.***
***Using tyres of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.***

## LOAD AND SPEED CAPACITY TYRES

| Item | Tyre size | Wheel size | Load Capacity | | Speed Capacity | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | LI *1 | kg | SS *2 | km/h |
| Full size tyre | 215/70R16 | 6.5Jx16 | 100 | 800 | H | 210 |
| | 225/60R17 | 6.5Jx17 | 99 | 775 | H | 210 |
| | 225/55R18 | 6.5J×18 | 98 | 750 | H | 210 |

*1 LI : LOAD INDEX
*2 SS : SPEED SYMBOL

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:54 PM Page 5



## GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

lbs (Kg)

| Item | 1.6 GDI | | NU 2.0 MPI | | R2.0 | | U2 1.7 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 2WD | 4WD | 2WD | 4WD | 2WD | 4WD | 2WD | 4WD |
| 5 seater | 4034 (1,930) | - | 4365 (1,980) | 4475 (2,030) | 4607 (2,090) | 4717 (2,140) | 4276 (1,940) | - |

## LUGGAGE VOLUME

| Item | | 5 Seater |
|---|---|---|
| VDA | MIN. | 16.4 cu.ft (465 *l*) |
| | MAX. | 50.7 cu.ft (1436 *l*) |

Min : Behind rear seat to upper edge of the seat back.
Max : Behind front seat to roof.

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:55 PM Page 6



## RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.
These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

| Lubricant | | | | Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill) Recommends Shell HELIX Motor oils | Petrol Engine | 1.6L | | 3.6 *l* (3.16 Imp. qts.) | ACEA A5 (or above) |
| | | 2.0L | MPI | 4.0 *l* (3.51 Imp. qts.) | API SM & ILSAC GF-4 (or above), ACEA A5 (or above) |
| | | | GDI | | ACEA A5 (or above) |
| | Diesel Engine | 1.7L | with DPF *3 | 5.3 *l* (4.66 Imp. qts.) | ACEA C3 |
| | | | without DPF *3 | 5.3 *l* (4.66 Imp. qts.) | ACEA B4 |
| | | 2.0L | with DPF *3 | 8.0 *l* (7.03 Imp. qts.) | ACEA C3 |
| | | | without DPF *3 | 8.0 *l* (7.03 Imp. qts.) | ACEA B4 |
| Engine Oil Consumption | Normal driving condition | | | MAX. 1L /1500 Km | - |
| | Severe driving condition | | | MAX. 1L /1000 Km | - |
| Manual transaxle fluid | Petrol Engine | 1.6L | | 1.8 ~ 1.9 *l* (1.58 ~ 1.67 Imp. qts.) | API GL-4, SAE 75W/85 |
| | | 2.0L | MPI | 2.1 ~ 2.2 *l* (1.84 ~ 1.93 Imp. qts.) | |
| | | | GDI | | |
| | Diesel Engine | 1.7L | | 1.9 ~ 2.0 *l* (1.67 ~ 1.75 Imp. qts.) | |
| | | 2.0L | | 1.8 ~ 1.9 *l* (1.58 ~ 1.67 Imp. qts.) | |
| Automatic transaxle fluid | Petrol Engine | 1.6L | | 7.3 *l* (6.42 Imp. qts.) | MICHANG ATF SP-IV, SK ATF SP-IV NOCA ATF SP-IV, HYUNDAI genuine ATF SP-IV |
| | | 2.0L | | 7.1 *l* (6.24 Imp. qts.) | |
| | Diesel Engine | | | 7.8 *l* (6.86 Imp. qts.) | |

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:55 PM Page 7



| Lubricant | | Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Coolant | Petrol Engine | 6.7 *l* (5.89 Imp. qts.) | Mixture of antifreeze and distilled water (Ethylene glycol base coolant for aluminum radiator) |
| | Diesel Engine | 8.5 *l* (7.47 Imp. qts.) | |
| Brake/clutch fluid | | 0.7 ~ 0.8 *l* (0.62 ~ 0.70 Imp. qts.) | FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4 |
| Rear differential oil (4WD) | | 0.65 *l* ( 0.57 Imp. qts.) | HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5, SAE 75W/90 (SHELL SPIRAX X or equivalent) |
| Transfer case oil (4WD) | | 0.6 *l* (0.52 Imp. qts.) | HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5, SAE 75W/90 (SHELL SPIRAX X or equivalent) |
| Fuel | Petrol Engine | 58 *l* (12.7 Imp. gal.) | Refer to “Fuel requirements” in section 1 |
| | Diesel Engine | | |

*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on 8-8 page.

*2 Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year’s time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 Diesel Particulate Filter

## Available Engine oil

| Supplier | Product | |
|---|---|---|
| | Petrol Engine | Diesel Engine |
| Shell | HELIX ULTRA AH-E 5W-30 | HELIX ULTRA AP 5W-30 |
| | HELIX ULTRA 5W-40 | |
| SK | ZIC LD5W-30 | ZIC LS 5W-30 |
| Chevron | KIXX G1 LL | KIXX D1 5W-30 |
| Total | QUARTZ HKS G-310 | QUARTZ INEO MC3 5W-30 |
| | QUARTZ INEO MC3 5W-30 | |
| Fuchs | TITAN SUPERSYN LONG LIFE 5W-30/40 | |

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:55 PM Page 8



### Recommended SAE viscosity number

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.***

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather.

Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

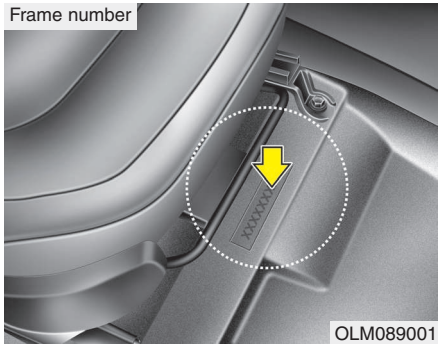
**Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers**

| Temperature | °C | -30 | -20 | -10 | 0 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | (°F) | -10 | 0 | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | | 100 | 120 |
| Petrol Engine Oil (1.6L GDI/2.0L GDI) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | 20W-50 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 15W-40 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 10W-30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 5W-30, 5W-40 |
| Petrol Engine Oil (2.0L MPI) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | 0W-40, 5W-20, 5W-30, 5W-40 |
| Diesel Engine Oil (1.7L) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | 15W-40 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 10W-30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 5W-30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 0W-30 |
| Diesel Engine Oil (2.0L) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | 15W-40 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 10W-30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 5W-30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | 0W-30/40 |

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:55 PM Page 9

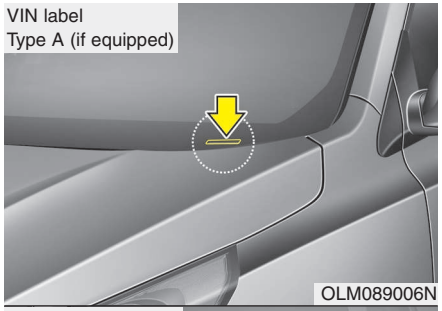


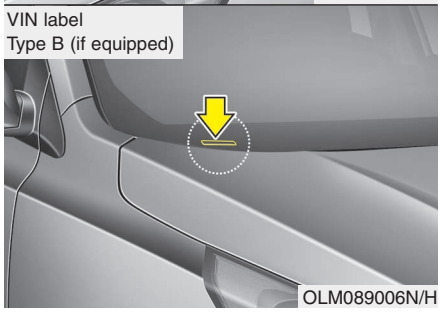
## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)




The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

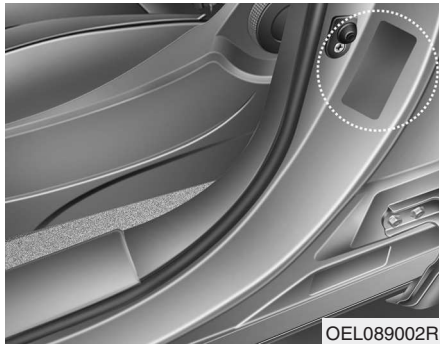
The number is punched on the floor under the driver seat. To check the number, open the cover.




The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

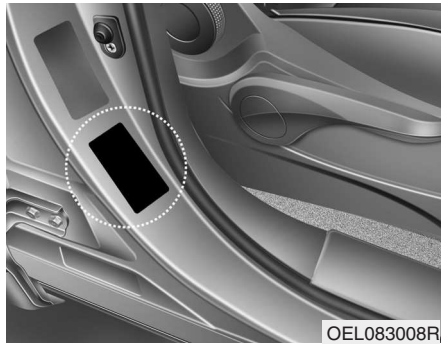



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side centre pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:55 PM Page 10



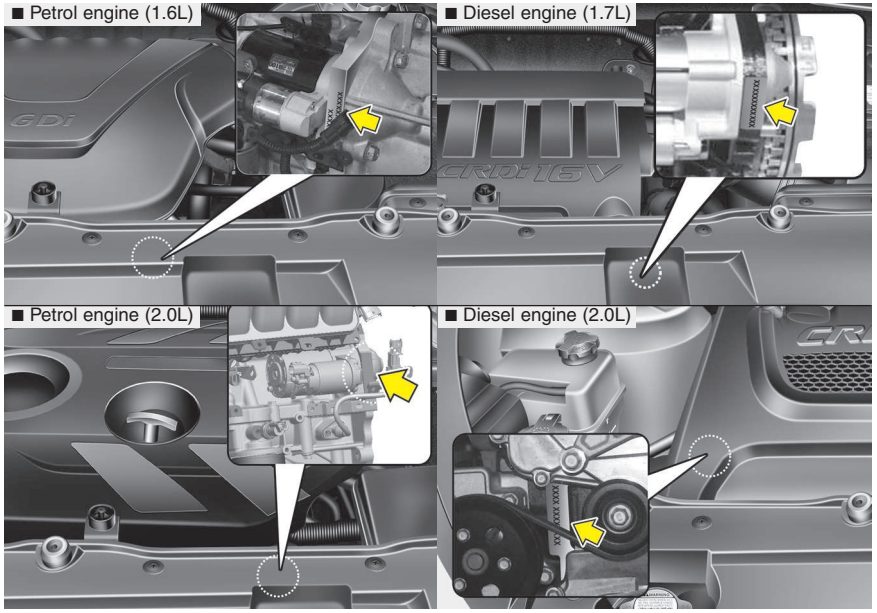
## TYRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL




The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

## ENGINE NUMBER



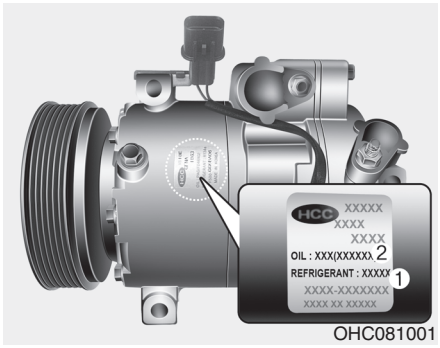

OEL080003/OEL083010/OEL080004/OLM089004

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

EL(FL) UK 8.QXP 8/27/2013 4:55 PM Page 11



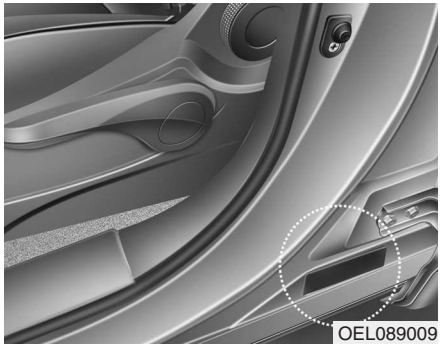
## AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL




OHC081001

A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

## E-MARK LABEL (FOR EUROPE) (IF EQUIPPED)



OEL089009

An E-mark label is located on the driver's side centre pillar. The label certifies that your vehicle has satisfied the ECE Safety/Environment regulation. It contains the following information:

- Country code
- Regulation number
- Regulation amendment number
- Approval number

## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

■ Example

CE CE 0678

CE0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on HYUNDAI web site as follows;

http://service.hyundai-motor.com